

To our customers,

---

## Old Company Name in Catalogs and Other Documents

---

On April 1<sup>st</sup>, 2010, NEC Electronics Corporation merged with Renesas Technology Corporation, and Renesas Electronics Corporation took over all the business of both companies. Therefore, although the old company name remains in this document, it is a valid Renesas Electronics document. We appreciate your understanding.

Renesas Electronics website: <http://www.renesas.com>

April 1<sup>st</sup>, 2010  
Renesas Electronics Corporation

Issued by: Renesas Electronics Corporation (<http://www.renesas.com>)

Send any inquiries to <http://www.renesas.com/inquiry>.

## Notice

1. All information included in this document is current as of the date this document is issued. Such information, however, is subject to change without any prior notice. Before purchasing or using any Renesas Electronics products listed herein, please confirm the latest product information with a Renesas Electronics sales office. Also, please pay regular and careful attention to additional and different information to be disclosed by Renesas Electronics such as that disclosed through our website.
2. Renesas Electronics does not assume any liability for infringement of patents, copyrights, or other intellectual property rights of third parties by or arising from the use of Renesas Electronics products or technical information described in this document. No license, express, implied or otherwise, is granted hereby under any patents, copyrights or other intellectual property rights of Renesas Electronics or others.
3. You should not alter, modify, copy, or otherwise misappropriate any Renesas Electronics product, whether in whole or in part.
4. Descriptions of circuits, software and other related information in this document are provided only to illustrate the operation of semiconductor products and application examples. You are fully responsible for the incorporation of these circuits, software, and information in the design of your equipment. Renesas Electronics assumes no responsibility for any losses incurred by you or third parties arising from the use of these circuits, software, or information.
5. When exporting the products or technology described in this document, you should comply with the applicable export control laws and regulations and follow the procedures required by such laws and regulations. You should not use Renesas Electronics products or the technology described in this document for any purpose relating to military applications or use by the military, including but not limited to the development of weapons of mass destruction. Renesas Electronics products and technology may not be used for or incorporated into any products or systems whose manufacture, use, or sale is prohibited under any applicable domestic or foreign laws or regulations.
6. Renesas Electronics has used reasonable care in preparing the information included in this document, but Renesas Electronics does not warrant that such information is error free. Renesas Electronics assumes no liability whatsoever for any damages incurred by you resulting from errors in or omissions from the information included herein.
7. Renesas Electronics products are classified according to the following three quality grades: “Standard”, “High Quality”, and “Specific”. The recommended applications for each Renesas Electronics product depends on the product’s quality grade, as indicated below. You must check the quality grade of each Renesas Electronics product before using it in a particular application. You may not use any Renesas Electronics product for any application categorized as “Specific” without the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. Further, you may not use any Renesas Electronics product for any application for which it is not intended without the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. Renesas Electronics shall not be in any way liable for any damages or losses incurred by you or third parties arising from the use of any Renesas Electronics product for an application categorized as “Specific” or for which the product is not intended where you have failed to obtain the prior written consent of Renesas Electronics. The quality grade of each Renesas Electronics product is “Standard” unless otherwise expressly specified in a Renesas Electronics data sheets or data books, etc.
  - “Standard”: Computers; office equipment; communications equipment; test and measurement equipment; audio and visual equipment; home electronic appliances; machine tools; personal electronic equipment; and industrial robots.
  - “High Quality”: Transportation equipment (automobiles, trains, ships, etc.); traffic control systems; anti-disaster systems; anti-crime systems; safety equipment; and medical equipment not specifically designed for life support.
  - “Specific”: Aircraft; aerospace equipment; submersible repeaters; nuclear reactor control systems; medical equipment or systems for life support (e.g. artificial life support devices or systems), surgical implantations, or healthcare intervention (e.g. excision, etc.), and any other applications or purposes that pose a direct threat to human life.
8. You should use the Renesas Electronics products described in this document within the range specified by Renesas Electronics, especially with respect to the maximum rating, operating supply voltage range, movement power voltage range, heat radiation characteristics, installation and other product characteristics. Renesas Electronics shall have no liability for malfunctions or damages arising out of the use of Renesas Electronics products beyond such specified ranges.
9. Although Renesas Electronics endeavors to improve the quality and reliability of its products, semiconductor products have specific characteristics such as the occurrence of failure at a certain rate and malfunctions under certain use conditions. Further, Renesas Electronics products are not subject to radiation resistance design. Please be sure to implement safety measures to guard them against the possibility of physical injury, and injury or damage caused by fire in the event of the failure of a Renesas Electronics product, such as safety design for hardware and software including but not limited to redundancy, fire control and malfunction prevention, appropriate treatment for aging degradation or any other appropriate measures. Because the evaluation of microcomputer software alone is very difficult, please evaluate the safety of the final products or system manufactured by you.
10. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office for details as to environmental matters such as the environmental compatibility of each Renesas Electronics product. Please use Renesas Electronics products in compliance with all applicable laws and regulations that regulate the inclusion or use of controlled substances, including without limitation, the EU RoHS Directive. Renesas Electronics assumes no liability for damages or losses occurring as a result of your noncompliance with applicable laws and regulations.
11. This document may not be reproduced or duplicated, in any form, in whole or in part, without prior written consent of Renesas Electronics.
12. Please contact a Renesas Electronics sales office if you have any questions regarding the information contained in this document or Renesas Electronics products, or if you have any other inquiries.

(Note 1) “Renesas Electronics” as used in this document means Renesas Electronics Corporation and also includes its majority-owned subsidiaries.

(Note 2) “Renesas Electronics product(s)” means any product developed or manufactured by or for Renesas Electronics.

# 7641 Group

User's Manual

RENESAS 8-BIT SINGLE-CHIP  
MICROCOMPUTER  
740 FAMILY / 7600 SERIES

All information contained in these materials, including products and product specifications, represents information on the product at the time of publication and is subject to change by Renesas Electronics Corp. without notice. Please review the latest information published by Renesas Electronics Corp. through various means, including the Renesas Electronics Corp. website (<http://www.renesas.com>).

## Keep safety first in your circuit designs!

1. Renesas Technology Corp. puts the maximum effort into making semiconductor products better and more reliable, but there is always the possibility that trouble may occur with them. Trouble with semiconductors may lead to personal injury, fire or property damage. Remember to give due consideration to safety when making your circuit designs, with appropriate measures such as (i) placement of substitutive, auxiliary circuits, (ii) use of non-flammable material or (iii) prevention against any malfunction or mishap.

## Notes regarding these materials

1. These materials are intended as a reference to assist our customers in the selection of the Renesas Technology Corp. product best suited to the customer's application; they do not convey any license under any intellectual property rights, or any other rights, belonging to Renesas Technology Corp. or a third party.
2. Renesas Technology Corp. assumes no responsibility for any damage, or infringement of any third-party's rights, originating in the use of any product data, diagrams, charts, programs, algorithms, or circuit application examples contained in these materials.
3. All information contained in these materials, including product data, diagrams, charts, programs and algorithms represents information on products at the time of publication of these materials, and are subject to change by Renesas Technology Corp. without notice due to product improvements or other reasons. It is therefore recommended that customers contact Renesas Technology Corp. or an authorized Renesas Technology Corp. product distributor for the latest product information before purchasing a product listed herein. The information described here may contain technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Renesas Technology Corp. assumes no responsibility for any damage, liability, or other loss rising from these inaccuracies or errors. Please also pay attention to information published by Renesas Technology Corp. by various means, including the Renesas Technology Corp. Semiconductor home page (<http://www.renesas.com>).
4. When using any or all of the information contained in these materials, including product data, diagrams, charts, programs, and algorithms, please be sure to evaluate all information as a total system before making a final decision on the applicability of the information and products. Renesas Technology Corp. assumes no responsibility for any damage, liability or other loss resulting from the information contained herein.
5. Renesas Technology Corp. semiconductors are not designed or manufactured for use in a device or system that is used under circumstances in which human life is potentially at stake. Please contact Renesas Technology Corp. or an authorized Renesas Technology Corp. product distributor when considering the use of a product contained herein for any specific purposes, such as apparatus or systems for transportation, vehicular, medical, aerospace, nuclear, or undersea repeater use.
6. The prior written approval of Renesas Technology Corp. is necessary to reprint or reproduce in whole or in part these materials.
7. If these products or technologies are subject to the Japanese export control restrictions, they must be exported under a license from the Japanese government and cannot be imported into a country other than the approved destination. Any diversion or reexport contrary to the export control laws and regulations of Japan and/or the country of destination is prohibited.
8. Please contact Renesas Technology Corp. for further details on these materials or the products contained therein.

## General Precautions in the Handling of MPU/MCU Products

The following usage notes are applicable to all MPU/MCU products from Renesas. For detailed usage notes on the products covered by this manual, refer to the relevant sections of the manual. If the descriptions under General Precautions in the Handling of MPU/MCU Products and in the body of the manual differ from each other, the description in the body of the manual takes precedence.

### 1. Handling of Unused Pins

Handle unused pins in accord with the directions given under Handling of Unused Pins in the manual.

- The input pins of CMOS products are generally in the high-impedance state. In operation with an unused pin in the open-circuit state, extra electromagnetic noise is induced in the vicinity of LSI, an associated shoot-through current flows internally, and malfunctions occur due to the false recognition of the pin state as an input signal become possible. Unused pins should be handled as described under Handling of Unused Pins in the manual.

### 2. Processing at Power-on

The state of the product is undefined at the moment when power is supplied.

- The states of internal circuits in the LSI are indeterminate and the states of register settings and pins are undefined at the moment when power is supplied.

In a finished product where the reset signal is applied to the external reset pin, the states of pins are not guaranteed from the moment when power is supplied until the reset process is completed.

In a similar way, the states of pins in a product that is reset by an on-chip power-on reset function are not guaranteed from the moment when power is supplied until the power reaches the level at which resetting has been specified.

### 3. Prohibition of Access to Reserved Addresses

Access to reserved addresses is prohibited.

- The reserved addresses are provided for the possible future expansion of functions. Do not access these addresses; the correct operation of LSI is not guaranteed if they are accessed.

### 4. Clock Signals

After applying a reset, only release the reset line after the operating clock signal has become stable.

When switching the clock signal during program execution, wait until the target clock signal has stabilized.

- When the clock signal is generated with an external resonator (or from an external oscillator) during a reset, ensure that the reset line is only released after full stabilization of the clock signal. Moreover, when switching to a clock signal produced with an external resonator (or by an external oscillator) while program execution is in progress, wait until the target clock signal is stable.

### 5. Differences between Products

Before changing from one product to another, i.e. to one with a different type number, confirm that the change will not lead to problems.

- The characteristics of MPU/MCU in the same group but having different type numbers may differ because of the differences in internal memory capacity and layout pattern. When changing to products of different type numbers, implement a system-evaluation test for each of the products.

# **BEFORE USING THIS MANUAL**

This user’s manual consists of the following three chapters. Refer to the chapter appropriate to your conditions, such as hardware design or software development. Chapter 3 also includes necessary information for systems development. You must refer to that chapter.

## **1. Organization**

### **● CHAPTER 1 HARDWARE**

This chapter describes features of the microcomputer and operation of each peripheral function.

### **● CHAPTER 2 APPLICATION**

This chapter describes usage and application examples of peripheral functions, based mainly on setting examples of relevant registers.

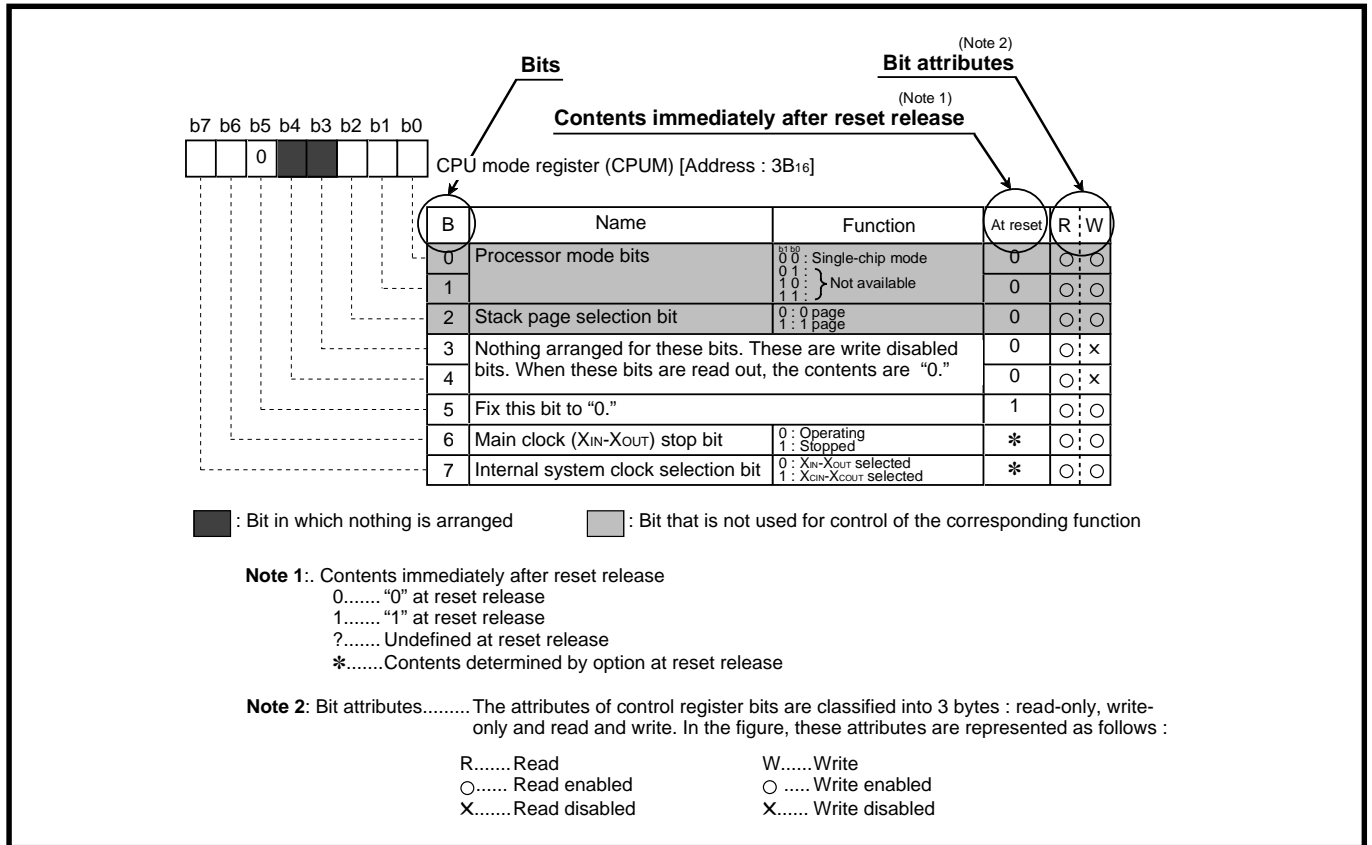
### **● CHAPTER 3 APPENDIX**

This chapter includes necessary information for systems development using the microcomputer, such as the electrical characteristics, the notes, and the list of registers.

\*For the mask ROM confirmation form, the ROM programming confirmation form, and the mark specifications, refer to the “Renesas Technology” Homepage (<http://www.renesas.com/en/rom>).

## **2. Structure of register**

The figure of each register structure describes its functions, contents at reset, and attributes as follows :



## **3. Supplementation**

For details of development support tools, refer to the “Renesas Technology” Homepage (<http://www.renesas.com>).

# Table of contents

## CHAPTER 1 HARDWARE

<b>DESCRIPTION</b> .....	<b>2</b>
<b>FEATURES</b> .....	<b>2</b>
<b>APPLICATION</b> .....	<b>2</b>
<b>PIN CONFIGURATION</b> .....	<b>3</b>
<b>FUNCTIONAL BLOCK</b> .....	<b>4</b>
<b>PIN DESCRIPTION</b> .....	<b>5</b>
<b>PART NUMBERING</b> .....	<b>7</b>
<b>GROUP EXPANSION</b> .....	<b>8</b>
Memory Type .....	8
Memory Size .....	8
Packages .....	8
<b>FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION</b> .....	<b>9</b>
Central Processing Unit (CPU) .....	9
Memory .....	13
I/O Ports .....	15
Interrupts .....	21
Timers .....	25
Serial I/O .....	29
UART1, UART2 .....	33
DMAC .....	39
USB Function .....	44
Master CPU Bus Interface .....	60
Count Source Generator .....	65
Frequency Synthesizer .....	67
Reset Circuit .....	69
Clock Generating Circuit .....	71
Processor Mode .....	75
<b>FLASH MEMORY MODE</b> .....	<b>81</b>
<b>NOTES ON PROGRAMMING</b> .....	<b>108</b>
<b>USAGE NOTES</b> .....	<b>111</b>
<b>DATA REQUIRED FOR MASK ORDERS</b> .....	<b>112</b>
<b>FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION SUPPLEMENT</b> .....	<b>113</b>

## CHAPTER 2 APPLICATION

<b>2.1 I/O port</b> .....	<b>2</b>
2.1.1 Memory map .....	2
2.1.2 Related registers .....	3
2.1.3 Key-on wake-up interrupt application example .....	7
2.1.4 Terminate unused pins .....	9
2.1.5 Notes on I/O port .....	10
2.1.6 Termination of unused pins .....	11
<b>2.2 Timer</b> .....	<b>12</b>
2.2.1 Memory map .....	12
2.2.2 Related registers .....	13
2.2.3 Timer application examples .....	20
2.2.4 Notes on timer .....	37

<b>2.3 Serial I/O</b> .....	<b>38</b>
2.3.1 Memory map .....	38
2.3.2 Related registers .....	39
2.3.3 Serial I/O connection examples .....	42
2.3.4 Serial I/O application examples .....	44
2.3.5 Notes on serial I/O .....	51
<b>2.4 UART</b> .....	<b>52</b>
2.4.1 Memory map .....	52
2.4.2 Related registers .....	53
2.4.3 UART transfer data format .....	60
2.4.4 Transfer bit rate .....	<b>61</b>
2.4.5 Operation of transmitting and receiving .....	64
2.4.6 UART application example .....	66
2.4.7 Notes on UART .....	77
<b>2.5 DMAC</b> .....	<b>79</b>
2.5.1 Memory map .....	79
2.5.2 Related registers .....	80
2.5.3 DMAC operation description .....	88
2.5.4 DMAC arbitration .....	92
2.5.5 Transfer time .....	92
2.5.6 DMAC application example .....	95
2.5.7 Notes on DMAC .....	99
<b>2.6 USB</b> .....	<b>100</b>
<b>2.7 Frequency synthesizer</b> .....	<b>101</b>
2.7.1 Memory map .....	101
2.7.2 Related registers .....	102
2.7.3 Functional description .....	105
2.7.4 Notes on frequency synthesizer .....	107
<b>2.8 Master CPU bus interface</b> .....	<b>108</b>
2.8.1 Memory map .....	108
2.8.2 Related registers .....	109
2.8.3 Functional description .....	111
2.8.4 Operation description .....	113
2.8.5 Master CPU bus interface application example .....	114
2.8.6 Notes on master CPU bus interface .....	115
<b>2.9 Special count source generator (SCSG)</b> .....	<b>116</b>
2.9.1 Memory map .....	116
2.9.2 Related registers .....	117
2.9.3 Functional description .....	119
<b>2.10 External devices connection</b> .....	<b>120</b>
2.10.1 Memory map .....	120
2.10.2 Related registers .....	121
2.10.3 Functional description .....	122
2.10.4 Slow memory wait .....	123
2.10.5 HOLD function .....	126
2.10.6 Expanded data memory access .....	127
2.10.7 External devices connection example .....	128
2.10.8 Notes on external devices connection .....	132
<b>2.11 Reset</b> .....	<b>134</b>
2.11.1 Connection example of reset IC .....	134
2.11.2 Notes on reset .....	134



<b>2.12 Clock generating circuit</b> .....	<b>135</b>
2.12.1 Memory map .....	135
2.12.2 Related registers .....	136
2.12.3 Stop mode .....	139
2.12.4 Wait mode .....	140
2.12.5 Clock generating circuit application examples .....	141

## CHAPTER 3 APPENDIX

<b>3.1 Electrical characteristics</b> .....	<b>2</b>
3.1.1 Absolute maximum ratings .....	2
3.1.2 Recommended operating conditions (In Vcc = 5 V) .....	3
3.1.3 Electrical characteristics (In Vcc = 5 V) .....	4
3.1.4 Recommended Operating Conditions (In Vcc = 3 V) .....	10
3.1.5 Electrical Characteristics (In Vcc = 3 V) .....	11
<b>3.2 Standard characteristics</b> .....	<b>23</b>
3.2.1 Power source current standard characteristics .....	23
3.2.2 Port standard characteristics .....	24
<b>3.3 Notes on use</b> .....	<b>27</b>
3.3.1 Notes on interrupts .....	27
3.3.2 Notes on serial I/O .....	28
3.3.3 Notes on UART .....	29
3.3.4 Notes on DMAC .....	31
3.3.5 Notes on USB .....	32
3.3.6 Notes on frequency synthesizer .....	36
3.3.7 Notes on master CPU bus interface .....	36
3.3.8 Notes on external devices connection .....	36
3.3.9 Notes on timer .....	38
3.3.10 Notes on Stop mode .....	39
3.3.11 Notes on reset .....	39
3.3.12 Notes on I/O port .....	39
3.3.13 Notes on programming .....	40
3.3.14 Termination of unused pins .....	42
3.3.15 Notes on CPU rewrite mode for flash memory version .....	43
<b>3.4 Countermeasures against noise</b> .....	<b>44</b>
3.4.1 Shortest wiring length .....	44
3.4.2 Connection of bypass capacitor across Vss line and Vcc line .....	45
3.4.3 Oscillator concerns .....	46
3.4.4 Setup for I/O ports .....	47
3.4.5 Providing of watchdog timer function by software .....	48
<b>3.5 Control registers</b> .....	<b>49</b>
<b>3.6 Package outline</b> .....	<b>92</b>
<b>3.7 Machine instructions</b> .....	<b>94</b>
<b>3.8 List of instruction code</b> .....	<b>105</b>
<b>3.9 SFR memory map</b> .....	<b>106</b>
<b>3.10 Pin configuration</b> .....	<b>107</b>

# List of figures

## CHAPTER 1 HARDWARE

Fig. 1 M37641M8-XXXFP, M37641F8FP pin configuration .....	3
Fig. 2 M37641M8-XXXHP, M37641F8HP pin configuration .....	3
Fig. 3 Functional block diagram .....	4
Fig. 4 Part numbering.....	7
Fig. 5 Memory expansion plan .....	8
Fig. 6 7600 series CPU register structure .....	9
Fig. 7 Register push and pop at interrupt generation and subroutine call .....	10
Fig. 8 Structure of CPU mode register .....	12
Fig. 9 Memory map diagram .....	13
Fig. 10 Memory map of special function register (SFR) .....	14
Fig. 11 Structure of port control and port P2 pull-up control registers.....	15
Fig. 12 Port block diagram (1) .....	17
Fig. 13 Port block diagram (2) .....	18
Fig. 14 Port block diagram (3) .....	19
Fig. 15 Port block diagram (4) .....	20
Fig. 16 Interrupt control .....	21
Fig. 17 Structure of interrupt-related registers.....	23
Fig. 18 Connection example when using key input interrupt and port P2 block diagram ...	24
Fig. 19 Timer block diagramn .....	25
Fig. 20 Structure of timer X mode register .....	26
Fig. 21 Structure of timer Y mode register .....	27
Fig. 22 Structure of timer 123 mode register .....	28
Fig. 23 Structure of serial I/O control registers 1, 2 .....	29
Fig. 24 Block diagram of serial I/O .....	30
Fig. 25 Serial I/O timing.....	31
Fig. 26 UARTx (x = 1, 2) block diagram.....	33
Fig. 27 UARTx transmit timing (CTS function enabled) .....	34
Fig. 28 UARTx transmit timing (CTS function disabled) .....	35
Fig. 29 UARTx transmit timing ( $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ function enabled) .....	35
Fig. 30 Structure of UART related registers .....	38
Fig. 31 DMACx (x = 0, 1) block diagram.....	39
Fig. 32 Structure of DMACx related register.....	40
Fig. 33 Timing chart for cycle steal transfer caused by hardware-related transfer request .....	42
Fig. 34 Timing chart for cycle steal transfer caused by software trigger transfer request ..	42
Fig. 35 Timing chart for burst transfer caused by hardware-related transfer request .....	43
Fig. 36 USB FCU (USB Function Control Unit) block .....	44
Fig. 37 Structure of USB control register .....	48
Fig. 38 Structure of USB address register .....	49
Fig. 39 Structure of USB power management register .....	49
Fig. 40 Structure of USB interrupt status register 1 .....	50
Fig. 41 Structure of USB interrupt status register 2 .....	51
Fig. 42 Structure of USB interrupt enable register 1 .....	52
Fig. 43 Structure of USB interrupt enable register 2 .....	52
Fig. 44 Structure of USB frame number registers .....	53

Fig. 45 Structure of USB frame number registers .....	53
Fig. 46 Structure of USB endpoint 0 IN control register.....	54
Fig. 47 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 1 to 4) IN control register.....	55
Fig. 48 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 1 to 4) OUT control register.....	56
Fig. 49 Structure of USB endpoint x IN max. packet size register.....	57
Fig. 50 Structure of USB endpoint x OUT max. packet size register.....	57
Fig. 51 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) OUT write count registers .....	58
Fig. 52 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) FIFO register .....	58
Fig. 53 Structure of USB endpoint FIFO mode register.....	59
Fig. 54 Interrupt request circuit of data bus buffer.....	60
Fig. 55 Structure of master CPU bus interface related registers .....	61
Fig. 56 Master CPU bus interface block diagram .....	62
Fig. 57 Special count source generator block diagram .....	65
Fig. 58 Structure of special count source generator mode register .....	66
Fig. 59 Frequency synthesizer block diagram .....	67
Fig. 60 Structure of frequency synthesizer control register .....	68
Fig. 61 Reset circuit example .....	69
Fig. 62 Reset sequence .....	69
Fig. 63 Internal status at reset .....	70
Fig. 64 Ceramic resonator or quartz-crystal oscillator external circuit.....	71
Fig. 65 External clock input circuit .....	71
Fig. 66 Structure of clock control register .....	72
Fig. 67 Clock generating circuit block diagram .....	73
Fig. 68 State transitions of clock.....	74
Fig. 69 Memory maps in processor modes other than single-chip mode.....	75
Fig. 70 Structure of CPU mode register A.....	76
Fig. 71 Structure of CPU mode register B.....	76
Fig. 72 Software wait timing diagram .....	77
Fig. 73 RDY wait timing diagram.....	77
Fig. 74 Extended RDY wait (software wait plus RDY input anytime wait) timing diagram..	78
Fig. 75 Hold function timing diagram .....	79
Fig. 76 STA (\$ zz), Y instruction sequence when EDMA enabled.....	80
Fig. 77 LDA (\$ zz), Y instruction sequence when EDMA enabled and T flag = "0" .....	80
Fig. 78 LDA (\$ zz), Y instruction sequence when EDMA enabled and T flag = "1" .....	80
Fig. 79 Block diagram of built-in flash memory.....	82
Fig. 80 Structure of flash memory control register .....	83
Fig. 81 CPU rewrite mode set/release flowchart.....	84
Fig. 82 Program flowchart.....	86
Fig. 83 Erase flowchart .....	87
Fig. 84 Full status check flowchart and remedial procedure for errors .....	89
Fig. 85 Structure of ROM code protect control .....	90
Fig. 86 ID code store addresses .....	91
Fig. 87 Pin connection diagram in standard serial I/O mode (1) .....	95
Fig. 88 Pin connection diagram in standard serial I/O mode (2) .....	96
Fig. 89 Timing for page read .....	98
Fig. 90 Timing for reading status register .....	98
Fig. 91 Timing for clear status register .....	99
Fig. 92 Timing for page program.....	99
Fig. 93 Timing for block erasing.....	100
Fig. 94 Timing for erase all blocks .....	100
Fig. 95 Timing for download.....	101
Fig. 96 Timing for version information output.....	102

Fig. 97 Timing for Boot ROM area output .....	102
Fig. 98 Timing for ID check.....	103
Fig. 99 ID code storage addresses .....	103
Fig. 100 Full status check flowchart and remedial procedure for errors .....	106
Fig. 101 Example circuit application for standard serial I/O mode.....	107
Fig. 102 Passive components near LPF pin .....	111
Fig. 103 Peripheral circuit.....	111
Fig. 104 Timing chart after interrupt occurs.....	113
Fig. 105 Time up to execution of interrupt processing routine .....	113

## CHAPTER 2 APPLICATION

Fig. 2.1.1 Memory map of registers related to I/O port .....	2
Fig. 2.1.2 Structure of Port Pi register .....	3
Fig. 2.1.3 Structure of Port P4, Port P7 registers .....	3
Fig. 2.1.4 Structure of Port Pi direction register (i = 0, 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 8) .....	4
Fig. 2.1.5 Structure of Port P4 direction, Port P7 direction registers .....	4
Fig. 2.1.6 Structure of Port control register .....	5
Fig. 2.1.7 Structure of Port P2 pull-up control register .....	5
Fig. 2.1.8 Structure of Interrupt request register C .....	6
Fig. 2.1.9 Structure of Interrupt control register C.....	6
Fig. 2.1.10 Registers setting.....	7
Fig. 2.1.11 Connection diagram .....	8
Fig. 2.1.12 Control procedure.....	8
Fig. 2.2.1 Memory map of registers relevant to timers .....	12
Fig. 2.2.2 Structure of Timer i (i=1, 2, 3).....	13
Fig. 2.2.3 Structure of Timer 123 mode register.....	13
Fig. 2.2.4 Structure of Timer X (low-order, high-order).....	14
Fig. 2.2.5 Structure of Timer X mode register.....	15
Fig. 2.2.6 Structure of Timer Y (low-order, high-order).....	16
Fig. 2.2.7 Structure of Timer Y mode register.....	17
Fig. 2.2.8 Structure of Interrupt request register B.....	18
Fig. 2.2.9 Structure of Interrupt request register C .....	18
Fig. 2.2.10 Structure of Interrupt control register B.....	19
Fig. 2.2.11 Structure of Interrupt control register C.....	19
Fig. 2.2.12 Timers connection and setting of division ratios .....	21
Fig. 2.2.13 Related registers setting .....	22
Fig. 2.2.14 Control procedure.....	23
Fig. 2.2.15 Peripheral circuit example.....	24
Fig. 2.2.16 Timers connection and setting of division ratios .....	24
Fig. 2.2.17 Relevant registers setting .....	25
Fig. 2.2.18 Control procedure.....	26
Fig. 2.2.19 How to measure frequency.....	27
Fig. 2.2.20 Related registers setting .....	28
Fig. 2.2.21 Control procedure.....	29
Fig. 2.2.22 Timers connection and setting of division ratios .....	30
Fig. 2.2.23 Relevant registers setting .....	31
Fig. 2.2.24 Control procedure (1) .....	32
Fig. 2.2.25 Control procedure (2) .....	33
Fig. 2.2.26 Circuit example .....	34
Fig. 2.2.27 Related registers setting .....	35
Fig. 2.2.28 Control procedure.....	36

Fig. 2.3.1 Memory map of registers related to serial I/O .....	38
Fig. 2.3.2 Structure of Serial I/O shift register .....	39
Fig. 2.3.3 Structure of Serial I/O control register 1 .....	39
Fig. 2.3.4 Structure of Serial I/O control register 2 .....	40
Fig. 2.3.5 Structure of Interrupt request register C .....	41
Fig. 2.3.6 Structure of Interrupt control register C .....	41
Fig. 2.3.7 Serial I/O connection examples (1) .....	42
Fig. 2.3.8 Serial I/O connection examples (2) .....	43
Fig. 2.3.9 Connection diagram .....	44
Fig. 2.3.10 Timing chart .....	44
Fig. 2.3.11 Registers setting for transmitter .....	45
Fig. 2.3.12 Setting of serial I/O transmission data .....	45
Fig. 2.3.13 Control procedure of transmitter .....	46
Fig. 2.3.14 Connection diagram .....	47
Fig. 2.3.15 Registers setting for SPI compatible mode .....	48
Fig. 2.3.16 Control procedure of SPI compatible mode in slave .....	49
Fig. 2.3.17 Control procedure of SPI compatible mode in master .....	50
Fig. 2.4.1 Memory map of registers related to UART .....	52
Fig. 2.4.2 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) mode register .....	53
Fig. 2.4.3 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) control register .....	54
Fig. 2.4.4 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) status register .....	55
Fig. 2.4.5 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) RTS control register .....	55
Fig. 2.4.6 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) baud rate generator .....	56
Fig. 2.4.7 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) transmit/receive buffer registers 1, 2 .....	57
Fig. 2.4.8 Structure of Interrupt request register A .....	58
Fig. 2.4.9 Structure of Interrupt request register B .....	58
Fig. 2.4.10 Structure of Interrupt control register A .....	59
Fig. 2.4.11 Structure of Interrupt control register B .....	59
Fig. 2.4.12 UART transfer data format .....	60
Fig. 2.4.13 Connection diagram .....	66
Fig. 2.4.14 Timing chart .....	66
Fig. 2.4.15 Registers setting for transmitter .....	67
Fig. 2.4.16 Registers setting for receiver (1) .....	68
Fig. 2.4.17 Registers setting for receiver (2) .....	69
Fig. 2.4.18 Control procedure of transmitter .....	70
Fig. 2.4.19 Control procedure of receiver .....	71
Fig. 2.4.20 Connection diagram .....	73
Fig. 2.4.21 Registers setting related to UART address mode .....	74
Fig. 2.4.22 Control procedure (1) .....	75
Fig. 2.4.22 Control procedure (2) .....	76
Fig. 2.5.1 Memory map of registers related to DMAC .....	79
Fig. 2.5.2 Structure of DMAC index and status register .....	80
Fig. 2.5.3 Structure of DMAC channel x (x = 0, 1) mode register 1 .....	81
Fig. 2.5.4 Structure of DMAC channel 0 mode register 2 .....	83
Fig. 2.5.5 Structure of DMAC channel 1 mode register 2 .....	84
Fig. 2.5.6 Structure of DMAC channel x source registers Low, High .....	85
Fig. 2.5.7 Structure of DMAC channel x destination registers Low, High .....	85
Fig. 2.5.8 Structure of DMAC channel x transfer count registers Low, High .....	86
Fig. 2.5.9 Structure of Interrupt request register A .....	87
Fig. 2.5.10 Structure of Interrupt control register A .....	87
Fig. 2.5.11 Transfer mode overview .....	88
Fig. 2.5.12 Basic operation of registers transferring .....	89

Fig. 2.5.13 Timing chart for cycle steal transfer caused by hardware-related transfer request .....	93
Fig. 2.5.14 Timing chart for cycle steal transfer caused by software trigger transfer request .....	93
Fig. 2.5.15 Timing chart for burst transfer caused by hardware-related transfer request....	94
Fig. 2.5.16 Setting of relevant registers (1) .....	96
Fig. 2.5.17 Setting of relevant registers (2) .....	97
Fig. 2.5.18 Control procedure.....	98
Fig. 2.7.1 Memory map of registers related to frequency synthesizer .....	101
Fig. 2.7.2 Structure of CPU mode register A .....	102
Fig. 2.7.3 Structure of Frequency synthesizer control register .....	102
Fig. 2.7.4 Structure of Frequency synthesizer multiply register 1 .....	103
Fig. 2.7.5 Structure of Frequency synthesizer multiply register 2 .....	103
Fig. 2.7.6 Structure of Frequency synthesizer divide register .....	104
Fig. 2.7.7 Block diagram for frequency synthesizer circuit .....	105
Fig. 2.7.8 Frequency synthesizer multiply register 2 setting example .....	105
Fig. 2.7.9 Frequency synthesizer multiply register 1 setting example .....	106
Fig. 2.7.10 Frequency synthesizer divide register setting example .....	106
Fig. 2.8.1 Memory map of registers related to master CPU bus interface .....	108
Fig. 2.8.2 Structure of Data bus buffer register x (x = 0, 1) .....	109
Fig. 2.8.3 Structure of Data bus buffer status register x (x = 0, 1).....	109
Fig. 2.8.4 Structure of Data bus buffer control register 0 .....	110
Fig. 2.8.5 Structure of Data bus buffer control register 1 .....	110
Fig. 2.8.6 Connection example.....	112
Fig. 2.8.7 Setting of relevant registers .....	114
Fig. 2.8.8 Control procedure.....	115
Fig. 2.9.1 Memory map of registers related to special count source generator.....	116
Fig. 2.9.2 Structure of Special count source generator 1 .....	117
Fig. 2.9.3 Structure of Special count source generator 2.....	117
Fig. 2.9.4 Structure of Special count source mode register .....	118
Fig. 2.10.1 Memory map of registers related to external devices connection .....	120
Fig. 2.10.2 Structure of CPU mode register A .....	121
Fig. 2.10.3 Structure of CPU mode register B .....	121
Fig. 2.10.4 Software wait timing example .....	123
Fig. 2.10.5 RDY wait timing example.....	124
Fig. 2.10.6 Extended RDY wait (software wait plus RDY input anytime wait) timing example .....	125
Fig. 2.10.7 Hold function timing diagram .....	126
Fig. 2.10.8 Connection example of memory access up to 256 Kbytes .....	127
Fig. 2.10.9 External ROM and RAM example.....	128
Fig. 2.10.10 RDY function use example .....	129
Fig. 2.10.11 Read cycle (OE access, SRAM).....	130
Fig. 2.10.12 Read cycle (OE access, EPROM).....	130
Fig. 2.10.13 Write cycle (W control, SRAM) .....	131
Fig. 2.11.1 RAM backup system .....	134
Fig. 2.12.1 Memory map of registers related to clock generating circuit .....	135
Fig. 2.12.2 Structure of CPU mode register A .....	136
Fig. 2.12.3 Structure of Clock control register.....	136
Fig. 2.12.4 Structure of Frequency synthesizer control register .....	137
Fig. 2.12.5 Structure of Frequency synthesizer multiply register 1 .....	137
Fig. 2.12.6 Structure of Frequency synthesizer multiply register 2 .....	138
Fig. 2.12.7 Structure of Frequency synthesizer divide register .....	138



Fig. 2.12.8 Connection diagram .....	141
Fig. 2.12.9 Status transition diagram during power failure .....	141
Fig. 2.12.10 Setting of relevant registers .....	142
Fig. 2.12.11 Control procedure .....	143
Fig. 2.12.12 Structure of clock counter.....	144
Fig. 2.12.13 Initial setting of relevant registers .....	145
Fig. 2.12.14 Setting of relevant registers after detecting power failure .....	146
Fig. 2.12.15 Control procedure (1) .....	147
Fig. 2.12.16 Control procedure (2) .....	148

## CHAPTER 3 APPENDIX

Fig. 3.1.1 Circuit for measuring output switching characteristics (1) .....	16
Fig. 3.1.2 Circuit for measuring output switching characteristics (2) .....	16
Fig. 3.1.3 Timing diagram (1).....	17
Fig. 3.1.4 Timing diagram (2).....	18
Fig. 3.1.5 Timing diagram (3).....	18
Fig. 3.1.6 Timing diagram (4).....	19
Fig. 3.1.7 Timing diagram (5).....	20
Fig. 3.1.8 Timing diagram (6); Memory expansion and microprocessor modes .....	21
Fig. 3.1.9 Timing diagram (7); Memory expansion and microprocessor modes .....	22
Fig. 3.2.1 Power source current standard characteristics (Ta = 25 °C) .....	23
Fig. 3.2.2 CMOS output port P-channel side characteristics (Ta = 25 °C) .....	24
Fig. 3.2.3 CMOS output port P-channel side characteristics (Ta = 70 °C).....	24
Fig. 3.2.4 CMOS output port N-channel side characteristics (Ta = 25 °C) .....	25
Fig. 3.2.5 CMOS output port N-channel side characteristics (Ta = 70 °C) .....	25
Fig. 3.2.6 Port P2 <sub>0</sub> –P2 <sub>7</sub> at pull-up characteristics (Ta = 25 °C) .....	26
Fig. 3.2.7 Port P2 <sub>0</sub> –P2 <sub>7</sub> at pull-up characteristics (Ta = 70 °C) .....	26
Fig. 3.3.1 Sequence of setting external interrupt active edge .....	27
Fig. 3.3.2 Circuit example for the proper positions of the peripheral components .....	33
Fig. 3.3.3 Passive components near LPF pin .....	33
Fig. 3.3.4 Insulation connector connection .....	33
Fig. 3.3.5 Initialization of processor status register .....	40
Fig. 3.3.6 Sequence of PLP instruction execution .....	41
Fig. 3.3.7 Stack memory contents after PHP instruction execution .....	41
Fig. 3.4.1 Wiring for the $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin .....	44
Fig. 3.4.2 Wiring for clock I/O pins .....	44
Fig. 3.4.3 Bypass capacitor across the Vss line and the Vcc line.....	45
Fig. 3.4.4 Wiring for a large current signal line .....	46
Fig. 3.4.5 Wiring for signal lines where potential levels change frequently .....	46
Fig. 3.4.6 VSS pattern on the underside of an oscillator .....	47
Fig. 3.4.7 Setup for I/O ports .....	47
Fig. 3.4.8 Watchdog timer by software .....	48
Fig. 3.5.1 Structure of CPU mode register A .....	49
Fig. 3.5.2 Structure of CPU mode register B .....	49
Fig. 3.5.3 Structure of Interrupt request register A.....	50
Fig. 3.5.4 Structure of Interrupt request register B.....	50
Fig. 3.5.5 Structure of Interrupt request register C .....	51
Fig. 3.5.6 Structure of Interrupt control register A .....	51
Fig. 3.5.7 Structure of Interrupt control register B .....	52
Fig. 3.5.8 Structure of Interrupt control register C.....	52
Fig. 3.5.9 Structure of Port Pi.....	53

Fig. 3.5.10 Structure of Port P4, Port P7 .....	53
Fig. 3.5.11 Structure of Port Pi direction register .....	54
Fig. 3.5.12 Structure of Port P4, Port P7 direction registers .....	54
Fig. 3.5.13 Structure of Port control register .....	55
Fig. 3.5.14 Structure of Interrupt polarity select register .....	55
Fig. 3.5.15 Structure of Port P2 pull-up control register .....	56
Fig. 3.5.16 Structure of USB control register .....	56
Fig. 3.5.17 Structure of Clock control register .....	57
Fig. 3.5.18 Structure of Timer X .....	57
Fig. 3.5.19 Structure of Timer Y .....	58
Fig. 3.5.20 Structure of Timer i .....	58
Fig. 3.5.21 Structure of Timer X mode register .....	59
Fig. 3.5.22 Structure of Timer Y mode register .....	60
Fig. 3.5.23 Structure of Timer 123 mode register .....	61
Fig. 3.5.24 Structure of Serial I/O shift register .....	61
Fig. 3.5.25 Structure of Serial I/O control register 1 .....	62
Fig. 3.5.26 Structure of Serial I/O control register 2 .....	62
Fig. 3.5.27 Structure of Special count source generator 1 .....	63
Fig. 3.5.28 Structure of Special count source generator 2 .....	63
Fig. 3.5.29 Structure of Special count source mode register .....	64
Fig. 3.5.30 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) mode register .....	64
Fig. 3.5.31 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) baud rate generator .....	65
Fig. 3.5.32 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) status register .....	65
Fig. 3.5.33 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) control register .....	66
Fig. 3.5.34 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) transmit/receive buffer registers 1, 2 .....	67
Fig. 3.5.35 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) RTS control register .....	68
Fig. 3.5.36 Structure of DMAC index and status register .....	69
Fig. 3.5.37 Structure of DMAC channel x (x = 0, 1) mode register 1 .....	70
Fig. 3.5.38 Structure of DMAC channel 0 mode register 2 .....	71
Fig. 3.5.39 Structure of DMAC channel 1 mode register 2 .....	72
Fig. 3.5.40 Structure of DMAC channel x (x = 0, 1) source registers Low, High .....	73
Fig. 3.5.41 Structure of DMAC channel x (x = 0, 1) destination registers Low, High .....	73
Fig. 3.5.42 Structure of DMAC channel x (x = 0, 1) transfer count registers Low, High .....	74
Fig. 3.5.43 Structure of Data bus buffer register x (x = 0, 1) .....	75
Fig. 3.5.44 Structure of Data bus buffer status register x (x = 0, 1) .....	75
Fig. 3.5.45 Structure of Data bus buffer control register 0 .....	76
Fig. 3.5.46 Structure of Data bus buffer control register 1 .....	76
Fig. 3.5.47 Structure of USB address register .....	77
Fig. 3.5.48 Structure of USB power management register .....	77
Fig. 3.5.49 Structure of USB interrupt status register 1 .....	78
Fig. 3.5.50 Structure of USB interrupt status register 2 .....	79
Fig. 3.5.51 Structure of USB interrupt enable register 1 .....	80
Fig. 3.5.52 Structure of USB interrupt enable register 2 .....	80
Fig. 3.5.53 Structure of USB frame number registers Low, High .....	81
Fig. 3.5.54 Structure of USB endpoint index register .....	82
Fig. 3.5.55 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) IN control register .....	83
Fig. 3.5.56 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 1 to 4) OUT control register .....	84
Fig. 3.5.57 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) IN max. packet size register .....	84
Fig. 3.5.58 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) OUT max. packet size register .....	85
Fig. 3.5.59 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) OUT write count registers Low, High .....	86



Fig. 3.5.60 Structure of USB endpoint FIFO mode register .....	87
Fig. 3.5.61 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) FIFO register.....	87
Fig. 3.5.62 Structure of Flash memory control register.....	88
Fig. 3.5.63 Structure of Frequency synthesizer control register .....	89
Fig. 3.5.64 Structure of Frequency synthesizer multiply register 1 .....	89
Fig. 3.5.65 Structure of Frequency synthesizer multiply register 2 .....	90
Fig. 3.5.66 Structure of Frequency synthesizer divide register .....	90
Fig. 3.5.67 Structure of ROM code protect control register .....	91

# List of tables

## CHAPTER 1 HARDWARE

Table 1 Pin description (1) .....	5
Table 2 Pin description (2) .....	6
Table 3 Support products .....	8
Table 4 Push and pop instructions of accumulator or processor status register .....	10
Table 5 Set and clear instructions of each bit of processor status register .....	11
Table 6 List of I/O port function .....	16
Table 7 Interrupt vector addresses and priority .....	22
Table 8 Function description of control I/O pins of master CPU bus interface .....	64
Table 9 Port functions in memory expansion mode and microprocessor mode .....	75
Table 10 Summary of M37641F8 (flash memory version) .....	81
Table 11 List of software commands (CPU rewrite mode) .....	86
Table 12 Definition of each bit in status register (SRD) .....	88
Table 13 Description of pin function (Standard Serial I/O Mode) .....	94
Table 14 Software commands (Standard serial I/O mode) .....	97
Table 15 Definition of each bit of status register (SRD) .....	104
Table 16 Definition of each bit of status register 1 (SRD1) .....	105
Table 17 Bits of which state might be changed owing to software write .....	109

## CHAPTER 2 APPLICATION

Table 2.1.1 Termination of unused pins .....	9
Table 2.4.1 Setting examples of baud rate generator values and transfer bit rate values ( $\phi = 12$ MHz) .....	61
Table 2.4.2 Setting examples of SCSG1, SCSG2 and baud rate generator values and transfer bit rate values ( $\phi = 12$ MHz) .....	63
Table 2.4.3 Error flags set condition and how to clear error flags .....	65
Table 2.5.1 Address directions and examples of transfer result (1) .....	90
Table 2.5.2 Address directions and examples of transfer result (2) .....	91
Table 2.5.3 Priority to use bus .....	92
Table 2.8.1 Bus control signal and data bus state-RD/WR separate type .....	111
Table 2.8.2 Bus control signal and data bus state-R/W type .....	111
Table 2.12.1 State in Stop mode .....	139
Table 2.12.2 State in Wait mode .....	140

## CHAPTER 3 APPENDIX

Table 3.1.1 Absolute maximum ratings .....	2
Table 3.1.2 Recommended operating conditions ( $V_{cc} = 4.15$ to $5.25$ V, $V_{ss} = 0$ V, $T_a = -20$ to $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted) .....	3
Table 3.1.3 Electrical characteristics (1) ( $V_{cc} = 4.15$ to $5.25$ V, $V_{ss} = 0$ V, $T_a = -20$ to $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted) .....	4
Table 3.1.4 Electrical characteristics (2) ( $V_{cc} = 4.15$ to $5.25$ V, $V_{ss} = 0$ V, $T_a = -20$ to $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted) .....	5
Table 3.1.5 Timing requirements ( $V_{cc} = 4.15$ to $5.25$ V, $V_{ss} = 0$ V, $T_a = -20$ to $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted) .....	6
Table 3.1.6 Master CPU bus interface (MBI; RD, WR separate type) ( $V_{cc} = 4.15$ to $5.25$ V, $V_{ss} = 0$ V, $T_a = -20$ to $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted) .....	7

Table 3.1.7	Master CPU bus interface (MBI; $R/\overline{W}$ type) ( $V_{cc} = 4.15$ to $5.25$ V, $V_{ss} = 0$ V, $T_a = -20$ to $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted) .....	7
Table 3.1.8	Timing requirements and switching characteristics in memory expansion and microprocessor modes ( $V_{cc} = 4.15$ to $5.25$ V, $V_{ss} = 0$ V, $T_a = -20$ to $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted) .....	8
Table 3.1.9	Recommended operating conditions ( $V_{cc} = 3.0$ to $3.6$ V, $V_{ss} = 0$ V, $T_a = -20$ to $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted) .....	10
Table 3.1.10	Electrical characteristics (1) ( $V_{cc} = 3.0$ to $3.6$ V, $V_{ss} = 0$ V, $T_a = -20$ to $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted) .....	11
Table 3.1.11	Electrical characteristics (2) ( $V_{cc} = 3.0$ to $3.6$ V, $V_{ss} = 0$ V, $T_a = -20$ to $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted) .....	12
Table 3.1.12	Timing requirements ( $V_{cc} = 3.0$ to $3.6$ V, $V_{ss} = 0$ V, $T_a = -20$ to $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted) .....	13
Table 3.1.13	Master CPU bus interface (MBI; RD, WR separate type) ( $V_{cc} = 3.0$ to $3.6$ V, $V_{ss} = 0$ V, $T_a = -20$ to $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted) .....	14
Table 3.1.14	Master CPU bus interface (MBI; $R/\overline{W}$ type) ( $V_{cc} = 3.0$ to $3.6$ V, $V_{ss} = 0$ V, $T_a = -20$ to $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted) .....	14
Table 3.1.15	Timing requirements and switching characteristics in memory expansion and microprocessor modes ( $V_{cc} = 3.0$ to $3.6$ V, $V_{ss} = 0$ V, $T_a = -20$ to $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted) .....	15
Table 3.3.1	Bits of which state might be changed owing to software write .....	35

# CHAPTER 1

---

## HARDWARE

DESCRIPTION  
FEATURES  
APPLICATION  
PIN CONFIGURATION  
FUNCTIONAL BLOCK  
PIN DESCRIPTION  
PART NUMBERING  
GROUP EXPANSION  
FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION  
FLASH MEMORY MODE  
NOTES ON PROGRAMMING  
USAGE NOTES  
DATA REQUIRED FOR MASK ORDERS  
FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION  
SUPPLEMENT

## DESCRIPTION

The 7641 group is the 8-bit microcomputer based on the 7600 series core (740 family core compatible) technology.

The 7641 group is designed for PC peripheral devices, including the USB, DMAC, Serial I/O, UART, Timer, Master CPU bus interface and so on.

## FEATURES

<Microcomputer mode>

- Basic machine-language instructions ..... 71
- Minimum instruction execution time ..... 83 ns  
(at 24 MHz oscillation frequency)
- Memory size
  - ROM ..... 32 Kbytes
  - RAM ..... 1 Kbytes
- Programmable input/output ports ..... 66
- Software pull-up resistors ..... Built-in
- Interrupts ..... 24 sources, 24 vectors  
(external 5 including Key input, internal 18, software 1)
- USB function control unit
  - Transceiver ..... Full-Speed USB2.0 specification
- Timers ..... 16-bit X 2 (Timers X, Y)  
8-bit X 3 (Timers 1, 2, 3)
- Serial Interface
  - Serial I/O ..... 8-bit X 1
  - UART ..... 8-bit X 2
- DMAC ..... 2 channels
- Master CPU bus interface ..... 2 bytes
- Special count source generator ..... 8-bit X 1
- Clock generating circuit ..... Built-in  
(connect to external ceramic resonator or quartz-crystal oscillator)
- Power source voltage
  - At 24 MHz oscillation frequency,  $\phi = 12$  MHz ..... 4.15 to 5.25 V
  - At 24 MHz oscillation frequency,  $\phi = 6$  MHz ..... 3.00 to 3.60 V
- Operating temperature range ..... -20 to 70°C
- Packages
  - FP ..... PRQP0080GB-A (80-pin QFP)
  - HP ..... PLQP0080KB-A (80-pin LQFP)

<Flash memory mode>

- Power source voltage
  - At 24 MHz oscillation frequency,  $\phi = 12$  MHz ..... 4.15 to 5.25 V
  - At 24 MHz oscillation frequency,  $\phi = 6$  MHz ..... 3.00 to 3.60 V
- Program/Erase voltage
  - .....  $V_{CC} = 4.50$  V to 5.25 V, or 3.00 V to 3.60 V
  - .....  $V_{PP} = 4.50$  V to 5.25 V
  - At 24 MHz oscillation frequency,  $\phi = 6$  MHz (See Table 10.)
- Memory size
  - Flash ROM ..... 32 Kbytes
  - RAM ..... 2.5 Kbytes
- Flash memory mode ..... 3 modes
  - Parallel I/O mode
  - Standard serial I/O mode
  - CPU rewrite mode
- Programming method ..... Programming in unit of byte
- Erasing method
  - Batch erasing
  - Block erasing
- Program/Erase control by software command
- Command number ..... 6 commands
- Number of times for programming/erasing ..... 100
- ROM code protection
  - Available in parallel I/O mode and standard serial I/O mode
- Operating temperature range (at programming/erasing) .....  
..... Normal temperature

## APPLICATION

Audio, musical instrument, printer, scanner, modem, other PC peripheral devices

## Notes

The flash memory version cannot be used for application embedded in the MCU card.

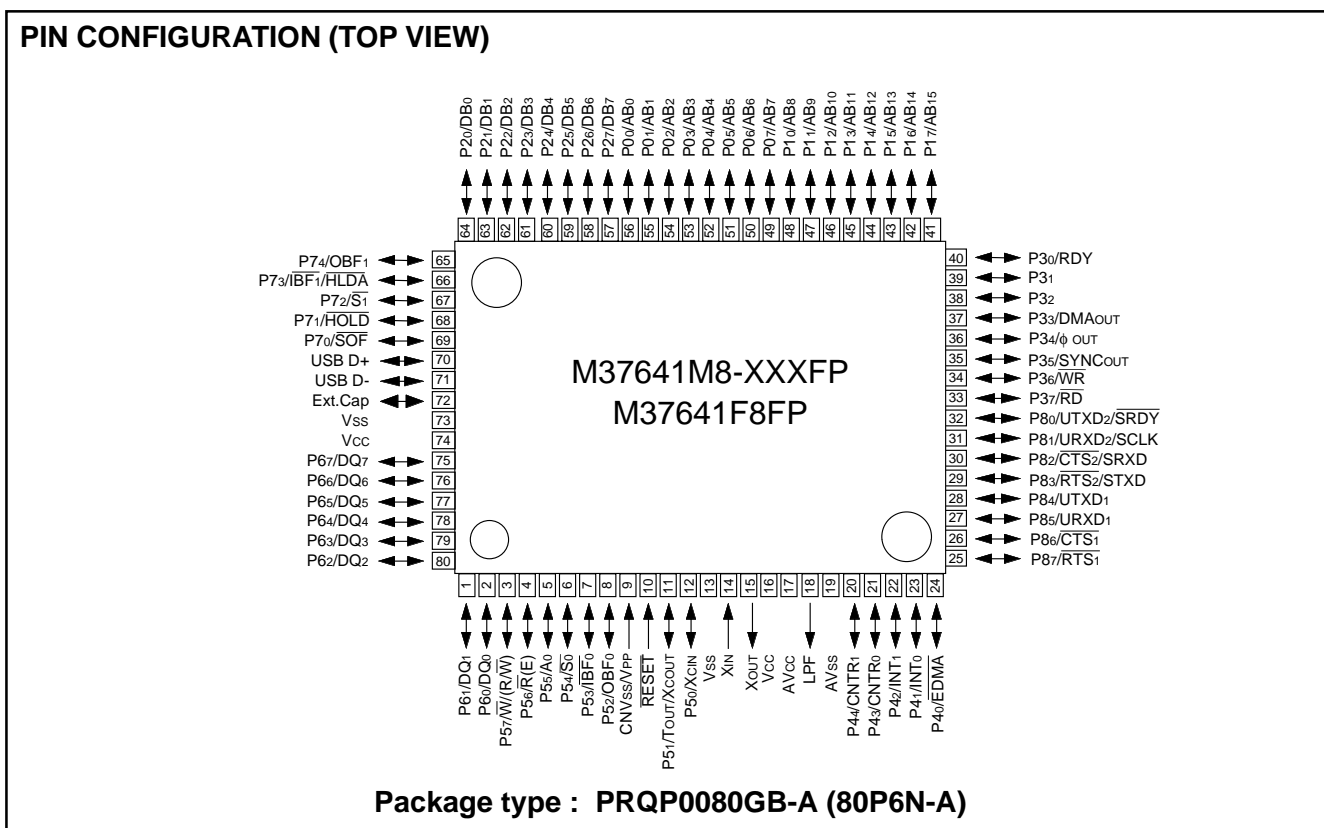


Fig. 1 M37641M8-XXXFP, M37641F8FP pin configuration

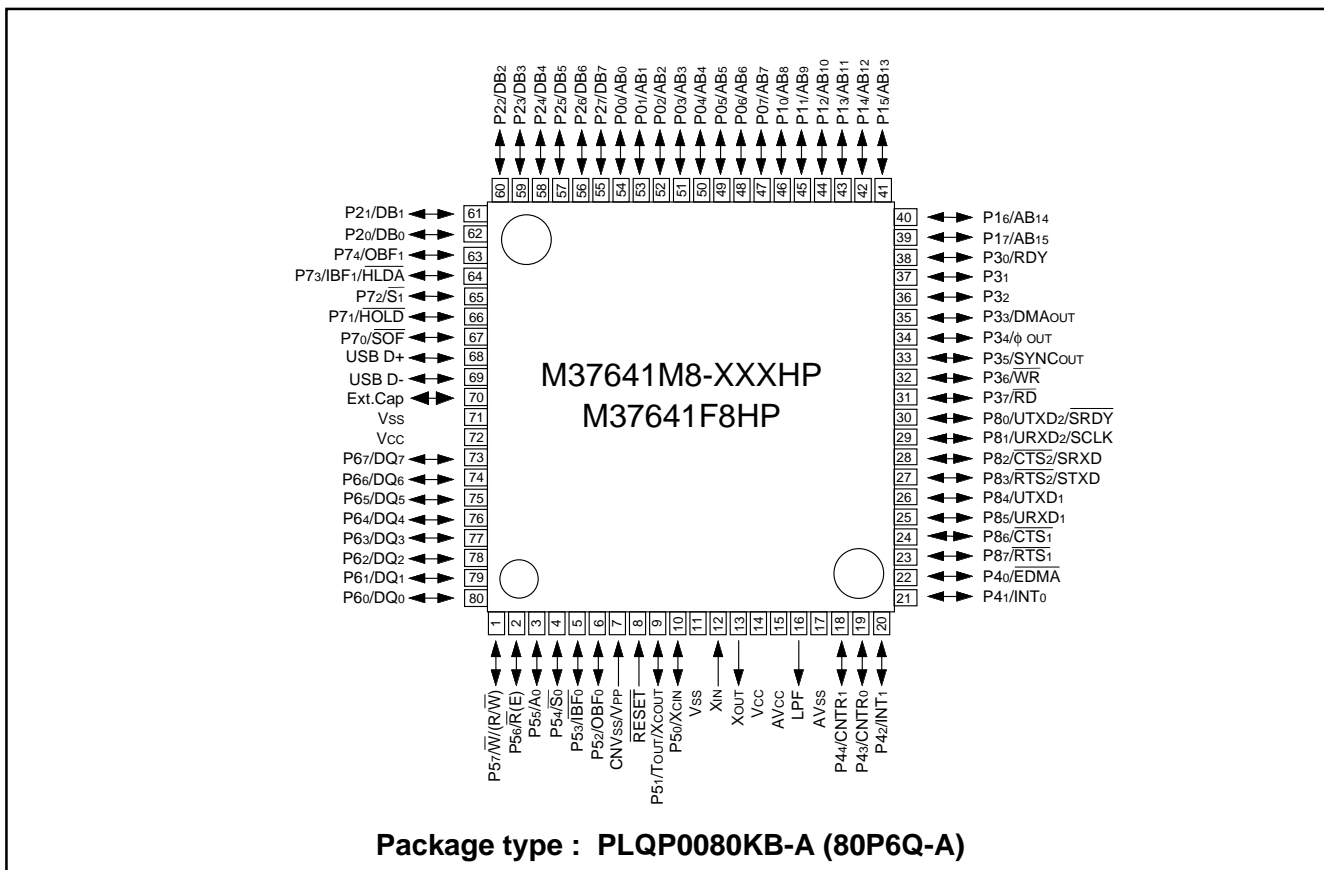


Fig. 2 M37641M8-XXXHP, M37641F8HP pin configuration

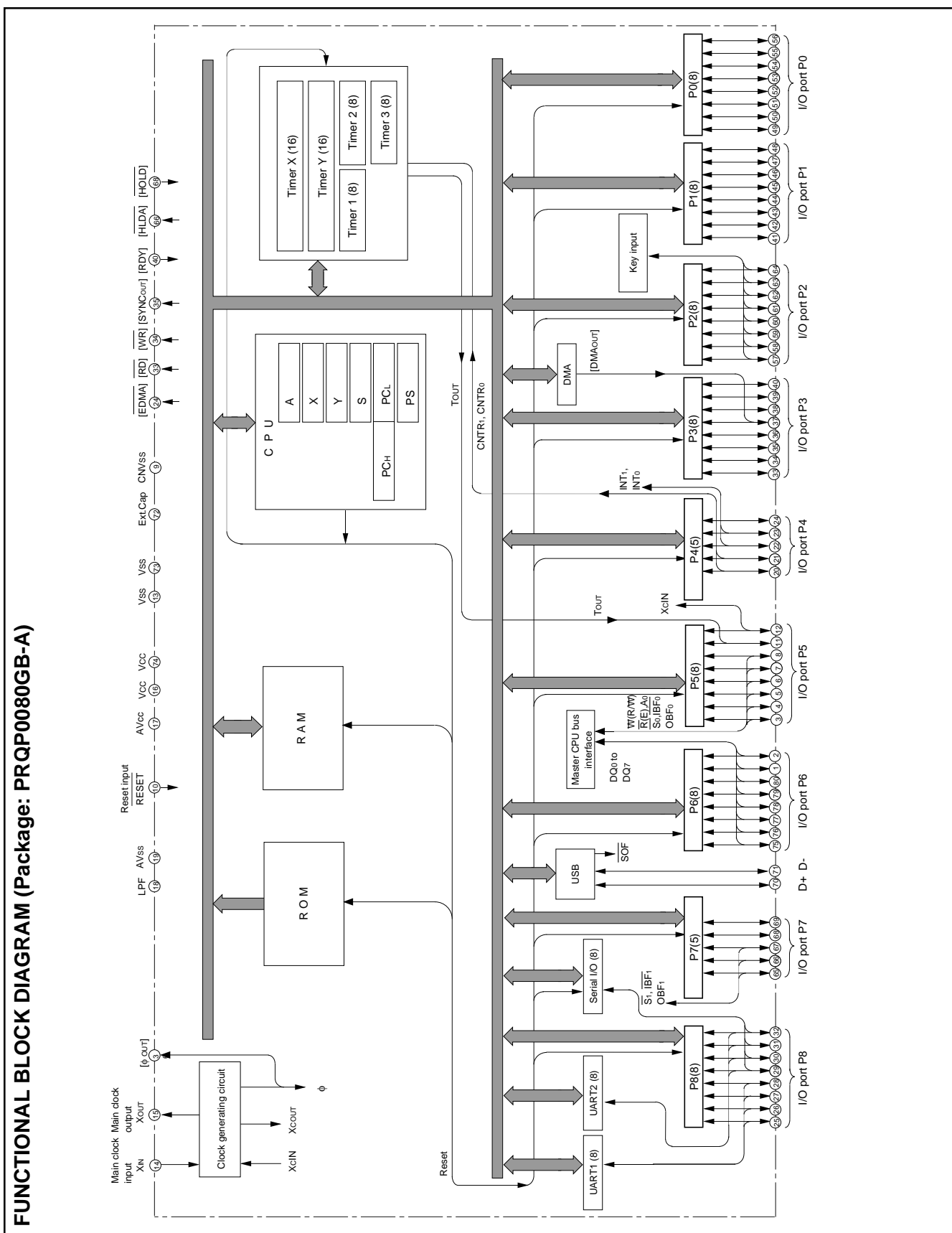


Fig. 3 Functional block diagram

## PIN DESCRIPTION

Table 1 Pin description (1)

Pin	Name	Function	
			Function except a port function
Vcc, Vss	Power source	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Apply 4.15 V – 5.25 V for 5 V version or 3.00 V – 3.60 V for 3 V version to the Vcc pin. Apply 0 V to the Vss pin.</li> </ul>	
CNVss/VPP	CNVss	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This controls the MCU operating mode. Connect this pin to Vss. If connecting this pin to Vcc, the internal ROM is inhibited. In the flash memory version this pin functions as a VPP power supply input pin.</li> </ul>	
AVss/AVcc	Analog power supply	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>These pins are the power supply inputs for analog circuitry.</li> </ul>	
RESET	Reset input	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reset input pin for active “L.”</li> </ul>	
XIN	Clock input	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Connect a ceramic resonator or a quartz-crystal oscillator between the XIN and XOUT pins to set the oscillation frequency.</li> <li>If an external clock is used, connect the clock source to the XIN pin and leave the XOUT pin open.</li> </ul>	
XOUT	Clock output		
LPF	LPF	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Loop filter for the frequency synthesizer.</li> </ul>	
Ext. Cap.	3.3 V line power supply	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It is a capacitor connection pin for built-in DC-DC converter. At Vcc=5 V, use built-in DC-DC converter by permitting a USB line driver and connect a capacitor. Refer to “Notes on use” for details. Built-in DC-DC converter cannot be used at Vcc = 3.3 V. Supply 3.3V power supply to this pin from the externals.</li> </ul>	
USB D+	USB D+	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>USB D+ voltage signal port. Connect a 27 to 33 Ω (recommended) resistor in series.</li> </ul>	
USB D-	USB D-	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>USB D- voltage signal port. Connect a 27 to 33 Ω (recommended) resistor in series.</li> </ul>	
P00/AB0– P07/AB7		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8-bit I/O port.</li> <li>CMOS compatible input level.</li> <li>CMOS 3-state output structure.</li> <li>I/O direction register allows each pin to be individually programmed as either input or output.</li> <li>When connecting an external memory, these function as the address bus.</li> </ul>	
P10/AB8– P17/AB15	I/O port P0	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8-bit I/O port.</li> <li>CMOS compatible input level.</li> <li>CMOS 3-state output structure.</li> <li>I/O direction register allows each pin to be individually programmed as either input or output.</li> <li>When connecting an external memory, these function as the address bus.</li> </ul>	
P20/DB0– P27/DB7	I/O port P1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8-bit I/O port.</li> <li>CMOS compatible input level or VIH input level.</li> <li>CMOS 3-state output structure.</li> <li>I/O direction register allows each pin to be individually programmed as either input or output.</li> <li>When connecting an external memory, these function as the data bus.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Key-on wake-up interrupt input pin</li> </ul>
P30/RDY, P31, P32, P33/DMAOUT, P34/φ OUT, P35/SYNCOUT, P36/W $\bar{R}$ , P37/RD	I/O port P2 I/O port P3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8-bit I/O port.</li> <li>CMOS compatible input level.</li> <li>CMOS 3-state output structure.</li> <li>I/O direction register allows each pin to be individually programmed as either input or output.</li> <li>When connecting an external memory, these function as the control bus.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>External memory control pin</li> </ul>
P40/EDMA, P41/INT0, P42/INT1, P43/CNTR0, P44/CNTR1	(See Remarks.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8-bit I/O port.</li> <li>CMOS compatible input level.</li> <li>CMOS 3-state output structure.</li> <li>I/O direction register allows each pin to be individually programmed as either input or output.</li> <li>When connecting an external memory, these function as the control bus.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>External memory control pin</li> <li>External interrupt pin</li> <li>Timer X, Timer Y pin</li> </ul>
P50/XCIN, P51/TOUT/ XCOUT, P52/OBF0, P53/IBF0, P54/S0, P55/A0, P56/R $\bar{E}$ (E), P57/W $\bar{R}$ (R/W)	I/O port P4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8-bit I/O port.</li> <li>CMOS compatible input level.</li> <li>CMOS 3-state output structure.</li> <li>I/O direction register allows each pin to be individually programmed as either input or output.</li> <li>When enabling the Master CPU bus interface function, CMOS or TTL input level can be selected as an input.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Sub-clock generating input pin</li> <li>Timers 1, 2 pulse output pins</li> <li>Sub-clock generating output pin</li> <li>Master CPU bus interface pin</li> </ul>



Table 2 Pin description (2)

Pin	Name	Function	Function except a port function
P60/DQ0– P67/DQ7	I/O port P5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 8-bit I/O port.</li> <li>• CMOS compatible input level.</li> <li>• CMOS 3-state output structure.</li> <li>• I/O direction register allows each pin to be individually programmed as either input or output.</li> <li>• When enabling the bus interface function, CMOS or TTL input level can be selected as its input.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Master CPU bus interface pin</li> </ul>
P70/SOF, P71/HOLD, P72/S1, P73/IBF1/ HLDA, P74/OBF1	I/O port P6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 5-bit I/O port.</li> <li>• CMOS compatible input level.</li> <li>• CMOS 3-state output structure.</li> <li>• I/O direction register allows each pin to be individually programmed as either input or output.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• USB function pin</li> <li>• Master CPU bus interface pin</li> </ul>
P80/UTXD2/ SRDY, P81/URXD2/ SCLK, P82/CTS2/ SRXD, P83/RTS2/ STXD, P84/UTXD1, P85/URXD1, P86/CTS1, P87/RTS1	I/O port P7 I/O port P8	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 8-bit I/O port.</li> <li>• CMOS compatible input level.</li> <li>• CMOS 3-state output structure.</li> <li>• I/O direction register allows each pin to be individually programmed as either input or output.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Serial I/O pin</li> <li>• UART2 pin</li> </ul>
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• UART1 pin</li> </ul>

**Remarks**

## •DMAOUT pin

If externally detecting the timing of DMA execution, use the signal from this pin. It is "H" level during DMA transferring. This signal is valid in the memory expansion and microprocessor modes.

## •SYNCOU pin

If externally detecting the timing of OP code fetch, use the signal from this pin. This signal is valid in the memory expansion and microprocessor modes.

## PART NUMBERING

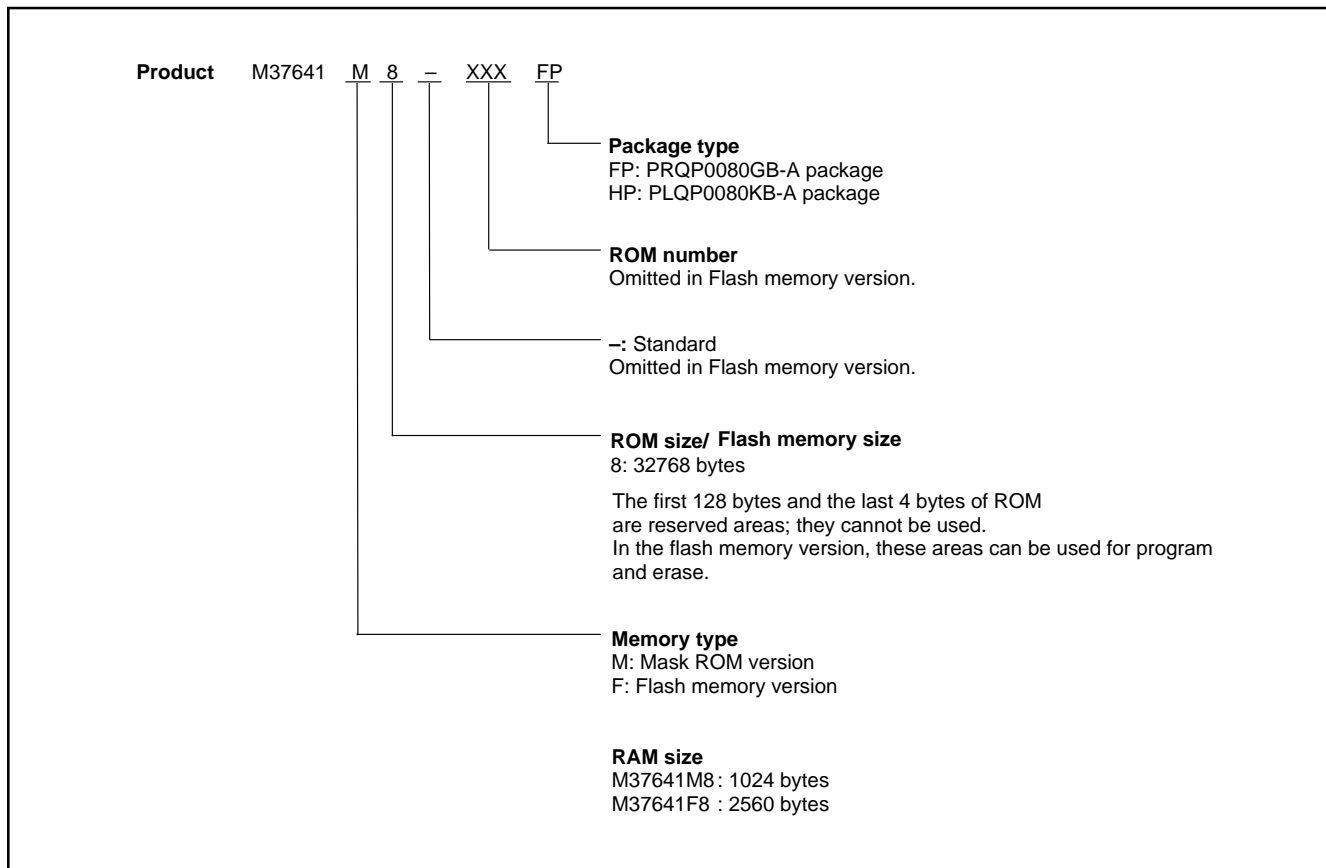


Fig. 4 Part numbering

**GROUP EXPANSION**

Mitsubishi plans to expand the 7641 group as follows.

**Packages**

PRQP0080GB-A ..... 0.8 mm-pitch plastic molded QFP  
 PLQP0080KB-A ..... 0.5 mm-pitch plastic molded LQFP

**Memory Type**

Supports for mask ROM and flash memory versions.

**Memory Size**

ROM size ..... 32 Kbytes  
 RAM size ..... 1024 to 2560 bytes

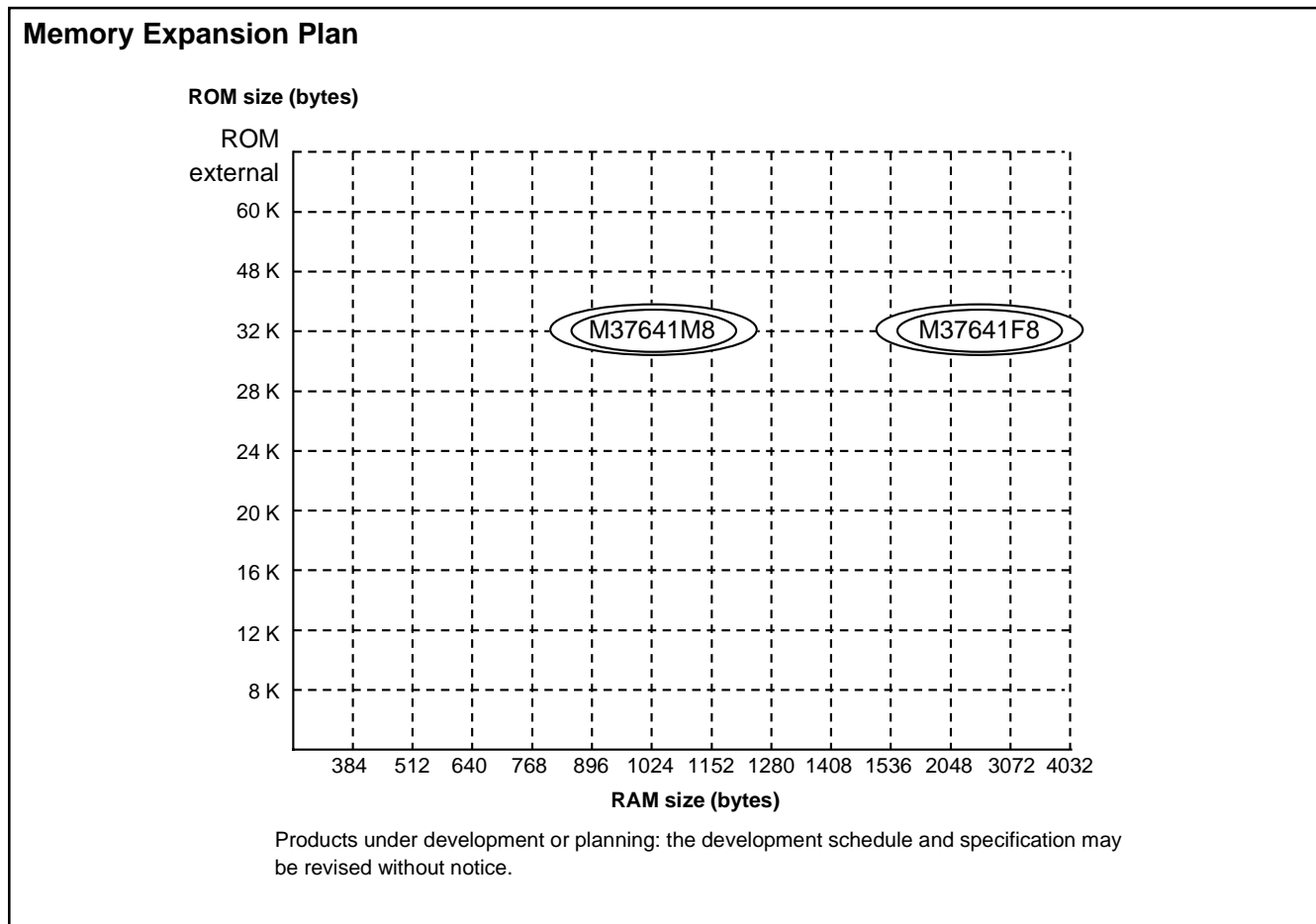


Fig. 5 Memory expansion plan

Currently planning products are listed below.

Table 3 Support products

As of Aug. 2006

Product name	ROM size (bytes) ROM size for User in ( )	RAM size (bytes)	Package	Remarks
M37641M8-XXXFP	32768 (32636)	1024	PRQP0080GB-A	Mask ROM version
M37641M8-XXXHP			PLQP0080KB-A	
M37641F8FP	32768	2560	PRQP0080GB-A	Flash memory version
M37641F8HP			PLQP0080KB-A	

## FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION CENTRAL PROCESSING UNIT (CPU)

The 7641 group uses the standard 7600 series instruction set. Refer to the 7600 Series Software Manual for details on the instruction set. The 7600 series has an upward compatible instruction set, of which instruction execution cycles are shortened, for 740 series.

### [Accumulator (A)]

The accumulator is an 8-bit register. Data operations such as data transfer, etc., are executed mainly through the accumulator.

### [Index Register X (X)]

The index register X is an 8-bit register. In the index addressing modes, the value of the OPERAND is added to the contents of register X and specifies the real address.

### [Index Register Y (Y)]

The index register Y is an 8-bit register. In partial instruction, the value of the OPERAND is added to the contents of register Y and specifies the real address.

### [Stack Pointer (S)]

The stack pointer is an 8-bit register used during subroutine calls and interrupts. This register indicates start address of stored area (stack) for storing registers during subroutine calls and interrupts.

The low-order 8 bits of the stack address are determined by the contents of the stack pointer. The high-order 8 bits of the stack address are determined by the stack page selection bit. If the stack page selection bit is "0", the high-order 8 bits becomes "0016". If the stack page selection bit is "1", the high-order 8 bits becomes "0116".

The operations of pushing register contents onto the stack and popping them from the stack are shown in Figure 7.

Store registers other than those described in Figure 7 with program when the user needs them during interrupts or subroutine calls.

### [Program Counter (PC)]

The program counter is a 16-bit counter consisting of two 8-bit registers PCH and PCL. It is used to indicate the address of the next instruction to be executed.

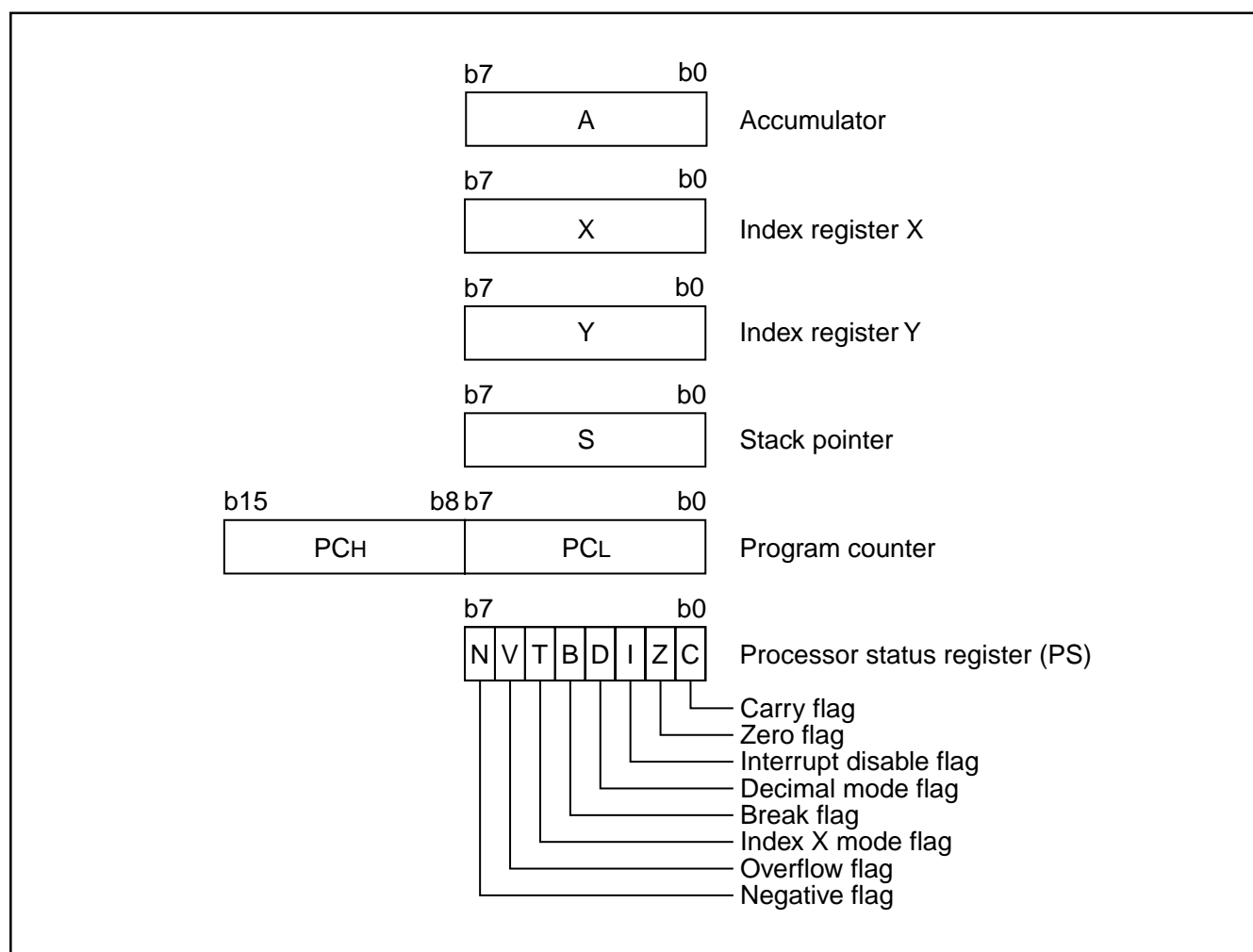


Fig. 6 7600 series CPU register structure

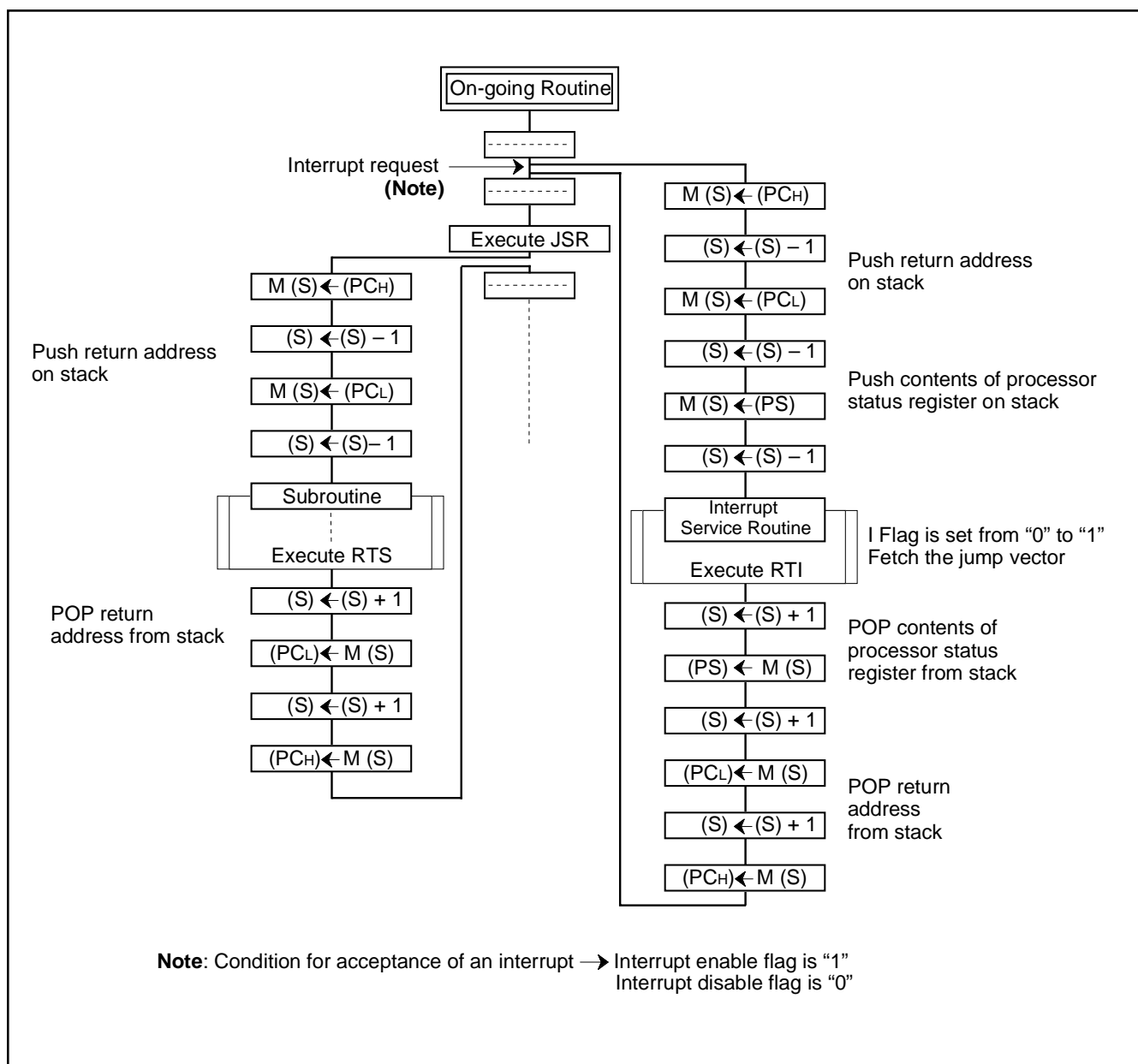


Fig. 7 Register push and pop at interrupt generation and subroutine call

Table 4 Push and pop instructions of accumulator or processor status register

	Push instruction to stack	Pop instruction from stack
Accumulator	PHA	PLA
Processor status register	PHP	PLP

**[Processor status register (PS)]**

The processor status register is an 8-bit register consisting of 5 flags which indicate the status of the processor after an arithmetic operation and 3 flags which decide MCU operation. Branch operations can be performed by testing the Carry (C) flag, Zero (Z) flag, Overflow (V) flag, or the Negative (N) flag. In decimal mode, the Z, V, N flags are not valid.

- Bit 0: Carry flag (C)

The C flag contains a carry or borrow generated by the arithmetic logic unit (ALU) immediately after an arithmetic operation. It can also be changed by a shift or rotate instruction.

- Bit 1: Zero flag (Z)

The Z flag is set if the result of an immediate arithmetic operation or a data transfer is "0", and cleared if the result is anything other than "0".

- Bit 2: Interrupt disable flag (I)

The I flag disables all interrupts except for the interrupt generated by the BRK instruction.

Interrupts are disabled when the I flag is "1".

- Bit 3: Decimal mode flag (D)

The D flag determines whether additions and subtractions are executed in binary or decimal. Binary arithmetic is executed when this flag is "0"; decimal arithmetic is executed when it is "1". Decimal correction is automatic in decimal mode. Only the ADC

- Bit 4: Break flag (B)

The B flag is used to indicate that the current interrupt was generated by the BRK instruction. The BRK flag in the processor status register is always "0". When the BRK instruction is used to generate an interrupt, the processor status register is pushed onto the stack with the break flag set to "1".

- Bit 5: Index X mode flag (T)

When the T flag is "0", arithmetic operations are performed between accumulator and memory. When the T flag is "1", direct arithmetic operations and direct data transfers are enabled between memory locations.

- Bit 6: Overflow flag (V)

The V flag is used during the addition or subtraction of one byte of signed data. It is set if the result exceeds +127 to -128. When the BIT instruction is executed, bit 6 of the memory location operated on by the BIT instruction is stored in the overflow flag.

- Bit 7: Negative flag (N)

The N flag is set if the result of an arithmetic operation or data transfer is negative. When the BIT instruction is executed, bit 7 of the memory location operated on by the BIT instruction is stored in the negative flag.

**Table 5 Set and clear instructions of each bit of processor status register**

	C flag	Z flag	I flag	D flag	B flag	T flag	V flag	N flag
Set instruction	SEC	–	SEI	SED	–	SET	–	–
Clear instruction	CLC	–	CLI	CLD	–	CLT	CLV	–

**[CPU Mode Registers A, B (CPUMA, CPUMB)] 0000<sub>16</sub>, 0001<sub>16</sub>**

The CPU mode register contains the stack page select bit and the CPU operating mode select bit and so on.

The CPU mode registers are allocated at address 0000<sub>16</sub>, 0001<sub>16</sub>.

**■ Notes**

Do not use the microprocessor mode in the flash memory version.

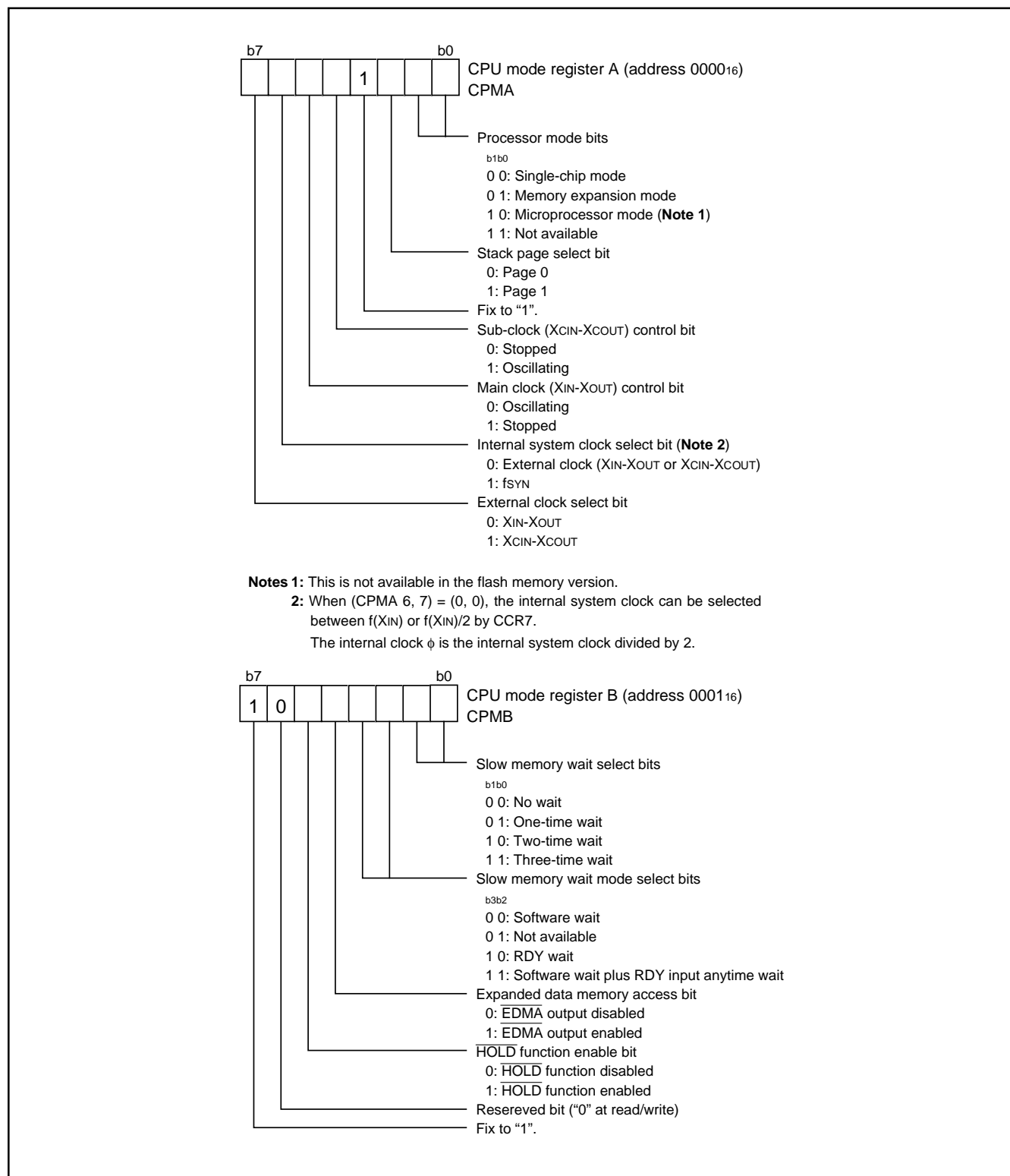


Fig. 8 Structure of CPU mode register

**MEMORY**

**Special Function Register (SFR) Area**

The Special Function Register area in the zero page contains control registers such as I/O ports and timers.

**RAM**

RAM is used for data storage and for stack area of subroutine calls and interrupts.

**ROM**

The first 128 bytes and the last 4 bytes of ROM are reserved for device testing and the rest is user area for storing programs. In the flash memory version, program and erase can be performed in the reserved area.

**Interrupt Vector Area**

The interrupt vector area contains reset and interrupt vectors.

**Zero Page**

Access to this area with only 2 bytes is possible in the zero page addressing mode.

**Special Page**

Access to this area with only 2 bytes is possible in the special page addressing mode.

Refer to page 74 for the memory map of memory expansion and microprocessor modes.

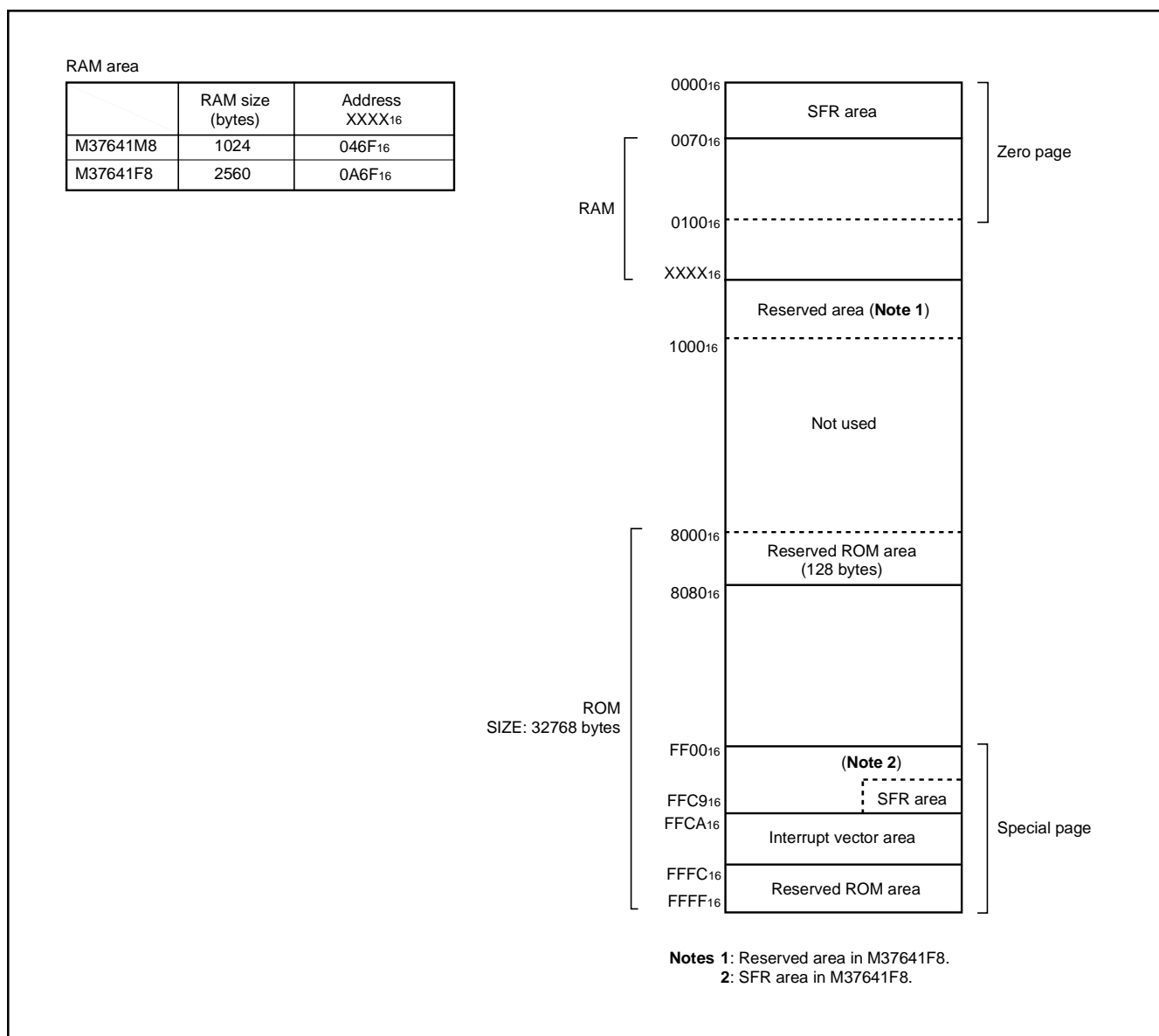


Fig. 9 Memory map diagram



0000 <sub>16</sub>	CPU mode register A (CPUA)	0038 <sub>16</sub>	UART2 mode register (U2MOD)
0001 <sub>16</sub>	CPU mode register B (CPUB)	0039 <sub>16</sub>	UART2 baud rate generator (U2BRG)
0002 <sub>16</sub>	Interrupt request register A (IREQA)	003A <sub>16</sub>	UART2 status register (U2STS)
0003 <sub>16</sub>	Interrupt request register B (IREQB)	003B <sub>16</sub>	UART2 control register (U2CON)
0004 <sub>16</sub>	Interrupt request register C (IREQC)	003C <sub>16</sub>	UART2 transmit/receive buffer register 1 (U2TRB1)
0005 <sub>16</sub>	Interrupt control register A (ICONA)	003D <sub>16</sub>	UART2 transmit/receive buffer register 2 (U2TRB2)
0006 <sub>16</sub>	Interrupt control register B (ICONB)	003E <sub>16</sub>	UART2 RTS control register (U2RTSC)
0007 <sub>16</sub>	Interrupt control register C (ICONC)	003F <sub>16</sub>	DMAC index and status register (DMAIS)
0008 <sub>16</sub>	Port P0 (P0)	0040 <sub>16</sub>	DMAC channel x mode register 1 (DMAx1)
0009 <sub>16</sub>	Port P0 direction register (P0D)	0041 <sub>16</sub>	DMAC channel x mode register 2 (DMAx2)
000A <sub>16</sub>	Port P1 (P1)	0042 <sub>16</sub>	DMAC channel x source register Low (DMAxSL)
000B <sub>16</sub>	Port P1 direction register (P1D)	0043 <sub>16</sub>	DMAC channel x source register High (DMAxSH)
000C <sub>16</sub>	Port P2 (P2)	0044 <sub>16</sub>	DMAC channel x destination register Low (DMAxDL)
000D <sub>16</sub>	Port P2 direction register (P2D)	0045 <sub>16</sub>	DMAC channel x destination register High (DMAxDH)
000E <sub>16</sub>	Port P3 (P3)	0046 <sub>16</sub>	DMAC channel x transfer count register Low (DMAxCL)
000F <sub>16</sub>	Port P3 direction register (P3D)	0047 <sub>16</sub>	DMAC channel x transfer count register High (DMAxCH)
0010 <sub>16</sub>	Port control register (PTC)	0048 <sub>16</sub>	Data bus buffer register 0 (DBB0)
0011 <sub>16</sub>	Interrupt polarity select register (IPOL)	0049 <sub>16</sub>	Data bus buffer status register 0 (DBBS0)
0012 <sub>16</sub>	Port P2 pull-up control register (PUP2)	004A <sub>16</sub>	Data bus buffer control register 0 (DBBC0)
0013 <sub>16</sub>	USB control register (USBC)	004B <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )
0014 <sub>16</sub>	Port P6 (P6)	004C <sub>16</sub>	Data bus buffer register 1 (DBB1)
0015 <sub>16</sub>	Port P6 direction register (P6D)	004D <sub>16</sub>	Data bus buffer status register 1 (DBBS1)
0016 <sub>16</sub>	Port P5 (P5)	004E <sub>16</sub>	Data bus buffer control register 1 (DBBC1)
0017 <sub>16</sub>	Port P5 direction register (P5D)	004F <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )
0018 <sub>16</sub>	Port P4 (P4)	0050 <sub>16</sub>	USB address register (USBA)
0019 <sub>16</sub>	Port P4 direction register (P4D)	0051 <sub>16</sub>	USB power management register (USBPM)
001A <sub>16</sub>	Port P7 (P7)	0052 <sub>16</sub>	USB interrupt status register 1 (USBIS1)
001B <sub>16</sub>	Port P7 direction register (P7D)	0053 <sub>16</sub>	USB interrupt status register 2 (USBIS2)
001C <sub>16</sub>	Port P8 (P8)	0054 <sub>16</sub>	USB interrupt enable register 1 (USBIE1)
001D <sub>16</sub>	Port P8 direction register (P8D)	0055 <sub>16</sub>	USB interrupt enable register 2 (USBIE2)
001E <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )	0056 <sub>16</sub>	USB frame number register Low (USBSOFL)
001F <sub>16</sub>	Clock control register (CCR)	0057 <sub>16</sub>	USB frame number register High (USBSOFH)
0020 <sub>16</sub>	Timer XL (TXL)	0058 <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint index register (USBINDEX)
0021 <sub>16</sub>	Timer XH (TXH)	0059 <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint x IN control register (IN_CSR)
0022 <sub>16</sub>	Timer YL (TYL)	005A <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint x OUT control register (OUT_CSR)
0023 <sub>16</sub>	Timer YH (TYH)	005B <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint x IN max. packet size register (IN_MAXP)
0024 <sub>16</sub>	Timer 1 (T1)	005C <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint x OUT max. packet size register (OUT_MAXP)
0025 <sub>16</sub>	Timer 2 (T2)	005D <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint x OUT write count register Low (WRT_CNTRL)
0026 <sub>16</sub>	Timer 3 (T3)	005E <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint x OUT write count register High (WRT_CNTH)
0027 <sub>16</sub>	Timer X mode register (TXM)	005F <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint FIFO mode register (USBFIFOMR)
0028 <sub>16</sub>	Timer Y mode register (TYM)	0060 <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint 0 FIFO (USBFIFO0)
0029 <sub>16</sub>	Timer 123 mode register (T123M)	0061 <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint 1 FIFO (USBFIFO1)
002A <sub>16</sub>	Serial I/O shift register (SIOSHT)	0062 <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint 2 FIFO (USBFIFO2)
002B <sub>16</sub>	Serial I/O control register 1 (SIOCON1)	0063 <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint 3 FIFO (USBFIFO3)
002C <sub>16</sub>	Serial I/O control register 2 (SIOCON2)	0064 <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint 4 FIFO (USBFIFO4)
002D <sub>16</sub>	Special count source generator 1 (SCSG1)	0065 <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )
002E <sub>16</sub>	Special count source generator 2 (SCSG2)	0066 <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )
002F <sub>16</sub>	Special count source mode register (SCSGM)	0067 <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )
0030 <sub>16</sub>	UART1 mode register (U1MOD)	0068 <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )
0031 <sub>16</sub>	UART1 baud rate generator (U1BRG)	0069 <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )
0032 <sub>16</sub>	UART1 status register (U1STS)	006A <sub>16</sub>	Flash memory control register (FMCR) ( <b>Note 2</b> )
0033 <sub>16</sub>	UART1 control register (U1CON)	006B <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )
0034 <sub>16</sub>	UART1 transmit/receive buffer register 1 (U1TRB1)	006C <sub>16</sub>	Frequency synthesizer control register (FSC)
0035 <sub>16</sub>	UART1 transmit/receive buffer register 2 (U1TRB2)	006D <sub>16</sub>	Frequency synthesizer multiply register 1 (FSM1)
0036 <sub>16</sub>	UART1 RTS control register (U1RTSC)	006E <sub>16</sub>	Frequency synthesizer multiply register 2 (FSM2)
0037 <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )	006F <sub>16</sub>	Frequency synthesizer divide register (FSD)
		FFC9 <sub>16</sub>	ROM code protect control register (ROMCP) ( <b>Note 3</b> )

**Notes 1:** Do not write any data to this addresses, because these areas are reserved.

**2:** This area is reserved in the mask ROM version.

**3:** This area is on the ROM in the mask ROM version.

Fig. 10 Memory map of special function register (SFR)

## I/O PORTS

### Direction Registers

The I/O ports P0–P8 have direction registers which determine the input/output direction of each individual pin. Each bit in a direction register corresponds to one pin, each pin can be set to be input port or output port.

When “0” is written to the bit corresponding to a pin, that pin becomes an input pin. When “1” is written to that bit, that pin becomes an output pin.

If data is read from a pin set to output, the value of the port output latch is read, not the value of the pin itself. Pins set to input are floating. If a pin set to input is written to, only the port output latch is written to and the pin remains floating.

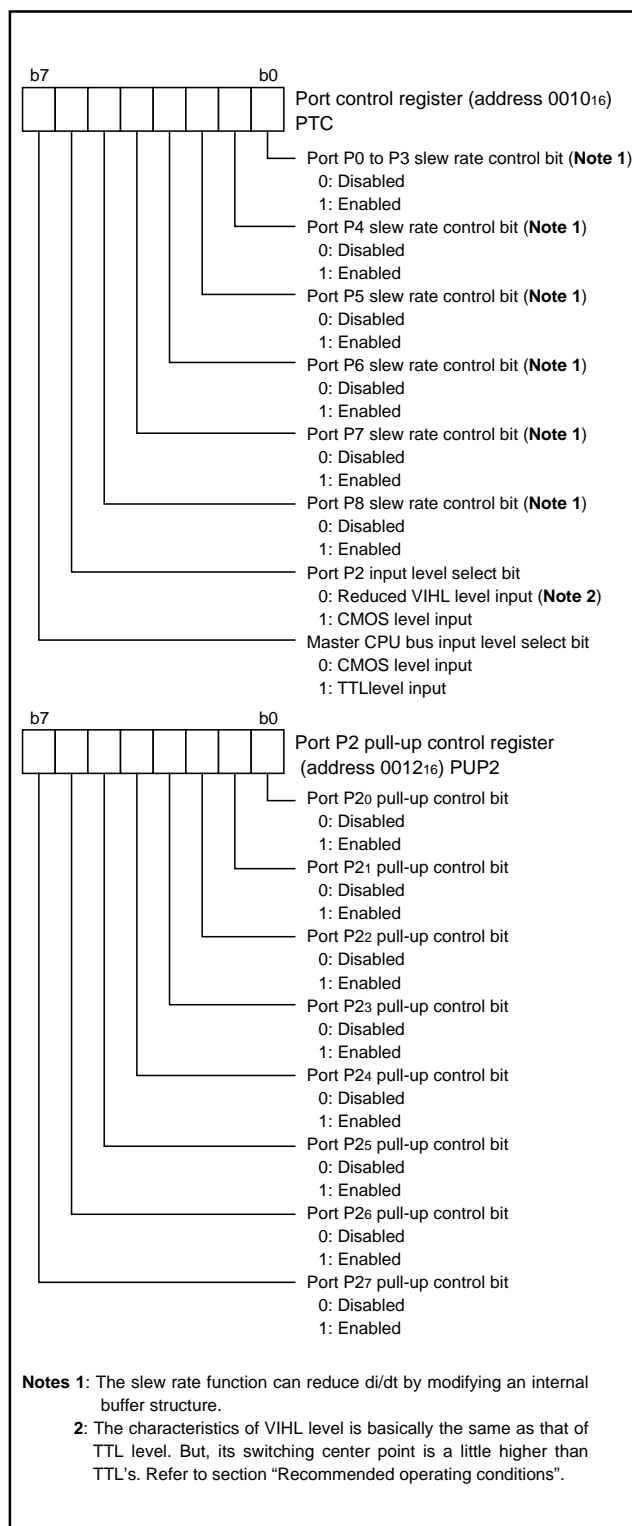
### Slew Rate Control

By setting bits 0 to 5 of the port control register (address 0010<sub>16</sub>) to “1”, slew rate control is enabled. VIH<sub>L</sub> or CMOS level can be used as a port P2 input level; CMOS or TTL level can be used as an input level of master CPU bus interface.

### Pull-up Control

By setting the port P2 pull-up control register (address 0012<sub>16</sub>), pull-up of each pin of port P2 can be controlled with a program.

However, the contents of port P2 pull-up control register do not affect ports programmed as the output ports but as the input ports.



**Fig. 11 Structure of port control and port P2 pull-up control registers**

Table 6 List of I/O port function

Pin	Name	Input/Output	I/O format	Non-port function	Related SFRs	Ref. No.
P00/AB0– P07/AB7	Port P0	Input/Output, individual bits	CMOS input level CMOS 3-state output	Lower address output	CPU mode register A Port control register	(1)
P10/AB8– P17/AB15	Port P1			Higher address output		
P20/DB0– P27/DB7	Port P2		CMOS input level/VIHL input level CMOS 3-state output	Data bus I/O	CPU mode register A Port control register Port P2 pull-up control register	(2)
P30/RDY– P37/RD	Port P3	Port P4	CMOS input level CMOS 3-state output	Control signal I/O	CPU mode register A CPU mode register B Port control register	(1) (3)
P40/EDMA, P41/INT0, P42/INT1, P43/CNTR0, P44/CNTR1	Port P4			Control signal I/O External interrupt	CPU mode register A CPU mode register B Port control register Timer X mode register Timer Y mode register Interrupt polarity select register	(4) (5)
P50/XCIN, P51/TOU7/ XCOUT				Port P5	Timer 1, Timer 2 output pin Sub-clock generat- ing input pin	CPU mode register A Port control register Clock control register Timer 123 mode register
P52/OBF0, P53/IBF0, P54/S0, P55/A0, P56/R(E), P57/W(R/W)	Port P6	CMOS input level CMOS 3-state output CMOS input level/TTL input level in Master CPU bus interface function	Master CPU bus interface I/O pin	Data bus buffer control register 0 Port control register	(8) (9) (10)	
P60/DQ0– P67/DQ7				Port P6	Master CPU bus interface I/O pin	Data bus buffer control register 0 Port control register
P70/SOF,	Port P7	CMOS input level CMOS 3-state output	USB function output pin	USB control register Port control register	(12)	
P71/HOLD, P72/S1, P73/IBF1/ HLDA, P74/OBF1				Control signal I/O Master CPU bus interface I/O pin	Data bus buffer control register 1 Port control register CPU mode register B	(13) (14) (15) (16)
P80/UTXD2/ SRDY, P81/URXD2/ SCLK, P82/CTS2/ SRXD, P83/RTS2/ STXD, P84/UTXD1, P85/URXD1, P86/CTS1, P87/RTS1	Port P8	CMOS input level CMOS 3-state output	Serial I/O I/O pin UART2 I/O pin UART1 I/O pin	UART1, 2 control registers Serial I/O control register 1 Serial I/O control register 2 Port control register	(17) (18) (19) (20) (21) (22) (23) (24)	

**Notes 1:** For details of the ports functions in modes other than single-chip mode, and how to use double-function ports as function I/O ports, refer to the applicable sections.

**2:** Make sure that the input level at each pin is either 0 V or V<sub>CC</sub> during execution of the STP instruction.

When an input level is at an intermediate potential, a rush current will flow from V<sub>CC</sub> to V<sub>SS</sub> through the input-stage gate.

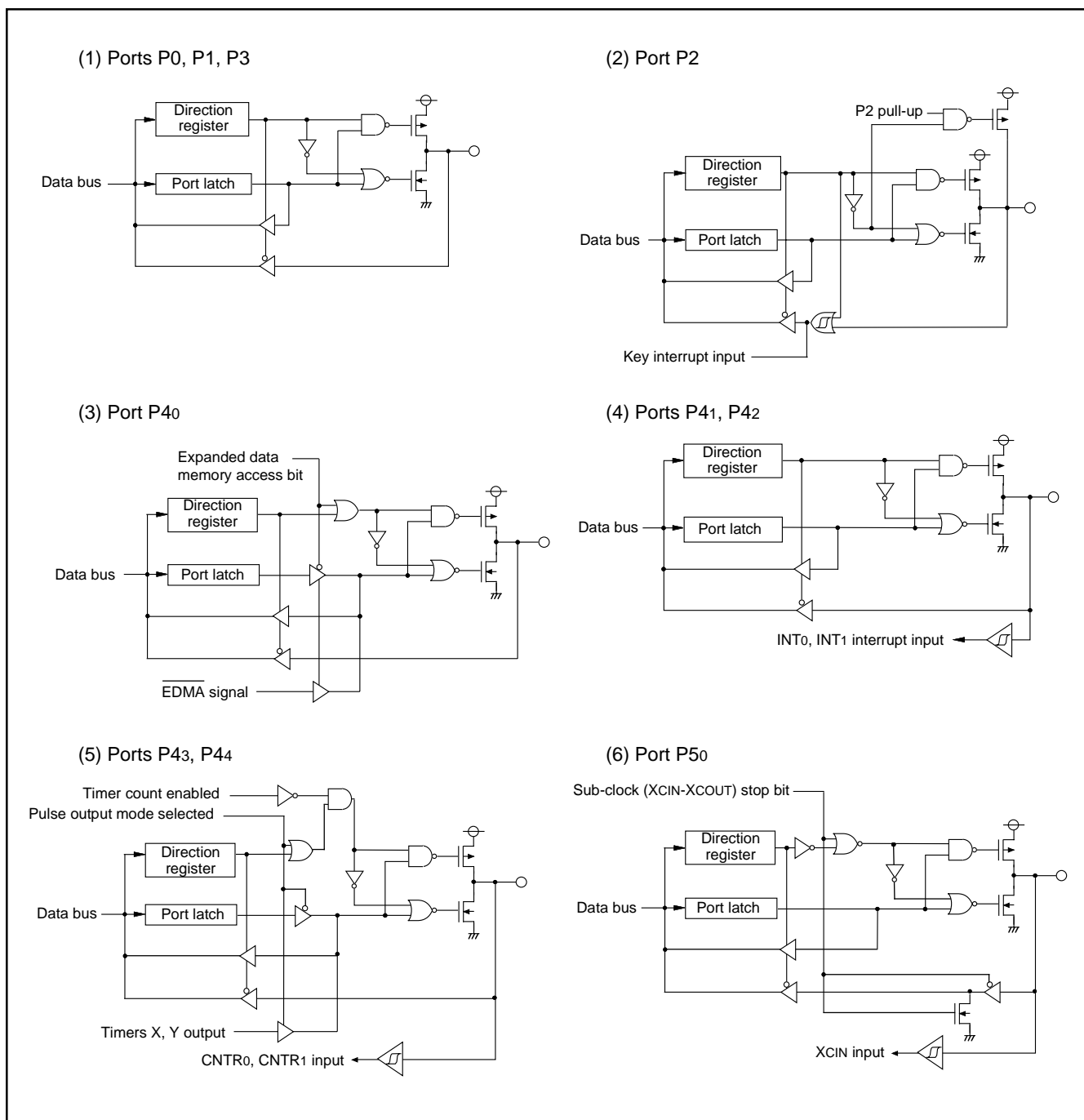


Fig. 12 Port block diagram (1)

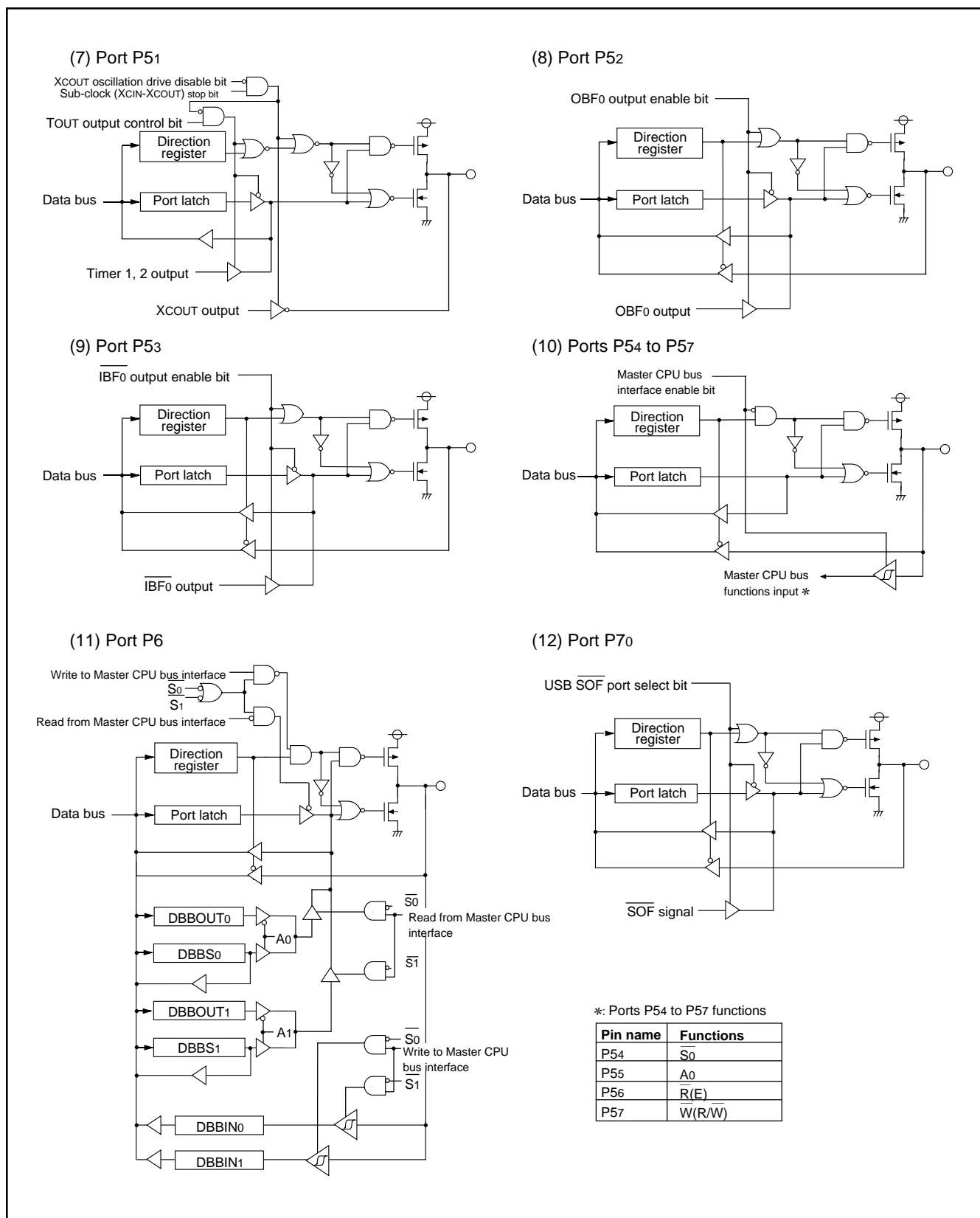


Fig. 13 Port block diagram (2)

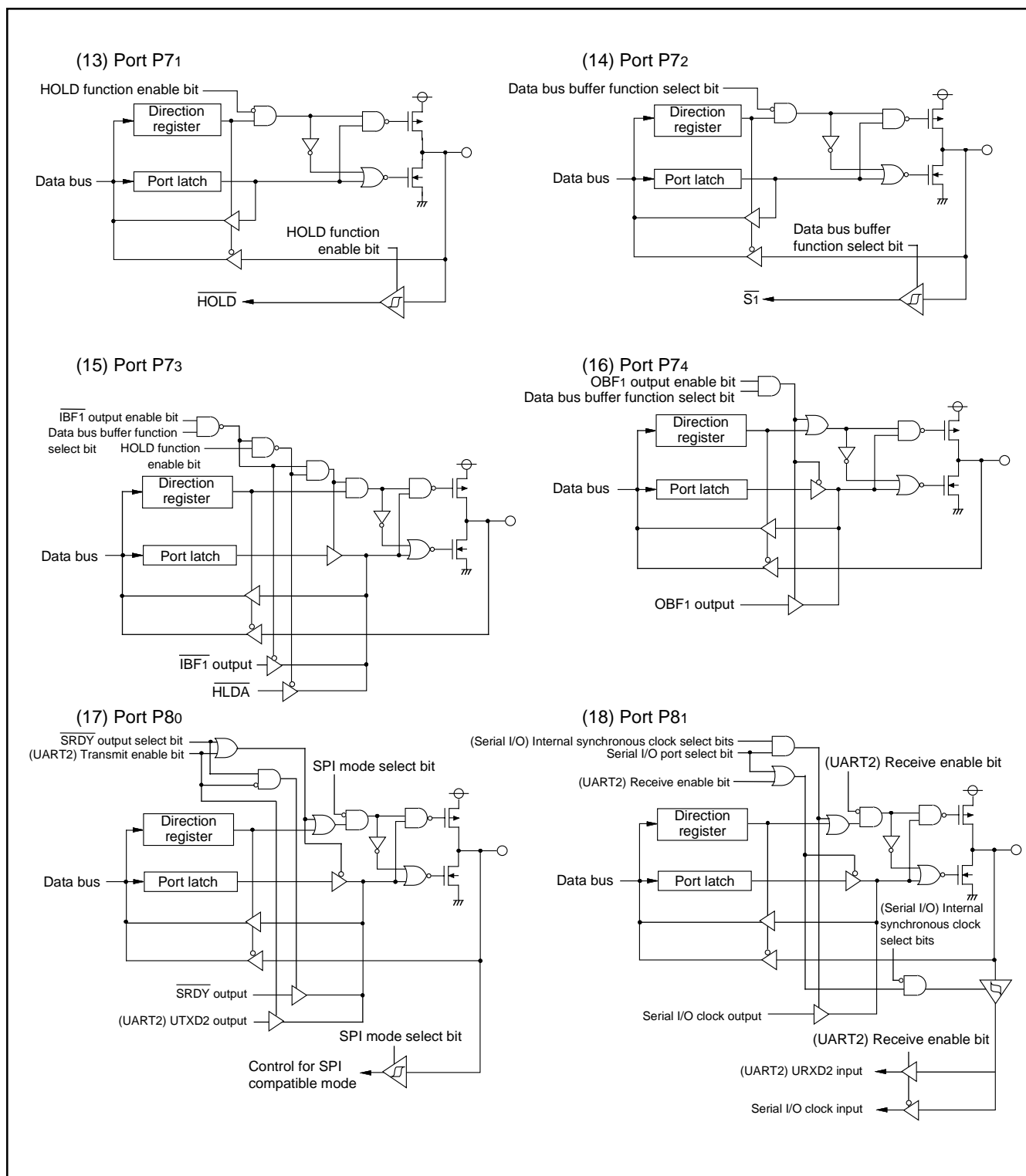


Fig. 14 Port block diagram (3)

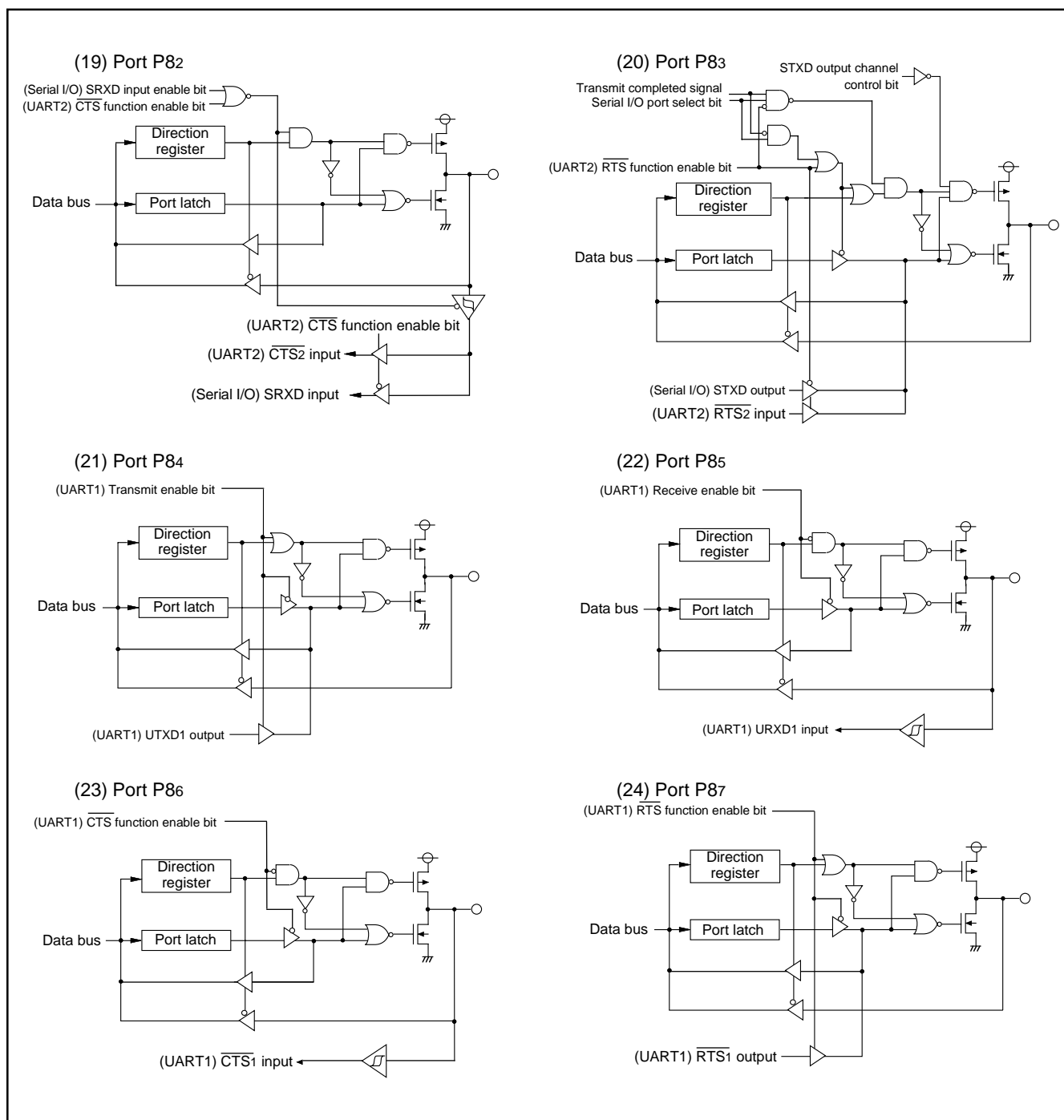


Fig. 15 Port block diagram (4)

## INTERRUPTS

There are twenty-four interrupt sources: five externals, eighteen internals, and one software.

### Interrupt Control

Each interrupt except the BRK instruction interrupt has both an Interrupt Request Bit and an Interrupt Enable Bit, and is controlled by the Interrupt Disable Flag (I). An interrupt occurs if the corresponding Interrupt Request and Enable Bits are "1" and the Interrupt Disable Flag is "0".

Interrupt Enable Bits can be set or cleared by software. Interrupt Request Bits can be cleared by software, but cannot be set by software. Additionally, an active edge of INT1 and INT2 can be selected by using the interrupt edge select register (address 001116); an active edge of CNTR0 can be done by using the timer X mode register (address 002716); an active edge of CNTR1 can be done by using the timer Y mode register (address 002816).

The BRK instruction interrupt and reset cannot be disabled with any flag or bit. The I Flag disables all interrupts except the BRK instruction interrupt and reset. If several interrupts requests occur at the same time, the interrupt with the highest priority is accepted first.

### Interrupt Operation

When an interrupt request occurs, the following operations are automatically performed:

1. The processing being executed is stopped.
2. The contents of the program counter and processor status register are automatically pushed onto the stack.
3. The Interrupt Disable Flag is set and the corresponding interrupt request bit is cleared.
4. The interrupt jump destination address is read from the vector table into the program counter.

### Notes

When setting the followings, the interrupt request bit may be set to "1".

- When setting external interrupt active edge

Related register: Interrupt polarity select register (address 001116)  
 Timer X mode register (address 002716)  
 Timer Y mode register (address 002816)

When not requiring for the interrupt occurrence synchronized with these setting, take the following sequence.

- ①Set the corresponding Interrupt Enable Bit to "0" (disabled).
- ②Set the Interrupt Edge Select Bit (Active Edge Switch Bit).
- ③Set the corresponding Interrupt Request Bit to "0" after 1 or more instructions have been executed.
- ④Set the corresponding Interrupt Enable Bit to "1" (enabled).

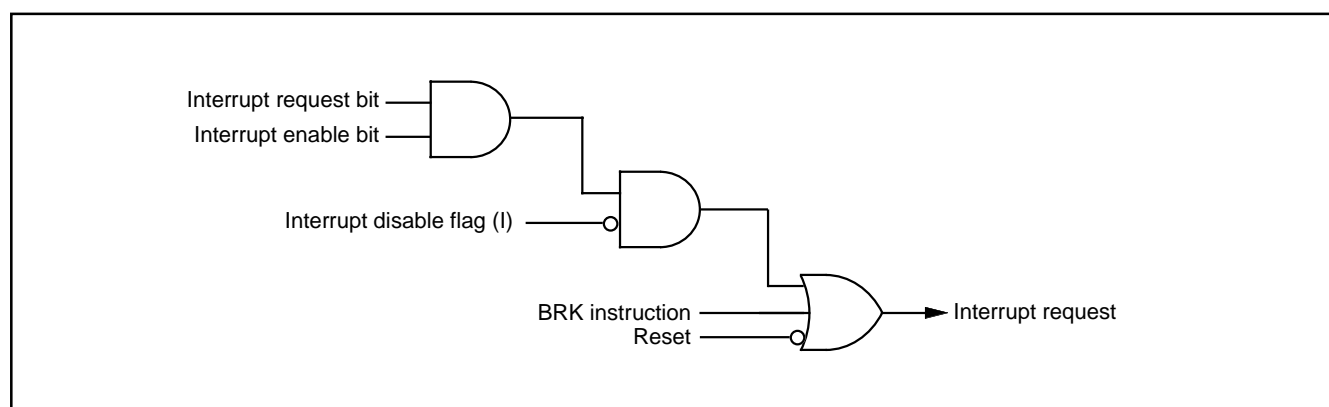


Fig. 16 Interrupt control



**Table 7 Interrupt vector addresses and priority**

Interrupt Source	Priority	Vector Addresses (Note 1)		Interrupt Request Generating Conditions	Remarks
		High	Low		
Reset (Note 3)	1	FFFB <sub>16</sub>	FFFA <sub>16</sub>	At reset	Non-maskable
USB function	2	FFF9 <sub>16</sub>	FFF8 <sub>16</sub>	(Note 2)	
USB SOF	3	FFF7 <sub>16</sub>	FFF6 <sub>16</sub>	At reception of SOF packet	
INT <sub>0</sub>	4	FFF5 <sub>16</sub>	FFF4 <sub>16</sub>	At detection of either rising or falling edge of INT <sub>0</sub> input	External interrupt (active edge selectable)
INT <sub>1</sub>	5	FFF3 <sub>16</sub>	FFF2 <sub>16</sub>	At detection of either rising or falling edge of INT <sub>1</sub> input	External interrupt (active edge selectable)
DMAC <sub>0</sub>	6	FFF1 <sub>16</sub>	FFF0 <sub>16</sub>	At completion of DMAC <sub>0</sub> transfer	
DMAC <sub>1</sub>	7	FFEF <sub>16</sub>	FFEE <sub>16</sub>	At completion of DMAC <sub>1</sub> transfer	
UART <sub>1</sub> receive buffer full	8	FFED <sub>16</sub>	FFEC <sub>16</sub>	At completion of UART <sub>1</sub> reception	
UART <sub>1</sub> transmit	9	FFE <sub>B</sub> <sub>16</sub>	FFE <sub>A</sub> <sub>16</sub>	At completion of UART <sub>1</sub> transmission	
UART <sub>1</sub> summing error	10	FFE9 <sub>16</sub>	FFE8 <sub>16</sub>	At detection of UART <sub>1</sub> summing error	
UART <sub>2</sub> receive buffer full	11	FFE7 <sub>16</sub>	FFE6 <sub>16</sub>	At completion of UART <sub>2</sub> reception	
UART <sub>2</sub> transmit	12	FFE5 <sub>16</sub>	FFE4 <sub>16</sub>	At completion of UART <sub>2</sub> transmission	
UART <sub>2</sub> summing error	13	FFE3 <sub>16</sub>	FFE2 <sub>16</sub>	At detection of UART <sub>2</sub> summing error	
Timer X	14	FFE1 <sub>16</sub>	FFE0 <sub>16</sub>	At timer X underflow	
Timer Y	15	FFDF <sub>16</sub>	FFDE <sub>16</sub>	At timer Y underflow	
Timer 1	16	FFDD <sub>16</sub>	FFDC <sub>16</sub>	At timer 1 underflow	
Timer 2	17	FFDB <sub>16</sub>	FFDA <sub>16</sub>	At timer 2 underflow	
Timer 3	18	FFD9 <sub>16</sub>	FFD8 <sub>16</sub>	At timer 3 underflow	
CNTR <sub>0</sub>	19	FFD7 <sub>16</sub>	FFD6 <sub>16</sub>	At detection of either rising or falling edge of CNTR <sub>0</sub> input	External interrupt (active edge selectable)
CNTR <sub>1</sub>	20	FFD5 <sub>16</sub>	FFD4 <sub>16</sub>	At detection of either rising or falling edge of CNTR <sub>1</sub> input	External interrupt (active edge selectable)
Serial I/O	21	FFD3 <sub>16</sub>	FFD2 <sub>16</sub>	At completion of serial I/O transmission/reception	
Input buffer full	22	FFD1 <sub>16</sub>	FFD0 <sub>16</sub>	At writing to input data bus buffer	
Output buffer empty	23	FFCF <sub>16</sub>	FFCE <sub>16</sub>	At reading from output data bus buffer	
Key input (Key-on wake-up)	24	FFCD <sub>16</sub>	FFCC <sub>16</sub>	At falling of port P2 input logical level AND	External interrupt (falling valid)
BRK instruction	25	FFCB <sub>16</sub>	FFCA <sub>16</sub>	At BRK instruction execution	Non-maskable software interrupt

**Notes 1:** Vector addresses contain interrupt jump destination addresses.

**2:** USB function interrupt occurs owing to an interrupt request of the endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) IN, endpoint x OUT, overrun/underrun, USB reset or suspend/resume.

**3:** Reset functions in the same way as an interrupt with the highest priority.

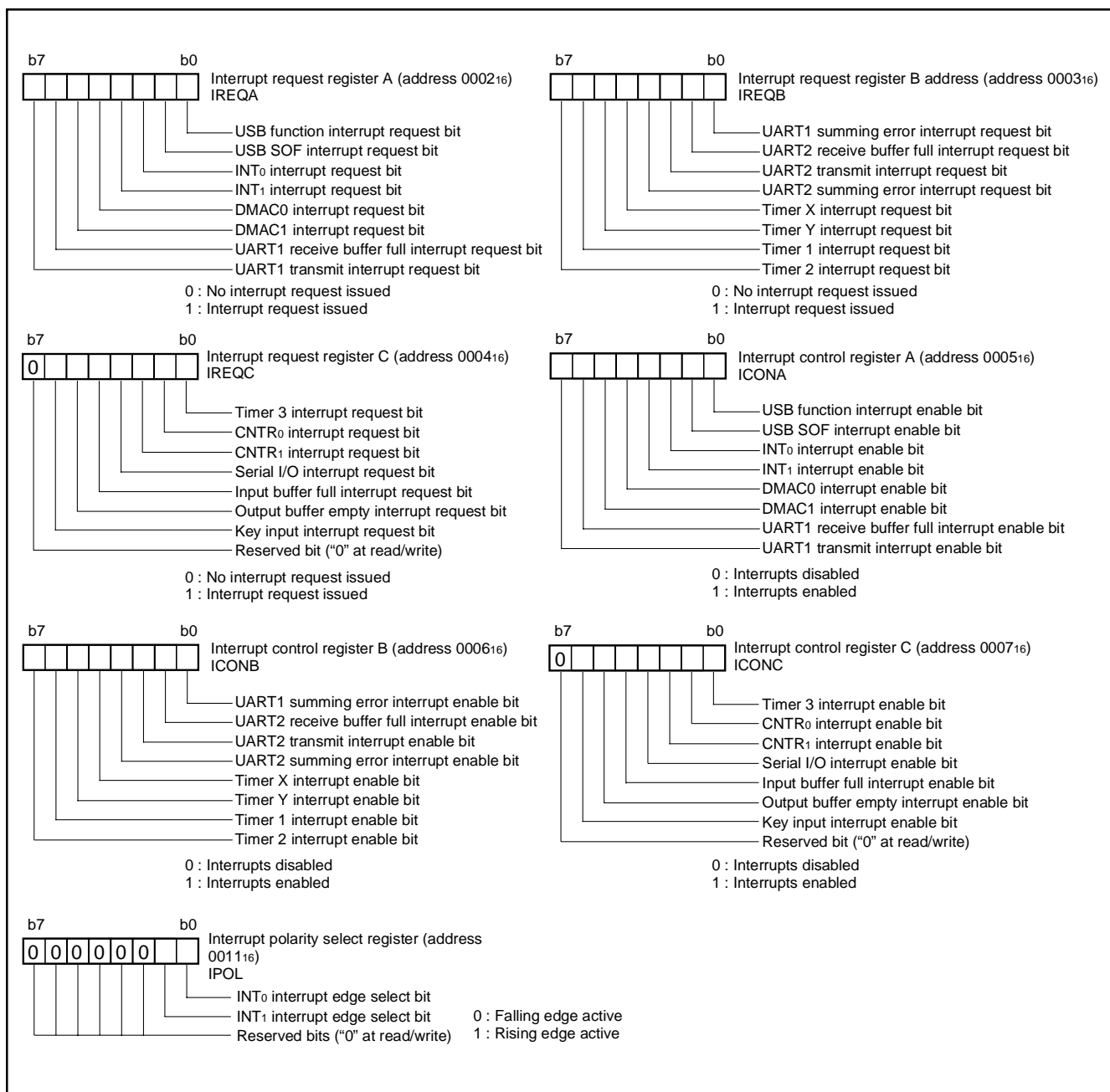


Fig. 17 Structure of interrupt-related registers

### Key Input Interrupt (Key-on Wake-Up)

A key input interrupt request is generated by applying “L” level to any pin of port P2 that have been set to input mode. In other words, it is generated when AND of input level goes from “1” to “0”. An example

of using a key input interrupt is shown in Figure 18, where an interrupt request is generated by pressing one of the keys consisted as an active-low key matrix which inputs to ports P20–P24.

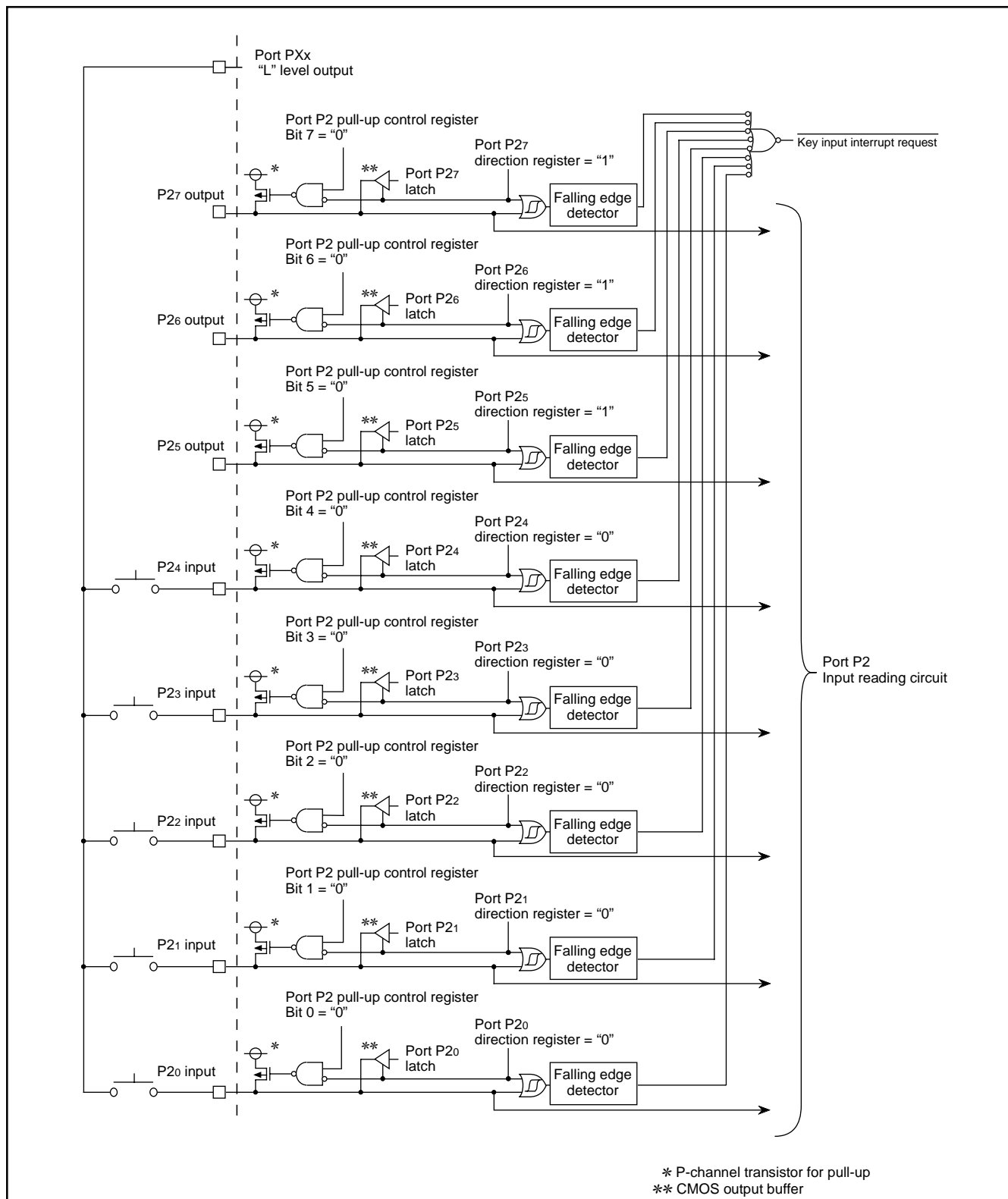


Fig. 18 Connection example when using key input interrupt and port P2 block diagram

### TIMERS

The 7641 group has five timers: timer X, timer Y, timer 1, timer 2, and timer 3. Timer X and timer Y are 16-bit timers, and timer 1, timer 2, and timer 3 are 8-bit timers.

All timers are down count timers. When the timer reaches "00<sub>16</sub>" or "0000<sub>16</sub>", an underflow occurs at the next count pulse and the corresponding timer latch is reloaded into the timer and the count is continued. When a timer underflows, the interrupt request bit corresponding to that timer is set to "1".

Read and write operation on 16-bit timer must be performed for both high and low-order bytes. When reading a 16-bit timer, read the high-order byte first. When writing to a 16-bit timer, write the low-order byte first. The 16-bit timer cannot perform the correct operation when reading during the write operation, or when writing during the read operation.

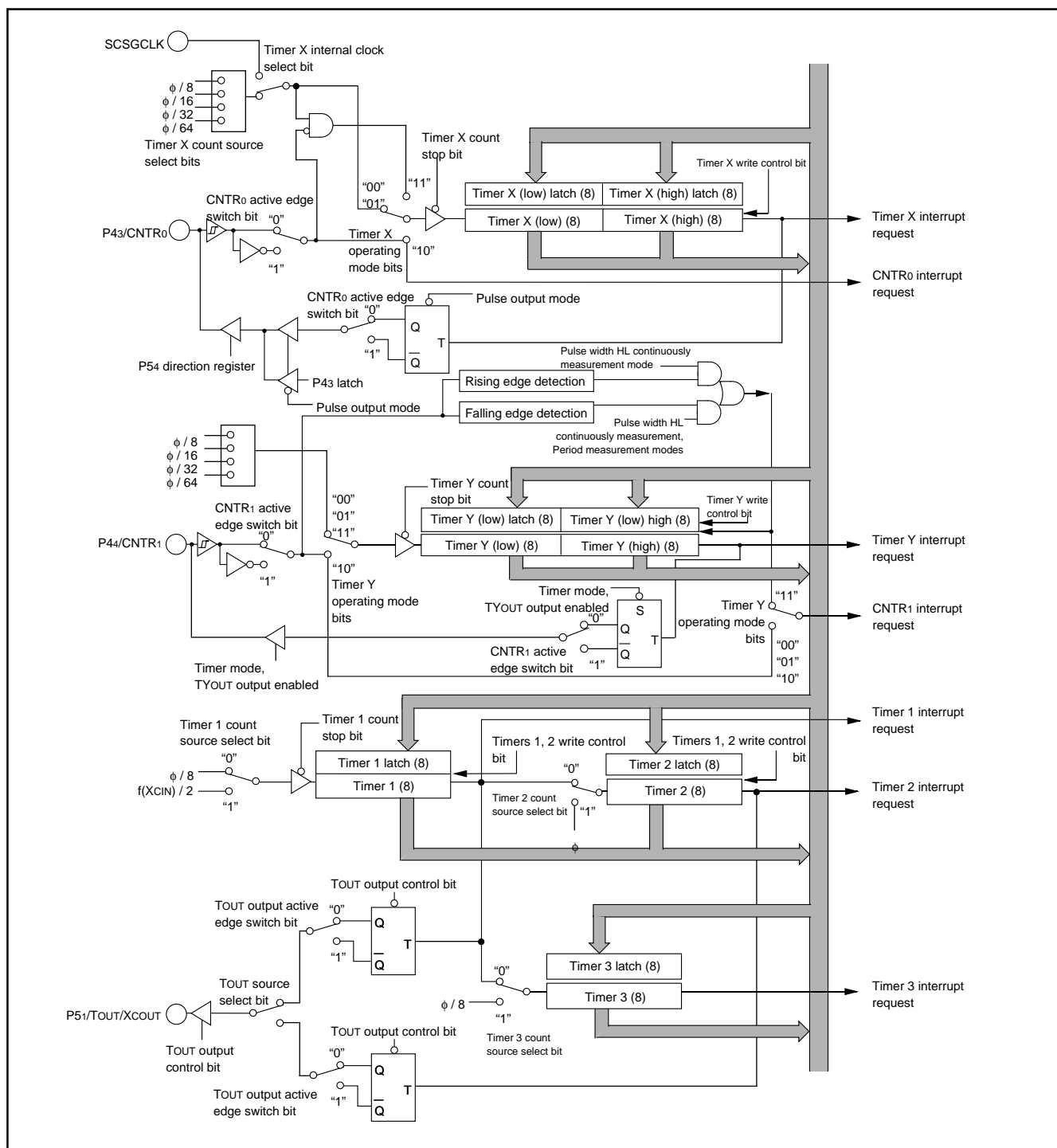


Fig. 19 Timer block diagram

## Timer X

Timer X is a 16-bit timer that can be selected in one of four modes. The timer X's internal clock and count source can be selected and a write control is possible by using the timer X mode register. In all modes the count operation can halt by setting the Timer X Count Stop Bit to "1". Additionally, each timer underflow sets the Interrupt Request Bit to "1".

### (1) Timer Mode

The timer counts the SCSGCLK (Special Count Source Generator) or one of the internal clock  $\phi$  divided by 8, 16, 32, 64.

### (2) Pulse Output Mode

Each time the timer underflows, a signal output from the CNTR0 pin is inverted. Except for this, the operation in pulse output mode is the same as in timer mode.

When the CNTR0 Active Edge Switch Bit is "0", the CNTR0 pin starts pulses output beginning at "H"; when this bit is "1", the CNTR0 pin starts pulses output beginning at "L".

When using a timer in this mode, set the port P43 direction register to output mode.

### (3) Event Counter Mode

The timer counts signals input through the CNTR0 pin. Except for this, the operation in event counter mode is the same as in timer mode.

When the CNTR0 Active Edge Switch Bit is "0", the rising edge is counted; when this bit is "1", the falling edge is counted.

When using a timer in this mode, set the port P43 direction register to input mode.

### (4) Pulse Width Measurement Mode

When the CNTR0 Active Edge Switch Bit is "0", the timer counts while the input signal of CNTR0 pin is at "H"; when it is "1", the timer counts while the input signal of CNTR0 pin is at "L".

The timer counts the SCSGCLK or one of the internal clock  $\phi$  divided by 8, 16, 32, 64 as its count source.

When using a timer in this mode, set the port P43 direction register to input mode.

## Notes

### ● Timer X Write Control

If the Timer X Write Control Bit is "1", when the value is written in the address of timer X, the value is loaded only in the latch. The value in the latch is loaded in timer X after timer X underflows.

If the Timer X Write Control Bit is "0", when the value is written in the address of timer X, the value is loaded in the timer X and the latch at the same time.

When the value is to be written in latch only, unexpected value may be set in the high-order timer if the writing in high-order latch and the underflow of timer X are performed at the same timing.

### ● CNTR0 Interrupt Active Edge Selection

The CNTR0 interrupt active edge depends on the selection of CNTR0 Active Edge Switch Bit.

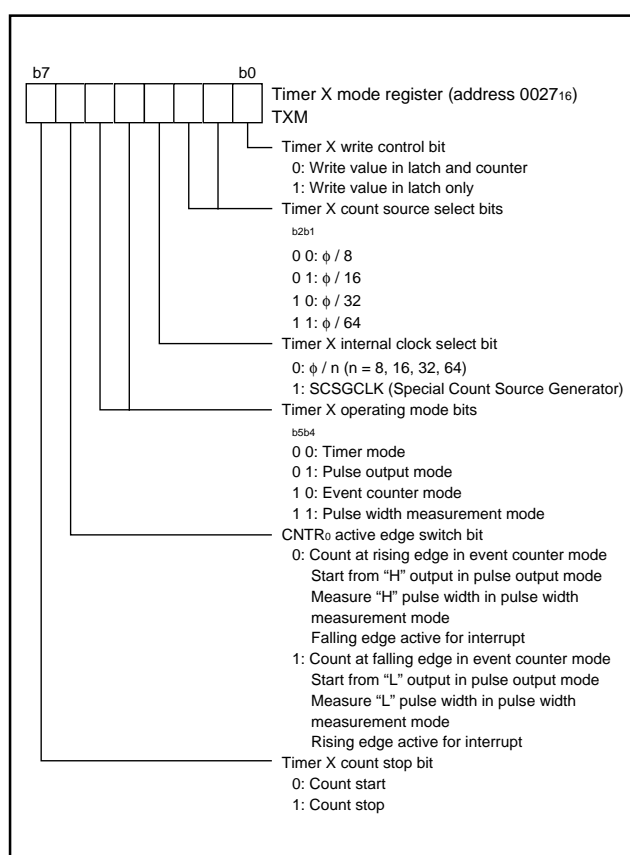


Fig. 20 Structure of timer X mode register

## Timer Y

Timer Y is a 16-bit timer that can be selected in one of four modes.

### (1) Timer Mode

The timer counts one of the internal clock  $\phi$  divided by 8, 16, 32, 64.

#### ● TYOUT Output Function

In the timer mode, a signal of which polarity is inverted each time the timer underflows is output from the CNTR1 pin. This is enabled by setting the Timer Y Output Control Bit to "1".

When the CNTR1 Active Edge Switch Bit is "0", the CNTR1 pin starts pulses output beginning at "H"; when this bit is "1", the CNTR1 pin starts pulses output beginning at "L".

When using a timer in this mode, set the port P44 direction register to output mode.

### (2) Period Measurement Mode

CNTR1 interrupt request is generated at a rising/falling edge of CNTR1 pin input signal. Simultaneously, the value in timer Y latch is reloaded in timer Y and timer Y continues counting down. Except for the aforementioned operation, the operation in period measurement mode is the same as in timer mode. (The TYOUT output function is not usable.)

The timer value just before the reloading at rising/falling of CNTR1 pin input signal is retained until the timer Y is read once after the reload.

The rising/falling timing of CNTR1 pin input signal is found by CNTR1 interrupt.

When the CNTR1 Active Edge Switch Bit is "0", the falling edge is detected; when this bit is "1", the rising edge is detected.

When using a timer in this mode, set the port P44 direction register to input mode.

### (3) Event Counter Mode

The timer counts signals input through the CNTR1 pin.

Except for this, the operation in event counter mode is the same as in timer mode. (The TYOUT output function is not usable.)

When the CNTR1 Active Edge Switch Bit is "0", the rising edge is counted; when this bit is "1", the falling edge is counted.

When using a timer in this mode, set the port P44 direction register to input mode.

### (4) Pulse Width HL Continuously Measurement Mode

CNTR1 interrupt request is generated at both rising and falling edges of CNTR1 pin input signal. Except for this, the operation in pulse width HL continuously measurement mode is the same as in period measurement mode.

When using a timer in this mode, set the port P44 direction register to input mode.

## ■ Notes

#### ● Timer Y Write Control

If the Timer Y Write Control Bit is "1", when the value is written in the address of timer Y, the value is loaded only in the latch. The value in the latch is loaded in timer Y after timer Y underflows.

If the Timer Y Write Control Bit is "0", when the value is written in the address of timer Y, the value is loaded in the timer Y and the latch at the same time.

When the value is to be written in latch only, unexpected value may be set in the high-order timer if the writing in high-order latch and the underflow of timer Y are performed at the same timing.

#### ● CNTR1 Interrupt Active Edge Selection

The CNTR1 interrupt active edge depends on the selection of CNTR1 Active Edge Switch Bit.

However, in pulse width HL continuously measurement mode, CNTR1 interrupt request is generated at both rising and falling edges of CNTR1 pin input signal regardless of the setting of CNTR1 Active Edge Switch Bit.

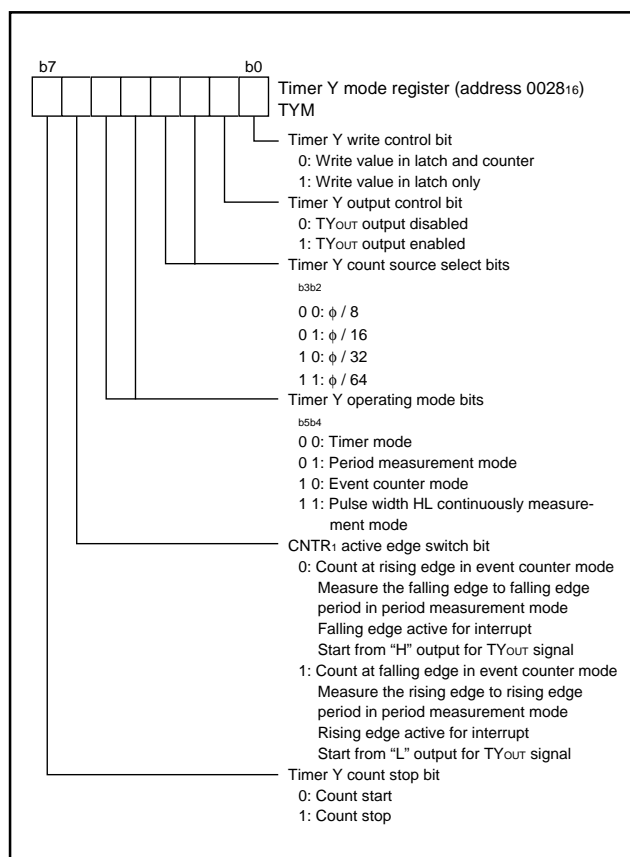


Fig. 21 Structure of timer Y mode register

### Timer 1, Timer 2, Timer 3

Timer 1, timer 2, and timer 3 are 8-bit timers. The count source for each timer can be selected by timer 123 mode register.

#### ● Timers 1, 2 Write Control

When the Timers 1, 2 Write Control Bit is "1" and the values are written in the address of timers 1 and 2, the values are loaded only in their latches. The values in the latches are loaded in timers 1 and 2 after timers 1 and 2 underflow.

When the Timers 1, 2 Write Control Bit is "0" and the values are written in the address of timers 1 and 2, the values are loaded in the timers 1 and 2 and their latches at the same time.

#### ● Timers 1, 2 Output Control

A signal of which polarity is inverted each time the timer selected by the TOUT Factor Select Bit underflows is output from the TOUT pin. This is enabled by setting the TOUT Output Control Bit to "1".

When the TOUT Output Active Edge Switch Bit is "0", the TOUT pin starts pulses output beginning at "H"; when this bit is "1", the TOUT pin starts pulses output beginning at "L".

When using a timer in this mode, set the port P51 direction register to output mode.

### ■ Notes

#### ● Timer 1 to Timer 3

Switching of the count sources of timers 1 to 3 does not affect the values of reload latches. However, that may make count operation started. Therefore, write values again in the order of timers 1, 2 and then timer 3 after their count sources have been switched.

#### ● Timers 1, 2 Write Control

When the value is to be written in latch only, unexpected value may be set in the timer if the writing in the latch and the timer underflow are performed at the same timing.

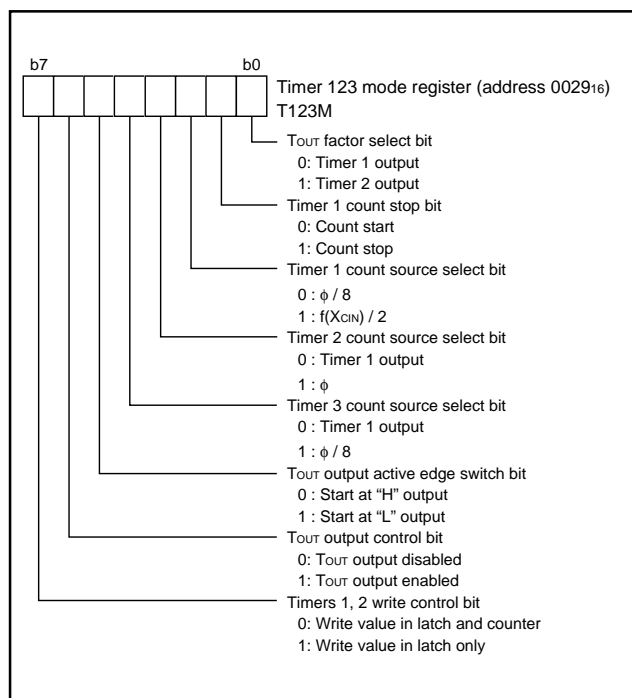


Fig. 22 Structure of timer 123 mode register

## SERIAL INTERFACE

### Serial I/O

The serial I/O can be used only for clock synchronous serial I/O. The transmitter and the receiver must use the same clock. If the internal clock is used, transfer is started by a write signal to the serial I/O shift register.

#### [Serial I/O Control Register 1 (SIOCON1)] 002B16

#### [Serial I/O Control Register 2 (SIOCON2)] 002C16

Each of the serial I/O control registers 1 and 2 contains eight bits which control various serial I/O functions.

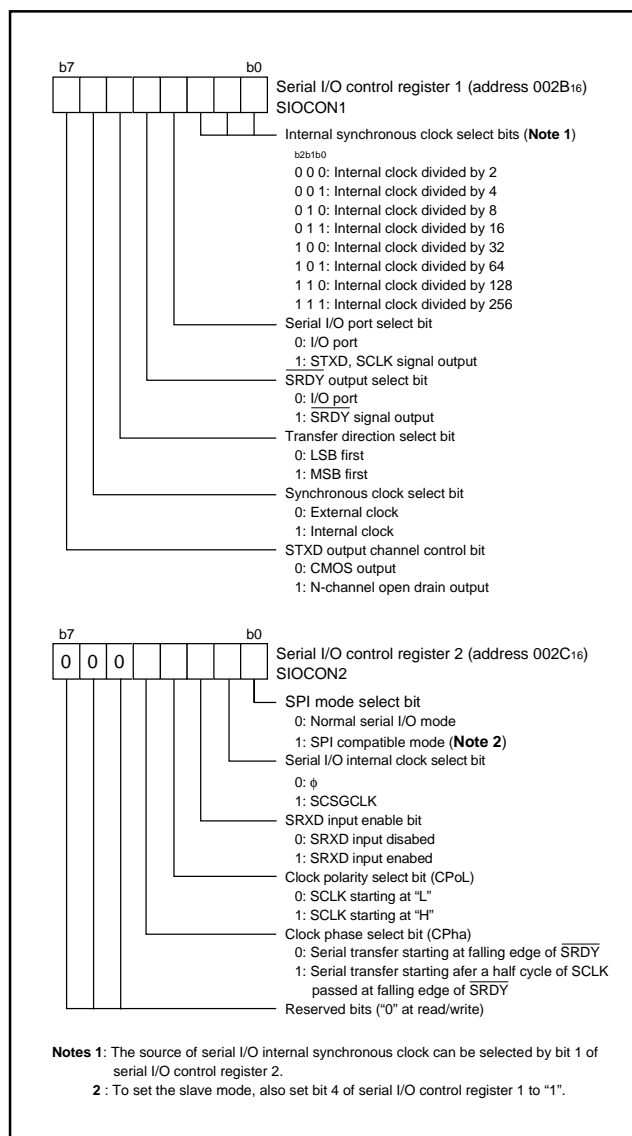


Fig. 23 Structure of serial I/O control registers 1, 2



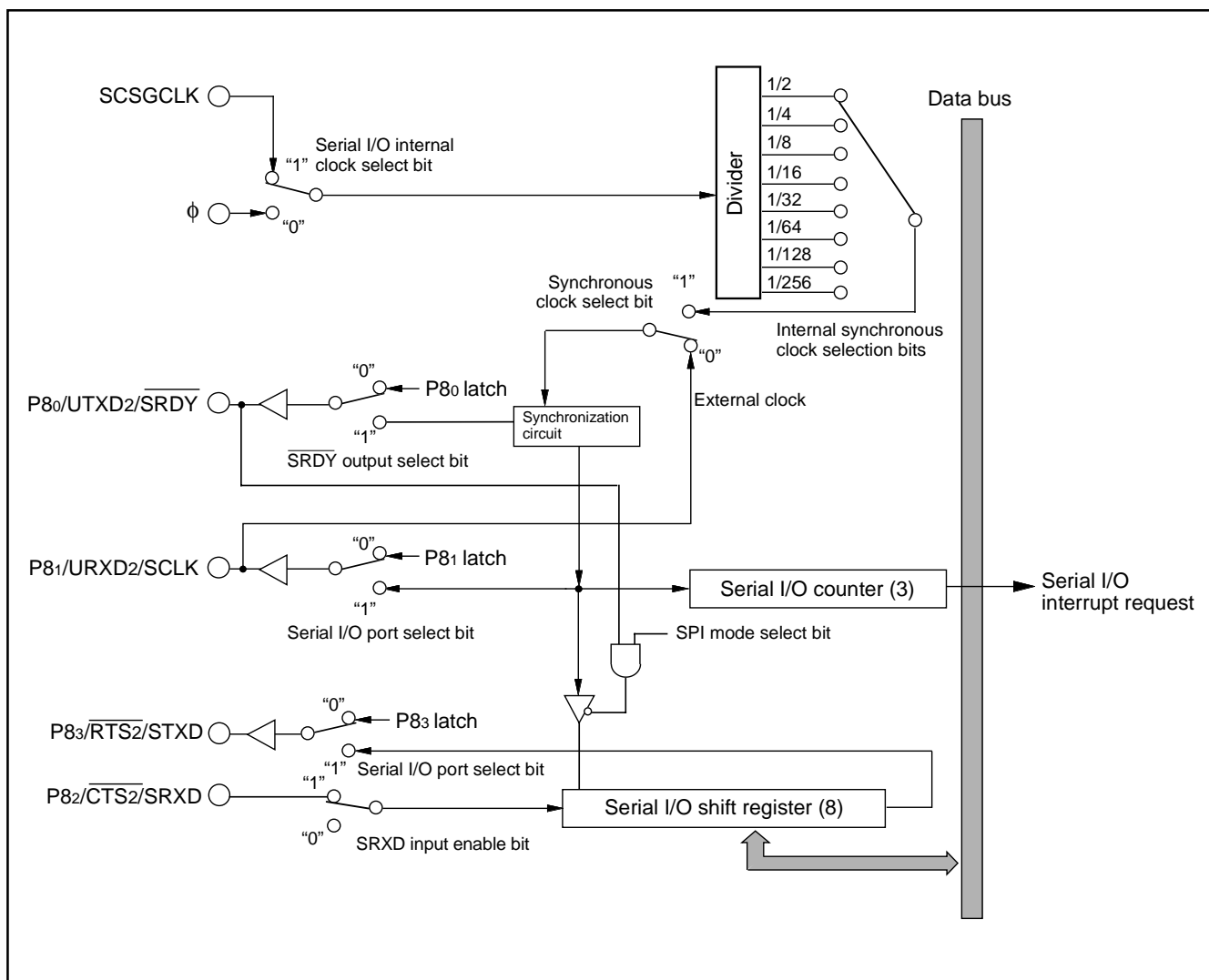


Fig. 24 Block diagram of serial I/O

● Serial I/O Normal Operation

The serial I/O counter is set to "7" by writing operation to the serial I/O shift register (address 002A16). When the SRDY Output Select bit is "1", the SRDY pin goes "L" after that writing. On the negative edge of the transfer clock the SRDY pin returns "H" and the data of the first bit is transmitted from the STXD pin. The remaining data are done from the STXD pin bit by bit on each falling edge of the transfer clock.

Additionally, the data is latched from the SRXD pin on each rising edge of the transfer clock and then the contents of the serial I/O shift register are shifted by one bit.

When the internal system clock is selected as the transfer clock, the followings occur at counting eight transfer clocks:

- The serial I/O counter reaches "0"
- The transfer clock halts at "H"
- The serial I/O interrupt request bit is set to "1"
- The STXD pin goes a high-impedance state after an 8-bit transfer is completed.

When the external clock is selected as the transfer clock, the followings occur at counting eight transfer clocks:

- The serial I/O counter reaches "0"
- The serial I/O interrupt request bit is set to "1"

In this case, the transfer clock needs to be controlled by the external source because the transfer clock does not halt. Additionally, the STXD pin does not go a high-impedance state after an 8-bit transfer is completed.

Figure 25 shows serial I/O timing.

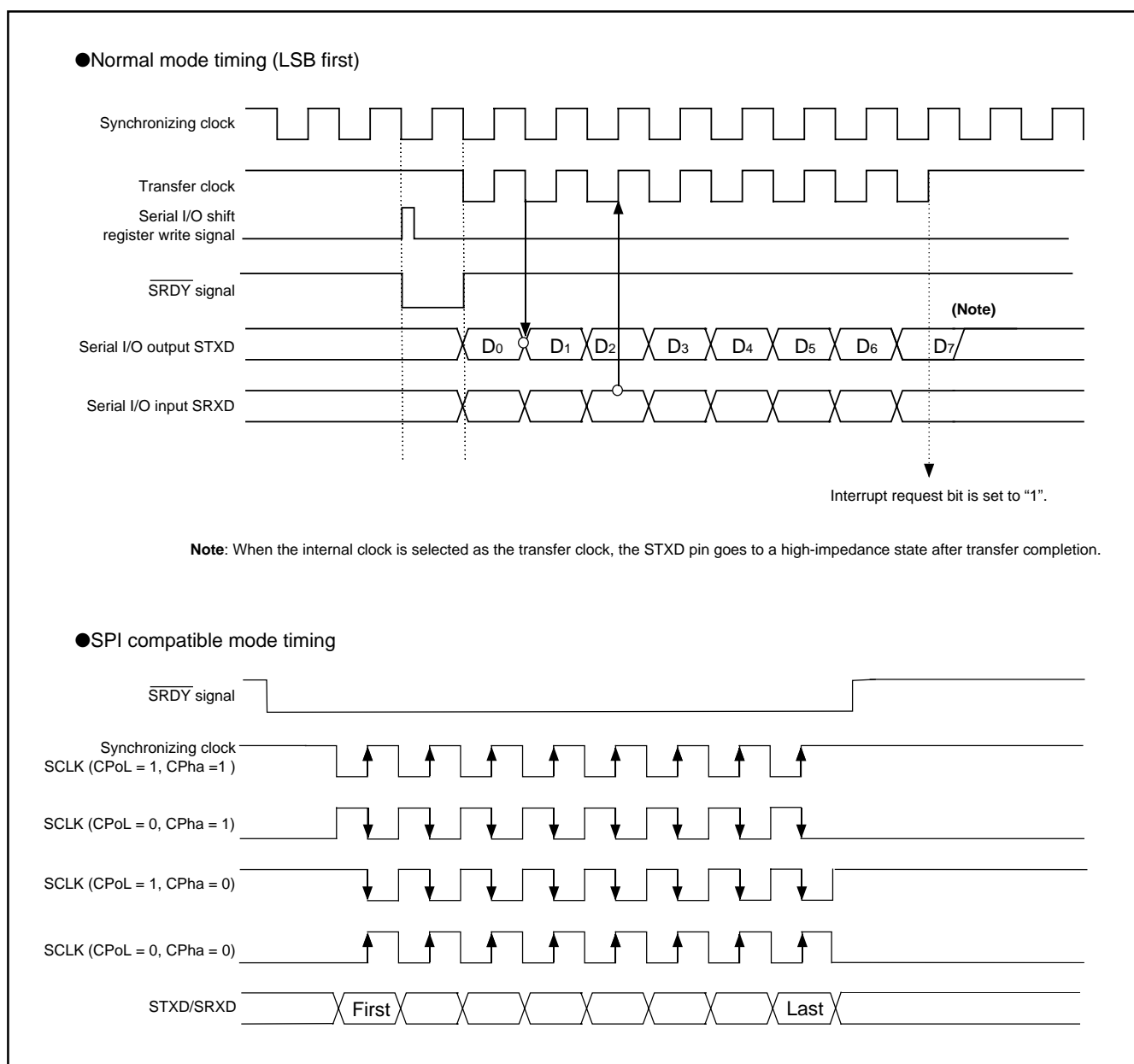


Fig. 25 Serial I/O timing

**● SPI Compatible Mode Operation**

Setting the SPI Mode Select Bit (bit 0 of SIOCON2) puts the serial I/O in SPI compatible mode. The Synchronous Clock Select Bit (bit 6 of SIOCON1) determines whether the serial I/O is an SPI master or slave. When the external clock is selected ("0"), the serial I/O is in slave mode; When the internal clock is selected ("1"), the serial I/O is in master mode.

In SPI compatible mode the SRXD pin functions as a MISO (Master In/Slave Out) pin and the STXD pin functions as a MOSI (Master Out/Slave In) pin.

In slave mode the transmit data is output from the MISO pin and the receive data is input from the MISO pin. The  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  pin functions as the chip-select signal input pin from an external.

In master mode the transmit data is output from the MOSI pin and the receive data is input from the MISO pin. The  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  pin functions as the chip-select signal output pin to an external.

**• Slave Mode Operation**

In slave mode of SPI compatible mode 4 types of clock polarity and clock phase can be usable by bits 3 and 4 of serial I/O control register 2.

If the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  pin is held "H", the shift clock is inhibited, the serial I/O counter is set to "7". If the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  pin is held "L", then the shift clock will start.

Make sure during transfer to maintain the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  input at "L" and not to write data to the serial I/O counter.

Figure 25 shows the serial I/O timing.

## UART1, UART2

The UART consists of two channels: UART1 and UART2. Each has a dedicated timer provided to generate transfer clocks and operates independently. Both UART1 and UART2 have the same functions.

Twelve serial data transfer formats can be selected, and the transfer formats used by a transmitter and receiver must be identical.

The transmit and receive shift registers each have a buffer, but the two buffers have the same address in a memory. Since the shift register cannot be written to or read from directly, transmit data is written to the transmit buffer register, and receive data is read from the receive buffer register.

The transmit buffer register can also hold the next data to be transmitted, and the receive buffer register can hold a character while the next character is being received.

The transfer speed (baud rate) is expression as follows:

$$\text{Transfer speed (baud rate)} = f_i / \{(n + 1) \times 16\}$$

n: The contents of UARTx (x = 1, 2) baud rate generator

f<sub>i</sub>: Using UART clock prescaling select bits, select any one of  $\phi$ ,  $\phi/8$ ,  $\phi/32$ ,  $\phi/256$ , SCSGCLK, SCSGCLK/8, SCSGCLK/32 and SCSGCLK/256

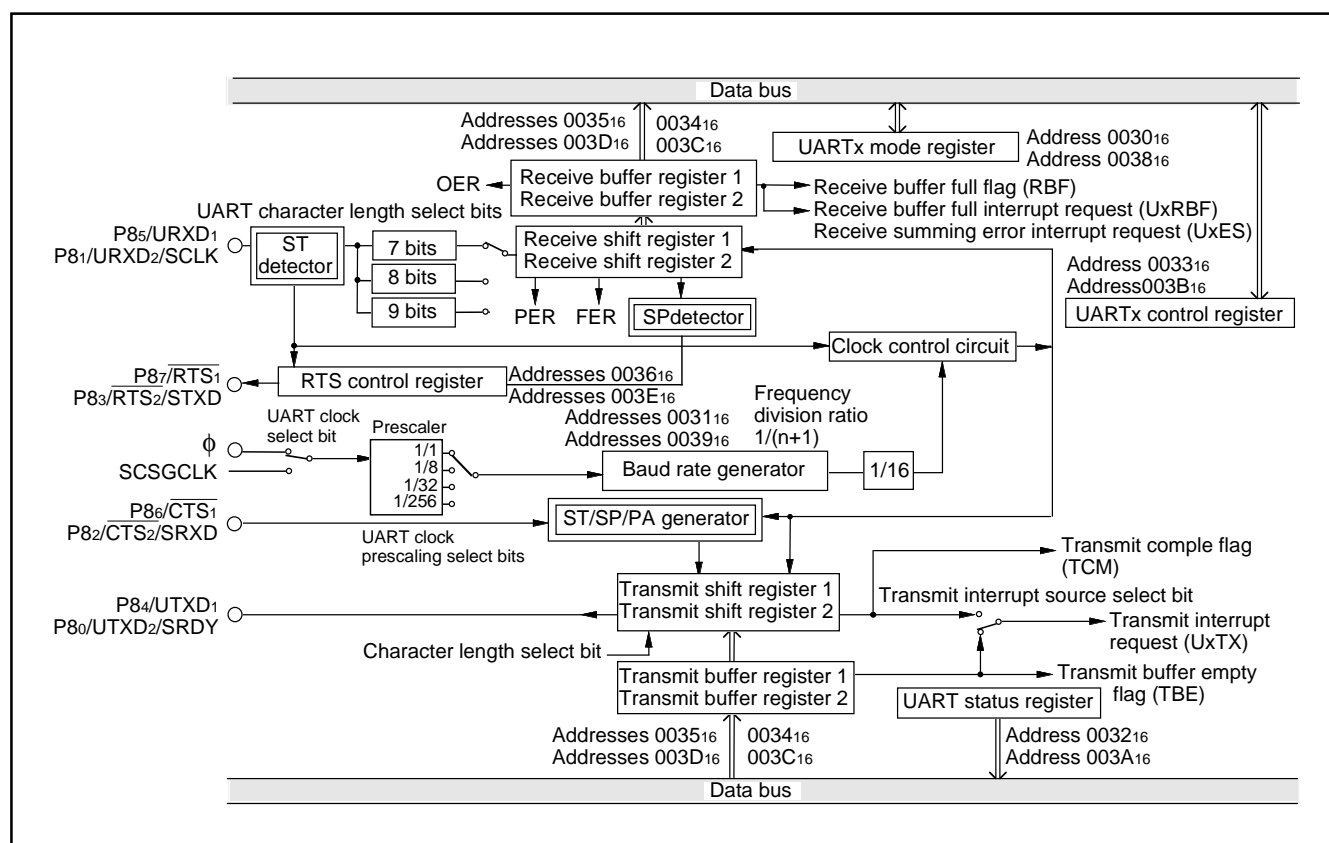


Fig. 26 UARTx (x = 1, 2) block diagram

### ● UART Transmit Operation

Transmission starts when the Transmit Enable Bit is "1" and the Transmit Buffer Empty Flag is "0". Additionally, when  $\overline{\text{CTS}}$  function enabled, the  $\overline{\text{CTS}}$  pin must be "L" to be started. The data in which Start Bit and Stop Bit or Parity Bit are also added is transmitted from the low-order byte sequentially. When using 9-bit character length, set the data into the UARTx transmit buffer register 2 (high-order byte) first before the UARTx transmit buffer register 1 (low-order byte).

Once the transmission starts, the  $\overline{\text{Transmit Enable Bit}}$ , the  $\overline{\text{Transmit Buffer Empty Flag}}$  and the  $\overline{\text{CTS}}$  pin state (when this is enabled) could not be checked until the transmission in progress has ended.

Transmission requires the following setup:

- (1) Define a baud rate by setting a value  $n$  ( $n = 0$  to  $255$ ) into UARTx baud rate generator (addresses  $003116$ ,  $003916$ ).
- (2) Set the Transmit Initialization Bit (bit 2 of  $\text{UxCON}$ ) to "1". This will set the UARTx status register to "0316".
- (3) Select the interrupt source with the Transmit Interrupt Source Select Bit (bit 4 of  $\text{UxCON}$ ).
- (4) Configure the data format and clock selection by setting the UARTx mode register.
- (5) Set the  $\overline{\text{CTS}}$  Function Enable Bit (bit 5 of  $\text{UxCON}$ ) if  $\overline{\text{CTS}}$  function will be used.
- (6) Set the Transmit Enable Bit (bit 0 of  $\text{UxCON}$ ) to "1".

If updating a value of UARTx baud rate generator while the data is being transmitted, be sure to disable the transmission before updating. If the former data remains in the UARTx transmit buffer registers 1 and 2 at retransmission, an undefined data might be output.

### ● UART Receive Operation

Reception is enabled when the Receive Enable Bit is "1". Detection of the start bit makes transfer clocks generated and the data reception starts in the LSB first.

When using 9-bit character length, read the received data from the UARTx receive buffer register 2 (high-order byte) first before the UARTx receive buffer register 1 (low-order byte).

Reception requires the following setup:

- (1) Define a baud rate by setting a value  $n$  ( $n = 0$  to  $255$ ) into UARTx baud rate generator (addresses  $003116$ ,  $003916$ ).
- (2) Set the Receive Initialization Bit (bit 3 of  $\text{UxCON}$ ) to "1".
- (3) Configure the data format and clock selection by setting the UARTx mode register.
- (4) Set the  $\overline{\text{RTS}}$  Function Enable Bit (bit 5 of  $\text{UxCON}$ ) if  $\overline{\text{RTS}}$  function will be used.
- (5) Set the Receive Enable Bit (bit 1 of  $\text{UxCON}$ ) to "1".

### ● $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ (Clear-to-Send) Function

As a transmitter, the UART can be configured to recognize the Clear-to-Send ( $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ ) input as a handshaking signal. This is enabled by setting the  $\overline{\text{CTS}}$  Function Enable Bit (bit 5 of  $\text{UxCON}$ ) to "1". If  $\overline{\text{CTS}}$  function is enabled, even when transmission is enabled and the UARTx transmit buffer register is filled with the data, the transmission never starts; but it will start when inputting "L" to the  $\overline{\text{CTS}}$  pin.

Figures 27 and 28 show the UARTx transmit timings.

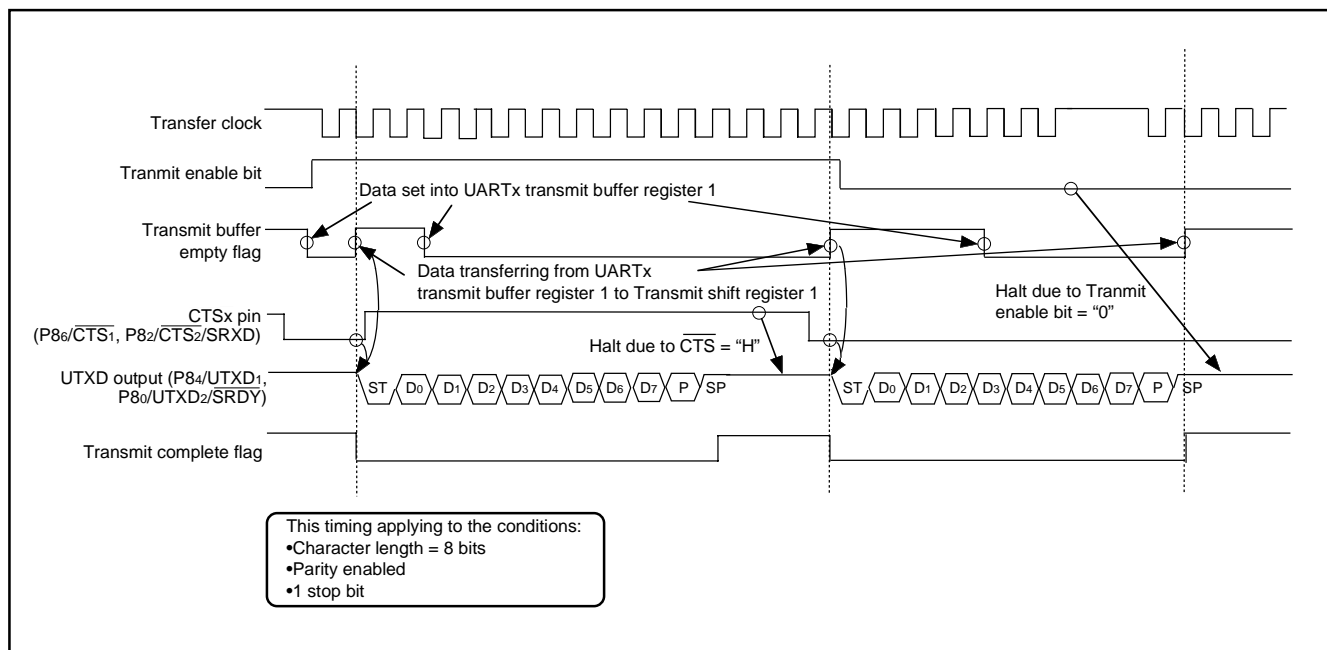


Fig. 27 UARTx transmit timing ( $\overline{\text{CTS}}$  function enabled)

● **RTS (Request-to-Send) Function**

As a receiver, the UART can be configured to generate the Request-to-Send (RTS<sub>x</sub>) handshaking signal. This is enabled by setting the RTS Function Enable Bit (bit 6 of UxCON) to "1".

When reception is enabled, that is the Receive Enable Bit is "1", the RTS<sub>x</sub> pin goes "L" to inform a transmitter that reception is possible. The RTS<sub>x</sub> pin goes "H" at reception starting and does "L" at receiving of the last bit.

The delay time from the reception of the last stop bit to the assertion of RTS<sub>x</sub> is selectable using the RTS Assertion Delay Count Select Bits.

When the Receive Enable Bit is set to "0" or the Receive initialization bit is set to "1", the RTS<sub>x</sub> pin goes "H". Even when the Receive Enable Bit is set to "1", the RTS<sub>x</sub> pin goes "H" if detecting an invalid start bit.

Figure 29 shows the UART<sub>x</sub> receive timing.

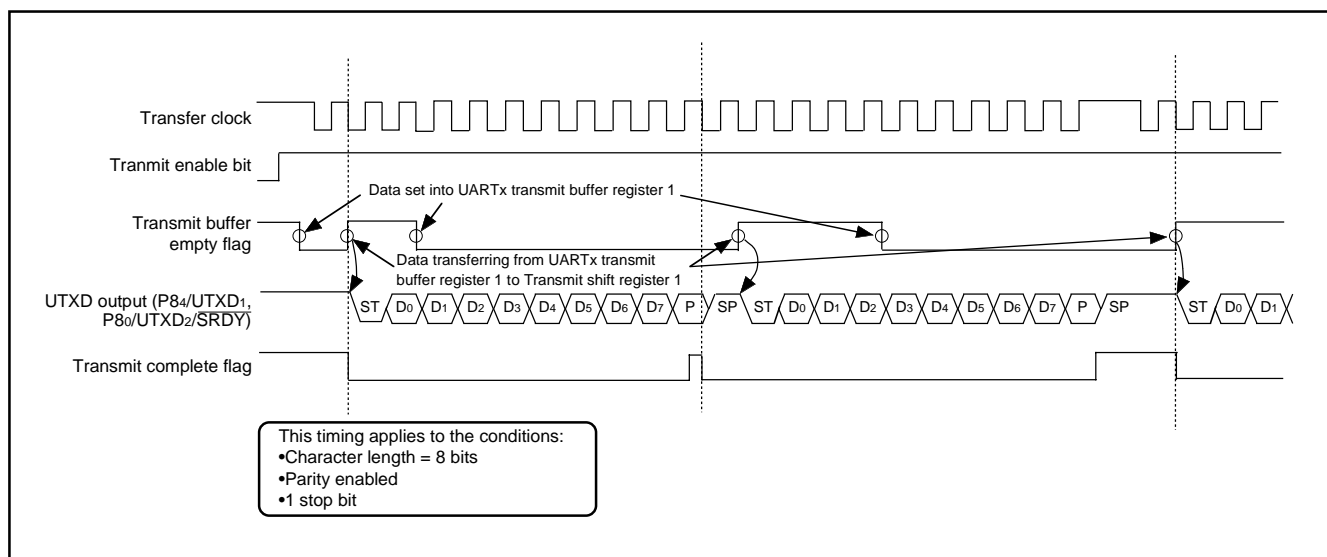


Fig. 28 UARTx transmit timing (CTS function disabled)

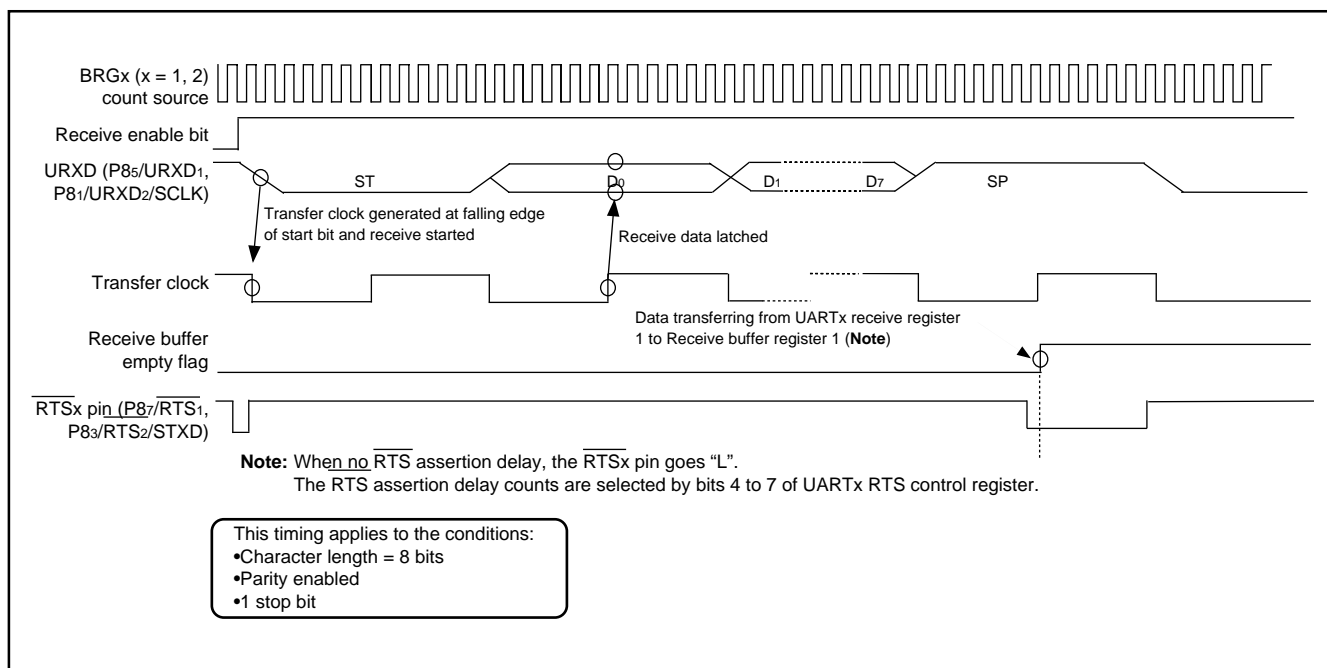


Fig. 29 UARTx transmit timing (RTS function enabled)

### ● UART Address Mode

The UART address mode is intended for use to communicate between the specified MCUs in a multi-MCU environment. The UART address mode can be used in either an 8-bit or 9-bit character length. An address is identified by the MSB of the incoming data being "1". The bit is "0" for non-address data.

When the MSB of the incoming data is "0" in the UART address mode, the Receive Buffer Full Flag is set to "1", but the Receive Buffer Full Interrupt Request Bit is not set to "1". When the MSB of the incoming data is "1", normal receive operation is performed. In the UART address mode an overrun error is not detected for reception of the 2nd and onward bytes. An occurrence of framing error or parity error sets the Summing Error Interrupt Request Bit to "1" and the data is not received independent of its MSB contents.

Usage of UART address mode is explained as follows:

- (1) Set the UART Address Mode Enable Bit to "1".
- (2) Sends the address data of a slave MCU first from a host MCU to all slave MCUs. The MSB of address data must be "1" and the remaining 7 bits specify the address.
- (3) The all slave MCUs automatically check for the received data whether its stop bit is valid or not, and whether the parity error occurs or not (when the parity enabled). If these errors occur, the Framing Error Flag or Parity Error Flag and the Summing Error Flag are set to "1". Then, the Summing Error Interrupt Request Bit is also set to "1".
- (4) When received data has no error, the all slave MCUs must judge whether the address of the received address data matches with their own addresses by a program. After the MSB being "1" is received, the UART Address Mode Enable Bit is automatically set to "0" (disabled).
- (5) The UART Address Mode Enable Bit of the slave MCUs which have been judged that the address does not match with them must be set to "1" (enabled) again by a program to disable reception of the following data.
- (6) Transmit the data of which MSB is "0" from the host MCU. The slave MCUs disabling the UART address mode receive the data, and their Receive Buffer Full Flags and the Receive Buffer Full Interrupt Request Bits are set to "1". For the other slave MCUs enabling the UART address mode, their Receive Buffer Full Flag are set to "1", but their Receive Buffer Full Interrupt Request Bits are not set to "1".
- (7) An overrun error cannot be detected after the first data has been received in UART Address Mode. Accordingly, even if the slave MCUs does not read the received data and the next data has been received, an overrun error does not occur.

Thus, a communication between a host MCU and the specified MCU can be realized.

### [UARTx (x = 1, 2) Mode Register (UxMOD)] 0030<sub>16</sub>, 0038<sub>16</sub>

The UART x mode register consists of 8 bits which set a transfer data format and an used clock.

### [UARTx (x = 1, 2) Baud Rate Generator (UxBRG)] 0031<sub>16</sub>, 0039<sub>16</sub>

The UARTx baud rate generator determines the baud rate for transfer.

The baud rate generator divides the frequency of the count source by  $1/(n + 1)$ , where n is the value written to the baud rate generator.

The reset cannot affect the contents of baud rate generator.

### [UARTx (x = 1, 2) Status Register (UxSTS)] 0032<sub>16</sub>, 003A<sub>16</sub>

The read-only UARTx status register consists of seven flags (bits 0 to 6) which indicate the UART operating status and various errors.

When the UART address mode is enabled, the setting and clearing conditions of each flag differ from the following explanations. These differences are explained in section "UART Address Mode".

#### •Transmit complete flag (TCM)

In the case where no data is contained in the transmit buffer register, the Transmit Complete Flag (TCM) is set to "1" when the last bit in the transmit shift register is transmitted.

The TCM flag is also set to "1" at reset or initialization by setting the Transmit Initialization Bit (bit 2 of UxCON). It is set to "0" when transmission starts, and it is kept during the transmission.

#### •Transmit buffer empty flag (TBE)

The Transmit Buffer Empty Flag (TBE) is set to "1" when the contents of the transmit buffer register are loaded into the transmit shift register. The TBE flag is also set "1" at the hardware reset or initialization by setting the Transmit Initialization Bit. It is set to "0" when a write operation is performed to the low-order byte of the transmit buffer register.

#### •Receive buffer full flag (RBF)

The Receive Buffer Full Flag (RBF) is set to "1" when the last stop bit of the data is received. The RBF flag is set to "0" when the low-order byte of the receive buffer register is read, at the hardware reset or initialization by setting the Transmit Initialization Bit.

**●Receive Errors**

If there is an error, it is detected at the same time that data is transferred from the receive shift register to the receive buffer register, and the Receive Buffer Full Flag is set to "1". The all error flags PER, FER, OER and SER are cleared to "0" when the UARTx status register is read, at the hardware reset or initialization by setting the Transmit Initialization Bit.

The Summing Error Flag (SER) is set to "1" when any one of the PER, FER and OER is set to "1".

The Parity Error Flag (PER) is set to "1" when the sum total of 1s of received data and the parity does not correspond with the selection with the Parity Select Bit (PMD). It is enabled only if the Parity Enable Bit (bit 5 of UxMOD) is set to "1".

The Framing Error Flag (FER) is set to "1" when the number of stop bit of the received data does not correspond with the selection with the Stop Bit Length Select Bit (STB).

The Overrun Flag (OER) is set to "1" if the previous data in the low-order byte of the receive buffer register 1 (addresses 0034<sub>16</sub>, 003C<sub>16</sub>) is not read before the current receive operation is completed. It is also set "1" if any one of error flags is "1" for the previous data and the current receive operation is completed. Be sure to read UARTx status register to clear the error flags before the next reception has been completed.

**[UARTx (x = 1, 2) Control Register (UxCON)] 0033<sub>16</sub>, 003B<sub>16</sub>**

The UARTx control register consists of eight control bits for the UARTx function. This register can enable the CTS, RTS and UART address mode.

If the Transmit Enable Bit (TEN) is set to "0" (disabled) while a data is being transmitted, the transmitting operation will stop after the data has been transmitted. If the Receive Enable Bit (REN) is set to "0" (disabled) while a data is being received, the receiving operation will stop after the data has been received.

When setting the Transmit Initialization Bit (TIN) to "1", the TEN bit is set to "0" and the UARTx status register will be set to "03<sub>16</sub>" after the data has been transmitted. To retransmit, set the TEN to "1" and set a data to the transmit buffer register again. The TIN bit will be cleared to "0" one cycle later after the TIN bit has been set to "1".

Setting the Receive Initialization Bit (RIN) to "1" sets all of the REN, RBF and the receive error flags (PER, FER, OER, SER) to "0". The RIN bit will be cleared to "0" one cycle later after the RIN bit has been set to "1".

When CTS or RTS function is disabled, pins CTS<sub>1</sub> and CTS<sub>2</sub> or RTS<sub>1</sub> and RTS<sub>2</sub> can be used as ordinary I/O ports, correspondingly.

**[UARTx Transmit/Receive Buffer Registers 1, 2 (UxTRB1/ UxTRB2)] 0034<sub>16</sub>, 0035<sub>16</sub>, 003C<sub>16</sub>, 003D<sub>16</sub>**

The transmit buffer register and the receive buffer register are located at the same address. The transmit buffer register is write-only and the receive buffer register is read-only. If a character bit length is 7 bits, the MSB of received data is invalid. If a character bit length is 7 or 8 bits, the received contents of UxTRB2 are also invalid. If a character bit length is 9 bits, the received high-order 7 bits of UxTRB2 are "0".

**[UARTx (x = 1, 2) RTS Control Register (UxRTS)] 0036<sub>16</sub>, 003E<sub>16</sub>**

The delay time from the reception of the last stop bit to the assertion of RTSx is selectable using the RTS Assertion Delay Count Select Bits. If the stop bit is detected before RTS assertion delay time has expired, the RTSx pin is kept "H". The RTS assertion delay count starts after the last data reception is completed.

Setting the RIN bit to "1" resets the UxRTS. After setting the RIN bit to "1", set this UxRTS.



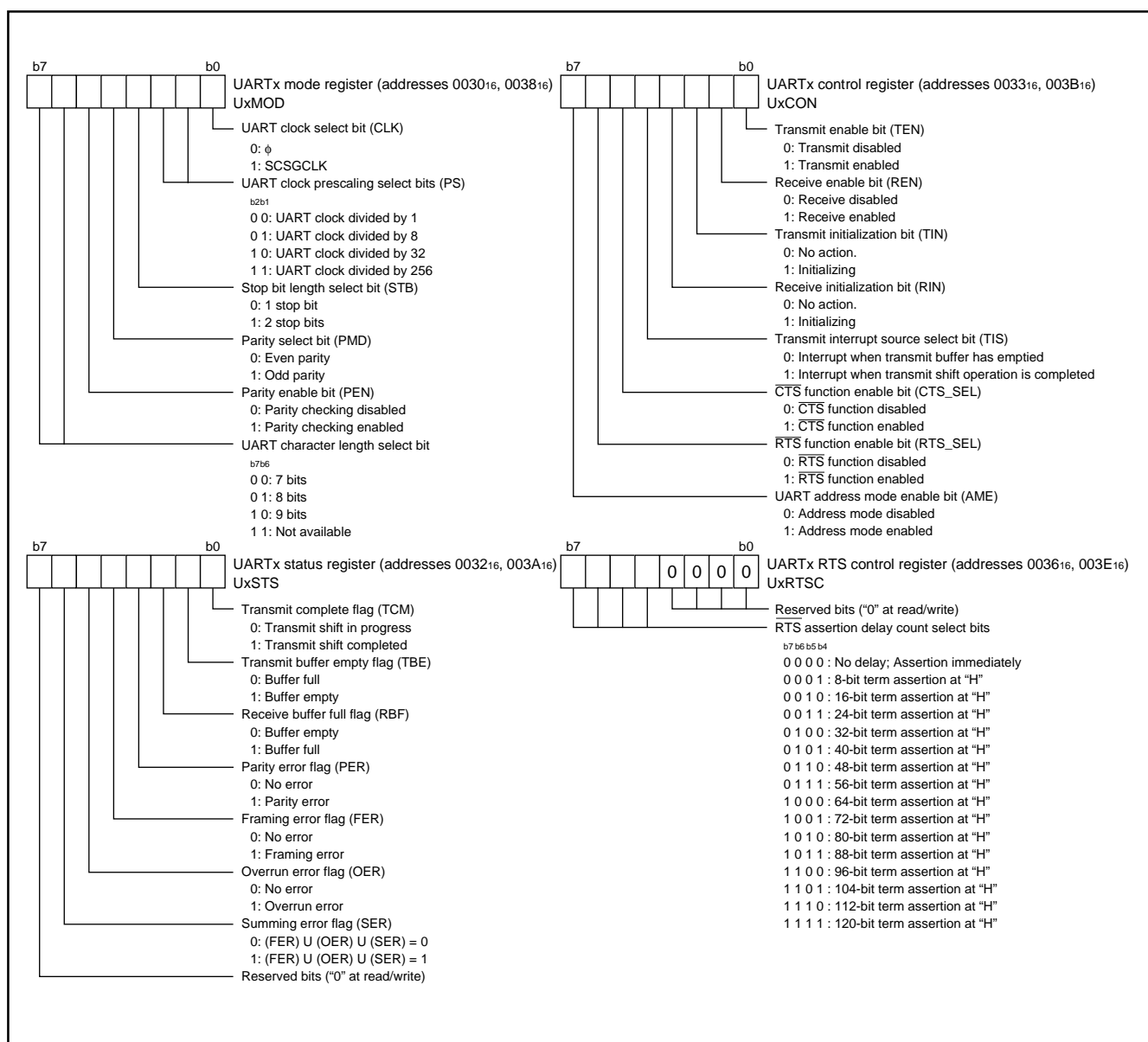


Fig. 30 Structure of UART related registers

## DMAC

The 7641 group is equipped with 2 channels of DMAC (direct memory access controller) which enable high speed data transfer from a memory to a memory without use of the CPU.

The DMAC initiates the data transfer with an interrupt factor specified by the DMAC channel  $x$  ( $x = 0, 1$ ) hardware transfer request source bit (DxHR), or with a software trigger.

The DxTMS [DMA Channel  $x$  ( $x = 0, 1$ ) Transfer Mode Selection Bit] selects one of two transfer modes; cycle steal mode or burst transfer mode. In the cycle steal mode, the DMAC transfers one byte of data for each request. In the burst transfer mode, the DMAC transfers the number of bytes data specified by the transfer count register for each request. The count register is a 16-bit counter; the maximum number of data is 65,536 bytes per one request.

Figure 31 shows the DMA control block diagram and Figure 32 shows the structure of DMAC related registers.

## [DMAC Index and Status Register] DMAIS

The DMAC Index and Status Register consists of various control bits for the DMAC and its status flags.

The DMA Channel Index Bit (DCI) selects which channel (0 or 1) will be accessed, since the mode registers, source registers, destination registers and transfer count register of both DMAC channels share the same SFR addresses, respectively.

## [DMAC Channel $x$ ( $x = 0, 1$ ) Mode Registers 1, 2] DMAxM1, DMAxM2

The 16 bits of DMAC Channel  $x$  Mode Registers 1 and 2 control each operation of DMAC channels 0 and 1.

When the DMAC Channel  $x$  ( $x = 0, 1$ ) Write Bit (DxDWC) is "0", data is simultaneously written into each latch and register of the Source Registers, Destination Register, and Transfer Count Registers. When this bit is "1", data is written only into their latches.

When data is read from each register, it must be read from the higher bytes first, then the lower bytes. When writing data, write to the lower bytes first, then the higher bytes.

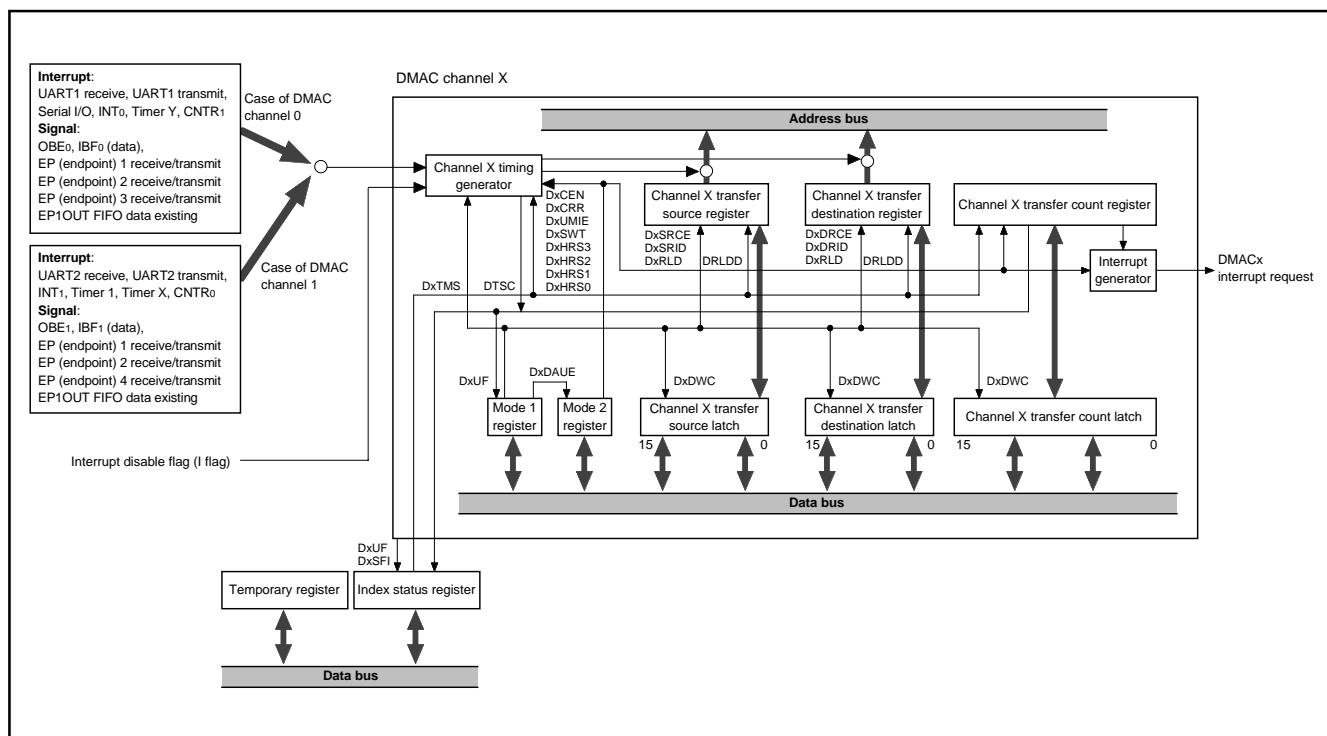


Fig. 31 DMACx ( $x = 0, 1$ ) block diagram

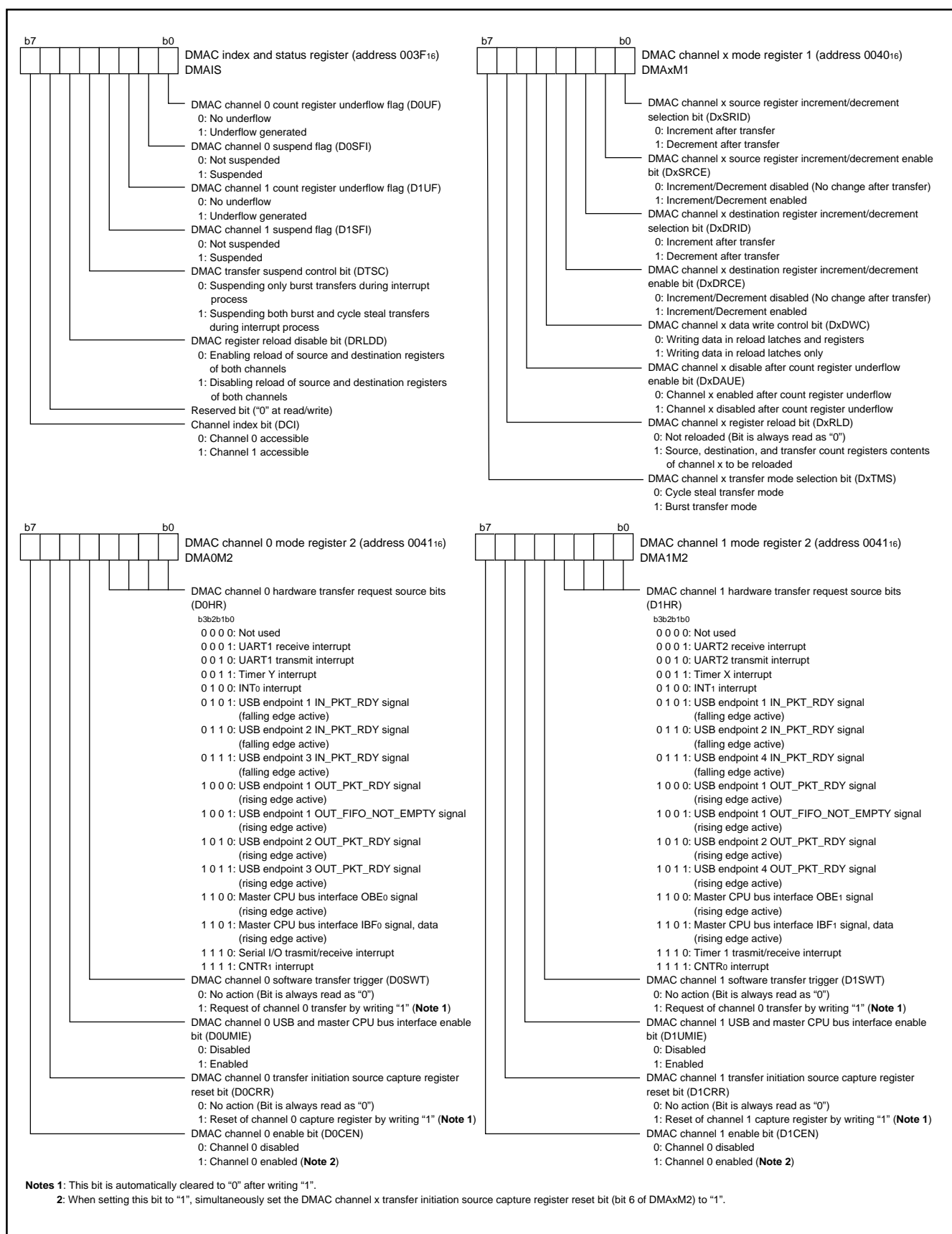


Fig. 32 Structure of DMACx related register

### (1) Cycle Steal Transfer Mode

When the DMAC Channel  $x$  ( $x = 0, 1$ ) Transfer Mode Selection Bit (DxTMS) is set to "0", the respective DMAC Channel  $x$  operates in the cycle steal transfer mode.

When a request of the specified transfer factor is generated, the selected channel transfers one byte of data from the address indicated by the Source Register into the address indicated by the Destination Register.

There are two kinds of DMA transfer triggers supported: hardware transfer factor and software trigger. Hardware transfer factors can be selected by the DMAC $x$  ( $x = 0, 1$ ) Hardware Transfer Request Factor Bit (DxHR). To only use the Interrupt Request Bit, the interrupt can be disabled by setting its Interrupt Enable Bit of Interrupt Control Register to "0".

The DMA transfer request as a software trigger can be generated by setting the DMA Channel  $x$  ( $x = 0, 1$ ) Software Transfer Trigger Bit (DxSWT) to "1".

The Source Registers and Transfer Destination Registers can be either decreased or increased by 1 after transfer completion by setting bits 0 to 3 in the DMAC Channel  $x$  ( $x = 0, 1$ ) Mode Register. When the Transfer Count Register underflows, the Source Registers and Destination Registers are reloaded from their latches if the DMAC Register Reload Disable Bit (DRLDD) is "0". The Transfer Count Register value is reloaded after an underflow regardless of DRLDD setting. At the same time, the DMAC Interrupt Request Bit and the DMA Channel  $x$  ( $x = 0, 1$ ) Count Register Underflow Flag are set to "1".

The DMAC Channel  $x$  Disable After Count Register Underflow Enable Bit (DxDAUE) is "1", the DMAC Channel  $x$  Enable Bit (DxCEN) goes to "0" at an under flows of Transfer Count Register. By setting the DMAC Channel  $x$  ( $x = 0, 1$ ) Register Reload Bit (DxRLD) to "1", the Source Registers, Destination Registers, and Transfer Count Registers can be updated to the values in their respective latches.

When one signal among USB endpoint signals is selected as the hardware transfer request factor, and DMAC Channel  $x$  ( $x = 0, 1$ ) USB and Master CPU Bus Interface Enable Bit (DxUMIE) is "1"; transfer between the USB FIFO and the master CPU bus interface input/output buffer can be performed effectively. This transfer function is only valid in the cycle steal mode. To validate this function, the DMAC Channel  $x$  ( $x = 0, 1$ ) USB and the Master CPU Bus Interface Enable Bit (bit 5 of DxTR) must be set to "1". The following shows an example of a transfer using this function.

### Packet Transfer from USB FIFO to Master CPU Bus Interface Buffer

When the USB OUT\_PKT\_RDY is selected as the hardware transfer request factor; if the USB OUT\_PKT\_RDY is "1" and the master CPU bus interface output buffer is empty, the transfer request is generated and the transfer is initiated. The OUT\_PKT\_RDY retains "1" and a transfer request is generated each time the output buffer empties until all the data in the corresponding endpoint FIFO has been transferred.

The transfer ends when the last byte in the USB receive packet is transferred and the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag goes to "0" (in the case of AUTO\_CLR bit = "1").

### Byte Transfer from USB FIFO to Master CPU Bus Interface Buffer

When the USB Endpoint 1 OUT\_FIFO\_NOT\_EMPTY is selected as a hardware transfer request factor, if there is data in the USB Endpoint 1 FIFO and the master CPU bus interface output buffer is empty; a transfer request is generated and the transfer is initiated. The transfer is performed by unit of one byte.

### Transfer from Master CPU Bus Interface Buffer to USB FIFO

When the USB Endpoint  $X$  ( $X = 1$  to 4) IN\_PKT\_RDY (IN\_PKT\_RDY = "0") is selected as a hardware transfer request factor, if there is data in the master CPU bus interface output buffer and the data in the USB FIFO is within the specified packet size, a transfer request is generated.

The DMA transfer is terminated when a command (A0 = "1") is input to the master CPU bus interface input buffer.

The timing chart for a cycle steal transfer caused by a hardware-related transfer request and a software trigger are shown in Figure 33 and 34, respectively.

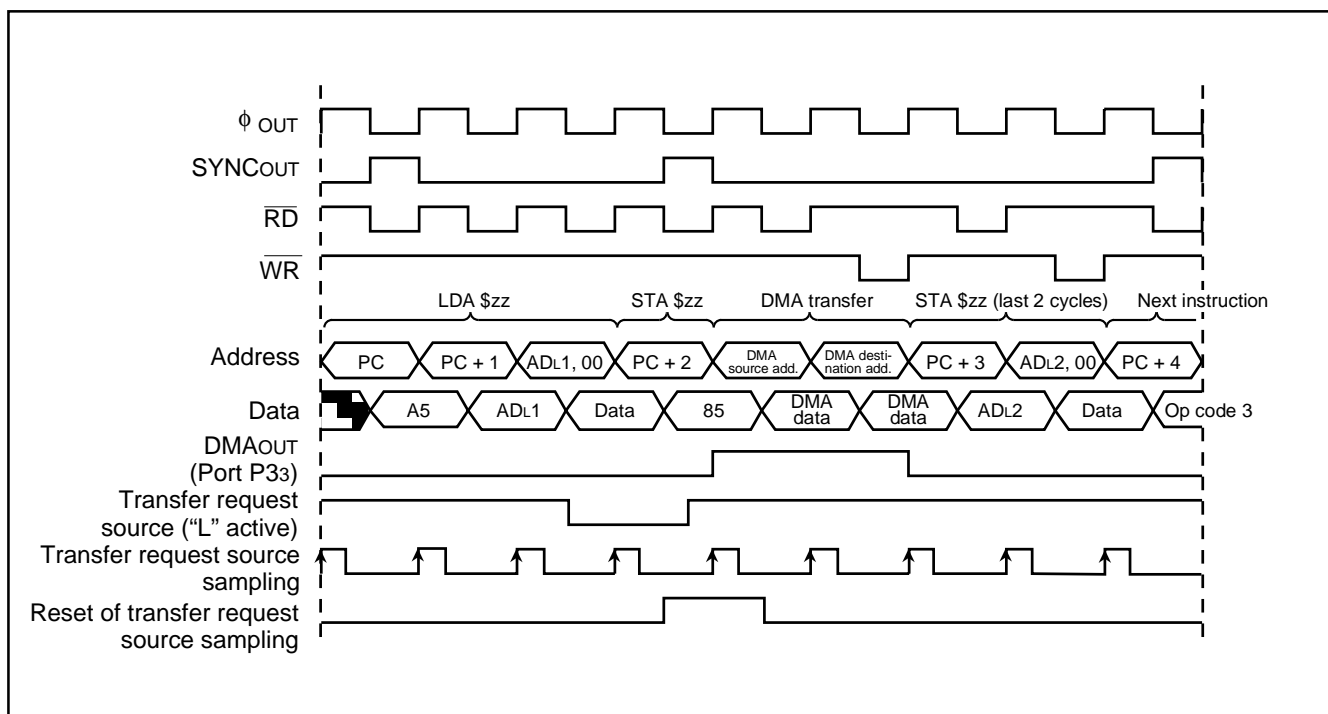


Fig. 33 Timing chart for cycle steal transfer caused by hardware-related transfer request

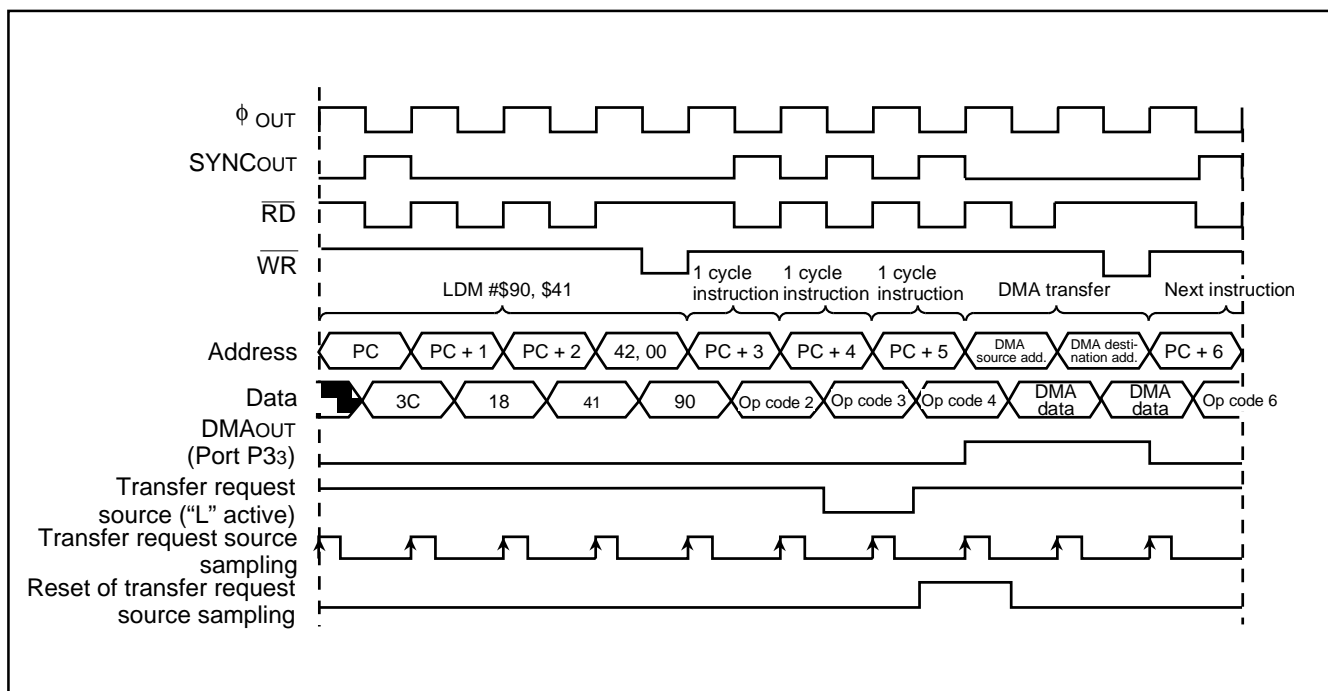


Fig. 34 Timing chart for cycle steal transfer caused by software trigger transfer request

## (2) Burst Transfer Mode

When the DMAC Channel x Transfer Mode Selection Bit (DxTMS) is set to "1", the respective DMAC channel operates in the burst transfer mode.

In the burst transfer mode, the DMAC continually transfers the number of bytes of data specified by the Transfer Count Register for one transfer request. Other than this, the burst transfer mode operation is the same as the cycle steal mode operation.

## Priority

The DMAC places a higher priority on Channel-0 transfer requests than on Channel-1 transfer requests.

If a Channel-0 transfer request occurs during a Channel-1 burst transfer operation, the DMAC completes the next transfer source and destination read/write operation first, and then starts the Channel-0 transfer operation. As soon as the Channel-0 transfer is completed, the DMAC resumes the Channel-1 transfer operation.

When an interrupt request occurs during any DMA operation, the transfer operation is suspended and the interrupt process routine is initiated. During the interrupt operation, the DMAC automatically sets the corresponding DMAC Channel x (x = 0, 1) Suspend Flag (DxSFI) to "1". As soon as the CPU completes the interrupt operation, the DMAC clears the flag to "0" and resumes the original operation from the point where it was suspended.

The suspended transfer due to the interrupt can also be resumed during its interrupt process routine by writing "1" to the DMAC Channel x (x = 0,1) Enable Bit (DxCEN).

The timing charts for a burst transfer caused by a hardware-related transfer request are shown in Figure 35.

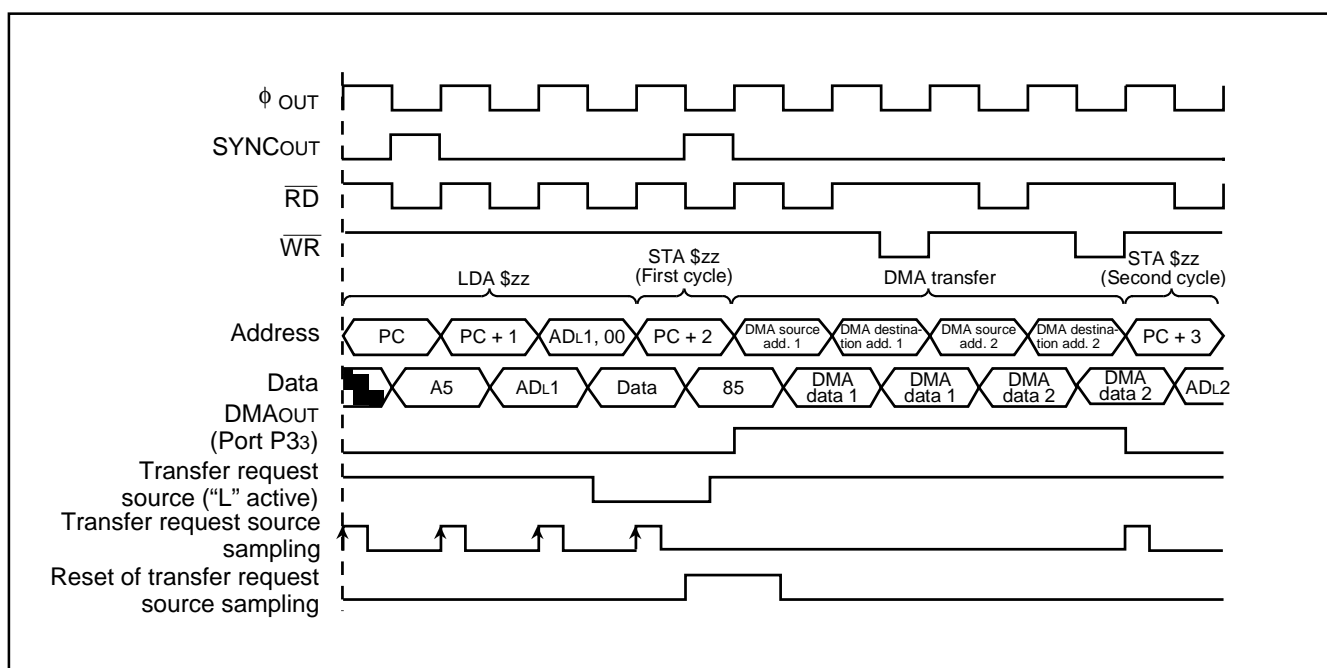


Fig. 35 Timing chart for burst transfer caused by hardware-related transfer request

## USB FUNCTION

The 7641 Group MCU is equipped with a USB Function Control Unit (USB FCU). This USB FCU allows the MCU to communicate with a host PC using a minimum amount of the MCU power. This built-in USB FCU complies with Full-Speed USB2.0 specification that supports four transfer types: Control Transfer, Isochronous Transfer, Interrupt Transfer, and Bulk Transfer. This built-in USB FCU performs the data transfer error detection and transfer retry operation by hardware. The default transfer mode of the USB FCU is bulk transfer mode at reset. The user must set the USB FCU for the required transfer mode by software.

The USB FCU has five endpoints (Endpoint 0 to Endpoint 4). The EPINDEX bit selects one of these five endpoints for the USB FCU to use. Each endpoint has IN (transmit) FIFO and OUT (receive) FIFO. To use the USB FCU, the USB enable bit (USBC7) must be set to "1". There are two USB related interrupts supported for this MCU: USB Function Interrupt and USB SOF Interrupt.

Figure 36 shows the USB FCU (USB Function Control Unit) block diagram. The USB FCU consists of the SIE (Serial Interface Engine) performing the USB data transfer, GFI (Generic Function Interface) performing USB protocol handling, SIU (Serial Engine Interface Unit) performing a received address and endpoint decoding, MCI (Microcontroller Interface) handling the MCU interface or performing address decoding and synchronization of control signals, and the USB transceiver.

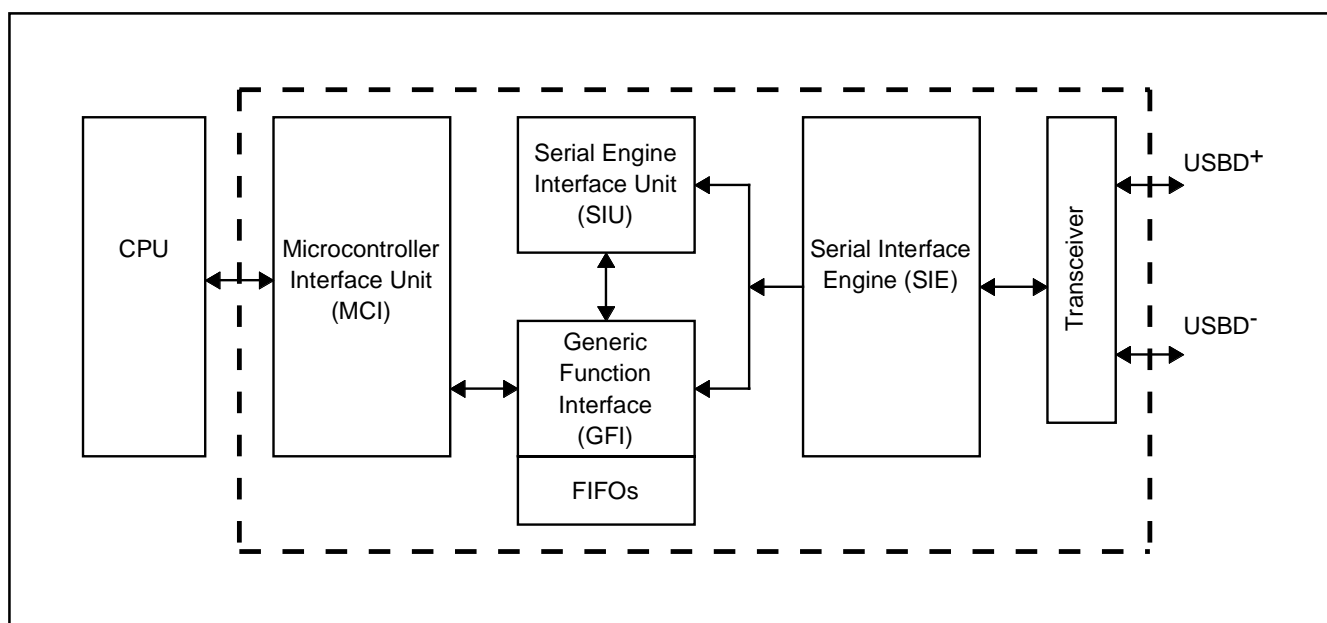


Fig. 36 USB FCU (USB Function Control Unit) block

## USB Transmission

Endpoint 0 to Endpoint 4 have IN (transmit) FIFOs individually. Each endpoint's FIFO is configured in following way:

Endpoint 0: 16-byte  
 Endpoint 1: Mode 0: 512-byte  
               Mode 1: 1024-byte  
               Mode 2: 0-byte  
               Mode 3: 2048-byte  
               Mode 4: 768-byte  
               Mode 5: 880-byte  
 Endpoint 2: Mode 0: 32-byte  
               Mode 1: 128-byte  
 Endpoint 3: 16-byte  
 Endpoint 4: 16-byte

When Endpoint 1 or Endpoint 2 is used for data transmit, the IN FIFO size can be selected. Endpoint 1 and Endpoint 2 have programmable IN-FIFOs size; 6 modes for Endpoint 1, and 2 modes for Endpoint 2. Each mode can be selected by the USB endpoint FIFO mode selection register (address 005F16).

When writing data to the USB Endpoint-x FIFO (addresses 006016 to 006416) in the SFR area, the internal write pointer for the IN FIFO is automatically increased by 1. When the AUTO\_SET bit is "1" and if the stored data reaches to the max. packet value set in USB Endpoint x IN max. packet size register (address 005B16), the USB FCU sets the IN\_PKT\_RDY bit to "1". When the AUTO\_SET bit is "0", the IN\_PKT\_RDY bit will not be automatically set to "1"; it must be set to "1" by software. (The AUTO\_SET bit function is not applicable to Endpoint 0.)

The USB FCU transmits the data when it receives the next IN token. The IN\_PKT\_RDY bit automatically goes to "0" when the data transfer is complete.

### ●Isochronous transfer

Endpoints 1 to 4 can be used in isochronous transfer mode. When using isochronous transfer mode, the ISO/TOGGLE\_INIT bit must be set to "1". When ISO\_UPDATE = "1" and the corresponding endpoint's ISO/TOGGLE\_INIT bit = "1", the USB FCU delays the rise of the IN\_PKT\_RDY bit until the next SOF signal transmission. In this way, the USB FCU can synchronize a transmit data to the SOF signal.

### ●Interrupt transfer mode

Endpoints 1 to 4 can be used in interrupt transfer mode. During a regular interrupt transfer, an interrupt transaction is similar to the bulk transfer. Therefore, there is no special setting required. When IN-endpoint is used for a rate feedback interrupt transfer, INTPT bit of the IN\_CSR register must be set to "1". The following steps show how to configure the IN-endpoint for the rate feedback interrupt transfer.

1. Set a value which is larger than 1/2 of the USB Endpoint-x FIFO size to the USB Endpoint x IN max. package size register.
2. Set INTPT bit to "1".
3. Flush the old data in the FIFO.
4. Store transmission data to the IN FIFO and set the IN\_PKT\_RDY bit to "1".
5. Repeat steps 3 and 4.

In a real application, the function-side always has transfer data when the function sends an endpoint in a rate feedback interrupt. Accordingly, the USB FCU never returns a NAK against the host IN token for the rate feedback interrupt. The USB FCU always transmits data in the FIFO in response to an IN token, regardless of IN\_PKT\_RDY. However, this premises that there is always an ACK response from Host PC after the 7641 Group has transmitted data to IN token.

When MAXP size  $\leq$  (a half of IN FIFO size), the IN FIFO can store two packets (called double buffer). At this time, the IN FIFO status can be checked by monitoring the IN\_PKT\_RDY bit and the TX\_NOT\_EPT flag. The TX\_NOT\_EPT flag is a read-only flag which shows the FIFO state. When IN\_PKT\_RDY = 0 and TX\_NOT\_EPT = 0, IN FIFO is empty. When IN\_PKT\_RDY = 0 and TX\_NOT\_EPT = 1, IN FIFO has one packet.

In double buffer mode, as long as the IN FIFO is not filled with double packets, IN\_PKT\_RDY will not be set to "1", even if it is set to "1" by software, but TX\_NOT\_EPT flag will be set to "1". In single buffer mode, if MAXP > (a half of IN FIFO), this condition never occurs.

When IN\_PKT\_RDY = "1" and TX\_NOT\_EPT = "1", IN FIFO holds two packets in double buffer mode and one packet in single packet mode. In single packet mode, when the IN\_PKT\_RDY bit is set to "1" by software, the TX\_NOT\_EPT flag is set to "1" as well. During double buffer mode, if you want to load two packets sequentially, you must set the IN\_PKT\_RDY bit to "1" each time a packet is loaded.



## USB Reception

Endpoint 0 to Endpoint 4 have OUT (receive) FIFOs individually. Each endpoint's FIFO is configured in following way:

Endpoint 0: 16-byte

Endpoint 1: Mode 0: 800-byte  
 Mode 1: 1024-byte  
 Mode 2: 2048-byte  
 Mode 3: 0-byte  
 Mode 4: 1280-byte  
 Mode 5: 1168-byte

Endpoint 2: Mode 0: 32-byte  
 Mode 1: 128-byte

Endpoint 3: 16-byte

Endpoint 4: 16-byte

When Endpoint 1 or Endpoint 2 is used for data receive, the OUT FIFO size can be selected. Endpoint 1 and Endpoint 2 have programmable IN-FIFOs size; 6 modes for Endpoint 1, and 2 modes for Endpoint 2. Each mode can be selected by the USB endpoint FIFO mode selection register (address 005F<sub>16</sub>).

Data transmitted from the host-PC is stored in Endpoint x FIFO (0060<sub>16</sub> to 0064<sub>16</sub>). Every time the data is stored in the FIFO, the internal OUT FIFO write pointer is increased by 1. When one complete data packet is stored, the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag is set to "1" and the number of received data packets is stored in USB Endpoint x OUT write count registers (Low and High). When the AUTO\_CLR bit is "1" and the received data is read out from the OUT FIFO, the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag is cleared to "0". When the AUTO\_CLR bit is "1", the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag will not be cleared automatically by the FIFO read; it must be cleared by software. (The AUTO-CLR bit function is not applicable in Endpoint 0.)

When MAXP size  $\leq$  (a half of OUT FIFO size), the OUT\_FIFO can receive 2 packets (double buffer). At this time, the OUT\_FIFO status can be checked by the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag. When the FIFO holds two packets and one packet is read from the FIFO, the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag is not cleared even if it is set to "0". (The flag returns from "0" to "1" in one  $\phi$  cycle after the read-out). During double buffer mode, the USB Endpoint x OUT write count registers (Low and High) holds the number of previously received packets. This count register is updated after reading out one of packets in the OUT FIFO and clearing the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag to "0".

## TOGGLE Initialization

In order to initialize the data toggle sequence bit of the endpoint, in other words, resetting the next data packet to DATA0; set the ISO/TOGGLE\_INT bit to "1" and then clear back to "0".

## USB Interrupts

The USB FCU has two interrupts, USB Function Interrupt and USB SOF (Start Of Frame) Interrupt.

### ●USB Function Interrupt (USBF-INT)

The USBF-INT is usable for the USB data flow control and power management. The USBF-INT request occurs at data transmit/receive completion, overrun/underrun, reset, or receiving suspend/resume signal. To enable this interrupt, the USB function interrupt enable bit in the interrupt control register A (address 00051<sub>16</sub>) and the respective bit in the USB interrupt enable registers 1 and 2 (addresses 00054<sub>16</sub> and 00055<sub>16</sub>) must be set to "1". When setting bit 7 in USB interrupt enable register 2 to "1", the suspend interrupt and the resume interrupt are enabled.

Endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) IN interrupt request occurs when the USB Endpoint x IN interrupt status flag (INTST 0, 2, 4, 6, 8) of USB interrupt status registers 1 and 2 (addresses 0052<sub>16</sub> and 0053<sub>16</sub>) is "1". The USB Endpoint x IN interrupt status flag is set to "1" when the respective endpoint IN\_PKT\_RDY bit is "1".

Endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) OUT interrupt request occurs when the USB endpoint x OUT interrupt status flag (INTST3, 5, 7, 9) in USB interrupt status registers 1 and 2 is set to "1". The USB Endpoint x OUT interrupt status flag is set to "1" when the respective endpoint OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag is "1".

The overrun/underrun interrupt request occurs when the USB overrun/underrun interrupt status flag (INTST12) in USB interrupt status register 2 is set to "1". This flag is set to "1" when the FIFO data overruns or underruns in isochronous transfer mode.

The USB reset interrupt request occurs when the USB reset interrupt status flag (INTST13) in USB interrupt status register 2 is set to "1". This flag is set when the SE0 is detected on the D+/D- line for at least 2.5 μs. When this situation happens, all USB internal registers (addresses 0050<sub>16</sub> to 005F<sub>16</sub>), except this flag, are initialized to the default state at reset. The USB reset interrupt is always enabled.

The suspend/resume interrupt request occurs when either the USB resume signal interrupt status flag (INTST14) or the USB suspend signal interrupt status flag (INTST15) in USB interrupt status register 2 is set to "1".

The bits in both interrupt status registers 1 and 2 can be cleared by writing "1" to each bit.

### ●USB SOF interrupt

The USB SOF interrupt is usable in isochronous transfers. This interrupt request occurs when an SOF packet is received. To enable a USB SOF interrupt, set the USB SOF interrupt enable bit of interrupt control register A to "1".

## Suspend/Resume Functions

If no bus activity is detected on the D+/D- line for at least 3 ms, the USB suspend signal detect flag (SUSPEND) of the USB power control register (address 0051<sub>16</sub>) and the USB suspend signal interrupt status flag of USB interrupt status register 2 are set to "1" and the suspend interrupt request occurs. The following procedure must be executed after pushing the internal registers (A, X, Y) to memories during the suspend interrupt process routine.

- (1) Clear all bits of USB interrupt status register 1 (address 0052<sub>16</sub>) and USB interrupt status register 2 (address 0053<sub>16</sub>) to "0".
- (2) Set the USB clock enable bit to "0". (After disabling the USB clock, do not write to any of the USB internal registers (addresses 0050<sub>16</sub> to 0064<sub>16</sub>), except for the USB control register (address 0013<sub>16</sub>), clock control register (address 001F<sub>16</sub>), and frequency synthesizer control register (address 006C<sub>16</sub>).
- (3) Set the frequency synthesizer enable bit to "0".
- (4) Set the USB line driver current control bit to "1". (Always keep the USB line driver current control bit set to "0" during USB function operations. When operating at V<sub>CC</sub> = 3.3 V, this bit does not need to be set.)
- (5) Keep total drive current at 500 μA or less.
- (6) Disable the timer 1 interrupt.
- (7) Disable the timer 2 interrupt. (Disable all the other external interrupts.)
- (8) Set the timer 1 interrupt request bit to "0".
- (9) Set the timer 2 interrupt request bit to "0".
- (10) Set the interrupt disable flag (I) to "0".
- (11) Execute the STP instruction.

At this point, the MCU will be in stop mode (suspend mode). Before executing the STP instruction, make sure to set the USB function interrupt request bit (bit 0 at address 0002<sub>16</sub>) to "0" and the USB function interrupt enable bit (bit 0 at address 0005<sub>16</sub>) to "1".

The USB suspend detect signal flag goes to "0" when the USB resume signal detect flag (RESUME) is set to "1". During suspend mode, if the clock operation is started up with a process (remote wake-up) other than the resume interrupt process (for example; reset or timer), make sure to clear the USB suspend detect signal flag to "0" when you set the USB remote wake-up bit to "1". When the USB FCU is in suspend mode and detects a non-idle signal on the D+/D- line, the USB resume detect flag and the USB resume signal interrupt status flag both go to "1" and a resume interrupt request occurs. At this point, pull the internal registers (A, X, Y) in this interrupt process routine. Take the following procedure in the USB resume interrupt process.

- (1) Set the USB line driver current control bit to "0". (When operating at  $V_{cc} = 3.3\text{ V}$ , this bit does not need to be set.)
- (2) Set the frequency synthesizer enable bit to "1" and set a 2 ms to 5 ms wait.
- (3) Check the frequency synthesizer lock status bit. If "0", it must be checked again after a 0.1 ms wait.
- (4) Enable the USB clock.

Set the USB resume signal interrupt status flag to "0" after the wake-up sequence process. The USB resume detect flag goes to "0" at the same time. When the clock operation is started up with a remote wake-up, set the USB remote wake-up bit to "1" after the wake-up sequence process. (Keep it set to "1" for a minimum of 10 ms and maximum of 15 ms). By doing this, the MCU will send a resume signal to the host CPU and let it know that the suspend state has been released.

After that, set the USB remote wake-up bit and the USB suspend detection flag to "0", because the USB suspend detection flag is not automatically cleared to "0" with a remote wake-up.

#### [USB Control Register] USBC

When using the USB function, the USB enable bit must be set to "1". The USB line driver supply bit must be set to "0" (DC-DC converter is disabled) when operating at  $V_{cc} = 3.3\text{ V}$ . In this condition, the setting of the USB line driver current control bit has no effect on USB operations.

When the USB artificial SOF enable bit is set to "1", the MCU judges that a SOF packet is received within 250 ns from a frame starting if an SOF packet is destroyed owing to some cause.

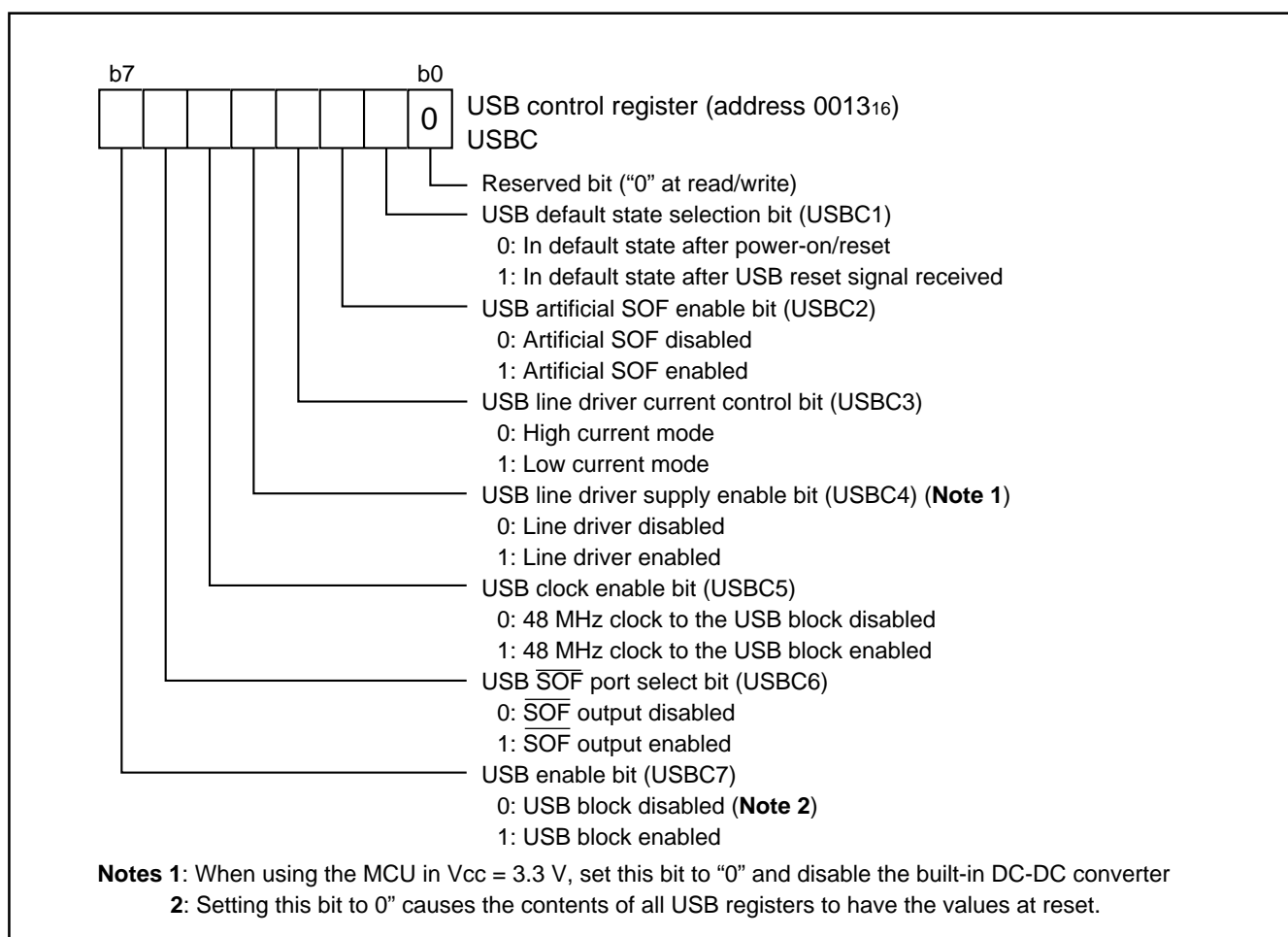


Fig. 37 Structure of USB control register

**[USB Address Register] USBA**

The USB address register maintains the USB function control unit address assigned by the host computer. When receiving the SET\_ADDRESS, keep it in this register. The values of this register are "0" when the device is not yet configured. The values of this register are also set to "0" when the USB block is disabled (bit 7 of USB control register is set to "0"). In addition, no matter what value is written to this register, it will have no effect on the set value.

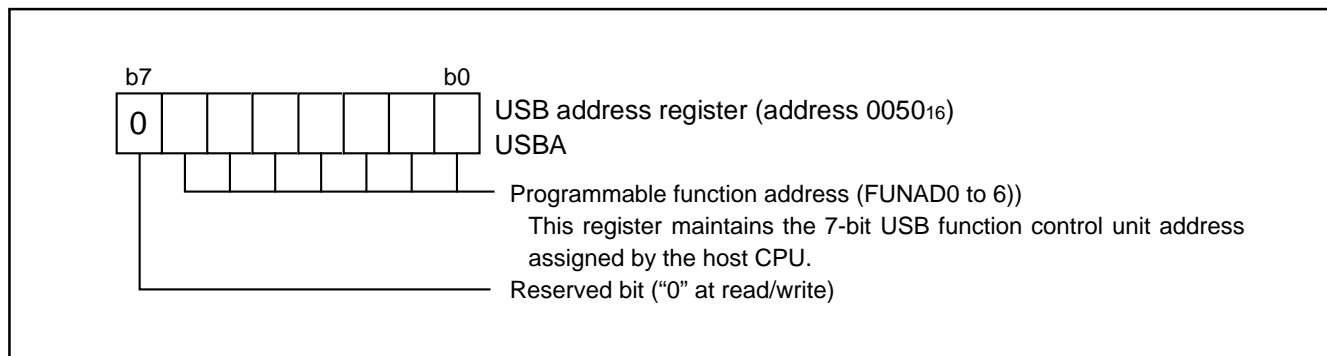


Fig. 38 Structure of USB address register

**[USB Power Management Register] USBPM**

The USB power management register is used for power management in the USB FCU. This register needs to be set only when using the remote wake-up to resume the MCU from suspend mode.

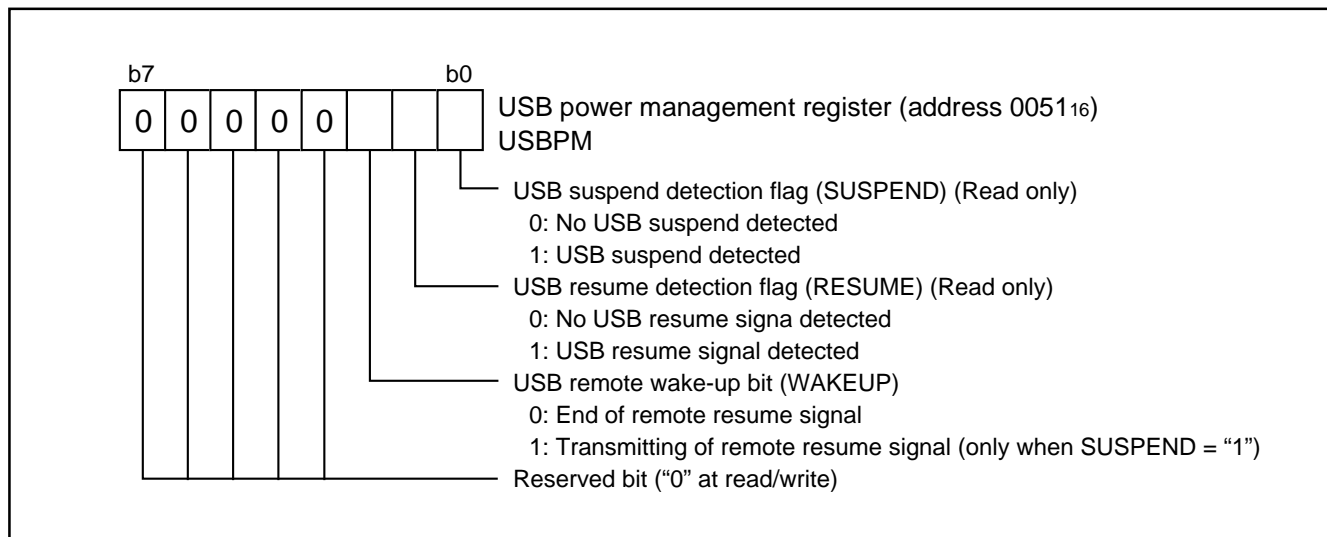


Fig. 39 Structure of USB power management register

**[USB Interrupt Status Registers 1 and 2] USBIS1, USBIS2**

The USB interrupt status registers are used to indicate the condition that caused a USB function interrupt to be generated. Each status flag and bit can be cleared to "0" by writing "1" to the corresponding bit. Make sure to write to/read from the USB interrupt status register 1 first and then USB interrupt status register 2.

When an IN token is received during an isochronous transfer, and

the IN FIFO is empty, an underrun error occurs and INTST12 and IN\_CSR2 are set to "1". When an OUT token is received and the OUT FIFO is full, an overrun error occurs and INTST12 and OUT\_CSR2 are set to "1". Underruns and overruns are not detected by the CPU in bulk transfers and normal interrupt transfers, however in this case, the MCU will send a NAK signal to the host CPU.

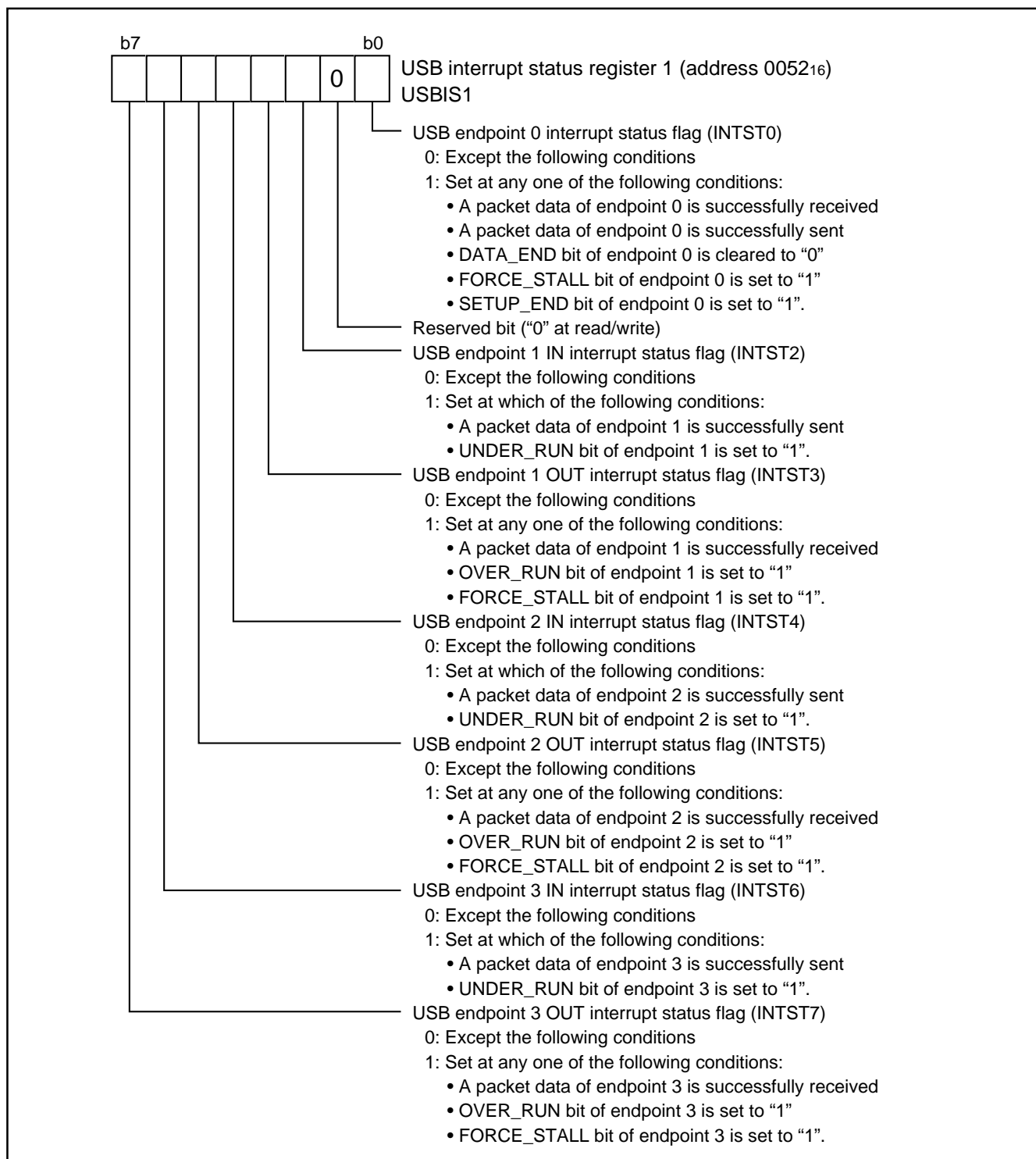


Fig. 40 Structure of USB interrupt status register 1

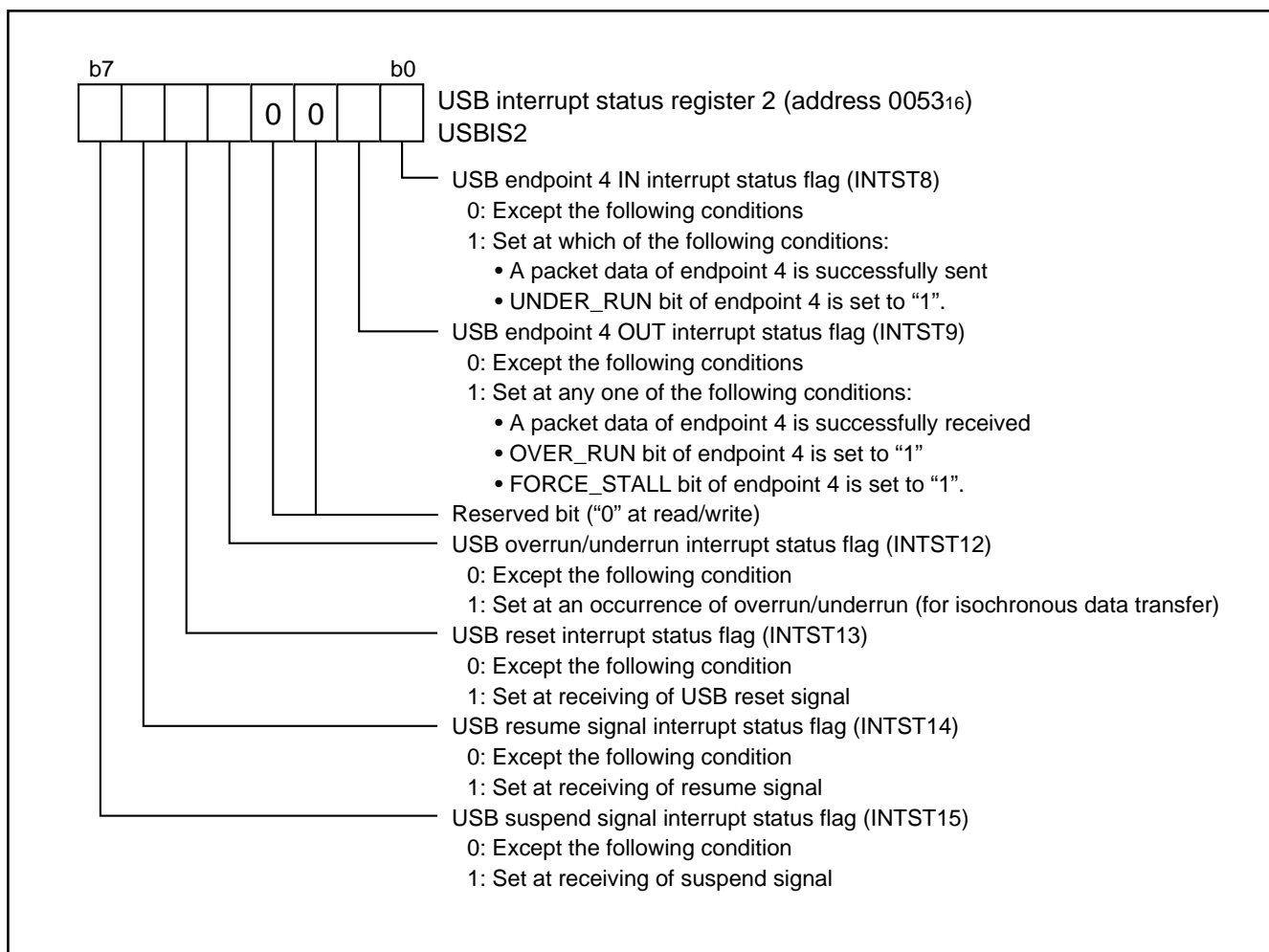


Fig. 41 Structure of USB interrupt status register 2

**[USB Interrupt Enable Registers 1 and 2] USBIE1, USBIE2**

The USB interrupt enable registers are used to enable the USB

function interrupt. Upon reset, all USB interrupts except the USB suspend and USB resume interrupts are enabled.

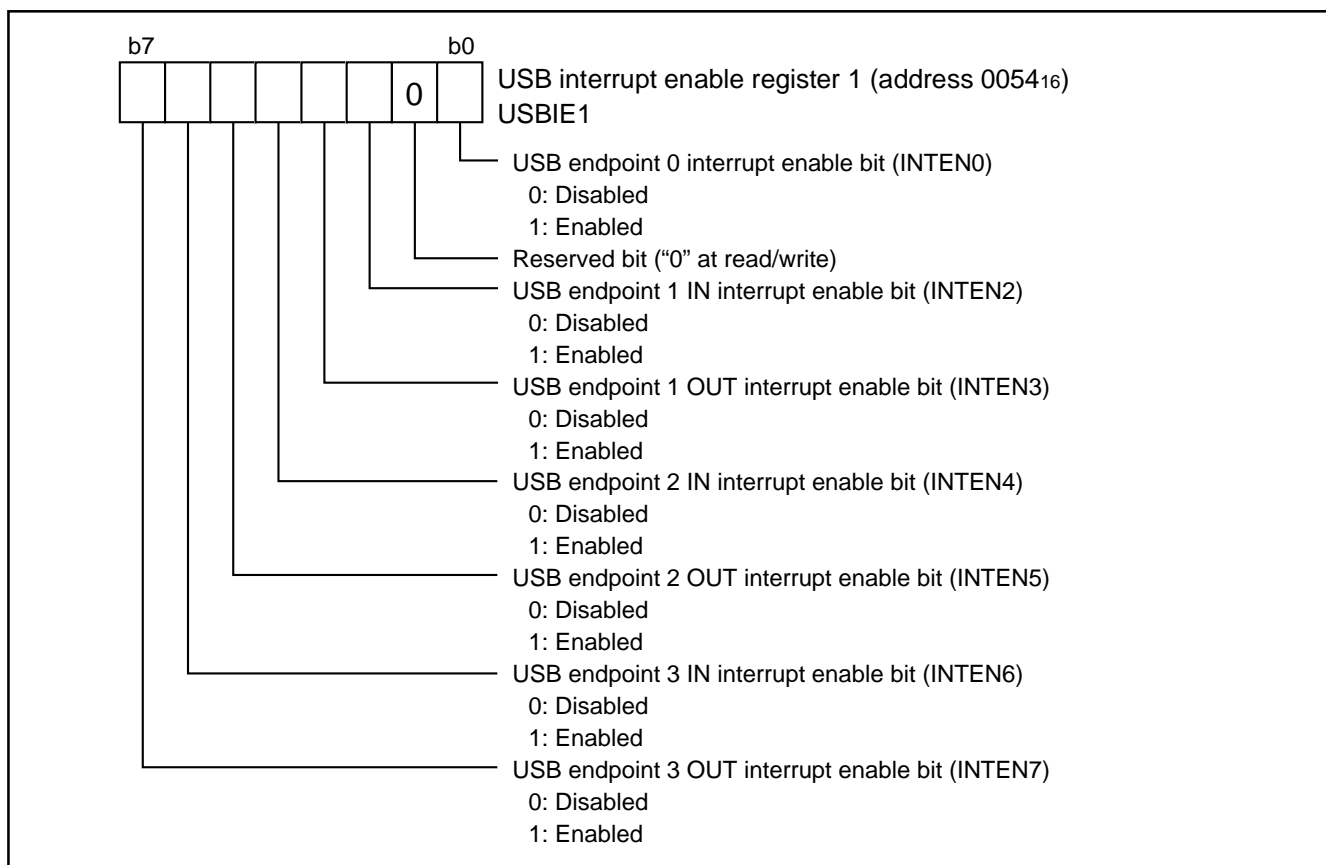


Fig. 42 Structure of USB interrupt enable register 1

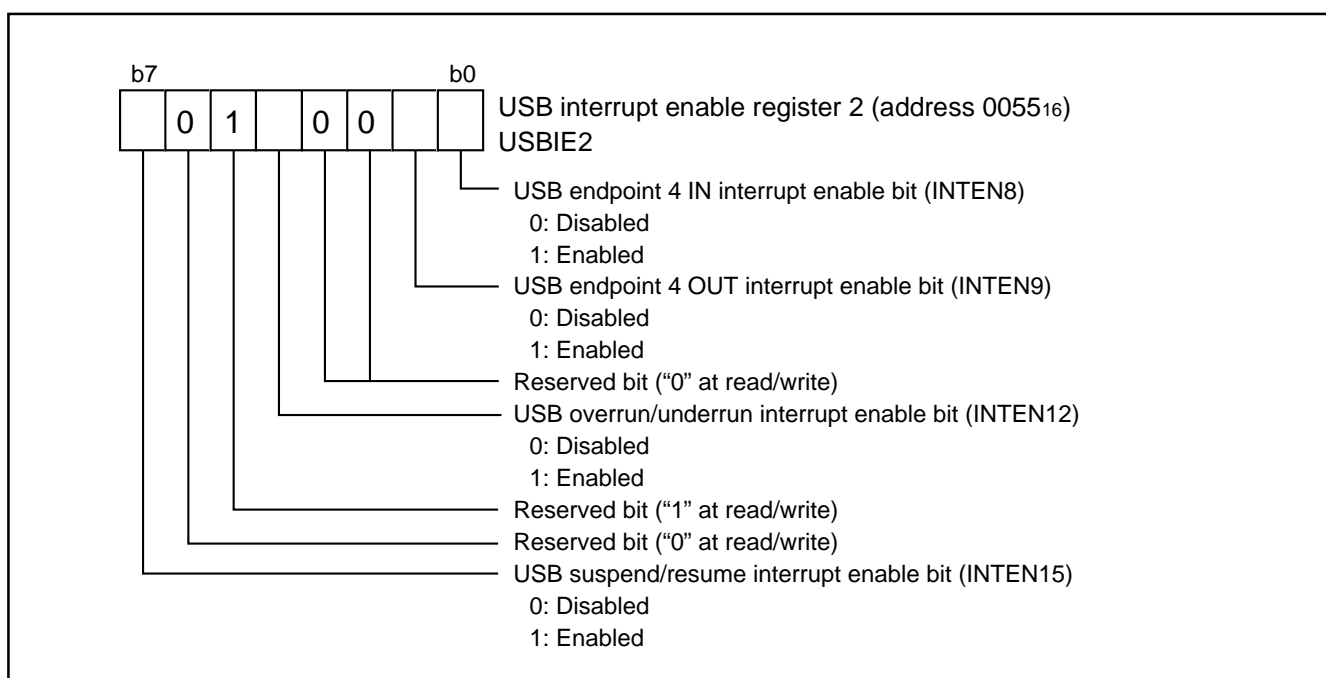


Fig. 43 Structure of USB interrupt enable register 2

**[USB Frame Number Registers Low and High ]****USBSOFL, USBFOFH**

These 11-bit registers contain the frame number of the SOF token received from the host computer. These are read-only registers.

**[USB Endpoint Index Register] USBINDEX**

This register specifies the accessible endpoint. It serves as an index to endpoint-specific USB Endpoint x IN Control Register, USB Endpoint x OUT Control Register, USB Endpoint x IN Max. Packet Size Register, USB Endpoint x OUT Max. Packet Size Register, USB Endpoint x OUT Write Count Register, and USB FIFO Mode Selection Register (x = 0 to 4).

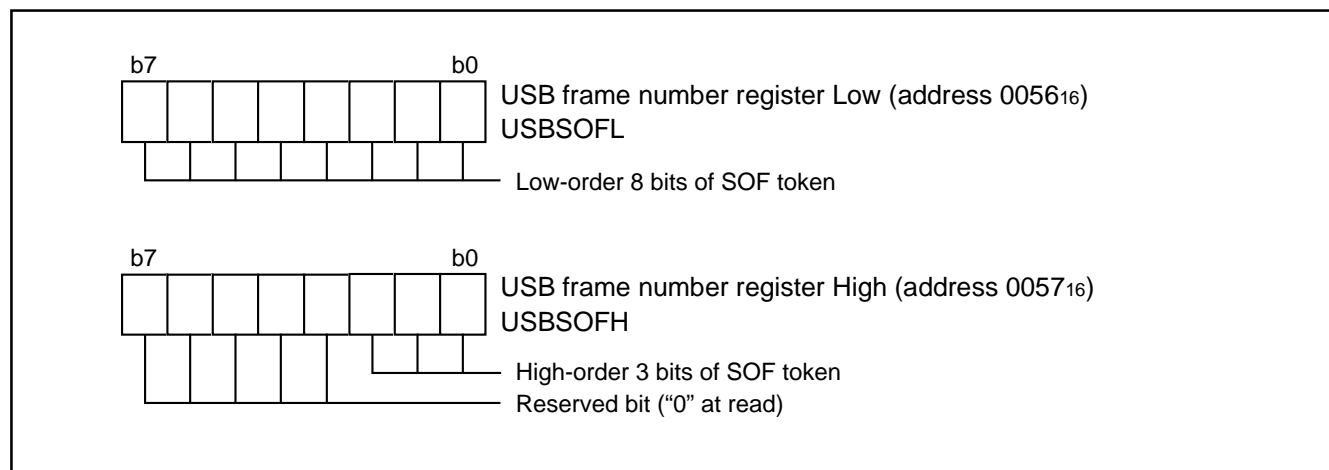


Fig. 44 Structure of USB frame number registers

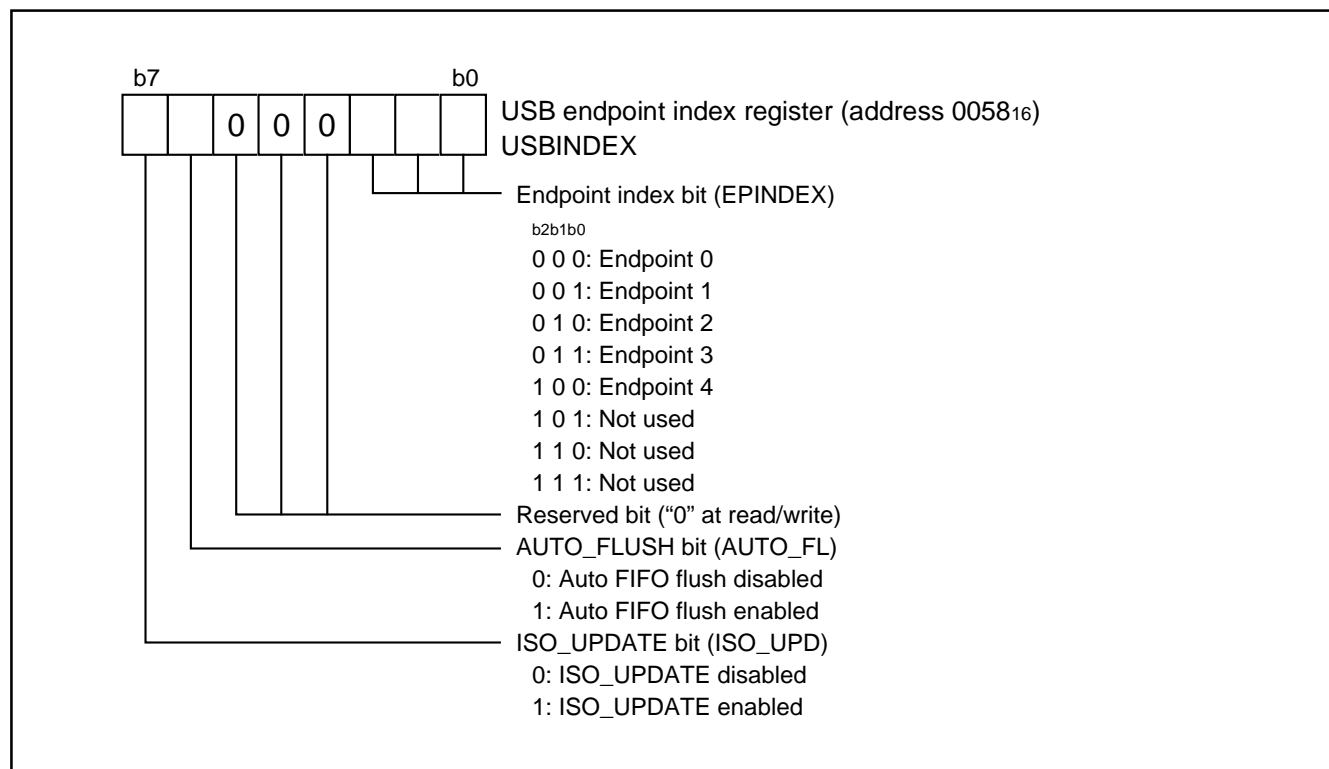


Fig. 45 Structure of USB frame number registers



**[USB Endpoint 0 IN Control Register ] IN\_CSR**

This register contains the control and status information of the endpoint 0. This USB FCU sets the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag to "1" upon having received a data packet in the OUT FIFO. When reading its one data packet from the OUT FIFO, be sure to set this flag to "0".

After a SETUP token is received, the MCU is in the "decode wait state" until the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag is cleared. If the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag is not cleared (indicating that the host request has not been successfully decoded), the USB FCU keep returning a NAK to the host for all IN/OUT tokens.

Set the IN\_PKT\_RDY bit to "1" after the data packet has been written to the IN FIFO. If this bit is set to "1" even though nothing has been written to the IN FIFO, a "0" length data (NULL packet) is sent to the host. The SEND\_STALL bit is for sending a STALL to the host if an unsupported request is received by the USB FCU. This bit must be set to "1". When the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag is set to "0" for request reception, the USB FCU transmits a STALL signal

to the Host CPU. Perform the following three processes simultaneously:

- Set SEND\_STALL bit to "1"
- Set DATA\_END bit to "1"
- Set OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag to "0" by setting SERVICED\_OUT\_PKT\_RDY bit to "1".

Note that if "0" is written to the SEND\_STALL bit before the CLEAR\_FEATURE (endpoint STALL) request has been received, the next STALL will not be generated.

The DATA\_END bit informs the USB FCU of the completion of the process indicated in the SETUP packet. Set this bit to "1" when the process requested in the SETUP packet is completed. (Control Read Transfer: set this bit after writing all of the requested data to the FIFO; Control Write Transfer: set this bit to "1" after reading all of the requested data from the FIFO.) When this bit is "1", the host request is ignored and a STALL is returned. After the status phase process is completed, the USB FCU automatically clears it to "0".

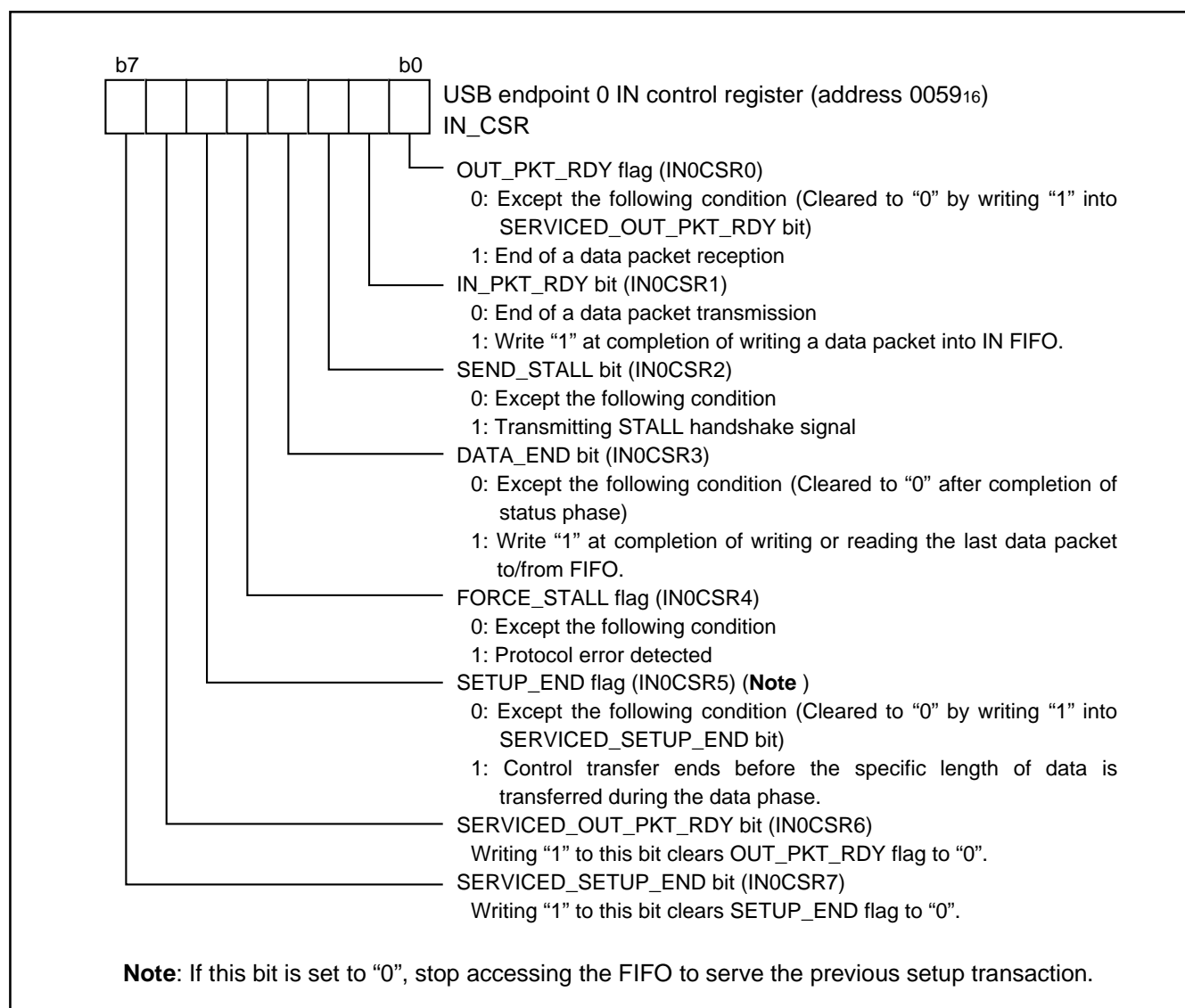


Fig. 46 Structure of USB endpoint 0 IN control register

**[USB Endpoint x (x = 1 to 4) IN Control Register] IN\_CSR**

This register contains the control and status information of the respective IN Endpoints 1 to 4.

Set the IN\_PKT\_RDY bit to "1" after the data packet has been written to the IN FIFO. This bit is cleared to "0" when the data transfer is completed. In a bulk IN transfer, this bit is cleared when an ACK signal is received from the host. If an ACK signal is not received, this bit (and the TX\_NOT\_EMPTY bit) remains as "1". This same data packet is sent after the next IN token is received. The FLUSH bit is for flushing the data in the IN FIFO.

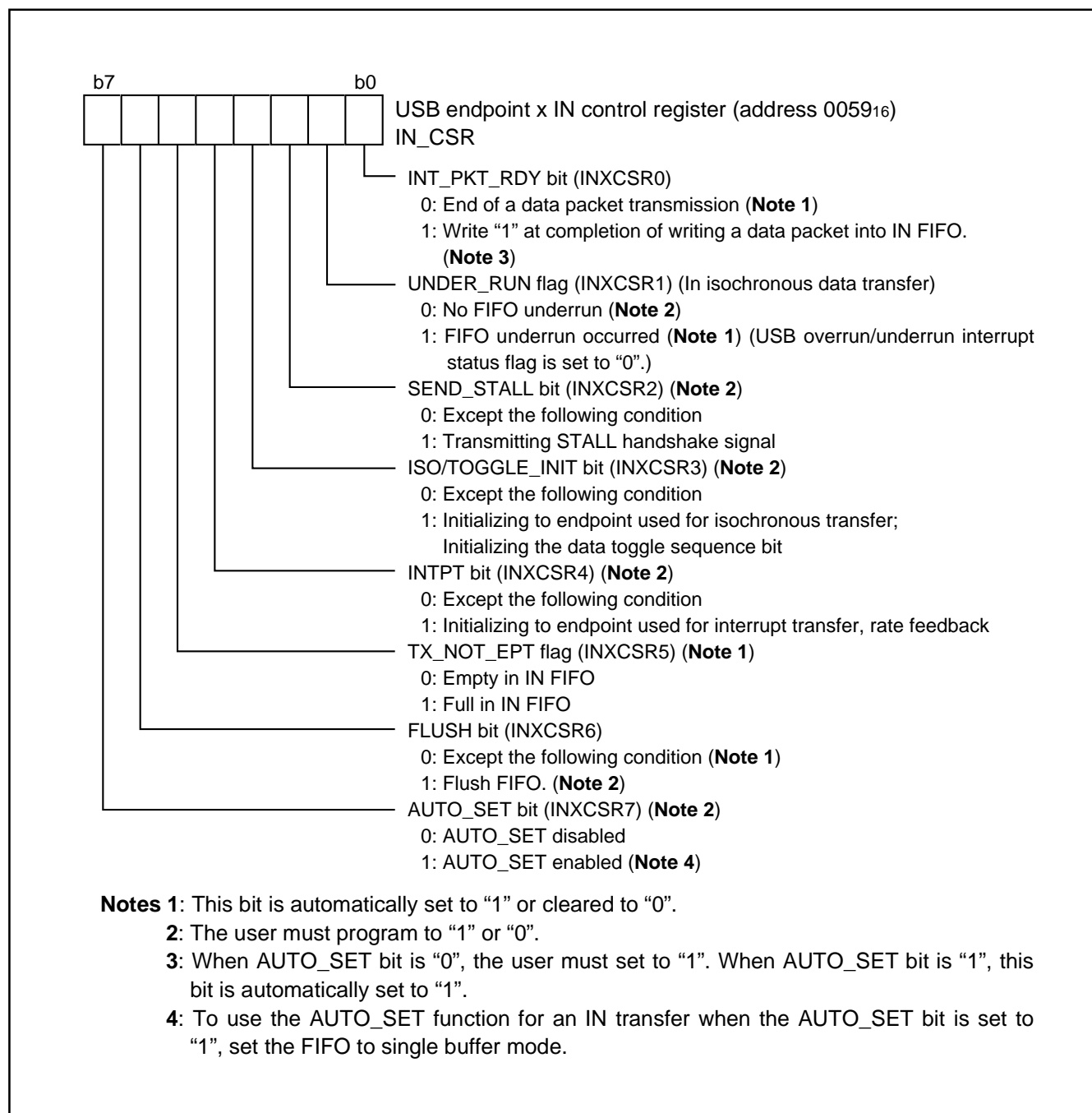


Fig. 47 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 1 to 4) IN control register

**[USB Endpoint x (x = 1 to 4) OUT Control Register] OUT\_CSR**

This register contains the information and status of the respective OUT endpoints 1 to 4. In the endpoint 0, all bits are reserved and cannot be used (they will all be read out as "0"). The USB FCU sets the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag to "1" after a data packet has been received into the OUT FIFO. After reading the data packet in the OUT FIFO, clear this flag to "0". However, if there is still data in the OUT FIFO, the flag cannot be cleared even by writing "0" by software.

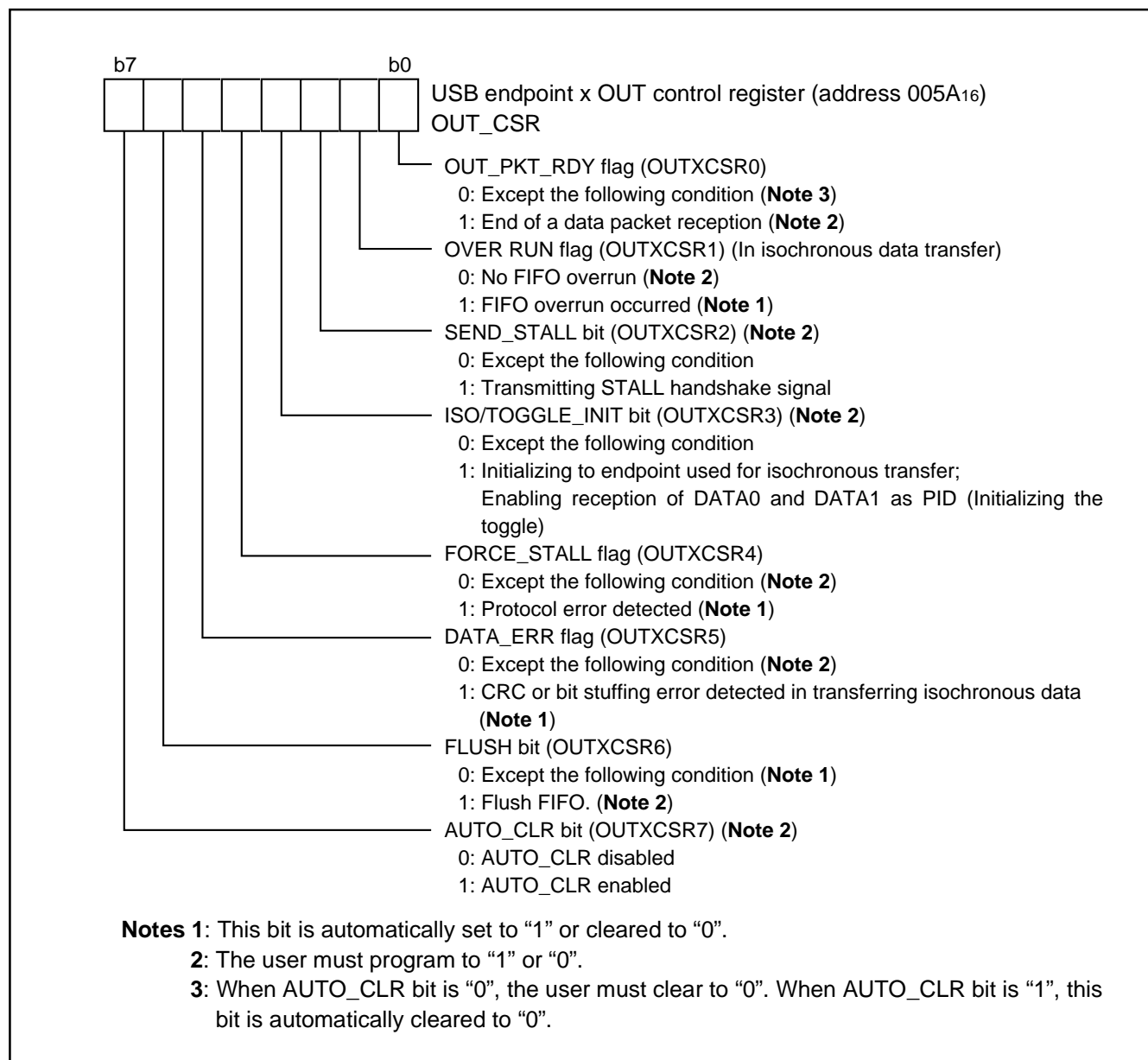


Fig. 48 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 1 to 4) OUT control register

**[USB Endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) IN Max. Packet Size Register] IN\_MAXP**

This register specifies the maximum packet size (MAXP) of an endpoint x IN packet. The value set for endpoint 1 is the number of transmitted bytes divided by 8, and the value set for endpoints 0, 2, 3, and 4 is the actual number of transmitted bytes. The CPU can change these values using the SET\_DESCRIPTOR command.

The initial value for endpoints 0, 2, 3 and 4 is 8, and the initial value for endpoint 1 is 1.

**[USB Endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) OUT Max. Packet Size Register] OUT\_MAXP**

This register specifies the maximum packet size (MAXP) of an Endpoint x OUT packet. The value set for endpoint 1 is the number of received bytes divided by 8, and the value set for endpoints 0, 2, 3, and 4 is the actual number of received bytes. The CPU can change these values using the SET\_DESCRIPTOR command.

The initial value for endpoints 0, 2, 3, and 4 is 8, and the initial value for endpoint 1 is 1. When using the endpoint 0, both USB endpoint x IN max. packet size register (IN\_MAXP) and USB endpoint x OUT max. packet size register (OUT\_MAXP) are set to the same value. Changing one register's value effectively changes the value of the other register as well.

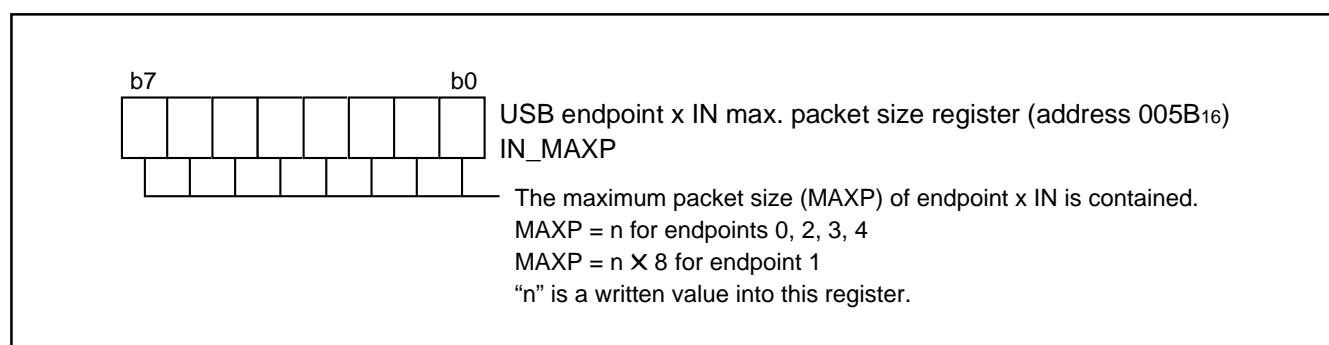


Fig. 49 Structure of USB endpoint x IN max. packet size register

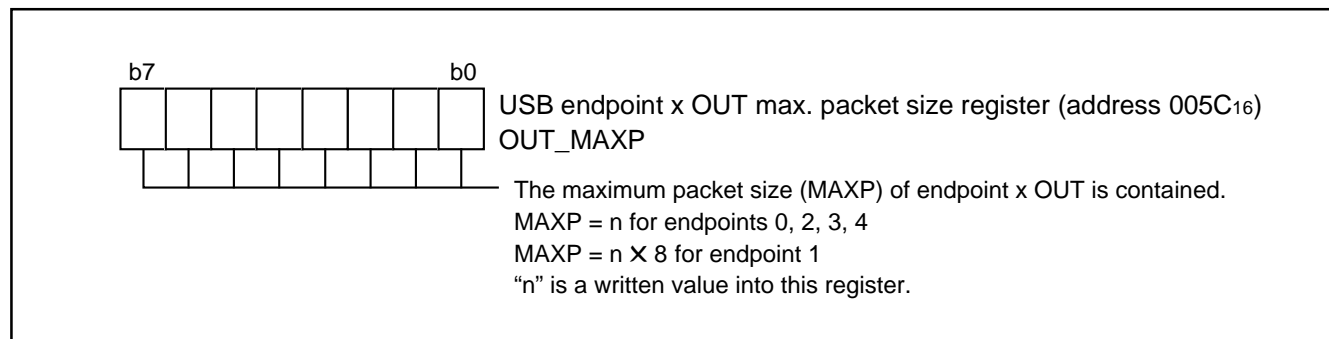


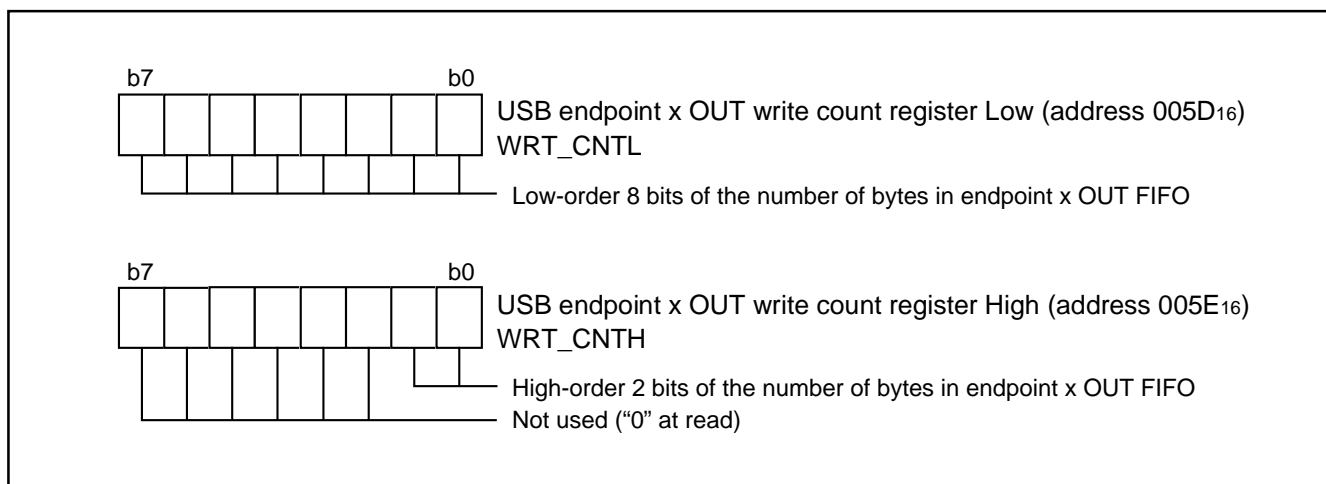
Fig. 50 Structure of USB endpoint x OUT max. packet size register

**[USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) OUT Write Count Registers (Low and High)] WRT\_CNTRL, WRT\_CNTH**

These registers contain the number of bytes in the endpoint x OUT FIFO. These are read-only registers. These two registers must be read after the USB FCU has received a packet of data

from the host. When reading these registers, the lower byte must be read first, then the higher byte.

When the OUT FIFO is in double buffer mode, the CPU first reads the received number of bytes of the former data packet. The next CPU read can obtain that of the new data packet.



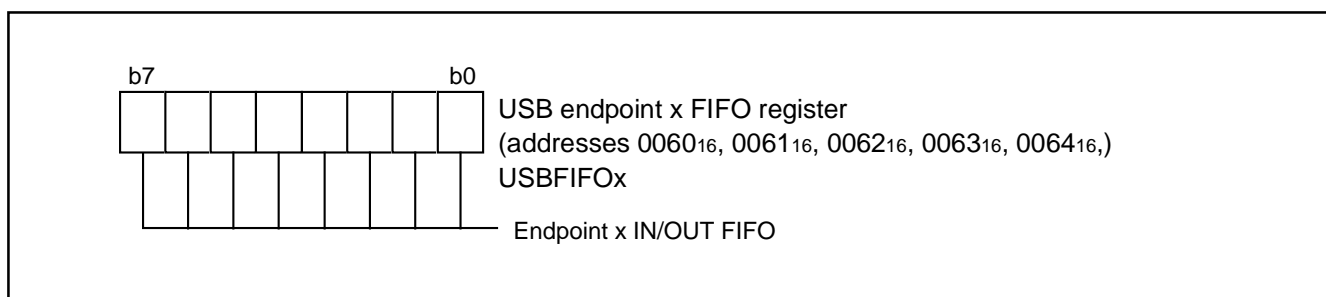
**Fig. 51 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) OUT write count registers**

**[USB Endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) FIFO Register] USBFIFOx**

These registers are the USB IN (transmit) and OUT (receive) FIFO data registers. Write data to the corresponding register, and read data from the corresponding register.

When the maximum packet size is equal to or less than half the FIFO size, these registers function in double buffer mode and can hold two packets of data. When the IN\_PKT\_RDY bit is "0" and

the TX\_NOT\_EMPTY bit is "1", these bits indicate that one packet of data is stored in the IN FIFO. When the OUT FIFO is in double buffer mode, the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag remains as "1" after the first packet of data is read out (it actually goes to "0" and returns to "1" after one  $\phi$  cycle).



**Fig. 52 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) FIFO register**

**[USB Endpoint FIFO Mode Selection Register] USBFIFOMR**

This register determines IN/OUT FIFO size mode for endpoint 1 or endpoint 2. This register is invalid when using endpoint 0, 3, or 4.

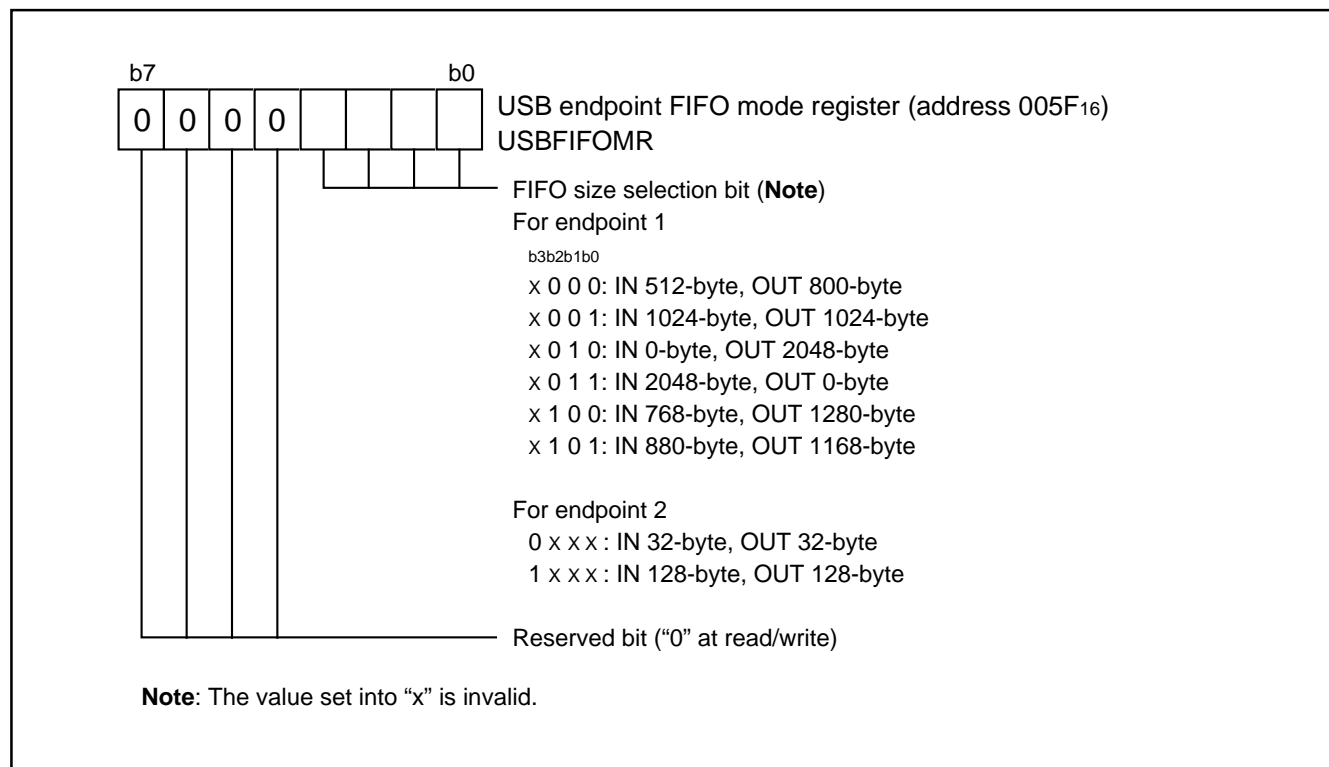


Fig. 53 Structure of USB endpoint FIFO mode register

## MASTER CPU BUS INTERFACE

The 7641 group internally has a 2-byte bus interface which control signals from the host CPU side can operate (slave mode).

This bus interface allows the 7641 group to be directly connected with a R/W type of CPU bus or a  $\overline{RD}$  and  $\overline{WR}$  separated type of CPU bus. Figure 56 shows the block diagram of master CPU bus interface function.

The data bus buffer function I/O pins (P52 – P57, P6, P72–P74) also function as the normal I/O ports. When the Master CPU Bus Interface Enable bit of Data Bus Buffer Control Register (bit 6 of address 004A16) is "0", these pins become the normal I/O ports. When it is "1", these pins become the master CPU bus interface function pins.

Additionally, when using the master CPU bus interface function, set port P6 to input mode by setting "0016" into its port direction register (address 001516).

The selection of either the single data bus buffer mode, which uses 1 byte: data bus buffer 0 only, or the double data bus buffer mode, which uses 2 bytes: data bus buffer 0 and data bus buffer 1, is performed by the Data Bus Buffer Function Select Bit of Data Bus Buffer Control Register 1 (bit 7 of address 004E16). Port P72 becomes  $\overline{S1}$  input pin in the double data bus buffer mode.

When data is written from the host CPU side, an input buffer full interrupt occurs. When data is read from the host CPU, an output buffer empty interrupt occurs. The 7641 group shares two input buffer full interrupt requests and two output buffer empty interrupt requests as shown in Figure 54, respectively.

The 7641 group can also operate the master CPU bus interface connecting with the Built-in DMAC. This could transfer a large amount of data fast.

An input signal level of data bus buffer function input pins can be selected between a CMOS level and a TTL level. Set it using the Master CPU Bus Input Level Select Bit of Port Control Register (address 001016)

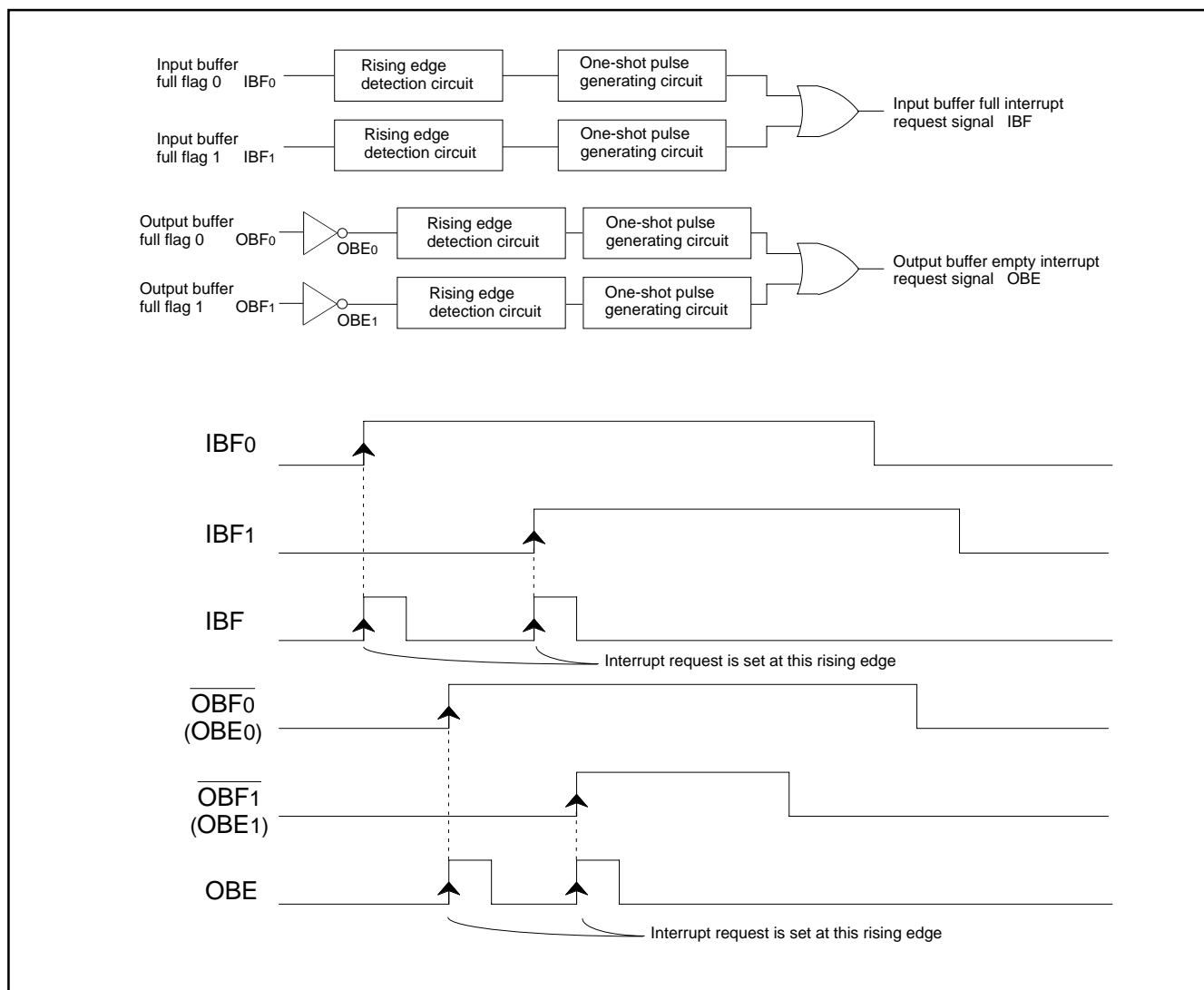


Fig. 54 Interrupt request circuit of data bus buffer

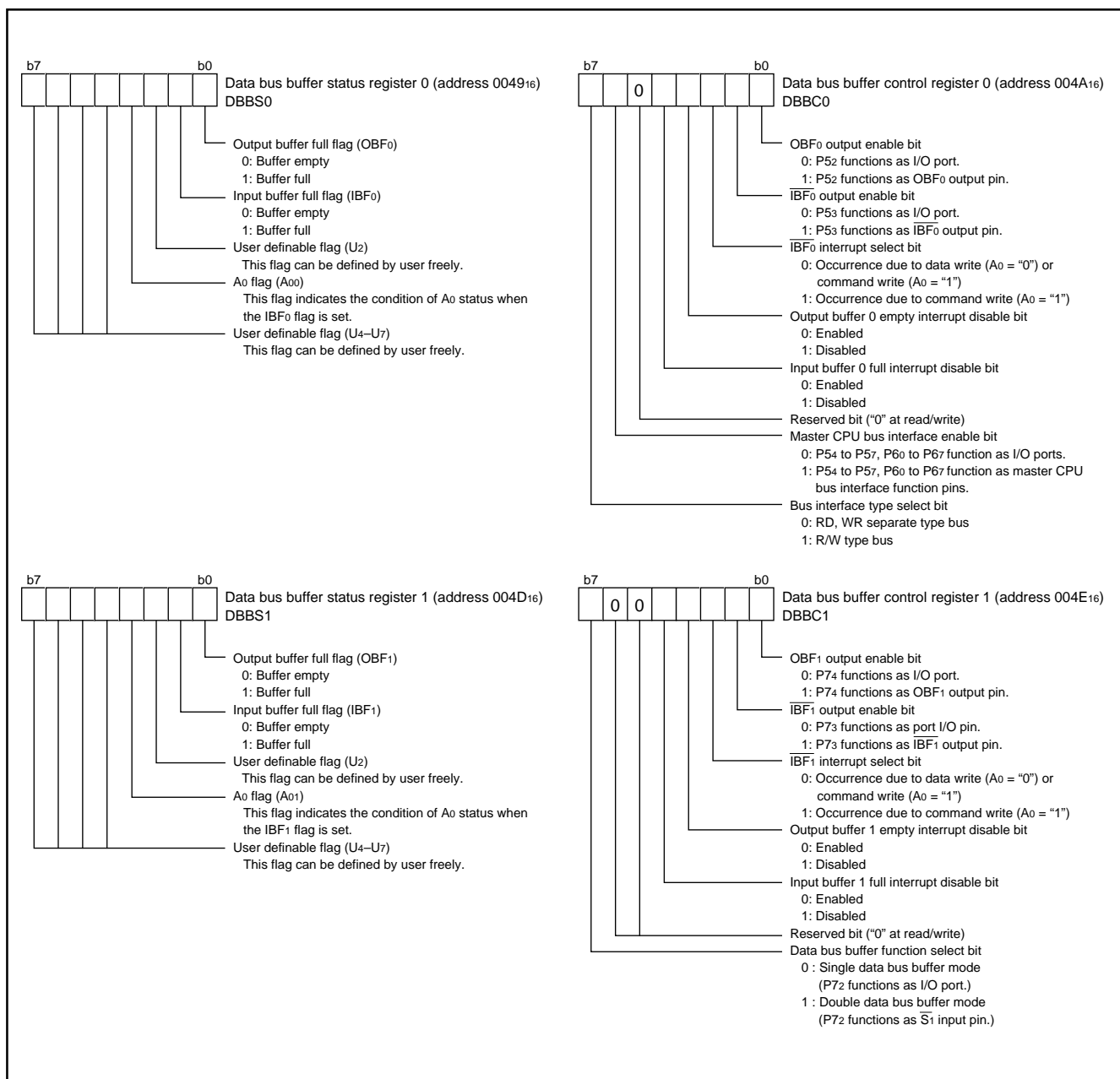


Fig. 55 Structure of master CPU bus interface related registers



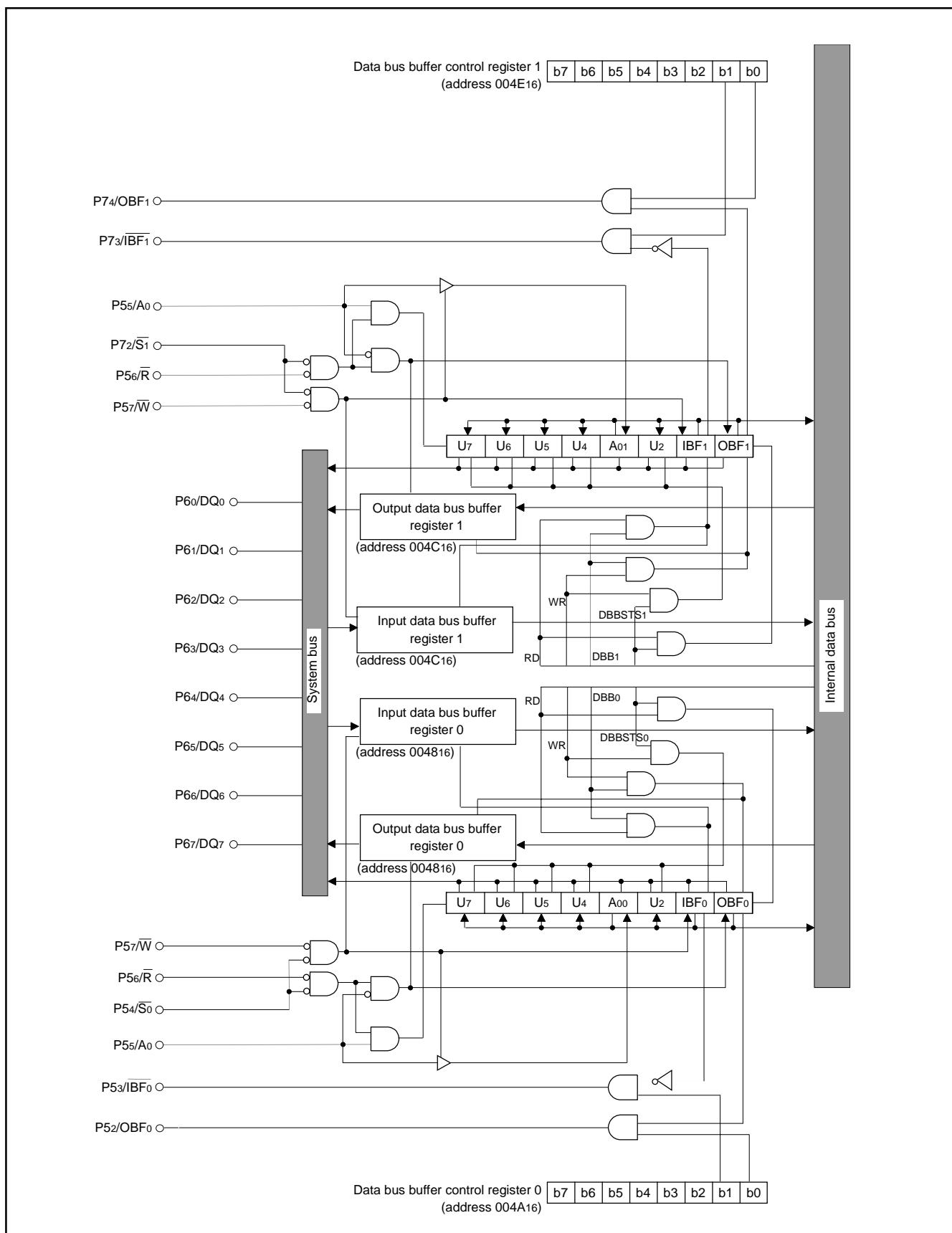


Fig. 56 Master CPU bus interface block diagram

**[Data Bus Buffer Status Register 0, 1 (DBBS0, DBBS1)]**  
**004916, 004D16**

The data bus buffer status registers 0, 1 consist of eight bits each. Bits 0, 1, and 3 are read-only bits and indicate the status of the data bus buffer. Bits 2, 4, 5, 6, and 7 are user definable flags which can be programmed, and can be read/written. The host CPU can only read this register when the A0 pin is set to "H".

**•Bit 0: Output buffer full flag OBF0, OBF1**

When writing data to the output data bus buffer, this flag is set to "1". When reading the output data bus buffer from the host CPU, this flag is cleared to "0".

**•Bit 1: Input buffer full flag IBF0, IBF1**

When writing data from the host CPU to the input data bus buffer, this flag is set to "1". When reading the input data bus buffer from the slave CPU side, this flag is are cleared to "0".

**•Bit 3: A0 flag A00, A01**

When writing data from the host CPU to the input data bus buffer, the level of the A0 pin is latched.

**[Input Data Bus Buffer Registers 0, 1 (DBBIN0, DBBIN1)]**  
**004816, 004C16**

Data on the data bus is latched to DBBIN0 or DBBIN1 by writing request from the host CPU. Data of DBBINs can be read from the Data Bus Buffer Registers (address 004816 or 004C16) on the SFR area.

**[Output Data Bus Buffer Registers 0, 1 (DBBOUT0, DBBOUT1)]** **004816, 004C16**

When writing data to the Data Bus Buffer Registers (address 004816 or 004C16) on the SFR area, data is set to DBBOUT0 or DBBOUT1. Data of DBBOUTs is output onto the data bus by performing the reading request from the host CPU when the A0 pin is set to "L".

**Table 8 Function description of control I/O pins of master CPU bus interface**

Pin	Name	OBF <sub>0</sub> output enable bit	$\overline{\text{IBF}}_0$ output enable bit	OBF <sub>1</sub> output enable bit	$\overline{\text{IBF}}_1$ output enable bit	Input/ Output	Functions
P52/OBF <sub>0</sub>	OBF <sub>0</sub>	1	0	0	0	Output	Status output signal. OBF <sub>0</sub> signal is output.
P53/ $\overline{\text{IBF}}_0$	$\overline{\text{IBF}}_0$	0	1	0	0	Output	Status output signal. $\overline{\text{IBF}}_0$ signal is output.
P54/ $\overline{\text{S}}_0$	$\overline{\text{S}}_0$	—	—	—	—	Input	Chip select input. This is used for selecting the data bus buffer, which is selected at "L" level.
P55/A <sub>0</sub>	A <sub>0</sub>	—	—	—	—	Input	Address input. This is used for selecting DBBSTS and DBBOUT when the host CPU reads. This is used for distinguishing command from data when the host CPU writes.
P56/ $\overline{\text{R}}$ (E)	$\overline{\text{R}}$ (E)	—	—	—	—	Input	This is a timing signal for reading data from the data bus buffer to the host CPU.
P57/ $\overline{\text{W}}$ (R/ $\overline{\text{W}}$ )	$\overline{\text{W}}$ (R/ $\overline{\text{W}}$ )	—	—	—	—	Input	This is a timing signal for writing data to the data bus buffer by the host CPU.
P72/ $\overline{\text{S}}_1$	$\overline{\text{S}}_1$	—	—	—	—	Input	Chip select input. This is used for selecting the data bus buffer, which is selected at "L" level.
P73/ $\overline{\text{IBF}}_1$ / $\overline{\text{HLDA}}$	$\overline{\text{IBF}}_1$	0	0	0	1	Output	Status output signal. $\overline{\text{IBF}}_1$ signal is output.
P74/OBF <sub>1</sub>	OBF <sub>1</sub>	0	0	1	0	Output	Status output signal. OBF <sub>1</sub> signal is output.

## COUNT SOURCE GENERATOR

The 7641 Group has a built-in special count source generator, SCSG. This generator consists of two 8-bit timers: SCSG1 and SCSG2. The output of the special count source generator can be used as a clock source for the timer X, serial I/O and two UARTs.

### SCSG Operation

Timers SCSG1 and SCSG2 are both down count timers. When the count reaches "0", an underflow occurs at the next count source rising edge and the contents of the corresponding timer latch are loaded to the timer. The division ratio of each SCSG-x timer is given by  $1 / (n+1)$ , where "n" is the value set to the SCSG-x timer. The output of Timer SCSG1 is ANDed with the original clock ( $\phi$ ) to make a count source for Timer SCSG2.

The SCSG output is Clock SCSGCLK. The frequency is calculated as follows:

$$\text{SCSGCLK} = \phi \times \{n1 / (n1+1)\} \times \{1 / (n2+1)\}$$

n1: value set to SCSG1

n2: value set to SCSG2

If the SCSG1 Count Stop Bit (SCSGM1) is set to "1", or Timer SCSG1 is set to "0", the SCSG1 count stops. When this happens, the count source for Timer SCSG2 becomes  $\phi$ .

### Data Write Control

When the SCSG1 Data Write Control Bit or SCSG2 Data Write Control Bit is set to "0", and data is written to the SCSG-x timer; the data is written to the corresponding latch and timer at the same time. When that bit is set to "1", the data is only written to the latch.

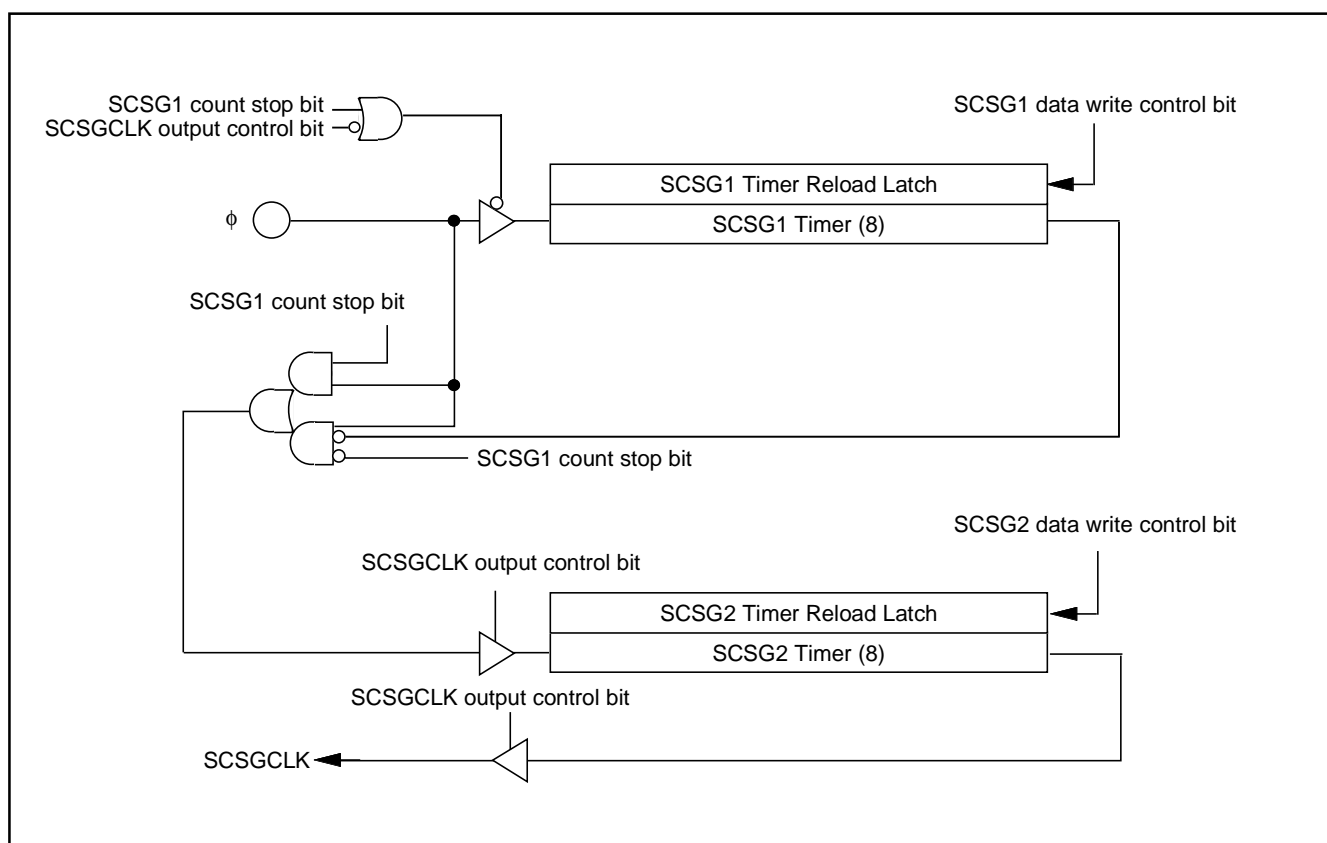


Fig. 57 Special count source generator block diagram

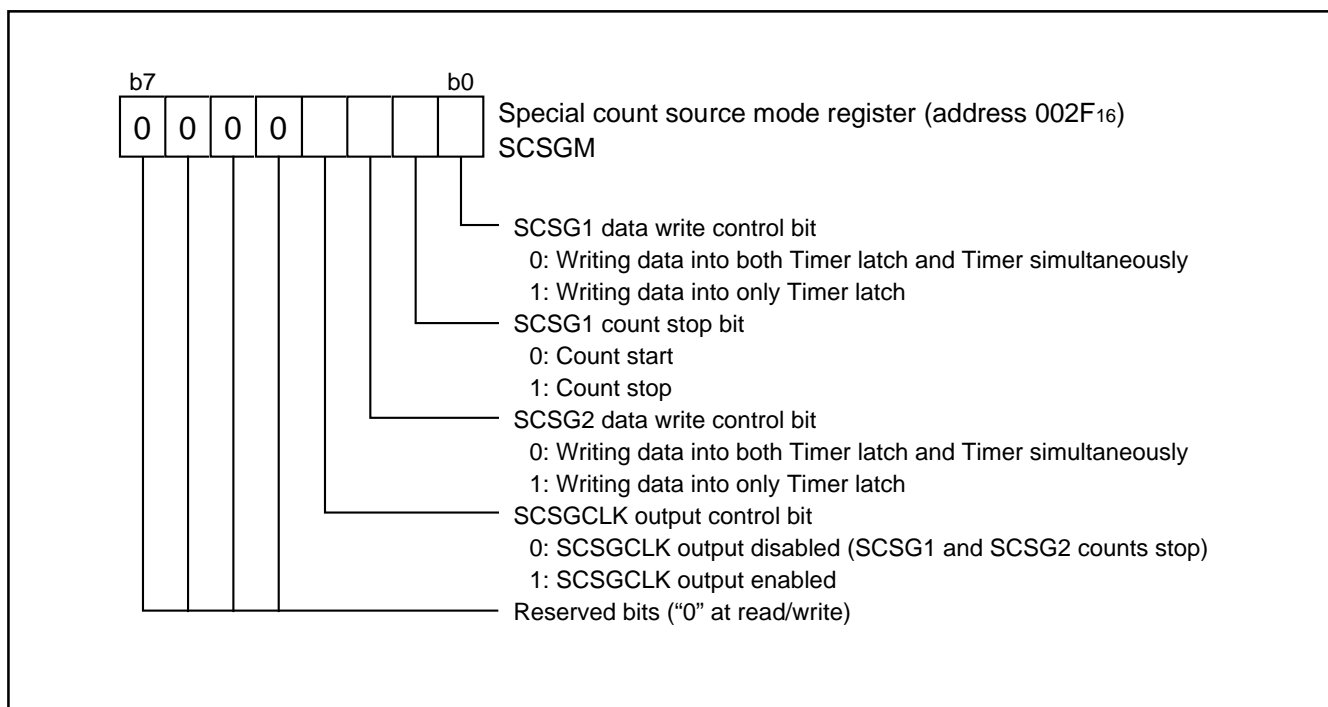


Fig. 58 Structure of special count source generator mode register

## FREQUENCY SYNTHESIZER (PLL)

The frequency synthesizer generates the 48 MHz clock required by f<sub>USB</sub> and f<sub>SYN</sub>, which are multiples of the external input reference f<sub>(XIN)</sub>. Figure 59 shows the block diagram for the frequency synthesizer circuit.

The Frequency Synthesizer Input Bit selects either f<sub>(XIN)</sub> or f<sub>(XCIN)</sub> as an input clock f<sub>IN</sub> for the frequency synthesizer.

The Frequency Synthesizer Multiply Register 2 (FSM2: address 006E16) divides f<sub>IN</sub> to generate f<sub>FIN</sub>, where

$$f_{FIN} = f_{IN} / 2(n + 1), n: \text{value set to FSM2.}$$

When the value of Frequency Synthesizer Multiply Register 2 is set to 255, the division is not performed and f<sub>FIN</sub> will equal f<sub>IN</sub>.

f<sub>VCO</sub> is generated according to the contents of Frequency Synthesizer Multiply Register 1 (FSM1: address 006D16), where

$$f_{VCO} = f_{FIN} \times \{2(n + 1)\}, n: \text{value set to FSM1.}$$

Set the value of FSM1 so that the value of f<sub>VCO</sub> is 48 MHz.

f<sub>SYN</sub> is generated according to the contents of the Frequency Synthesizer Divide Register (FSD: address 006F16), where

$$f_{SYN} = f_{VCO} / 2(m + 1), m: \text{value set to FSD.}$$

When the value of the Frequency Synthesizer Divide Register is set to 255, the division is not performed and f<sub>SYN</sub> becomes invalid.

### [Frequency Synthesizer Control Register] FSC

Setting the Frequency Synthesizer Enable Bit (FSE) to "1" enables the frequency synthesizer. When the Frequency Synthesizer Lock Status Bit (LS) is "1" in the frequency synthesizer enabled, this indicates that f<sub>SYN</sub> and f<sub>VCO</sub> have correct frequencies.

### ■Notes

Make sure to connect a low-pulse filter to the LPF pin when using the frequency synthesizer. In addition, please refer to "Programming Notes: Frequency Synthesizer" when recovering from a Hardware Reset.

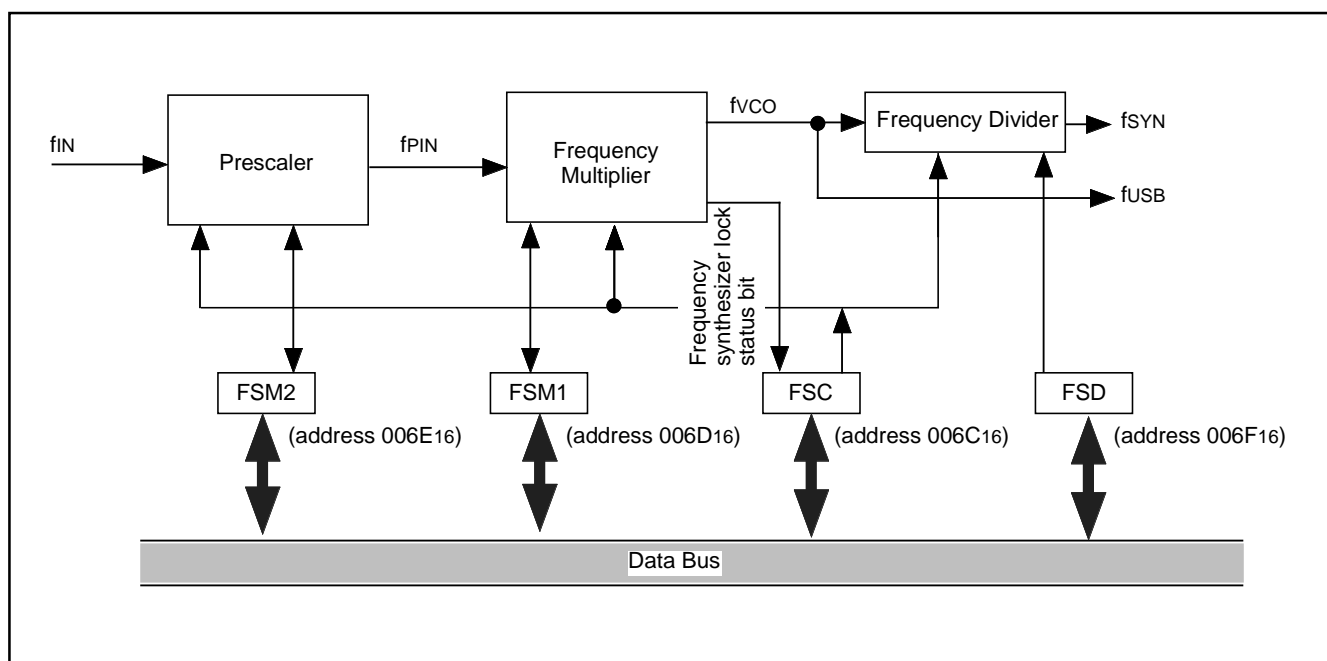


Fig. 59 Frequency synthesizer block diagram

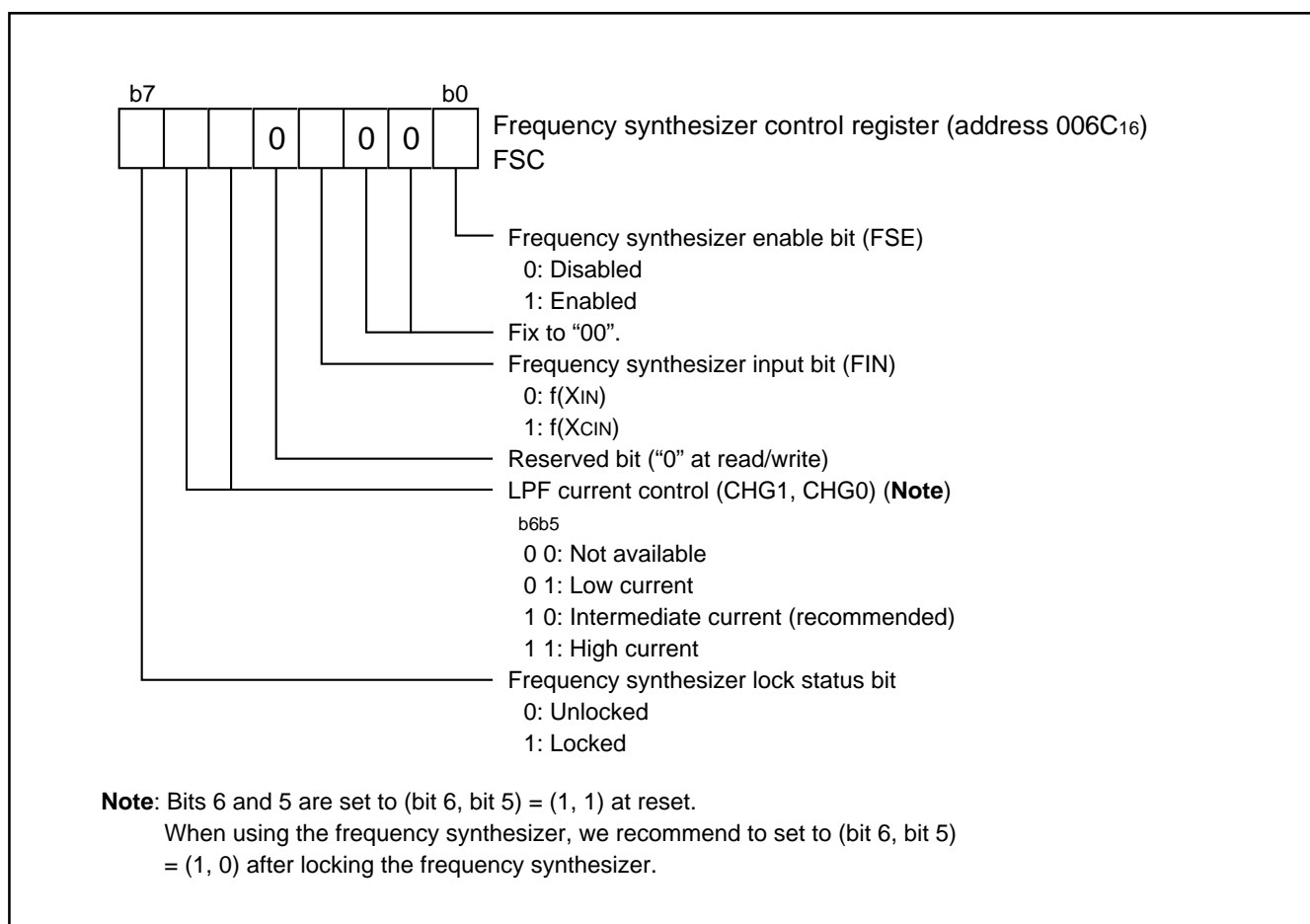


Fig. 60 Structure of frequency synthesizer control register

### RESET CIRCUIT

To reset the microcomputer,  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin should be held at an "L" level for 20 cycles or more of  $\phi$ . Then the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin is returned to an "H" level, and reset is released. They must be performed when the power source voltages are between 3.00 V and 3.60 V or 4.15 V and 5.25 V.

After the reset is completed, the program starts from the address contained in address FFFA<sub>16</sub> (high-order byte) and address FFFB<sub>16</sub> (low-order byte).

After oscillation has restarted, the timers 1 and 2 secure waiting time for the internal clock  $\phi$  oscillation stabilized automatically by setting the timer 1 to "FF16" and timer 2 to "0116". The internal clock  $\phi$  retains "H" level until Timer 2's underflow and it cannot be supplied until the underflow.

The pins state during reset are as follows:

- When CNVss = "H"
  - Ports P0, P1, P33 to P37 : Outputting
  - Pins other than above mentioned ports : Inputting
- When CNVss = "L"
  - All pins : Inputting.

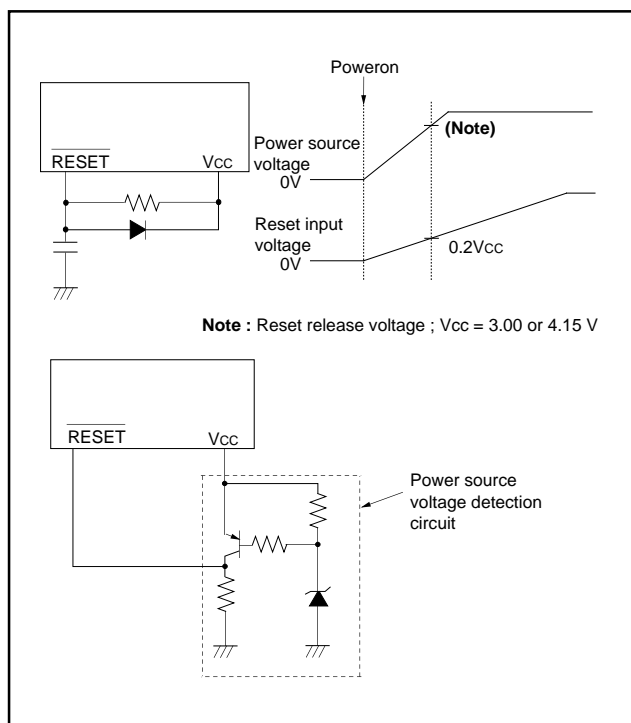


Fig. 61 Reset circuit example

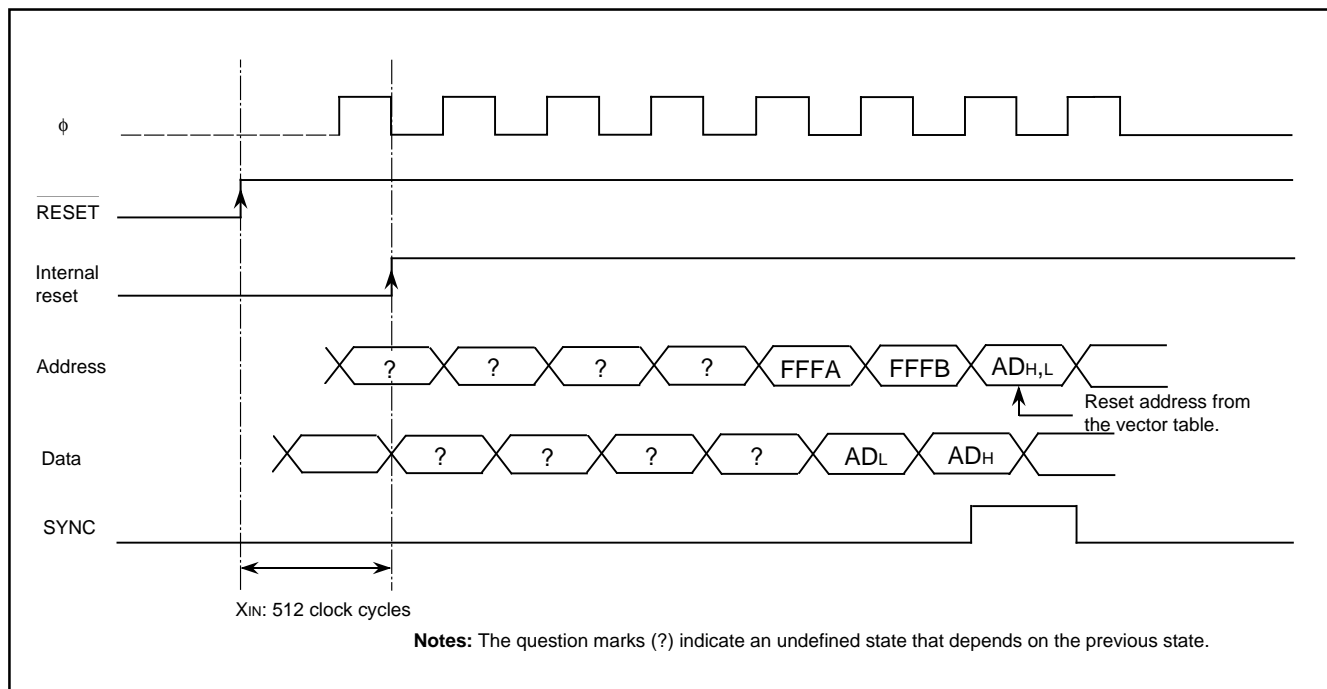


Fig. 62 Reset sequence



Address		Register contents	Address		Register contents
(1)	CPU mode register A (CPUA)	0000 <sub>16</sub> 000011100	(48)	UART1 status register (U1STS)	0032 <sub>16</sub> 00000011
(2)	CPU mode register B (CPUB)	0001 <sub>16</sub> 10000011	(49)	UART1 control register (U1CON)	0033 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(3)	Interrupt request register A (IREQA)	0002 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(50)	UART1 RTS control register (U1RTSC)	0036 <sub>16</sub> 10000000
(4)	Interrupt request register B (IREQB)	0003 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(51)	UART2 mode register (U2MOD)	0038 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(5)	Interrupt request register C (IREQC)	0004 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(52)	UART2 status register (U2STS)	003A <sub>16</sub> 00000011
(6)	Interrupt control register A (ICONA)	0005 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(53)	UART2 control register (U2CON)	003B <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(7)	Interrupt control register B (ICONB)	0006 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(54)	UART2 RTS control register (U2RTSC)	003E <sub>16</sub> 10000000
(8)	Interrupt control register C (ICONC)	0007 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(55)	DMAC index and status register (DMAIS)	003F <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(9)	Port P0 (P0)	0008 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(56)	DMAC channel x mode register 1 (DMAx1)	0040 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(10)	Port P0 direction register (P0D)	0009 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(57)	DMAC channel x mode register 2 (DMAx2)	0041 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(11)	Port P1 (P1)	000A <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(58)	DMAC channel x source register Low (DMAxSL)	0042 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(12)	Port P1 direction register (P1D)	000B <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(59)	DMAC channel x source register High (DMAxSH)	0043 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(13)	Port P2 (P2)	000C <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(60)	DMAC channel x destination register Low (DMAxDL)	0044 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(14)	Port P2 direction register (P2D)	000D <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(61)	DMAC channel x destination register High (DMAxDH)	0045 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(15)	Port P3 (P3)	000E <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(62)	DMAC channel x transfer count register Low (DMAxCL)	0046 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(16)	Port P3 direction register (P3D)	000F <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(63)	DMAC channel x transfer count register High (DMAxCH)	0047 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(17)	Port control register (PTC)	0010 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(64)	Data bus buffer register 0 (DBB0)	0048 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(18)	Interrupt polarity select register (IPOL)	0011 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(65)	Data bus buffer status register 0 (DBBS0)	0049 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(19)	Port P2 pull-up control register (PUP2)	0012 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(66)	Data bus buffer control register 0 (DBBC0)	004A <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(20)	USB control register (USBC)	0013 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(67)	Data bus buffer register 1 (DBB1)	004C <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(21)	Port P6 (P6)	0014 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(68)	Data bus buffer status register 1 (DBBS1)	004D <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(22)	Port P6 direction register (P6D)	0015 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(69)	Data bus buffer control register 1 (DBBC1)	004E <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(23)	Port P5 (P5)	0016 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(70)	USB address register (USBA)	0050 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(24)	Port P5 direction register (P5D)	0017 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(71)	USB power management register (USBPM)	0051 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(25)	Port P4 (P4)	0018 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(72)	USB interrupt status register 1 (USBIS1)	0052 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(26)	Port P4 direction register (P4D)	0019 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(73)	USB interrupt status register 2 (USBIS2)	0053 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(27)	Port P7 (P7)	001A <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(74)	USB interrupt enable register 1 (USBIE1)	0054 <sub>16</sub> FF <sub>16</sub>
(28)	Port P7 direction register (P7D)	001B <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(75)	USB interrupt enable register 2 (USBIE2)	0055 <sub>16</sub> 00110011
(29)	Port P8 (P8)	001C <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(76)	USB frame number register Low (USBSOFL)	0056 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(30)	Port P8 direction register (P8D)	001D <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(77)	USB frame number register High (USBSOFH)	0057 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(31)	Clock control register (CCR)	001F <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(78)	USB endpoint index register (USBINDEX)	0058 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(32)	Timer XL (TXL)	0020 <sub>16</sub> FF <sub>16</sub>	(79)	USB endpoint x IN control register (IN_CSR)	0059 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(33)	Timer XH (TXH)	0021 <sub>16</sub> FF <sub>16</sub>	(80)	USB endpoint x OUT control register (OUT_CSR)	005A <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(34)	Timer YL (TYL)	0022 <sub>16</sub> FF <sub>16</sub>	(81)	USB endpoint x IN max. packet size register (IN_MAXP) (Note 1)	005B <sub>16</sub> 00001000
(35)	Timer YH (TYH)	0023 <sub>16</sub> FF <sub>16</sub>	(82)	USB endpoint x OUT max. packet size register (OUT_MAXP) (Note 1)	005C <sub>16</sub> 00001000
(36)	Timer 1 (T1)	0024 <sub>16</sub> FF <sub>16</sub>	(83)	USB endpoint x OUT write count register Low (WRT_CNTL)	005D <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(37)	Timer 2 (T2)	0025 <sub>16</sub> 00000001	(84)	USB endpoint x OUT write count register High (WRT_CNTH)	005E <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(38)	Timer 3 (T3)	0026 <sub>16</sub> FF <sub>16</sub>	(85)	USB endpoint FIFO mode register (USBFIFOMR)	005F <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>
(39)	Timer X mode register (TXM)	0027 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(86)	Flash memory control register (FMCR) (Note 3)	006A <sub>16</sub> 00000001
(40)	Timer Y mode register (TYM)	0028 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(87)	Frequency synthesizer control register (FSC)	006C <sub>16</sub> 01100000
(41)	Timer 123 mode register (T123M)	0029 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(88)	Frequency synthesizer multiply register 1 (FSM1)	006D <sub>16</sub> FF <sub>16</sub>
(42)	Serial I/O control register 1 (SIOCON1)	002B <sub>16</sub> 01000000	(89)	Frequency synthesizer multiply register 2 (FSM2)	006E <sub>16</sub> FF <sub>16</sub>
(43)	Serial I/O control register 2 (SIOCON2)	002C <sub>16</sub> 00011000	(90)	Frequency synthesizer divide register (FSM2)	006F <sub>16</sub> FF <sub>16</sub>
(44)	Special count source generator 1 (SCSG1)	002D <sub>16</sub> FF <sub>16</sub>	(91)	ROM code protect control register (ROMCP) (Note 3)	FFC9 <sub>16</sub> FF <sub>16</sub>
(45)	Special count source generator 2 (SCSG2)	002E <sub>16</sub> FF <sub>16</sub>	(92)	Processor status register (PS)	XXXXXXXXXX
(46)	Special count source mode register (SCSGM)	002F <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>	(93)	Program counter (PC <sub>H</sub> )	FFFF <sub>16</sub> contents
(47)	UART1 mode register (U1MOD)	0030 <sub>16</sub> 00 <sub>16</sub>		(PC <sub>L</sub> )	FFFA <sub>16</sub> contents

X : Not fixed  
**Notes 1:** When using the endpoint 1, this contents are "01<sub>16</sub>".  
**2:** Since the initial values for other than above mentioned registers and RAM contents are indefinite at reset, they must be set.  
**3:** The flash memory control register and the ROM code protect control register exists in the flash memory version only.

Fig. 63 Internal status at reset

## CLOCK GENERATING CIRCUIT

The 7641 group has two built-in oscillation circuits. An oscillation circuit can be formed by connecting a resonator between  $X_{IN}$  and  $X_{OUT}$  ( $X_{CIN}$  and  $X_{COUT}$ ). Use the circuit constants in accordance with the resonator manufacturer's recommended values. No external resistor is needed between  $X_{IN}$  and  $X_{OUT}$  since a feed-back resistor exists on-chip. (An external feed-back resistor may be needed depending on conditions.) However, an external feed-back resistor is needed between  $X_{CIN}$  and  $X_{COUT}$ .

When using an external clock, input the clocks to the  $X_{IN}$  or  $X_{CIN}$  pin and leave the  $X_{OUT}$  or  $X_{COUT}$  pin open.

Immediately after power on, only the  $X_{IN}$  oscillation circuit starts oscillating, and  $X_{CIN}$  and  $X_{COUT}$  pins function as I/O ports.

## Frequency Control

The internal system clock can be selected among  $f_{SYN}$ ,  $f(X_{IN})$ ,  $f(X_{IN})/2$ , and  $f(X_{CIN})$ . The internal clock  $\phi$  is half the frequency of internal system clock.

### (1) $f_{SYN}$ clock

This is made by the frequency synthesizer.  $f(X_{IN})$  or  $f(X_{CIN})$  can be selected as its input clock. See also section "FREQUENCY SYNTHESIZER".

### (2) $f(X_{IN})$ clock

The frequency of internal system clock is the frequency of  $X_{IN}$  pin.

### (3) $f(X_{IN})/2$ clock

The frequency of internal system clock is half the frequency of  $X_{IN}$  pin.

### (4) $f(X_{CIN})$ clock

The frequency of internal system clock is the frequency of  $X_{CIN}$  pin.

### ■Note

If you switch the oscillation between  $X_{IN}$  -  $X_{OUT}$  and  $X_{CIN}$  -  $X_{COUT}$ , stabilize both  $X_{IN}$  and  $X_{CIN}$  oscillations. The sufficient time is required for the  $X_{CIN}$  oscillation to stabilize, especially immediately after power on and at returning from the stop mode.

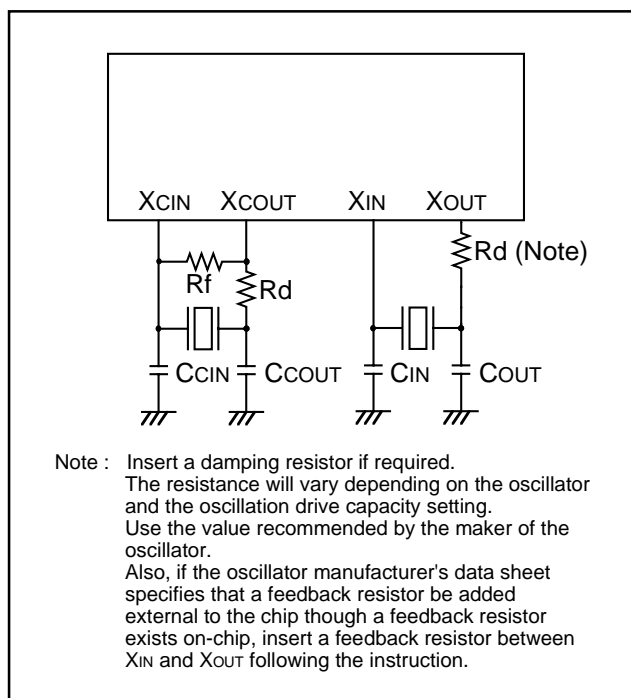


Fig. 64 Ceramic resonator or quartz-crystal oscillator external circuit

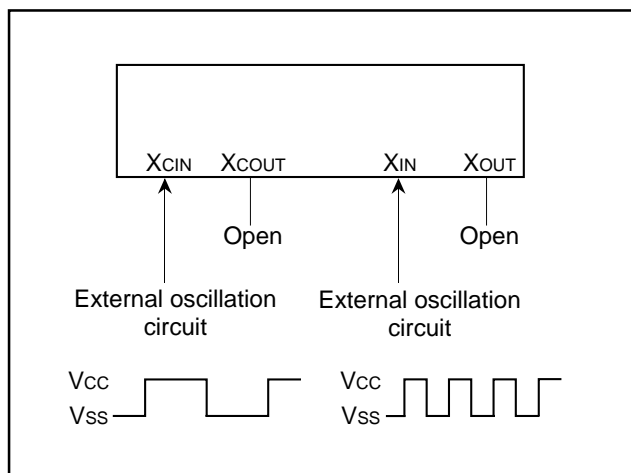


Fig. 65 External clock input circuit

### (5) Low power dissipation mode

- The low power dissipation operation can be realized by stopping the main clock X<sub>IN</sub> when using f(X<sub>CIN</sub>) as the internal system clock. To stop the main clock, set the Main Clock (X<sub>IN</sub>-X<sub>OUT</sub>) Stop Bit of the CPU mode register A to "1".
- The low power dissipation operation can be realized by disabling the reversed amplifier when inputting external clocks to the X<sub>IN</sub> pin or X<sub>CIN</sub> pin. To disable the reversed amplifier, set the X<sub>COU</sub>T Oscillation Drive Disable Bit (CCR5) or X<sub>OU</sub>T Oscillation Drive Disable Bit (CCR6) of the clock control register to "1".

## Oscillation Control

### (1) Stop mode

If the STP instruction is executed, the internal clock  $\phi$  stops at "H" level, and X<sub>IN</sub> and X<sub>CIN</sub> oscillators stop. Then the timer 1 is set to "FF16" and the internal clock  $\phi$  divided by 8 is automatically selected as its count source. Additionally, the timer 2 is set to "0116" and the timer 1's output is automatically selected as its count source.

Set the Timer 1 and Timer 2 Interrupt Enable Bits to disabled ("0") before executing the STP instruction. When using an external interrupt to release the stop mode, set the Interrupt Enable Bit to be used to enabled ("1") and the Interrupt Disable Flag (I) to "0".

Oscillator restarts at reset or when an external interrupt including USB resume interrupts is received, but the internal clock  $\phi$  remains at "H" until the timer 2 underflows. The internal clock  $\phi$  is supplied for the first time when the timer 2 underflows. Therefore make sure not to set the Timer 1 Interrupt Request Bit and Timer 2 Interrupt Request Bit to "1" before the STP instruction stops the oscillator.

### (2) Wait mode

If the WIT instruction is executed, the internal clock  $\phi$  stops at "H" level, but the oscillator does not stop. The internal clock  $\phi$  restarts at reset or when an interrupt is received. Since the oscillator does not stop, normal operation can be started immediately after the internal clock  $\phi$  is restarted.

Set the Interrupt Enable Bit to be used to release the wait mode to enabled ("1") and the Interrupt Disable Flag (I) to "0".

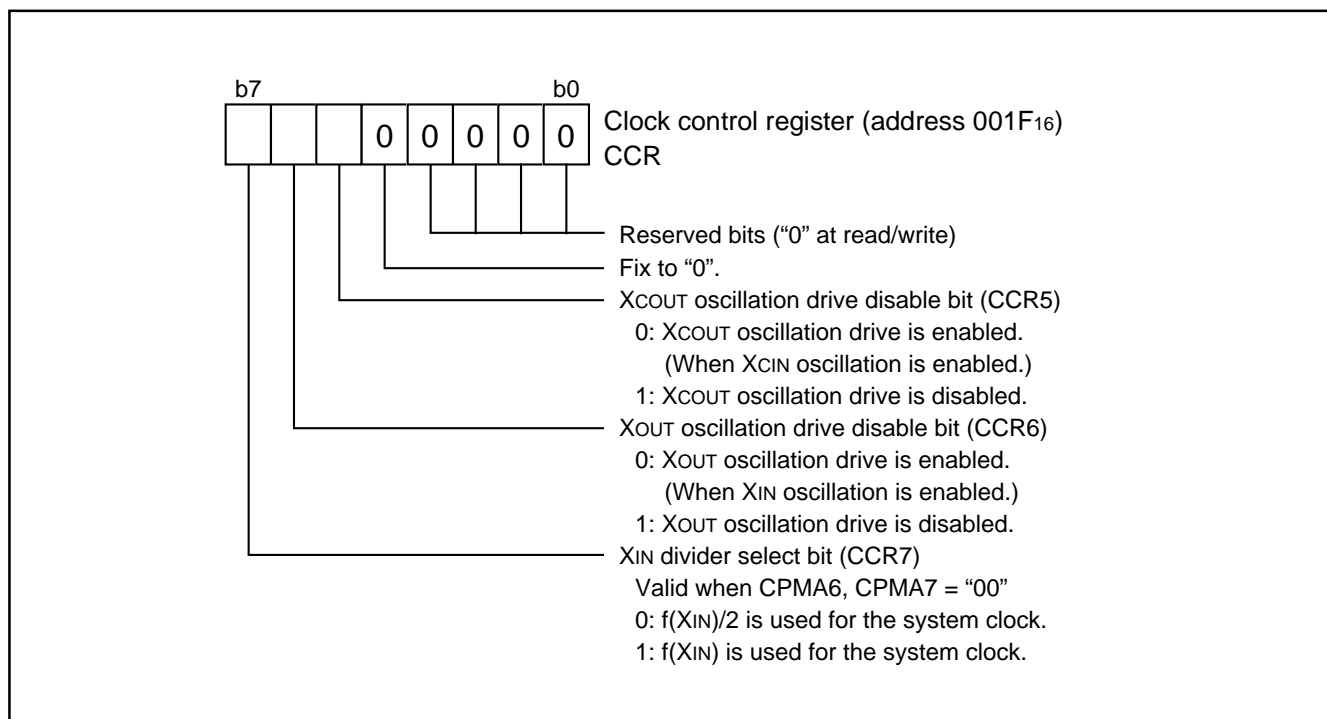


Fig. 66 Structure of clock control register

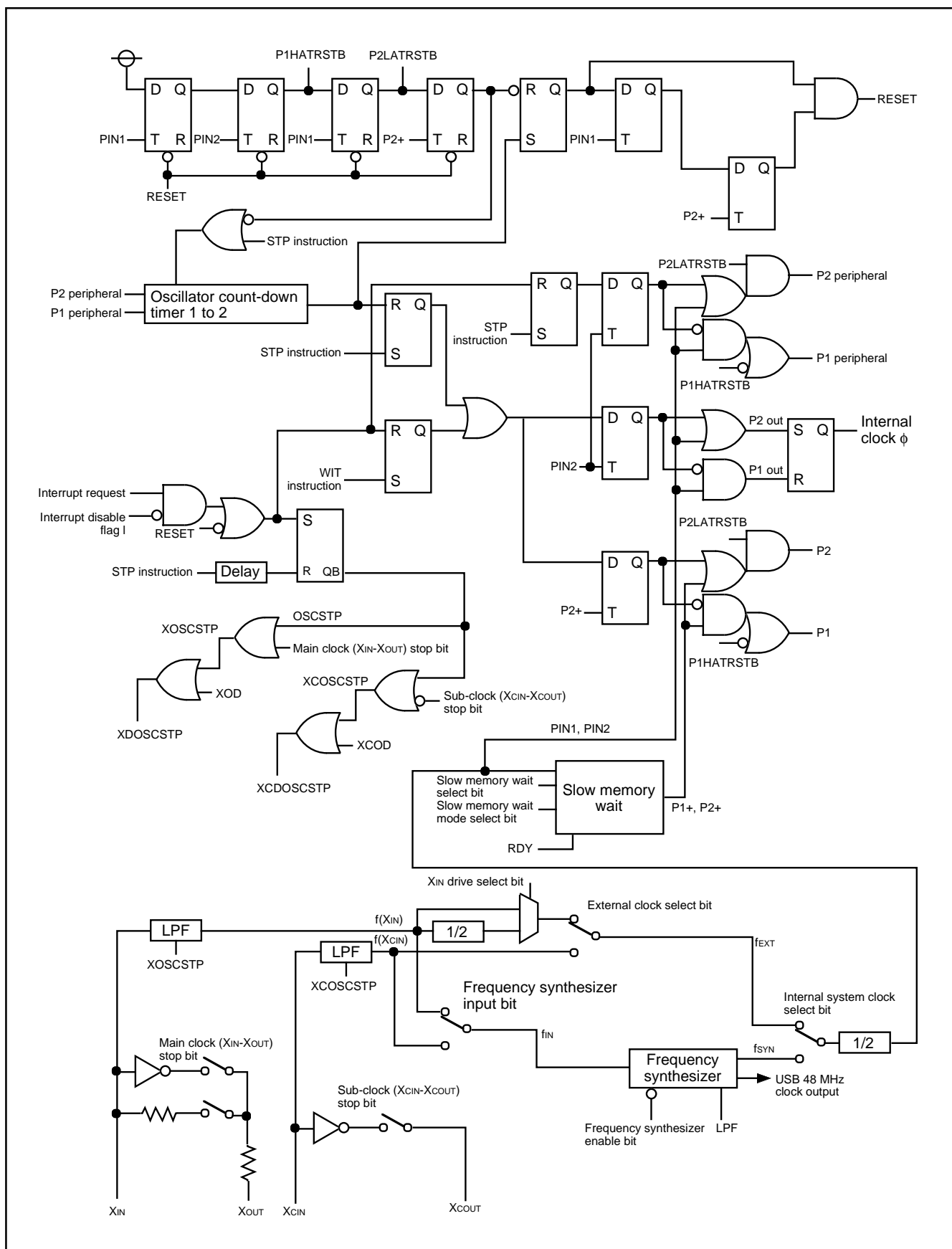


Fig. 67 Clock generating circuit block diagram

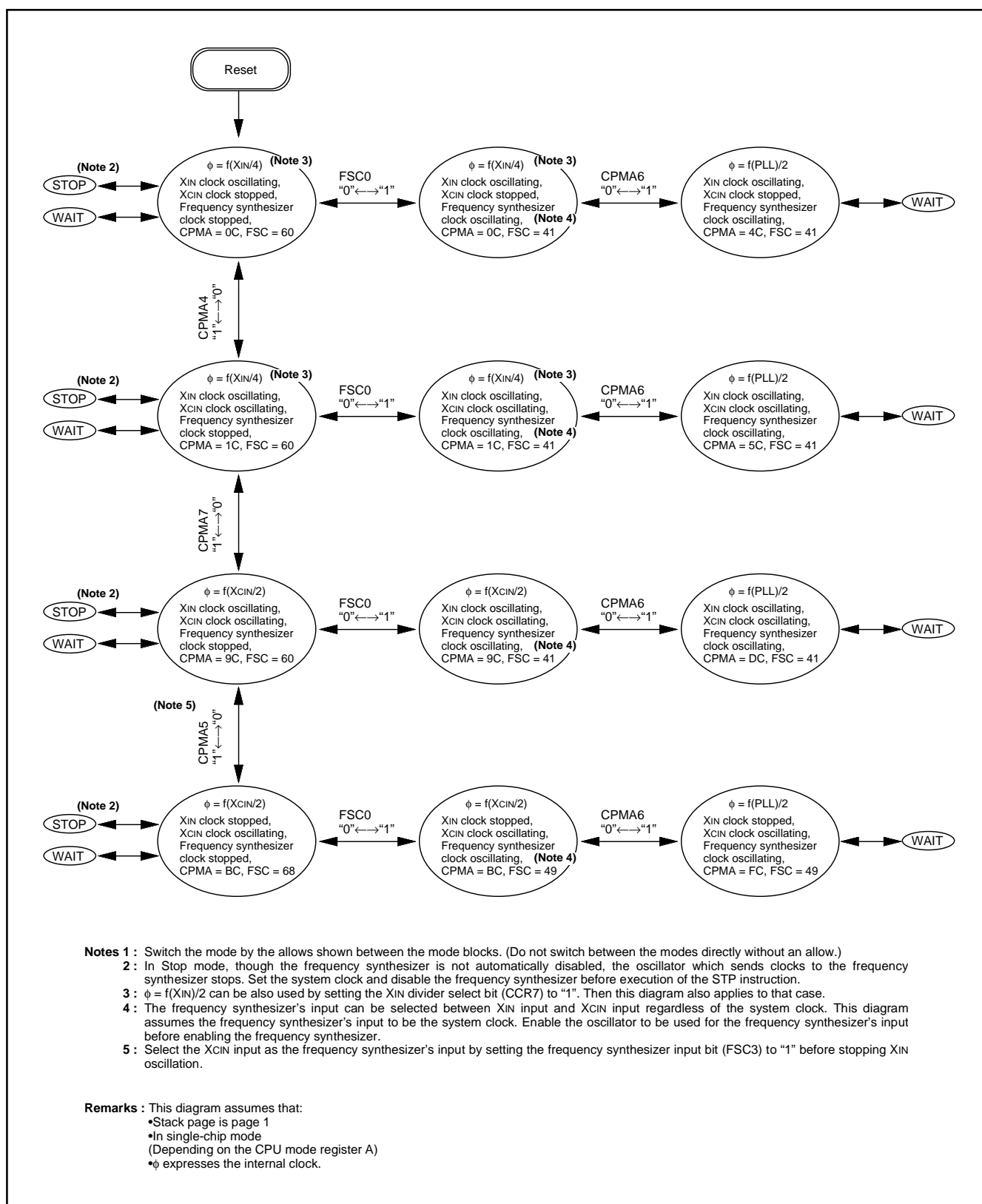


Fig. 68 State transitions of clock

## PROCESSOR MODE

Single-chip mode, memory expansion mode, and microprocessor mode which is only in the mask ROM version can be selected by using the Processor Mode Bits of CPU mode register A (bits 0 and 1 of address 0000<sub>16</sub>). In the memory expansion mode and microprocessor mode, a memory can be expanded externally via ports P0 to P3. In these modes, ports P0 to P3 lose their I/O port functions and become bus pins.

The port direction registers corresponding to those ports become external memory areas.

**Table 9 Port functions in memory expansion mode and microprocessor mode**

Port Name	Function
Port P0	Outputs low-order 8 bits of address.
Port P1	Outputs high-order 8 bits of address.
Port P2	Operates as I/O pins for data D7 to D0 (including instruction code).
Port P3	P30 is the RDY input pin. P31 and P32 function only as output pins P33 is the DMAOUT output pin. P34 is the $\phi$ OUT output pin. P35 is the SYNCOUT output pin. P36 is the WR output pin, and P37 is the $\overline{RD}$ output pin.
Port P4	P40 is the EDMA pin.

### (1) Single-chip mode

Select this mode by resetting the MCU with CNVss connected to Vss.

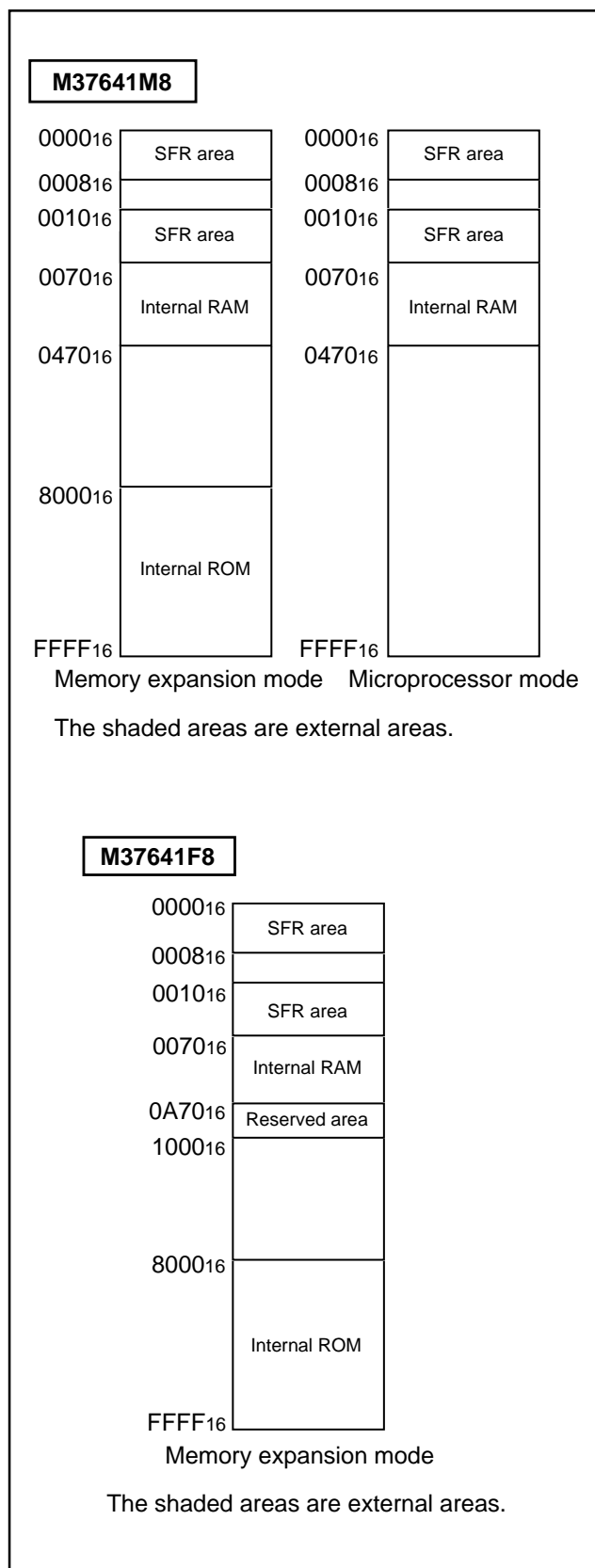
### (2) Memory expansion mode

Select this mode by setting the Processor Mode Bits (b1, b0) to "01" in software with CNVss connected to Vss. This mode enables external memory expansion while maintaining the validity of the internal ROM.

### (3) Microprocessor mode

Select this mode by resetting the MCU with CNVss connected to Vcc, or by setting the Processor Mode Bits (b1, b0) to "10" in software with CNVss connected to Vss. In the microprocessor mode, the internal ROM is no longer valid and an external memory must be used.

Do not set this mode in the flash memory version.



**Fig. 69 Memory maps in processor modes other than single-chip mode**

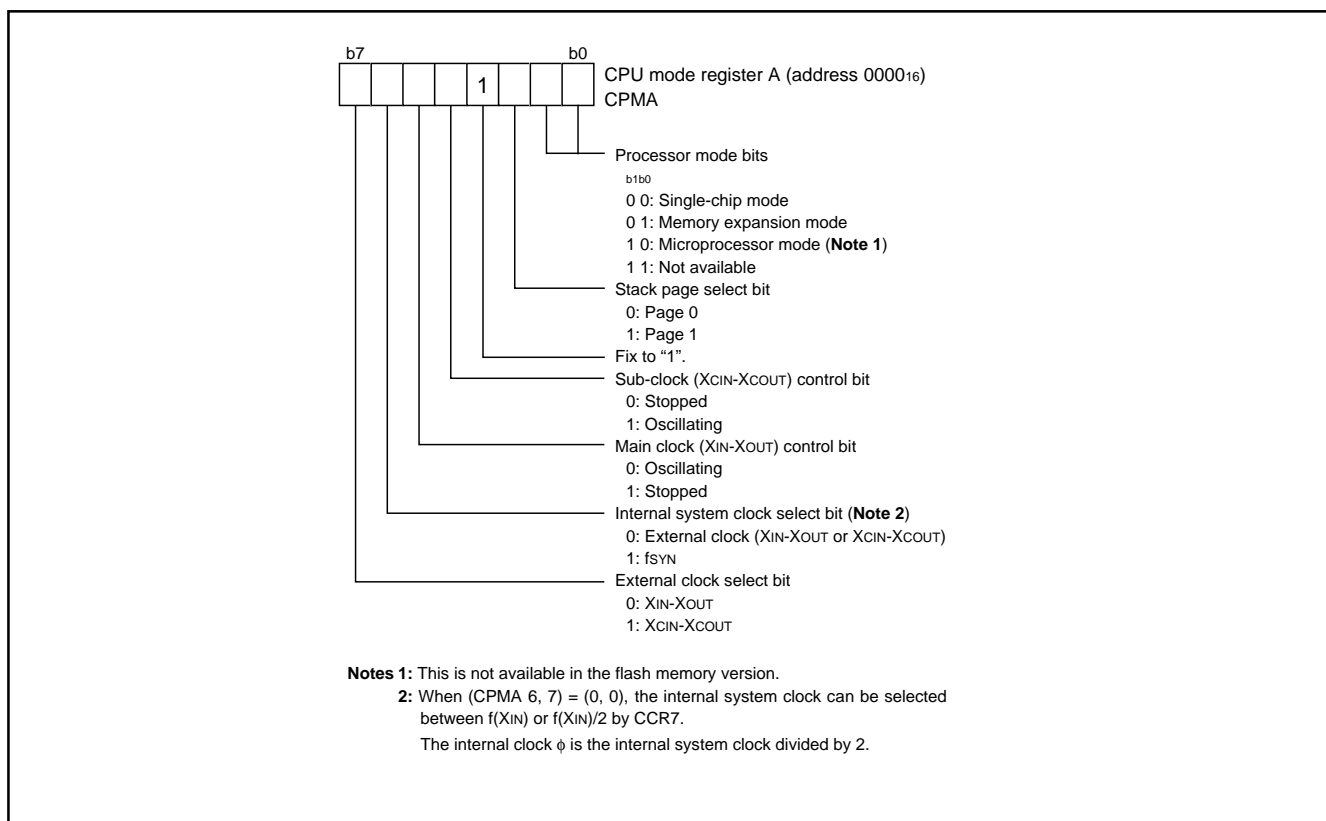


Fig. 70 Structure of CPU mode register A

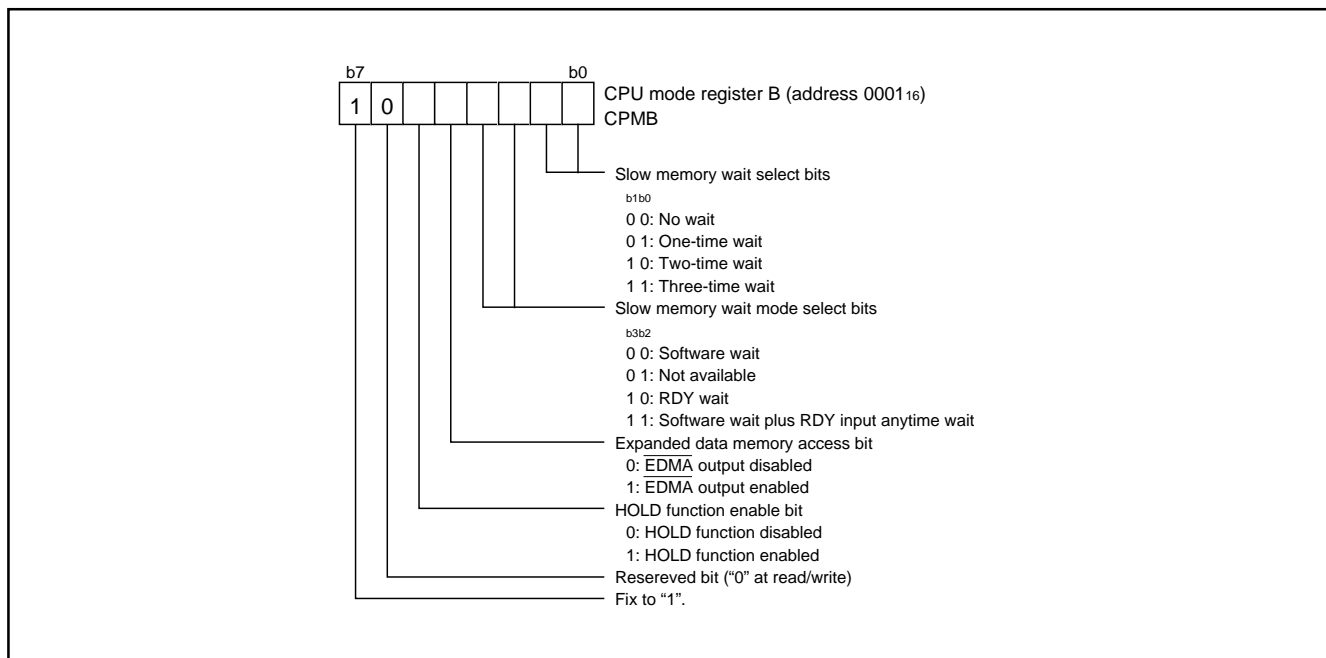


Fig. 71 Structure of CPU mode register B

## Slow Memory Wait

The 7641 Group is equipped with the slow memory wait function (Software wait, RDY wait, and Extended RDY wait: software wait plus RDY input anytime wait) for easier interfacing with external devices that have long access times. The slow memory wait function can be enabled in the memory expansion mode and microprocessor mode. The appropriate wait mode is selected by setting bits 0 to 3 of CPU mode register B (address 000116). This function can extend the read cycle or write cycle only for access to an external memory. However, this wait function cannot be enabled for access to addresses 000816 to 000F16.

### (1) Software wait

The software wait is selected by setting "00" to the Slow Memory Wait Mode Select Bits of CPU mode register B (address 000116). Read/write cycles ("L" width of  $\overline{RD}$  pin/ $\overline{WR}$  pin) can be extended by one to three  $\phi$  cycles. The number of cycles to be extended can be selected with the Slow Memory Wait Select Bits. When the software wait function is selected, the RDY pin status becomes invalid.

### (2) RDY wait

RDY Wait is selected by setting "10" to the Slow Memory Wait Mode Select Bits of CPU mode register B (address 000116). When a fixed time of "L" is input to the RDY pin at the beginning of a read/write cycle (before  $\phi$  cycle falls), the MCU goes to the RDY state. The read/write cycle can then be extended by one to three  $\phi$  cycles. The number of  $\phi$  cycles to be added can be selected by the Slow Memory Wait Bits.

### (3) Software wait + Extended RDY wait

Extended RDY Wait is selected by setting "11" to the Slow Memory Wait Mode Select Bits of CPU mode register B (address 000116). The read/write cycle can be extended when a fixed time of "L" is input to the RDY pin at the beginning of a read/write cycle (before  $\phi$  cycle falls). The RDY pin state is checked continually at each fall of  $\phi$  cycle until the RDY pin goes to "H". When "H" is input to the RDY pin, the wait is released within 1, 2, or 3  $\phi$  cycles (as selected with the Slow Memory Wait Bits).

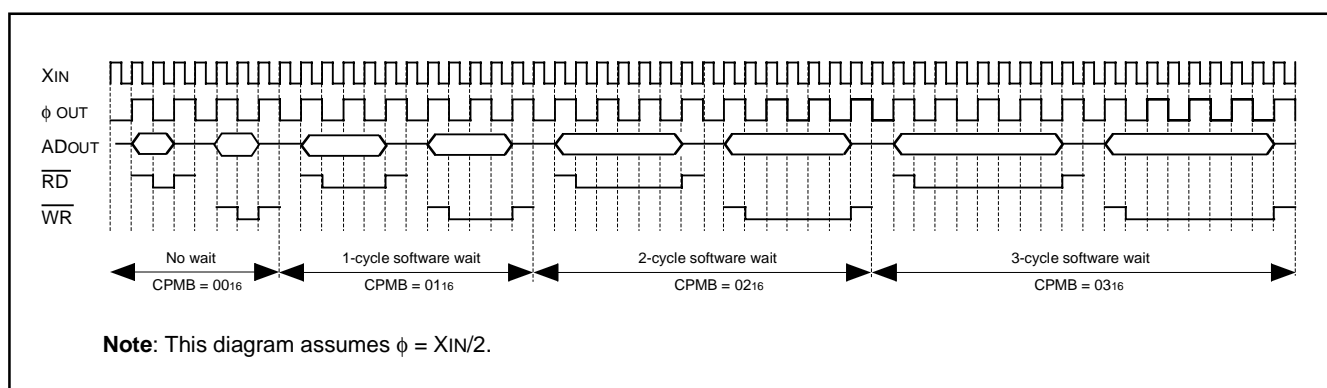


Fig. 72 Software wait timing diagram

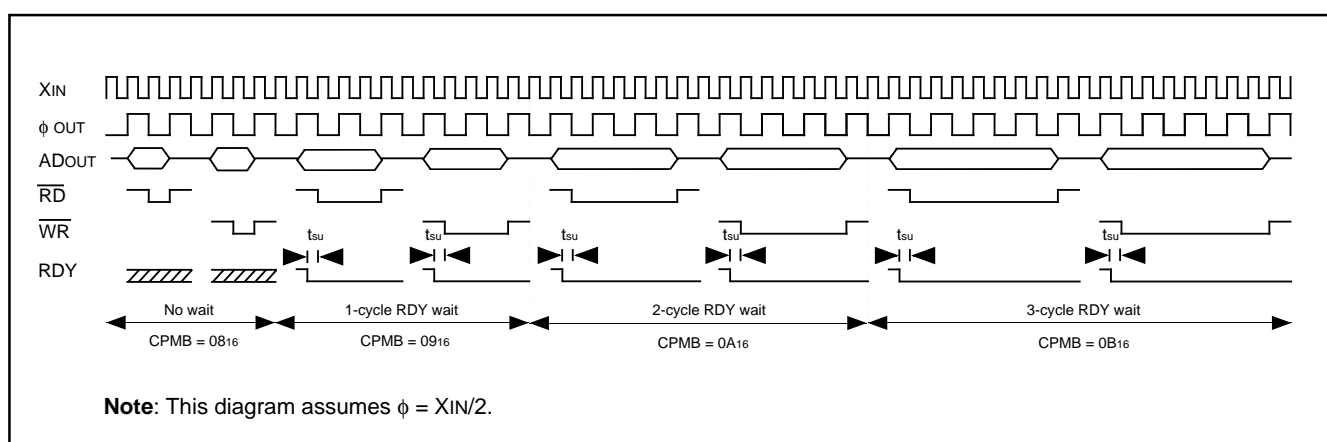


Fig. 73 RDY wait timing diagram



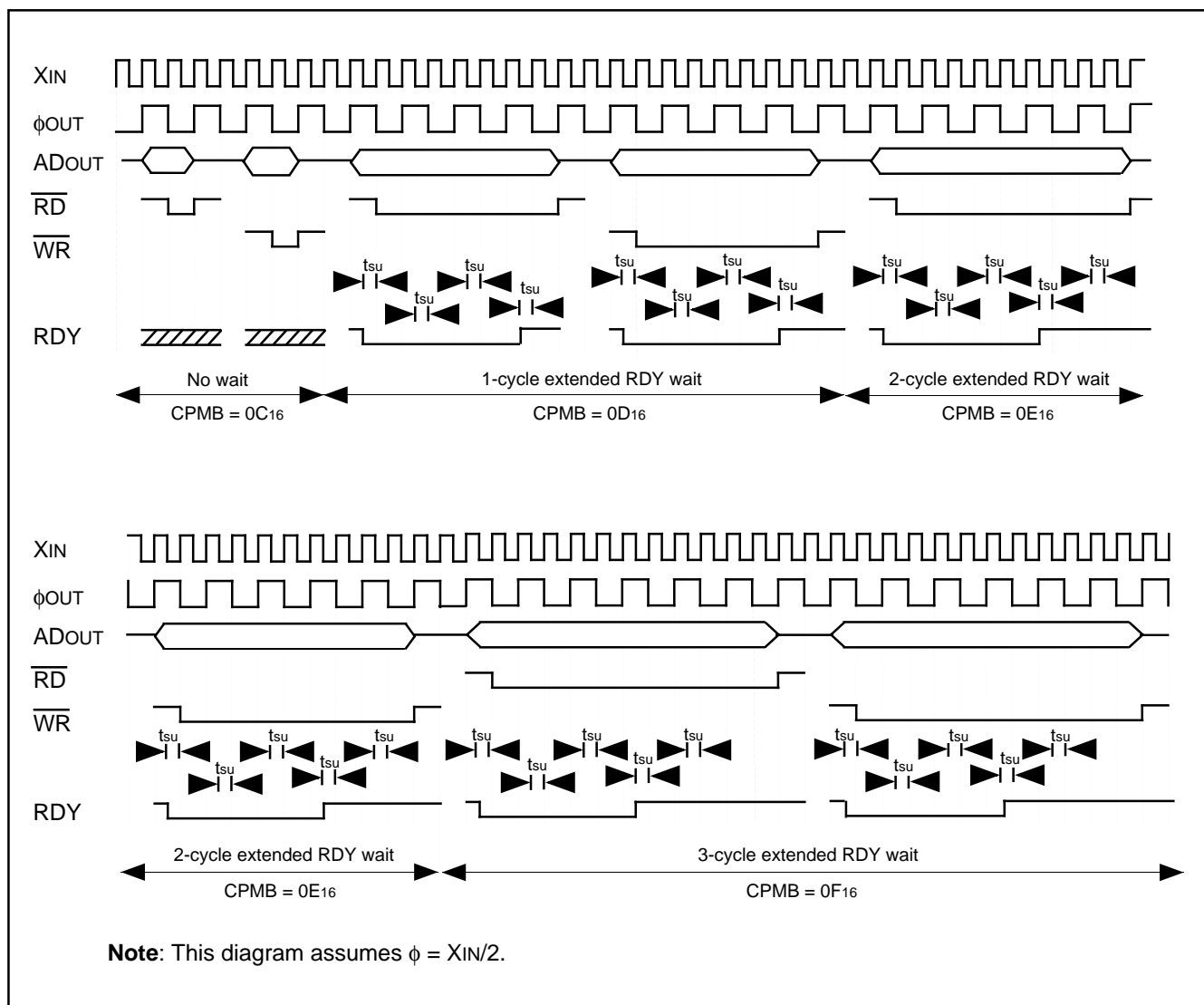


Fig. 74 Extended RDY wait (software wait plus RDY input anytime wait) timing diagram

## HOLD Function

The HOLD function is used for systems that consist of external circuits that access MCU buses without use of the CPU (Central Processing Unit). The HOLD function is used to generate the timing in which the MCU will relinquish the bus from the CPU to the external circuits. To use the HOLD function, set the HOLD function Enable Bit of CPU mode register B (address 000116) to "1". This function can be used with both the HOLD pin and the HLDA pin.

The HOLD signal is a signal from an external circuit requesting the MCU to relinquish use of the bus. When "L" level is input, the MCU goes to the HOLD state and remains so while the pin is at "L". The oscillator does not stop oscillating during the HOLD state, therefore allowing the internal peripheral functions to operate during this time.

When the MCU relinquishes use of the bus, "L" level is output from the HLDA pin. The MCU makes ports P0 and P1 (address buses) and port P2 (data bus) tri-state outputs and holds port P37 (RD pin) and port P36 (WR pin) "H" level. Port P34 ( $\phi$  OUT pin) continues to oscillate. This function is not valid when the MCU is using the IBF1 function with the HLDA pin.

## Expanded Data Memory Access

In Expanded Data Memory Access Mode, the MCU can access a data area larger than 64 Kbytes with the LDA (\$zz), Y (indirect Y) instruction and the STA (\$zz), Y (indirect Y) instruction.

To use this mode, set the Expanded Data Memory Access Bit of CPU mode register B (address 000116) to "1". In this case, port P40 (EDMA pin) goes "L" level during the read/write cycle of the LDA or STA instruction.

The determination of which bank to access is done by using an I/O port to represent expanded addresses exceeding address bus AB15. For example, when accessing 4 banks, use two I/O ports to represent address buses AB16 and AB17.

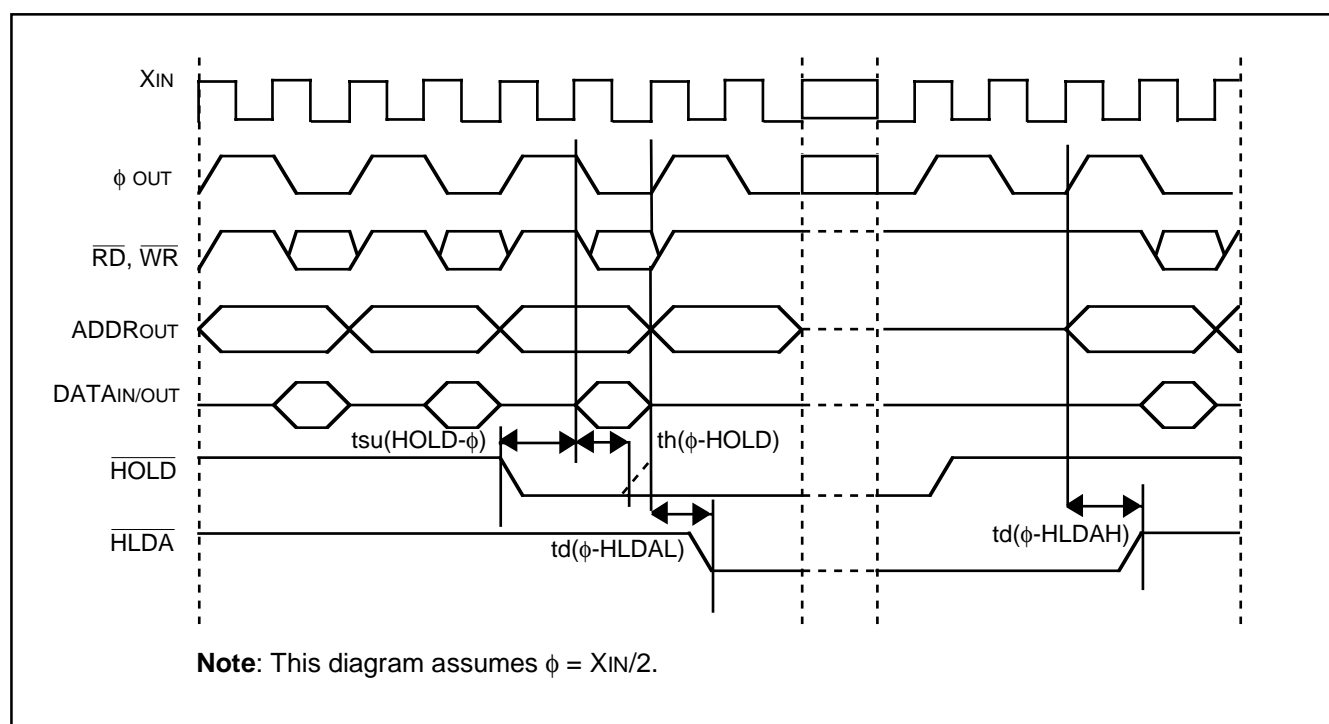


Fig. 75 Hold function timing diagram

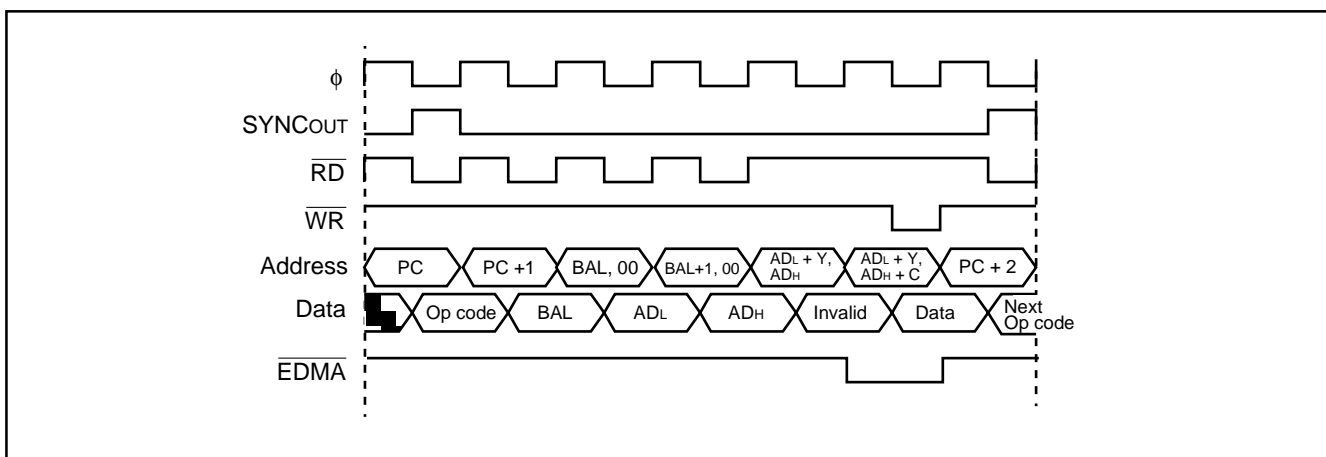


Fig. 76 STA (\$zz, Y) instruction sequence when EDMA enabled

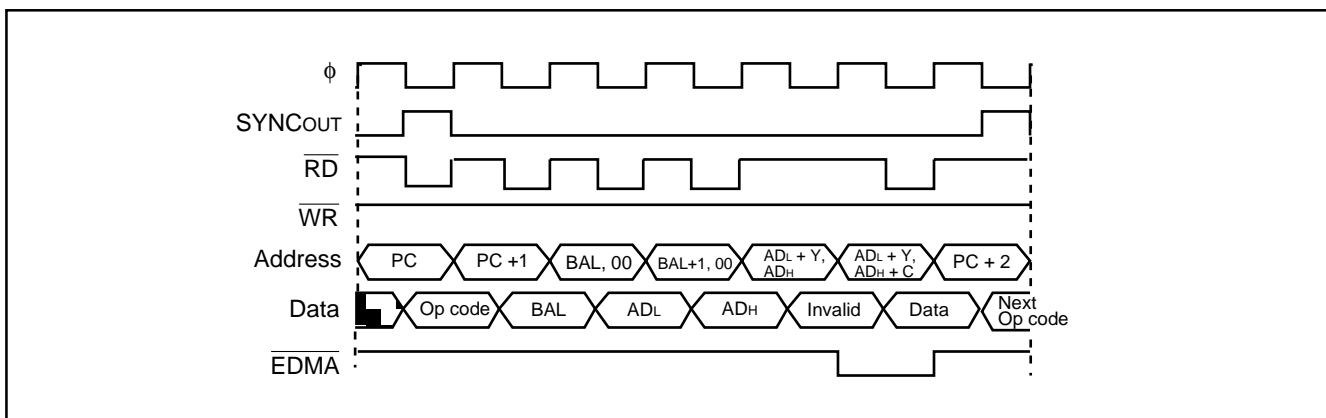


Fig. 77 LDA (\$zz, Y) instruction sequence when EDMA enabled and T flag = "0"

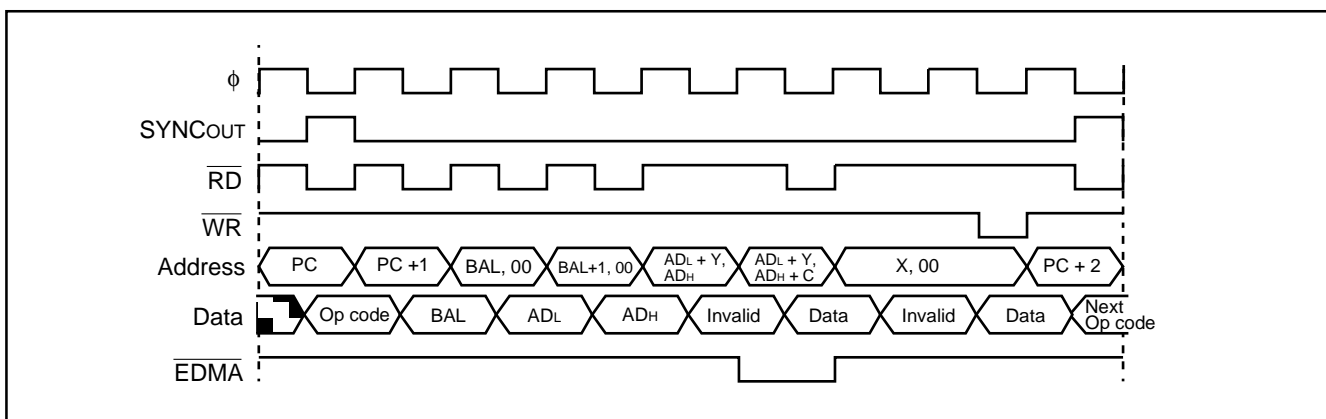


Fig. 78 LDA (\$zz, Y) instruction sequence when EDMA enabled and T flag = "1"

## FLASH MEMORY MODE

The M37641F8FP/HP (flash memory version) has an internal new DINOR (Divided bit line NOR) flash memory that can be rewritten with a single power source when  $V_{CC}$  is 5 V, and 2 power sources when  $V_{PP}$  is 5 V and  $V_{CC}$  is 3.3 V in the CPU rewrite and standard serial I/O modes.

For this flash memory, three flash memory modes are available in which to read, program, and erase: the parallel I/O and standard serial I/O modes in which the flash memory can be manipulated using a programmer and the CPU rewrite mode in which the flash memory can be manipulated by the Central Processing Unit (CPU).

## Summary

Table 10 lists the summary of the M37641F8 (flash memory version).

This flash memory version has some blocks on the flash memory as shown in Figure 79 and each block can be erased. The flash memory is divided into User ROM area and Boot ROM area.

In addition to the ordinary User ROM area to store the MCU operation control program, the flash memory has a Boot ROM area that is used to store a program to control rewriting in CPU rewrite and standard serial I/O modes. This Boot ROM area has had a standard serial I/O mode control program stored in it when shipped from the factory. However, the user can write a rewrite control program in this area that suits the user's application system. This Boot ROM area can be rewritten in only parallel I/O mode.

**Table 10 Summary of M37641F8 (flash memory version)**

Item		Specifications
Power source voltage (For Program/Erase)		$V_{CC} = 3.00 - 3.60 \text{ V}$ , $4.50 - 5.25 \text{ V}$ ( $f(XIN) = 24 \text{ MHz}$ , $\phi = 6 \text{ MHz}$ ) ( <b>Note 1</b> )
$V_{PP}$ voltage (For Program/Erase)		$V_{PP} = 4.50 - 5.25 \text{ V}$
Flash memory mode		3 modes; Flash memory can be manipulated as follows: (1) CPU rewrite mode: Manipulated by the Central Processing Unit (CPU) (2) Parallel I/O mode: Manipulated using an external programmer ( <b>Note 2</b> ) (3) Standard serial I/O mode: Manipulated using an external programmer ( <b>Note 2</b> ).
Erase block division	User ROM area	See Figure 79.
	Boot ROM area	1 block (4 Kbytes) ( <b>Note 3</b> )
Program method		Byte program
Erase method		Batch erasing/Block erasing
Program/Erase control method		Program/Erase control by software command
Number of commands		6 commands
Number of program/Erase times		100 times
ROM code protection		Available in parallel I/O mode and standard serial I/O mode

**Notes 1:** After programming/erasing at  $V_{CC} = 3.0$  to  $3.6 \text{ V}$ , the MCU can operate only at  $V_{CC} = 3.0$  to  $3.6 \text{ V}$ .

After programming/erasing at  $V_{CC} = 4.5$  to  $5.25 \text{ V}$  or programming/erasing with the exclusive external equipment flash programmer, the MCU can operate at both  $V_{CC} = 3.0$  to  $3.6 \text{ V}$  and  $4.15$  to  $5.25 \text{ V}$ .

**2:** In the parallel I/O mode or the standard serial I/O mode, use the exclusive external equipment flash programmer which supports the 7641 Group (flash memory version).

**3:** The Boot ROM area has had a standard serial I/O mode control program stored in it when shipped from the factory. This Boot ROM area can be rewritten in only parallel I/O mode.

### (1) CPU Rewrite Mode

In CPU rewrite mode, the internal flash memory can be operated on (read, program, or erase) under control of the Central Processing Unit (CPU).

In CPU rewrite mode, only the User ROM area shown in Figure 79 can be rewritten; the Boot ROM area cannot be rewritten. Make sure the program and block erase commands are issued for only the User ROM area and each block area.

The control program for CPU rewrite mode can be stored in either User ROM or Boot ROM area. In the CPU rewrite mode, because the flash memory cannot be read from the CPU, the rewrite control program must be transferred to internal RAM area to be executed before it can be executed.

### Microcomputer Mode and Boot Mode

The control program for CPU rewrite mode must be written into the User ROM or Boot ROM area in parallel I/O mode beforehand. (If the control program is written into the Boot ROM area, the standard serial I/O mode becomes unusable.)

See Figure 79 for details about the Boot ROM area.

Normal microcomputer mode is entered when the microcomputer is reset with pulling CNVSS pin low. In this case, the CPU starts operating using the control program in the User ROM area.

When the microcomputer is reset by pulling the P36 (CE) pin high, the P81 (SCLK) pin high, the CNVSS pin high, the CPU starts operating using the control program in the Boot ROM area. This mode is called the "Boot" mode.

### Block Address

Block addresses refer to the maximum address of each block. These addresses are used in the block erase command.

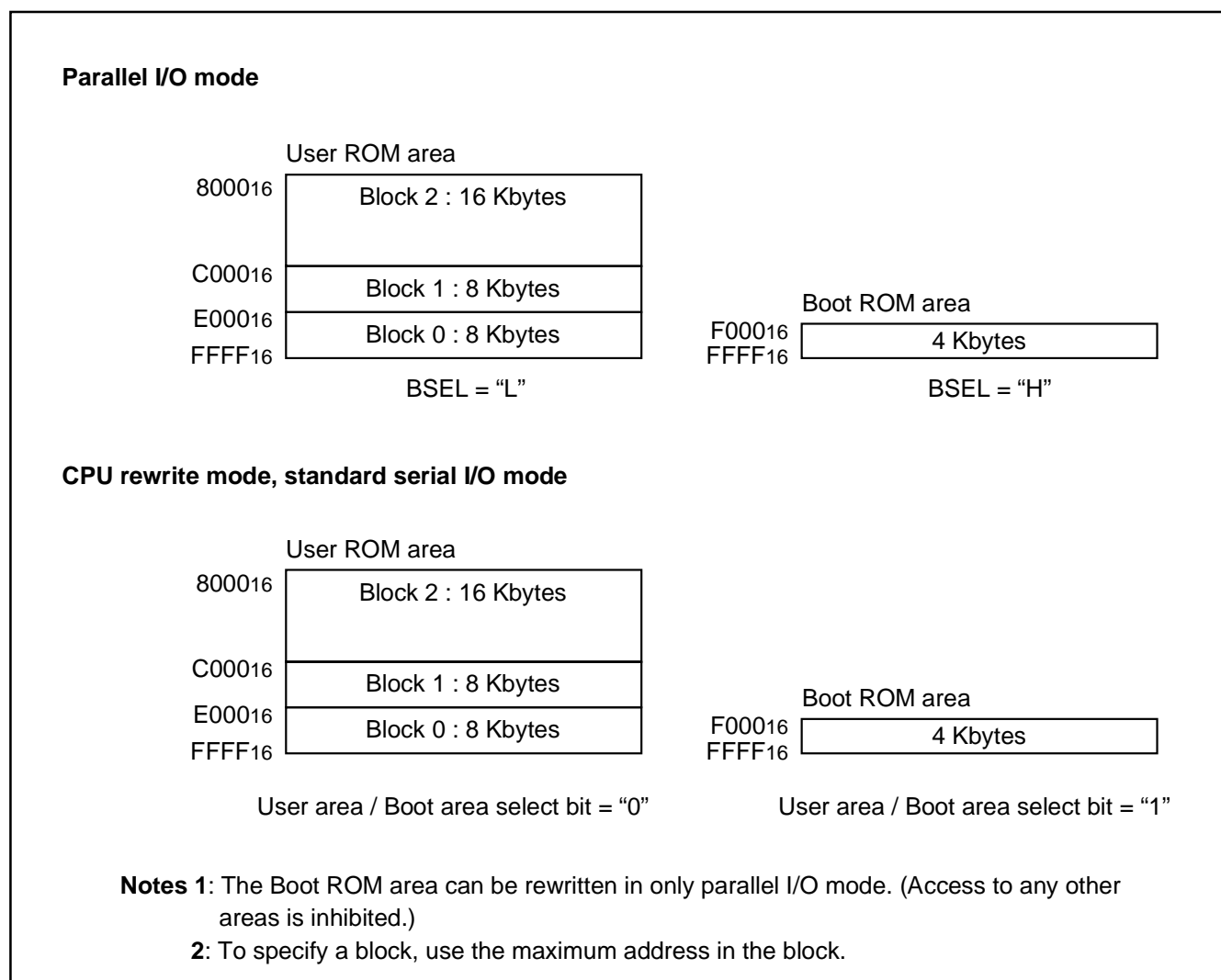


Fig. 79 Block diagram of built-in flash memory

### Outline Performance (CPU Rewrite Mode)

CPU rewrite mode is usable in the single-chip, memory expansion or Boot mode. The only User ROM area can be rewritten in CPU rewrite mode.

In CPU rewrite mode, the CPU erases, programs and reads the internal flash memory by executing software commands. This rewrite control program must be transferred to a memory such as the internal RAM before it can be executed.

The MCU enters CPU rewrite mode by applying 4.50 V to 5.25 V to the CNVSS pin and setting "1" to the CPU Rewrite Mode Select Bit (bit 1 of address 006A16). Software commands are accepted once the mode is entered.

Use software commands to control program and erase operations. Whether a program or erase operation has terminated normally or in error can be verified by reading the status register.

Figure 80 shows the flash memory control register.

Bit 0 is the RY/BY status flag used exclusively to read the operating status of the flash memory. During programming and erase operations, it is "0" (busy). Otherwise, it is "1" (ready).

Bit 1 is the CPU Rewrite Mode Select Bit. When this bit is set to "1", the MCU enters CPU rewrite mode. Software commands are accepted once the mode is entered. In CPU rewrite mode, the

CPU becomes unable to access the internal flash memory directly. Therefore, use the control program in a memory other than internal flash memory for write to bit 1. To set this bit to "1", it is necessary to write "0" and then write "1" in succession. The bit can be set to "0" by only writing "0".

Bit 2 is the CPU Rewrite Mode Entry Flag. This flag indicates "1" in CPU rewrite mode, so that reading this flag can check whether CPU rewrite mode has been entered or not.

Bit 3 is the flash memory reset bit used to reset the control circuit of internal flash memory. This bit is used when exiting CPU rewrite mode and when flash memory access has failed. When the CPU Rewrite Mode Select Bit is "1", setting "1" for this bit resets the control circuit. To set this bit to "1", it is necessary to write "0" and then write "1" in succession. To release the reset, it is necessary to set this bit to "0".

Bit 4 is the User Area/Boot Area Select Bit. When this bit is set to "1", Boot ROM area is accessed, and CPU rewrite mode in Boot ROM area is available. In Boot mode, this bit is set to "1" automatically. Reprogramming of this bit must be in a memory other than internal flash memory.

Figure 81 shows a flowchart for setting/releasing CPU rewrite mode.

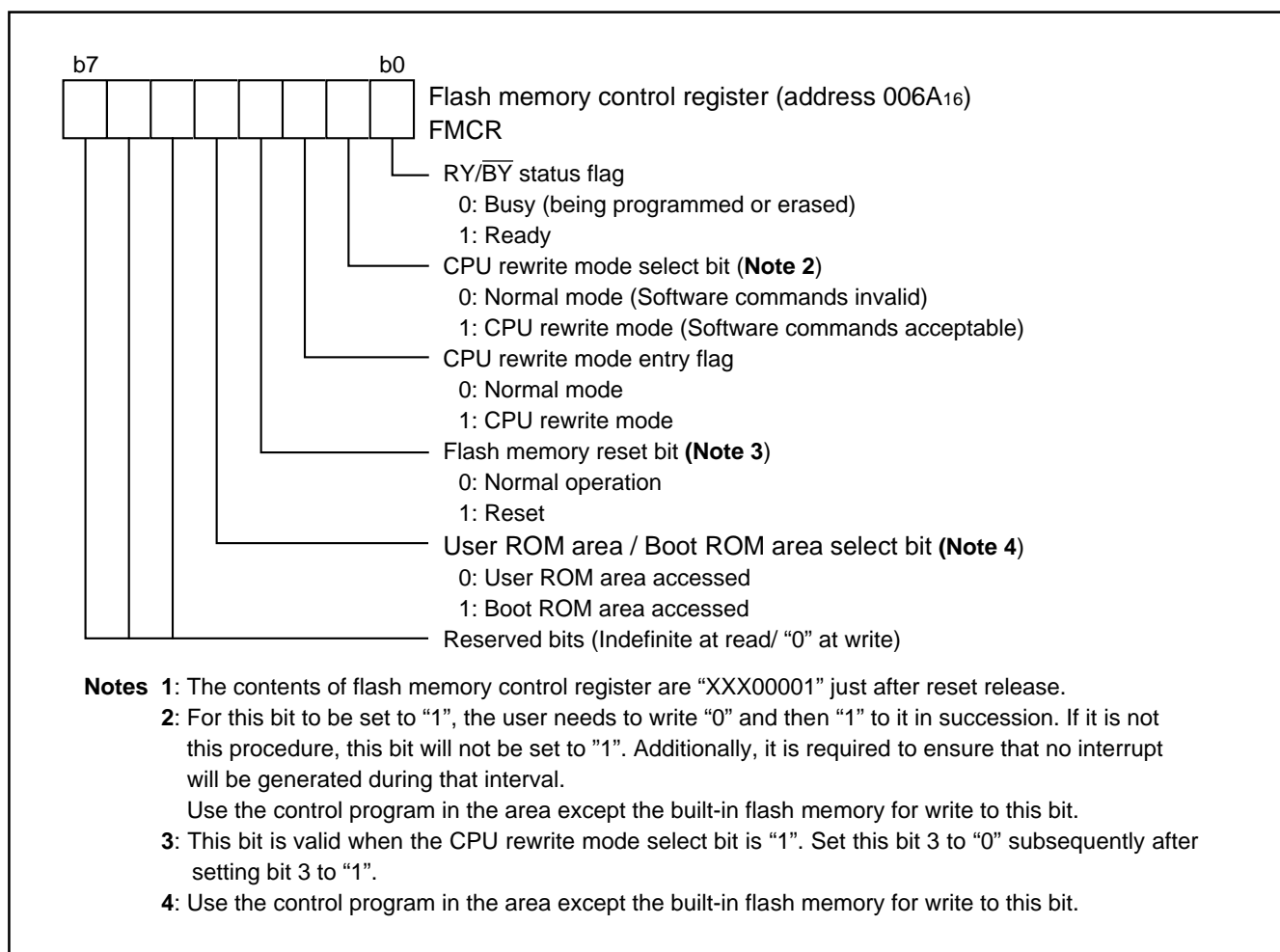


Fig. 80 Structure of flash memory control register

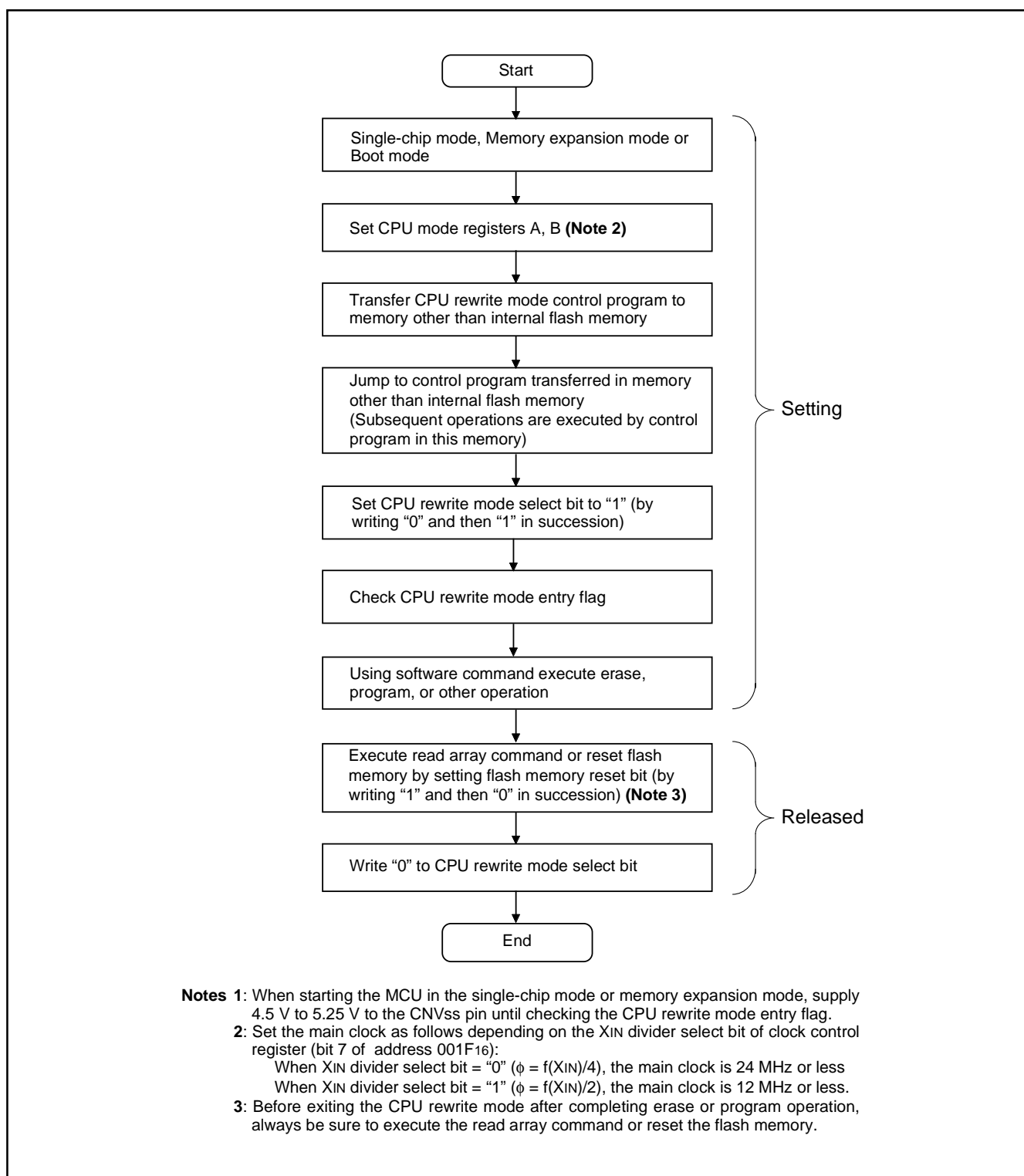


Fig. 81 CPU rewrite mode set/release flowchart

## Notes on CPU Rewrite Mode

The below notes applies when rewriting the flash memory in CPU rewrite mode.

### ●Operation speed

During CPU rewrite mode, set the internal clock  $\phi$  to 6 MHz or less using the XIN Divider Select Bit (bit 7 of address 001F16).

### ●Instructions inhibited against use

The instructions which refer to the internal data of the flash memory cannot be used during CPU rewrite mode .

### ●Interrupts inhibited against use

The interrupts cannot be used during CPU rewrite mode because they refer to the internal data of the flash memory.

### ●Reset

Reset is always valid. When CNVSS is "H" at reset release, the program starts from the address stored in addresses FFFA16 and FFFB16 of the boot ROM area in order that CPU may start in boot mode.



## Software Commands (CPU Rewrite Mode)

Table 11 lists the software commands.

After setting the CPU Rewrite Mode Select Bit of the flash memory control register to "1", execute a software command to specify an erase or program operation.

Each software command is explained below.

### ●Read Array Command (FF<sub>16</sub>)

The read array mode is entered by writing the command code "FF<sub>16</sub>" in the first bus cycle. When an address to be read is input in one of the bus cycles that follow, the contents of the specified address are read out at the data bus (DB<sub>0</sub> to DB<sub>7</sub>).

The read array mode is retained intact until another command is written.

### ●Read Status Register Command (70<sub>16</sub>)

The read status register mode is entered by writing the command code "70<sub>16</sub>" in the first bus cycle. The contents of the status register are read out at the data bus (DB<sub>0</sub> to DB<sub>7</sub>) by a read in the second bus cycle.

The status register is explained in the next section.

### ●Clear Status Register Command (50<sub>16</sub>)

This command is used to clear the bits SR4 and SR5 of the status register after they have been set. These bits indicate that operation has ended in an error. To use this command, write the command code "50<sub>16</sub>" in the first bus cycle.

### ●Program Command (40<sub>16</sub>)

Program operation starts when the command code "40<sub>16</sub>" is written in the first bus cycle. Then, if the address and data to program are written in the 2nd bus cycle, program operation (data programming and verification) will start.

Whether the write operation is completed can be confirmed by reading the status register or the RY/BY Status Flag of the flash memory control register. When the program starts, the read status

register mode is entered automatically and the contents of the status register is read at the data bus (DB<sub>0</sub> to DB<sub>7</sub>). The status register bit 7 (SR7) is set to "0" at the same time the write operation starts and is returned to "1" upon completion of the write operation. In this case, the read status register mode remains active until the next command is written.

The RY/BY Status Flag is "0" (busy) during write operation and "1" (ready) when the write operation is completed as is the status register bit 7.

At program end, program results can be checked by reading bit 4 (SR4) of the status register.

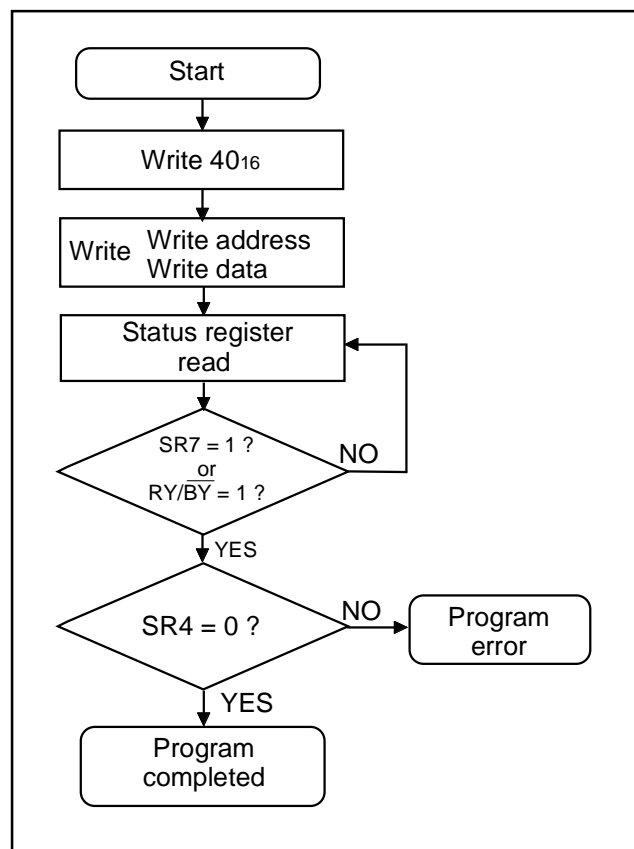


Fig. 82 Program flowchart

Table 11 List of software commands (CPU rewrite mode)

Command	Cycle number	First bus cycle			Second bus cycle		
		Mode	Address	Data (DB <sub>0</sub> to DB <sub>7</sub> )	Mode	Address	Data (DB <sub>0</sub> to DB <sub>7</sub> )
Read array	1	Write	X (Note 4)	FF <sub>16</sub>			
Read status register	2	Write	X	70 <sub>16</sub>	Read	X	SRD (Note 1)
Clear status register	1	Write	X	50 <sub>16</sub>			
Program	2	Write	X	40 <sub>16</sub>	Write	WA (Note 2)	WD (Note 2)
Erase all blocks	2	Write	X	20 <sub>16</sub>	Write	X	20 <sub>16</sub>
Block erase	2	Write	X	20 <sub>16</sub>	Write	BA (Note 3)	D0 <sub>16</sub>

**Notes 1:** SRD = Status Register Data

**2:** WA = Write Address, WD = Write Data

**3:** BA = Block Address to be erased (Input the maximum address of each block.)

**4:** X denotes a given address in the User ROM area .

### ●Erase All Blocks Command (2016/2016)

By writing the command code "2016" in the first bus cycle and the confirmation command code "2016" in the second bus cycle that follows, the operation of erase all blocks (erase and erase verify) starts.

Whether the erase all blocks command is terminated can be confirmed by reading the status register or the RY/B $\bar{Y}$  Status Flag of flash memory control register. When the erase all blocks operation starts, the read status register mode is entered automatically and the contents of the status register can be read out at the data bus (DB0 to DB7). The status register bit 7 (SR7) is set to "0" at the same time the erase operation starts and is returned to "1" upon completion of the erase operation. In this case, the read status register mode remains active until another command is written.

The RY/B $\bar{Y}$  Status Flag is "0" during erase operation and "1" when the erase operation is completed as is the status register bit 7 (SR7).

After the erase all blocks end, erase results can be checked by reading bit 5 (SRS) of the status register. For details, refer to the section where the status register is detailed.

### ●Block Erase Command (2016/D016)

By writing the command code "2016" in the first bus cycle and the confirmation command code "D016" and the block address in the second bus cycle that follows, the block erase (erase and erase verify) operation starts for the block address of the flash memory to be specified.

Whether the block erase operation is completed can be confirmed by reading the status register or the RY/B $\bar{Y}$  Status Flag of flash memory control register. At the same time the block erase operation starts, the read status register mode is automatically entered, so that the contents of the status register can be read out. The status register bit 7 (SR7) is set to "0" at the same time the block erase operation starts and is returned to "1" upon completion of the block erase operation. In this case, the read status register mode remains active until the read array command (FF16) is written.

The RY/B $\bar{Y}$  Status Flag is "0" during block erase operation and "1" when the block erase operation is completed as is the status register bit 7.

After the block erase ends, erase results can be checked by reading bit 5 (SRS) of the status register. For details, refer to the section where the status register is detailed.

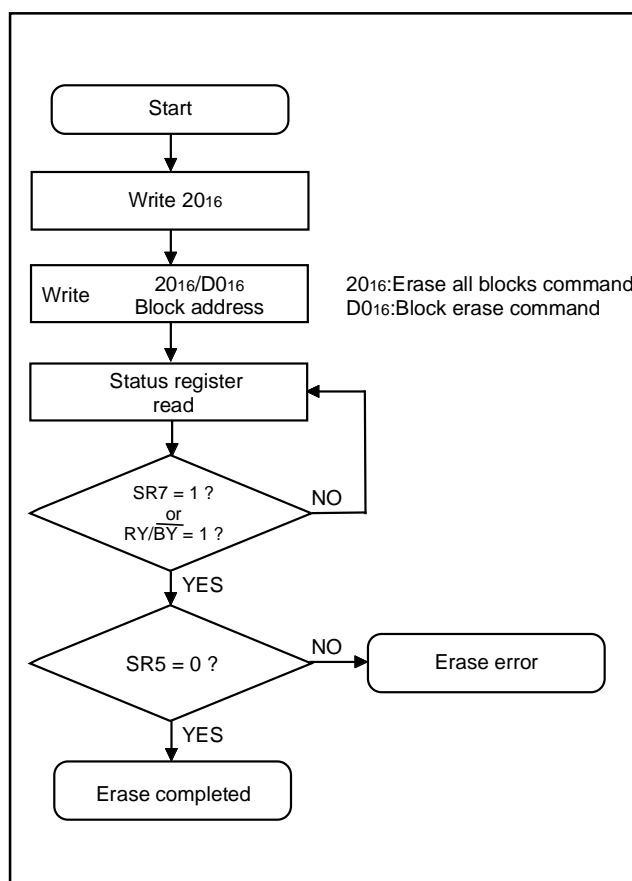


Fig. 83 Erase flowchart

## Status Register (SRD)

The status register shows the operating status of the flash memory and whether erase operations and programs ended successfully or in error. It can be read in the following ways:

- (1) By reading an arbitrary address from the User ROM area after writing the read status register command (70<sub>16</sub>)
- (2) By reading an arbitrary address from the User ROM area in the period from when the program starts or erase operation starts to when the read array command (FF<sub>16</sub>) is input.

Also, the status register can be cleared by writing the clear status register command (50<sub>16</sub>).

After reset, the status register is set to "80<sub>16</sub>".

Table 12 shows the status register. Each bit in this register is explained below.

### •Sequencer status (SR7)

The sequencer status indicates the operating status of the flash memory. This bit is set to "0" (busy) during write or erase operation and is set to "1" when these operations ends.

After power-on, the sequencer status is set to "1" (ready).

### •Erase status (SR5)

The erase status indicates the operating status of erase operation. If an erase error occurs, it is set to "1". When the erase status is cleared, it is set to "0".

### •Program status (SR4)

The program status indicates the operating status of write operation. When a write error occurs, it is set to "1".

The program status is set to "0" when it is cleared.

If "1" is written for any of the SR5 and SR4 bits, the program, erase all blocks, and block erase commands are not accepted. Before executing these commands, execute the clear status register command (50<sub>16</sub>) and clear the status register.

Also, if any commands are not correct, both SR5 and SR4 are set to "1".

**Table 12 Definition of each bit in status register (SRD)**

Symbol	Status name	Definition	
		"1"	"0"
SR7 (bit7)	Sequencer status	Ready	Busy
SR6 (bit6)	Reserved	-	-
SR5 (bit5)	Erase status	Terminated in error	Terminated normally
SR4 (bit4)	Program status	Terminated in error	Terminated normally
SR3 (bit3)	Reserved	-	-
SR2 (bit2)	Reserved	-	-
SR1 (bit1)	Reserved	-	-
SR0 (bit0)	Reserved	-	-

## Full Status Check

By performing full status check, it is possible to know the execution results of erase and program operations. Figure 84 shows a

full status check flowchart and the action to be taken when each error occurs.

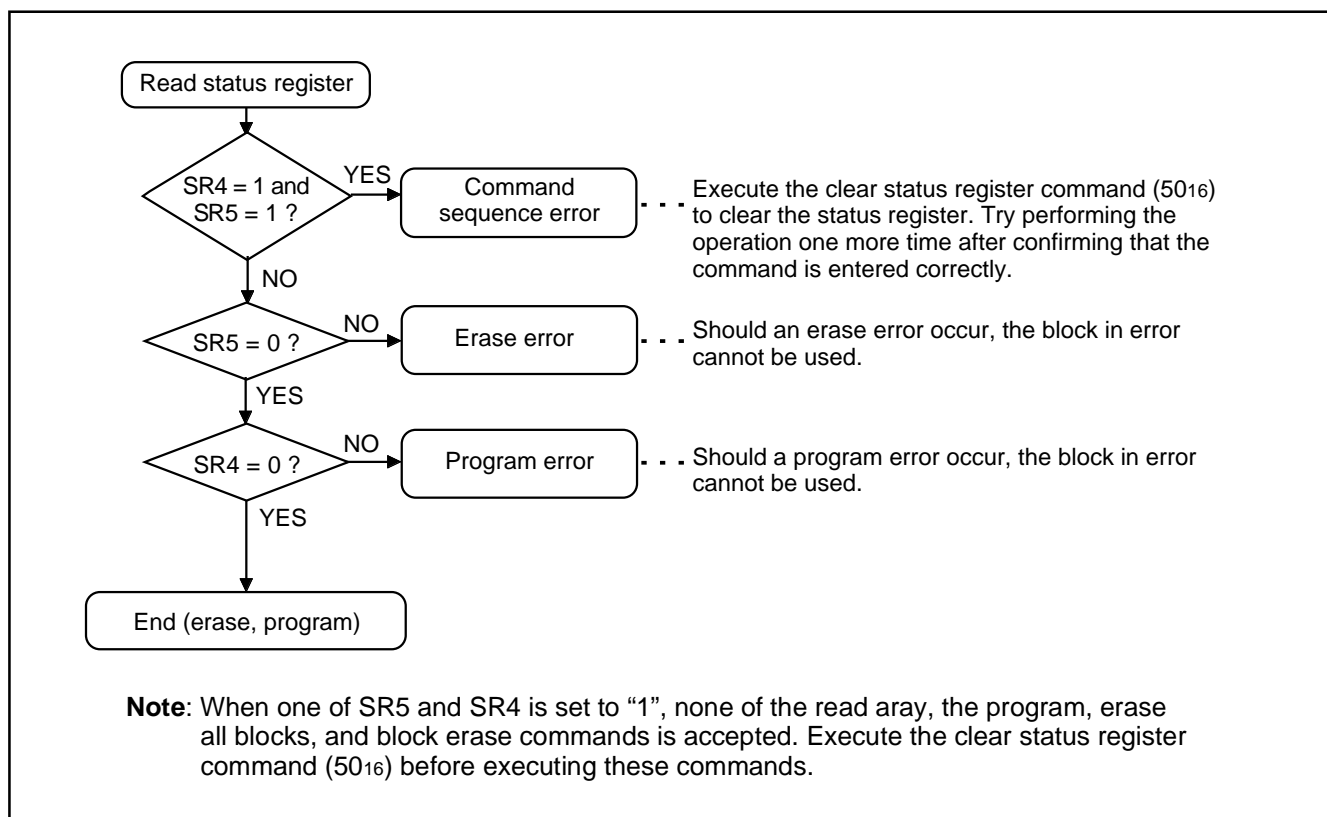


Fig. 84 Full status check flowchart and remedial procedure for errors

## Functions To Inhibit Rewriting Flash Memory Version

To prevent the contents of internal flash memory from being read out or rewritten easily, this MCU incorporates a ROM code protect function for use in parallel I/O mode and an ID code check function for use in standard serial I/O mode.

### ●ROM Code Protect Function (in Pararell I/O Mode)

The ROM code protect function is the function to inhibit reading out or modifying the contents of internal flash memory by using the ROM code protect control (address FFC916) in parallel I/O mode. Figure 85 shows the ROM code protect control (address FFC916). (This address exists in the User ROM area.)

If one or both of the pair of ROM Code Protect Bits is set to "0",

the ROM code protect is turned on, so that the contents of internal flash memory are protected against readout and modification. The ROM code protect is implemented in two levels. If level 2 is selected, the flash memory is protected even against readout by a shipment inspection LSI tester, etc. When an attempt is made to select both level 1 and level 2, level 2 is selected by default.

If both of the two ROM Code Protect Reset Bits are set to "00", the ROM code protect is turned off, so that the contents of internal flash memory can be read out or modified. Once the ROM code protect is turned on, the contents of the ROM Code Protect Reset Bits cannot be modified in parallel I/O mode. Use the serial I/O or CPU rewrite mode to rewrite the contents of the ROM Code Protect Reset Bits.

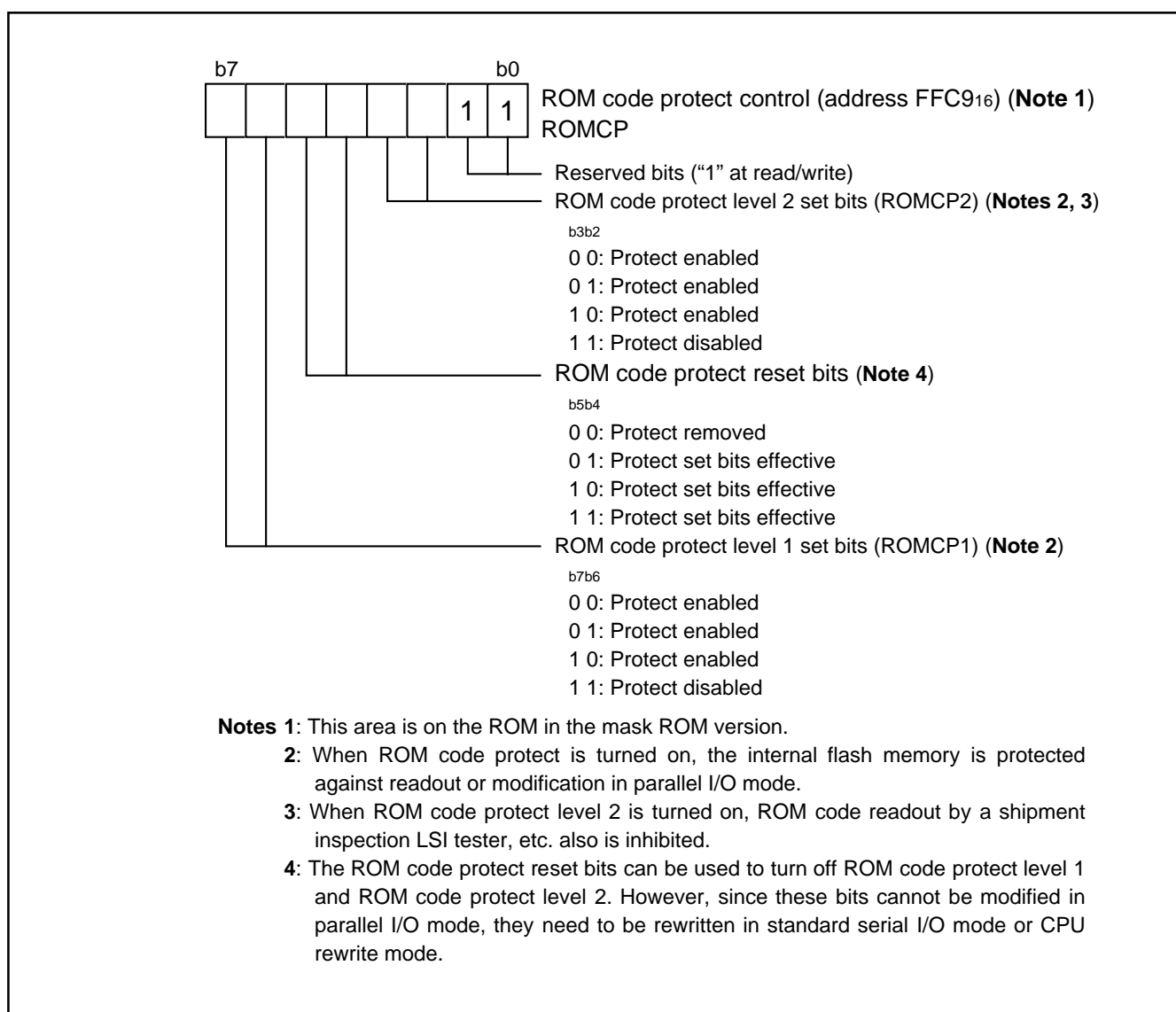


Fig. 85 Structure of ROM code protect control

### ID Code Check Function (in Standard serial I/O mode)

Use this function in standard serial I/O mode. When the contents of the flash memory are not blank, the ID code sent from the programmer is compared with the ID code written in the flash memory to see if they match. If the ID codes do not match, the commands sent from the programmer are not accepted. The ID code consists of 8-bit data, and its areas are FFC2<sub>16</sub> to FFC8<sub>16</sub>. Write a program which has had the ID code preset at these addresses to the flash memory.

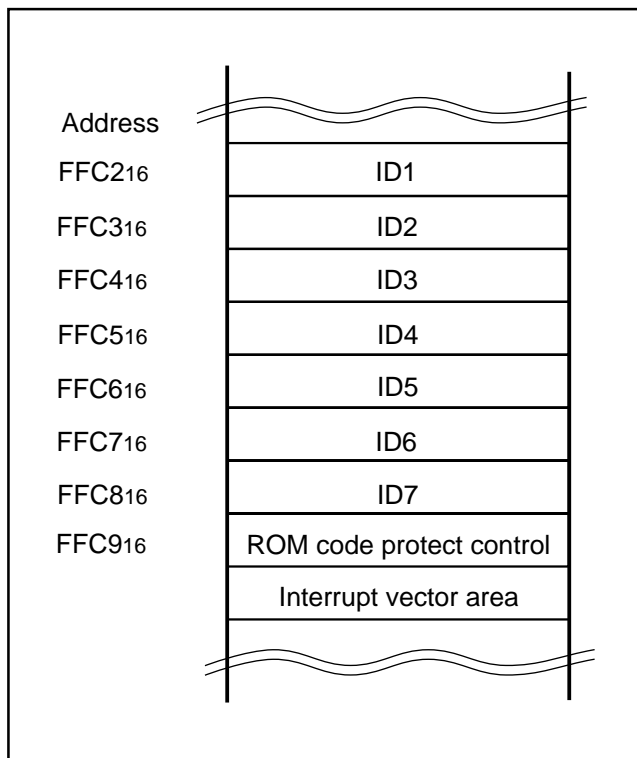


Fig. 86 ID code store addresses

## (2) Parallel I/O Mode

Parallel I/O mode is the mode which parallel output and input software command, address, and data required for the operations (read, program, erase, etc.) to a built-in flash memory. Use the exclusive external equipment flash programmer which supports the 7641 Group (flash memory version). Refer to each programmer maker's handling manual for the details of the usage.

### User ROM and Boot ROM Areas

In parallel I/O mode, the user ROM and boot ROM areas shown in Figure 79 can be rewritten. Both areas of flash memory can be operated on in the same way.

Program and block erase operations can be performed in the user ROM area. The user ROM area and its block is shown in Figure 79.

The boot ROM area is 4 Kbytes in size. It is located at addresses F000<sub>16</sub> through FFFF<sub>16</sub>. Make sure program and block erase operations are always performed within this address range. (Access to any location outside this address range is prohibited.)

In the Boot ROM area, an erase block operation is applied to only one 4 Kbyte block. The boot ROM area has had a standard serial I/O mode control program stored in it when shipped from the Mitsubishi factory. Therefore, using the device in standard serial I/O mode, you do not need to write to the boot ROM area.

### (3) Standard serial I/O Mode

The standard serial I/O mode inputs and outputs the software commands, addresses and data needed to operate (read, program, erase, etc.) the internal flash memory. This I/O is clock synchronized serial. This mode requires the exclusive external equipment (flash programmer).

The standard serial I/O mode is different from the parallel I/O mode in that the CPU controls flash memory rewrite (uses the CPU rewrite mode), rewrite data input and so forth. The standard serial I/O mode is started by connecting "H" to the P36 (CE) pin and "H" to the P81 (SCLK) pin and "H" to the CNVss pin (apply 4.5 V to 5.25 V to Vpp from an external source), and releasing the reset operation. (In the ordinary microcomputer mode, set CNVss pin to "L" level.)

This control program is written in the Boot ROM area when the product is shipped from Mitsubishi. Accordingly, make note of the fact that the standard serial I/O mode cannot be used if the Boot ROM area is rewritten in parallel I/O mode. Figures 87 and 88 show the pin connections for the standard serial I/O mode.

In standard serial I/O mode, serial data I/O uses the four serial I/O pins SCLK, SRXD, STXD and  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  (BUSY). The SCLK pin is the transfer clock input pin through which an external transfer clock is input. The STXD pin is for CMOS output. The  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  (BUSY) pin outputs "L" level when ready for reception and "H" level when reception starts.

Serial data I/O is transferred serially in 8-bit units.

In standard serial I/O mode, only the User ROM area shown in Figure 79 can be rewritten. The Boot ROM area cannot.

In standard serial I/O mode, a 7-byte ID code is used. When there is data in the flash memory, commands sent from the peripheral unit (programmer) are not accepted unless the ID code matches.

### Outline Performance (Standard Serial I/O Mode)

In standard serial I/O mode, software commands, addresses and data are input and output between the MCU and peripheral units (flash programmer, etc.) using 4-wire clock-synchronized serial I/O.

In reception, software commands, addresses and program data are synchronized with the rise of the transfer clock that is input to the SCLK pin, and are then input to the MCU via the SRXD pin. In transmission, the read data and status are synchronized with the fall of the transfer clock, and output from the STXD pin.

The STXD pin is for CMOS output. Transfer is in 8-bit units with LSB first.

When busy, such as during transmission, reception, erasing or program execution, the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  (BUSY) pin is "H" level. Accordingly, always start the next transfer after the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  (BUSY) pin is "L" level.

Also, data and status registers in a memory can be read after inputting software commands. Status, such as the operating state of the flash memory or whether a program or erase operation ended successfully or not, can be checked by reading the status register. Here following explains software commands, status registers, etc.



Table 13 Description of pin function (Standard Serial I/O Mode)

Pin name	Signal name	I/O	Function
VCC,VSS	Power supply input		Apply 4.50 V – 5.25 V for 5 V version or 3.00 V – 3.60 V for 3 V version to the VCC pin. Apply 0 V to the VSS pin.
CNVSS	CNVSS	I	This controls the MCU operating mode. Connect this pin to VPP (= 4.50 V – 5.25 V)
$\overline{\text{RESET}}$	Reset input	I	To reset, input “L” level for 20 cycles or longer clocks of $\phi$ .
XIN	Clock input		Connect a ceramic or crystal resonator between the XIN and XOUT pins. When inputting an externally derived clock, input it from XIN and leave XOUT open.
XOUT	Clock output		
AVCC, AVSS	Analog power supply input		Apply 4.50 V – 5.25 V for 5 V version or 3.00 V – 3.60 V for 3 V version to the AVCC pin. Apply 0 V to the AVSS pin.
LPF	LPF	O	Loop filter for the frequency synthesizer. When this pin is not used, leave this open.
Ext.Cap	3.3 V line power supply input	I	Power supply input pin for 3.3 V USB line driver. When this pin is not used, input “H” level.
USB D+	USB D+	I/O	USB D+ signal port. When this pin is not used, input “H” level.
USB D-	USB D-	I/O	USB D- signal port. When this pin is not used, input “L” level.
P00 to P07	I/O port P0	I/O	When these ports are not used, input “L” or “H” level, or leave them open in output mode.
P10 to P17	I/O port P1	I/O	
P20 to P27	I/O port P2	I/O	
P30 to P35, P37	I/O port P3	I/O	
P36	$\overline{\text{CE}}$ input	I	Input “H” level.
P40 to P44	I/O port P4	I/O	When these ports are not used, input “L” or “H” level, or leave them open in output mode.
P50 to P57	I/O port P5	I/O	
P60 to P67	I/O port P6	I/O	
P70 to P74	I/O port P7	I/O	
P80	BUSY output	O	This is a BUSY output pin.
P81	SCLK input	I	This is a serial clock input pin.
P82	SRXD input	I	This is a serial data input pin.
P83	STXDoutput	O	This is a serial data output pin.
P84 to P87	I/O port P8	I/O	When these ports are not used, input “L” or “H” level, or leave them open in output mode.

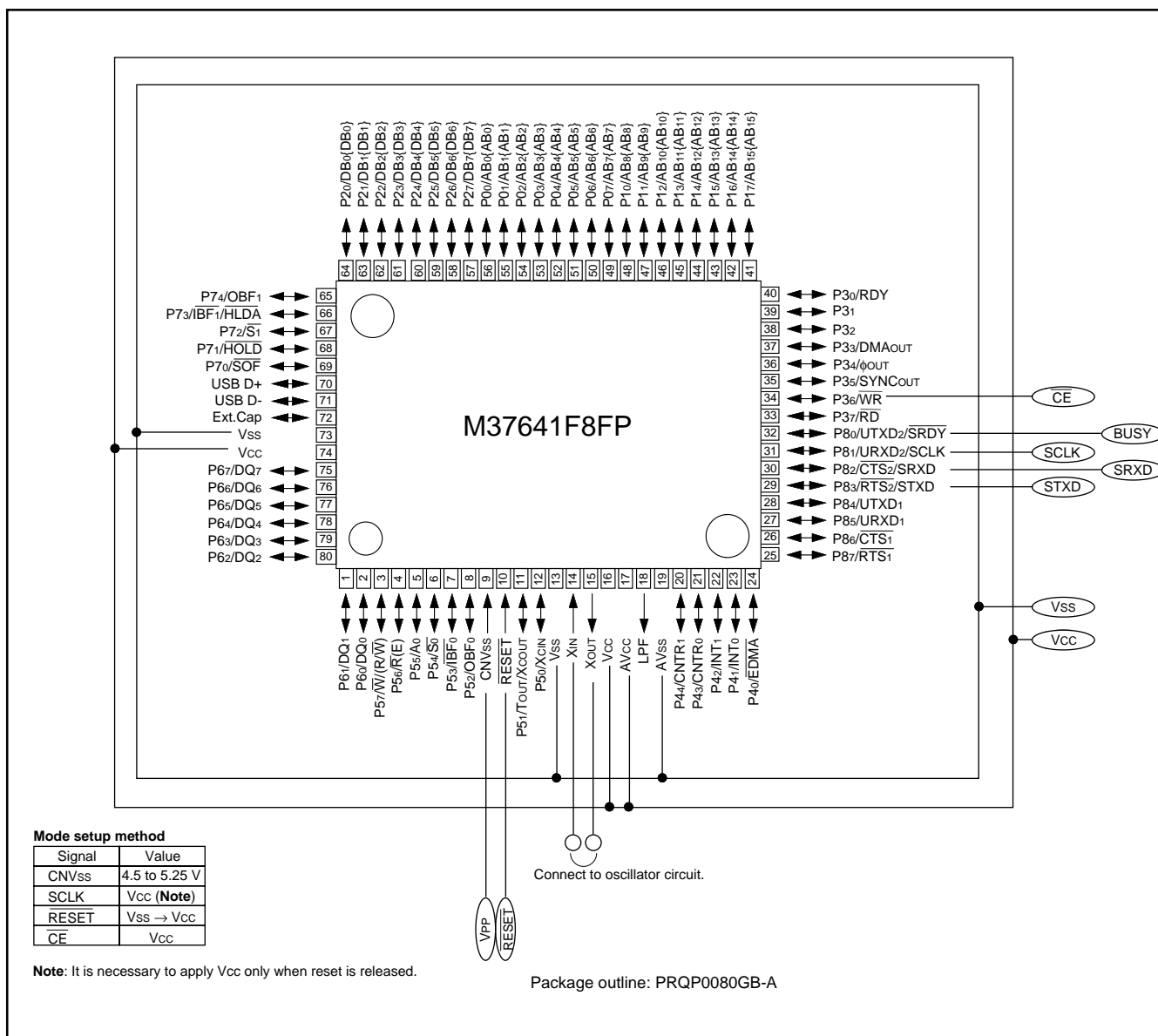


Fig. 87 Pin connection diagram in standard serial I/O mode (1)

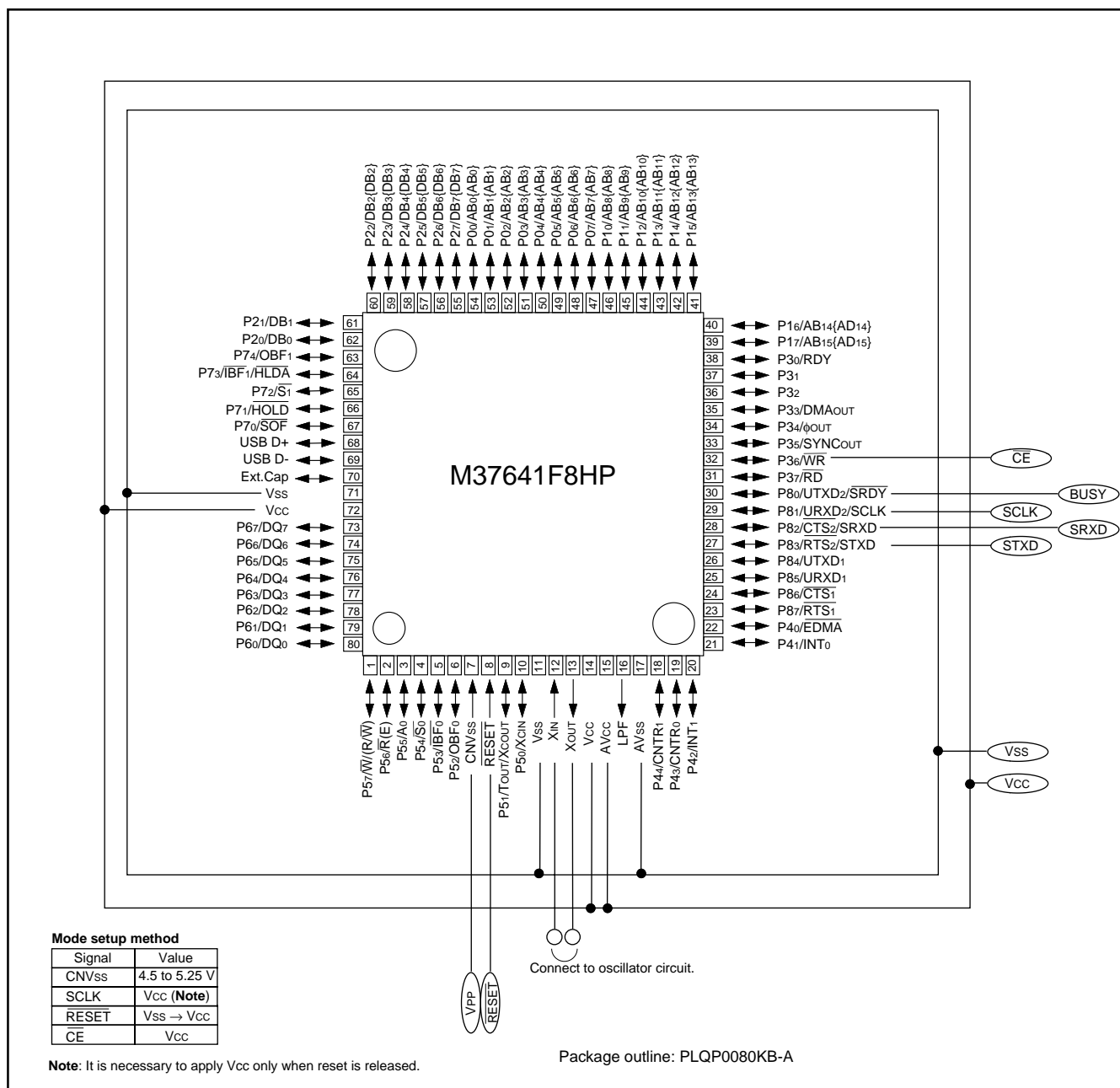


Fig. 88 Pin connection diagram in standard serial I/O mode (2)

## Software Commands (Standard Serial I/O Mode)

Table 14 lists software commands. In standard serial I/O mode, erase, program and read are controlled by transferring software

commands via the SRXD pin. Software commands are explained here below.

**Table 14 Software commands (Standard serial I/O mode)**

Control command	1st byte transfer	2nd byte	3rd byte	4th byte	5th byte	6th byte	.....	When ID is not verified
1 Page read	FF <sub>16</sub>	Address (middle)	Address (high)	Data output	Data output	Data output	Data output to 259th byte	Not acceptable
2 Page program	41 <sub>16</sub>	Address (middle)	Address (high)	Data input	Data input	Data input	Data input to 259th byte	Not acceptable
3 Block erase	20 <sub>16</sub>	Address (middle)	Address (high)	D0 <sub>16</sub>				Not acceptable
4 Erase all blocks	A7 <sub>16</sub>	D0 <sub>16</sub>						Not acceptable
5 Read status register	70 <sub>16</sub>	SRD output	SRD1 output					Acceptable
6 Clear status register	50 <sub>16</sub>							Not acceptable
7 ID code check	F5 <sub>16</sub>	Address (low)	Address (middle)	Address (high)	ID size	ID1	To ID7	Acceptable
8 Download function	FA <sub>16</sub>	Size (low)	Size (high)	Check-sum	Data input	To required number of times		Not acceptable
9 Version data output function	FB <sub>16</sub>	Version data output	Version data output	Version data output	Version data output	Version data output	Version data output to 9th byte	Acceptable
10 Boot ROM area output function	FC <sub>16</sub>	Address (middle)	Address (high)	Data output	Data output	Data output	Data output to 259th byte	Not acceptable

**Notes1:** Shading indicates transfer from the internal flash memory microcomputer to a programmer. All other data is transferred from an external equipment (programmer) to the internal flash memory microcomputer.

**2:** SRD refers to status register data. SRD1 refers to status register 1 data.

**3:** All commands can be accepted for the products of which boot ROM area is totally blank.

**4:** Address low is AB<sub>0</sub> to AB<sub>7</sub>; Address middle is AB<sub>8</sub> to AB<sub>15</sub>; Address high is AB<sub>16</sub> to AB<sub>23</sub>.

### ●Page Read Command

This command reads the specified page (256 bytes) in the flash memory sequentially one byte at a time. Execute the page read command as explained here following.

- (1) Transfer the "FF16" command code with the 1st byte.
- (2) Transfer addresses AB8 to AB15 and AB16 to AB23 with the 2nd and 3rd bytes respectively.
- (3) From the 4th byte onward, data (DB0 to DB7) for the page (256 bytes) specified with addresses AB8 to AB23 will be output sequentially from the smallest address first synchronized with the fall of the clock.

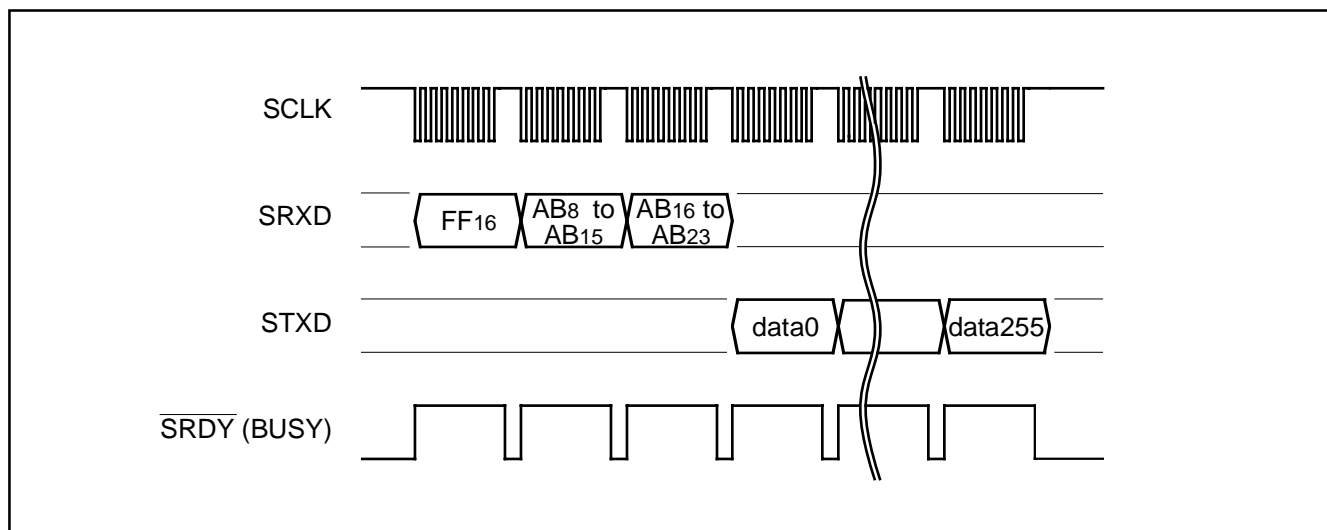


Fig. 89 Timing for page read

### ●Read Status Register Command

This command reads status information. When the "7016" command code is transferred with the 1st byte, the contents of the status register (SRD) with the 2nd byte and the contents of status register 1 (SRD1) with the 3rd byte are read.

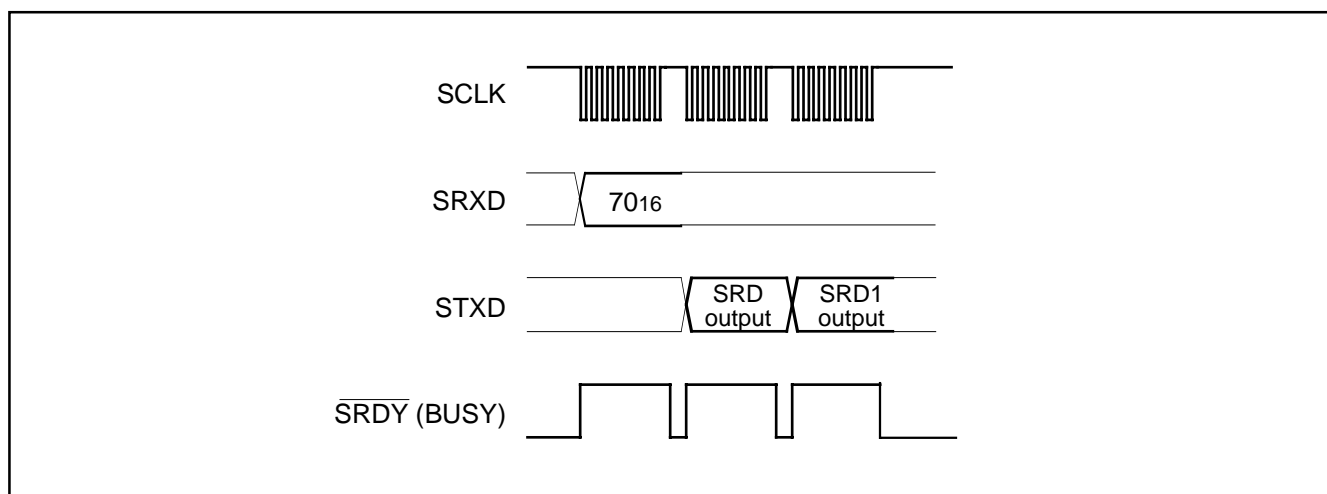


Fig. 90 Timing for reading status register

### ●Clear Status Register Command

This command clears the bits (SR3 to SR5) which are set when the status register operation ends in error. When the "5016" command code is sent with the 1st byte, the aforementioned bits are cleared. When the clear status register operation ends, the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  (BUSY) signal changes from "H" to "L" level.

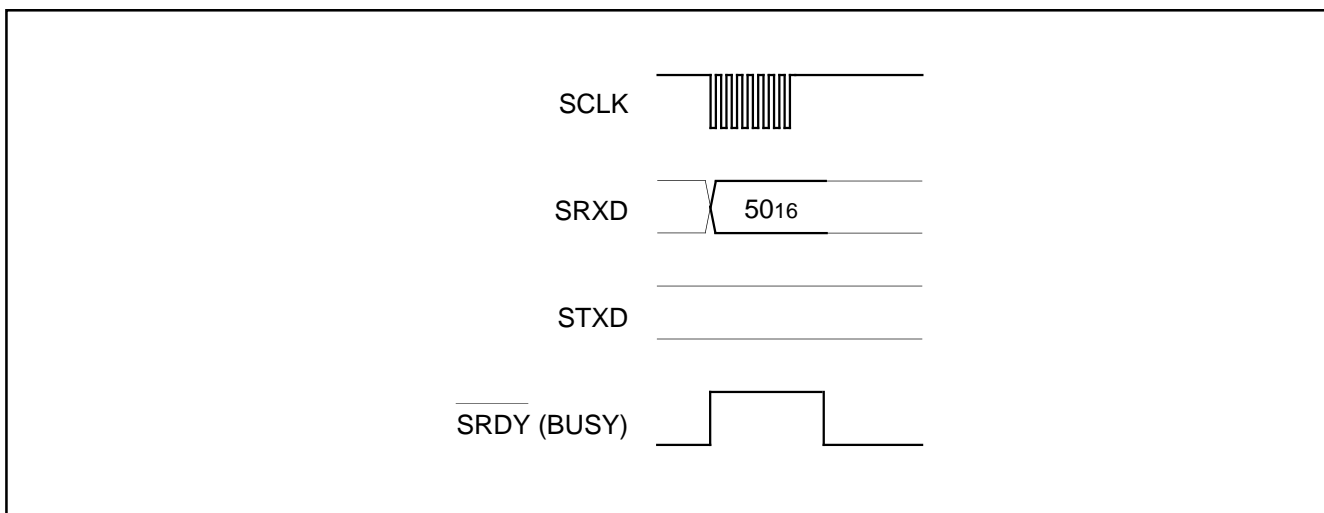


Fig. 91 Timing for clear status register

### ●Page Program Command

This command writes the specified page (256 bytes) in the flash memory sequentially one byte at a time. Execute the page program command as explained here following.

- (1) Transfer the "4116" command code with the 1st byte.
- (2) Transfer addresses AB8 to AB15 and AB16 to AB23 with the 2nd and 3rd bytes respectively.

- (3) From the 4th byte onward, as write data (DB0 to DB7) for the page (256 bytes) specified with addresses A8 to A23 is input sequentially from the smallest address first, that page is automatically written.

When reception setup for the next 256 bytes ends, the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  (BUSY) signal changes from "H" to "L" level. The result of the page program can be known by reading the status register. For more information, see the section on the status register.

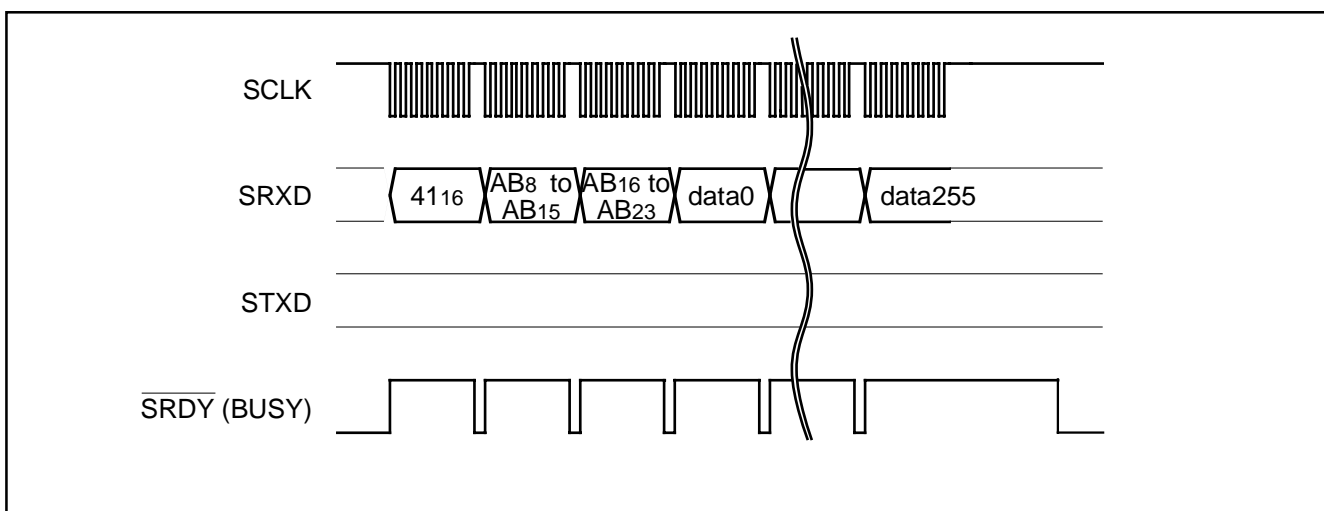


Fig. 92 Timing for page program

### ●Block Erase Command

This command erases the contents of the specified block. Execute the block erase command as explained here following.

- (1) Transfer the "20<sub>16</sub>" command code with the 1st byte.
- (2) Transfer addresses AB<sub>8</sub> to AB<sub>15</sub> and AB<sub>16</sub> to AB<sub>23</sub> with the 2nd and 3rd bytes respectively.
- (3) Transfer the verify command code "D0<sub>16</sub>" with the 4th byte.  
With the verify command code, the erase operation will start for the specified block in the flash memory. Set the addresses AB<sub>8</sub> to AB<sub>23</sub> to the maximum address of the specified block.

When block erasing ends, the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  (BUSY) signal changes from "H" to "L" level. The result of the erase operation can be known by reading the status register.

For more information, see the section on the status register.

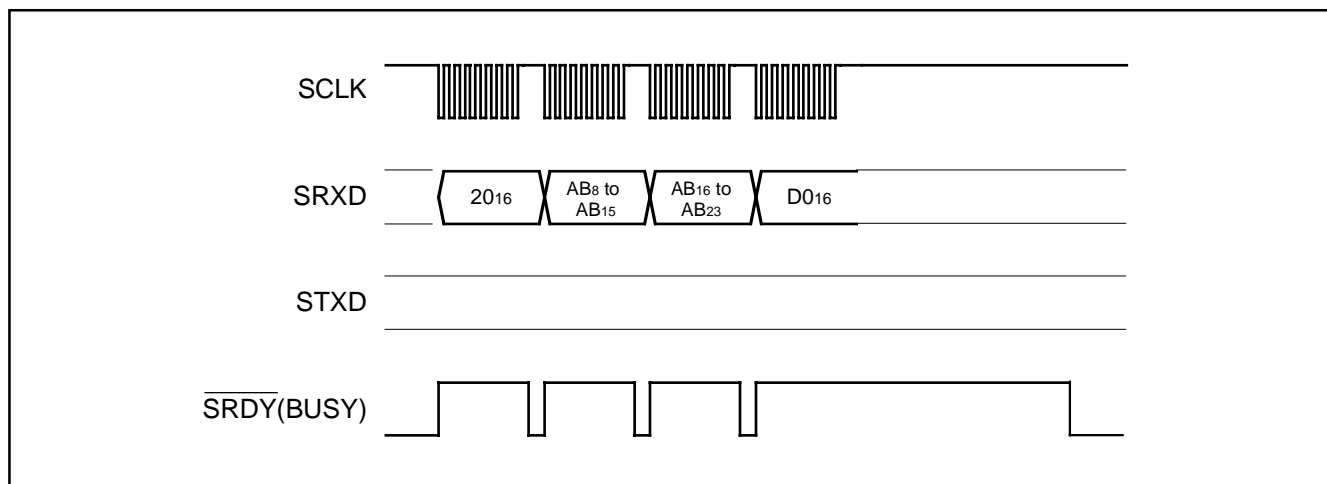


Fig. 93 Timing for block erasing

### ●Erase All Blocks Command

This command erases the contents of all blocks. Execute the erase all blocks command as explained here following.

- (1) Transfer the "A7<sub>16</sub>" command code with the 1st byte.
- (2) Transfer the verify command code "D0<sub>16</sub>" with the 2nd byte.  
With the verify command code, the erase operation will start and continue for all blocks in the flash memory.

When erase all blocks end, the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  (BUSY) signal changes from "H" to "L" level. The result of the erase operation can be known by reading the status register.

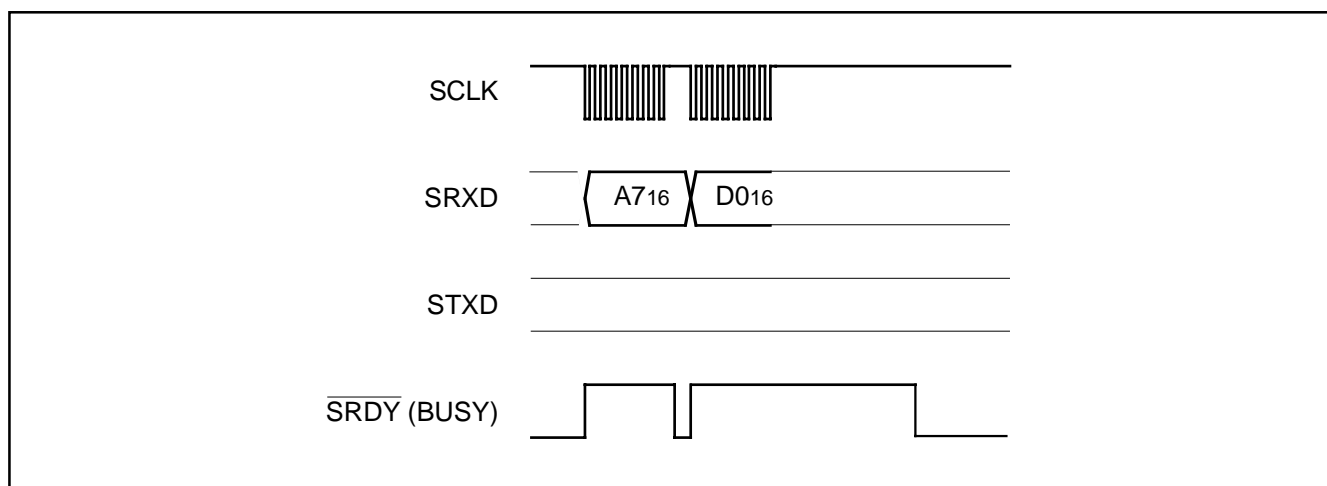


Fig. 94 Timing for erase all blocks

### ●Download Command

This command downloads a program to the RAM for execution.

Execute the download command as explained here following.

- (1) Transfer the "FA16" command code with the 1st byte.
- (2) Transfer the program size with the 2nd and 3rd bytes.
- (3) Transfer the check sum with the 4th byte. The check sum is added to all data sent with the 5th byte onward.
- (4) The program to execute is sent with the 5th byte onward.

When all data has been transmitted, if the check sum matches, the downloaded program is executed. The size of the program will vary according to the internal RAM.

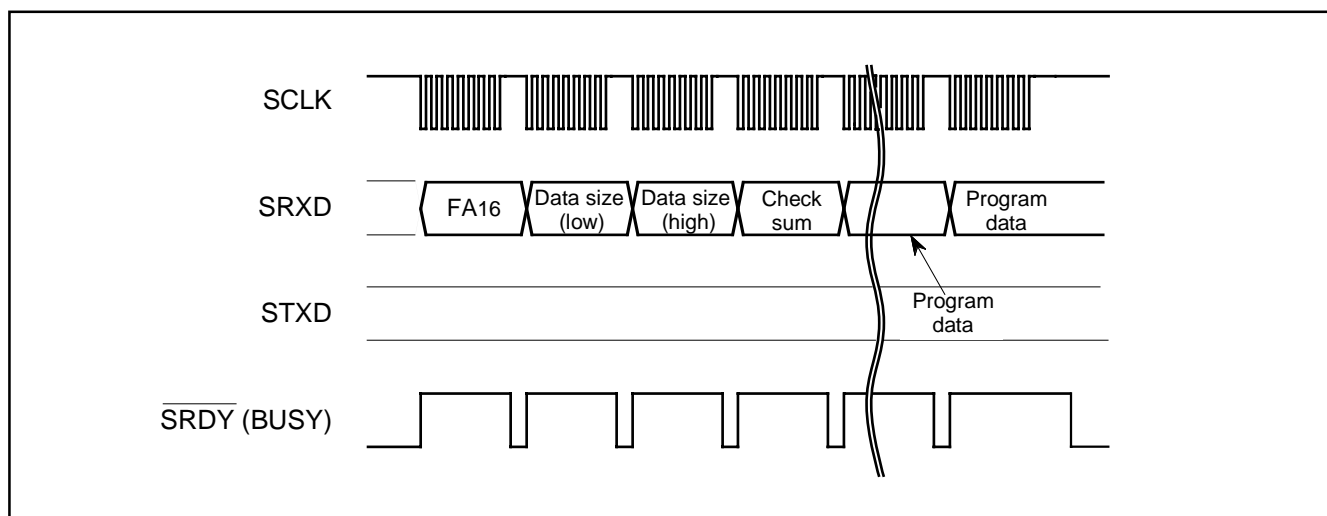


Fig. 95 Timing for download



### ●Version Information Output Command

This command outputs the version information of the control program stored in the Boot ROM area. Execute the version information output command as explained here following.

(1) Transfer the "FB16" command code with the 1st byte.

(2) The version information will be output from the 2nd byte onward.

This data is composed of 8 ASCII code characters.

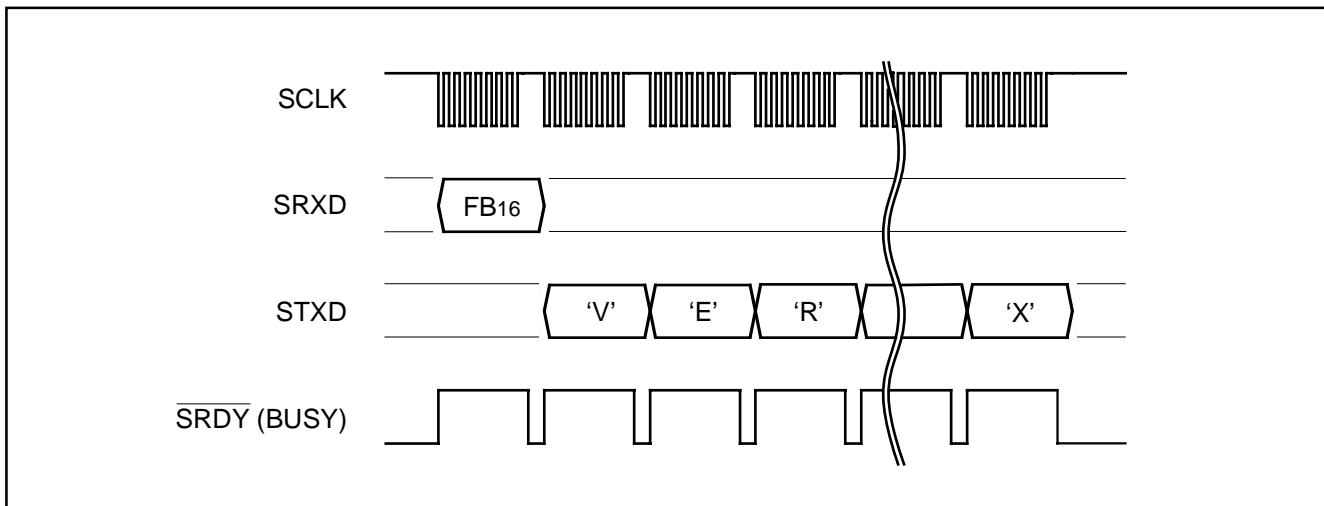


Fig. 96 Timing for version information output

### ●Boot ROM Area Output Command

This command reads the control program stored in the Boot ROM area in page (256 bytes) unit. Execute the Boot ROM area output command as explained here following.

(1) Transfer the "FC16" command code with the 1st byte.

(2) Transfer addresses AB8 to AB15 and AB16 to AB23 with the 2nd and 3rd bytes respectively.

(3) From the 4th byte onward, data (DB0 to DB7) for the page (256 bytes) specified with addresses AB8 to AB23 will be output sequentially from the smallest address first synchronized with the fall of the clock.

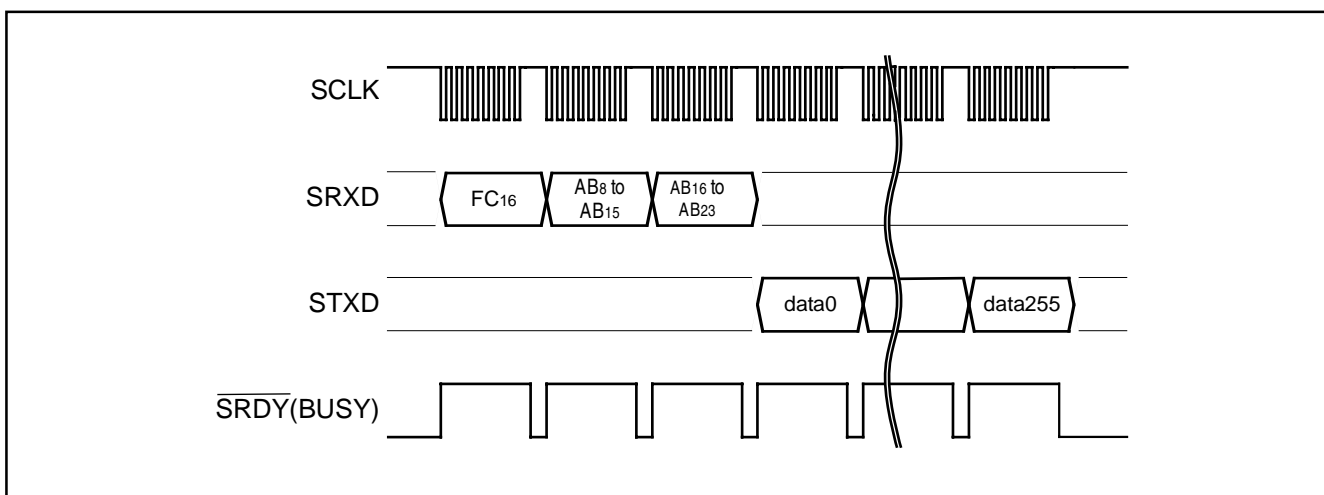


Fig. 97 Timing for Boot ROM area output

●ID Code Check

This command checks the ID code. Execute the boot ID check command as explained here following.

- (1) Transfer the "F5<sub>16</sub>" command code with the 1st byte.
- (2) Transfer addresses AB<sub>0</sub> to AB<sub>7</sub>, AB<sub>8</sub> to AB<sub>15</sub> and AB<sub>16</sub> to AB<sub>23</sub> ("00<sub>16</sub>") of the 1st byte of the ID code with the 2nd and 3rd respectively.
- (3) Transfer the number of data sets of the ID code with the 5th byte.
- (4) Transfer the ID code with the 6th byte onward, starting with the 1st byte of the code.

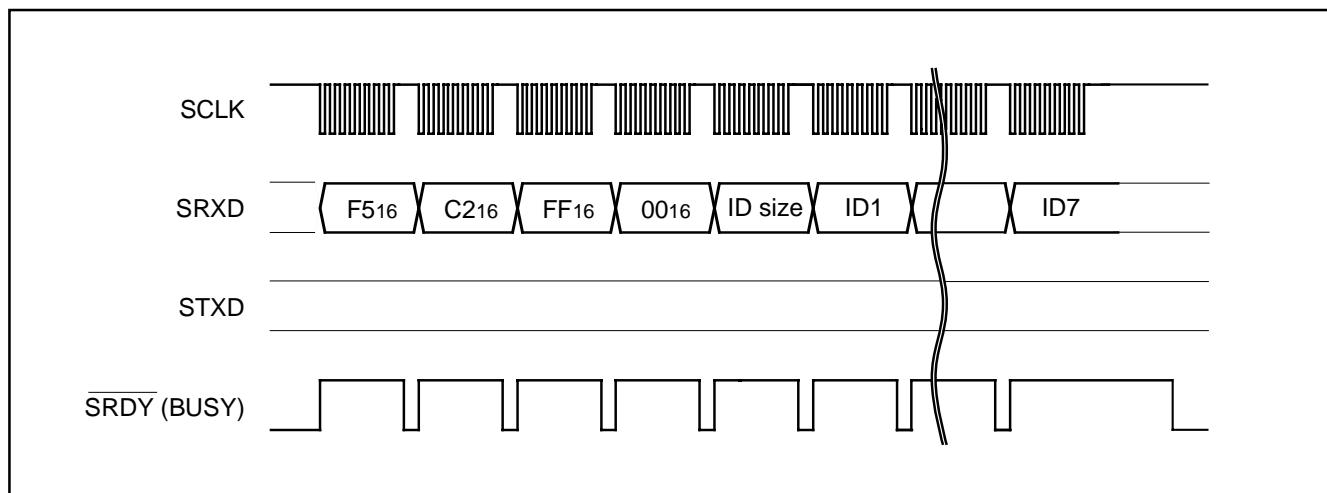


Fig. 98 Timing for ID check

●ID Code

When the flash memory is not blank, the ID code sent from the serial programmer and the ID code written in the flash memory are compared to see if they match. If the codes do not match, the command sent from the serial programmer is not accepted. An ID code contains 8 bits of data. Area is, from the 1st byte, addresses FFC2<sub>16</sub> to FFC8<sub>16</sub>. Write a program into the flash memory, which already has the ID code set for these addresses.

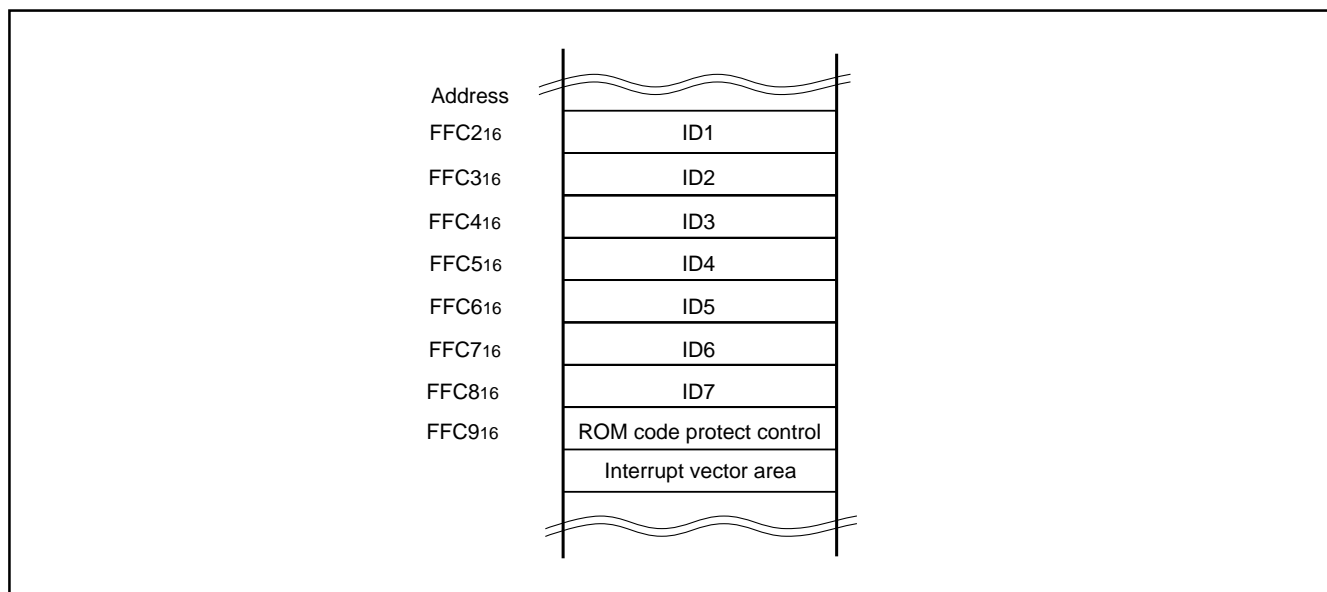


Fig. 99 ID code storage addresses

### ●Status Register (SRD)

The status register indicates operating status of the flash memory and status such as whether an erase operation or a program ended successfully or in error. It can be read by writing the read status register command (70<sub>16</sub>). Also, the status register is cleared by writing the clear status register command (50<sub>16</sub>).

Table 15 lists the definition of each status register bit. After releasing the reset, the status register becomes "80<sub>16</sub>".

### •Sequencer status (SR7)

The sequencer status indicates the operating status of the flash memory.

After power-on and recover from deep power down mode, the sequencer status is set to "1" (ready).

This status bit is set to "0" (busy) during write or erase operation and is set to "1" upon completion of these operations.

### •Erase status (SR5)

The erase status indicates the operating status of erase operation. If an erase error occurs, it is set to "1". When the erase status is cleared, it is set to "0".

### •Program status (SR4)

The program status indicates the operating status of write operation. If a program error occurs, it is set to "1". When the program status is cleared, it is set to "0".

**Table 15 Definition of each bit of status register (SRD)**

SRD0 bits	Status name	Definition	
		"1"	"0"
SR7 (bit7)	Sequencer status	Ready	Busy
SR6 (bit6)	Reserved	-	-
SR5 (bit5)	Erase status	Terminated in error	Terminated normally
SR4 (bit4)	Program status	Terminated in error	Terminated normally
SR3 (bit3)	Reserved	-	-
SR2 (bit2)	Reserved	-	-
SR1 (bit1)	Reserved	-	-
SR0 (bit0)	Reserved	-	-

### ●Status Register 1 (SRD1)

The status register 1 indicates the status of serial communications, results from ID checks and results from check sum comparisons. It can be read after the status register (SRD) by writing the read status register command (70<sub>16</sub>). Also, status register 1 is cleared by writing the clear status register command (50<sub>16</sub>). Table 16 lists the definition of each status register 1 bit. This register becomes "00<sub>16</sub>" when power is turned on and the flag status is maintained even after the reset.

### •Boot update completed bit (SR15)

This flag indicates whether the control program was downloaded to the RAM or not, using the download function.

### •Check sum consistency bit (SR12)

This flag indicates whether the check sum matches or not when a program, is downloaded for execution using the download function.

### •ID code check completed bits (SR11 and SR10)

These flags indicate the result of ID code checks. Some commands cannot be accepted without an ID code check.

### •Data reception time out (SR9)

This flag indicates when a time out error is generated during data reception. If this flag is attached during data reception, the received data is discarded and the MCU returns to the command wait state.

**Table 16 Definition of each bit of status register 1 (SRD1)**

SRD1 bits	Status name	Definition	
		"1"	"0"
SR15 (bit7)	Boot update completed bit	Update completed	Not Update
SR14 (bit6)	Reserved	-	-
SR13 (bit5)	Reserved	-	-
SR12 (bit4)	Checksum match bit	Match	Mismatch
SR11 (bit3) SR10 (bit2)	ID code check completed bits	00 01 10 11	Not verified Verification mismatch Reserved Verified
SR9 (bit1)	Data reception time out	Time out	Normal operation
SR8 (bit0)	Reserved	-	-

## Full Status Check

Results from executed erase and program operations can be known by running a full status check. Figure 100 shows a flowchart of the full status check and explains how to remedy errors which occur.

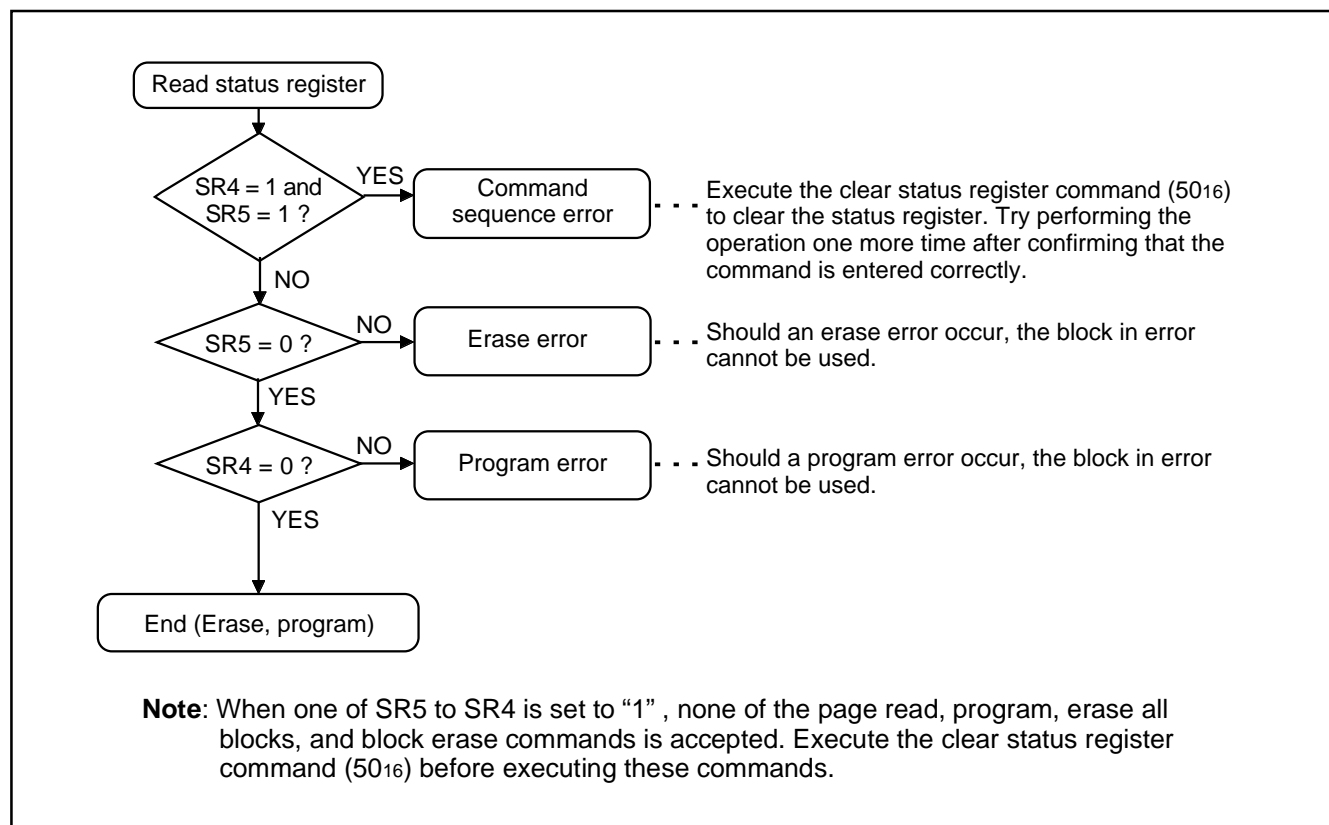


Fig. 100 Full status check flowchart and remedial procedure for errors

### Example Circuit Application for Standard Serial I/O Mode

Figure 101 shows a circuit application for the standard serial I/O mode. Control pins will vary according to a programmer, therefore see a programmer manual for more information.

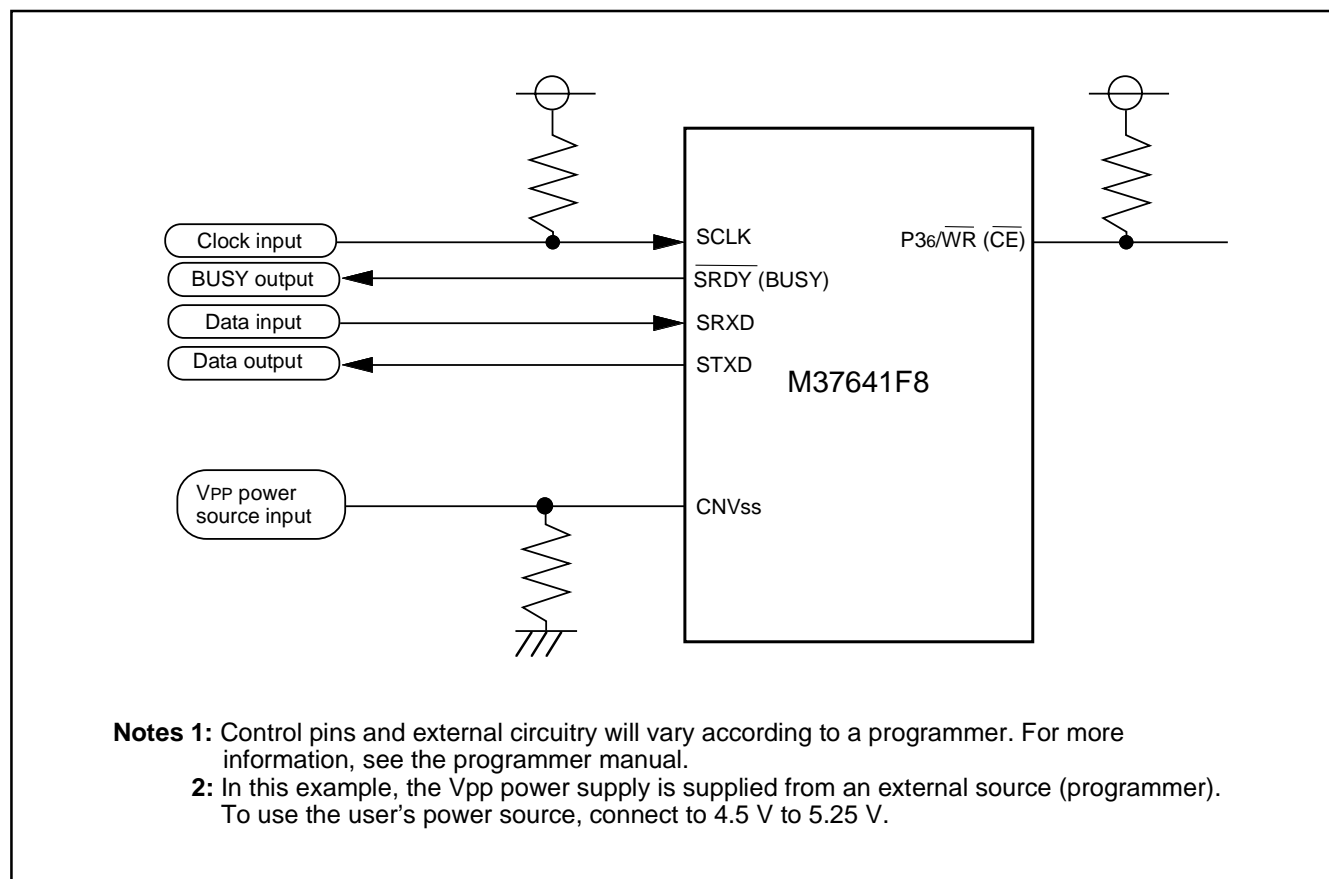


Fig. 101 Example circuit application for standard serial I/O mode

## NOTES ON PROGRAMMING

### Processor Status Register

•The contents of the processor status register (PS) after a reset are undefined, except for the interrupt disable flag (I) which is "1". After a reset, initialize flags which affect program execution. In particular, it is essential to initialize the index X mode (T) and the decimal mode (D) flags because of their effect on calculations.

•To reference the contents of the processor status register (PS), execute the **PHP** instruction once then read the contents of (S+1). If necessary, execute the **PLP** instruction to return the PS to its original status.

A **NOP** instruction must be executed after every **PLP** instruction.

•A **SEI** instruction must be executed before every **PLP** instruction. A **NOP** instruction must be executed before every **CLI** instruction.

### BRK Instruction

It can be detected that the **BRK** instruction interrupt event or the least priority interrupt event by referring the stored B flag state. Refer to the stored B flag state in the interrupt routine.

### Decimal Calculations

When decimal mode is selected, the values of the V flags are invalid.

The carry flag (C) is set to "1" if a carry is generated as a result of the calculation, or is cleared to "0" if a borrow is generated. To determine whether a calculation has generated a carry, the C flag must be initialized to "0" before each calculation. To check for a borrow, the C flag must be initialized to "1" before each calculation.

### Multiplication and Division Instructions

•The index X mode (T) and the decimal mode (D) flags do not affect the **MUL** and **DIV** instruction.

### Instruction Execution Time

The instruction execution time is obtained by multiplying the frequency of the internal clock  $\phi$  by the number of cycles needed to execute an instruction.

The number of cycles required to execute an instruction is shown in the list of machine instructions.

### Timers

•If a value n (between 0 and 255) is written to a timer latch, the frequency division ratio is  $1/(n+1)$ .

•P51/XCOUT/TOUT pin cannot function as an I/O port when XCIN - XCOUT is oscillating. When XCIN - XCOUT oscillation is not used or XCOUT oscillation drive is disabled, this pin can function as the TOUT output pin of the timer 1 or 2.

When using the TOUT output function and  $f(\text{XCIN})$  divided by 2 is used as the timer 1 count source (bit 2 of T123M = "1"), disable XCOUT oscillation drive (bit 5 of CCR = "1").

### Ports

•When the data register (port latch) of an I/O port is modified with the bit managing instruction (**SEB**, **CLB** instructions) the value of the unspecified bit may be changed.

•In standby state (the stop mode by executing the **STP** instruction, and the wait mode by executing the **WIT** instruction) for low-power dissipation, do not make input levels of an I/O port "undefined", especially for I/O ports of the P-channel and the N-channel open-drain.

Pull-up (connect the port to Vcc) or pull-down (connect the port to Vss) these ports through a resistor.

When determining a resistance value, note the following points:

- (1) External circuit
- (2) Variation of output levels during the ordinary operation

When using built-in pull-up or pull-down resistor, note on varied current values.

- (1) When setting as an input port : Fix its input level
- (2) When setting as an output port : Prevent current from flowing out to external

### Serial I/O

Do not write to the serial I/O shift register during a transfer when in SPI compatible mode.

### UART

•The all error flags PER, FER, OER and SER are cleared to "0" when the UARTx status register is read, at the hardware reset or initialization by setting the Transmit Initialization Bit. These flags are also cleared to "0" by execution of bit test instructions such as **BBC** and **BCS**.

•The transmission interrupt request bit is set and the interrupt request is generated by setting the transmit enable bit to "1" even when selecting timing that either of the following flags is set to "1" as timing where the transmission interrupt is generated:

- (1) Transmit buffer empty flag is set to "1"
- (2) Transmit complete flag is set to "1".

Therefore, when the transmit interrupt is used, set the transmit interrupt enable bit to transmit enabled as the following sequence:

- (1) Transmit enable bit is set to "1"
- (2) Transmit interrupt request bit is set to "0"
- (3) Transmit interrupt enable bit is set to "1".

•Do not update a value of UARTx baud rate generator in the condition of transmission enabled or reception enabled. Disable transmission and reception before updating the value. If the former data remains in the UARTx transmit buffer registers 1 and 2 when transmission is enabled, an undefined data might be output.

•The receive buffer full interrupt request is not generated if receive errors are detected at receiving.

•If a character bit length is 7 bits, bit 7 of the UARTx transmit/receive buffer register 1 and bits 0 to 7 of the UARTx transmit/receive buffer register 2 are ignored at transmitting; they are invalid at receiving.

If a character bit length is 8 bits, bits 0 to 7 of the UARTx transmit/receive buffer register 2 are ignored at transmitting; they are invalid at receiving.

If a character bit length is 9 bits, bits 1 to 7 of the UARTx transmit/receive buffer register 2 are ignored at transmitting; they are "0" at receiving.

## USB

•When the USB Reset Interrupt Status Flag is kept at "1", all other flags in the USB internal registers (addresses 0050<sub>16</sub> to 005F<sub>16</sub>) will return to their reset status. However, the following registers are not affected by the USB reset: USB control register (address 0013<sub>16</sub>), Frequency synthesizer control register (address 006C<sub>16</sub>), Clock control register (address 001F<sub>16</sub>), and USB endpoint-x FIFO register (addresses 0060<sub>16</sub> to 0064<sub>16</sub>).

•When not using the USB function, set the USB Line Driver Supply Enable Bit of the USB control register (address 0013<sub>16</sub>) to "1" for power supply to the internal circuits (at V<sub>cc</sub> = 5V).

•When using an isochronous transfer, set the FLUSH Bit (bit 6 of address 0059<sub>16</sub> and bit 6 of address 005A<sub>16</sub>) as follows:

IN FIFO: use AUTO\_FLUSH Bit (bit 6 of address 0058<sub>16</sub>)

OUT FIFO: when OUT\_PKT\_RDY Bit is "1", set FLUSH Bit to "1"

•When the USB SOF Port Select Bit is "1", the reference pulse of 83.3 ns ( $\phi = 12$  MHz) is output from the P70/SOF pin and synchronized with the SOF packet.

•The IN\_PKT\_RDY Bit can be set by software even when using the AUTO\_SET function.

•When writing to USB-related registers, set the USB Clock Enable Bit to "1", then perform the write after four  $\phi$  cycle waits.

•When using the MCU at V<sub>cc</sub> = 3.3V, set the USB Line Driver Supply Enable Bit to "0" (line driver disable). Note that setting the USB Line Driver Current Control Bit (USBC3) doesn't affect the USB operation.

•Read one packet data from the OUT FIFO before clearing the OUT\_PKT\_RDY Flag. If the OUT\_PKT\_RDY Flag is cleared while one packet data is being read, the internal read pointer cannot operate normally.

•Use the AUTO\_FLUSH Bit (bit 6 of address 0058<sub>16</sub>) in double buffer mode.

•Use the transfer instructions such as **LDA** and **STA** to set the registers: USB interrupt status registers 1, 2 (addresses 0052<sub>16</sub>, 0053<sub>16</sub>); USB endpoint 0 IN control register (address 0059<sub>16</sub>); USB endpoint x IN control register (address 0059<sub>16</sub>); USB endpoint x OUT control register (address 005A<sub>16</sub>). Do not use the read-modify-write instructions such as the **SEB** or the **CLB** instruction.

When writing to bits shown by Table 32 using the transfer instruction such as **LDA** or **STA**, a value which never affect its bit state is required. Take the following sequence to change these bits contents:

- (1) Store the register contents onto a variable or a data register.
- (2) Change the target bit on the variable or the data register. Simultaneously mask the bit so that its bit state cannot be changed. (See to Table 39.)
- (3) Write the value from the variable or the data register to the register using the transfer instruction such as **LDA** or **STA**.

•To use the AUTO\_SET function for an IN transfer when the AUTO\_SET bit is set to 1, set the FIFO to single buffer mode.

**Table 17 Bits of which state might be changed owing to software write**

Register name	Bit name	Value not affecting state ( <b>Note</b> )
USB endpoint 0 IN control register	IN_PKT_RDY (b1)	"0"
	DATA_END (b3)	"0"
	FORCE_STALL (b4)	"1"
USB endpoint x (x = 1 to 4) IN control register	IN_PKT_RDY (b0)	"0"
	UNDER_RUN (b1)	"1"
USB endpoint x (x = 1 to 4) OUT control register	OUT_PKT_RDY (b0)	"1"
	OVER_RUN (b1)	"1"
	FORCE_STALL (b4)	"1"
	DATA_ERR (b5)	"1"

**Note:** Writing this value will not change the bit state, because this value cannot be written to the bit by software.



## Frequency Synthesizer

•The frequency synthesizer and DC-DC converter must be set up as follows when recovering from a Hardware Reset:

- (1) Enable the frequency synthesizer after setting the frequency synthesizer related registers (addresses 006C16 to 006F16). Then wait for 2 ms.
- (2) Check the Frequency Synthesizer Lock Status Bit. If “0”, wait for 0.1 ms and then recheck.
- (3) When using the USB built-in DC-DC converter, set the USB Line Driver Supply Enable Bit of the USB control register to “1”. This setting must be done 2 ms or more after the setup described in step (1). The USB Line Driver Current Control Bit must be set to “0” at this time. (When  $V_{cc} = 3.3V$ , the setting explained in this step is not necessary.)
- (4) After waiting for  $(C + 1)$  ms so that the external capacitance pin (Ext. Cap. pin) can reach approximately 3.3 V, set the USB Clock Enable Bit to “1”. At this time, “C” equals the capacitance ( $\mu F$ ) of the capacitor connected to the Ext. Cap. pin. For example, if 2.2  $\mu F$  and 0.1  $\mu F$  capacitors are connected to the Ext. Cap. in parallel, the required wait will be  $(2.3 + 1)$  ms.
- (5) After enabling the USB clock, wait for 4 or more  $\phi$  cycles, and then set the USB Enable Bit to “1”.

•Bits 6 and 5 of the frequency synthesizer control register (address 006C16) are initialized to “11” after reset release. Make sure to set bits 6 and 5 to “10” after the Frequency Synthesizer Lock Status Bit goes to “1”.

•When using the frequency synthesized clock function, we recommend using the fastest frequency possible of  $f(X_{IN})$  or  $f(X_{CIN})$  as an input clock for the PLL. Owing to the PLL mechanism, the PLL controls the speed of multiplied clocks from the source clock. As a result, when the source clock input is lower, the generated clock becomes less stable. This is because more multipliers are needed and the speed control is very rough. Higher source clock input generates a stabler clock, as less multipliers are needed and the speed control is more accurate. However, if the input clock frequency is relatively high, the PLL clock generator can quickly lock-up the output clock to the source and make the output clock very stable.

•Set the value of frequency synthesizer multiply register 2 (FSM2) so that the  $f_{PIN}$  is 1 MHz or higher.

## DMA

•In the memory expansion mode and microprocessor mode, the DMAOUT pin outputs “H” during a DMA transfer.

•Do not access the DMAC-related registers by using a DMAC transfer. The destination address data and the source address data will collide in the DMAC internal bus.

•When using the USB FIFO as the DMA transfer source, make sure that, if you use the AUTO\_SET function, short packet data does not get mixed in with the transfer data.

•When setting the DMAC channel x enable bit (bit 7 of address 004116) to “1”, be sure simultaneously to set the DMAC channel x transfer initiation source capture register reset bit (bit 6 of address 004116) to “1”. If this is not performed, an incorrect data will be transferred at the same time when the DMAC is enabled.

## Memory Expansion Mode & Microprocessor Mode

•In both memory expansion mode and microprocessor mode, use the LDM instruction or STA instruction to write to port P3 (address 000E16). When using the Read-Modify-Write instruction (**SEB** instruction, **CLB** instruction) you will need to map a memory that the CPU can read from and write to.

•In the memory expansion mode, if the internal and external memory areas overlap, the internal memory becomes the valid memory for the overlapping area. When the CPU performs a read or a write operation on this overlapped area, the following things happen:

### (1) Read

The CPU reads out the data in the internal memory instead of in the external memory. Note that, since the CPU will output a proper read signal, address signal, etc., the memory data at the respective address will appear on the external data bus.

### (2) Write

The CPU writes data to both the internal and external memories.

•The wait function is serviceable at accessing an external memory.

## Stop Mode

•When the STP instruction is executed, bit 7 of the clock control register (address 001F16) goes to “0”. To return from stop mode, reset CCR7 to “1”.

•When using  $f_{SYN}$  (set Internal System Clock Select Bit (CPMA6) to “1”) as the internal system clock, switch CPMA6 to “0” before executing the **STP** instruction. Reset CPMA6 after the system returns from Stop Mode and the frequency synthesizer has stabilized.

CPMA6 does not need to be switched to “0” when using the **WIT** instruction.

•When the **STP** instruction is being executed, all bits except bit 4 of the timer 123 mode register (address 002916) are initialized to “0”. It is not necessary to set T123M1 (Timer 1 Count Stop Bit) to “0” before executing the **STP** instruction. After returning from Stop Mode, reset the timer 1 (address 002416), timer 2 (address 002516), and the timer 123 mode register (address 002916).

## USAGE NOTES

### Oscillator Connection Notice

The built-in feedback register (1 M $\Omega$ ) and the dumping resistor (400  $\Omega$ ) is internally connected between pins XIN and XOUT.

### Power Source Voltage

When the power source voltage value of a microcomputer is less than the value which is indicated as the recommended operating conditions, the microcomputer does not operate normally and may perform unstable operation.

In a system where the power source voltage drops slowly when the power source voltage drops or the power supply is turned off, reset a microcomputer when the power source voltage is less than the recommended operating conditions and design a system not to cause errors to the system by this unstable operation.

### Power Supply Pins Treatment Notice

Please connect 0.1  $\mu$ F and 4.7  $\mu$ F capacitors in parallel between pins Vcc and Vss, and pins AVss and AVcc.

These capacitors must be connected as close as possible between the DC supply and GND pins, and also the analog supply pin and corresponding GND pin.

Wiring patterns for these supply and GND pins must be wider than other signal patterns.

These filter capacitors should not be placed near the LPF pins as they will cause noise problems

### Reset Pin Treatment Notice (Noise Elimination)

If the reset input signal rises very slowly, we recommend attaching a capacitor, such as a 1000 pF ceramic capacitor with excellent high frequency characteristics, between the RESET pin and the Vss pin.

Please note the following two issues for this capacitor connection.

- (1) Capacitor wiring pattern must be as short as possible (within 20 mm).
- (2) The user must perform an application level operation test.

### LPF Pin Treatment Notice

All passive components must be located as close as possible to the LPF pin.

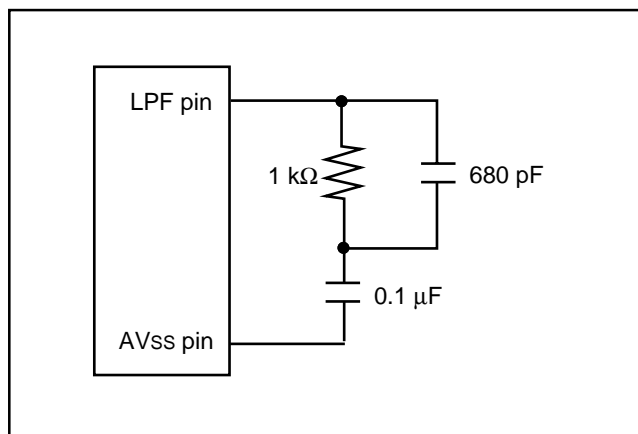


Fig. 102 Passive components near LPF pin

### AVss and AVcc Pin Treatment Notice (Noise Elimination)

An insulation connector (Ferrite Beads) must be connected between AVss and Vss pins and between AVcc and Vcc pins.

### USB Transceiver Treatment (Noise Elimination)

The Full-Speed USB2.0 specification requires a driver impedance 28 to 44  $\Omega$ . (Refer to Clause 7.1.1.1 Full-speed (12 Mb/s) Driver Characteristics in the USB specification.) In order to meet the USB specification impedance requirements, connect a resistor (27  $\Omega$  to 33  $\Omega$  recommended) in series to the USB D+ pin and the USB D- pin.

In addition, in order to reduce the ringing and control the falling/rising timing of USB D+/D- and a crossover point, connect a capacitor between the USB D+/D- pins and the Vss pin if necessary.

The values and structure of those peripheral elements depend on the impedance characteristics and the layout of the printed circuit board. Accordingly, evaluate your system and observe waveforms before actual use and decide use of elements and the values of resistors and capacitors.

Connect a capacitor between the Ext. Cap. pin and the Vss pin. The capacitor should have a 2.2  $\mu$ F capacitor (Tantalum capacitor) and a 0.1  $\mu$ F capacitor (ceramic capacitor) connected in parallel. Figure 103 for the proper positions of the peripheral components.

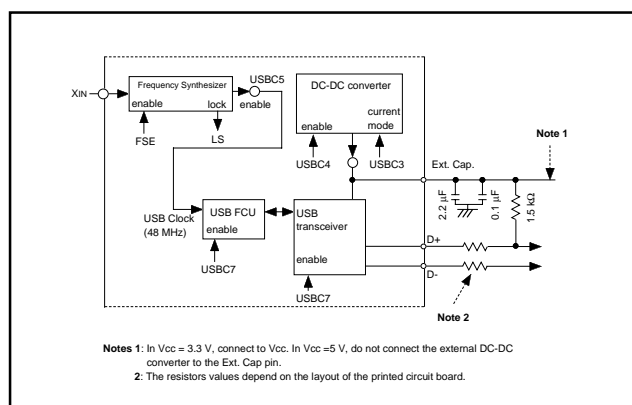


Fig.103 Peripheral circuit

In Vcc = 3.3 V operation, connect the Ext. Cap. pin directly to the Vcc pin in order to supply power to the USB transceiver. In addition, you will need to disable the DC-DC converter in this operation (set bit 4 of the USB control register to "0".) If you are using the bus powered supply in Vcc = 3.3 V operation, the DC-DC converter must be placed outside the MCU.

In Vcc = 5 V operation, do not connect the external DC-DC converter to the Ext. Cap. pin. Use the built-in DC-DC converter by enabling the USB line driver.

Make sure the USB D+/D- lines do not cross any other wires. Keep a large GND area to protect the USB lines. Also, make sure you use a USB specification compliant connector for the connection.

## USB Communication

In applications requiring high-reliability, we recommend providing the system with protective measures such as USB function initialization by software or USB reset by the host to prevent USB communication from being terminated unexpectedly, for example due to external causes such as noise.

## Clock Input/Output Pin Wiring (Noise Elimination)

- (1) Make the wiring for the input/output pins as short as possible.
- (2) Make the wiring across the grounding lead of the capacitor which is connected to an oscillator and the Vss pin of the MCU as short as possible (within 20 mm)
- (3) Make sure to isolate the oscillation Vss pattern from other patterns for oscillation circuit-use only.

## Oscillator Wiring (Noise Elimination)

### (1) Keeping oscillator away from large current signal lines

Install a microcomputer (and especially an oscillator) as far as possible from signal lines, including USB signal lines, where a current larger than the tolerance of current value flows. When a large current flows through those signal lines, strong noise occurs because of mutual inductance.

### (2) Installing oscillator away from signal lines where potential levels change frequently

Install an oscillator and a connecting pattern of an oscillator away from signal lines where potential levels change frequently. Also, do not cross such signal lines over the clock lines or the signal lines which are sensitive to noise.

## Terminate Unused Pins

### (1) Output ports : Open

### (2) Input ports :

Connect each pin to Vcc or Vss through each resistor of 1 k $\Omega$  to 10 k $\Omega$ .

Ports that permit the selecting of a built-in pull-up or pull-down resistor can also use this resistor. As for pins whose potential affects to operation modes such as pins CNVss, INT or others, select the Vcc pin or the Vss pin according to their operation mode.

### (3) I/O ports :

- Set the I/O ports for the input mode and connect them to Vcc or Vss through each resistor of 1 k $\Omega$  to 10 k $\Omega$ .

Ports that permit the selecting of a built-in pull-up or pull-down resistor can also use this resistor. Set the I/O ports for the output mode and open them at "L" or "H".

- When opening them in the output mode, the input mode of the initial status remains until the mode of the ports is switched over to the output mode by the program after reset. Thus, the potential at these pins is undefined and the power source current may increase in the input mode. With regard to an effects on the system, thoroughly perform system evaluation on the user side.

- Since the direction register setup may be changed because of a program runaway or noise, set direction registers by program periodically to increase the reliability of program.

- At the termination of unused pins, perform wiring at the shortest possible distance (20 mm or less) from microcomputer pins.

## Electric Characteristic Differences Between Mask ROM and Flash Memory Version MCUs

There are differences in electric characteristics, operation margin, noise immunity, and noise radiation between Mask ROM and Flash Memory version MCUs due to the difference in the manufacturing processes.

When manufacturing an application system with the Flash Memory version and then switching to use of the Mask ROM version, please perform sufficient evaluations for the commercial samples of the Mask ROM version.

## DATA REQUIRED FOR MASK ORDERS

The following are necessary when ordering a mask ROM production:

1. Mask ROM Order Confirmation Form
2. Mark Specification Form
3. Data to be written to ROM, in EPROM form (three identical copies) or one floppy disk.

For the mask ROM confirmation and the mark specifications, refer to the "Renesas Technology Corp." Homepage (<http://www.renesas.com>).

### FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION SUPPLEMENT Timing After Interrupt

The interrupt processing routine begins with the machine cycle following the completion of the instruction that is currently in execution. Figure 104 shows a timing chart after an interrupt occurs, and Figure 105 shows the time up to execution of the interrupt processing routine.

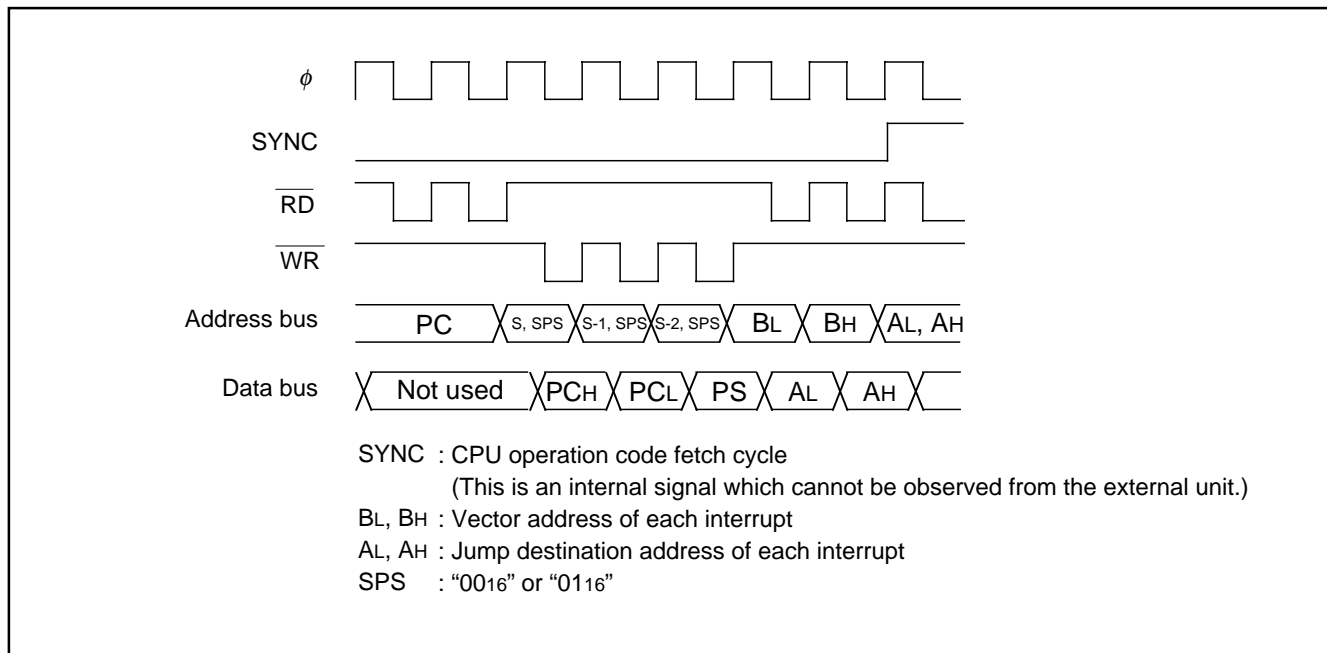


Fig. 104 Timing chart after interrupt occurs

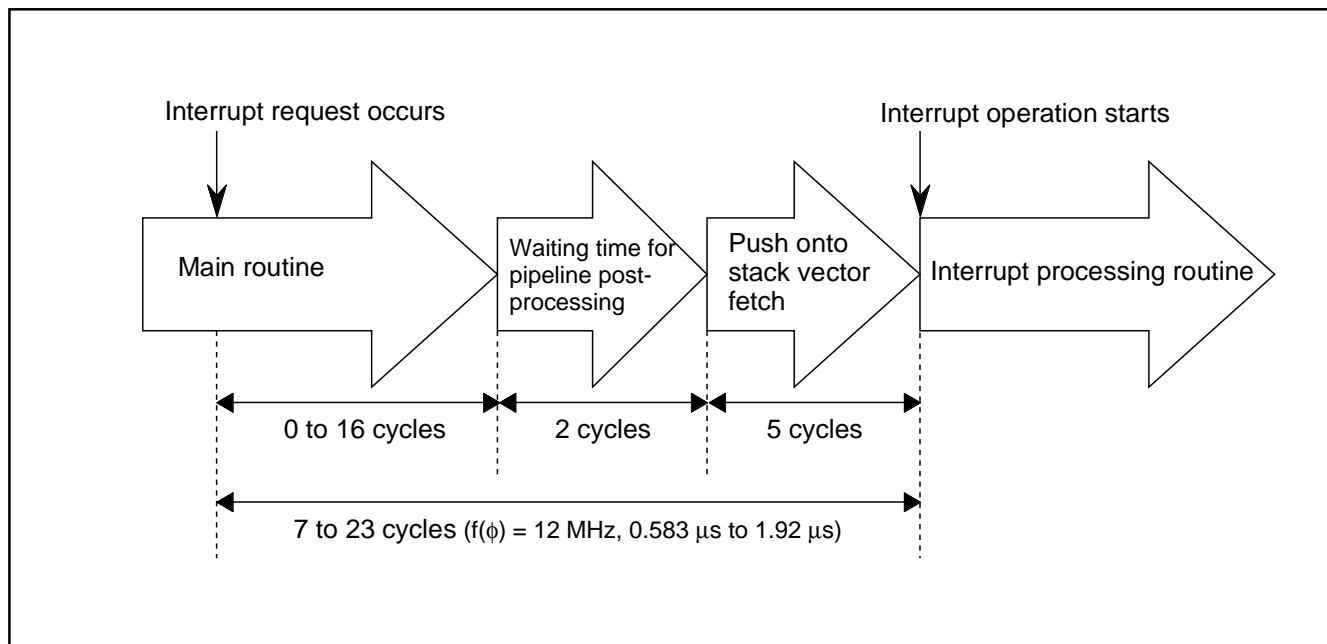


Fig. 105 Time up to execution of interrupt processing routine

THIS PAGE IS BLANK FOR REASONS OF LAYOUT.

# CHAPTER 2

---

## APPLICATION

- 2.1 I/O port
- 2.2 Timer
- 2.3 Serial I/O
- 2.4 UART
- 2.5 DMAC
- 2.6 USB
- 2.7 Frequency synthesizer
- 2.8 Master CPU bus interface
- 2.9 Special count source generator
- 2.10 External devices connection
- 2.11 Reset
- 2.12 Clock generating circuit

## 2.1 I/O port

This paragraph explains the registers setting method and the notes related to the I/O port.

### 2.1.1 Memory map

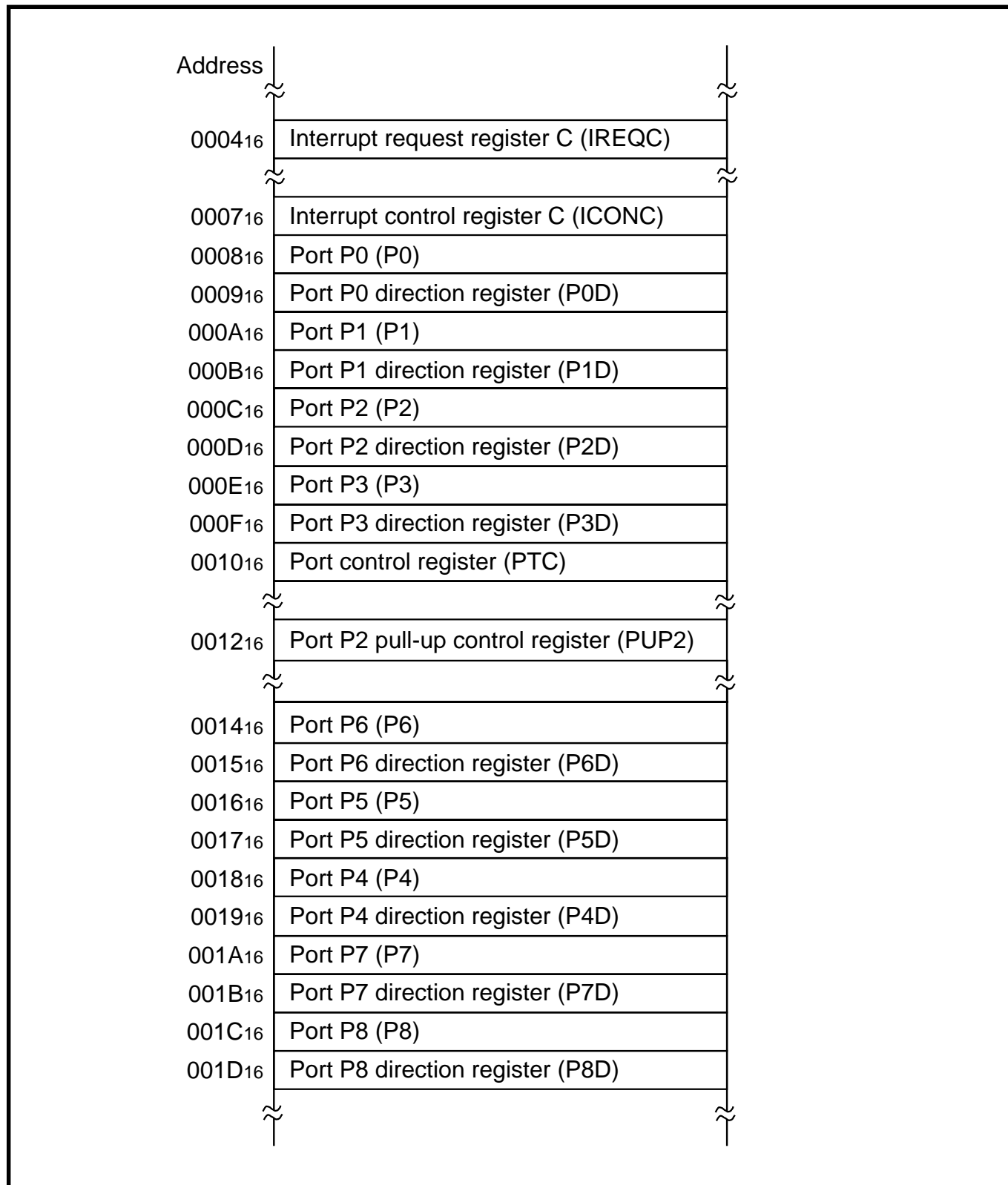


Fig. 2.1.1 Memory map of registers related to I/O port

## 2.1.2 Related registers

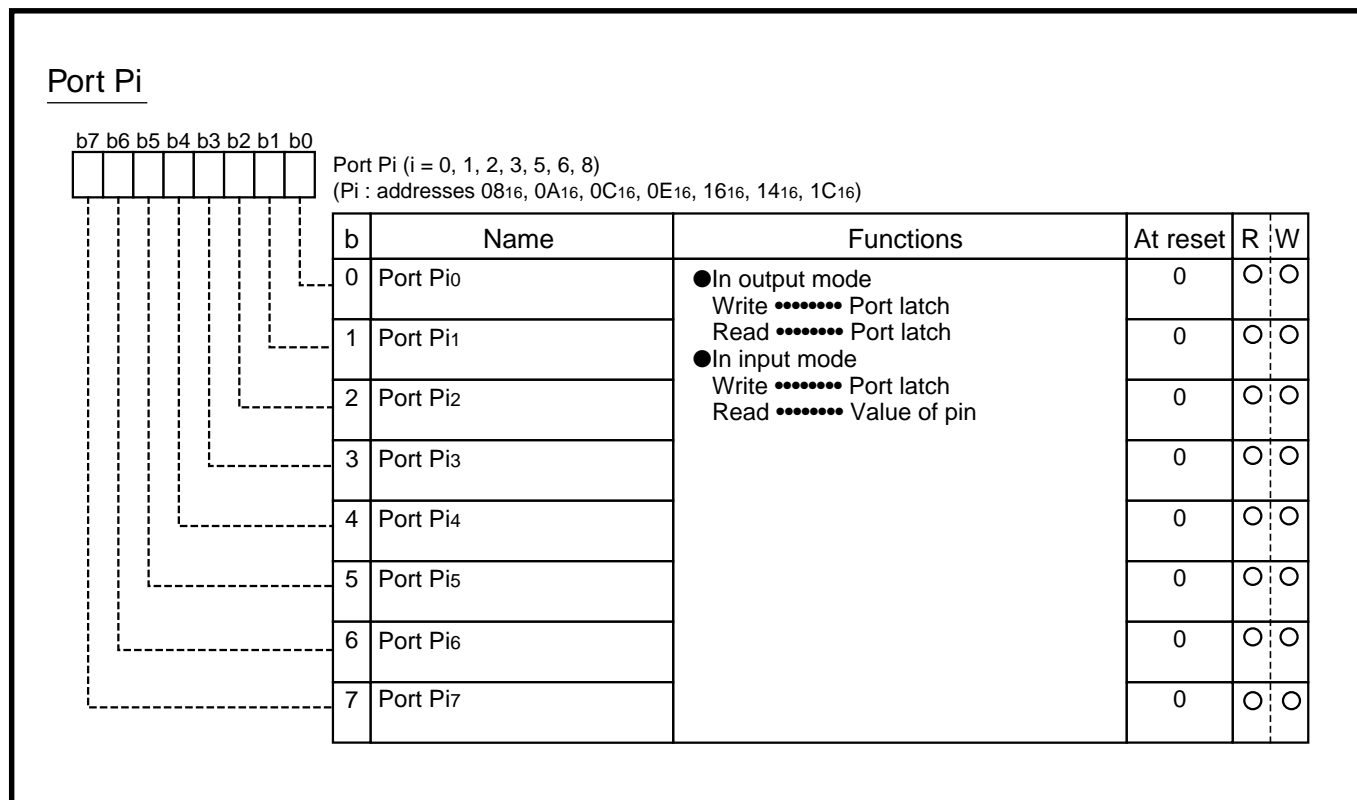


Fig. 2.1.2 Structure of Port Pi register

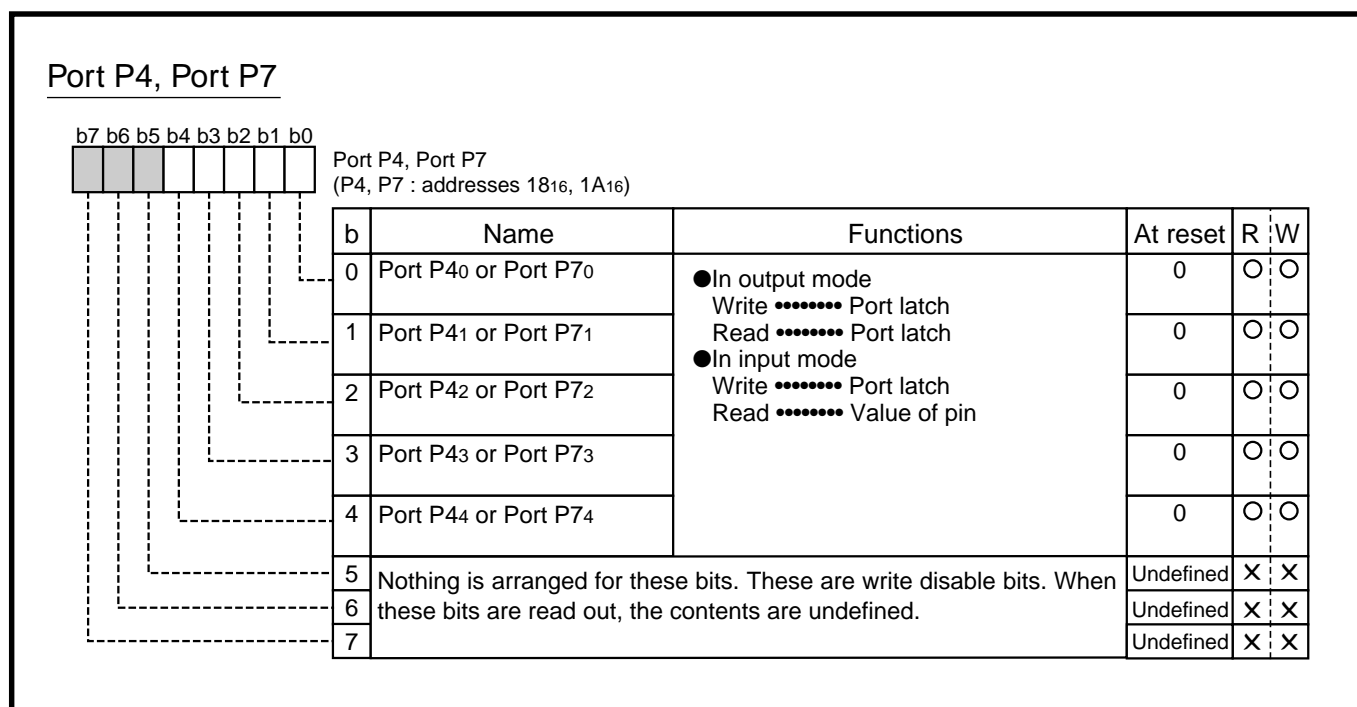


Fig. 2.1.3 Structure of Port P4, Port P7 registers



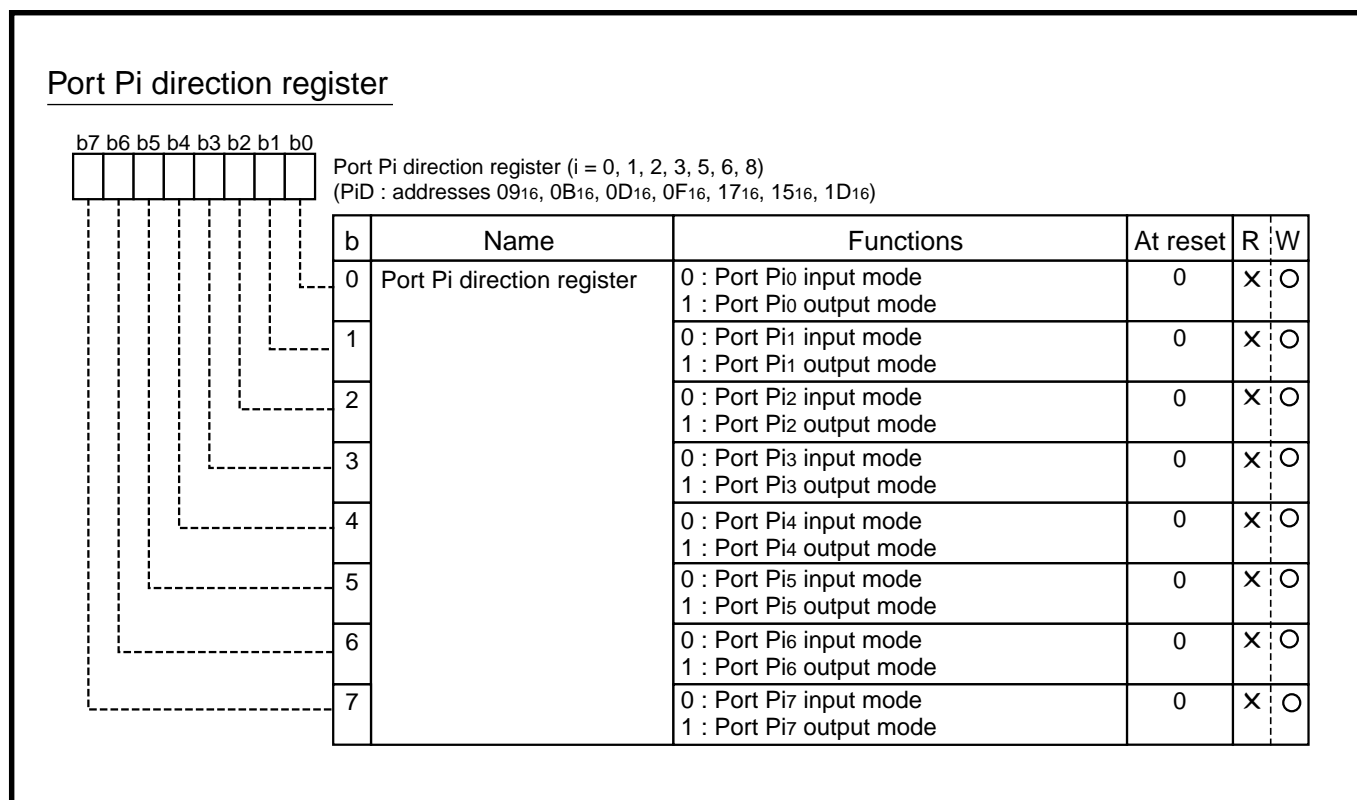
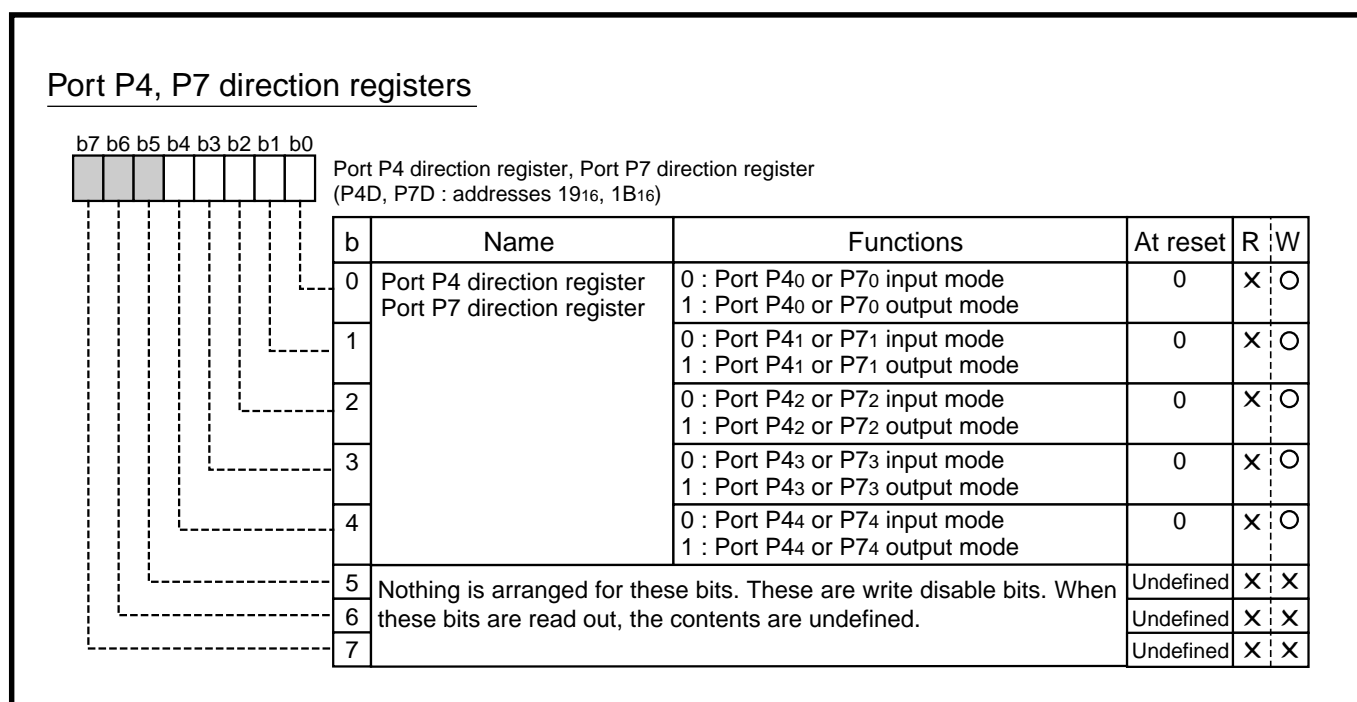
Fig. 2.1.4 Structure of Port Pi direction register ( $i = 0, 1, 2, 3, 5, 6, 8$ )

Fig. 2.1.5 Structure of Port P4 direction, Port P7 direction registers

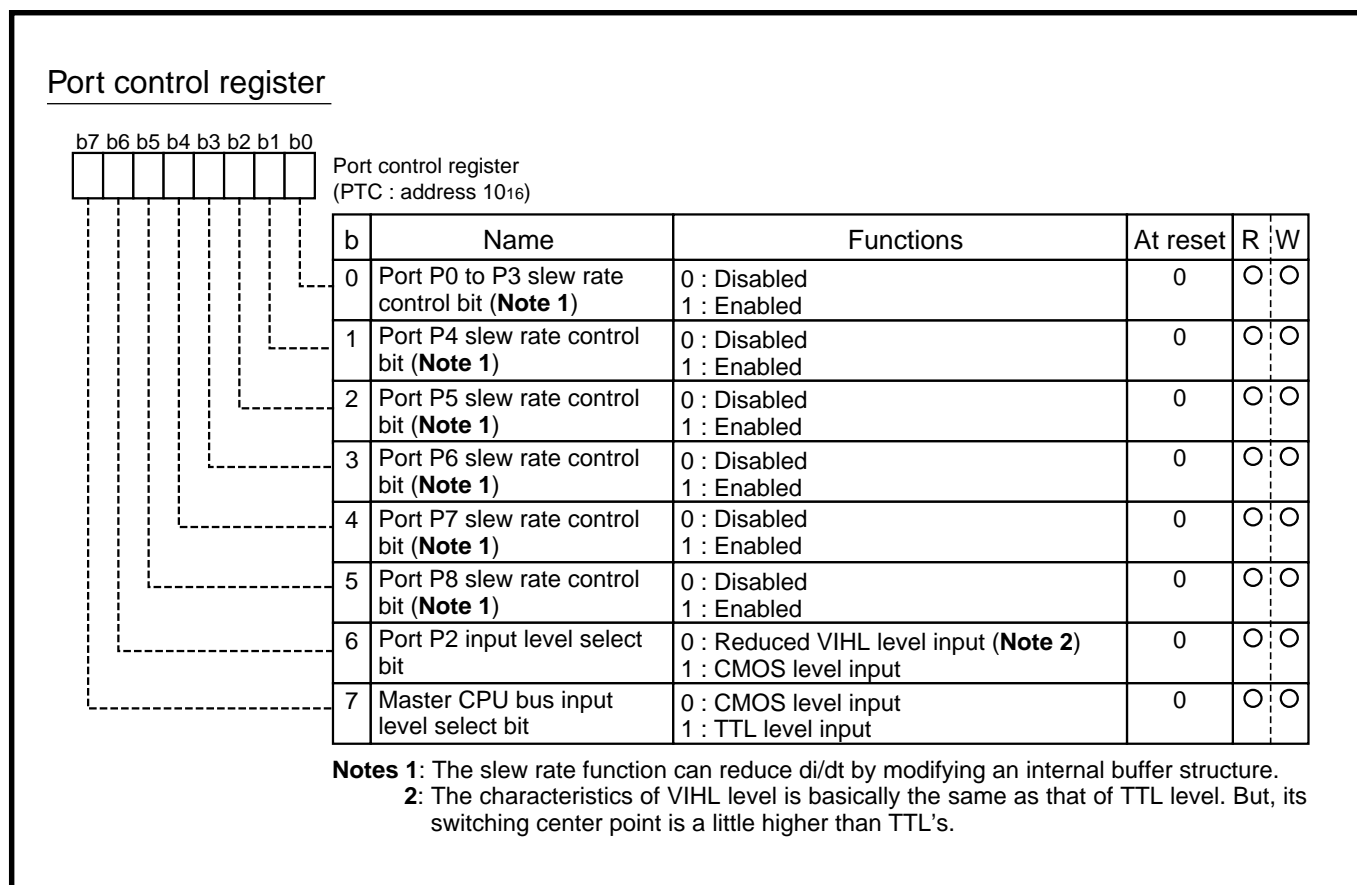


Fig. 2.1.6 Structure of Port control register

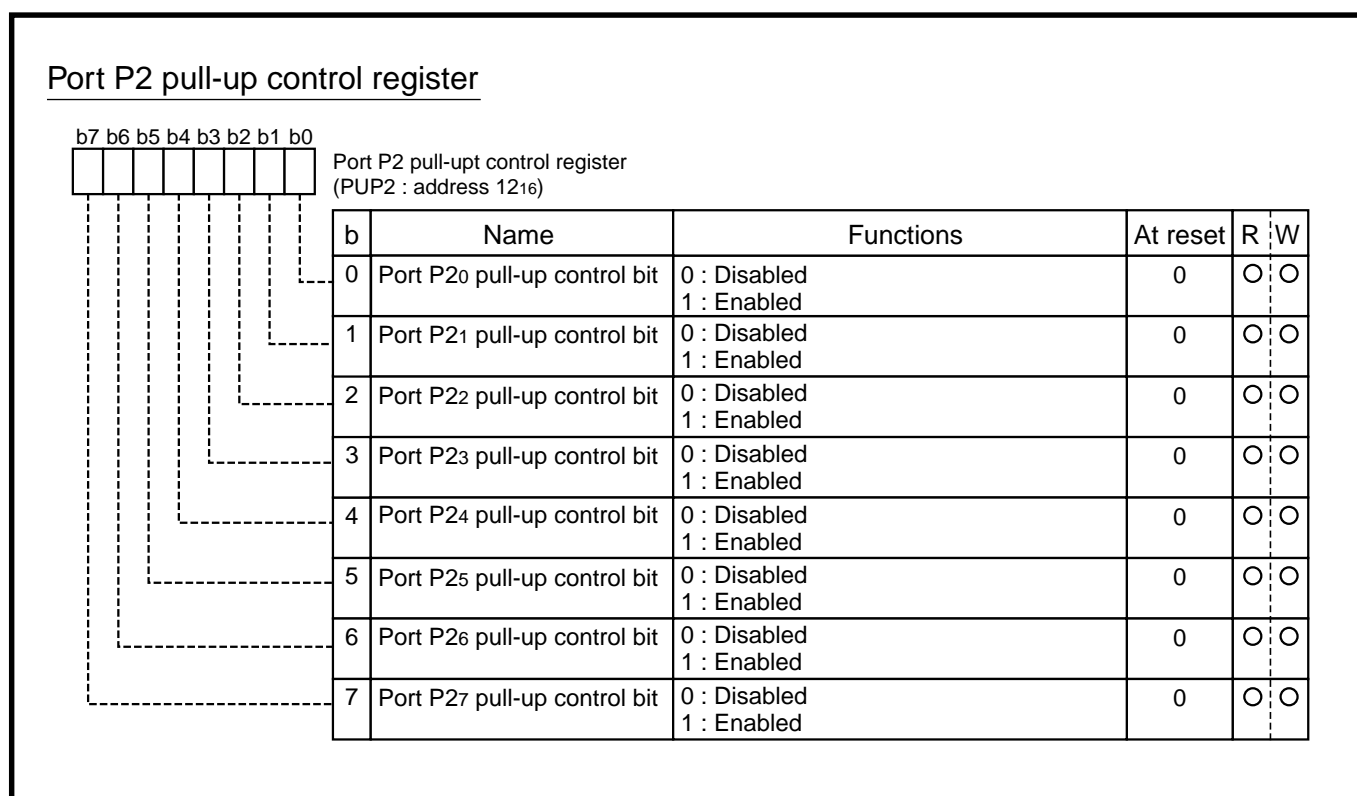


Fig. 2.1.7 Structure of Port P2 pull-up control register

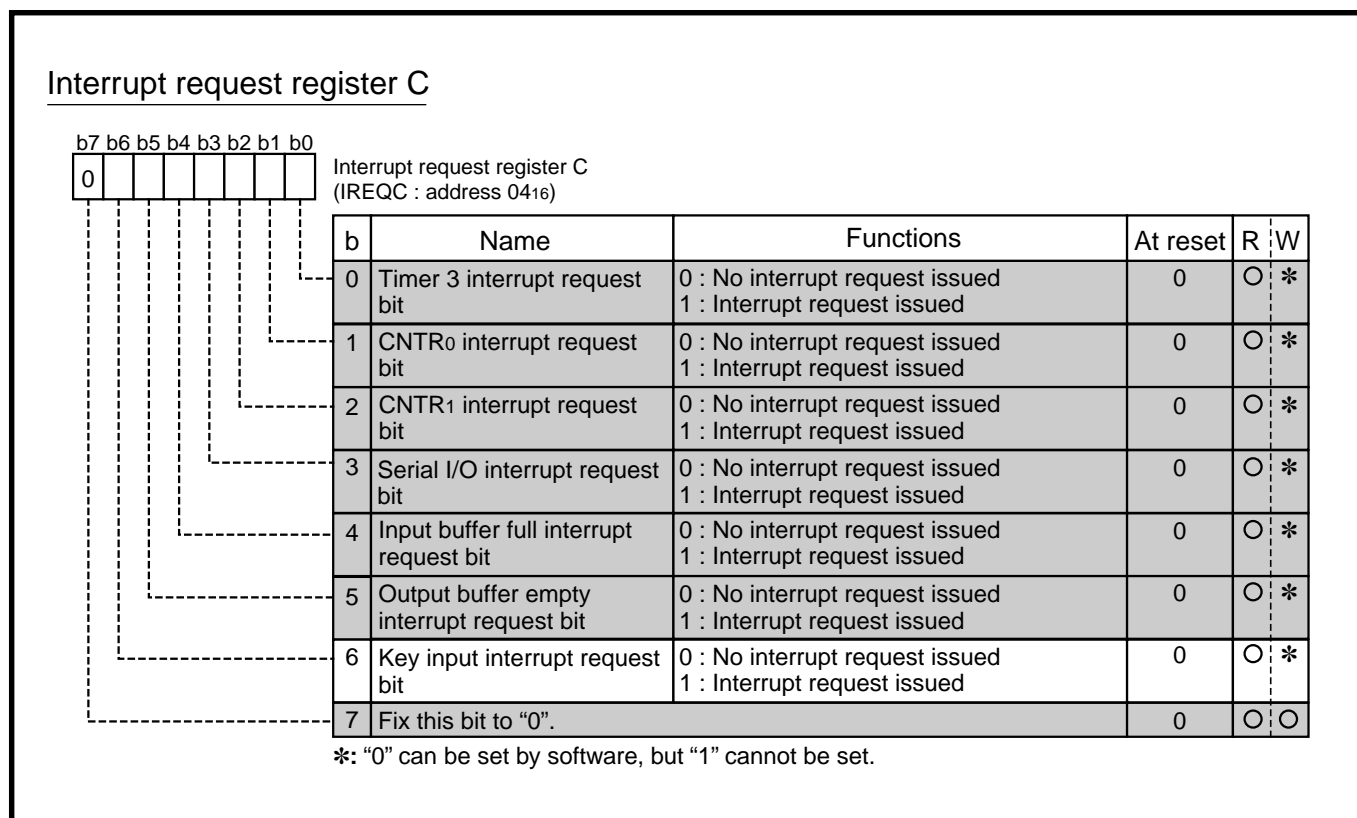


Fig. 2.1.8 Structure of Interrupt request register C

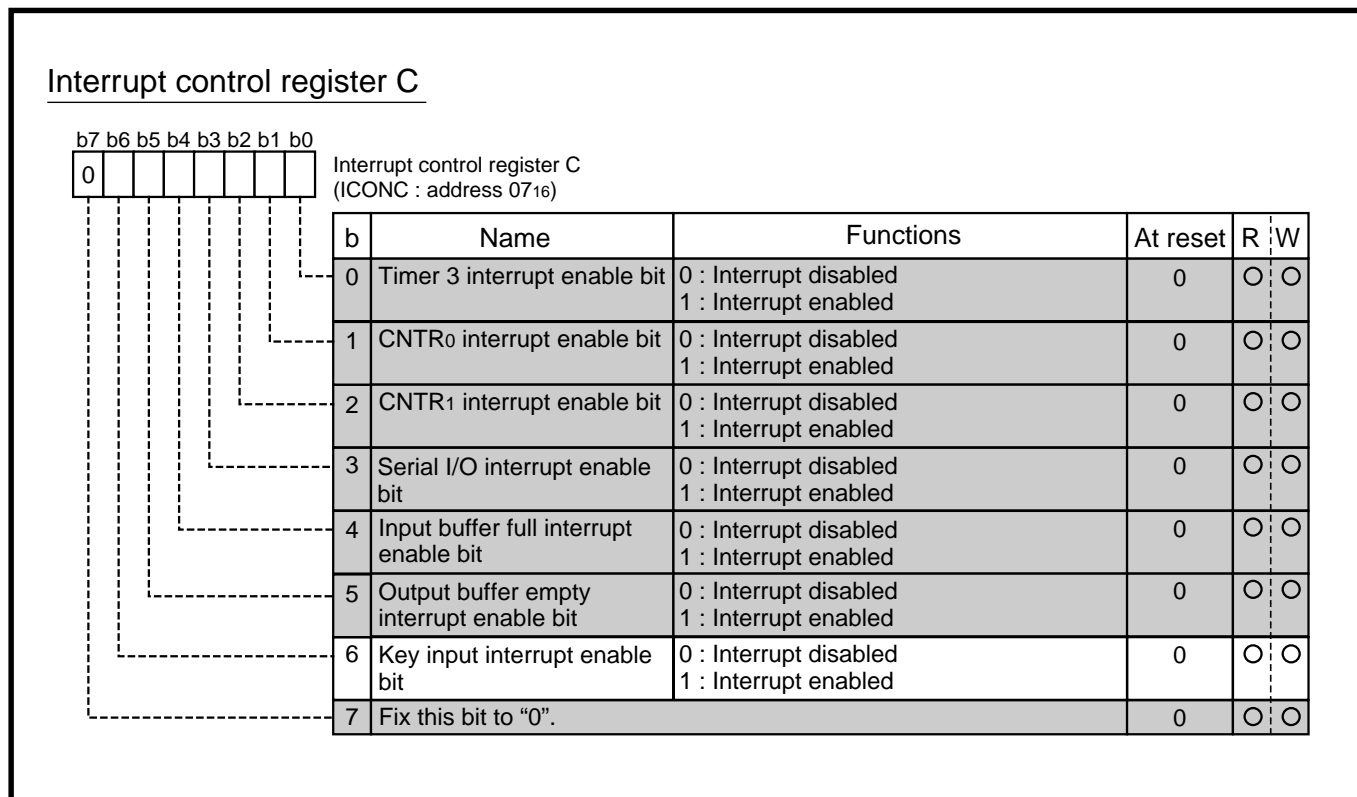
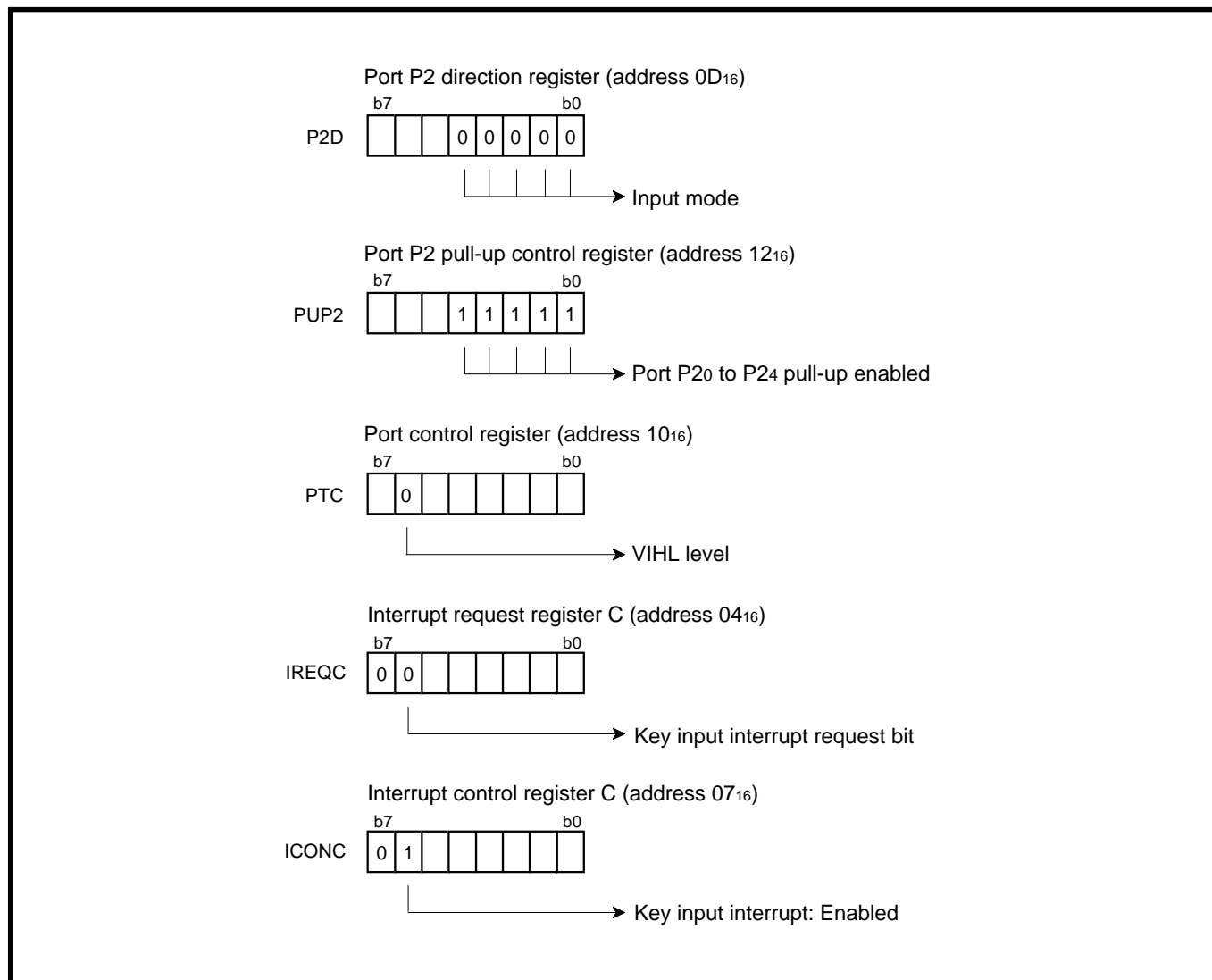


Fig. 2.1.9 Structure of Interrupt control register C

### 2.1.3 Key-on wake-up interrupt application example

**Outline :** Key-on wake-up is realized, using internal pull-up resistors.

Figure 2.1.10 shows the registers setting; Figure 2.1.11 shows a connection diagram; Figure 2.1.12 shows the control procedure.



**Fig. 2.1.10 Registers setting**

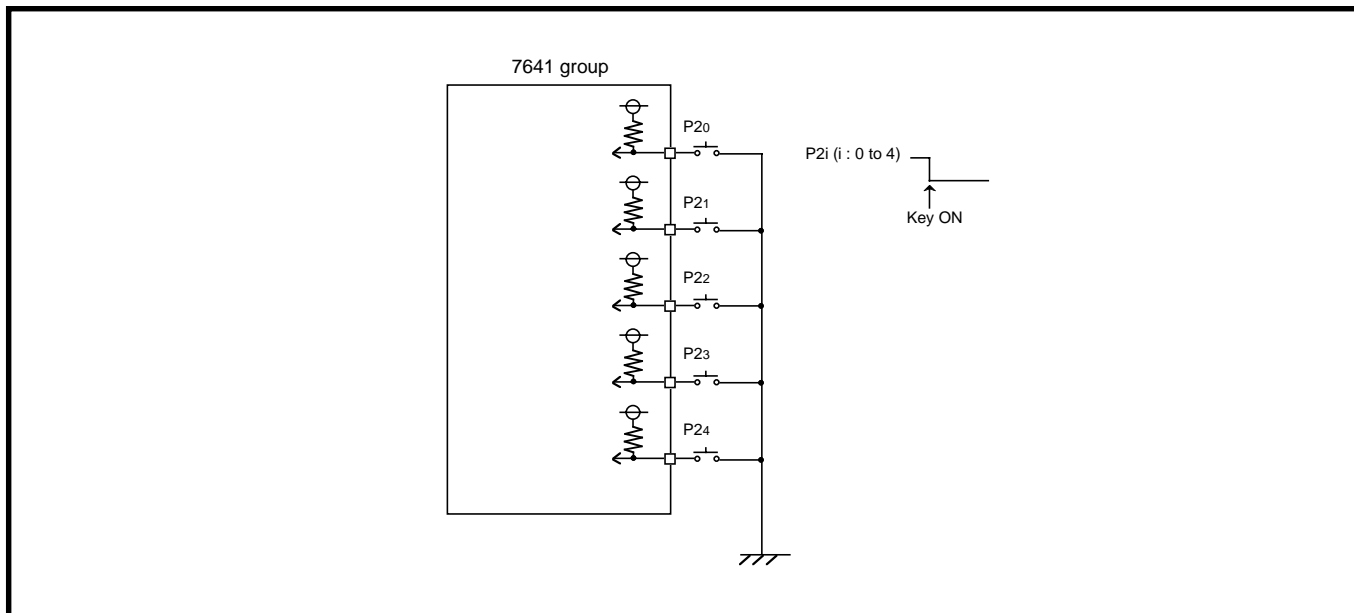


Fig. 2.1.11 Connection diagram

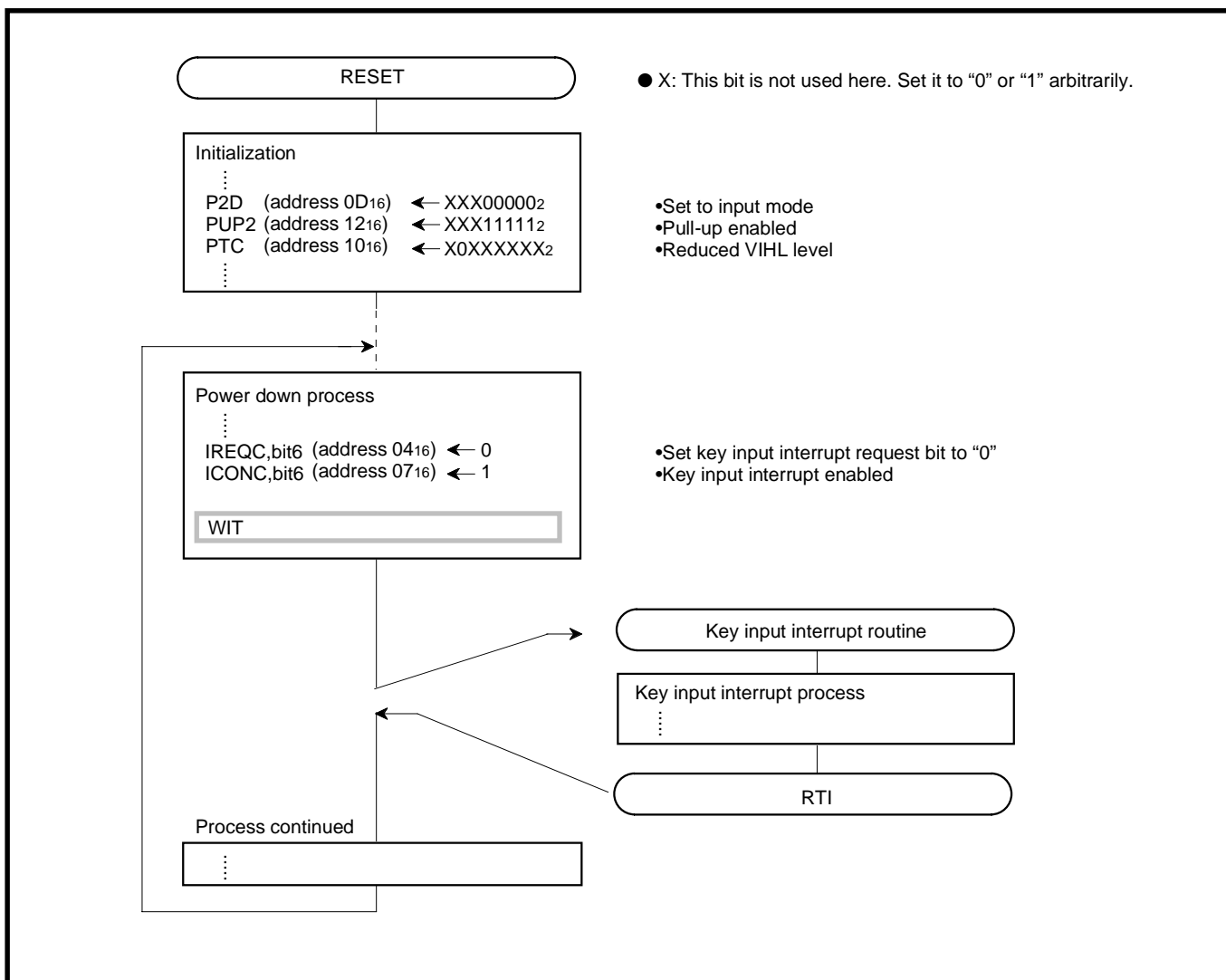


Fig. 2.1.12 Control procedure

### 2.1.4 Terminate unused pins

**Table 2.1.1 Termination of unused pins**

Pins/Ports name	Termination
P0, P1, P2, P3, P4, P5, P6, P7, P8	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Set to the input mode and connect each to V<sub>CC</sub> or V<sub>SS</sub> through a resistor of 1 k<math>\Omega</math> to 10 k<math>\Omega</math>.</li> <li>• Set to the output mode and open at “L” or “H” output state.</li> </ul>
HOLD, RDY	Connect to V <sub>CC</sub> through a resistor (pull-up).
CNV <sub>SS</sub>	Connect to V <sub>CC</sub> or V <sub>SS</sub> .
AV <sub>SS</sub>	Connect to V <sub>SS</sub> (GND).
AV <sub>CC</sub>	Connect to V <sub>CC</sub> .
X <sub>OUT</sub>	Open (only when using external clock)
USB D+ USB D-	Open
Ext. Cap.	Connect to V <sub>CC</sub> (DC-DC converter disabled) when the USB function is not used.
SOF	Open

### 2.1.5 Notes on I/O port

#### (1) Notes in standby state

In standby state\*1 for low-power dissipation, do not make input levels of an I/O port “undefined”. Pull-up (connect the port to VCC) or pull-down (connect the port to VSS) these ports through a resistor.

When determining a resistance value, note the following points:

- External circuit
- Variation of output levels during the ordinary operation

When using built-in pull-up resistor, note on varied current values:

- When setting as an input port : Fix its input level
- When setting as an output port : Prevent current from flowing out to external

#### ● Reason

The potential which is input to the input buffer in a microcomputer is unstable in the state that input levels of an I/O port are “undefined”. This may cause power source current.

\*1 standby state: stop mode by executing **STP** instruction  
wait mode by executing **WIT** instruction

#### (2) Modifying output data with bit managing instruction

When the port latch of an I/O port is modified with the bit managing instruction\*2, the value of the unspecified bit may be changed.

#### ● Reason

The bit managing instructions are read-modify-write form instructions for reading and writing data by a byte unit. Accordingly, when these instructions are executed on a bit of the port latch of an I/O port, the following is executed to all bits of the port latch.

- As for bit which is set for input port:  
The pin state is read in the CPU, and is written to this bit after bit managing.
- As for bit which is set for output port:  
The bit value is read in the CPU, and is written to this bit after bit managing.

Note the following:

- Even when a port which is set as an output port is changed for an input port, its port latch holds the output data.
- As for a bit of which is set for an input port, its value may be changed even when not specified with a bit managing instruction in case where the pin state differs from its port latch contents.

\*2 Bit managing instructions: **SEB** and **CLB** instructions

#### (3) Pull-up control

When using port P2, which includes a pull-up resistor, as an output port, its port pull-up control is invalidated, that is, pull-up cannot be enabled.

#### ● Reason

Pull-up/pull-down control is valid only when each direction register is set to the input mode.

## 2.1.6 Termination of unused pins

### (1) Terminate unused pins

#### ① I/O ports :

- Set the I/O ports for the input mode and connect them to VCC or VSS through each resistor of 1 k $\Omega$  to 10 k $\Omega$ .

Ports that permit the selecting of a built-in pull-up resistor can also use this resistor. Set the I/O ports for the output mode and open them at "L" or "H".

- When opening them in the output mode, the input mode of the initial status remains until the mode of the ports is switched over to the output mode by the program after reset. Thus, the potential at these pins is undefined and the power source current may increase in the input mode. With regard to an effects on the system, thoroughly perform system evaluation on the user side.
- Since the direction register setup may be changed because of a program runaway or noise, set direction registers by program periodically to increase the reliability of program.

#### ② The AVss pin when not using the A/D converter :

- When not using the A/D converter, handle a power source pin for the A/D converter, AVss pin as follows:

AVss: Connect to the Vss pin.

### (2) Termination remarks

#### ① I/O ports :

Do not open in the input mode.

##### ● Reason

- The power source current may increase depending on the first-stage circuit.
- An effect due to noise may be easily produced as compared with proper termination ② and shown on the above.

#### ② I/O ports :

When setting for the input mode, do not connect to VCC or VSS directly.

##### ● Reason

If the direction register setup changes for the output mode because of a program runaway or noise, a short circuit may occur between a port and VCC (or VSS).

#### ③ I/O ports :

When setting for the input mode, do not connect multiple ports in a lump to VCC or VSS through a resistor.

##### ● Reason

If the direction register setup changes for the output mode because of a program runaway or noise, a short circuit may occur between ports.

- At the termination of unused pins, perform wiring at the shortest possible distance (20 mm or less) from microcomputer pins.



## 2.2 Timer

This paragraph explains the registers setting method and the notes related to the timers.

### 2.2.1 Memory map

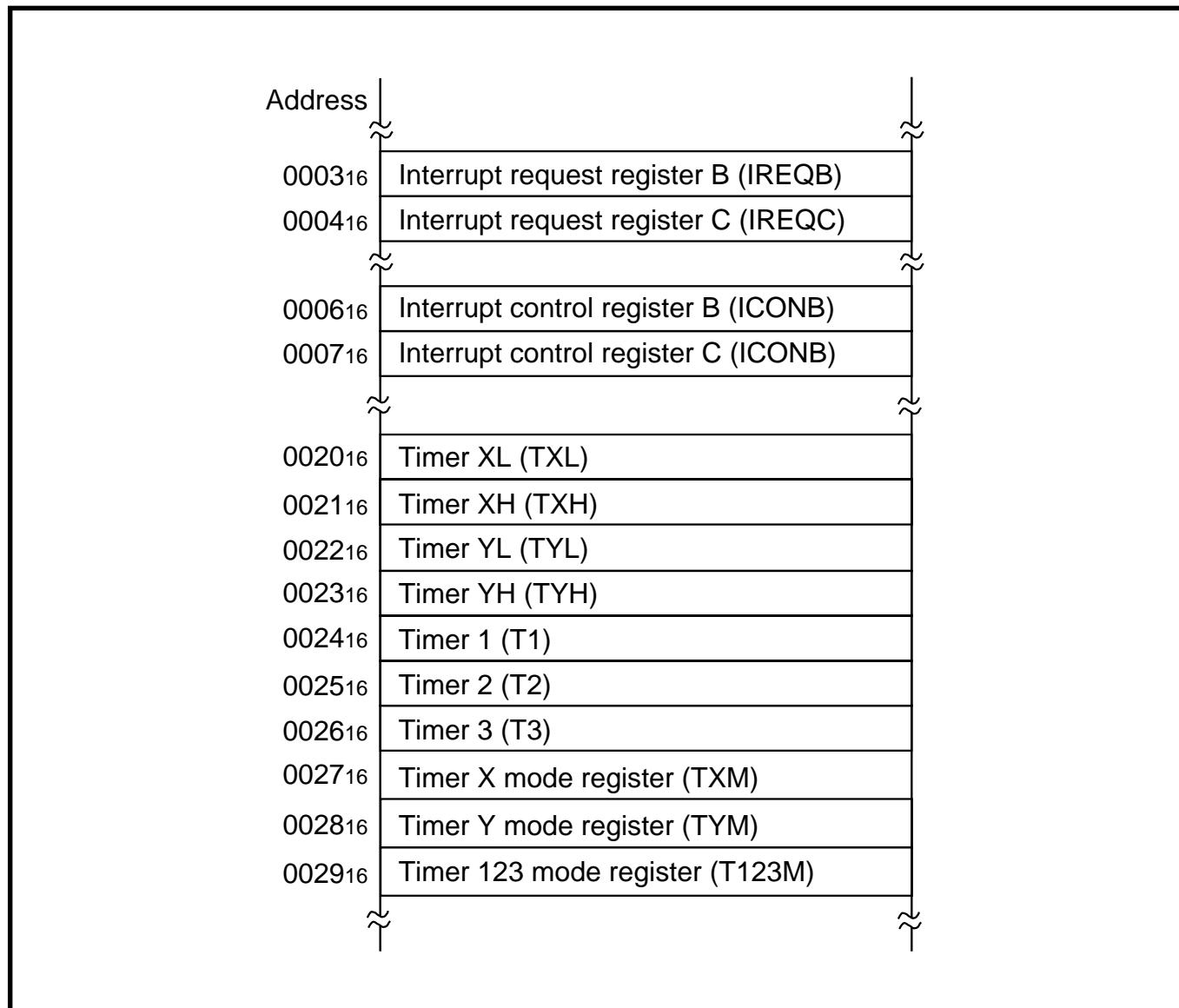


Fig. 2.2.1 Memory map of registers relevant to timers

## 2.2.2 Related registers

### (1) 8-bit timer

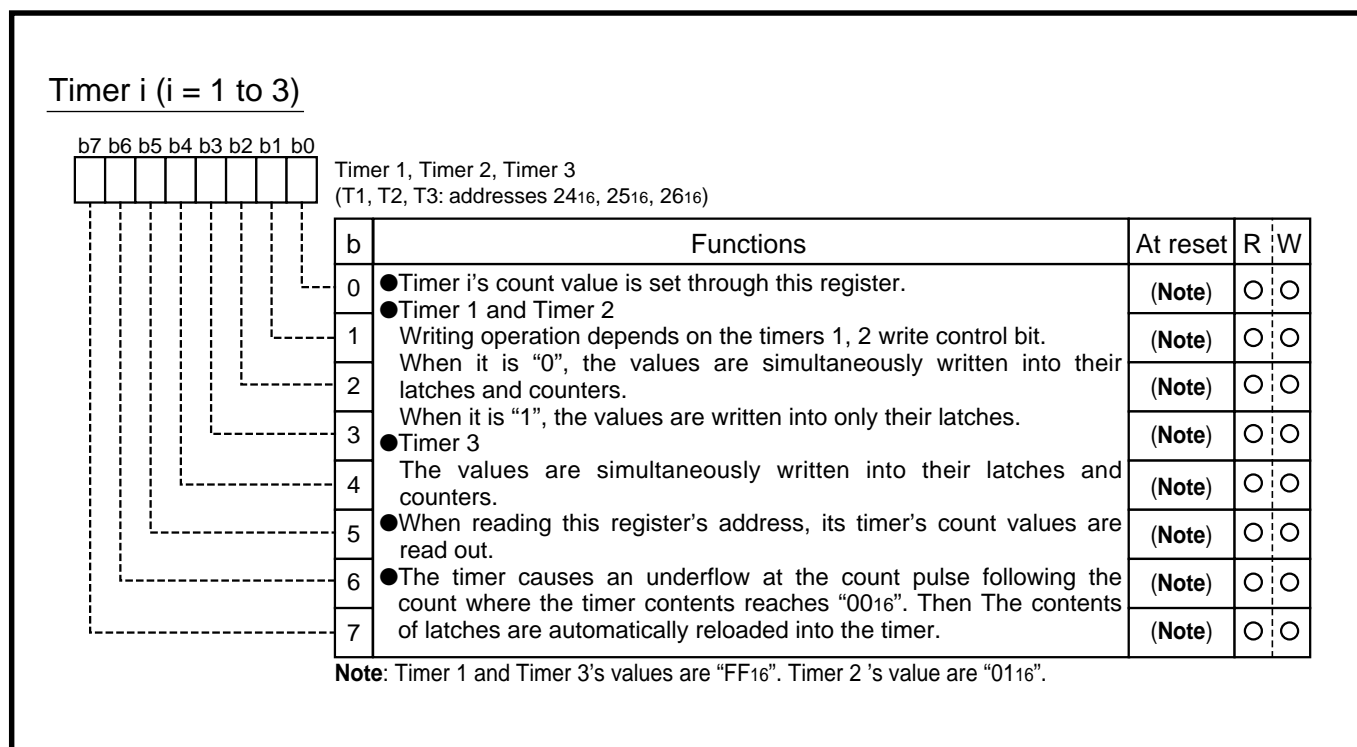


Fig. 2.2.2 Structure of Timer  $i$  ( $i=1, 2, 3$ )

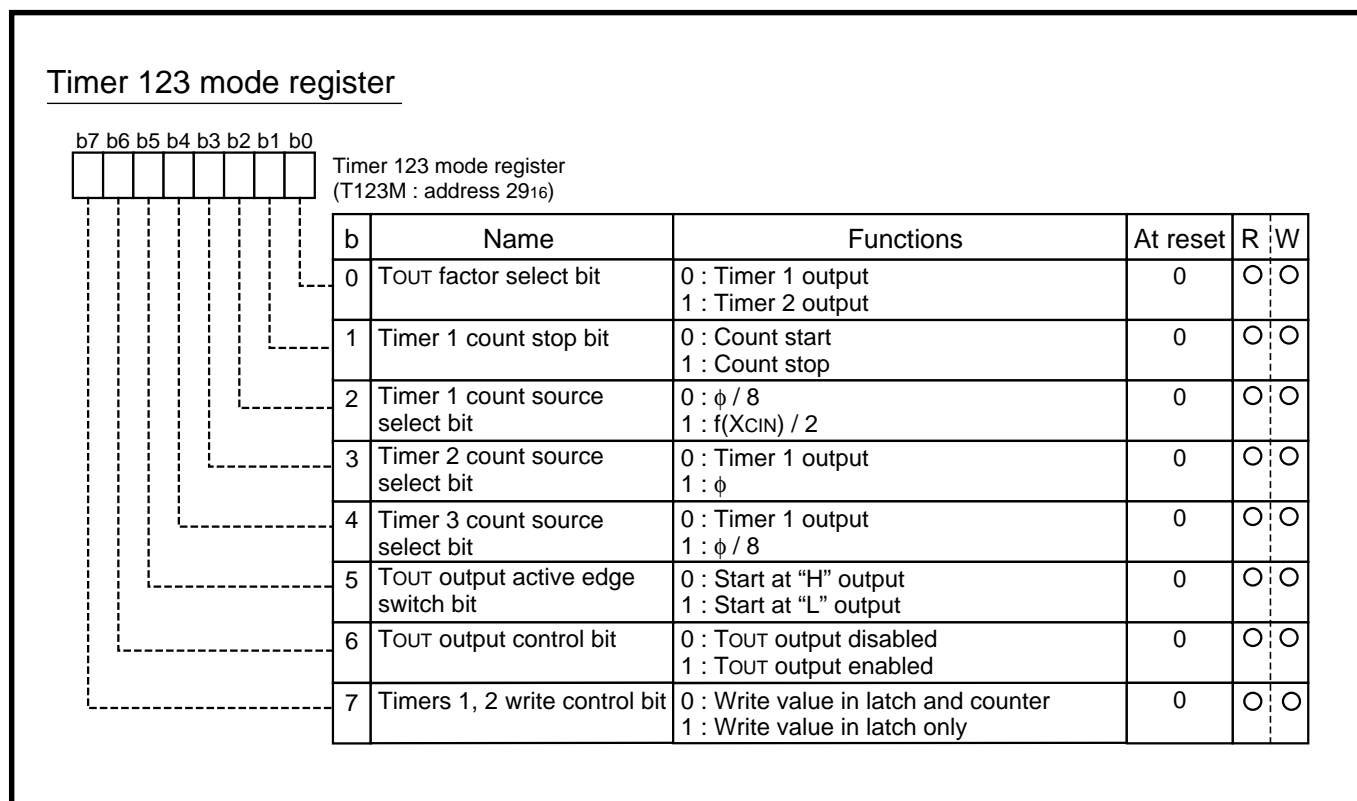


Fig. 2.2.3 Structure of Timer 123 mode register

## (2) 16-bit timer

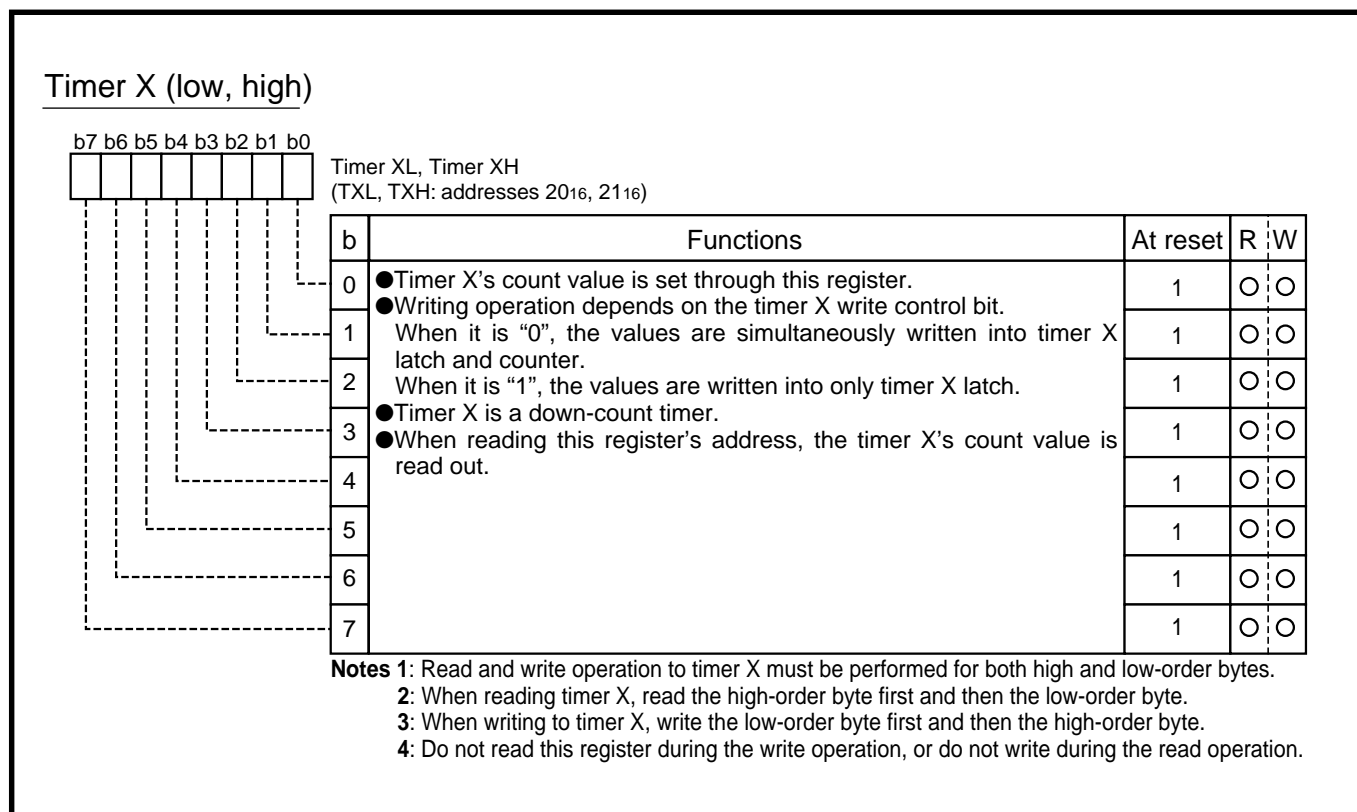


Fig. 2.2.4 Structure of Timer X (low-order, high-order)

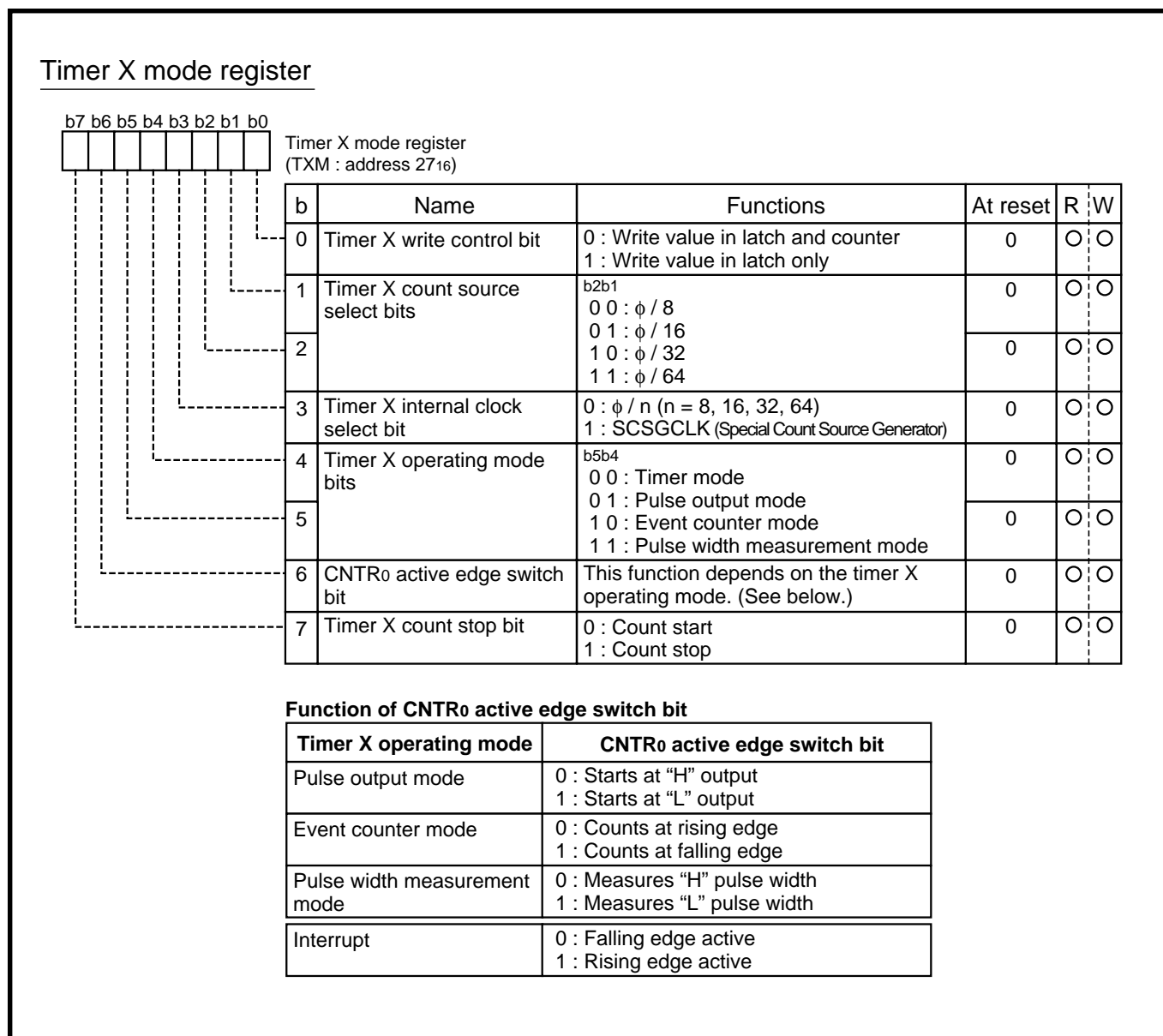


Fig. 2.2.5 Structure of Timer X mode register

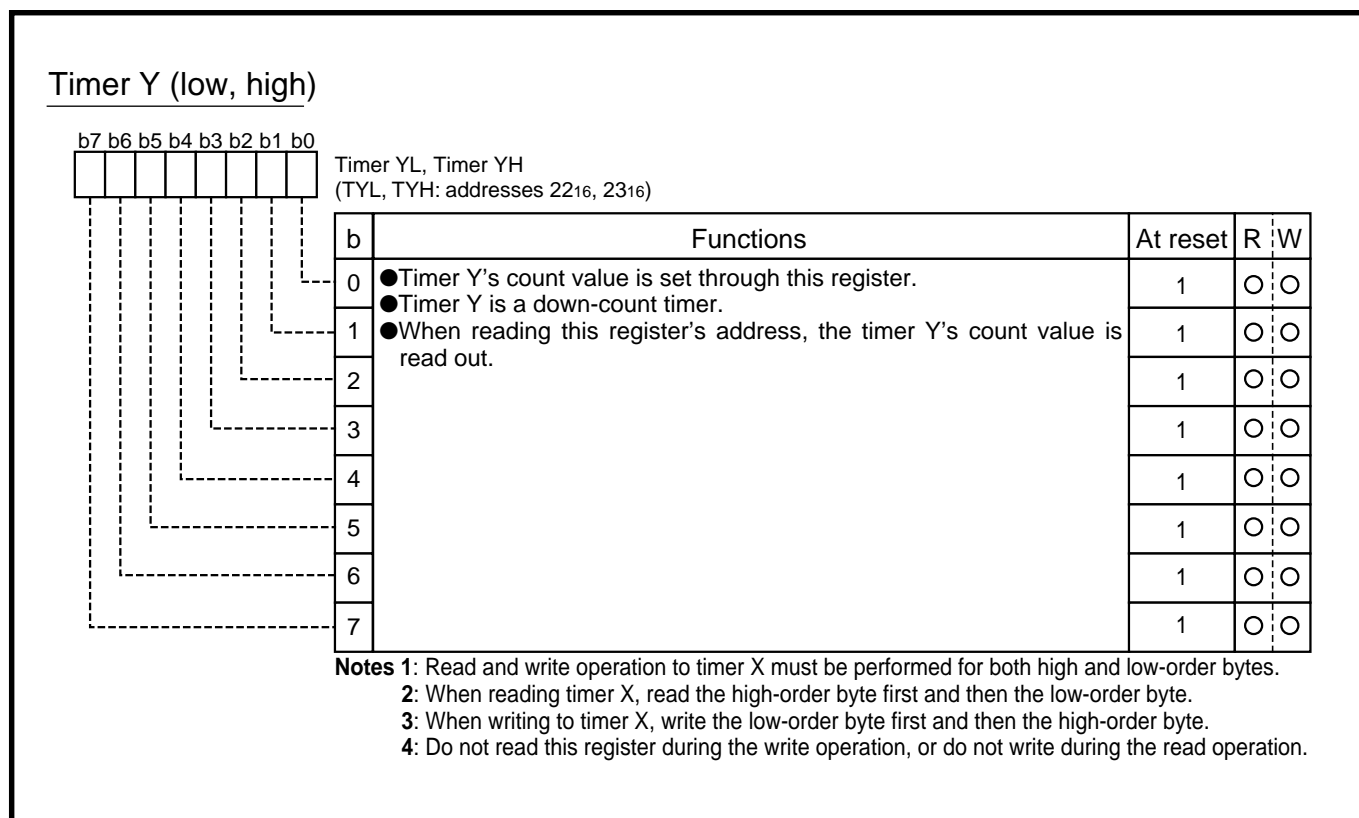


Fig. 2.2.6 Structure of Timer Y (low-order, high-order)

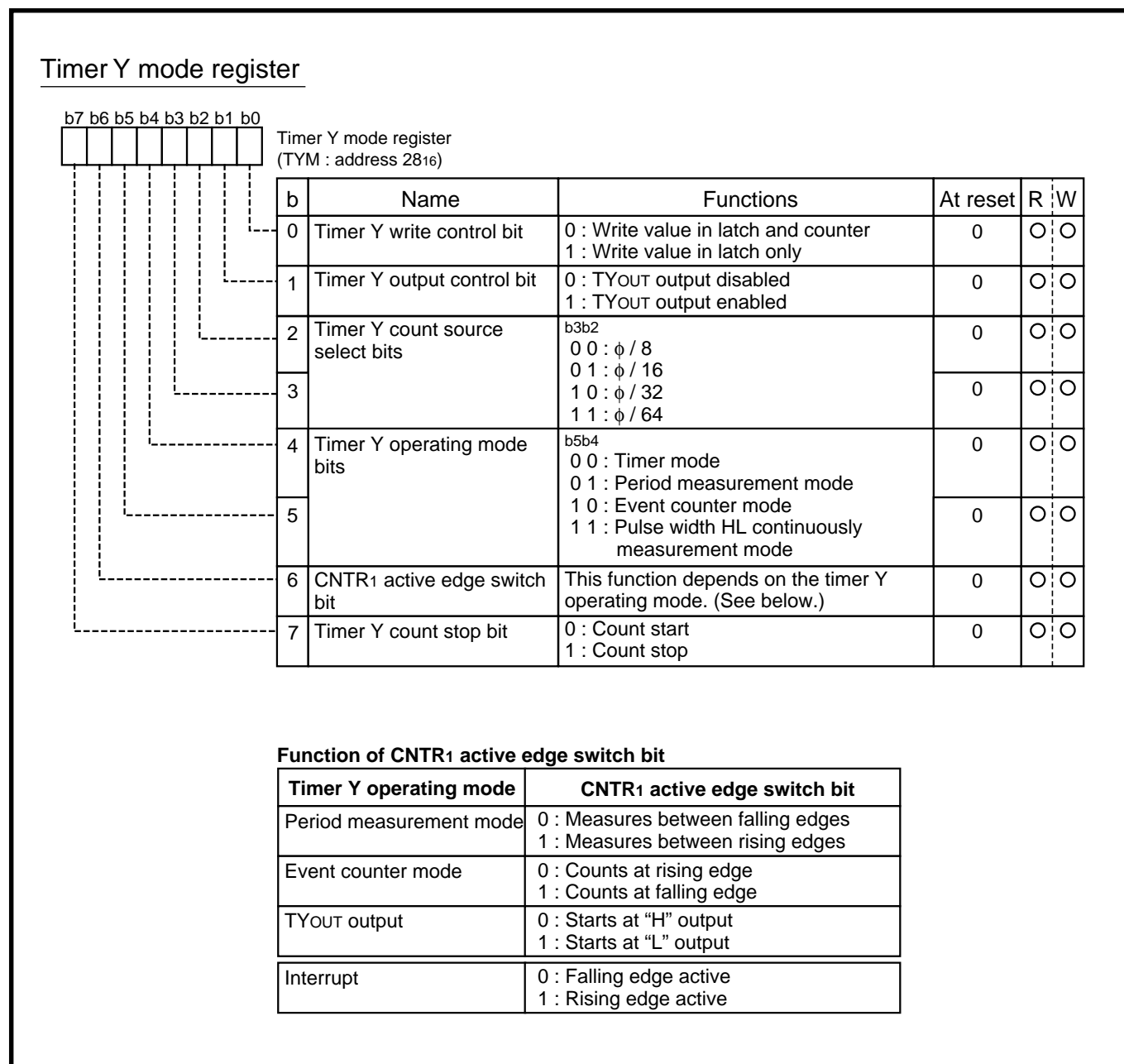


Fig. 2.2.7 Structure of Timer Y mode register

## (3) 8-bit timer, 16-bit timer

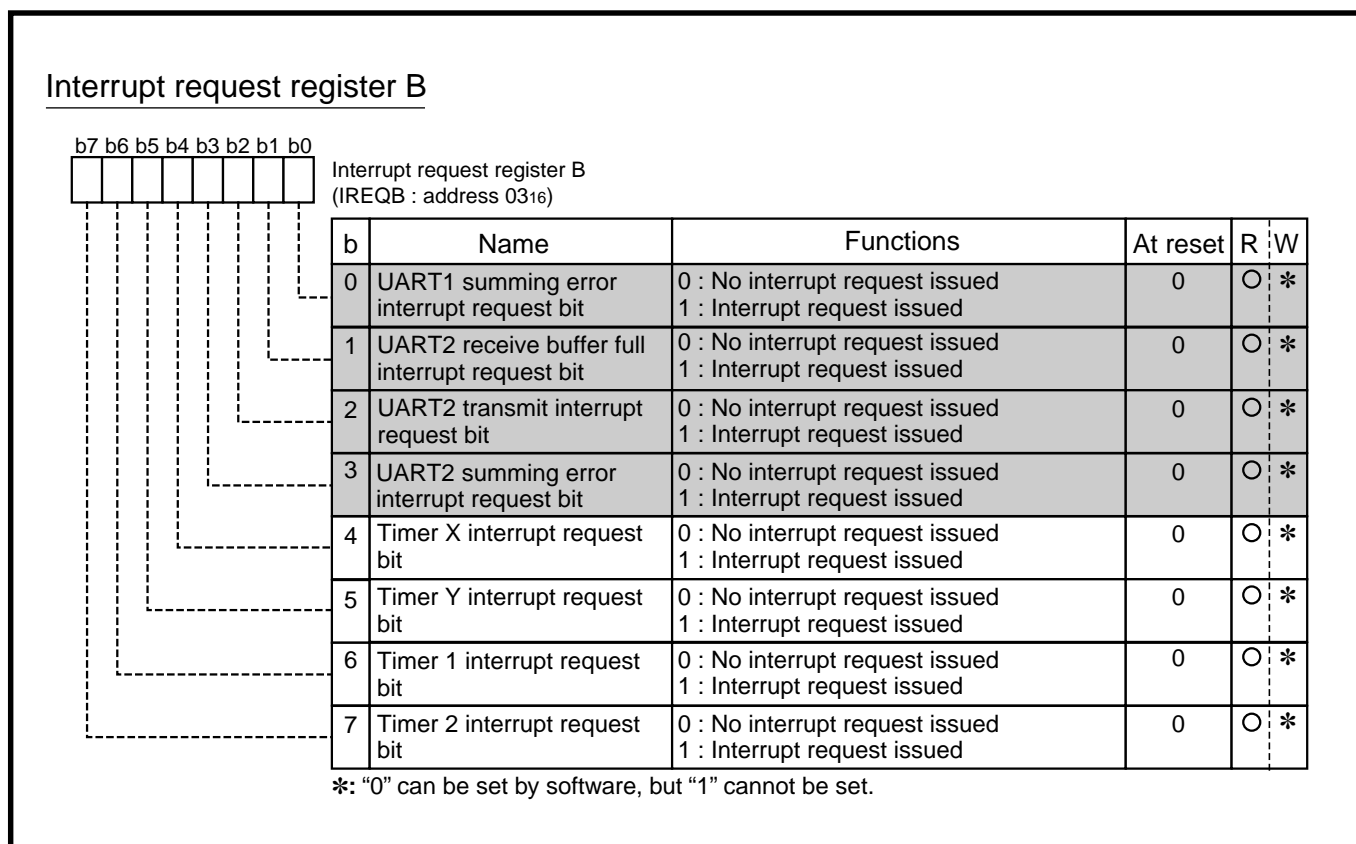


Fig. 2.2.8 Structure of Interrupt request register B

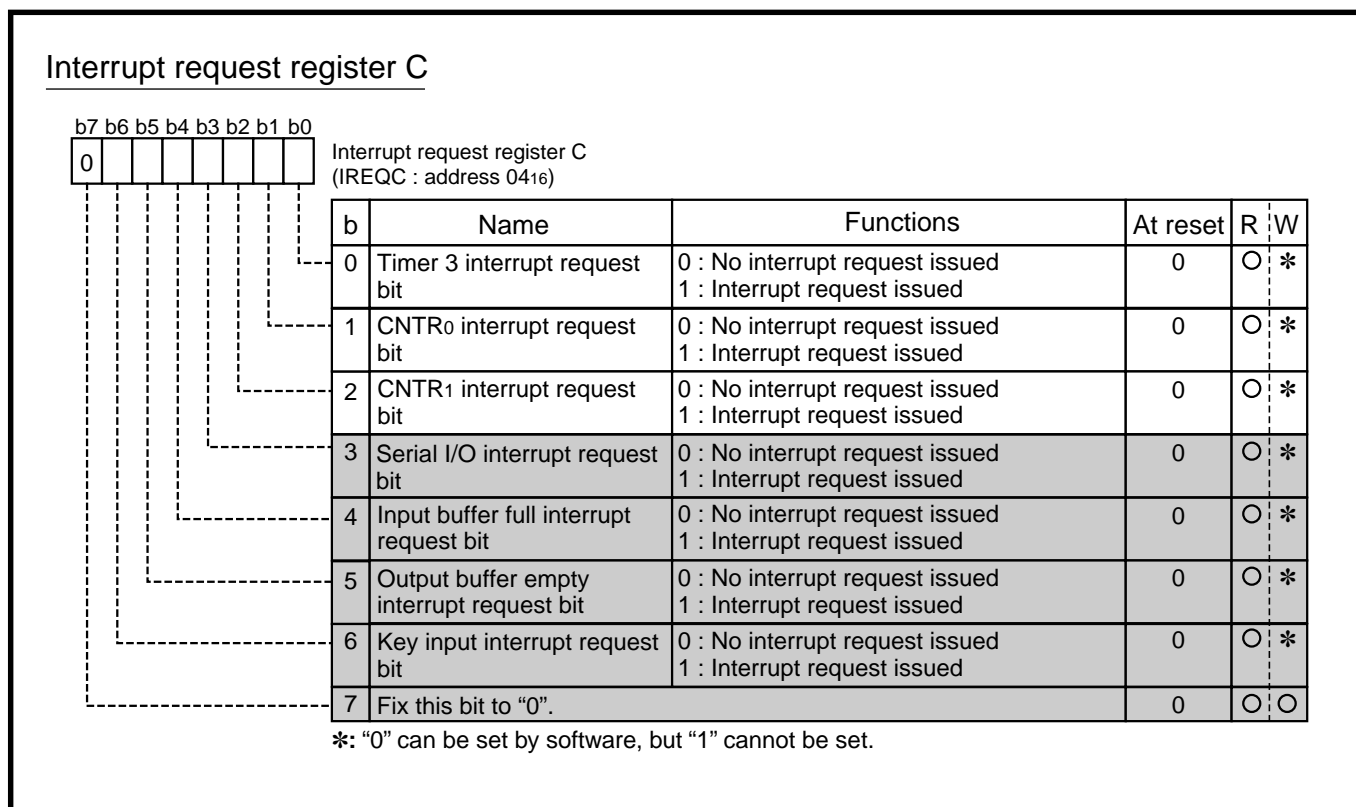


Fig. 2.2.9 Structure of Interrupt request register C

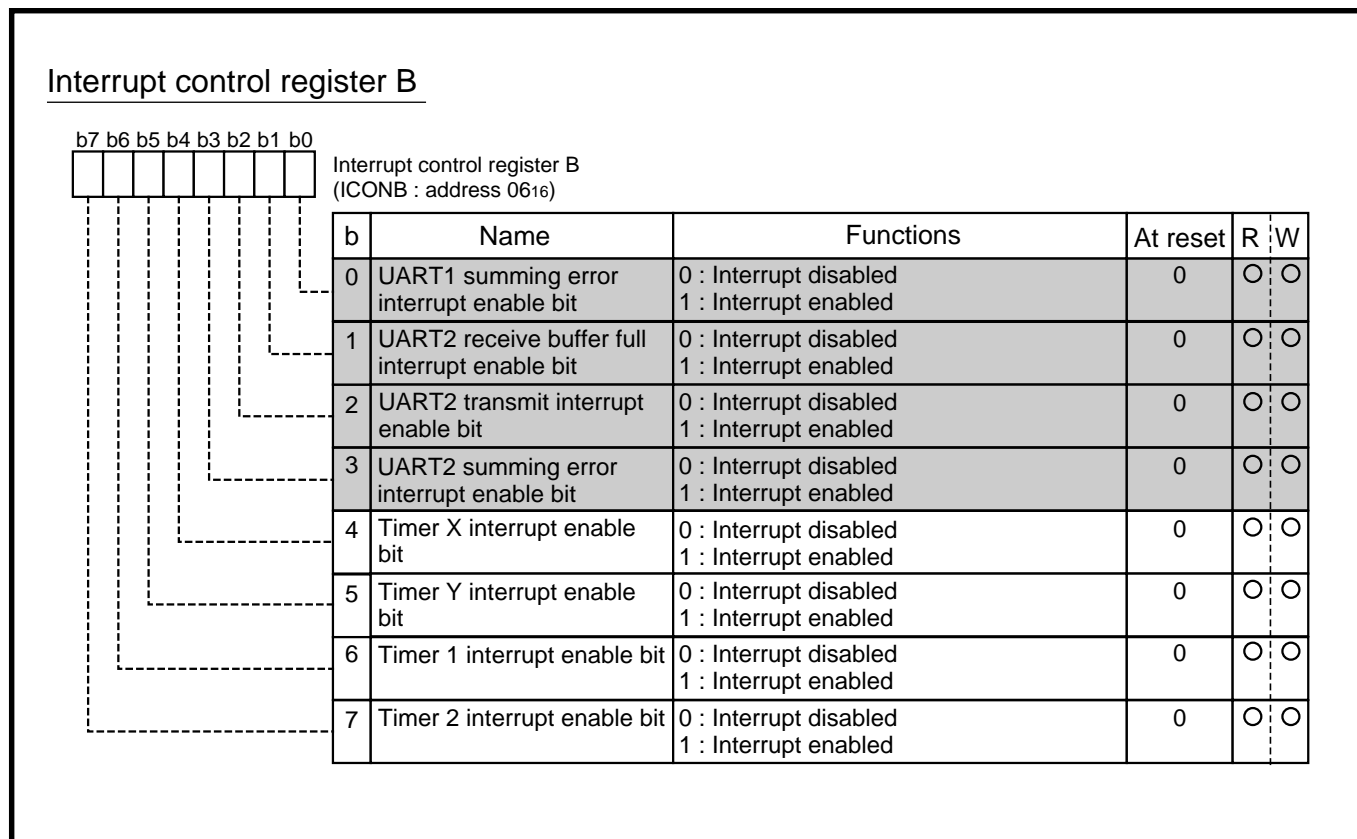


Fig. 2.2.10 Structure of Interrupt control register B

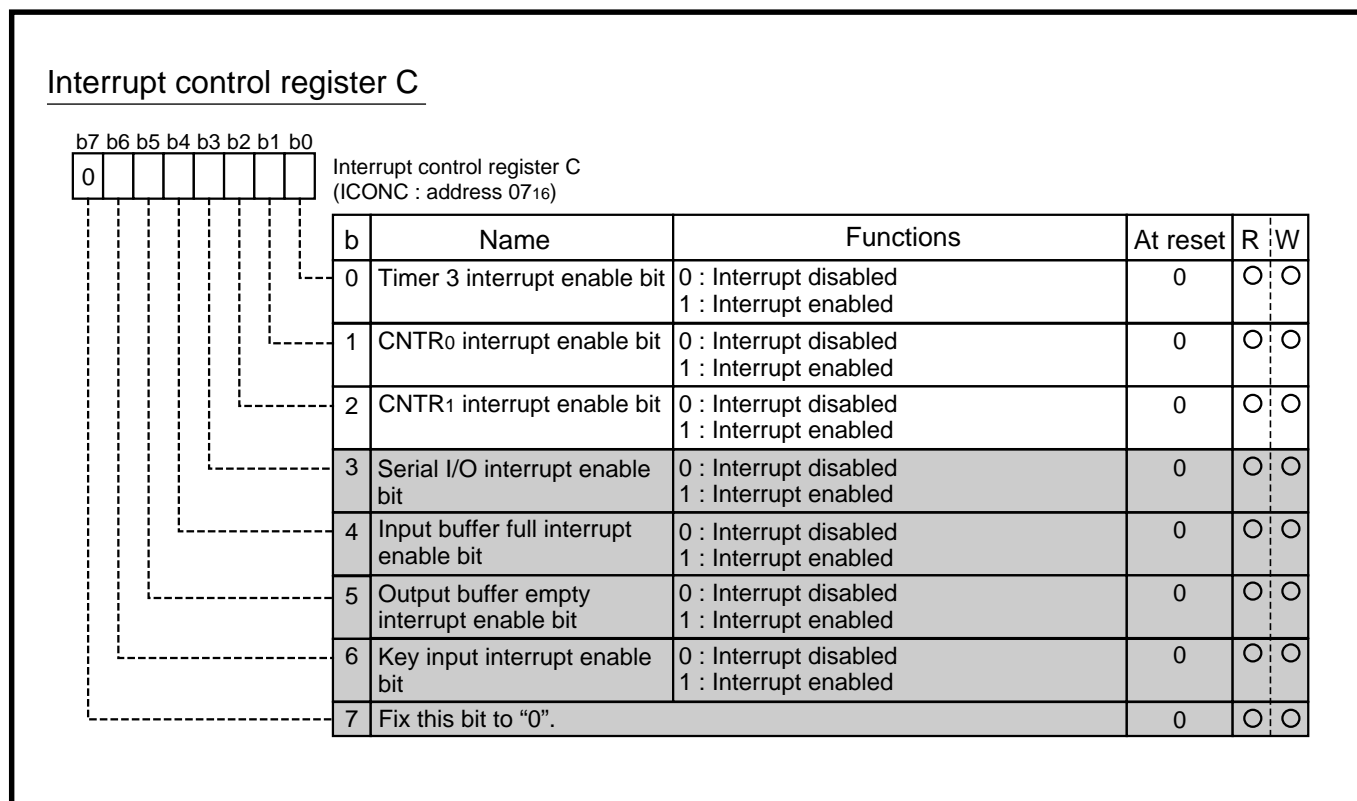


Fig. 2.2.11 Structure of Interrupt control register C



### 2.2.3 Timer application examples

#### (1) Basic functions and uses

**[Function 1] Control of event interval (Timer 1 to Timer 3, Timer X and Y: Timer mode)**

When a certain time, by setting a count value to each timer, has passed, the timer interrupt request occurs.

<Use>

- Generating of an output signal timing
- Generating of a wait time

**[Function 2] Control of cyclic operation (Timer 1 to Timer 3, Timer X and Y: Timer mode)**

The value of the timer latch is automatically written to the corresponding timer each time the timer underflows, and each timer interrupt request occurs in cycles.

<Use>

- Generating of cyclic interrupts
- Clock function (measurement of 1 s); see "(2) Timer application example 1"
- Control of a main routine cycle

**[Function 3] Output of rectangular waveform**

(Timer 1, Timer 2, Timer X: Pulse output mode; Timer Y: T<sub>YOUT</sub> output)

The output levels of the T<sub>OUT</sub>, CNTR<sub>0</sub> and CNTR<sub>1</sub> pins are inverted each time the timer underflows.

<Use>

- Piezoelectric buzzer output; see "(3) Timer application example 2"
- Generating of the remote control carrier waveforms

**[Function 4] Count of external pulses (Timer X, Timer Y: Event counter mode)**

External pulses input to the CNTR<sub>0</sub> pin and CNTR<sub>1</sub> pin are respectively counted as the timer count source (in the event counter mode).

<Use>

- Frequency measurement; see "(4) Timer application example 3"
- Division of external pulses
- Generating of interrupts due to a cycle using external pulses as the count source; count of a reel pulse

**[Function 5] Measurement of external pulse width 1 (Timer X: Pulse width measurement mode)**

The "H" or "L" level width of external pulses input to CNTR<sub>0</sub> pin is measured.

<Use>

- Measurement of external pulse frequency (measurement of pulse width of FG pulse\* for a motor); see "(5) Timer application example 4"
  - Measurement of external pulse duty (when the frequency is fixed)
- FG pulse\*: Pulse used for detecting the motor speed to control the motor speed.

**[Function 6] Measurement of external pulse width 2 (Timer Y: Period measurement mode)**

The external pulse width input to CNTR<sub>1</sub> pin is measured.

<Use>

- Measurement of phase control signal; see "(6) Timer application example 5"

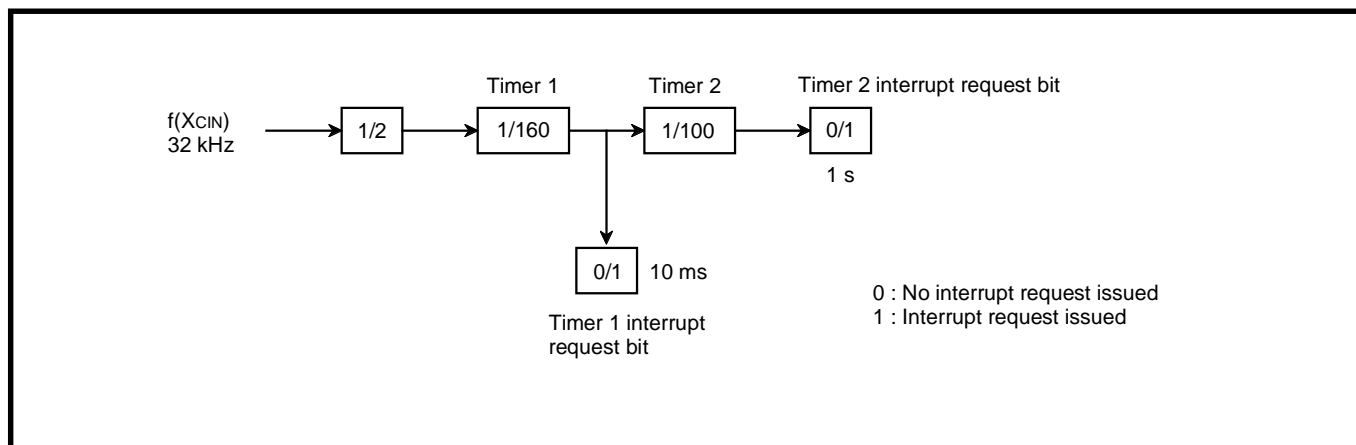
**(2) Timer application example 1: Clock function (measurement of 1 s)**

**Outline:** The input clock is divided by the timer so that the clock can count up at 1 s intervals.

**Specifications:** •The clock  $f(X_{CIN}) = 32 \text{ kHz}$  is divided by the timer.

- The timer 2 interrupt request bit is checked in main routine, and if the interrupt request is issued, the clock is counted up.
- The timer 1 interrupt occurs every 10 ms to execute processing of other interrupts.

Figure 2.2.12 shows the timers connection and setting of division ratios; Figure 2.2.13 shows the related registers setting; Figure 2.2.14 shows the control procedure.



**Fig. 2.2.12 Timers connection and setting of division ratios**

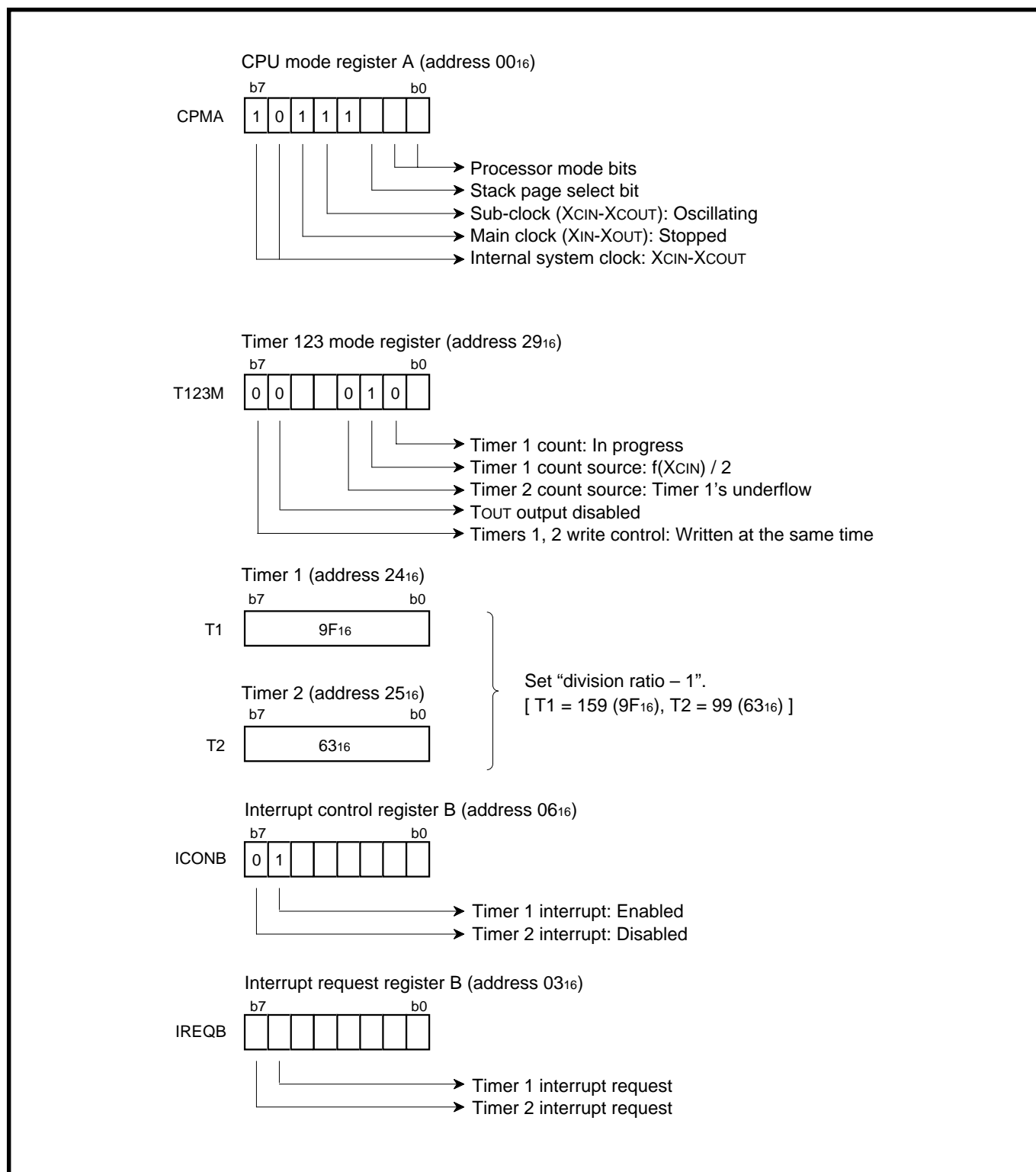


Fig. 2.2.13 Related registers setting

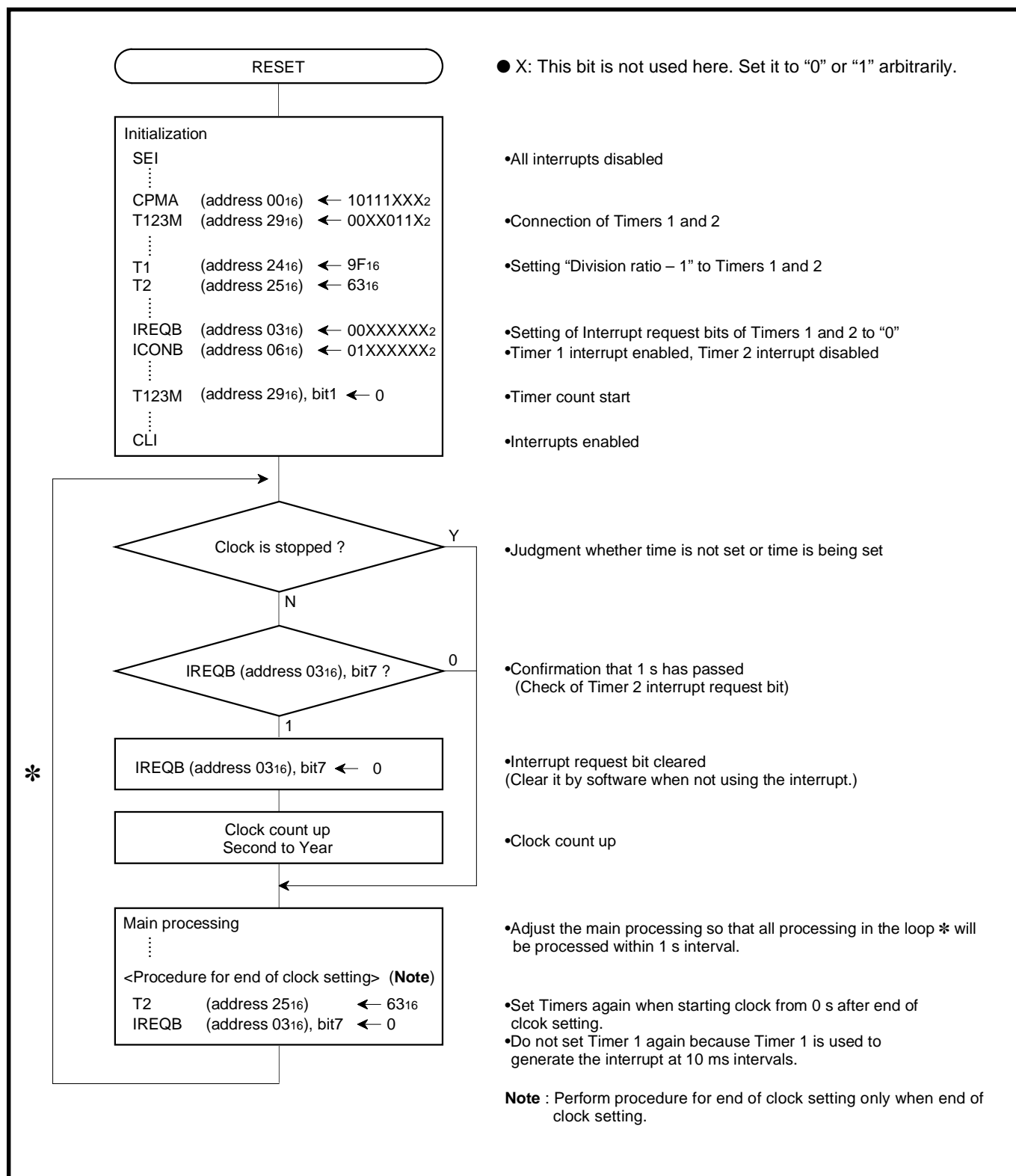


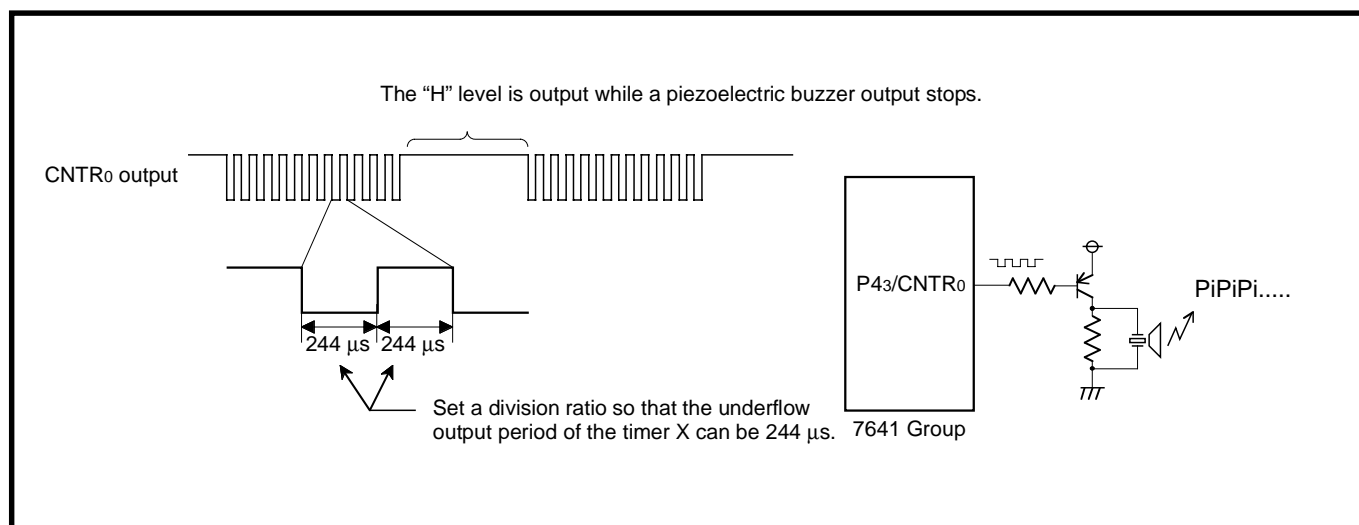
Fig. 2.2.14 Control procedure

**(3) Timer application example 2: Piezoelectric buzzer output**

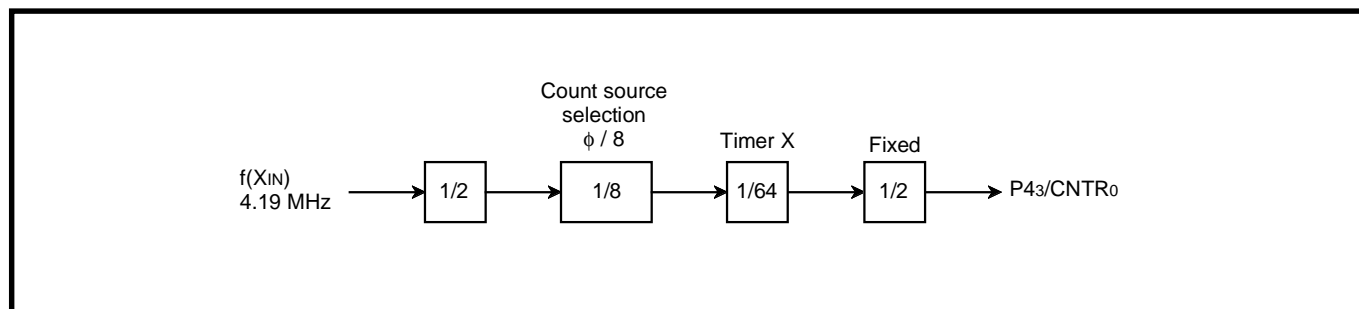
**Outline:** The rectangular waveform output function of the timer is applied for a piezoelectric buzzer output.

- Specifications:**
- The rectangular waveform, dividing the clock  $f(X_{IN}) = 4.19 \text{ MHz}$  ( $2^{22} \text{ Hz}$ ) into about 2 kHz (2048 Hz), is output from the P4<sub>3</sub>/CNTR<sub>0</sub> pin.
  - The level of the P4<sub>3</sub>/CNTR<sub>0</sub> pin is fixed to “H” while a piezoelectric buzzer output stops.

Figure 2.2.15 shows a peripheral circuit example, and Figure 2.2.16 shows the timers connection and setting of division ratios. Figure 2.2.17 shows the related registers setting, and Figure 2.2.18 shows the control procedure.



**Fig. 2.2.15 Peripheral circuit example**



**Fig. 2.2.16 Timers connection and setting of division ratios**

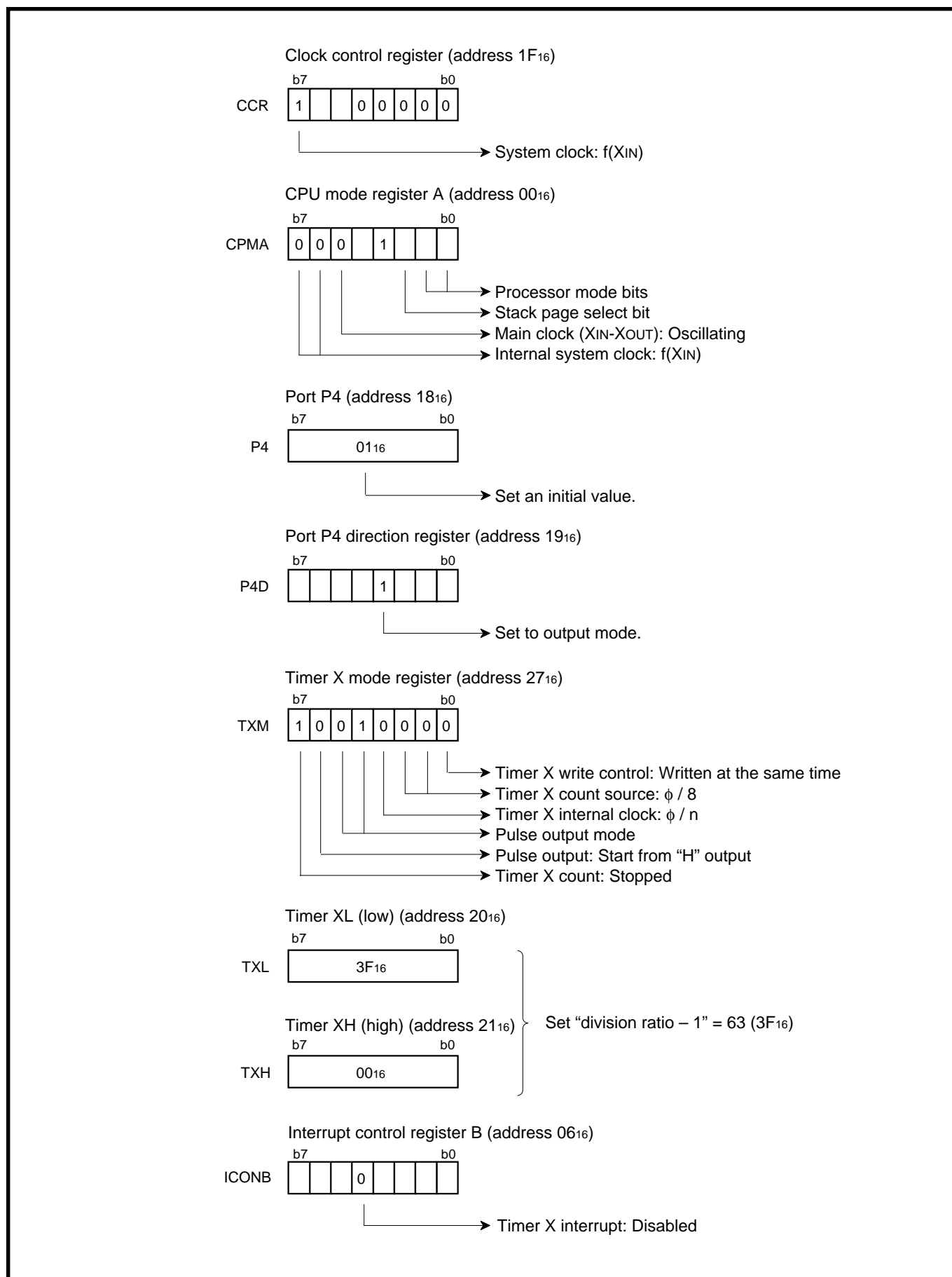


Fig. 2.2.17 Relevant registers setting

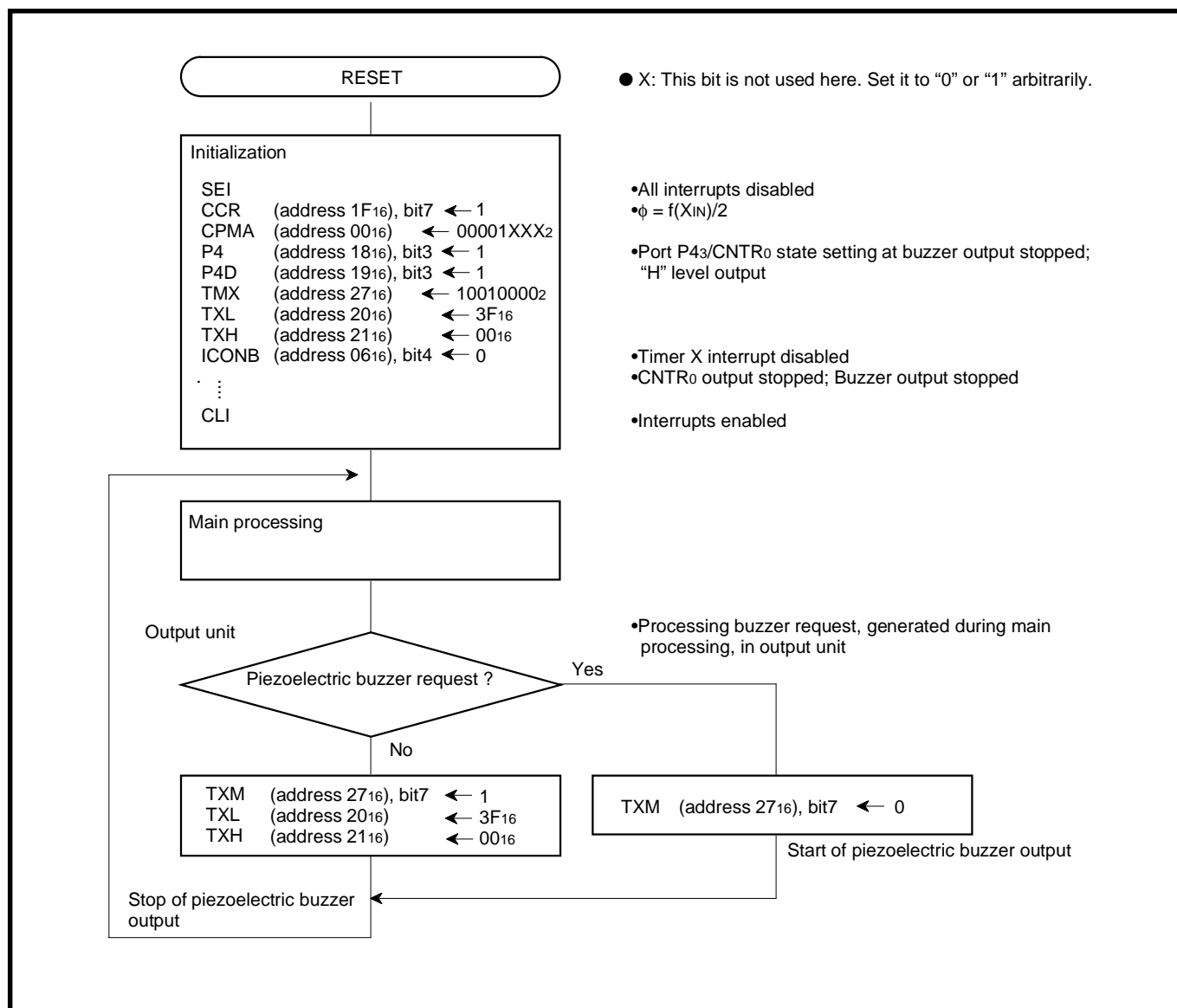


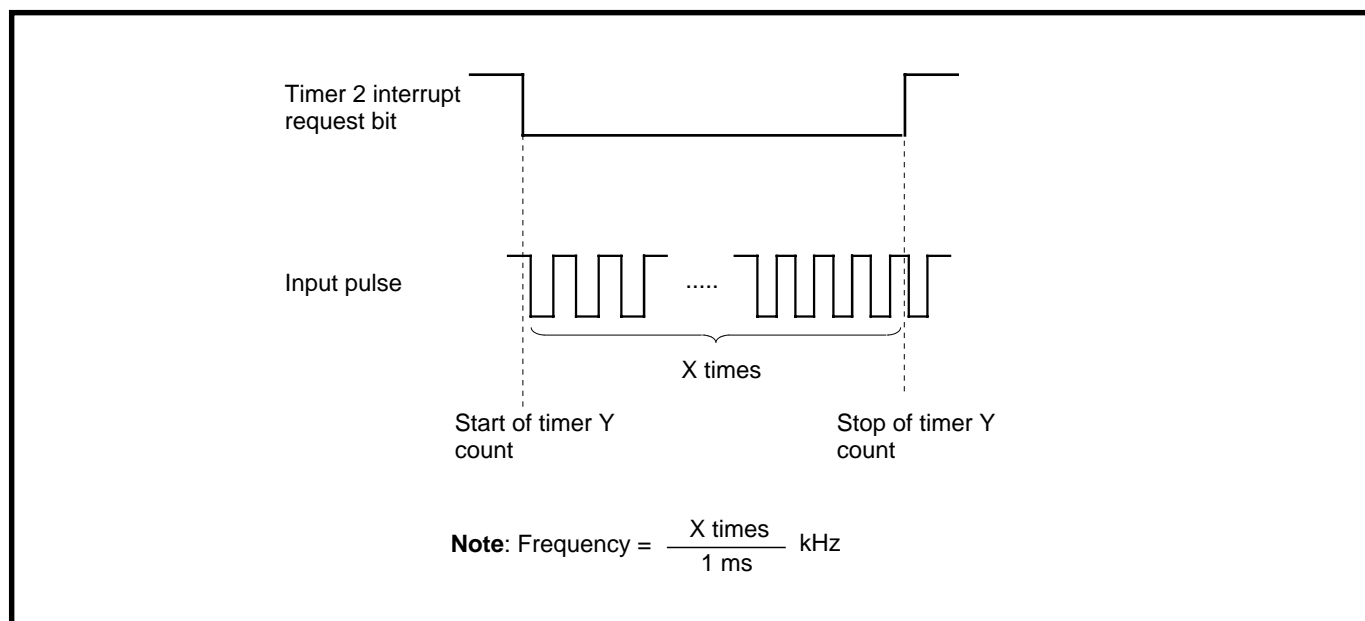
Fig. 2.2.18 Control procedure

**(4) Timer application example 3: Frequency measurement**

**Outline:** The pulse frequency input to P4<sub>4</sub>/CNTR<sub>1</sub> pin is measured by measuring the event number within a fixed term.

- Specifications:**
- The pulse is input to the P4<sub>4</sub>/CNTR<sub>1</sub> pin and counted by the timer Y.
  - A count value of timer Y is read out at 1 ms intervals, which is the timer 2 interrupt interval. As the result, the frequency can be calculated.  
(This example is in  $f(X_{IN}) = 24 \text{ MHz}$  and  $\phi = f(X_{IN})/4$ .)
  - The input event number must be "FFFF<sub>16</sub>" within 1 ms.

Figure 2.2.19 shows how to measure the frequency; Figure 2.2.20 shows the related registers setting; Figure 2.2.21 shows the control procedure.



**Fig. 2.2.19 How to measure frequency**



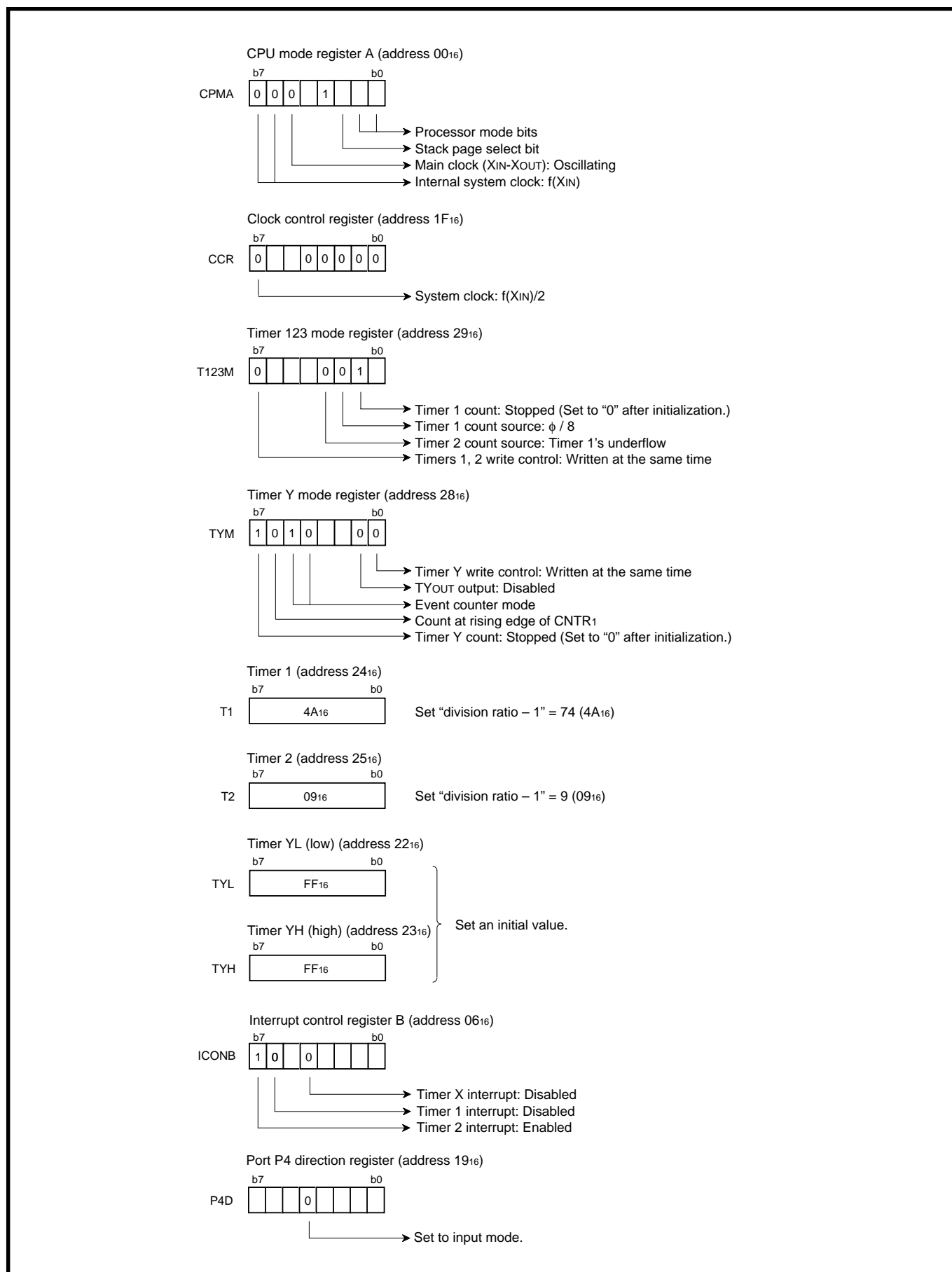


Fig. 2.2.20 Related registers setting

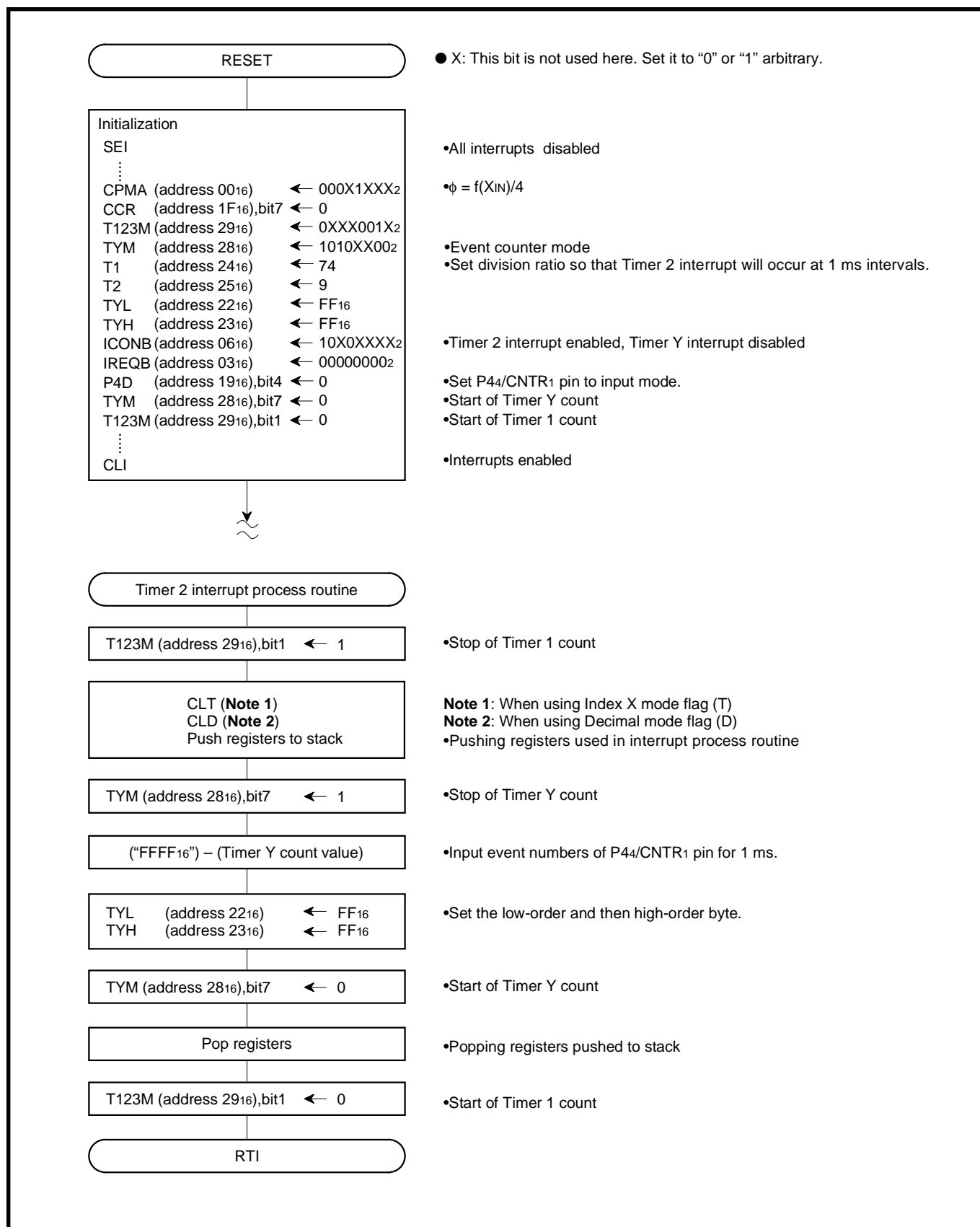


Fig. 2.2.21 Control procedure

**(5) Timer application example 4: Measurement of FG pulse width for motor**

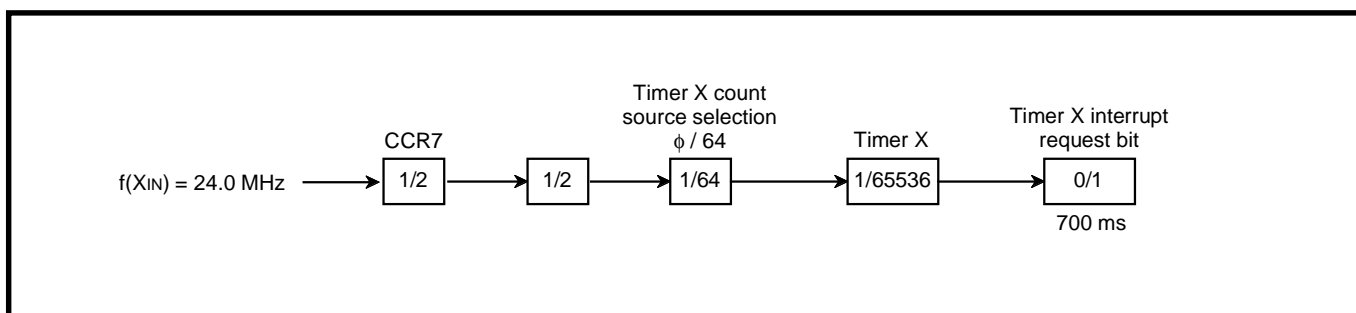
**Outline:** The timer X counts the “H” level width of the pulses input to the P4<sub>3</sub>/CNTR<sub>0</sub> pin.

**Specifications:** •The timer X counts the “H” level width of the FG pulse input to the P4<sub>3</sub>/CNTR<sub>0</sub>.

<Example>

When  $f(X_{IN}) = 24 \text{ MHz}$  and  $\phi = 6 \text{ MHz}$ , the count source is  $10.6 \mu\text{s}$ , which is obtained by dividing the  $\phi$  by 64. Measurement can be made up to 1 s in the range of  $\text{FFFF}_{16}$  to  $\text{0000}_{16}$ .

Figure 2.2.22 shows the timers connection and setting of division ratio; Figure 2.2.23 shows the related registers setting; Figures 2.2.24 and 2.2.25 show the control procedure.



**Fig. 2.2.22 Timers connection and setting of division ratios**

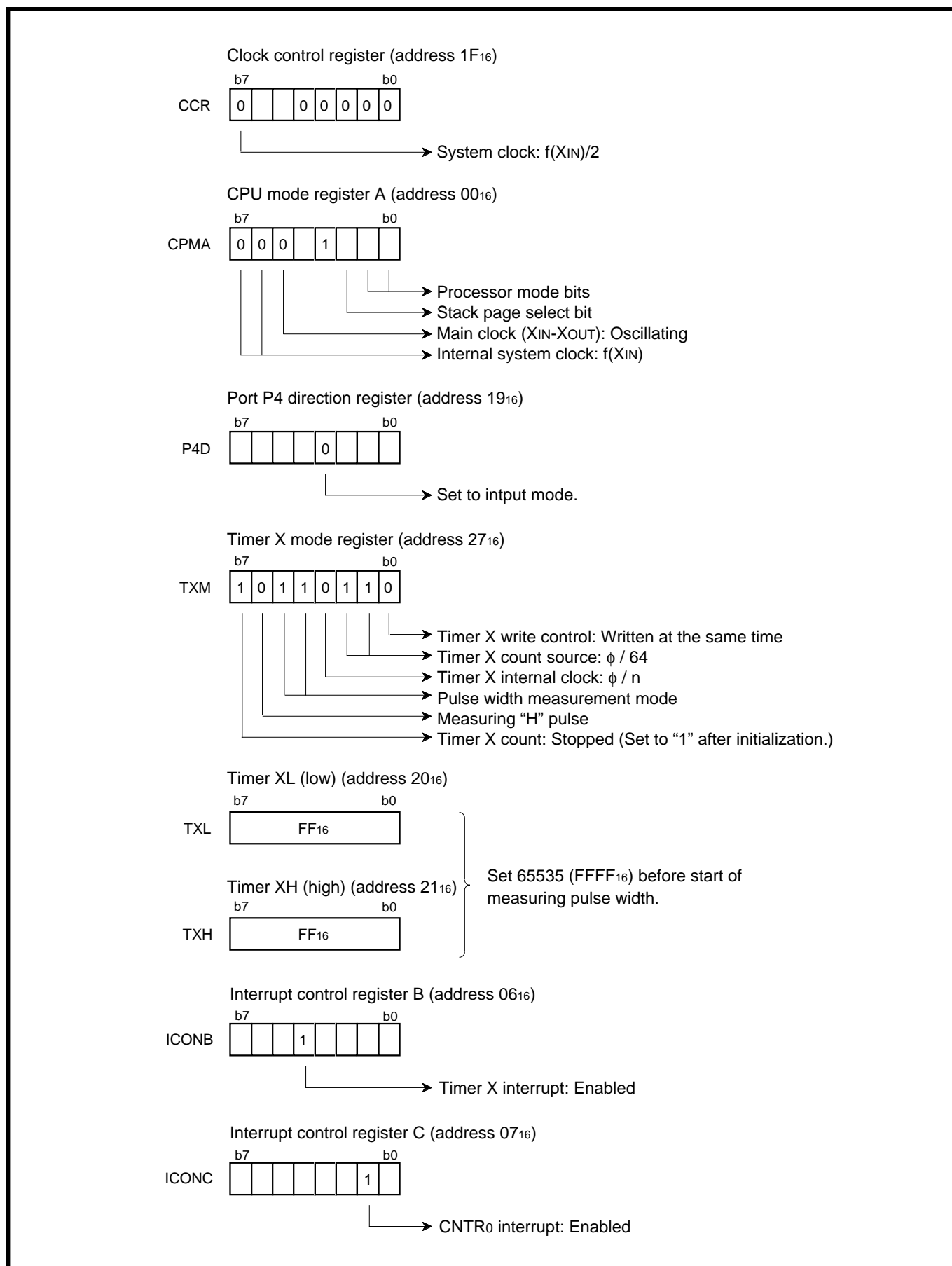


Fig. 2.2.23 Relevant registers setting

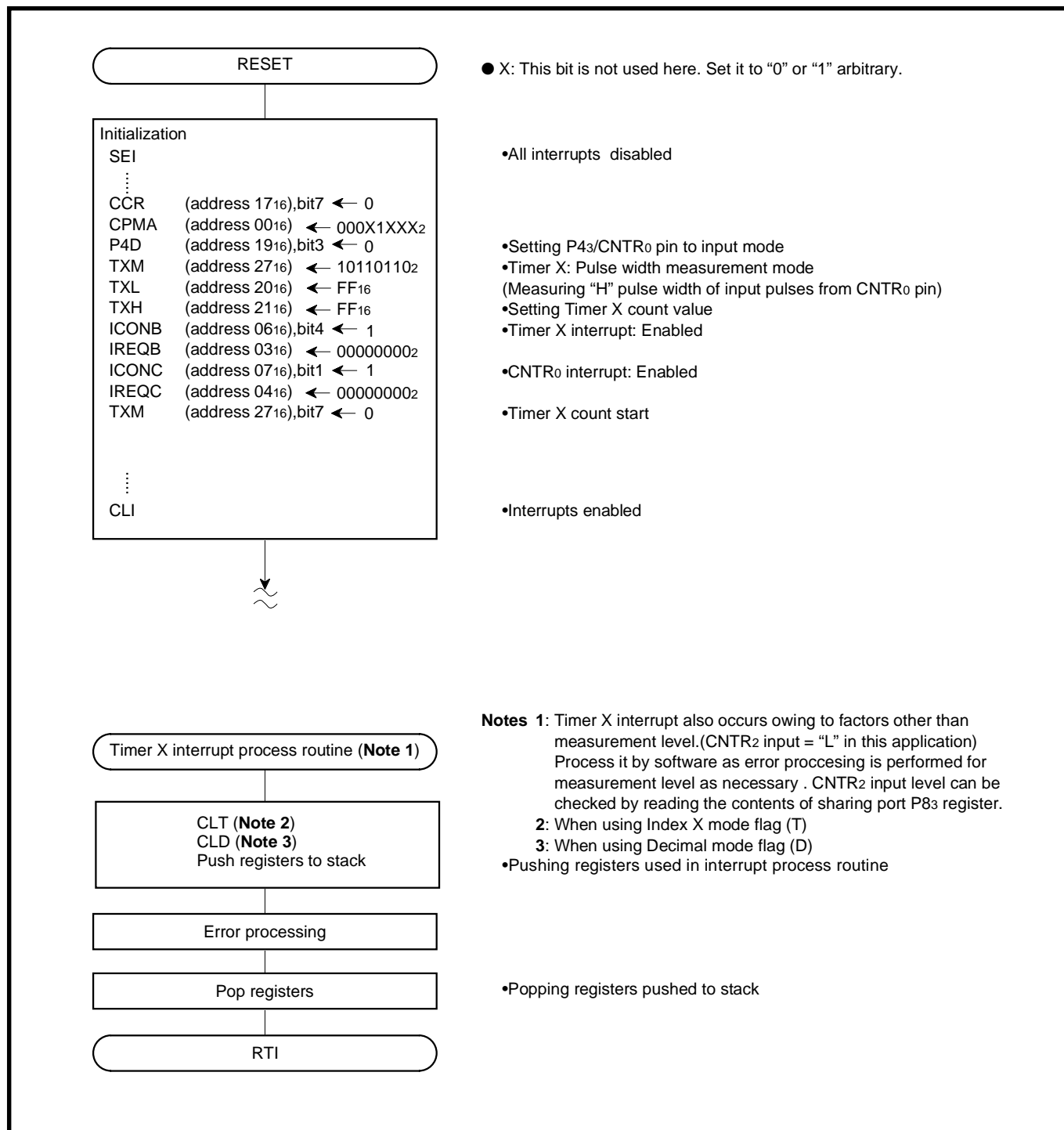
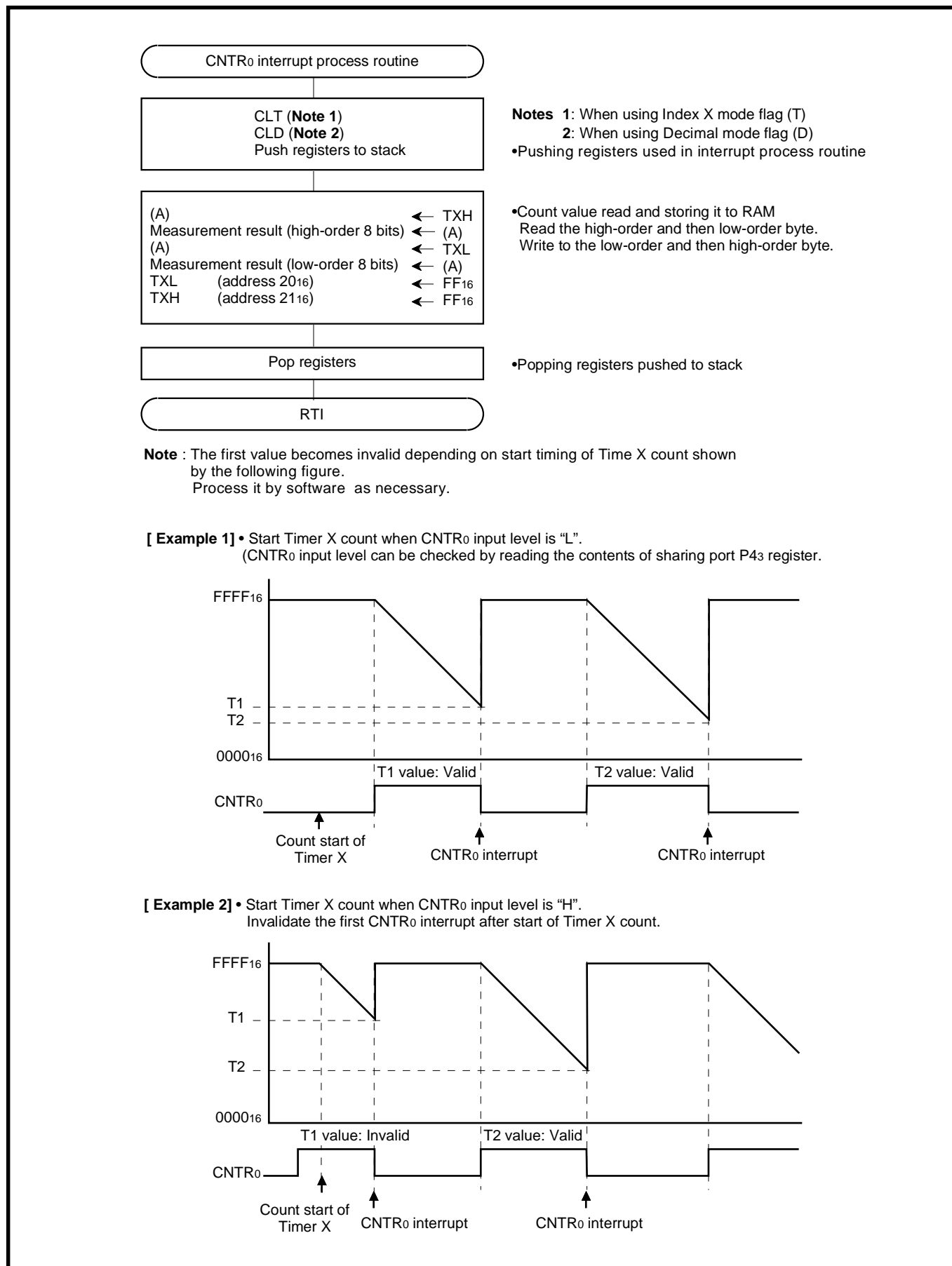


Fig. 2.2.24 Control procedure (1)



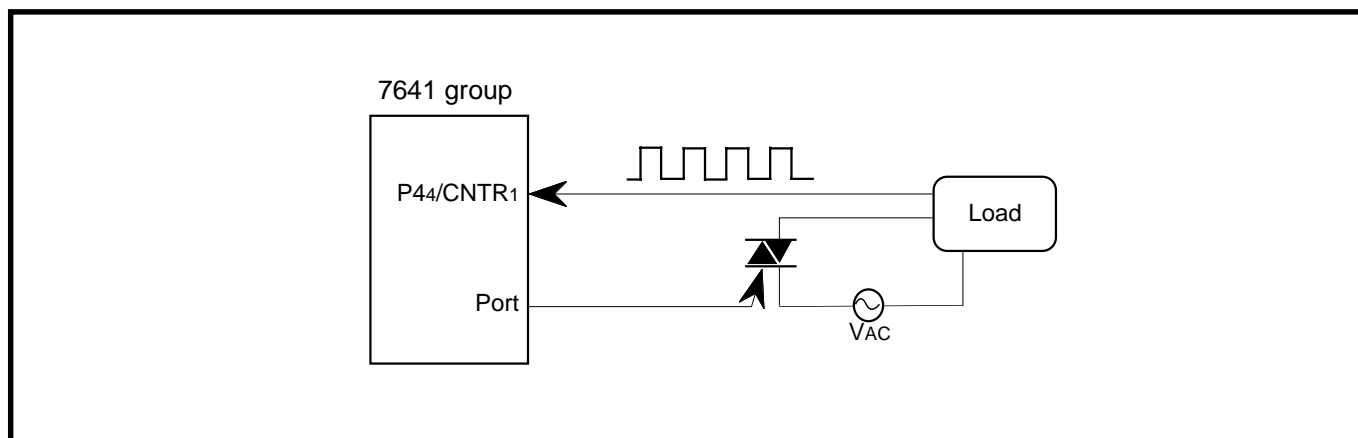
**(6) Timer application example 5: Adjustment of phase control signal**

**Outline:** A phase control signal is adjusted in the period measurement mode.

**Specifications:**

- To control the phase of the load, a phase control signal is output to the load.
- The pulse width of feedback signal input from the load is measured and a phase control signal for the load is adjusted.

Figure 2.2.26 shows the circuit example; Figure 2.2.27 shows the related registers setting; Figure 2.2.28 shows the control procedure.



**Fig. 2.2.26 Circuit example**

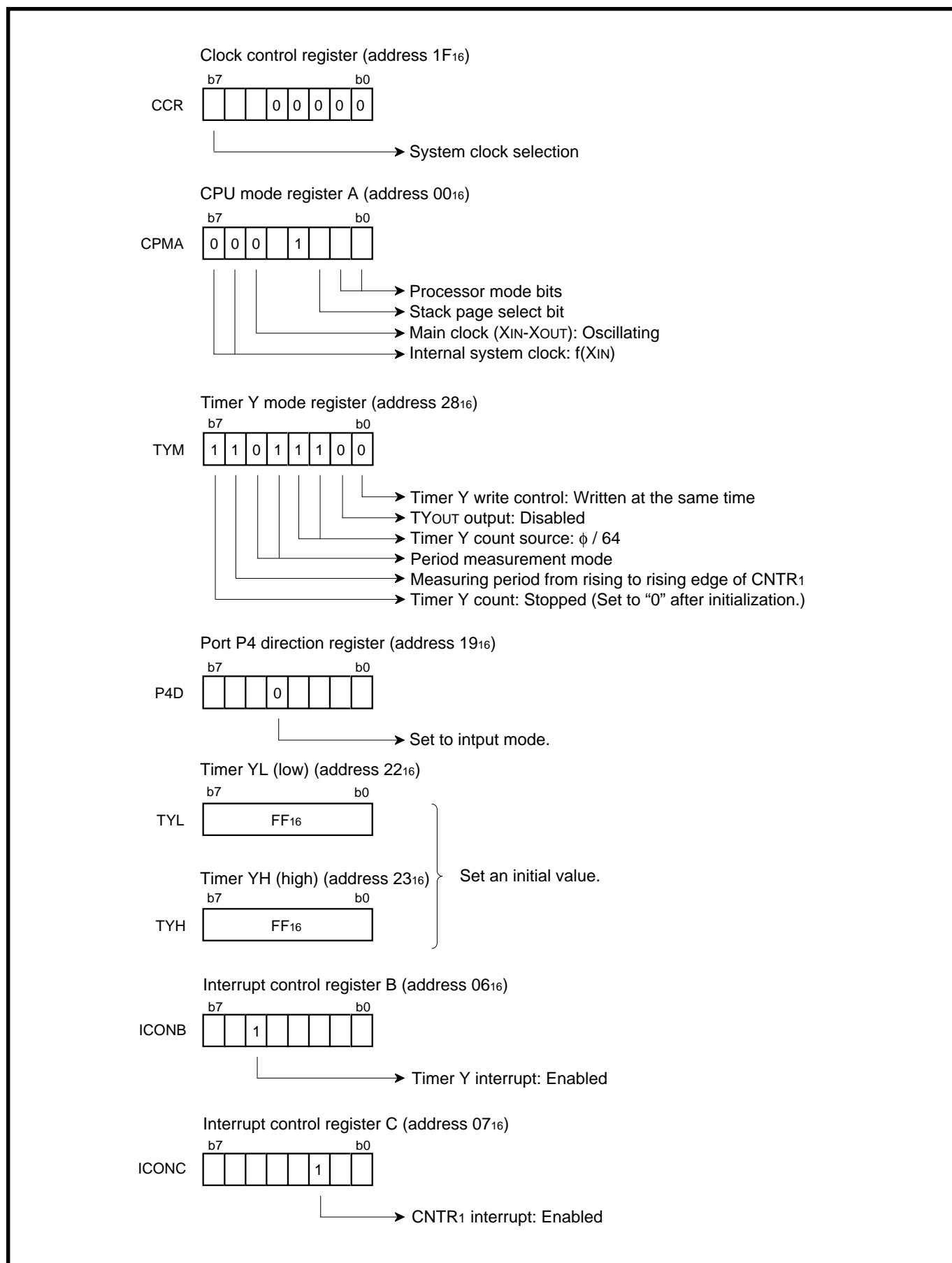


Fig. 2.2.27 Related registers setting



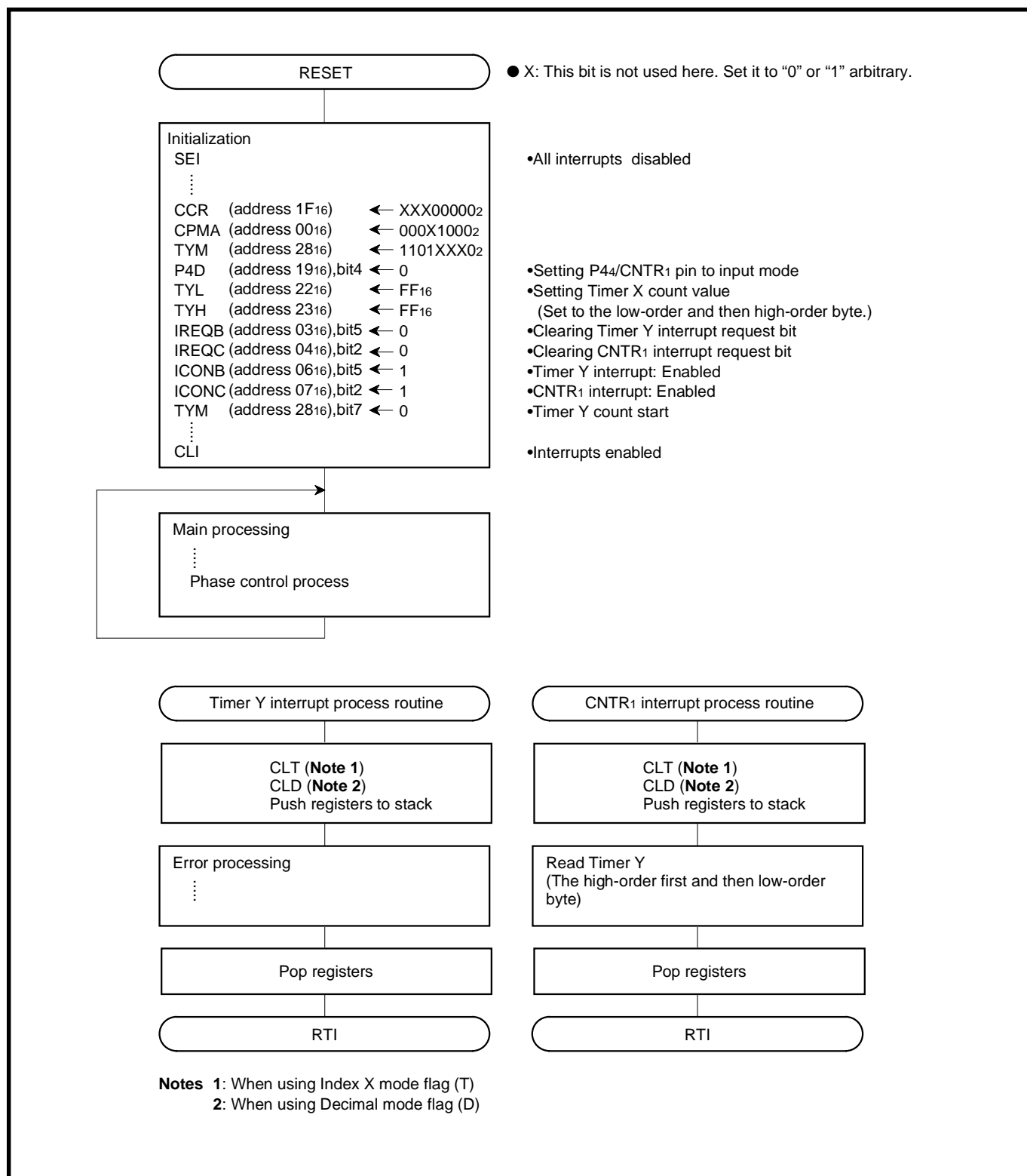


Fig. 2.2.28 Control procedure

## 2.2.4 Notes on timer

### (1) Read/Write for timer

- The timer division ratio is :  $1 / (n + 1)$   
( $n = "0"$  to  $"255"$  written into the timer)
- Read and write operation on 16-bit timer (Timers X and Y) must be performed for both high and low-order bytes.
- When reading the 16-bit timer (Timers X and Y), read the high-order byte first and then the low-order byte. When writing to the 16-bit timer, write the low-order byte first and then the high-order byte.
- Do not read the 16-bit timer during the write operation, or do not write to it during the read operation.
- When the value is loaded only in the latch, the value is loaded in the timer at the count pulse following the count where the timer reaches  $"00_{16}"$ .
- In the timers 1 to 3, switching of the count sources of timers 1 to 3 does not affect the values of reload latches. However, that may make count operation started. Therefore, write values again in the order of timers 1, 2 and then timer 3 after their count sources have been switched.
- In the timer mode (for timers X, Y, 1 to 3), event counter mode (for timers X, Y), pulse output mode (for timers X, Y, 1, 2), the timer current count value can be read out by reading the timer.
- In the pulse width measurement mode (for timer X), period measurement mode (for timer Y), pulse width HL continuously measurement mode (for timer Y), the measured timer value is stored into the internal temporary register. When reading the timer, the value of internal temporary register is read out. The contents of internal temporary register is updated after the next measurement.

### (2) Pulse output

- When using the pulse output mode of timer X, set bit 3 of port P4 direction register to "1" (output mode).
- When using the  $T_{YOUT}$  output of timer Y, set bit 4 of port P4 direction register to "1" (output mode).
- When using the  $T_{OUT}$  output of timer 1 or timer 2, set bit 1 of port P5 direction register to "1" (output mode).
- The  $T_{OUT}$  output pin is shared with the  $X_{COUT}$  pin. Accordingly, when using  $f(X_{CIN})/2$  as the timer 1 count source (bit 2 of timer 123 mode register = "0"),  $X_{COUT}$  oscillation drive must be disabled (bit 5 of clock control register = "1") to input clocks from the  $X_{CIN}$  pin.
- The  $P5_1/X_{COUT}/T_{OUT}$  pin cannot function as an ordinary I/O port while  $X_{CIN}-X_{COUT}$  is oscillating. When  $X_{CIN}-X_{COUT}$  oscillation is stopped or  $X_{COUT}$  oscillation drive is disabled, this can be used as the  $T_{OUT}$  output pin of timer 1 or 2.

### (3) Pulse input

- When using the timer X in the event counter or pulse width measurement mode, set bit 3 of port P4 direction register to "0" (input mode).
- When using the timer Y in the period measurement, event counter or pulse width HL continuously measurement mode, set bit 4 of port P4 direction register to "0" (input mode).

### (4) Interrupt

In the timer Y's pulse width HL continuously measurement mode,  $CNTR_1$  interrupt request is generated at both rising and falling edges of  $CNTR_1$  pin input signal regardless of the setting of  $CNTR_1$  active edge switch bit of timer Y mode register.

## 2.3 Serial I/O

This paragraph explains the registers setting method and the notes related to the serial I/O.

### 2.3.1 Memory map

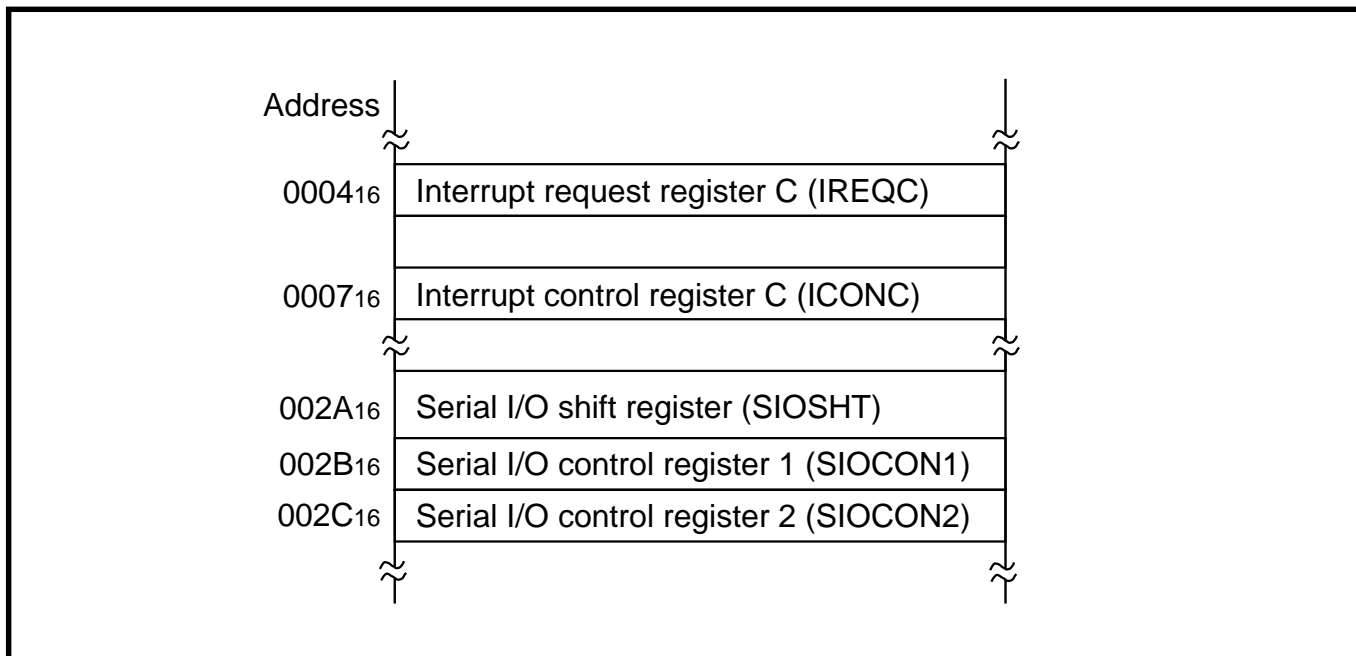


Fig. 2.3.1 Memory map of registers related to serial I/O

## 2.3.2 Related registers

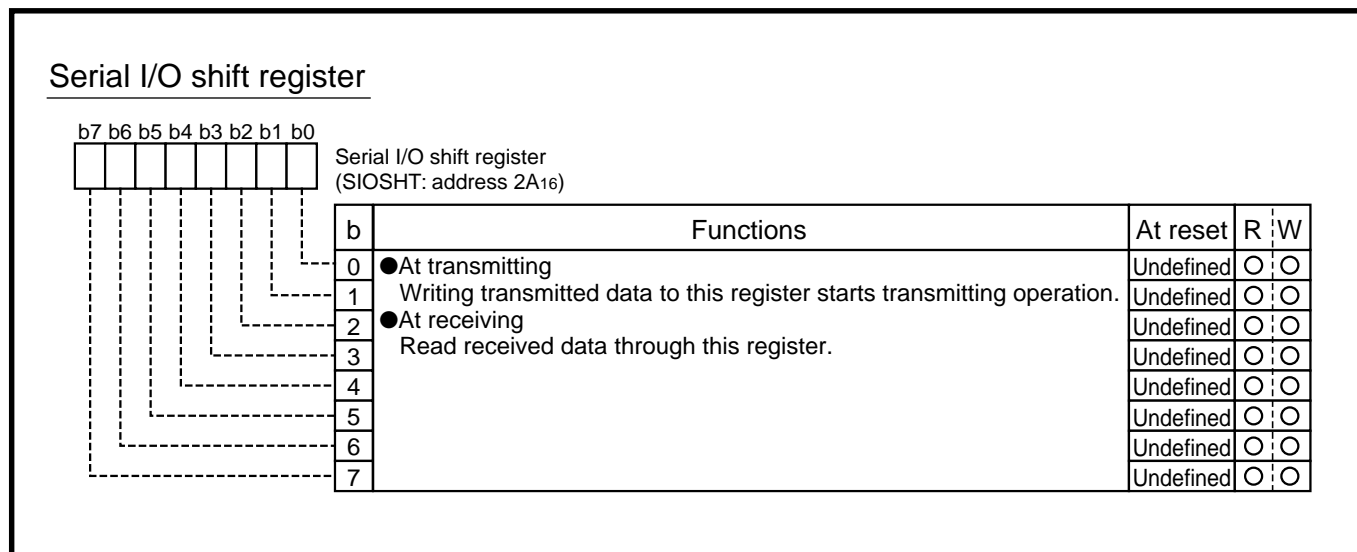


Fig. 2.3.2 Structure of Serial I/O shift register

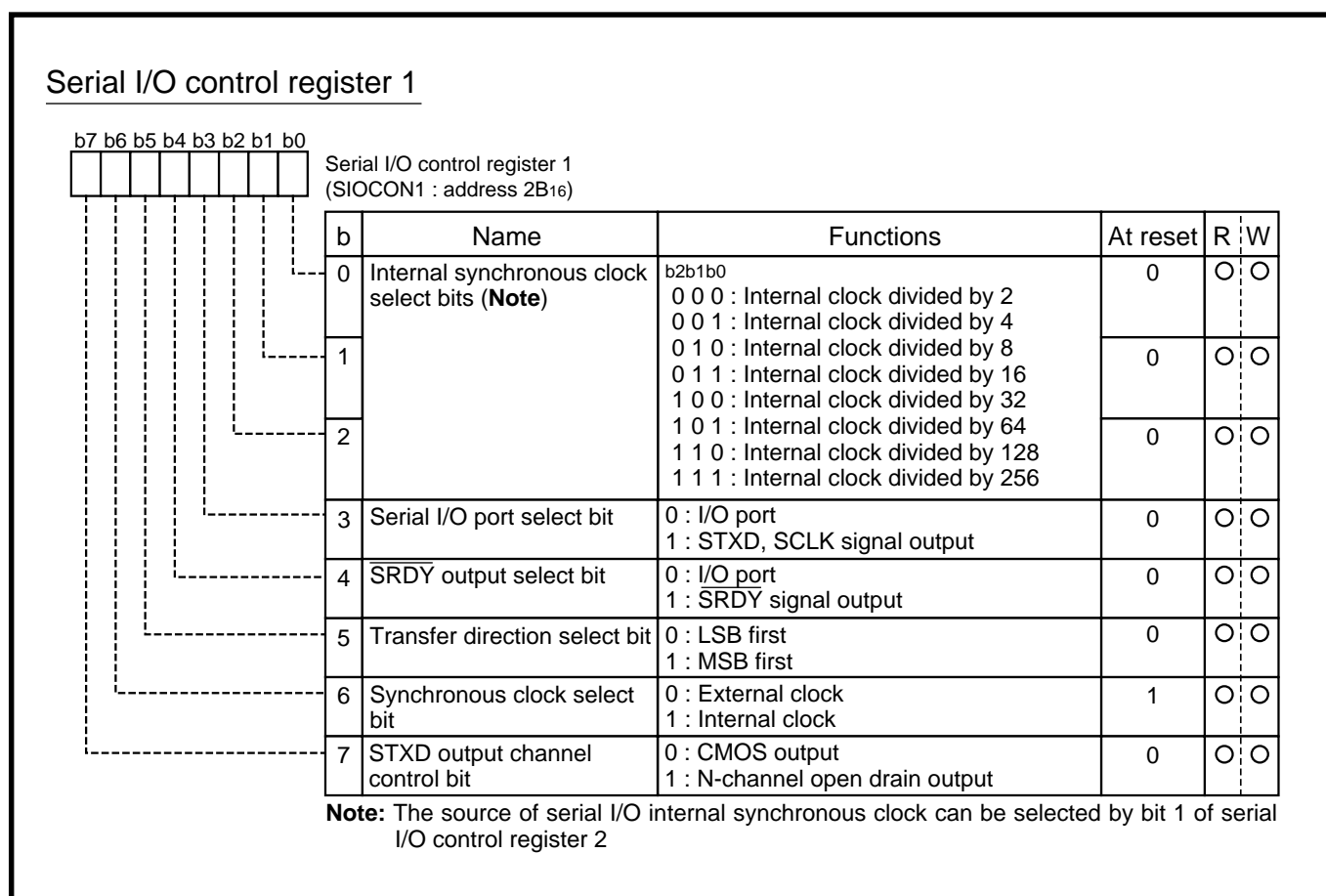


Fig. 2.3.3 Structure of Serial I/O control register 1

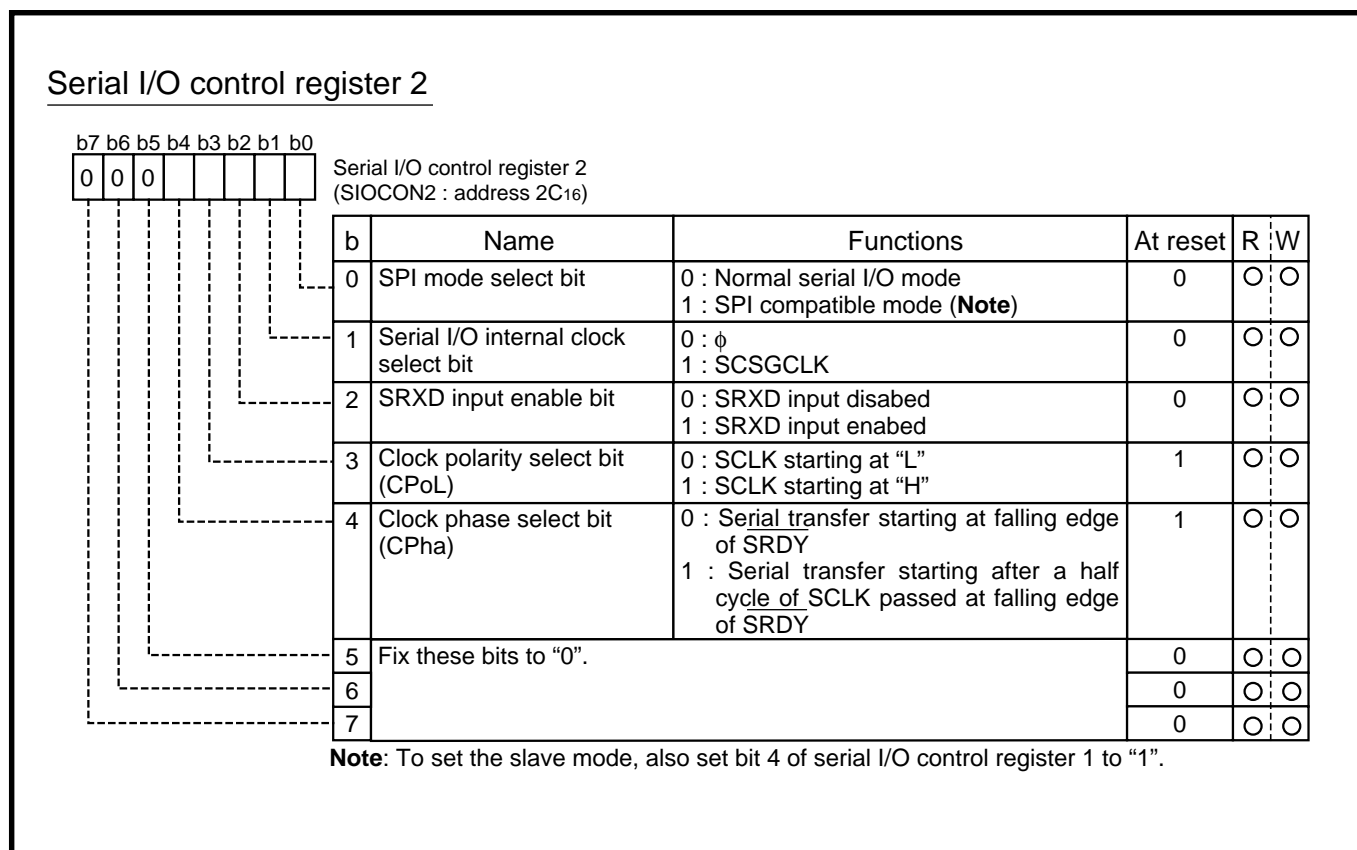


Fig. 2.3.4 Structure of Serial I/O control register 2

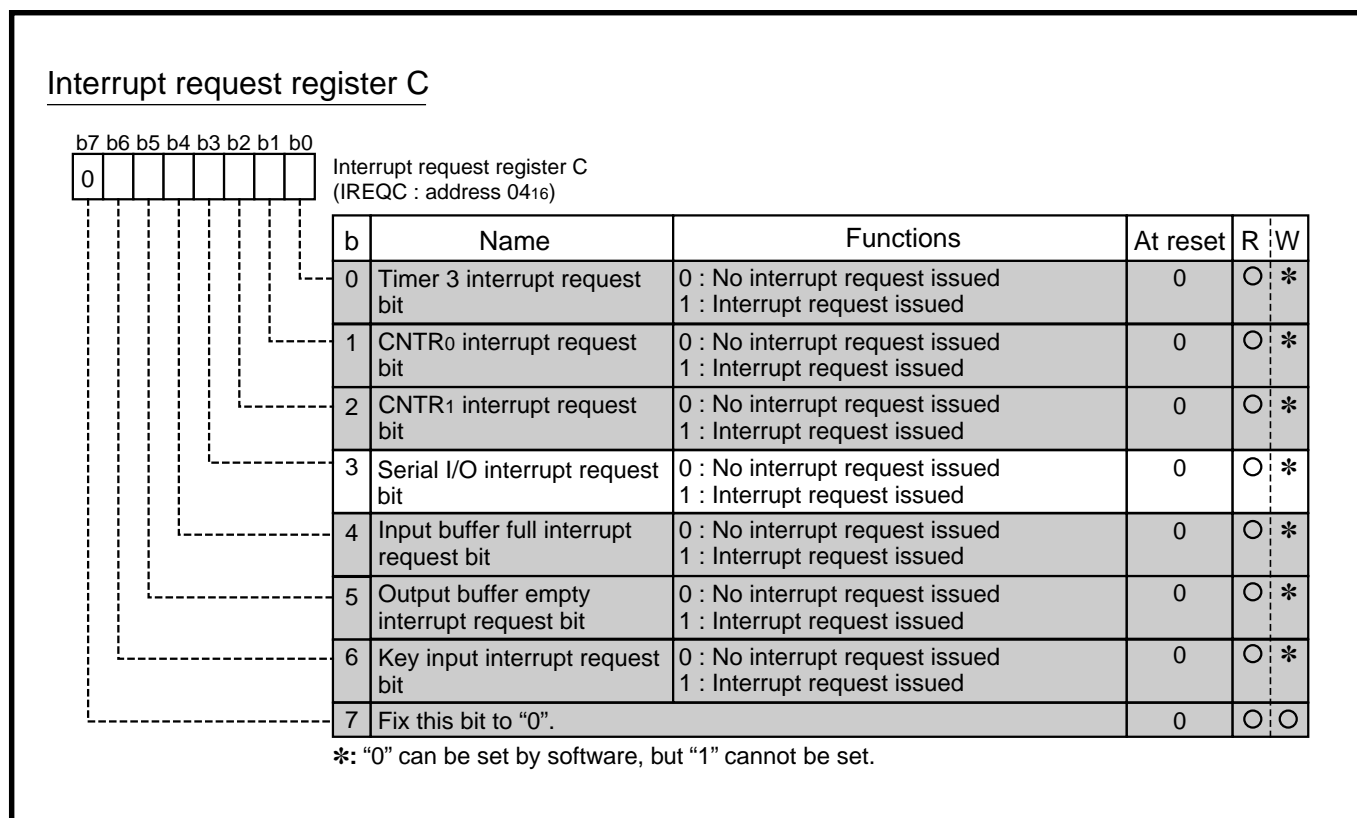


Fig. 2.3.5 Structure of Interrupt request register C

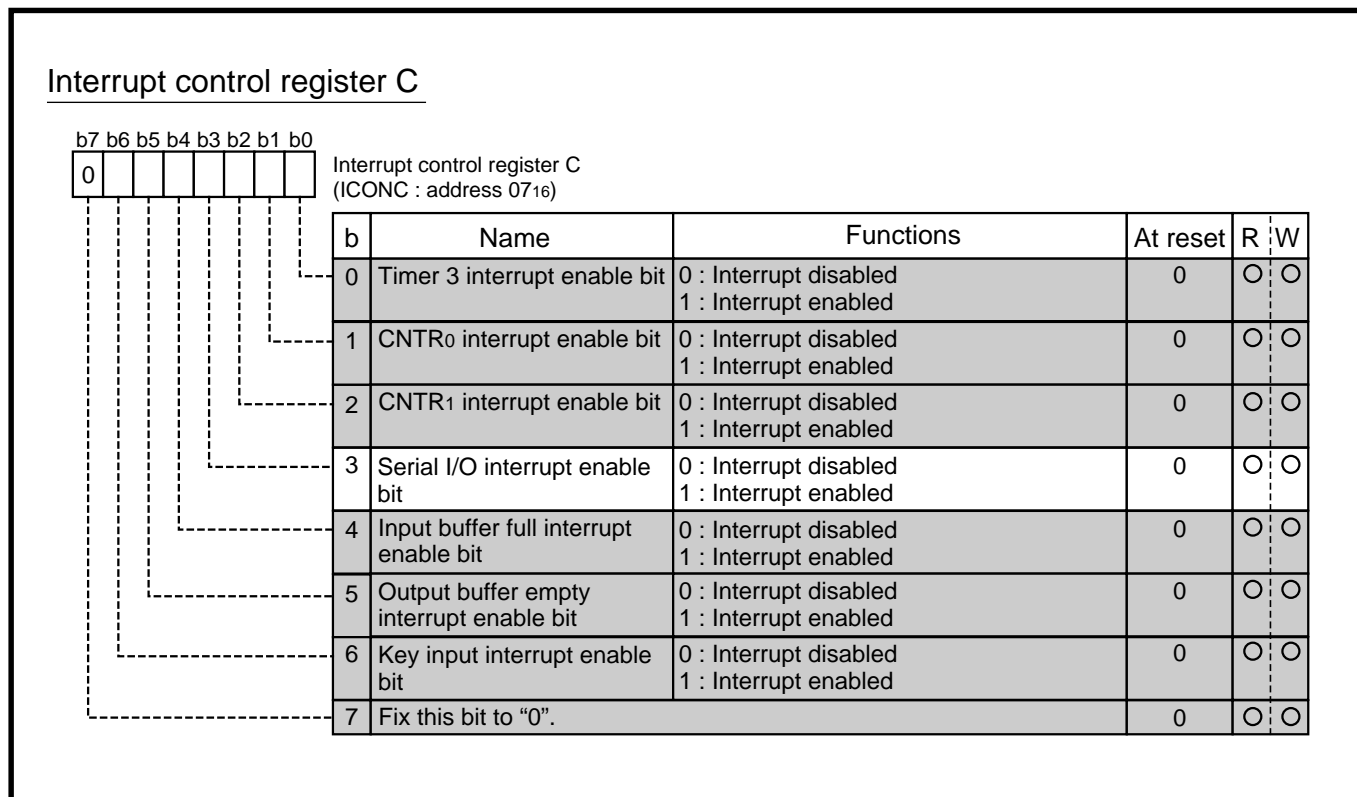


Fig. 2.3.6 Structure of Interrupt control register C

### 2.3.3 Serial I/O connection examples

#### (1) Control of peripheral IC equipped with CS pin

Figure 2.3.7 shows connection examples of a peripheral IC equipped with the CS pin.

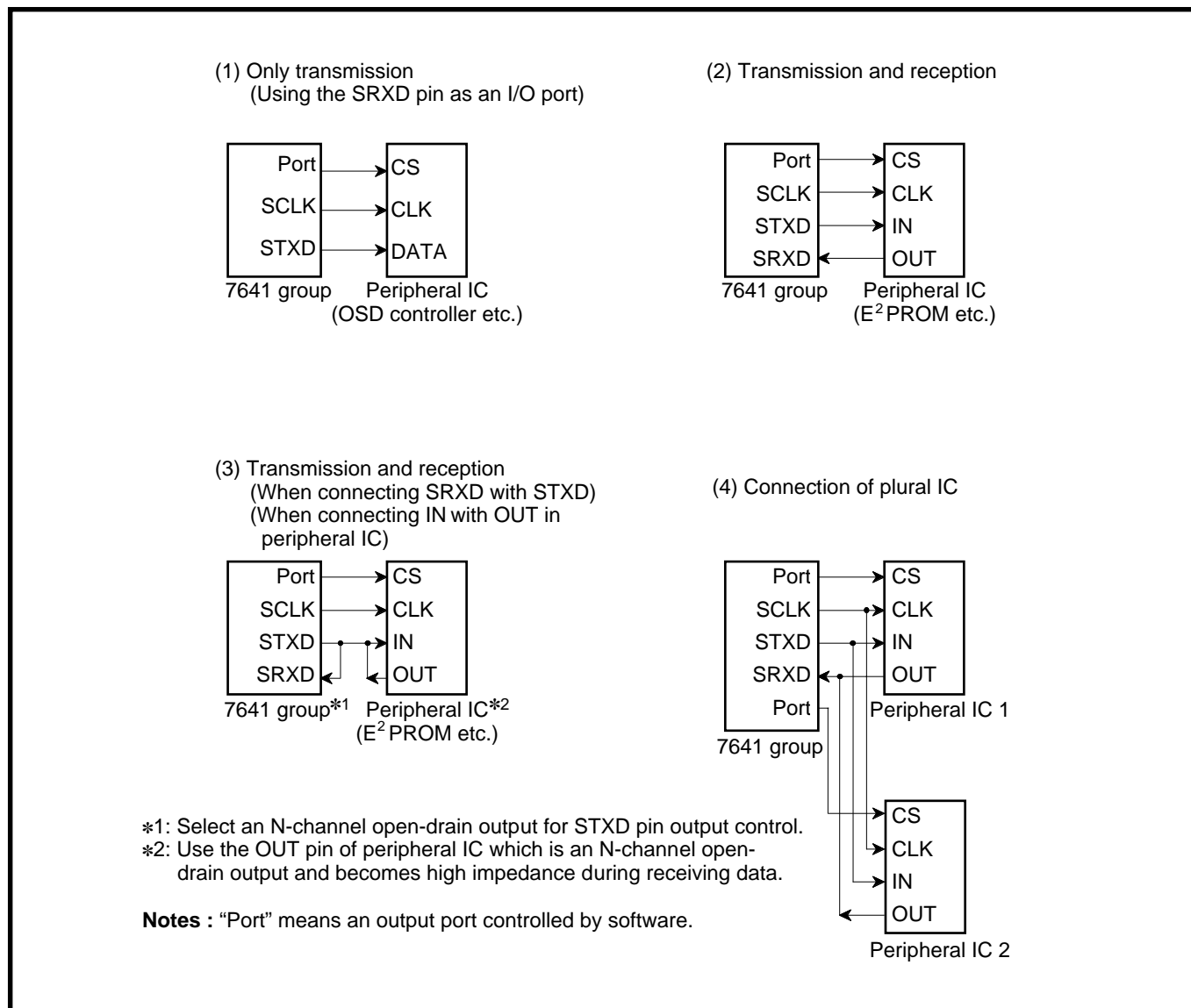
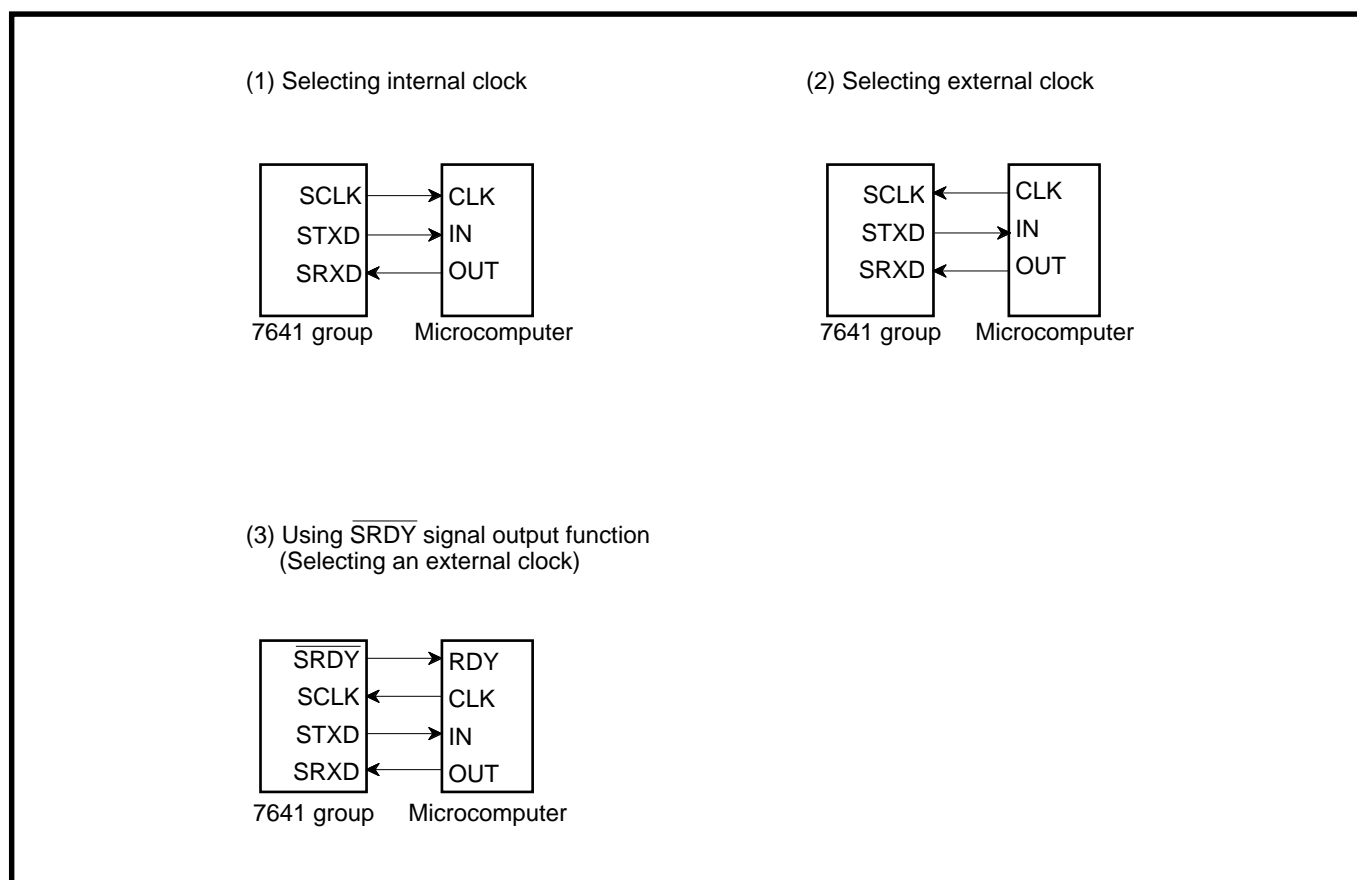


Fig. 2.3.7 Serial I/O connection examples (1)

**(2) Connection with microcomputer**

Figure 2.3.8 shows connection examples with another microcomputer.



**Fig. 2.3.8 Serial I/O connection examples (2)**



### 2.3.4 Serial I/O application example

#### (1) Output of serial data (control of peripheral IC)

**Outline :** Serial communication is performed, connecting port to  $\overline{CS}$  pin of peripheral IC. To perform reception, it needs to write dummy data into serial I/O shift register.

Figure 2.3.9 shows a connection diagram, and Figure 2.3.10 shows a timing chart.

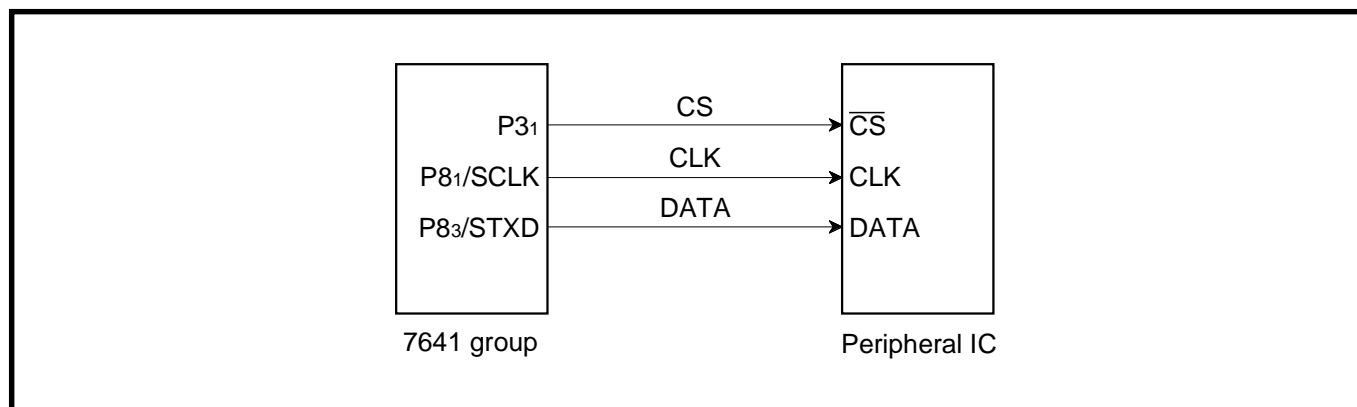


Fig. 2.3.9 Connection diagram

- Specifications :**
- Synchronous clock frequency : 187.5 kHz ( $f(X_{IN}) = 24 \text{ MHz}$  )
  - Transfer direction : LSB first
  - Serial I/O interrupt is not used.
  - Port P3<sub>1</sub> is connected to the  $\overline{CS}$  pin ("L" active) of the peripheral IC for transmission control; the output level of port P3<sub>1</sub> is controlled by software.

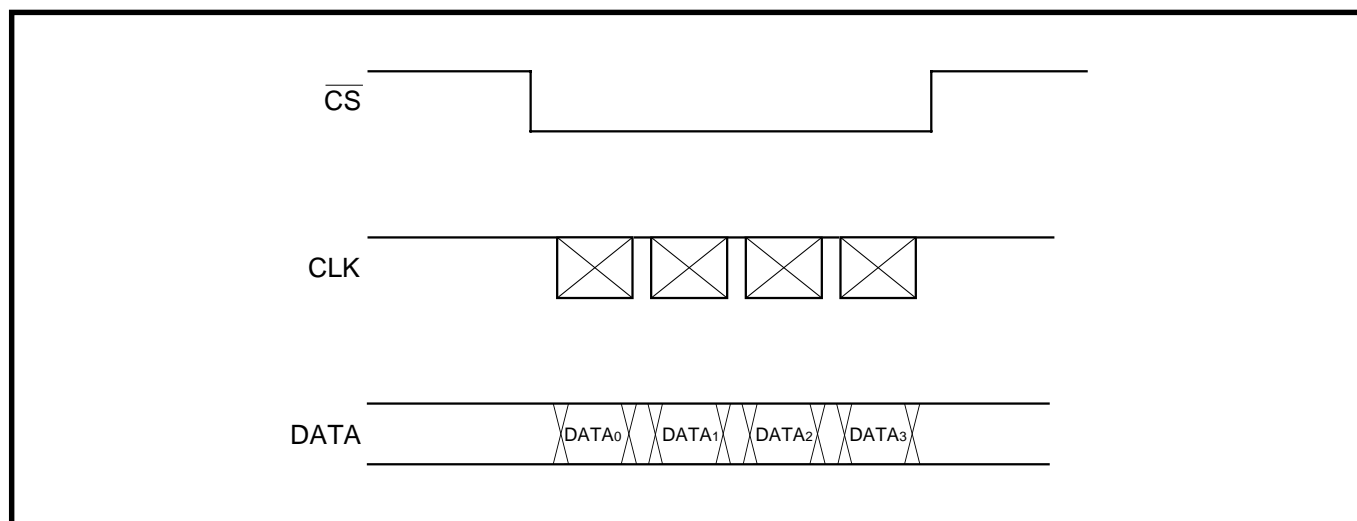


Fig. 2.3.10 Timing chart

Figure 2.3.11 shows the registers setting for the transmitter, and Figure 2.3.12 shows a setting of serial I/O transmission data.

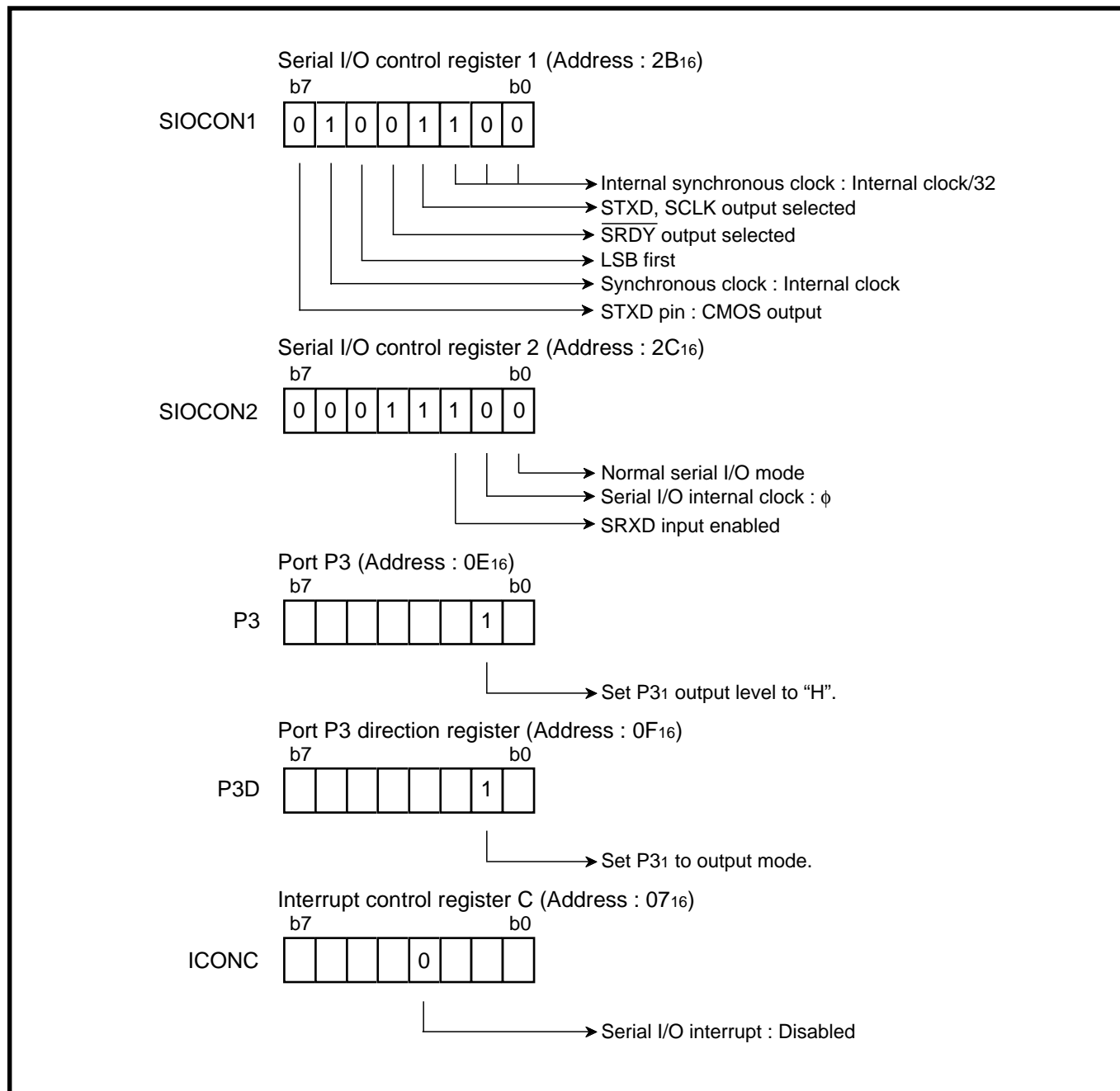


Fig. 2.3.11 Registers setting for transmitter

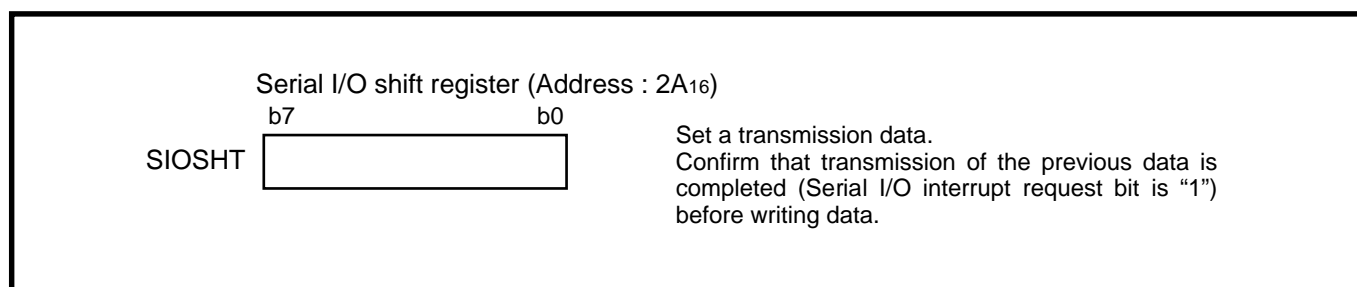


Fig. 2.3.12 Setting of serial I/O transmission data

When the registers are set as shown in Figure 2.3.13, the serial I/O can transmit 1-byte data by writing data into the serial I/O shift register.

Thus, after setting the  $\overline{CS}$  signal to "L", write the transmission data to the serial I/O shift register by each 1 byte, and return the  $\overline{CS}$  signal to "H" when all required data have been transmitted.

Figure 2.3.13 shows a control procedure of transmitter.

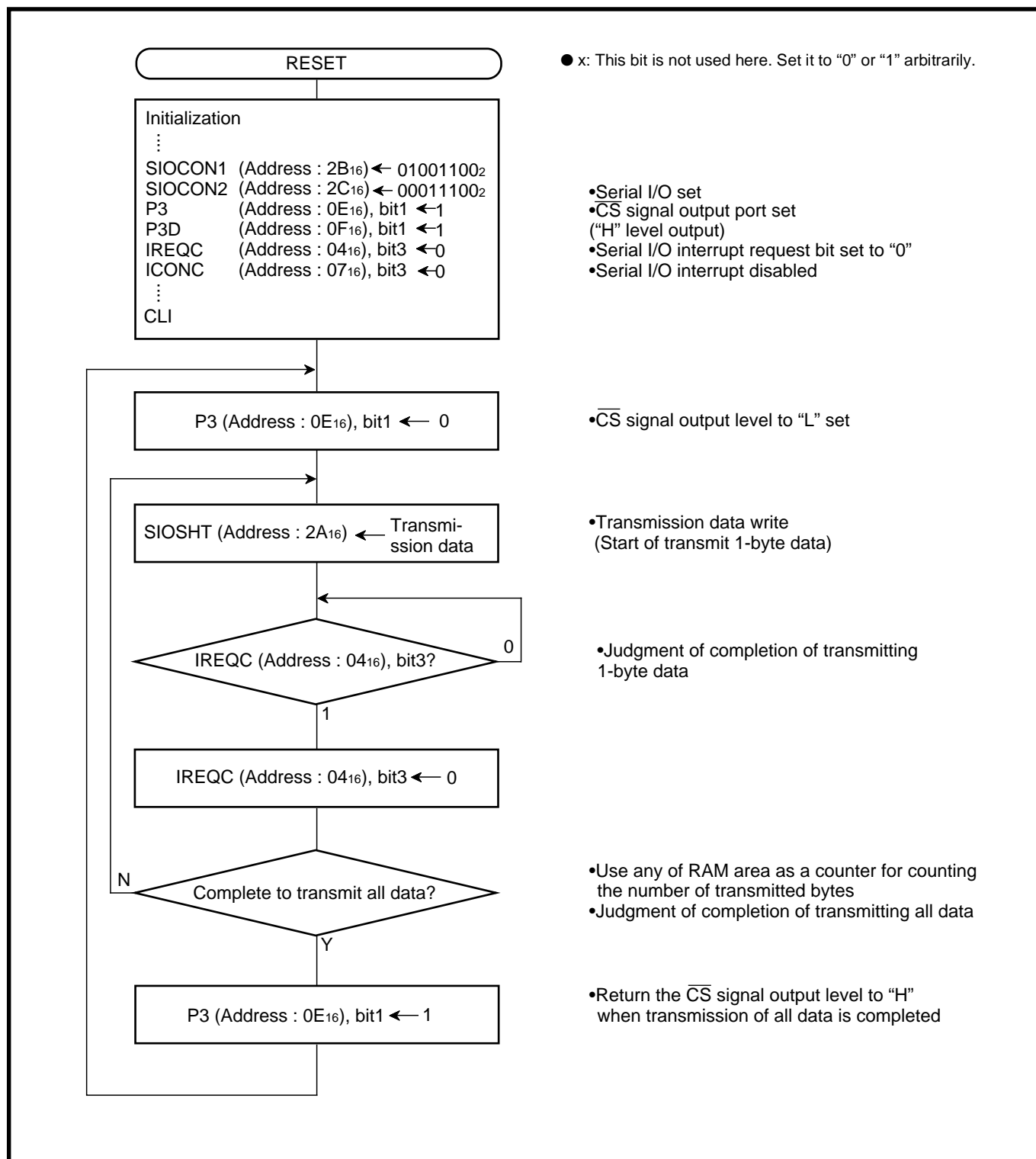


Fig. 2.3.13 Control procedure of transmitter

## (2) Serial communication using SPI compatible mode

### ●Explanation of SPI compatible mode

Setting the SPI mode select bit (bit 0 of SIOCON2) to "1" puts the serial I/O in SPI compatible mode. The synchronous clock select bit (bit 6 of SIOCON1) determines whether the serial I/O is an SPI master or slave. When the external clock is selected ("0"), the serial I/O is in slave mode; when the internal clock is selected ("1"), the serial I/O is in master mode.

In SPI compatible mode the SRXD pin functions as a MISO (Master In/Slave Out) pin and the STXD pin functions as a MOSI (Master Out/Slave In) pin.

In slave mode the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  pin functions as the chip-select signal input pin from an external.

In master mode the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  pin functions as the chip-select signal output pin to an external.

### ●Slave mode operation

In slave mode of SPI compatible mode 4 types of clock polarity and clock phase can be usable by bits 3 and 4 of serial I/O control register 2.

If the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  pin is held "H", the shift clock is inhibited, the serial I/O counter is set to "7". If the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  pin is held "L", then the shift clock will start.

Make sure during transfer to maintain the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  input at "L" and not to write data to the serial I/O counter.

**Outline** : Serial communication is performed between 7641 group MCUs, using SPI compatible mode.

**Specifications** : •Synchronous clock frequency : 187.5 kHz ( $f(X_{IN}) = 24 \text{ MHz}$ )  
•Transfer direction : LSB first

Figure 2.3.14 shows a connection diagram; Figure 2.3.15 shows the registers setting for SPI compatible mode; Figures 2.3.16 and 2.3.17 show a control procedure of SPI compatible mode.

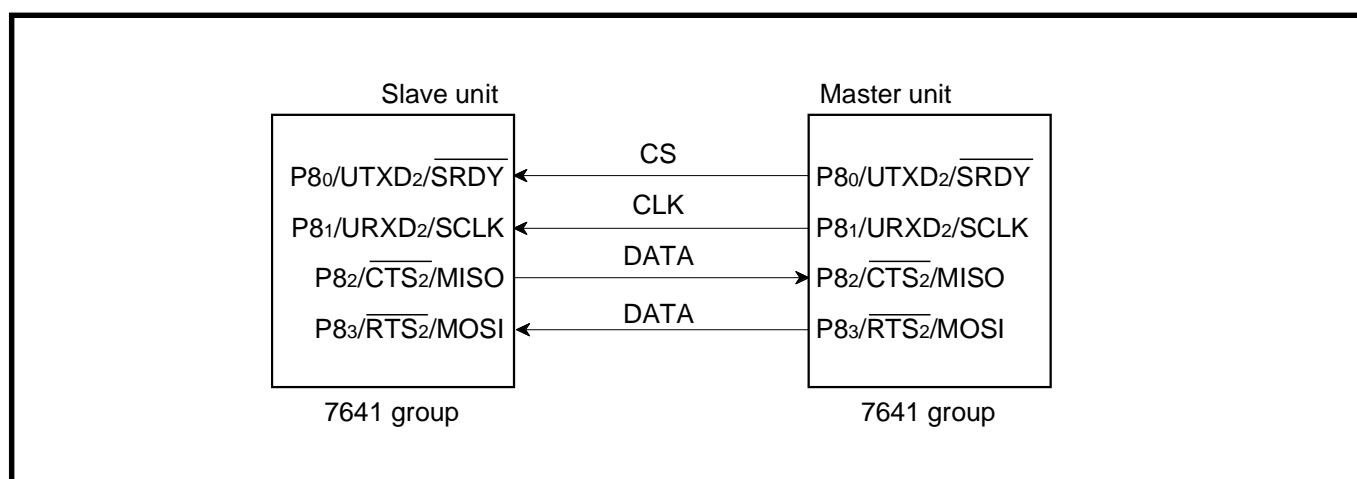
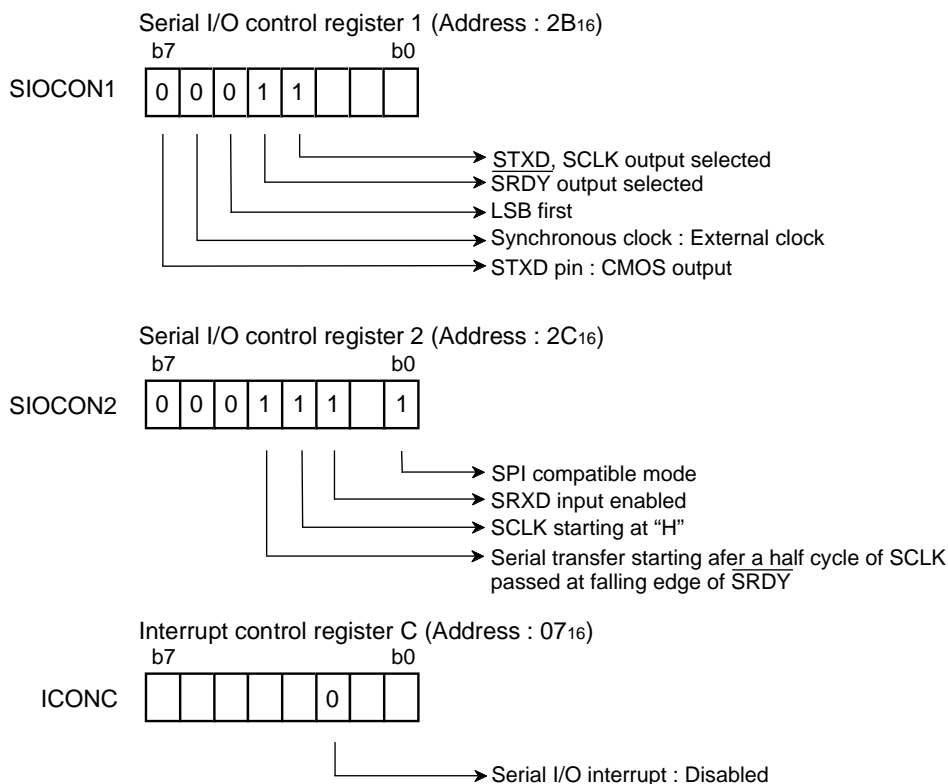


Fig. 2.3.14 Connection diagram

### ●Slave Unit



### ●Master Unit

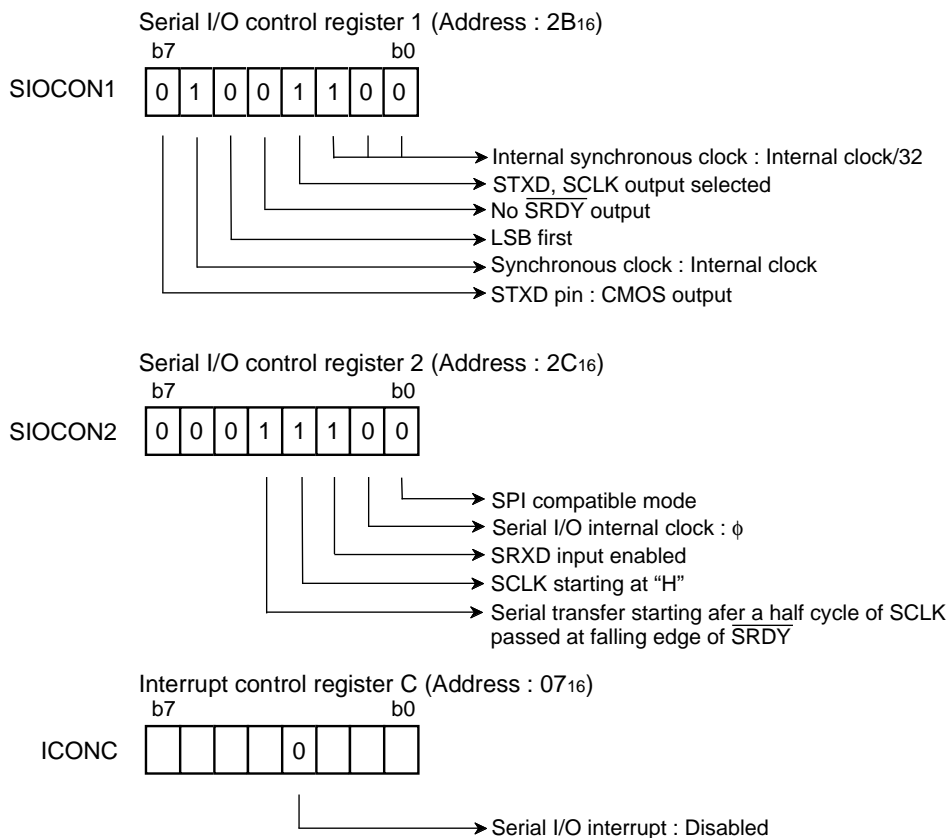


Fig. 2.3.15 Registers setting for SPI compatible mode

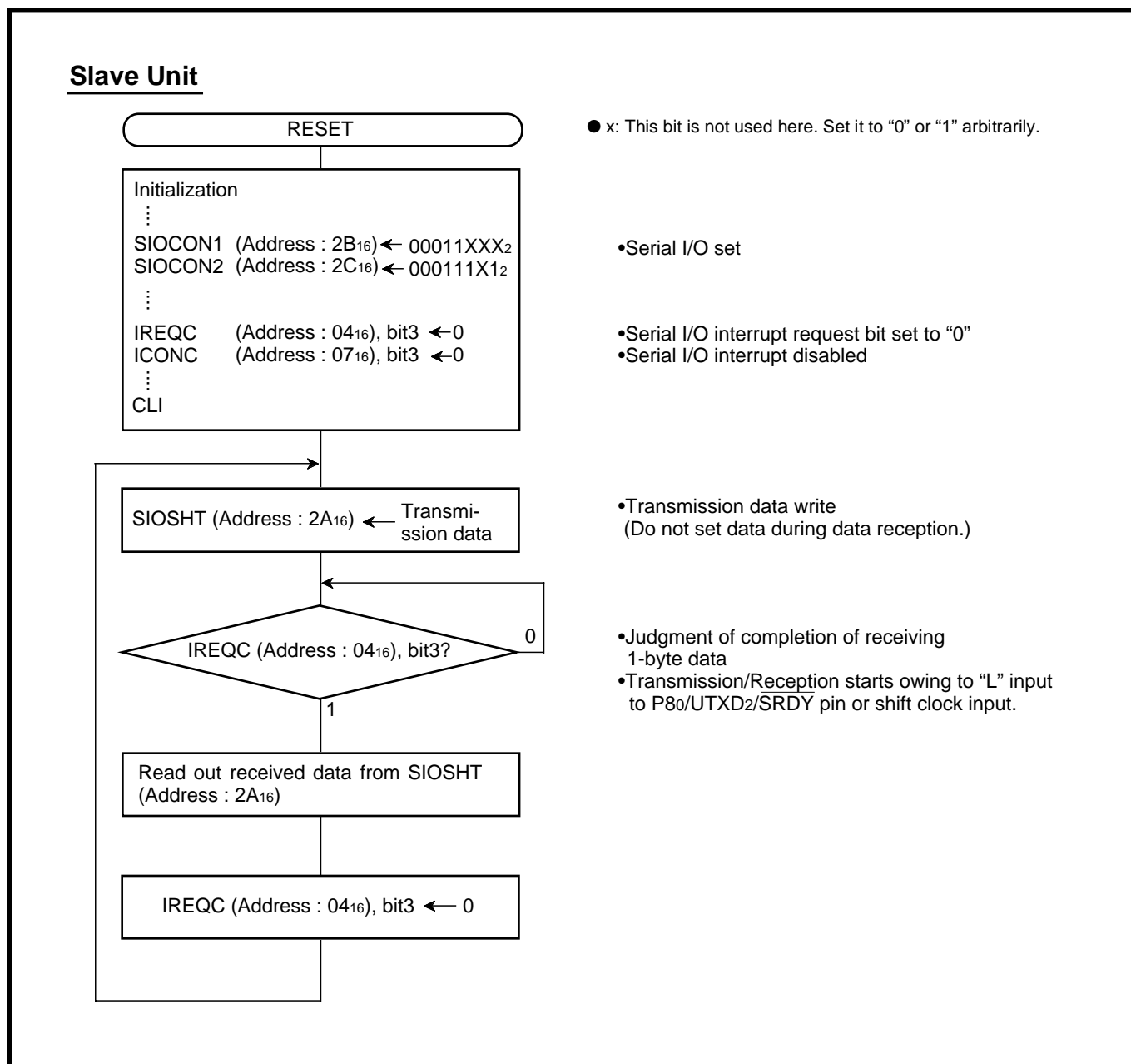


Fig. 2.3.16 Control procedure of SPI compatible mode in slave

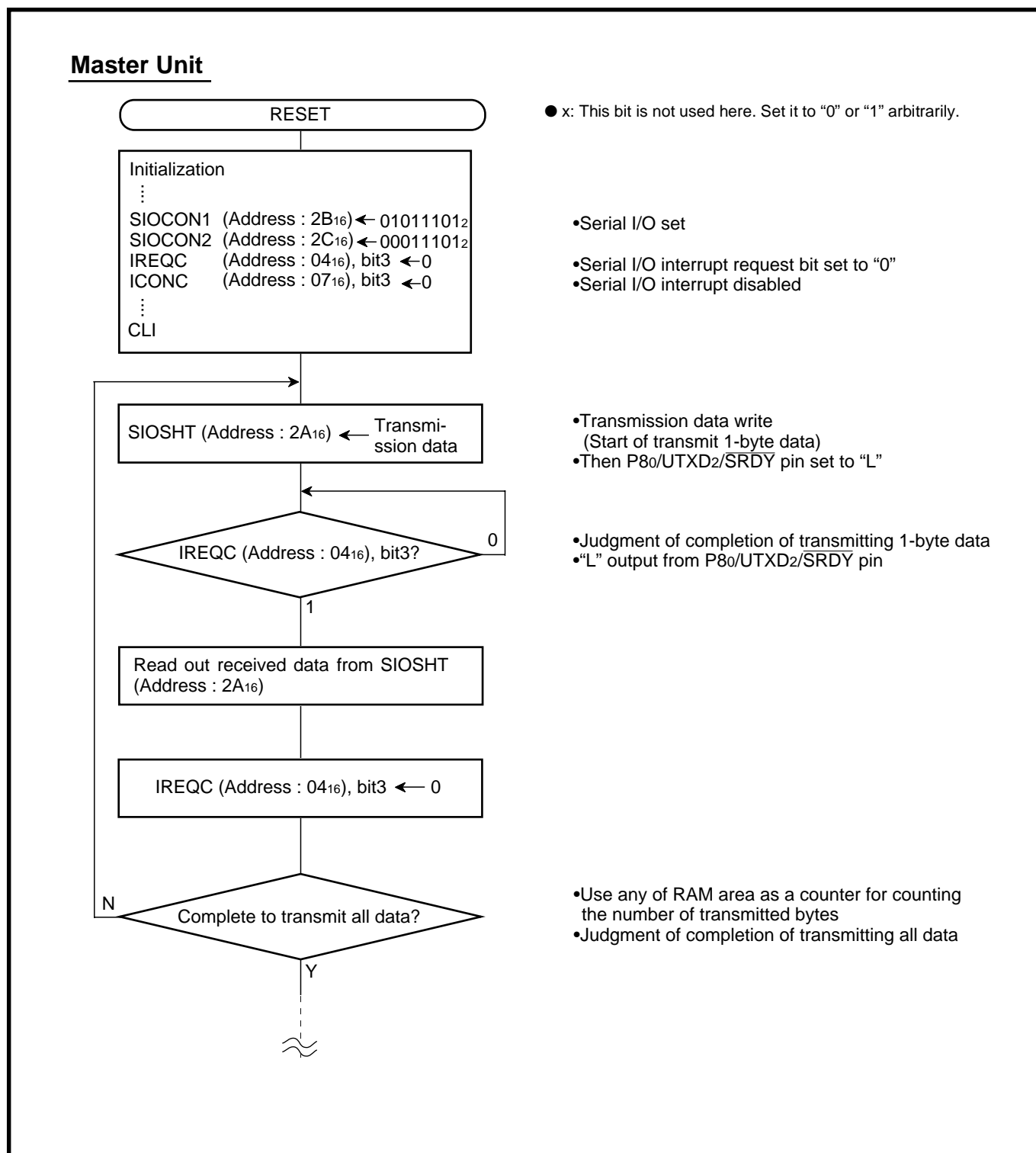


Fig. 2.3.17 Control procedure of SPI compatible mode in master

### 2.3.5 Notes on serial I/O

#### (1) Clock

When the external clock is selected as the transfer clock, its transfer clock needs to be controlled by the external source because the serial I/O shift register will keep being shifted while transfer clock is input even after transfer completion.

#### (2) Reception

When the external clock is selected as the transfer clock for reception, the receiving operation will start owing to the shift clock input even if write operation to the serial I/O shift register (SIOSHT) is not performed. The serial I/O interrupt request also occurs at completion of receiving. However, we recommend to write dummy data in the serial I/O shift register. Because this will cause followings and improve transfer reliability.

- Write to SIOSHT puts the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  pin to "L". This enables shift clock output of an external device.
- Write to SIOSHT clears the internal serial I/O counter.

**Note:** Do not read the serial I/O shift register which is shifting. Because this will cause incorrect-data read.

#### (3) STXD output

- When the internal clock is selected as the transfer clock, the STXD pin goes a high-impedance state after transfer completion.
- When the external clock is selected as the transfer clock, the STXD pin does not go a high-impedance state after transfer completion.

#### (4) SPI compatible mode

- When using the SPI compatible mode, set the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  select bit to "1" ( $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  signal output).
- When the external clock is selected in SPI compatible mode, the SRXD pin functions as a data output pin and the STXD pin functions as a data input pin.
- Do not write to the serial I/O shift register (SIOSHT) during a transfer as slave when in SPI compatible mode.
- Master operation of SPI compatible mode requires the timings:
  - From write operation to the SIOSHT to  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  pin put to "L"  
Requires 2 cycles of internal clock  $\phi$  + 2 cycles of serial I/O synchronous clock + 35 ns
  - From  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  pin put to "L" to SCLK switch  
Requires 35 ns
  - From the last pulse of SCLK to  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  pin put to "H"  
Requires 35 ns.



## 2.4 UART

This paragraph explains the registers setting method and the notes related to the UART.

### 2.4.1 Memory map

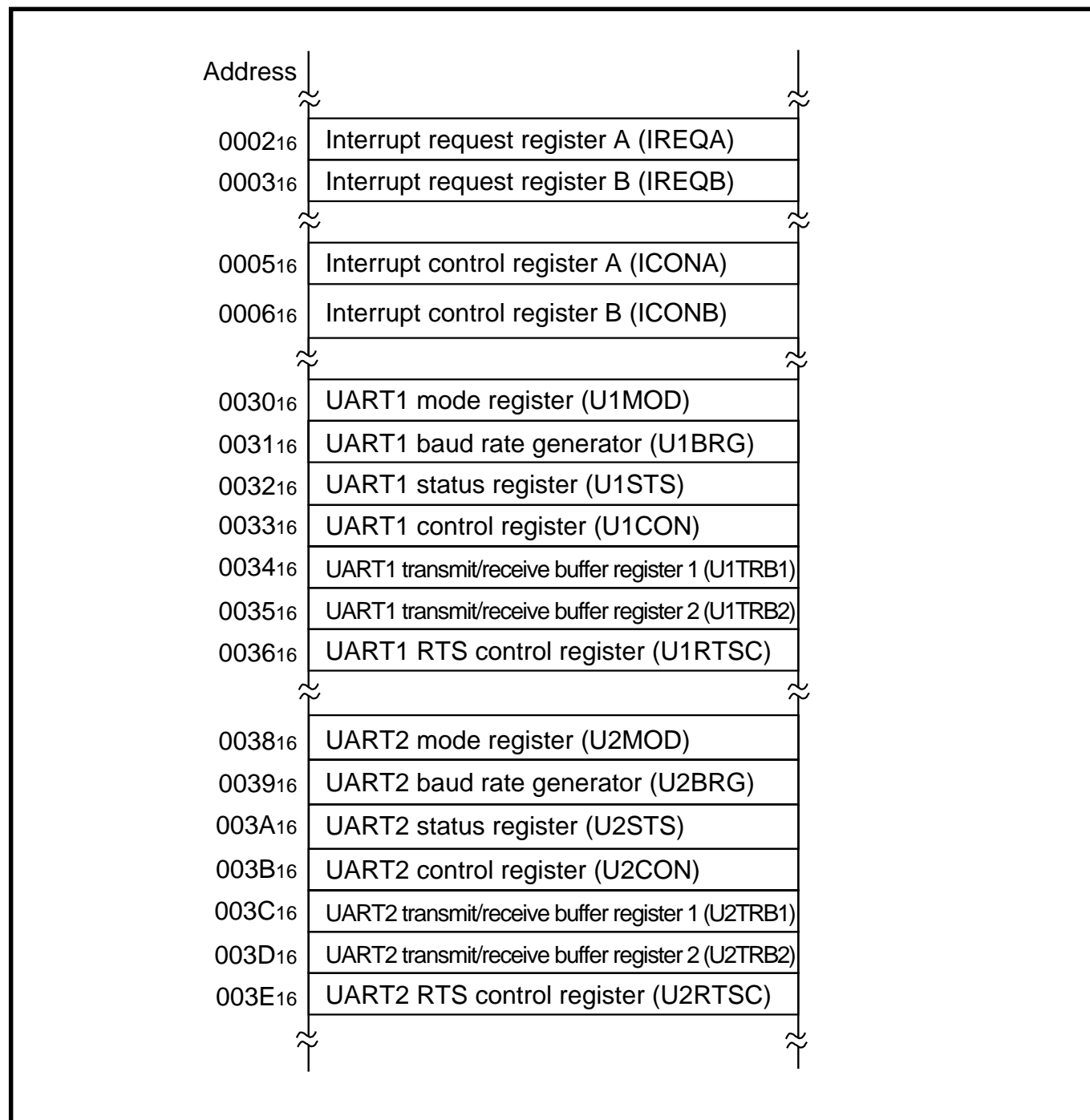


Fig. 2.4.1 Memory map of registers related to UART

## 2.4.2 Related registers

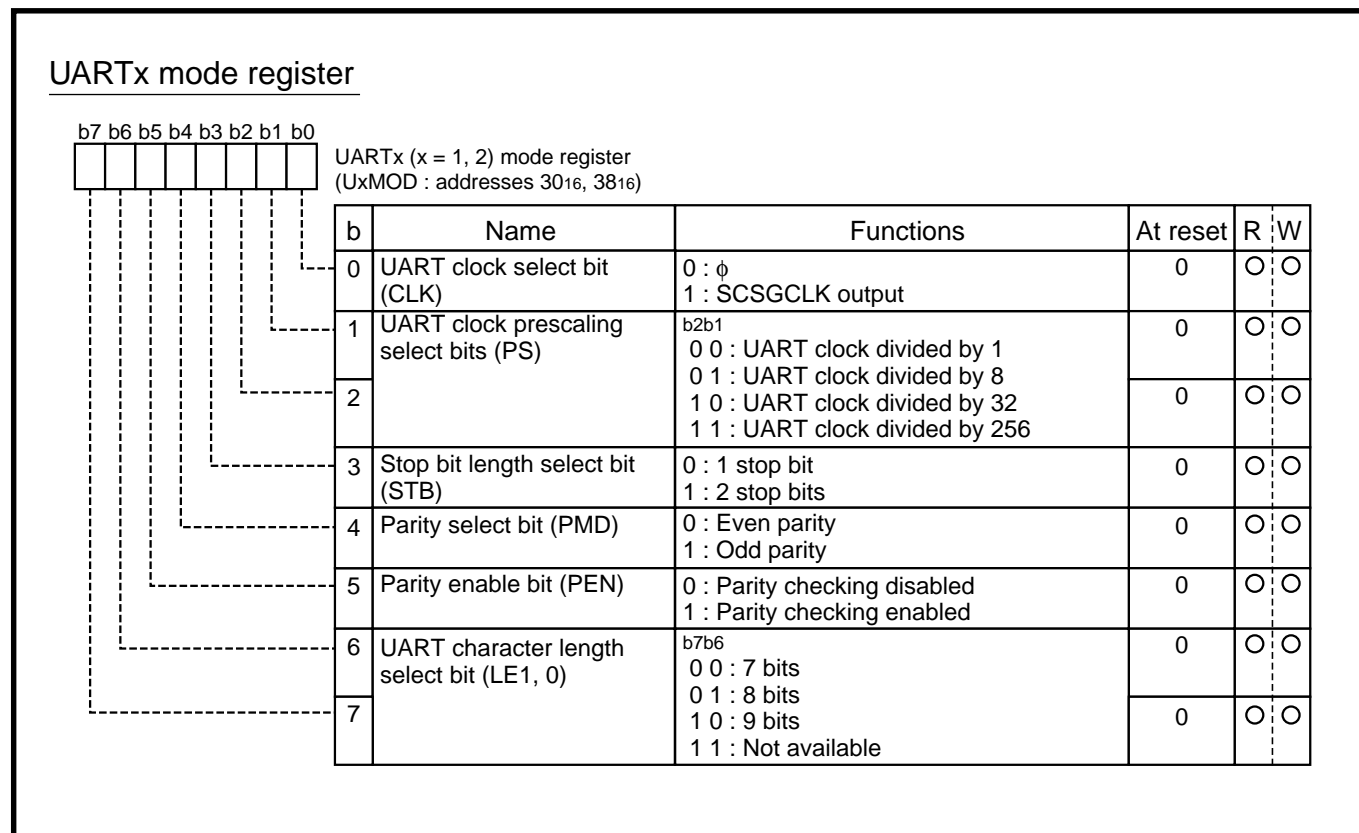


Fig. 2.4.2 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) mode register

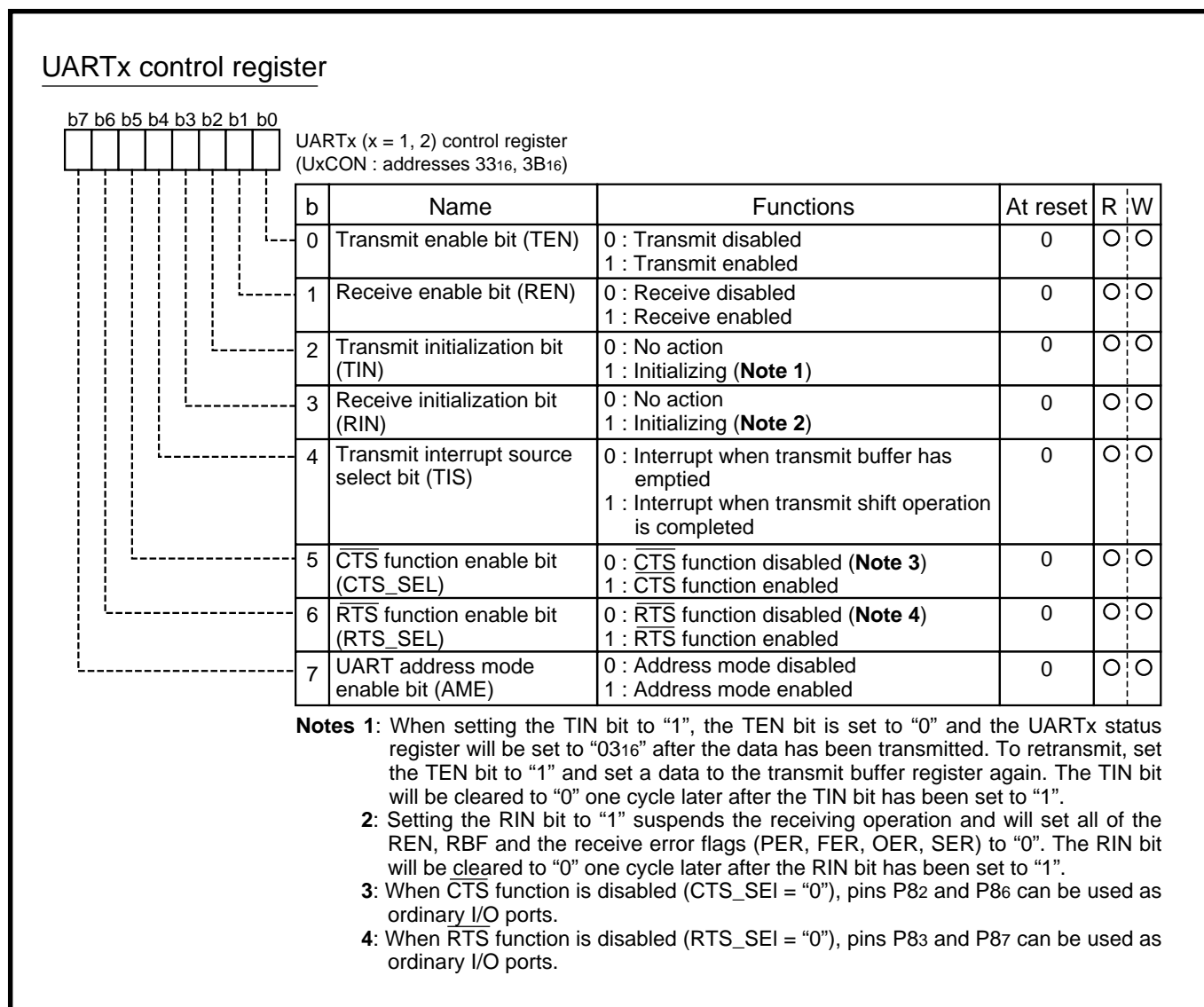


Fig. 2.4.3 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) control register

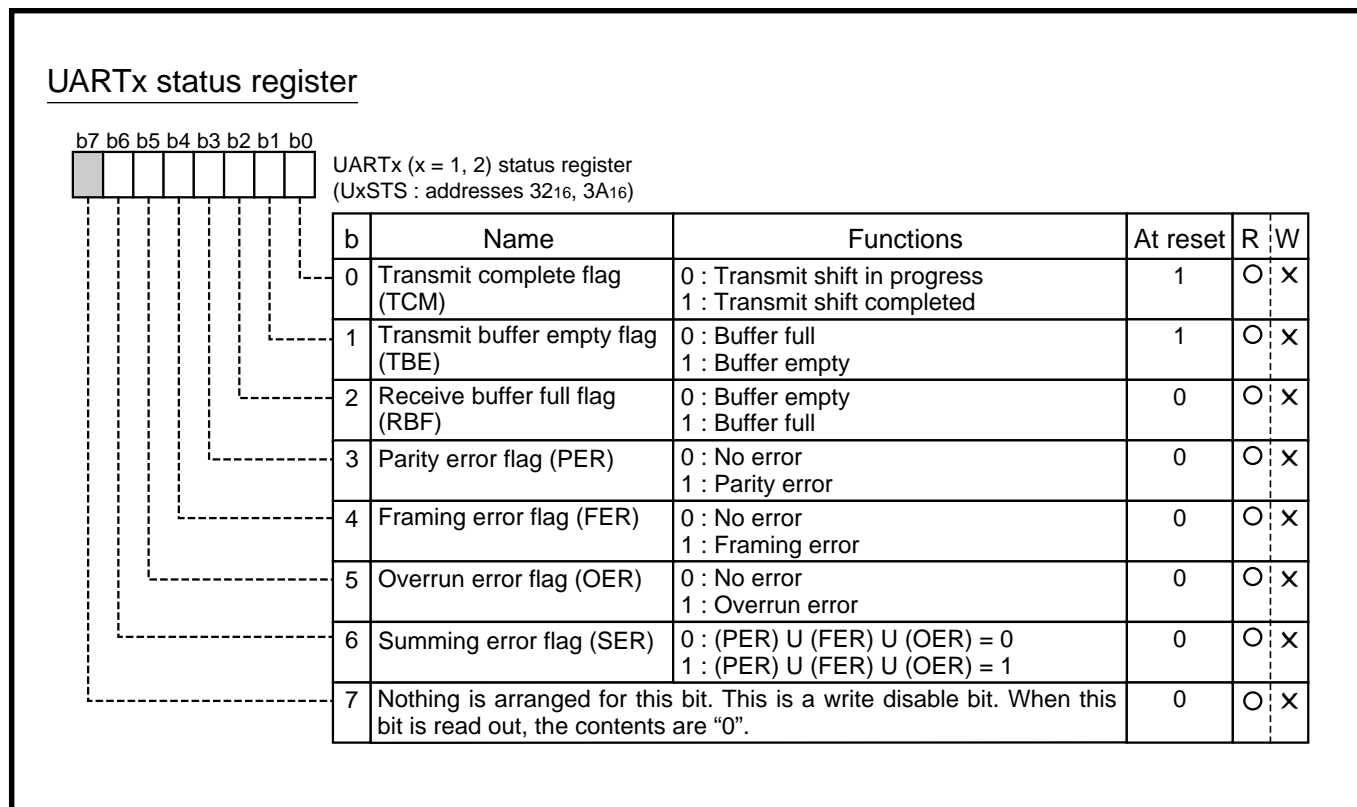


Fig. 2.4.4 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) status register

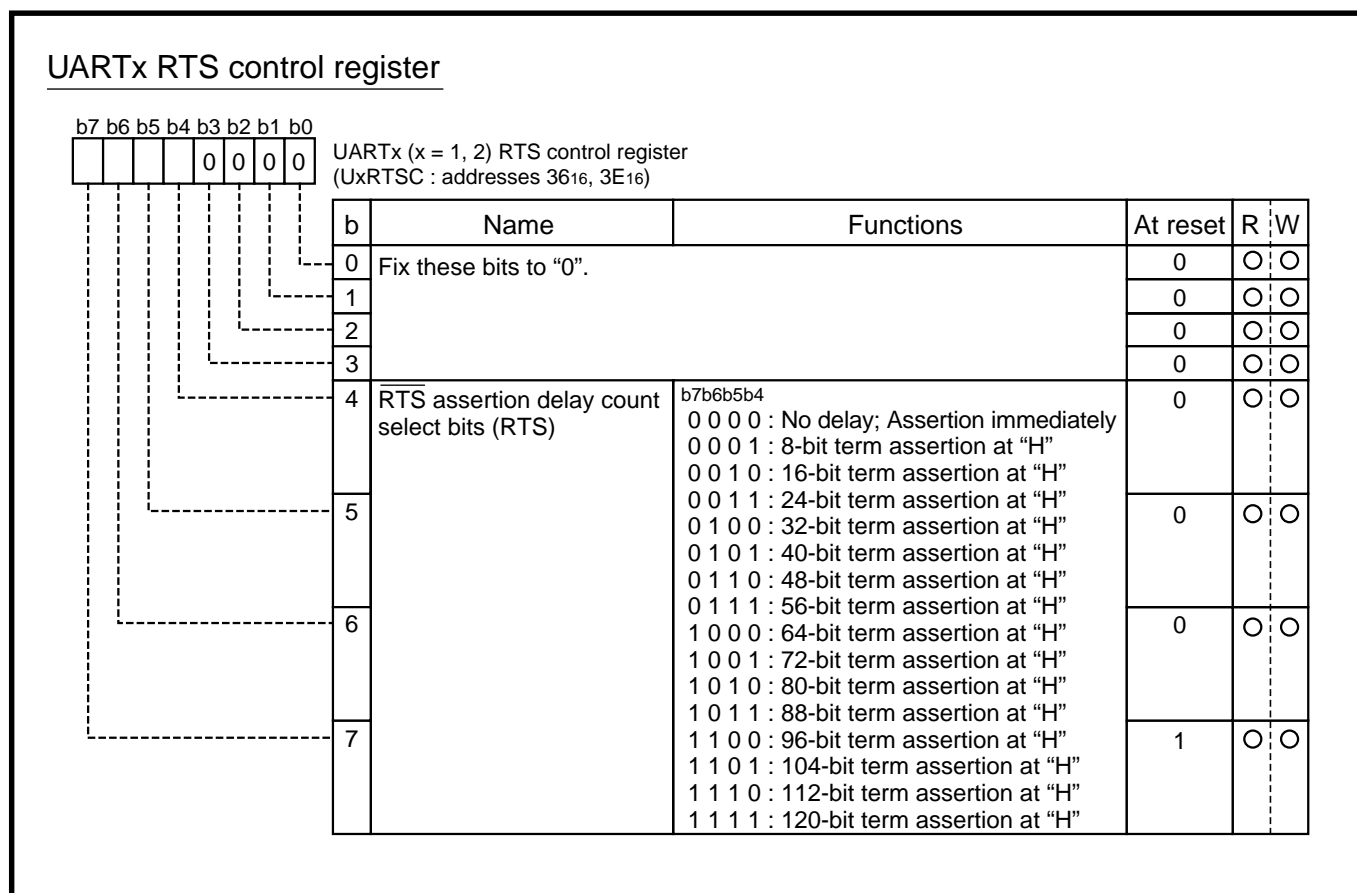


Fig. 2.4.5 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) RTS control register

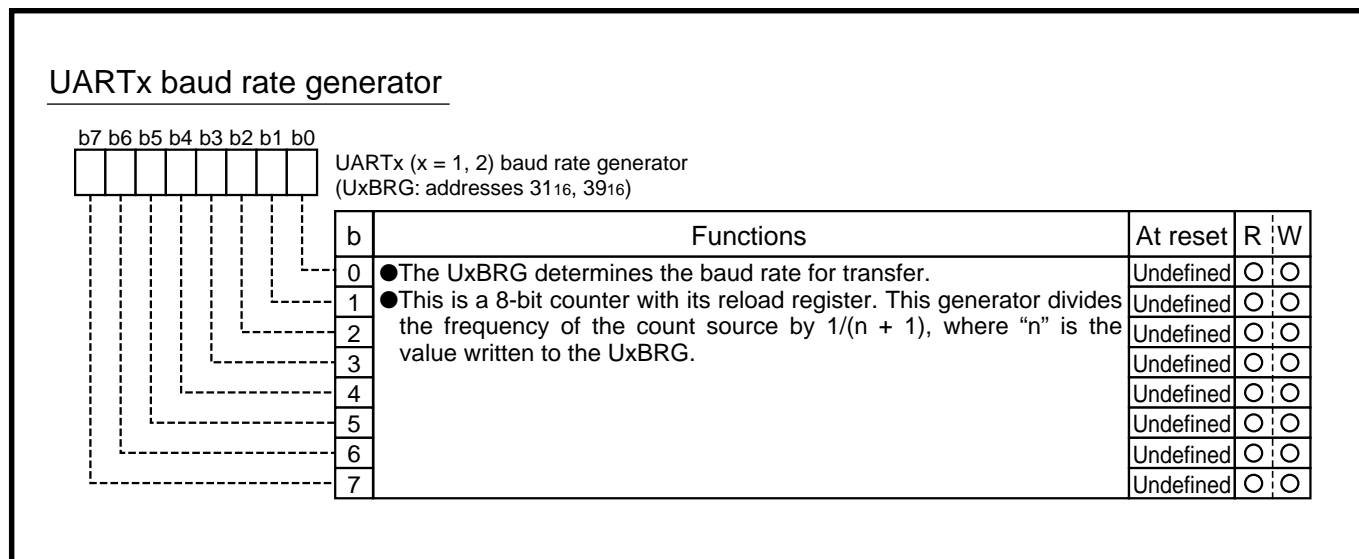
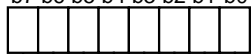


Fig. 2.4.6 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) baud rate generator

### UARTx transmit/receive buffer registers 1, 2

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0



UARTx (x = 1, 2) transmit/receive buffer register 1  
(UxTRB1: addresses 34<sub>16</sub>, 3C<sub>16</sub>)

b	Functions	At reset	R	W
0	The transmit buffer register and the receive buffer register are located at the same address. Writing a transmitting data and reading a received data are performed through the UxTRB. This is its low-order byte.	Undefined	○	○
1		Undefined	○	○
2	•At write	Undefined	○	○
3	The data is written into the transmit buffer register. It is not done into the receive buffer register.	Undefined	○	○
4	•At read	Undefined	○	○
5	The contents of receive buffer register is read.	Undefined	○	○
6	If a character bit length is 7 bits, the MSB of received data is invalid.	Undefined	○	○
7	Note that the contents of transmit buffer register cannot be read.	Undefined	○	○

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0



UARTx (x = 1, 2) transmit/receive buffer register 2  
(UxTRB2: addresses 35<sub>16</sub>, 3D<sub>16</sub>)

b	Functions	At reset	R	W
0	The transmit buffer register and the receive buffer register are located at the same address. Writing a transmitting data and reading a received data are performed through the UxTRB. This is its high-order byte.	Undefined	○	○
	•At write The data is written into the transmit buffer register. It is not done into the receive buffer register.			
	•At read The contents of receive buffer register is read. If a character bit length is 9 bits, the received high-order 7 bits of UxTRB2 are "0"			
	Note that the contents of transmit buffer register cannot be read. If a character bit length is 7 or 8 bits, the received contents of UxTRB2 are invalid.			
1	Nothing is arranged for this bit. This is a write disable bit. When this bit is read out, the contents are "0".	Undefined	○	×
2		Undefined	○	×
3		Undefined	○	×
4		Undefined	○	×
5		Undefined	○	×
6		Undefined	○	×
7		Undefined	○	×

Fig. 2.4.7 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) transmit/receive buffer registers 1, 2

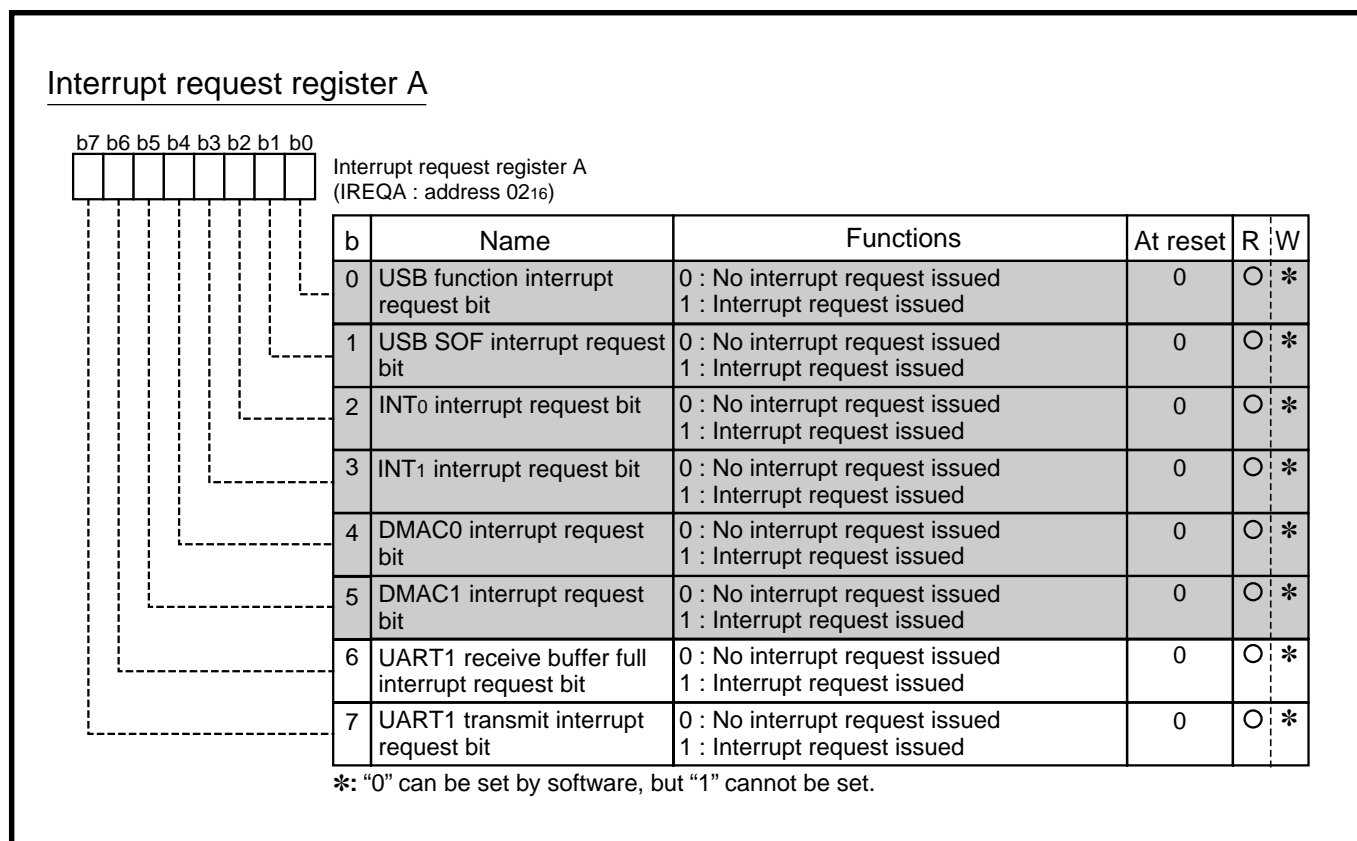


Fig. 2.4.8 Structure of Interrupt request register A

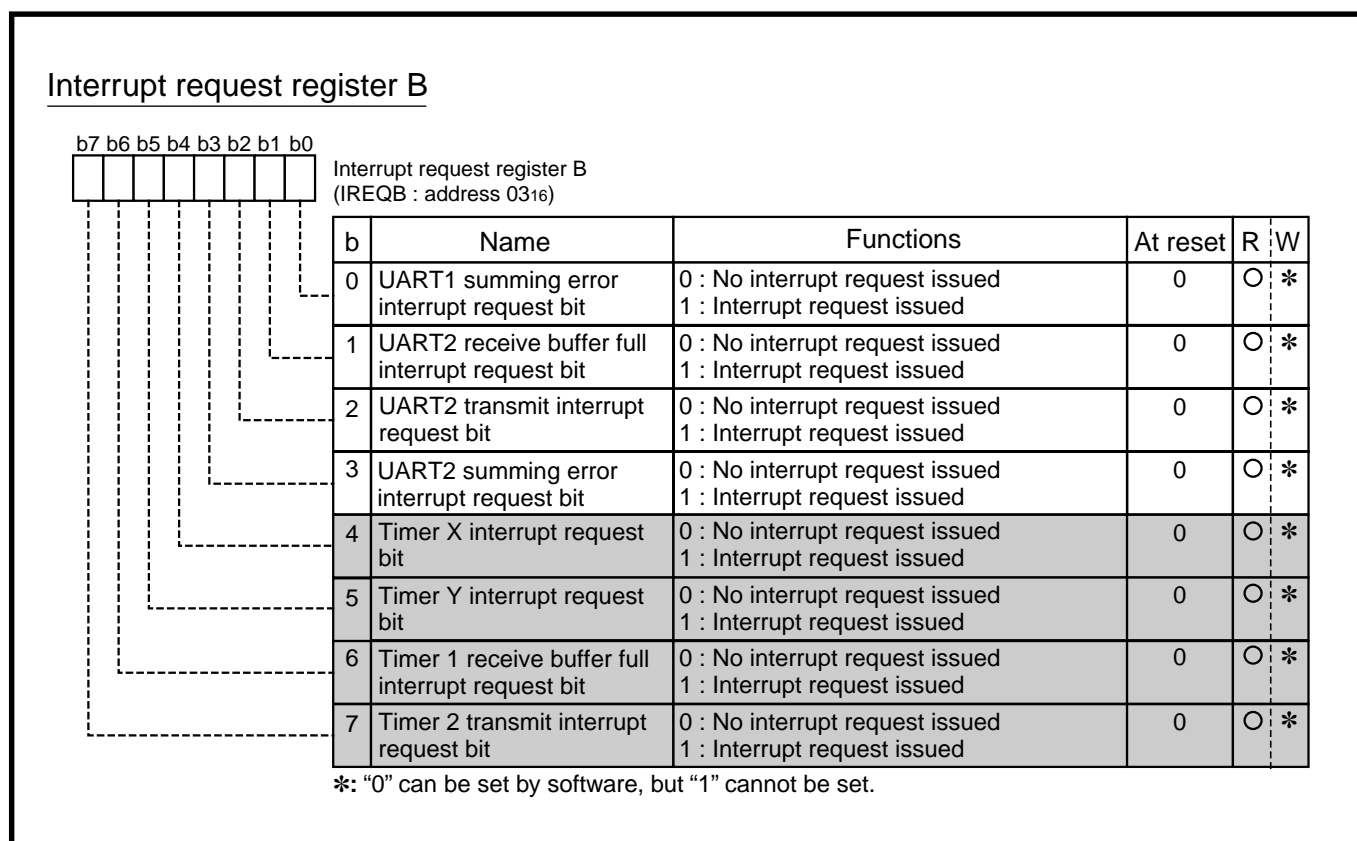


Fig. 2.4.9 Structure of Interrupt request register B

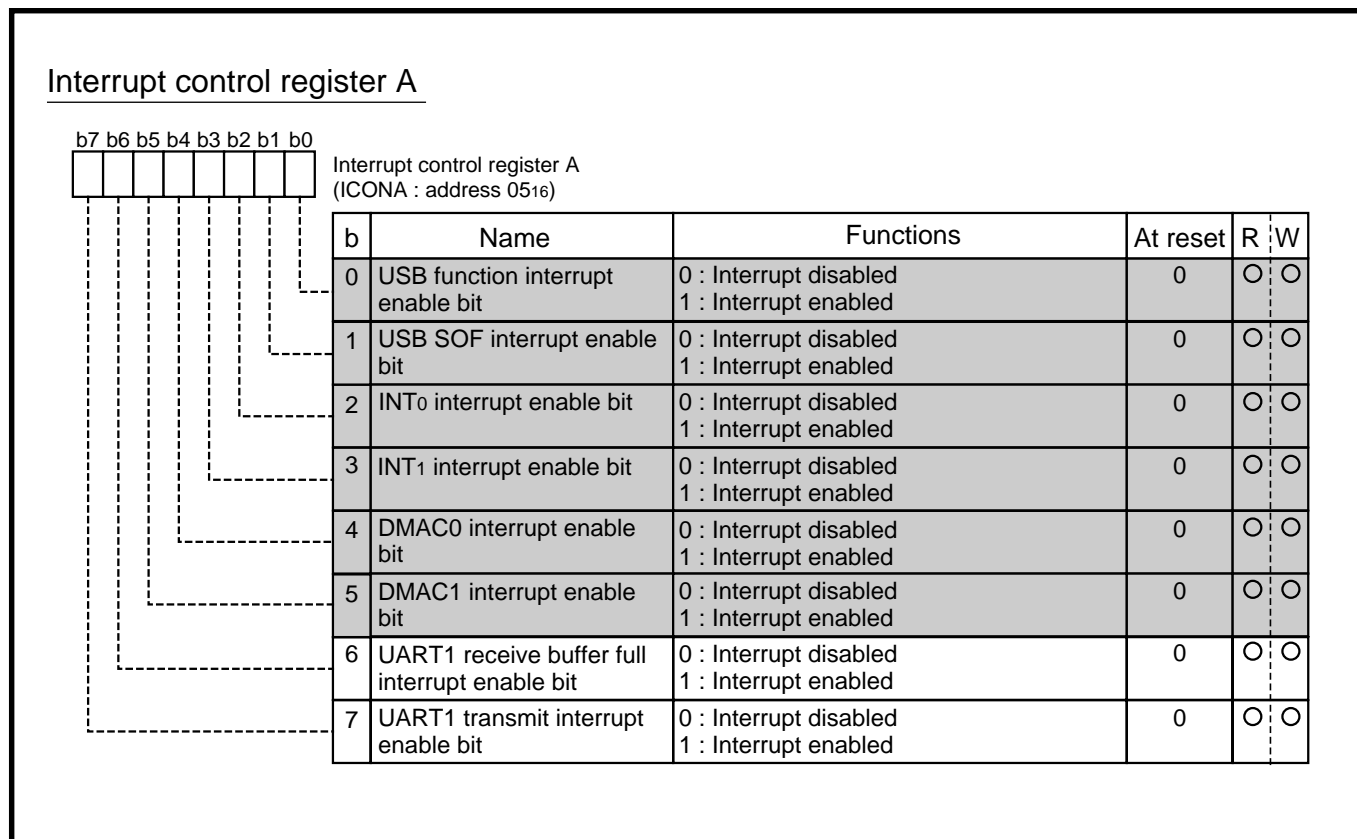


Fig. 2.4.10 Structure of Interrupt control register A

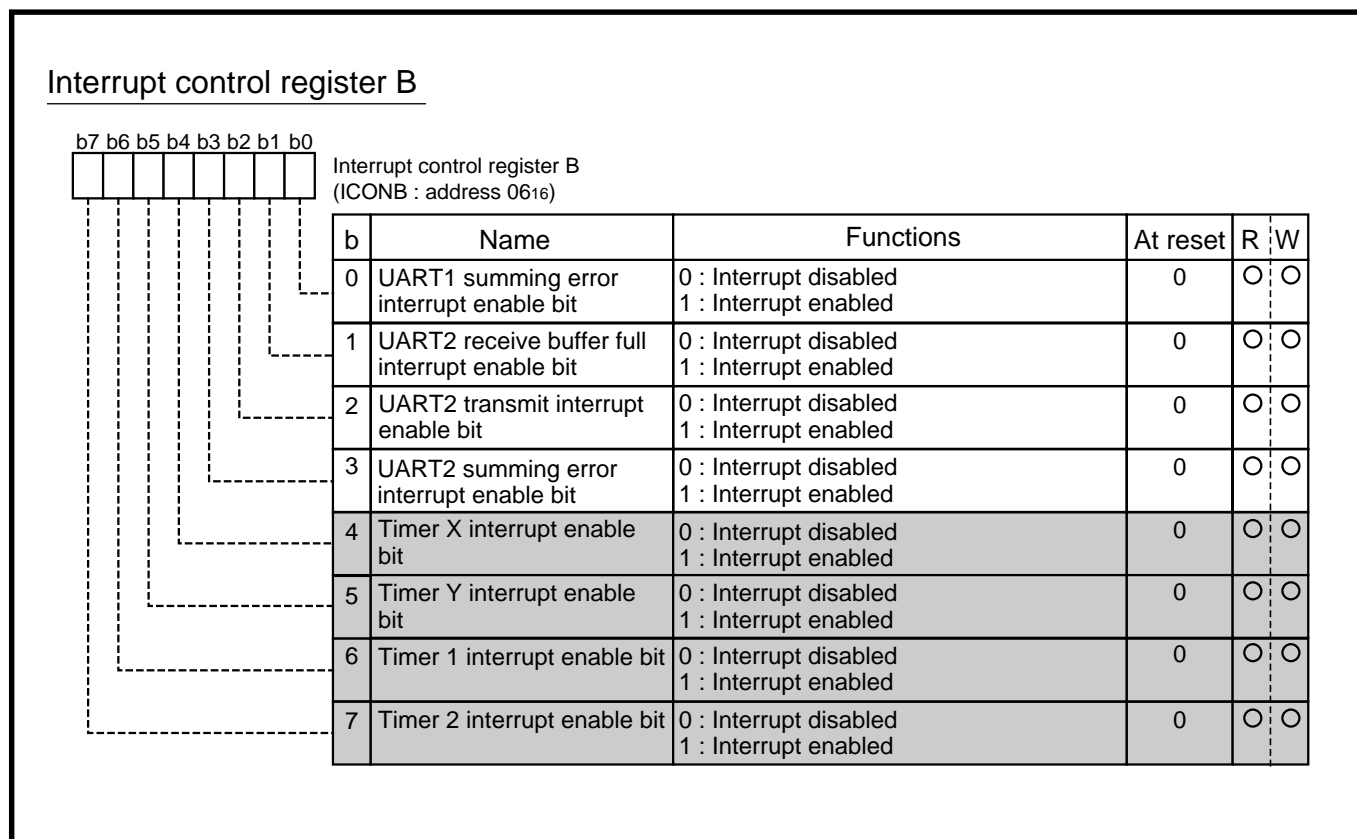


Fig. 2.4.11 Structure of Interrupt control register B



### 2.4.3 UART transfer data format

Figure 2.4.12 shows the UART transfer data format.

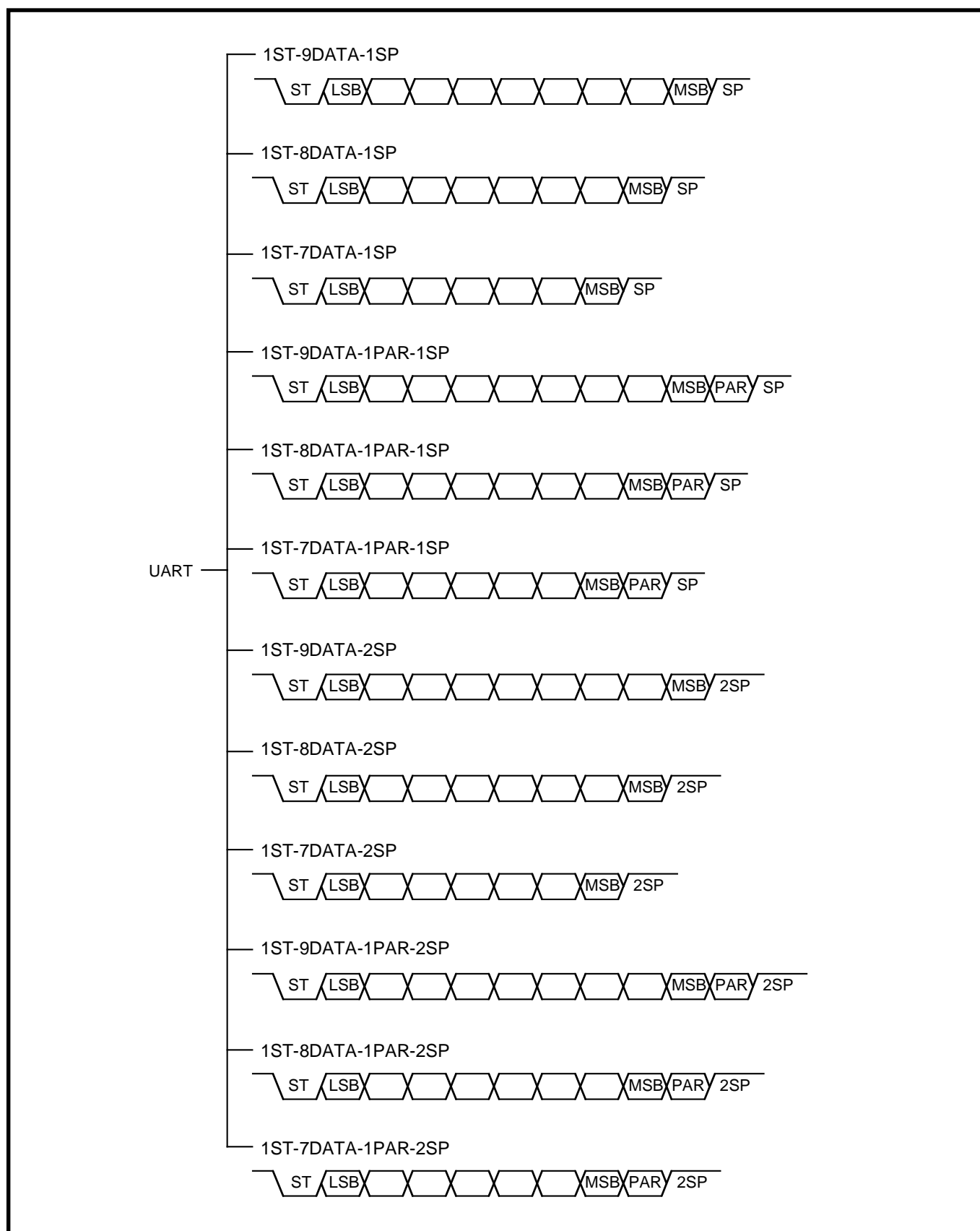


Fig. 2.4.12 UART transfer data format

### 2.4.4 Transfer bit rate

UART1 and UART2 can use either internal clock  $\phi$  or SCSGCLK (Special Count Source Generator output) as its clock.

#### (1) Setting examples using internal clock $\phi$

Table 2.4.1 shows setting examples of the baud rate generator (BRG) values and transfer bit rate values.

**Table 2.4.1 Setting examples of baud rate generator values and transfer bit rate values ( $\phi = 12$  MHz)**

$\phi/1$ (Note 1)		$\phi/8$ (Note 1)		$\phi/32$ (Note 1)		$\phi/32$ (Note 1)	
BRG setting value	Transfer bit rate (bps)	BRG setting value	Transfer bit rate (bps)	BRG setting value	Transfer bit rate (bps)	BRG setting value	Transfer bit rate (bps)
00 (00 <sub>16</sub> )	750,000.0						
01 (01 <sub>16</sub> )	375,000.0						
02 (02 <sub>16</sub> )	250,000.0						
03 (03 <sub>16</sub> )	187,500.0						
04 (04 <sub>16</sub> )	150,000.0						
05 (05 <sub>16</sub> )	125,000.0						
06 (06 <sub>16</sub> )	107,142.9						
07 (07 <sub>16</sub> )	93,750.0	00 (00 <sub>16</sub> )	93,750.0				
08 (08 <sub>16</sub> )	83,333.3	01 (01 <sub>16</sub> )	46,875.0				
09 (09 <sub>16</sub> )	75,000.0	02 (02 <sub>16</sub> )	31,250.0				
10 (0A <sub>16</sub> )	68,181.8	03 (03 <sub>16</sub> )	23,437.5	00 (00 <sub>16</sub> )	23,437.5		
11 (0B <sub>16</sub> )	65,250.0	04 (04 <sub>16</sub> )	18,750.0	01 (01 <sub>16</sub> )	11,718.7		
12 (0C <sub>16</sub> )	57,692.3	05 (05 <sub>16</sub> )	15,625.0	02 (02 <sub>16</sub> )	7,812.5		
13 (0D <sub>16</sub> )	53,571.4	06 (06 <sub>16</sub> )	13,392.8	03 (03 <sub>16</sub> )	5,859.4		
14 (0E <sub>16</sub> )	50,000.0	07 (07 <sub>16</sub> )	11,718.7	04 (04 <sub>16</sub> )	4,687.5		
15 (0F <sub>16</sub> )	46,875.0	08 (08 <sub>16</sub> )	10,416.6	05 (05 <sub>16</sub> )	3,906.3		
•	•	09 (09 <sub>16</sub> )	9,375.0	06 (06 <sub>16</sub> )	3,348.2		
•	•	10 (0A <sub>16</sub> )	8,522.7	07 (07 <sub>16</sub> )	2,929.7	00 (00 <sub>16</sub> )	2,929.7
•	•	11 (0B <sub>16</sub> )	7,812.5	08 (08 <sub>16</sub> )	2,604.2	01 (01 <sub>16</sub> )	1,464.8
•	•	12 (0C <sub>16</sub> )	7,211.5	09 (09 <sub>16</sub> )	2,343.7	02 (02 <sub>16</sub> )	976.6
•	•	13 (0D <sub>16</sub> )	6,696.4	10 (0A <sub>16</sub> )	2,130.6	03 (03 <sub>16</sub> )	732.4
•	•	14 (0E <sub>16</sub> )	6,250.0	11 (0B <sub>16</sub> )	1,953.1	04 (04 <sub>16</sub> )	585.9
•	•	15 (0F <sub>16</sub> )	5,859.3	12 (0C <sub>16</sub> )	1,802.8	05 (05 <sub>16</sub> )	488.3
•	•	•	•	13 (0D <sub>16</sub> )	1,674.1	06 (06 <sub>16</sub> )	418.5
•	•	•	•	14 (0E <sub>16</sub> )	1,562.5	07 (07 <sub>16</sub> )	366.2
•	•	•	•	15 (0F <sub>16</sub> )	1,464.8	08 (08 <sub>16</sub> )	325.5
•	•	•	•	•	•	09 (09 <sub>16</sub> )	292.9
•	•	•	•	•	•	10 (0A <sub>16</sub> )	266.3
•	•	•	•	•	•	11 (0B <sub>16</sub> )	244.1
•	•	•	•	•	•	12 (0C <sub>16</sub> )	225.3
•	•	•	•	•	•	13 (0D <sub>16</sub> )	209.2
•	•	•	•	•	•	14 (0E <sub>16</sub> )	195.3
•	•	•	•	•	•	15 (0F <sub>16</sub> )	183.1
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
253 (FD <sub>16</sub> )	2,952.7	253 (FD <sub>16</sub> )	369.0	253 (FD <sub>16</sub> )	92.2	253 (FD <sub>16</sub> )	11.5
254 (FE <sub>16</sub> )	2,941.1	254 (FE <sub>16</sub> )	367.6	254 (FE <sub>16</sub> )	91.9	254 (FE <sub>16</sub> )	11.4
255 (FF <sub>16</sub> )	2,929.7	255 (FF <sub>16</sub> )	366.2	255 (FF <sub>16</sub> )	91.6	255 (FF <sub>16</sub> )	11.4

**Notes 1:** Select the UART clock prescaling with bits 1 and 2 of UARTx mode register.

**2:** Equation of transfer bit rate:

$$\text{Transfer bit rate (bps)} = \frac{f_i^*}{(\text{BRG setting value} + 1) \times 16}$$

\* :  $f_i$  is selectable among  $\phi/1$ ,  $\phi/8$ ,  $\phi/32$ , and  $\phi/256$  with bits 1 and 2 of UARTx mode register.

**(2) Setting examples using SCSGCLK output**

Table 2.4.2 shows setting examples of the SCSG1, SCSG2 and the baud rate generator (BRG) values and transfer bit rate values.

**Table 2.4.2 Setting examples of SCSG1, SCSG2 and baud rate generator values and transfer bit rate values ( $\phi = 12$  MHz)**

Transfer bit rate (bps) (Note 1)	Special Count Source Generator			UART clock prescaling (Note 2)	BRG setting value	Real rate (bps)
	SCSG1 setting value (Note 3)	SCSG2 setting value	SCSGCLK (Hz) (Note 4)			
50	bypassed	149 (95 <sub>16</sub> )	80000.00	1/1	99 (63 <sub>16</sub> )	50.00
75	bypassed	99 (63 <sub>16</sub> )	120000.00	1/1	99 (63 <sub>16</sub> )	75.00
110	78 (4E <sub>16</sub> )	67 (43 <sub>16</sub> )	174236.78	1/1	98 (62 <sub>16</sub> )	110.00
134.5	172 (AC <sub>16</sub> )	55 (37 <sub>16</sub> )	213047.07	1/1	98 (62 <sub>16</sub> )	134.50
150	bypassed	49 (31 <sub>16</sub> )	240000.00	1/1	99 (63 <sub>16</sub> )	150.00
300	bypassed	24 (18 <sub>16</sub> )	480000.00	1/1	99 (63 <sub>16</sub> )	300.00
600	24 (18 <sub>16</sub> )	11 (0B <sub>16</sub> )	960000.00	1/1	99 (63 <sub>16</sub> )	600.00
1200	bypassed	24 (18 <sub>16</sub> )	480000.00	1/1	24 (18 <sub>16</sub> )	1200.00
1800	24 (18 <sub>16</sub> )	19 (13 <sub>16</sub> )	576000.00	1/1	19 (13 <sub>16</sub> )	1800.00
2000	bypassed	24 (18 <sub>16</sub> )	480000.00	1/1	14 (0E <sub>6</sub> )	2000.00
2400	24 (18 <sub>16</sub> )	19 (13 <sub>16</sub> )	576000.00	1/1	14 (0E <sub>6</sub> )	2400.00
3600	24 (18 <sub>16</sub> )	19 (13 <sub>16</sub> )	576000.00	1/1	9 (09 <sub>16</sub> )	3600.00
4800	24 (18 <sub>16</sub> )	14 (0E <sub>6</sub> )	768000.00	1/1	9 (09 <sub>16</sub> )	4800.00
7200	24 (18 <sub>16</sub> )	19 (13 <sub>16</sub> )	576000.00	1/1	4 (04 <sub>16</sub> )	7200.00
9600	24 (18 <sub>16</sub> )	14 (0E <sub>6</sub> )	768000.00	1/1	4 (04 <sub>16</sub> )	9600.00
14400	24 (18 <sub>16</sub> )	09 (09 <sub>16</sub> )	1152000.00	1/1	4 (04 <sub>16</sub> )	14400.00
19200	35 (23 <sub>16</sub> )	00 (00 <sub>16</sub> )	11666666.66	1/1	37 (25 <sub>16</sub> )	19188.60
28800	24 (18 <sub>16</sub> )	00 (00 <sub>16</sub> )	11520000.00	1/1	24 (18 <sub>16</sub> )	28800.00
31250	bypassed	bypassed	12000000.00	1/1	23 (17 <sub>16</sub> )	31250.00
38400	35 (23 <sub>16</sub> )	00 (00 <sub>16</sub> )	11666666.66	1/1	18 (12 <sub>16</sub> )	38377.19
57600	bypassed	bypassed	12000000.00	1/1	12 (0C <sub>16</sub> )	57692.31
115200	11 (0B <sub>16</sub> )	00 (00 <sub>16</sub> )	11000000.00	1/1	5 (05 <sub>16</sub> )	114583.33

**Notes 1:** Equation of transfer bit rate:

$$\text{Transfer bit rate (bps)} = \frac{f_i^*}{(\text{BRG setting value} + 1) \times 16}$$

\* :  $f_i$  is selectable among SCSGCLK/1, SCSGCLK/8, SCSGCLK/32, and SCSGCLK/256 with bits 1 and 2 of UARTx mode register.

**2:** Select the UART clock prescaling with bits 1 and 2 of UARTx mode register.

**3:** The internal clock  $\phi$  is used as the SCSG2 count source when the SCSG1 count stop bit is "1" or the SCSG1 timer set value is "00<sub>16</sub>".

**4:** Equation of SCSGCLK frequency:

$$\text{SCSGCLK (MHz)} = \phi \times \frac{\text{SCSG1 setting value}}{(\text{SCSG1 setting value} + 1)} \times \frac{1}{(\text{SCSG2 setting value} + 1)}$$

## 2.4.5 Operation of transmitting and receiving

### (1) Transmit operation

- The transmit buffer empty flag (TBE) is set to “0” when the low-order byte of transmitted data is written into the UARTx (x = 1, 2) transmit buffer register 1 in the condition of transmission enabled. When using 9-bit character length, set the data into the UARTx transmit buffer register 2 (high-order byte) first before the UARTx transmit buffer register 1 (low-order byte).
- If the transmit shift register is empty in the condition of  $\overline{\text{CTS}}$  function disabled, the transmitted data which is written into the UARTx (x = 1, 2) transmit buffer register 1 will be transferred to the transmit shift register at the same time. When the TBE flag becomes “1”, the following data can be set to the UARTx (x = 1, 2) transmit buffer. At this point, the UART transmit interrupt request occurs when the transmit interrupt source select bit (TIS) is “0”.
- When the  $\overline{\text{CTS}}$  function is enabled, the transmitted data is not transferred to the transmit shift register until “L” is input to the  $\overline{\text{CTSx}}$  pin (P8<sub>6</sub>/ $\overline{\text{CTS}}_1$ , P8<sub>2</sub>/ $\overline{\text{CTS}}_2$ /SRXD).
- The data is transmitted with the LSB first format. Once the transmission starts, it continues until the last bit has been transmitted even though clearing the transmit enable bit (TEN) to “0” (disabled) or inputting “H” to the  $\overline{\text{CTSx}}$  pin.
- After completion of the last bit transmitting, if the TBE flag is “1”, or the TEN bit is “0” (disabled) or “H” is input to the  $\overline{\text{CTSx}}$  pin, the transmit complete flag (TCM) goes to “1”. At this point, the UARTx transmit interrupt request occurs when the TIS bit is “1”.

### (2) Receive operation

- The data is received with the LSB first format in the condition of reception enabled.
- When the stop bit is detected, the received data is transferred from the receive shift register to the UARTx (x = 1, 2) receive buffer register. At the same time, if there is no error, the receive buffer full flag (RBF) is set to “1” and the UARTx receive buffer full interrupt request occurs.
- If receive errors occur, the corresponding error flags of UARTx status register are set to “1” and the UARTx summing error interrupt request occurs.
- The receive buffer full flag (RBF) is set to “0” when the contents of UARTx receive buffer register 1 is read out. Then when the  $\overline{\text{RTS}}$  function is disabled, the following data can be received. When using 9-bit character length, read the data from the UARTx receive buffer register 2 (high-order byte) first before the UARTx receive buffer register 1 (low-order byte).
- When the  $\overline{\text{RTS}}$  function is enabled, the  $\overline{\text{RTS}}$  assertion delay count is specified by the UARTx RTS control register. The delay time from the reception of the last stop bit to the start bit is selectable. The  $\overline{\text{RTSx}}$  pin (P8<sub>7</sub>/ $\overline{\text{RTS}}_1$ , P8<sub>3</sub>/ $\overline{\text{RTS}}_2$ /STXD) outputs “H” during the delayed time. After that, the  $\overline{\text{RTSx}}$  pin outputs “L” and a reception is enabled.
- If the start bit is detected in the term of “H” assertion of  $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ , its assertion count is suspended and the  $\overline{\text{RTSx}}$  pin remains “H” output. After receiving the last stop bit, the count is resumed.

**(3) Countermeasure for errors**

Three errors can be detected at reception. Each error is detected simultaneously when the data is transferred from the receive shift register to the receive buffer register. If receive errors occur, the corresponding error flags of UARTx status register are set to "1". When any one of errors occurs, the summing error flag is set to "1" and the UARTx summing error interrupt request bit is also set to "1". If a receive error occurs, the reception does not set the UARTx receive buffer full interrupt request bit to "1".

If receive errors occur, initialize the error flags and the UARTx receive buffer register and then retransmit the data.

Table 2.4.3 shows the error flags set condition and how to clear error flags.

**Table 2.4.3 Error flags set condition and how to clear error flags**

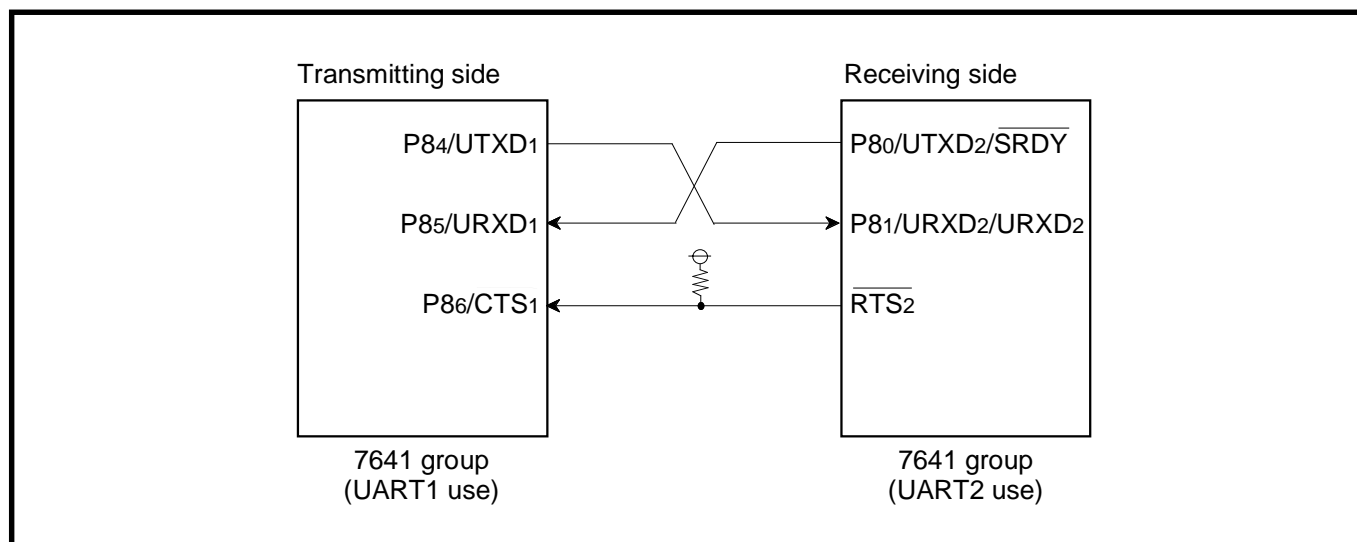
Error flag	Error flag set condition	How to clear error flag
Overrun flag (OER)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•If the previous data in the receive buffer register is not read before the current receive operation is completed.</li> <li>•If any one of error flags is "1" for the previous data and the current receive operation is completed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•Reading UARTx status register</li> <li>•Hardware reset</li> <li>•Setting the receive initialization bit (RIN) to "1"</li> </ul>
Framing error flag (FER)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•When the number of stop bit of the received data does not correspond with the selection with the stop bit length select bit (STB).</li> </ul>	
Parity error flag (PER)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•When the sum total of 1s of received data and the parity does not correspond with the selection with the parity select bit (PMD).</li> </ul>	
Summing error flag (SER)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>•When any one of the PER, FER and OER is set to "1".</li> </ul>	

## 2.4.6 UART application example

### (1) Data output (control of peripheral IC)

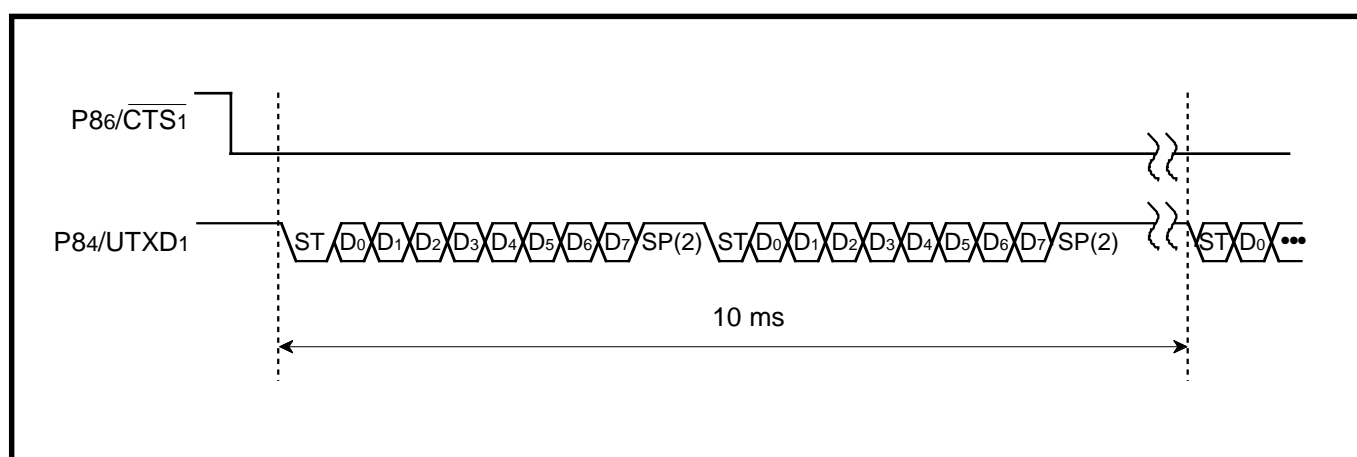
**Outline :** Data is transmitted and received, using the UART.

Figure 2.4.13 shows a connection diagram, and Figure 2.4.14 shows a timing chart.



**Fig. 2.4.13 Connection diagram**

- Specifications :**
- Transmitter: UART1 is used.
  - Receiver: UART2 is used.
  - Transfer bit rate : 9600 bps ( $\phi = f(X_{IN})/4 = 4 \text{ MHz divided by } 416$ )
  - Data format: 1ST-9DATA-2ST
  - Use of  $\overline{\text{CTS}}$  and  $\overline{\text{RTS}}$  functions
  - 2-byte data is transferred from the transmitting side to the receiving side at intervals of 10 ms generated by the timer.



**Fig. 2.4.14 Timing chart**

Figure 2.4.15 shows the registers setting for the transmitter, and Figures 2.4.16 and 2.4.17 show the registers setting for the receiver.

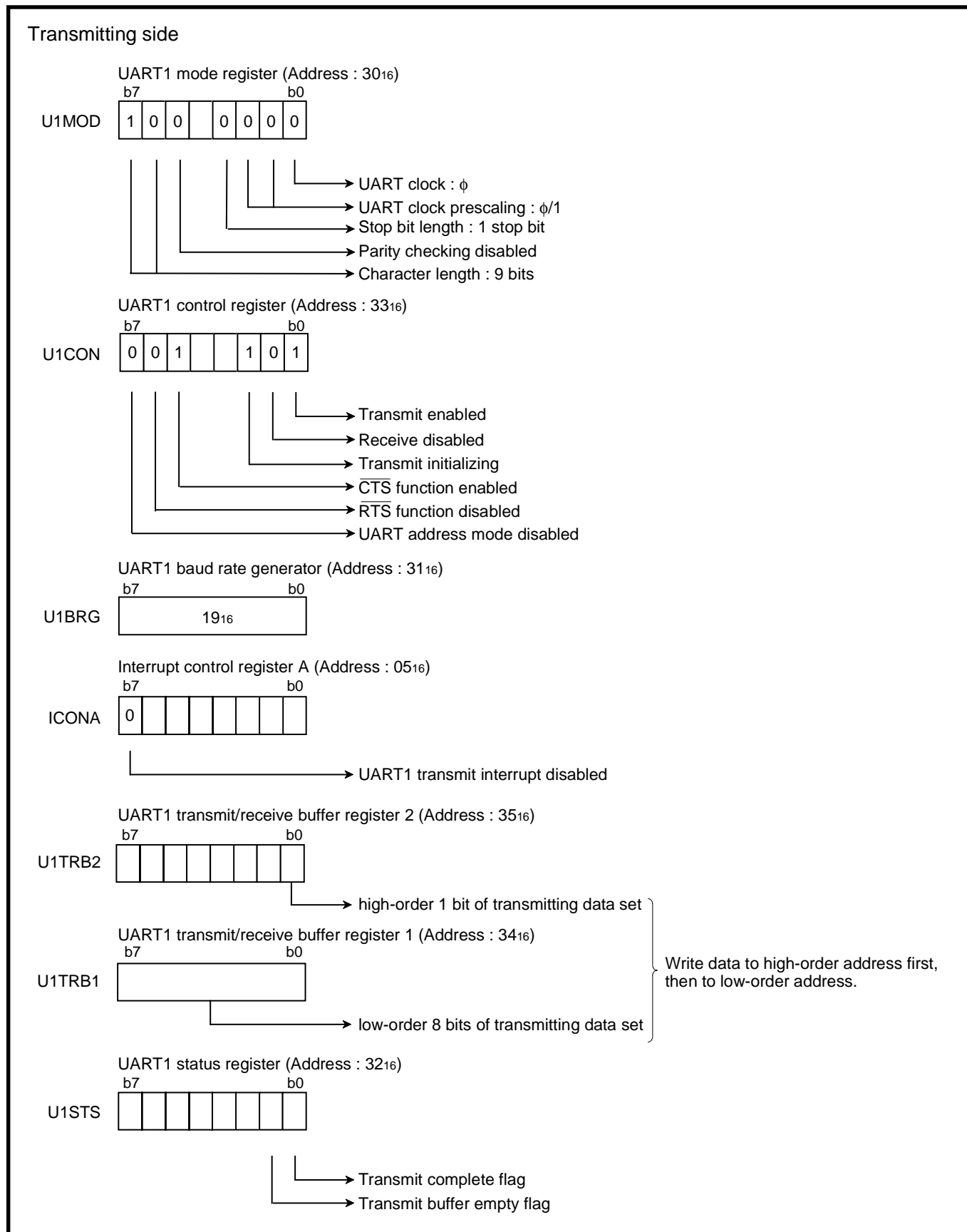


Fig. 2.4.15 Registers setting for transmitter



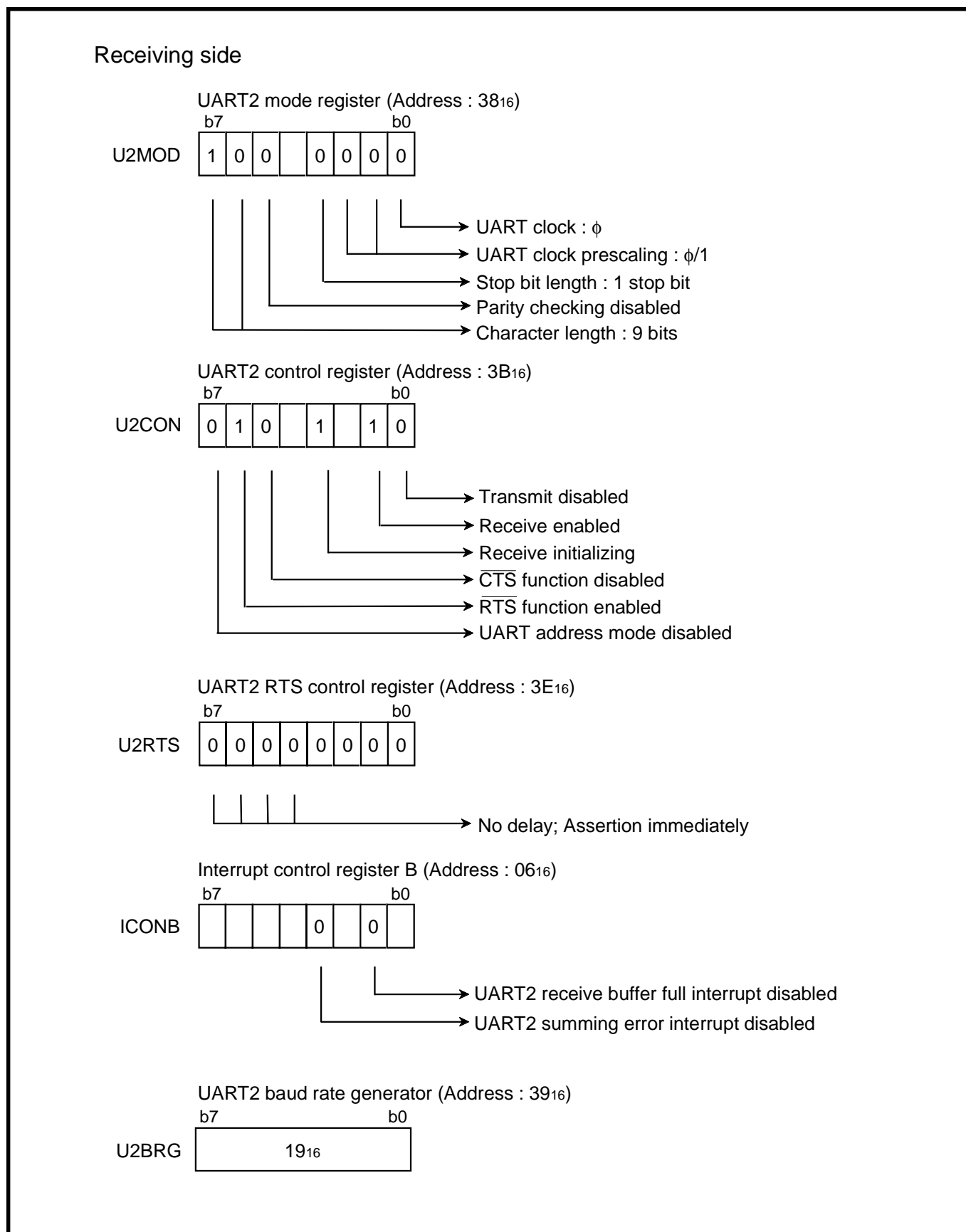
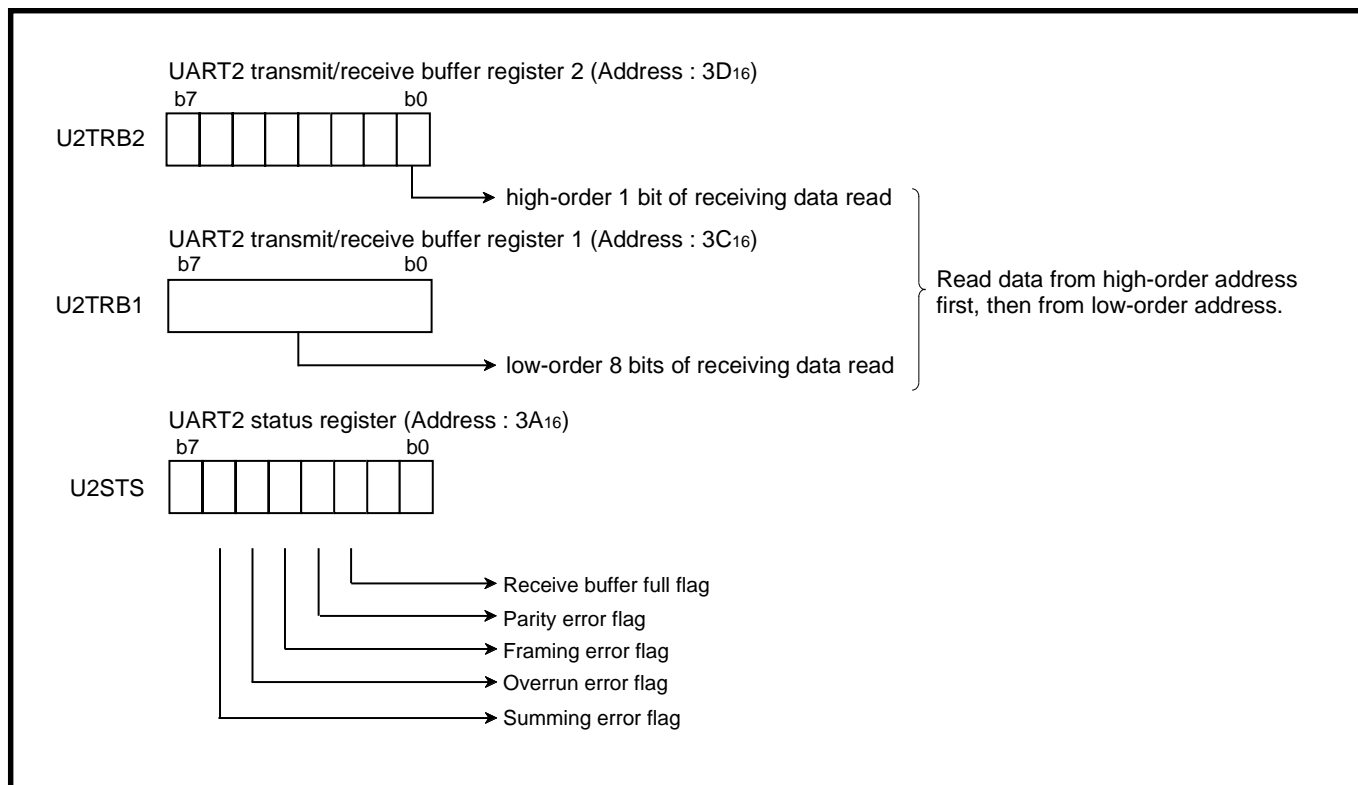


Fig. 2.4.16 Registers setting for receiver (1)



**Fig. 2.4.17 Registers setting for receiver (2)**

Figure 2.4.18 shows a control procedure of transmitter, and Figure 2.4.19 shows a control procedure of receiver.

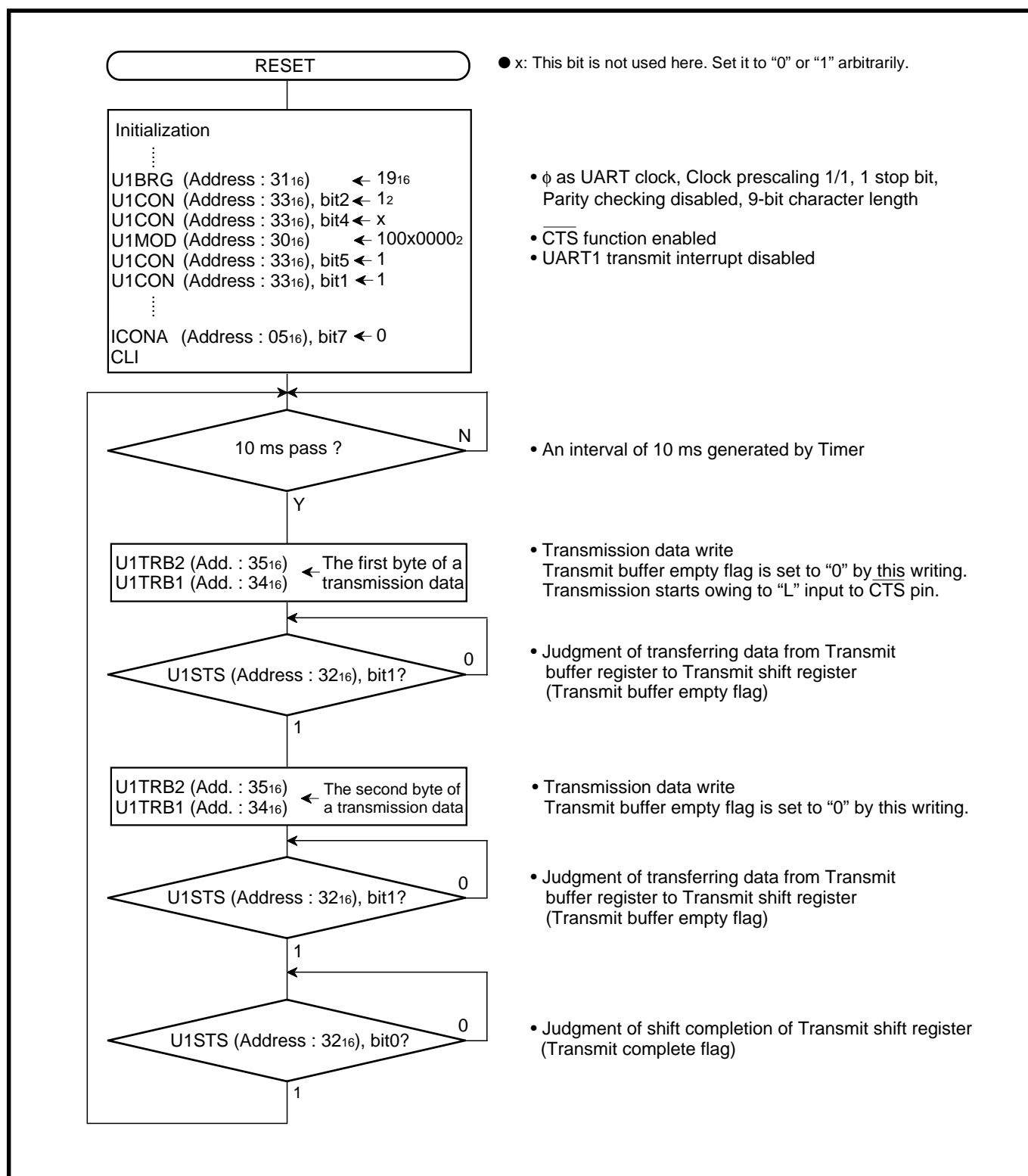


Fig. 2.4.18 Control procedure of transmitter

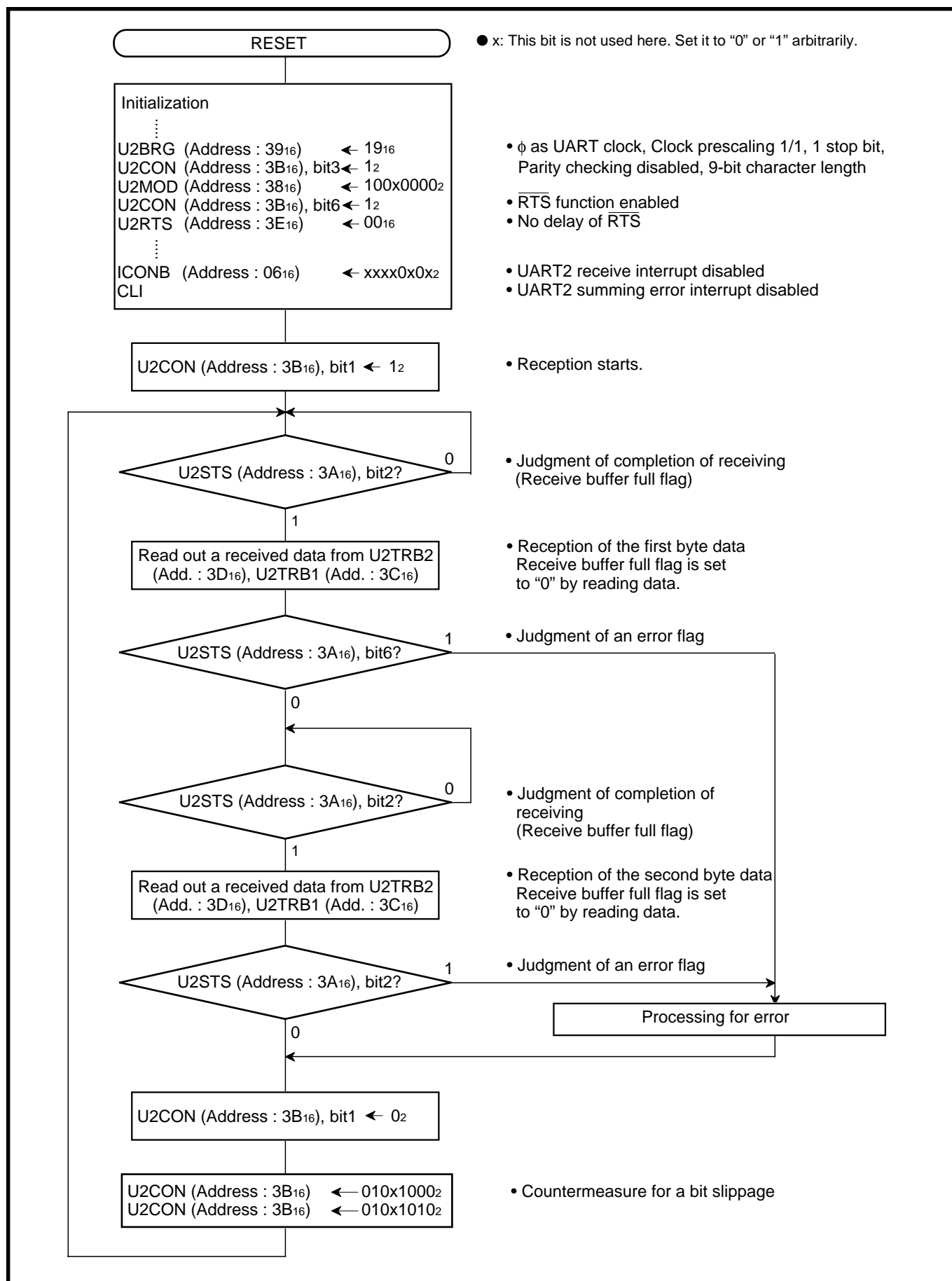


Fig. 2.4.19 Control procedure of receiver

## (2) UART address mode

### ●Operation explanation

The UART address mode is intended for use to communicate between the specified MCUs in a multi-MCU environment. The UART address mode can be used in either an 8-bit or 9-bit character length. An address is identified by the MSB of the incoming data being "1". The bit is "0" for non-address data.

When the MSB of the incoming data is "0" in the UART address mode, the Receive Buffer Full Flag is set to "1", but the Receive Buffer Full Interrupt Request Bit is not set to "1". When the MSB of the incoming data is "1", normal receive operation is performed. In the UART address mode an overrun error is not detected for reception of the 2nd and onward bytes. An occurrence of framing error or parity error sets the Summing Error Interrupt Request Bit to "1" and the data is not received independent of its MSB contents.

Usage of UART address mode is explained as follows:

- (1) Set the UART Address Mode Enable Bit to "1".
- (2) Sends the address data of a slave MCU first from a host MCU to all slave MCUs. The MSB of address data must be "1" and the remaining 7 bits specify the address.
- (3) The all slave MCUs automatically check for the received data whether its stop bit is valid or not, and whether the parity error occurs or not (when the parity enabled). If these errors occur, the Framing Error Flag or Parity Error Flag and the Summing Error Flag are set to "1". Then, the Summing Error Interrupt Request Bit is also set to "1".
- (4) When received data has no error, the all slave MCUs must judge whether the address of the received address data matches with their own addresses by a program. After the MSB being "1" is received, the UART Address Mode Enable Bit is automatically set to "0" (disabled).
- (5) The UART Address Mode Enable Bit of the slave MCUs which have be judged that the address does not match with them must be set to "1" (enabled) again by a program to disable reception of the following data.
- (6) Transmit the data of which MSB is "0" from the host MCU. The slave MCUs disabling the UART address mode receive the data, and their Receive Buffer Full Flags and the Receive Buffer Full Interrupt Request Bits are set to "1". For the other slave MCUs enabling the UART address mode, their Receive Buffer Full Flag are set to "1", but their Receive Buffer Full Interrupt Request Bits are not set to "1".
- (7) An overrun error cannot be detected after the first data has been received in UART Address Mode. Accordingly, even if the slave MCUs does not read the received data and the next data has been received, an overrun error does not occur.

Thus, a communication between a host MCU and the specified MCU can be realized.

### ●UART address mode application example

**Outline :** The slave CPU (B) receives the data from the host CPU, using the UART address mode.

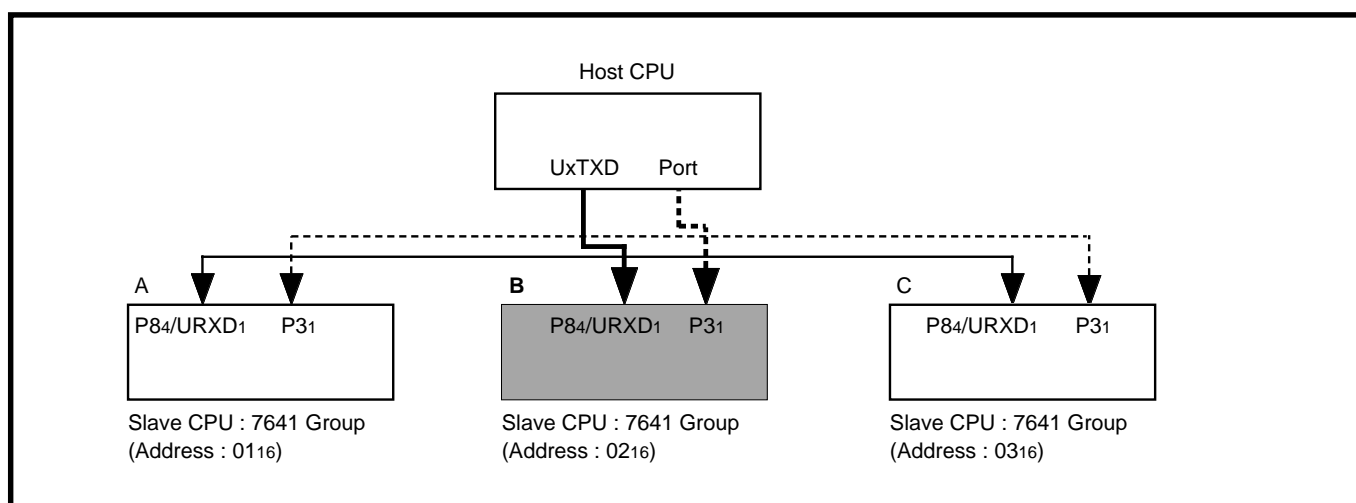
**Specifications :** •UART1 is used.

•Transfer bit rate : 9600 bps

•Data format: 1ST-8DATA-2ST

•Use of port P3<sub>1</sub> for communication control

Figure 2.4.20 shows a connection diagram; Figure 2.4.21 shows the registers setting related to UART address mode; Figures 2.4.22 and 2.4.23 show the control procedures.



**Fig. 2.4.20 Connection diagram**

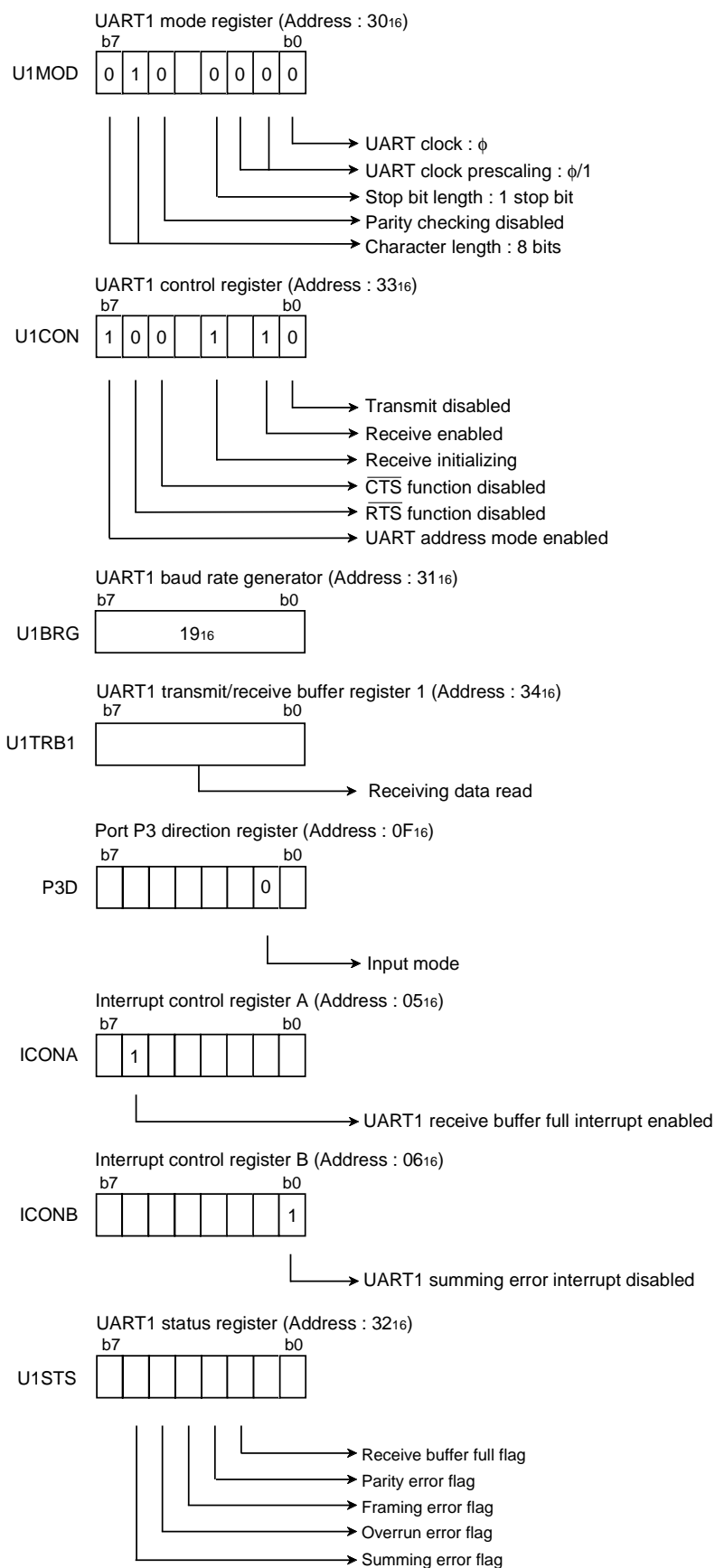


Fig. 2.4.21 Registers setting related to UART address mode

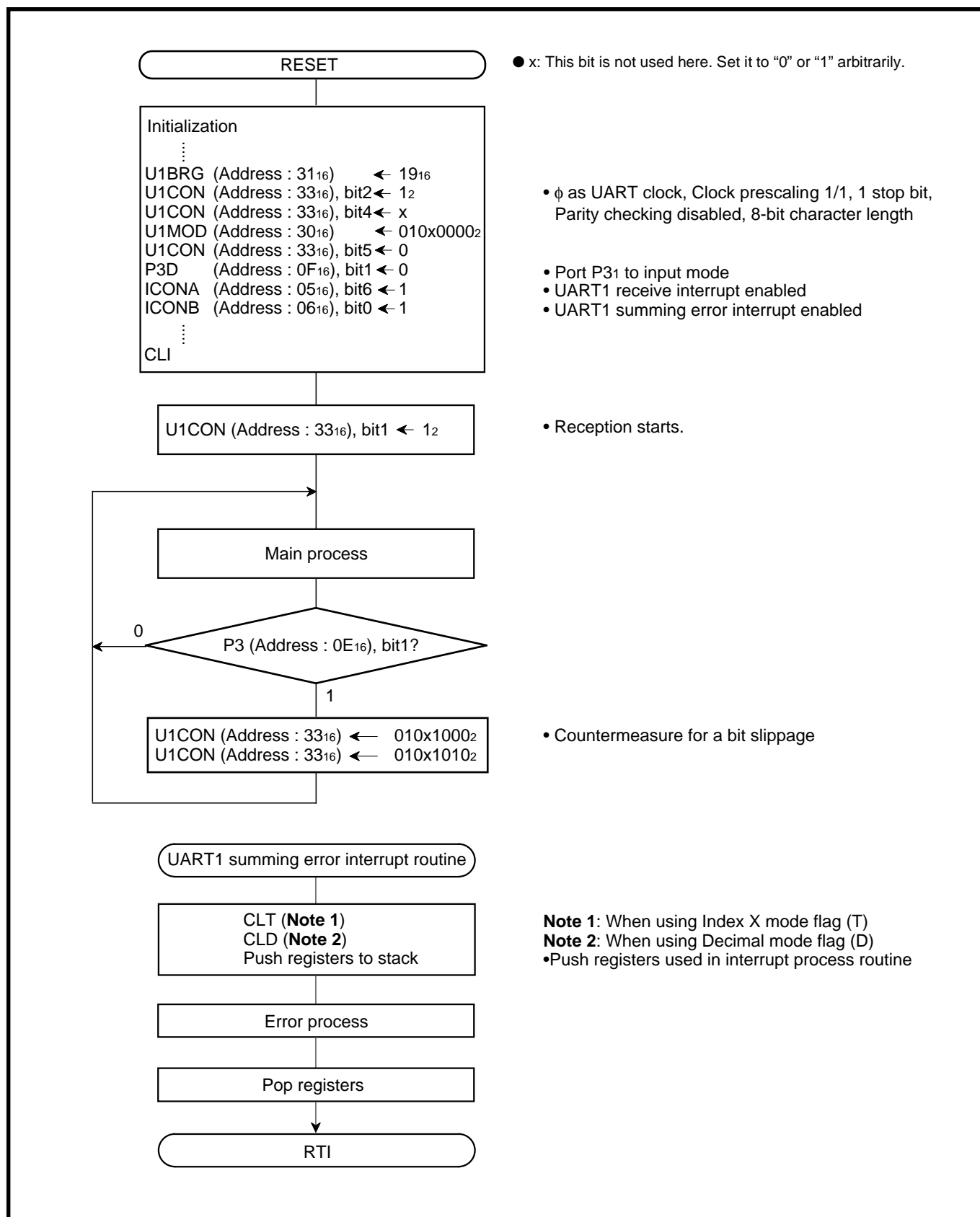


Fig. 2.4.22 Control procedure (1)



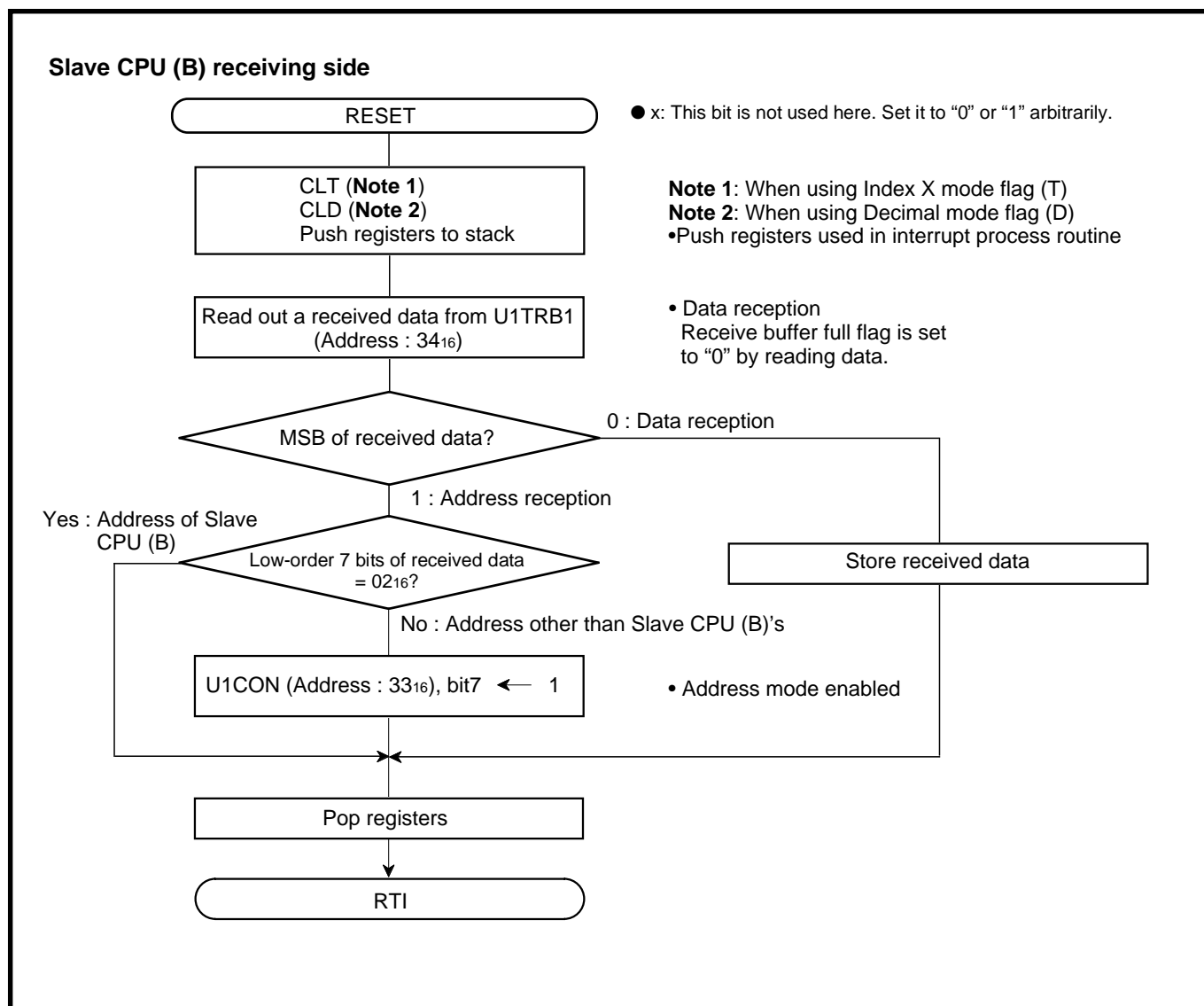


Fig. 2.4.22 Control procedure (2)

## 2.4.7 Notes on UART

### (1) Receive

- When any one of errors occurs, the summing error flag is set to “1” and the UARTx summing error interrupt request bit is also set to “1”. If a receive error occurs, the reception does not set the UARTx receive buffer full interrupt request bit to “1”.
- If the receive enable bit (REN) is set to “0” (disabled) while a data is being received, the receiving operation will stop after the data has been received.
- Setting the receive initialization bit (RIN) to “1” resets the UARTx RTS control register (UxRTS) to “80<sub>16</sub>”. After setting the RIN bit to “1”, set this UxRTS.

### (2) Transmit

- Once the transmission starts, it continues until the last bit has been transmitted even though clearing the transmit enable bit (TEN) to “0” (disabled) or inputting “H” to the  $\overline{\text{CTSx}}$  pin. After completion of the current transmission, the transmission is disabled.
- The transmit complete flag (TCM) is changed from “1” to “0” later than 0.5 to 1.5 clocks of the shift clock. Accordingly, take it in consideration to transmit data confirming the TCM flag after the data is written into the transmit buffer register.

### (3) Register settings

- If updating a value of UARTx baud rate generator while the data is being transmitted or received, be sure to disable the transmission and reception before updating. If the former data remains in the UARTx transmit buffer registers 1 and 2 at retransmission, an undefined data might be output.
- The all error flags PER, FER, OER and SER are cleared to “0” when the UARTx status register is read, at the hardware reset or initialization by setting the Transmit Initialization Bit. These flags are also cleared to “0” by execution of bit test instructions such as **BBC** and **BCS**.
- The transmit buffer empty flag (TBE) is set to “0” when the low-order byte of transmitted data is written into the UARTx (x = 1, 2) transmit buffer register 1. When using 9-bit character length, set the data into the UARTx transmit buffer register 2 (high-order byte) first before the UARTx transmit buffer register 1 (low-order byte).
- The receive buffer full flag (RBF) is set to “0” when the contents of UARTx receive buffer register 1 is read out. When using 9-bit character length, read the data from the UARTx receive buffer register 2 (high-order byte) first before the UARTx receive buffer register 1 (low-order byte).
- If a character bit length is 7 bits, bit 7 of the UARTx transmit/receive buffer register 1 and bits 0 to 7 of the UARTx transmit/receive buffer register 2 are ignored at transmitting; they are invalid at receiving.  
If a character bit length is 8 bits, bits 0 to 7 of the UARTx transmit/receive buffer register 2 are ignored at transmitting; they are invalid at receiving.  
If a character bit length is 9 bits, bits 1 to 7 of the UARTx transmit/receive buffer register 2 are ignored at transmitting; they are “0” at receiving.
- The reset cannot affect the contents of baud rate generator.

### (4) UART address mode

- When the MSB of the incoming data is “0” in the UART address mode, the receive buffer full flag (RBF) is set to “1”, but the receive buffer full interrupt request bit is not set to “1”.
- An overrun error cannot be detected after the first data has been received in UART address mode.
- The UART address mode can be used in either an 8-bit or 9-bit character length. 7-bit character length cannot be used.

**(5)  $\overline{\text{CTS}}$  function**

When the CTS function is enabled, the transmitted data is not transferred to the transmit shift register until “L” is input to the  $\overline{\text{CTS}}$  pin (P8<sub>6</sub>/ $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ <sub>1</sub>, P8<sub>2</sub>/ $\overline{\text{CTS}}$ <sub>2</sub>/SRXD). As the result, do not set the following data to the transmit buffer register.

**(6)  $\overline{\text{RTS}}$  function**

- If the start bit is detected in the term of “H” assertion of  $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ , its assertion count is suspended and the  $\overline{\text{RTS}}$  pin remains “H” output. After receiving the last stop bit, the count is resumed.
- Setting the receive initialization bit (RIN) to “1” resets the UARTx RTS control register (UxRTS) to “80<sub>16</sub>”. After setting the RIN bit to “1”, set this UxRTS.

**(7) Interrupt**

- When setting the transmit initialization bit (TIN) to “1”, both the transmit buffer empty flag (TBE) and the transmit complete flag (TCM) are set to “1”, so that the transmit interrupt request occurs independent of its interrupt source. After setting the transmit initialization bit (TIN) to “1”, clear the transmit interrupt request bit to “0” before setting the transmit enable bit (TEN) to “1”.
- The transmit interrupt request bit is set and the interrupt request is generated by setting the transmit enable bit (TEN) to “1” even when selecting timing that either of the following flags is set to “1” as timing where the transmission interrupt is generated:
  - (1) Transmit buffer empty flag is set to “1”
  - (2) Transmit complete flag is set to “1”.

Therefore, when the transmit interrupt is used, set the transmit interrupt enable bit to transmit enabled as the following sequence:

- (1) Transmit enable bit is set to “1”
- (2) Transmit interrupt request bit is set to “0”
- (3) Transmit interrupt enable bit is set to “1”.

## 2.5 DMAC

This paragraph explains the registers setting method and the notes related to the DMAC.

### 2.5.1 Memory map

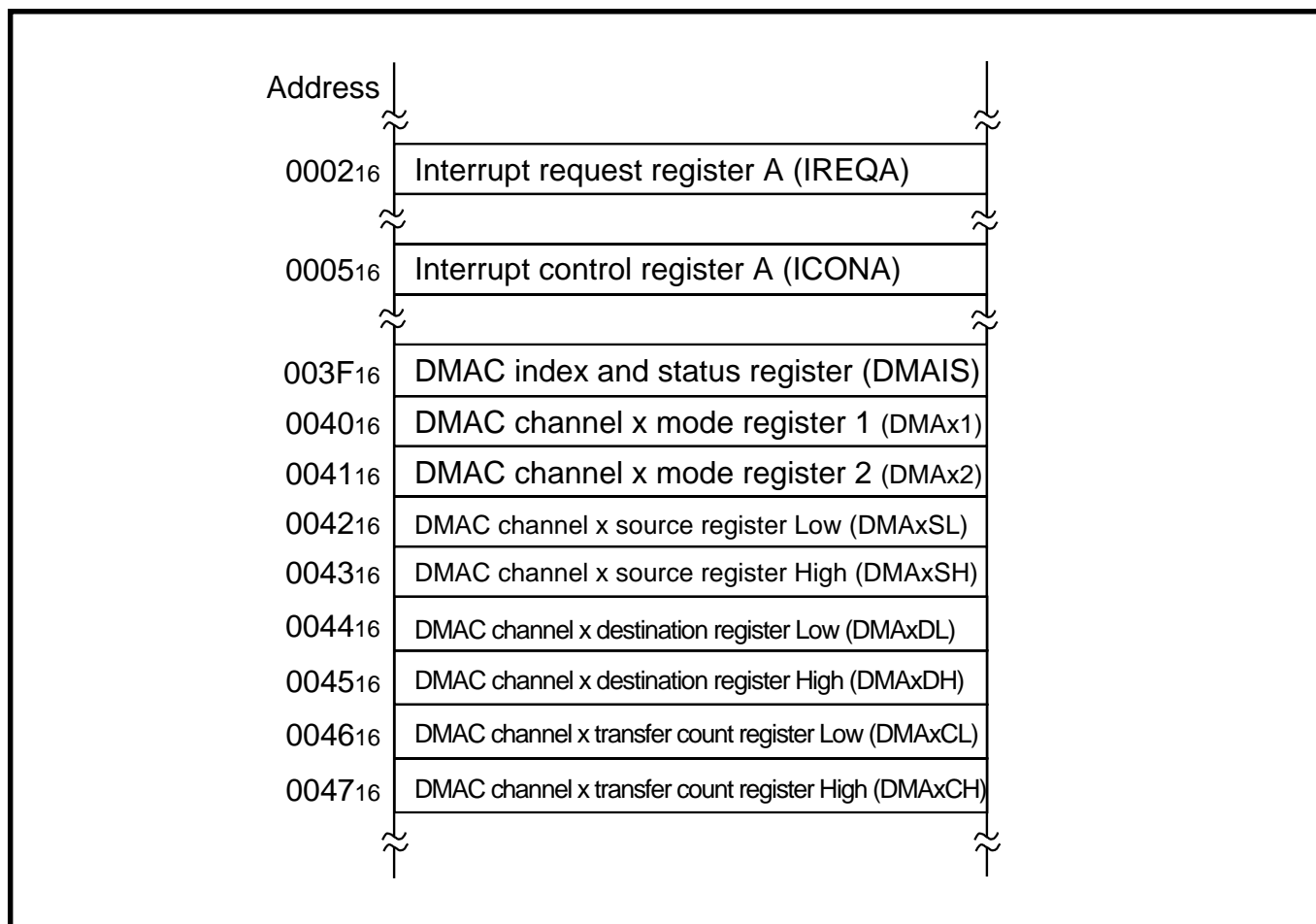


Fig. 2.5.1 Memory map of registers related to DMAC

## 2.5.2 Related registers

### (1) DMAC index and status register

#### •DMAC channel x (x = 0, 1) count register underflow flag (DxUF)

When the corresponding transfer count register Low (address 46<sub>16</sub>) underflows, this DxUF flag is set to "1". Writing "0" into this flag clears it.

#### •DMAC channel x (x = 0, 1) suspend flag (DxSFI)

When an interrupt routine is processed during any DMA operation, the transfer operation is suspended and the DMAC automatically sets the corresponding DxSFI flag to "1". As soon as the CPU completes the interrupt operation, the DMAC clears the DxSFI flag to "0" and resumes the original operation from the point where it was suspended.

#### •DMAC transfer suspend control bit (DTSC)

This bit specifies the transfer mode which can be suspended by an interrupt process.

#### •DMAC register reload disable bit (DRLDD)

If the DRLDD bit is "1", when the DMAC channel x transfer count register underflows, the DMAC channel x source registers and destination registers are disabled from being reloaded from their latches.

#### •Channel index bit (DCI)

The related registers of channels 1 and 2 are assigned on the same SFR addresses. This DCI bit specifies the accessible channel.

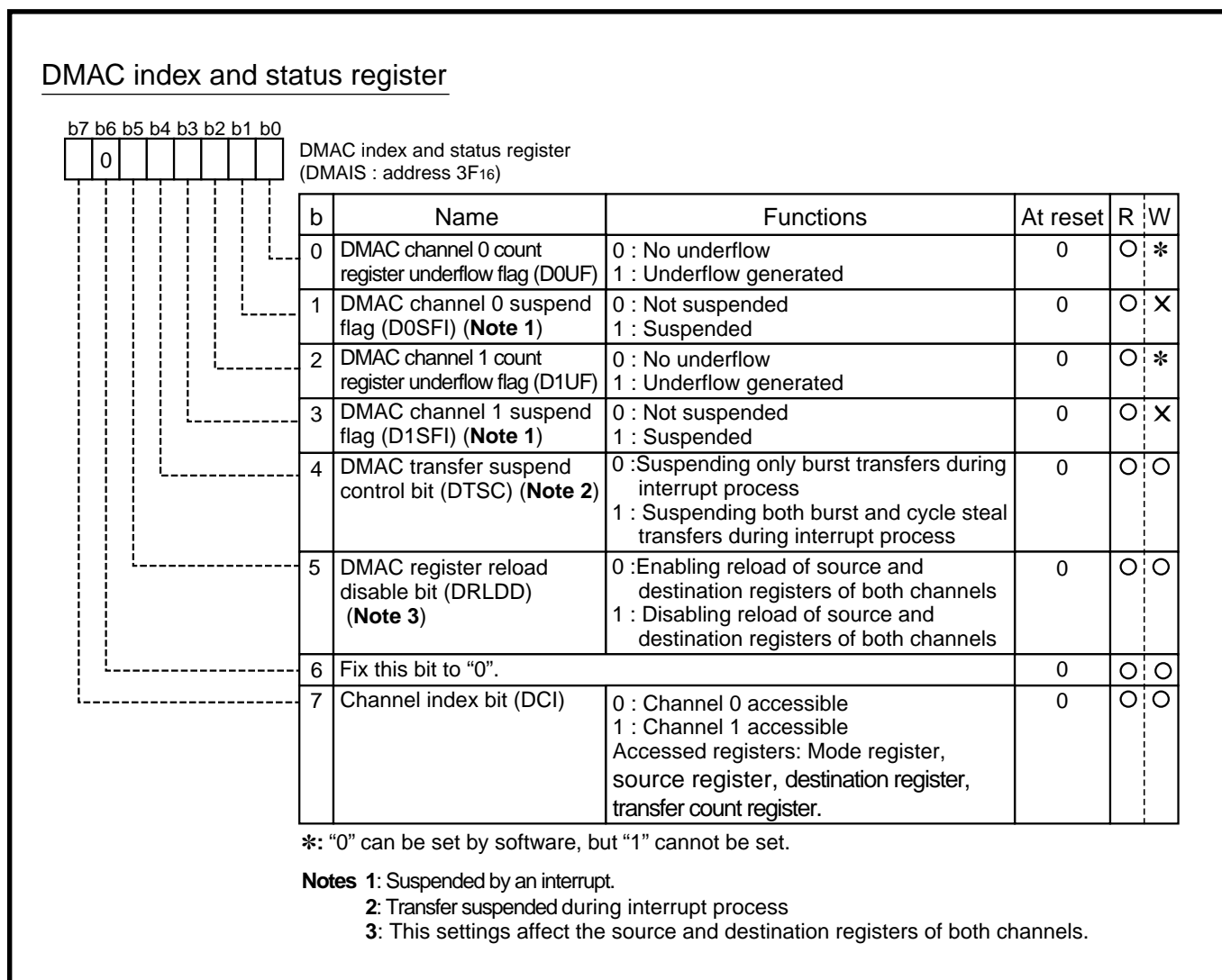


Fig. 2.5.2 Structure of DMAC index and status register

**(2) DMAC channel x (x = 0, 1) mode register 1**

- DMAC channel x source register increment/decrement selection bit (DxSRID)
- DMAC channel x source register increment/decrement enable bit (DxSRCE)
- DMAC channel x destination register increment/decrement selection bit (DxDRID)
- DMAC channel x destination register increment/decrement enable bit (DxDRCE)

These bits select that the DMAC channel X source registers and destination registers are either decreased or increased by 1 after transfer completion.

- DMAC channel x data write control bit (DxDWC)

The DxDWC bit controls write operation to the following registers and their latches: Low and High bytes of DMAC channel x source registers, destination registers and transfer count registers.

When the DxDWC bit is “0”, data is simultaneously written into each latch and register. When this bit is “1”, data is written only into their latches.

- DMAC channel x disable after count register underflow enable bit (DxDAUE)

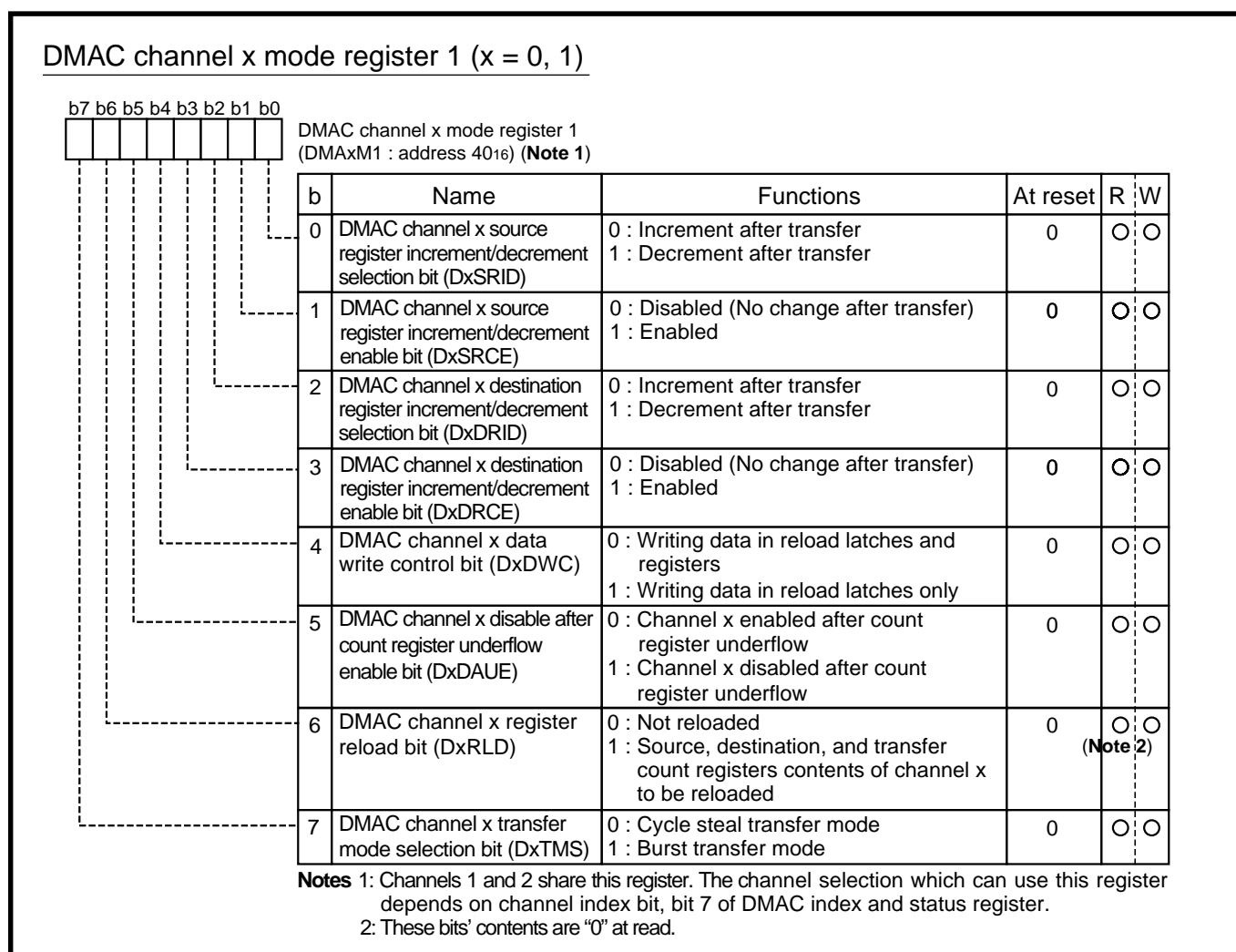
When the DxDAUE bit is “1”, after the DMAC channel x transfer count register Low underflows the corresponding channel x is disabled. The DMAC channel x enable bit (DxCEN, bit 7 of DMAxM2) goes to “0” at the same time.

- DMAC channel x register reload bit (DxRLD)

Writing “1” to the DxRLD bit can update the DMAC channel x source registers, destination registers and transfer count registers with the values in their respective latches. It can be performed at anytime. This bit is fixed to “0” at read.

- DMAC channel x transfer mode selection bit (DxTMS)

The DxTMS bit selects the transfer mode.



**Fig. 2.5.3 Structure of DMAC channel x (x = 0, 1) mode register 1**

**(3) DMAC channel x (x = 0, 1) mode register 2****•DMAC channel x software transfer trigger bit (DxSWT)**

Writing "1" to the DxSWT bit can generate a transfer request as a software trigger. If all of DMACx hardware transfer request source bits (DxHR) are "0", the software trigger is only transfer request factor. This bit is fixed to "0" at read.

**•DMAC channel x USB and master CPU bus interface enable bit (DxUMIE)**

When both USB and master CPU bus interface is used as a hardware transfer request source, set the DxUMIE bit to "1". When not that the master CPU bus interface is used, but that the USB is only used, set the DxUMIE bit to "0" (disabled).

**•DMAC channel x transfer initiation source capture register reset bit (DxCRR)**

Writing "1" to the DxCRR bit can reset the transfer initiation source capture register. The request of the transfer initiation source is latched asynchronously and it is sampled into the transfer initiation source capture register at a rising edge of  $\phi$ . This bit is fixed to "0" at read.

**•DMAC channel x enable bit (DxCEN)**

The DMAC channel x is enabled by setting this bit to "1". When clearing this to "0", the DMA transfer is finished.

## DMAC channel 0 mode register 2

b	Name	Functions	At reset	R	W
0	DMAC channel 0 hardware transfer request source bits (D0HR)	b3b2b1b0 0 0 0 0 : Not used 0 0 0 1 : UART1 receive interrupt 0 0 1 0 : UART1 transmit interrupt 0 0 1 1 : Timer Y interrupt 0 1 0 0 : INT <sub>0</sub> interrupt 0 1 0 1 : USB endpoint 1 IN_PKT_RDY signal (falling edge active)	0	○	○
1		0 1 1 0 : USB endpoint 2 IN_PKT_RDY signal (falling edge active) 0 1 1 1 : USB endpoint 3 IN_PKT_RDY signal (falling edge active) 1 0 0 0 : USB endpoint 1 OUT_PKT_RDY signal (rising edge active)	0	○	○
2		1 0 0 1 : USB endpoint 1 OUT_FIFO_NOT_EMPTY signal (rising edge active) 1 0 1 0 : USB endpoint 2 OUT_PKT_RDY signal (rising edge active)	0	○	○
3		1 0 1 1 : USB endpoint 3 OUT_PKT_RDY signal (rising edge active) 1 1 0 0 : Master CPU bus interface OBE <sub>0</sub> signal (rising edge active) 1 1 0 1 : Master CPU bus interface IBF <sub>0</sub> signal, data (rising edge active) 1 1 1 0 : Serial I/O transmit/receive interrupt 1 1 1 1 : CNTR <sub>1</sub> interrupt	0	○	○
4	DMAC channel 0 software transfer trigger (D0SWT)	0 : No action 1 : Request of channel 0 transfer by writing "1"	0	○	○ (Note 2)
5	DMAC channel 0 USB and master CPU bus interface enable bit (D0UMIE)	0 : Disabled 1 : Enabled	0	○	○
6	DMAC channel 0 transfer initiation source capture register reset bit (D0CRR)	0 : No action 1 : Reset of channel 0 capture register by writing "1"	0	○	○ (Note 2)
7	DMAC channel 0 enable bit (D0CEN)	0 : Channel 0 disabled 1 : Channel 0 enabled (Note 3)	0	○	○

**Notes 1:** DMAC channel 0 mode register 2 and DMAC channel 1 mode register 2 are assigned at the same address 4116. The accessible register depends on channel index bit, bit 7 of DMAC index and status register.

**2:** These bits' contents are "0" at read. This bit is automatically cleared to "0" after writing "1".

**3:** When setting this bit to "1", simultaneously set the DMAC channel 0 transfer initiation source capture register reset bit (bit 6 of DMA0M2) to "1".

Fig. 2.5.4 Structure of DMAC channel 0 mode register 2



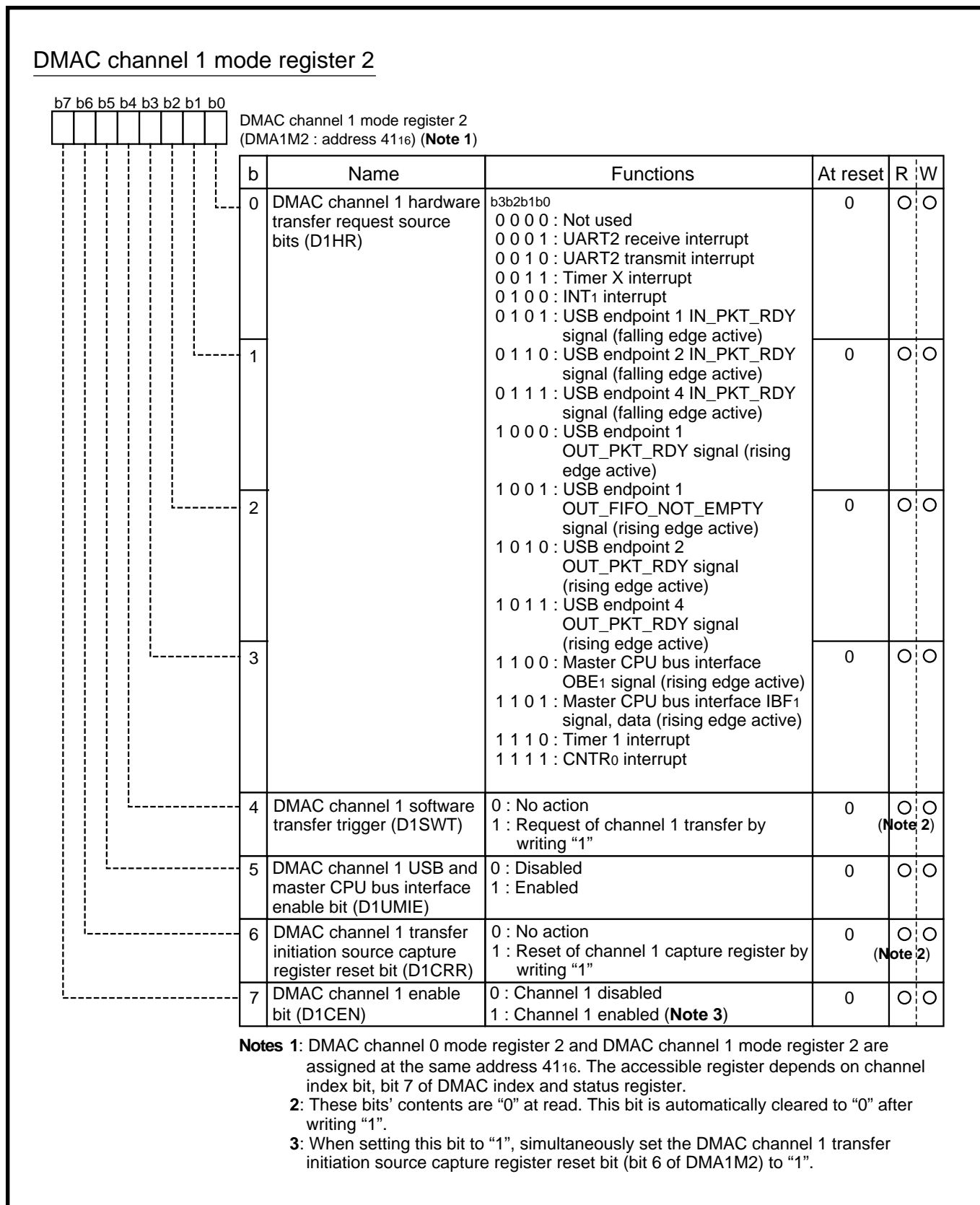
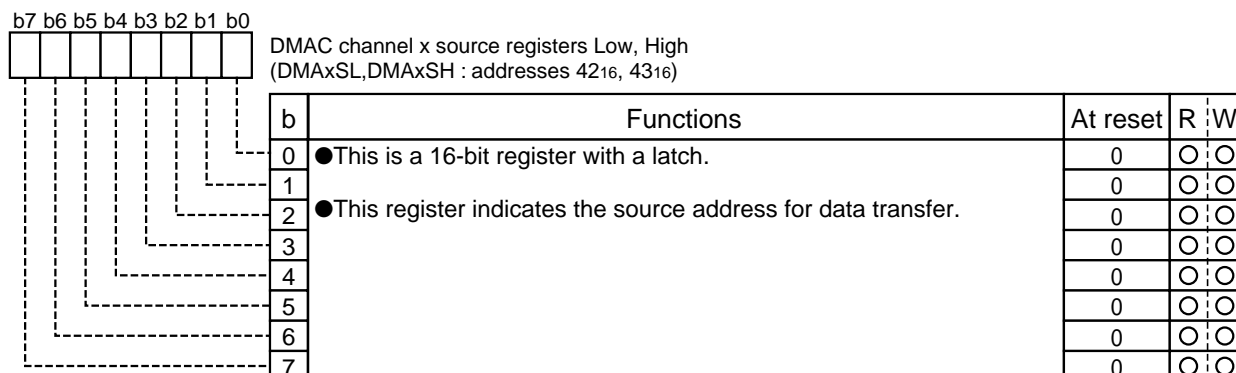


Fig. 2.5.5 Structure of DMAC channel 1 mode register 2

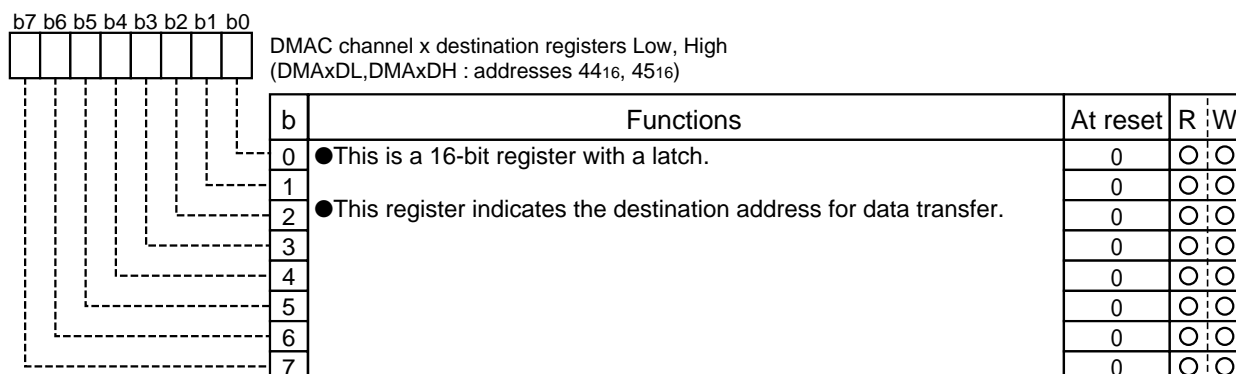
### DMAC channel x source registers Low, High



- Notes**
- 1: DMAC channel x source registers low, high of channels 0 and 1 are assigned at the same addresses. The accessible register depends on channel index bit, bit 7 of DMAC index and status register.
  - 2: Write data into the lower bytes first, and then the higher bytes.
  - 3: Read the contents from the higher bytes first, and then the lower bytes.

Fig. 2.5.6 Structure of DMAC channel x source registers Low, High

### DMAC channel x destination registers Low, High

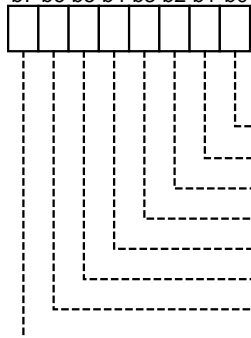


- Notes**
- 1: DMAC channel x destination registers low, high of channels 0 and 1 are assigned at the same addresses. The accessible register depends on channel index bit, bit 7 of DMAC index and status register.
  - 2: Write data into the lower bytes first, and then the higher bytes.
  - 3: Read the contents from the higher bytes first, and then the lower bytes.

Fig. 2.5.7 Structure of DMAC channel x destination registers Low, High

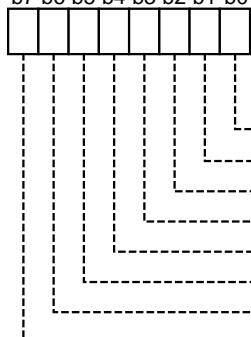
## DMAC channel x transfer count registers Low, High

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

DMAC channel x transfer count registers Low  
(DMAxCL : address 46<sub>16</sub>)

b	Functions	At reset	R	W
0	● This is the lower 8-bit register with a latch. Set the lower 8 bits of transfer numbers.	0	○	○
1		0	○	○
2	● This register indicates the remaining transfer numbers while transfer is continuing.	0	○	○
3		0	○	○
4	● This contents are decreased by 1 at every transfer operation.	0	○	○
5	● When this register underflows, the DMAC interrupt request bit and the count register underflow flag ( <b>Note 2</b> ) are set to "1".	0	○	○
6		0	○	○
7		0	○	○

b7 b6 b5 b4 b3 b2 b1 b0

DMAC channel x transfer count registers High  
(DMAxCH : address 47<sub>16</sub>)

b	Functions	At reset	R	W
0	● This is the higher 8-bit register with a latch. Set the higher 8 bits of transfer numbers.	0	○	○
1		0	○	○
2	● This register indicates the remaining transfer numbers while transfer is continuing.	0	○	○
3		0	○	○
4	● This contents are decreased by 1 at every transfer operation.	0	○	○
5		0	○	○
6		0	○	○
7		0	○	○

- Notes 1:** DMAC channel x transfer count registers low, high of channels 0 and 1 are assigned at the same addresses 46<sub>16</sub> and 47<sub>16</sub>. The accessible channel depends on channel index bit, bit 7 of DMAC index and status register.
- 2:** Channel 0 used: Bit 0 of DMAC index and status register  
Channel 1 used: Bit 2 of DMAC index and status register
- 3:** Write data into the lower byte first, and then the higher byte.
- 4:** Read the contents from the higher byte first, and then the lower byte.

Fig. 2.5.8 Structure of DMAC channel x transfer count registers Low, High

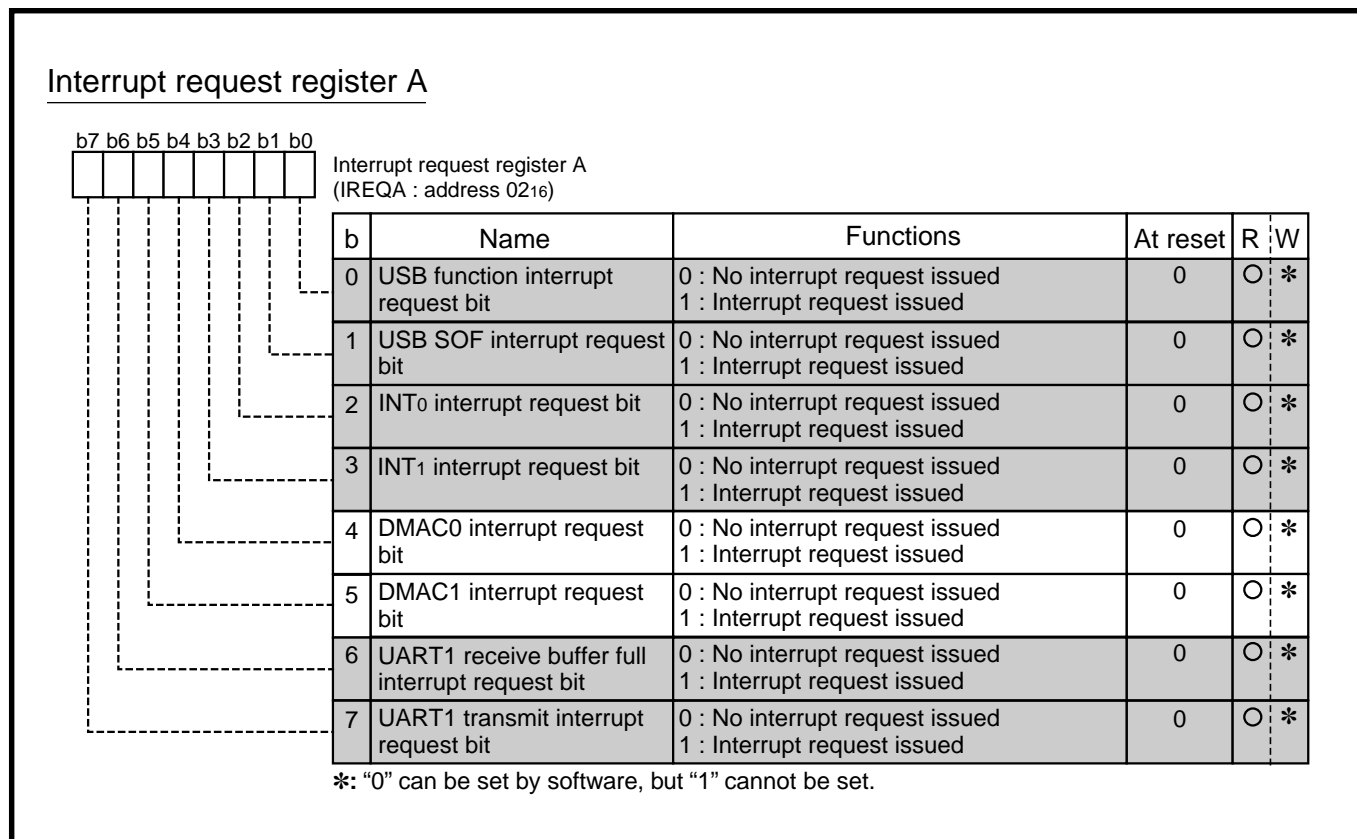


Fig. 2.5.9 Structure of Interrupt request register A

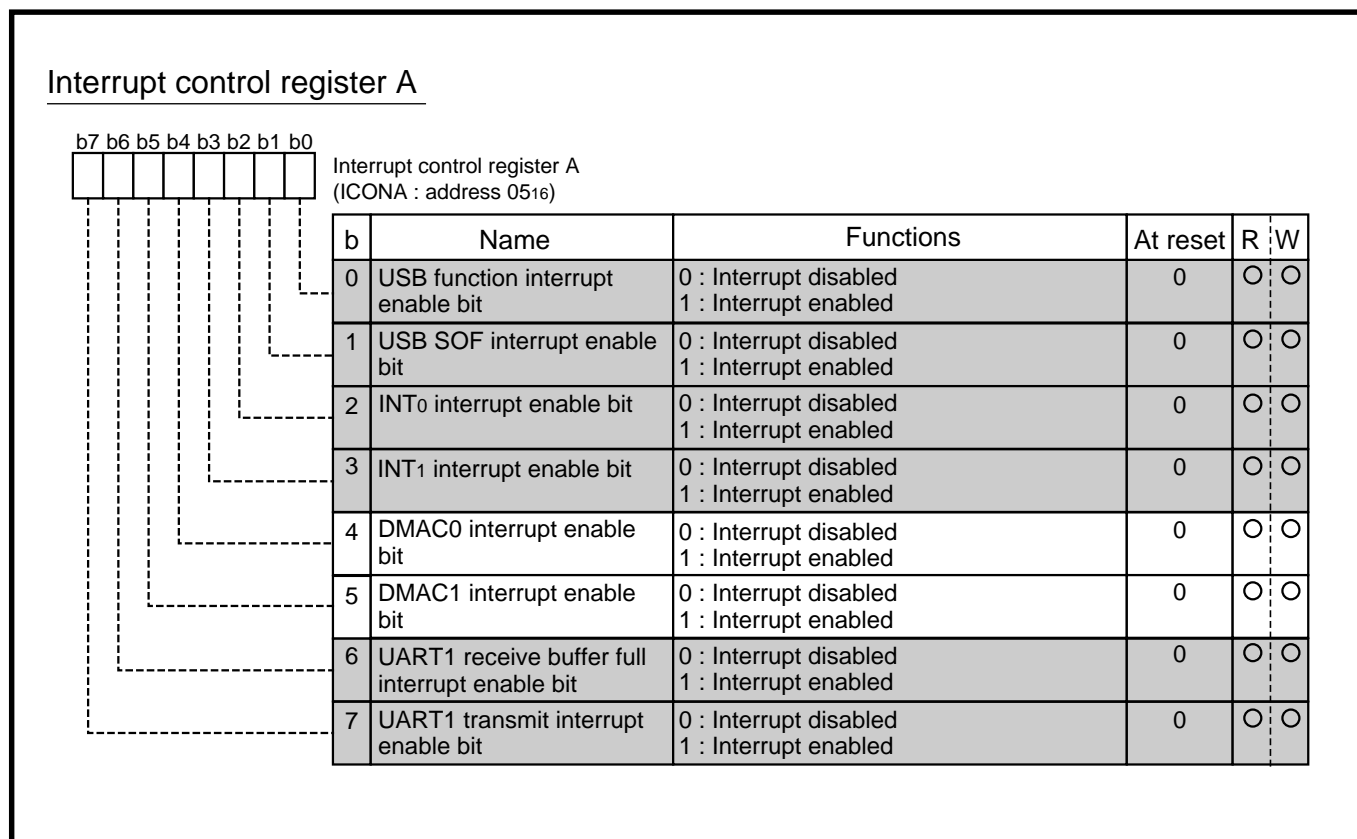


Fig. 2.5.10 Structure of Interrupt control register A

### 2.5.3 DMAC operation description

The DMAC transfers data using the bus without use of the CPU. The DMAC consists of DMAC0 and DMAC1, which have the same function each.

There are two transfer modes: Burst transfer mode or Cycle steal transfer mode.

#### •Burst transfer mode

Once a DMA transfer request is accepted, an entire batch of data is transferred. The right to use bus is not returned to the CPU until the transfer of all data has been completed.

The DMAC transfers the number of bytes data specified by the transfer count register for each request. The count register is a 16-bit counter; the maximum number of data is 65,536 bytes per one request.

#### •Cycle steal mode

The DMAC transfers one byte of data for each request. If one byte transfer has been completed and then a DMA transfer request is not generated, the right to use bus is returned to the CPU.

Figure 2.5.11 shows the transfer mode overview.

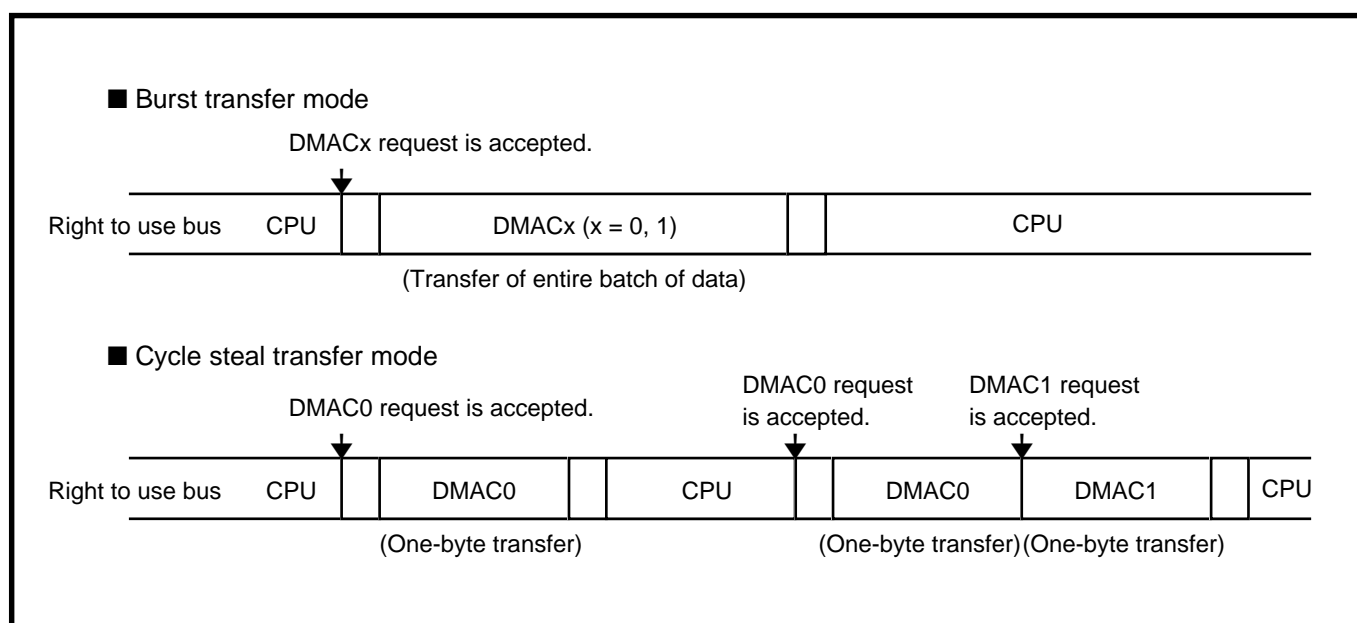


Fig. 2.5.11 Transfer mode overview

#### (1) Priority

The DMAC places a higher priority on Channel-0 transfer requests than on Channel-1 transfer requests.

If a channel-0 transfer request occurs during a channel-1 burst transfer operation, the DMAC completes the next transfer source and destination read/write operation first, and then starts the channel-0 transfer operation. As soon as the channel-0 transfer is completed, the DMAC resumes the channel-1 transfer operation.

#### (2) Transfer request acceptance

A transfer request is confirmed at every rising of  $\phi$ . After that a channel priority and a right to use the bus is judged.

A software trigger and/or a hardware factor can be selected as a transfer request source. The DMAC channel x hardware transfer request source bits (DxHR) selects a hardware factor.

Writing "1" to the DMAC channel x software transfer trigger bit (DxSWT) can generate a transfer request as a software trigger.

**(3) DMA execution**

The selected channel transfers one byte of data from the address indicated by its source register (address 42<sub>16</sub> or 43<sub>16</sub>) into the address indicated by its destination register (address 44<sub>16</sub> or 45<sub>16</sub>) with at 2 cycles of  $\phi$ .

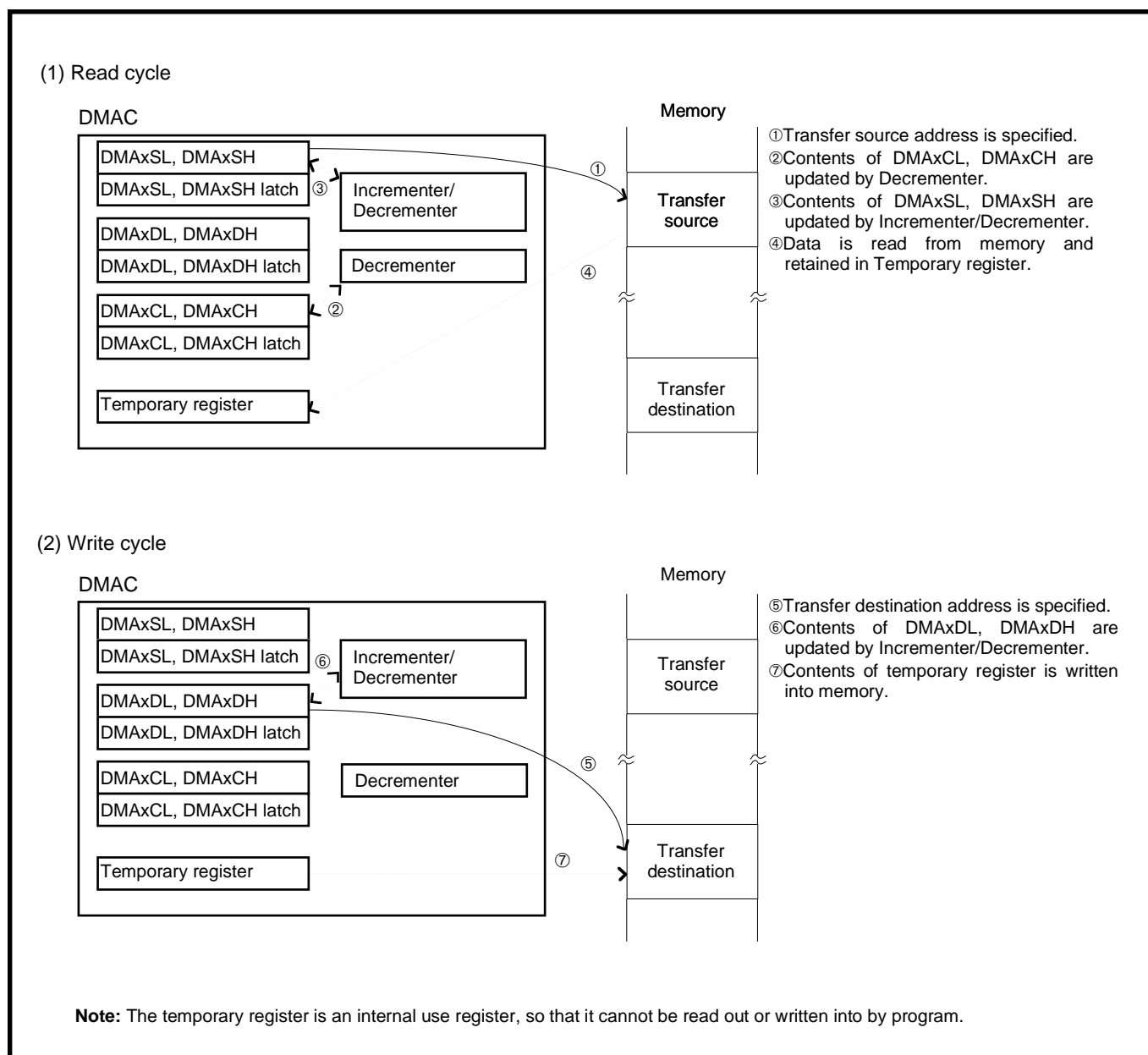
The operation of the source registers and destination registers after transfer completion can be selected between decreased/increased by 1 and no change with bits 0 to 3 in the DMAC channel x mode register 1.

When the transfer count register underflows, the source registers and destination registers are reloaded from their latches when the DMAC register reload disable bit (DRLDD) is "0". If the DRLDD bit is set to "1", a reload is disabled.

A read/write must be performed to the source registers, destination registers and transfer count registers as follows:

Read from each higher byte first, then the lower byte

Write to each lower byte first, then the higher byte.

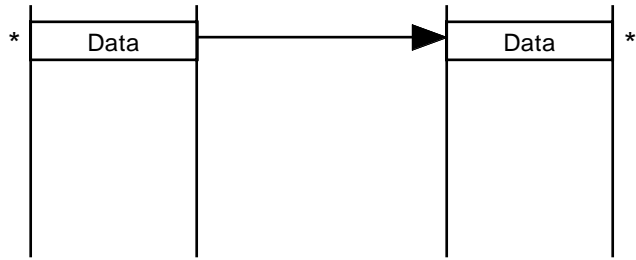
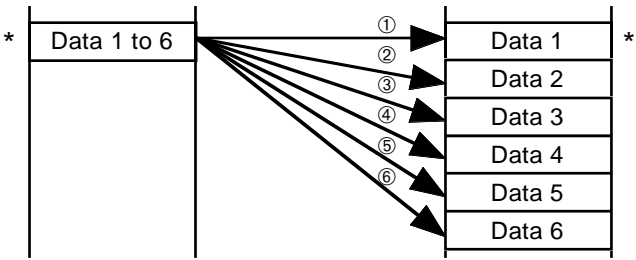
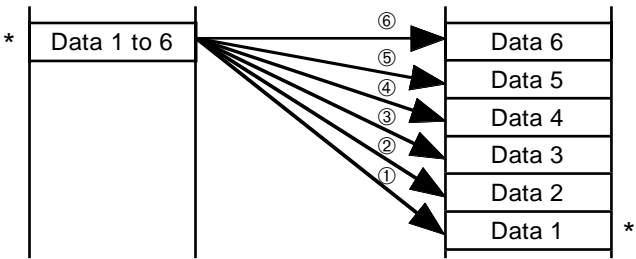
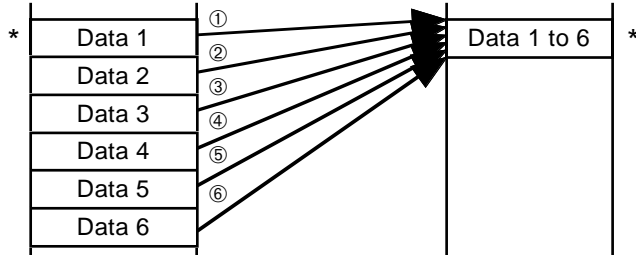
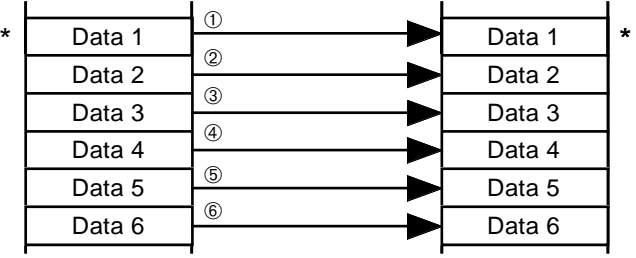


**Fig. 2.5.12 Basic operation of registers transferring**

Figure 2.5.12 shows the basic operation of registers transferring.

Tables 2.5.1 and 2.5.2 shows the address directions and examples of transfer result.

**Table 2.5.1 Address directions and examples of transfer result (1)**

Address direction		Data arrangement on transfer source memory	Transfer sequence	Data arrangement on transfer destination memory (Transfer result)
Source	Destination			
Fixed	Fixed			
Fixed	Forward			
Fixed	Backward			
Forward	Fixed			
Forward	Forward			

**Table 2.5.2 Address directions and examples of transfer result (2)**

Address direction		Data arrangement on transfer source memory	Transfer sequence	Data arrangement on transfer destination memory (Transfer result)
Source	Destination			
Forward	Backward			
Backward	Fixed			
Backward	Forward			
Backward	Backward			

**(4) Transfer suspension**

Writing "0" to the DMAC channel x enable bit (DxCEN) can compulsorily suspend the transfer being executed. The suspended transfer can be resumed by writing "1" to the DxCEN bit.

When an interrupt request, which is enabled, occurs during any DMA operation, the transfer operation is suspended and the interrupt process routine is initiated. During the interrupt operation, the DMAC automatically sets the corresponding DMAC channel x suspend flag to "1". When the DMAC transfer suspend control bit (DTSC) is "1", the transfer is suspended in both burst transfer and cycle steal transfer modes during an interrupt process; when the DTSC bit is "0", it is suspended in only burst transfer mode.

The suspended transfer due to the interrupt can also be resumed during its interrupt process routine by writing "1" to the DxCEN bit.



### 2.5.4 DMAC arbitration

The DMA transfer request is accepted at a rising of  $\phi$ . If the bus is not released 1 cycle of  $\phi$  later than the transfer request acceptance, the DMAC will wait for the bus released. When the bus is released, the DMAC has a right to use the bus and starts the DMA transfer unless a request of the right to use the bus having priority over the DMAC occurs.

Table 2.5.3 shows the priority to use the bus.

**Table 2.5.3 Priority to use bus**

Priority	Factor requesting right to use bus
1 (Higher)	Hold request via $\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ pin
2	DMAC
3	CPU data access
4 (Lower)	CPU instruction access

### 2.5.5 Transfer time

One-byte transfer of the cycle steal transfer mode requires the time calculated by the following equation:

$$\text{Time (T)} = A + B + C$$

A: This means the time from the occurrence of DMA transfer source request to sampling it. It needs 1 cycle of  $\phi$  at the maximum. The sampling is asynchronously performed.

B: This means the delay time to sample the DMA transfer source request. It needs 1 cycle of  $\phi$  at the maximum.

C: This means the time to transfer data. It needs 2 cycles of  $\phi$ .

Figures 2.5.13 to 2.5.15 show the timing chart for DMA transfer.

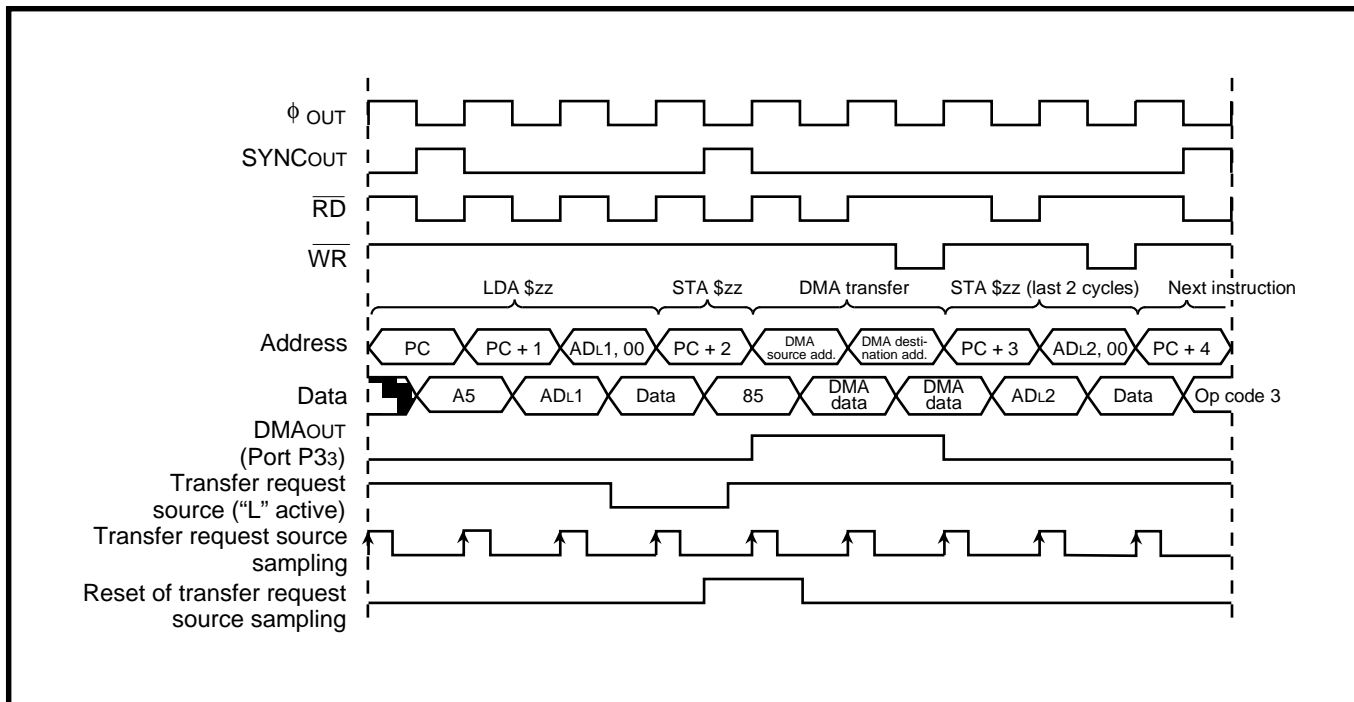


Fig. 2.5.13 Timing chart for cycle steal transfer caused by hardware-related transfer request

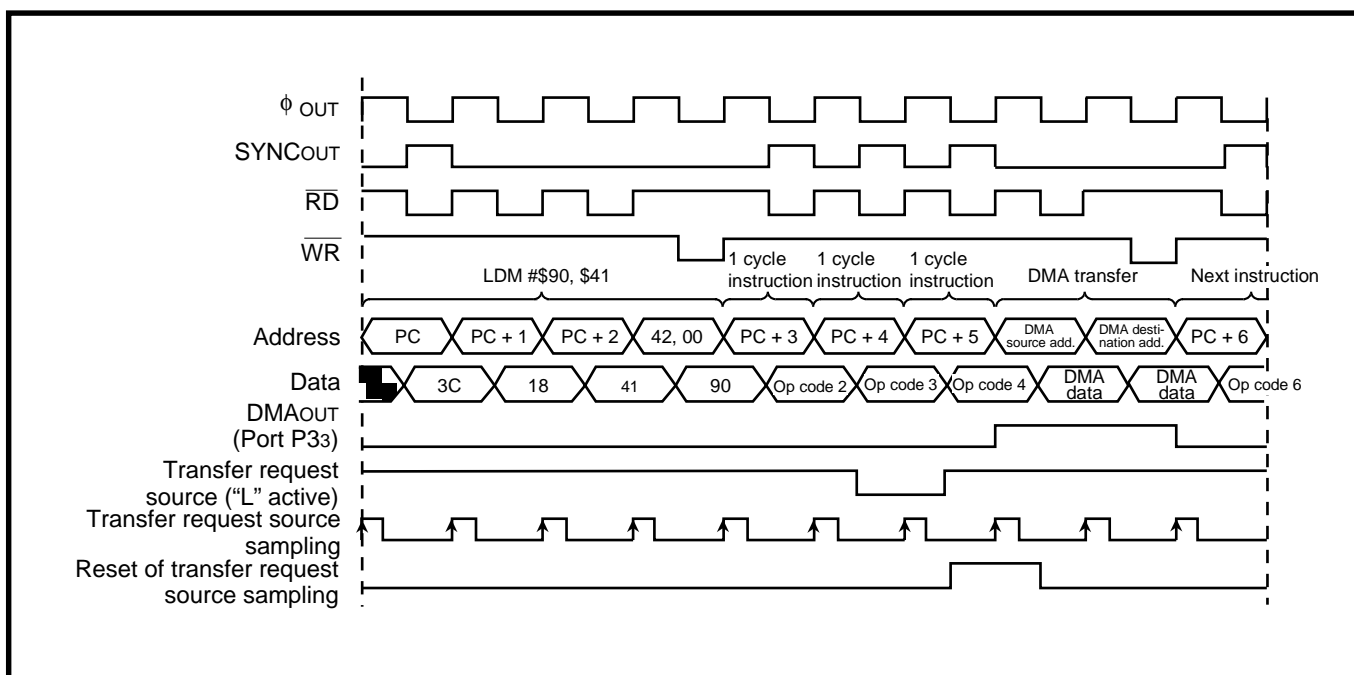


Fig. 2.5.14 Timing chart for cycle steal transfer caused by software trigger transfer request

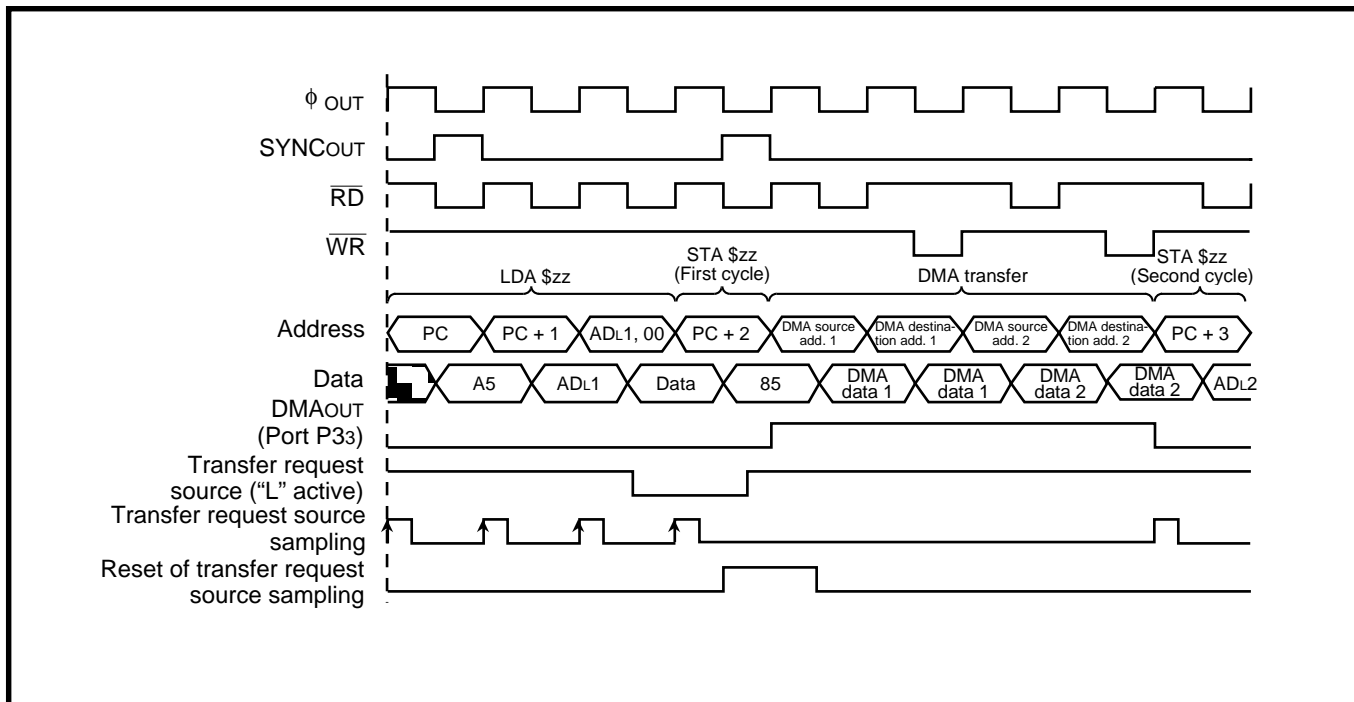


Fig. 2.5.15 Timing chart for burst transfer caused by hardware-related transfer request

### 2.5.6 DMAC application example

#### (1) Transfer from external FIFO to USB FIFO

**Outline:** Data are transferred from external FIFOs to USB FIFOs.

**Specifications:**

- A burst transfer is used and 128-byte (128 bytes/packet) continuous transfer is performed. The external FIFO size must be set as 128 bytes of an integral multiple.
- If the data is deficient in the external FIFO, the DMAC channel 0 transferring is stopped in the DMAC channel 0 interrupt routine process. The DMA transfer is resumed in the main routine process when the data is sufficient.
- To confirm the external FIFO state after completion of 128 bytes transferring, set the DMAC channel x disable after count register underflow enable bit (DxDAUE) to "1".
- USB endpoint 2 IN\_PKT\_RDY (falling edge) selected as hardware transfer request source.
- Master CPU bus interface unused.

Figures 2.5.16 and 2.5.17 show a setting of the related registers and Figure 2.5.18 shows a control procedure.

If data are transferred from USB FIFOs to external FIFOs as well as this, use USB endpoint 2 OUT\_PKT\_RDY (rising edge) selected as hardware transfer request source.

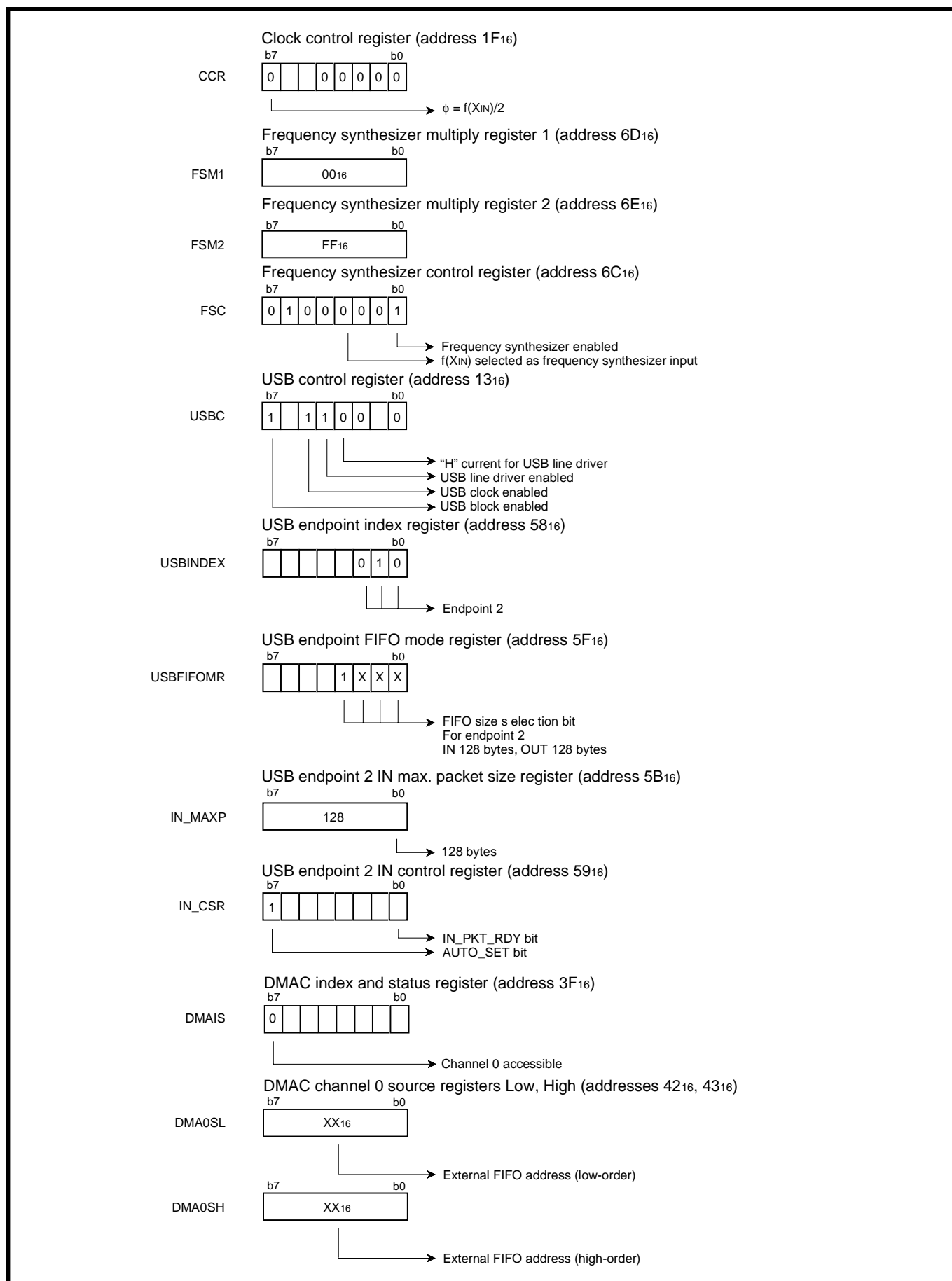


Fig. 2.5.16 Setting of relevant registers (1)

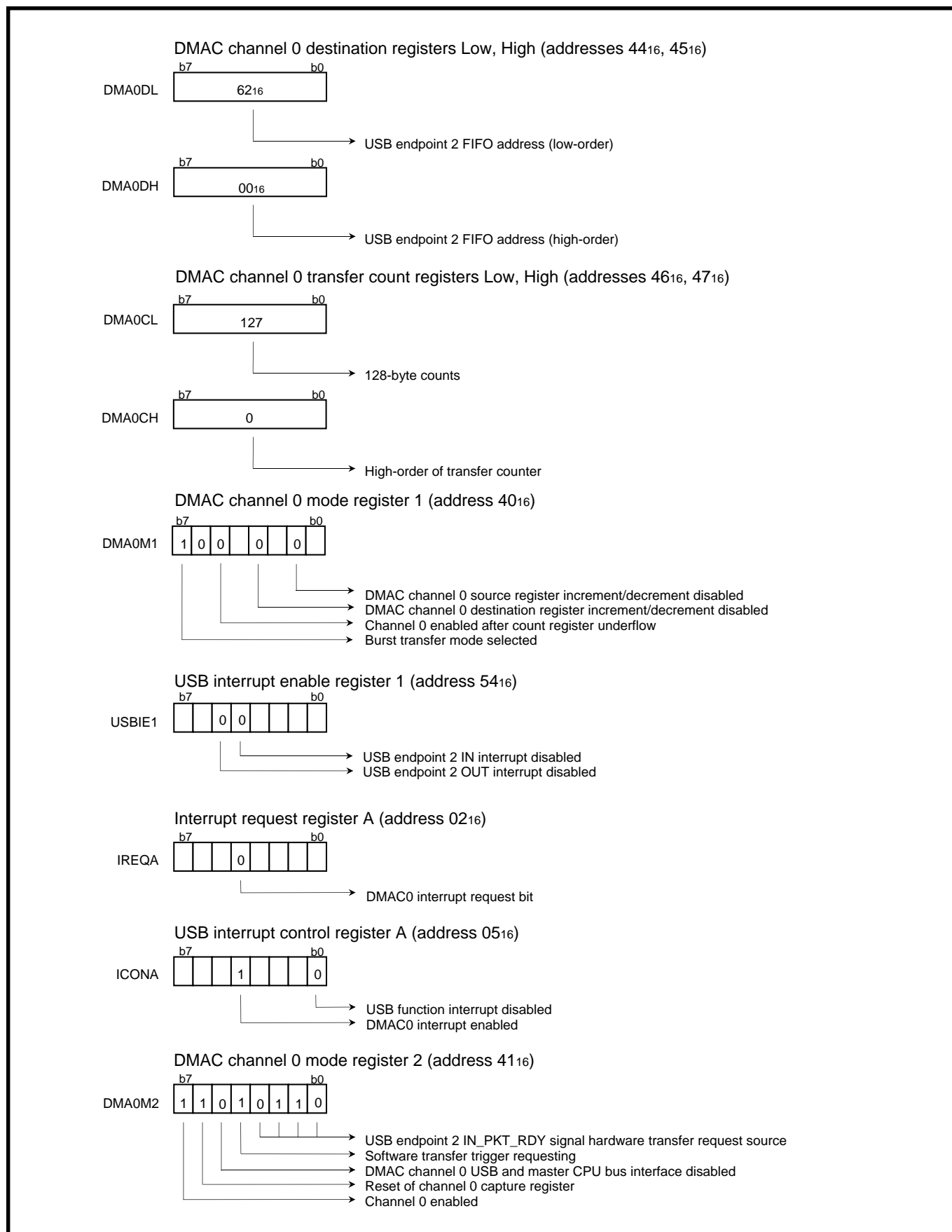


Fig. 2.5.17 Setting of relevant registers (2)

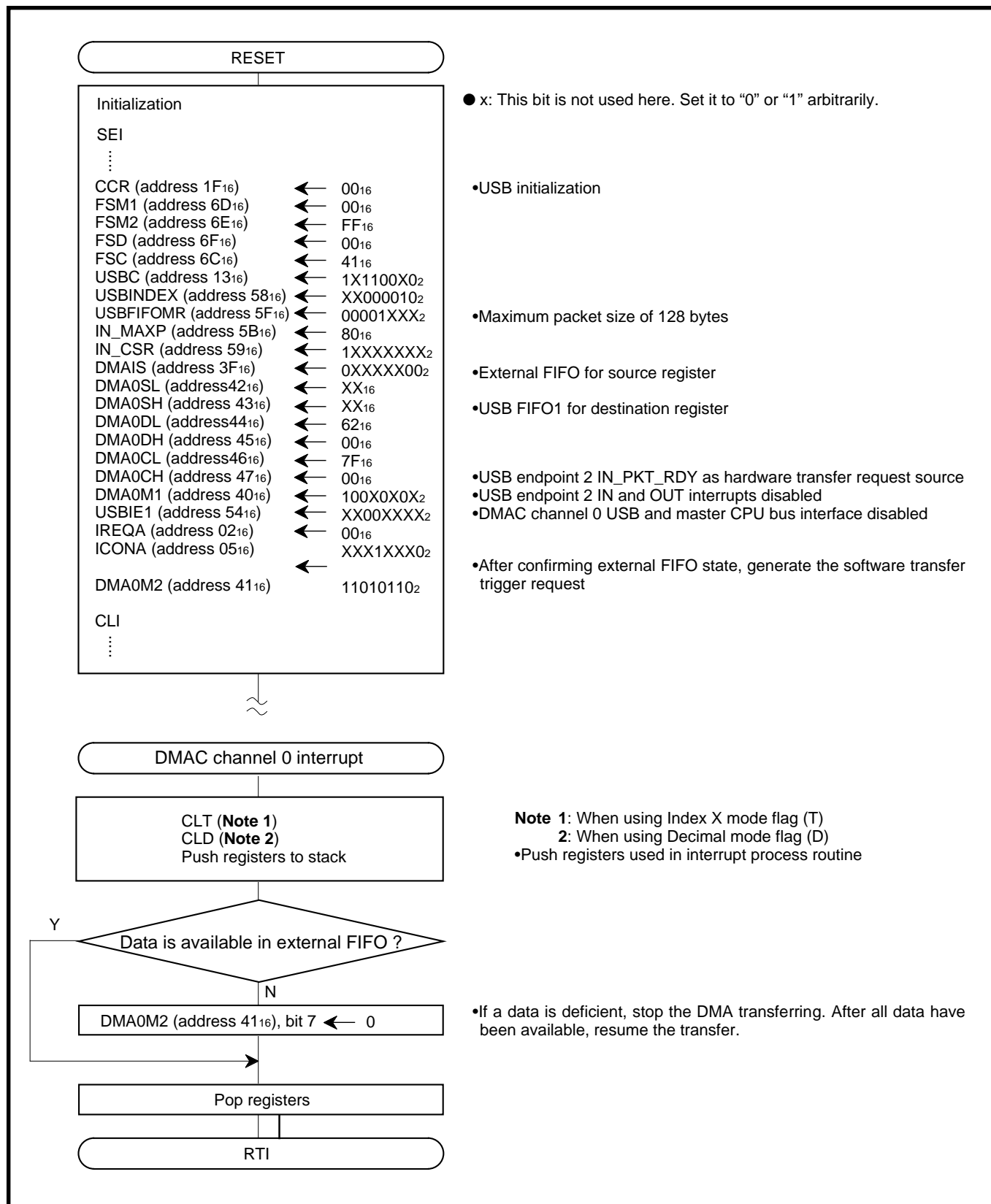


Fig. 2.5.18 Control procedure

### 2.5.7 Notes on DMAC

#### (1) Transfer time

- One-byte data transfer requires 2 cycles of  $\phi$  (read and write cycles).
- To perform DMAC transfer due to the different transfer requests on the same DMAC channel or DMAC transfer between both DMAC channels, 1 cycle of  $\phi$  or more is needed before transfer is started.

#### (2) Priority

- The DMAC places a higher priority on channel-0 transfer requests than on channel-1 transfer requests.

If a channel-0 transfer request occurs during a channel-1 burst transfer operation, the DMAC completes the next transfer source and destination read/write operation first, and then stops the channel-1 transfer operation.

The channel-1 transfer operation which has been suspended is automatically resumed from the point where it was suspended so that channel-1 transfer can complete its one-burst transfer unit. This will be performed even if another channel-0 transfer request occurs.

- The suspended transfer due to the interrupt can also be resumed during its interrupt process routine by writing "1" to the DMAC channel x enable bit (DxCEN).

#### (3) Related registers

- A read/write must be performed to the source registers, transfer destination registers and transfer count registers as follows:

Read from each higher byte first, then the lower byte

Write to each lower byte first, then the higher byte.

Note that if the lower byte is read out first, the values are the higher byte's.

- Do not access the DMAC-related registers by using a DMAC transfer. The destination address data and the source address data will collide in the DMAC internal bus.
- When setting the DMAC channel x enable bit (bit 7 of address 41<sub>16</sub>) to "1", be sure simultaneously to set the DMAC channel x transfer initiation source capture register reset bit (bit 6 of address 41<sub>16</sub>) to "1". If this is not performed, an incorrect data will be transferred at the same time when the DMAC is enabled.

#### (4) USB transfer

One signal among USB endpoint signals 1 to 4 can be selected as the hardware transfer request source. This can realize that transfer between the USB FIFO and the master CPU bus interface input/output buffer is performed effectively. This transfer function is only valid in the cycle steal transfer mode.

#### (5) DMA<sub>OUT</sub> pin

In the memory expansion mode and microprocessor mode, the DMA<sub>OUT</sub> pin (P3<sub>3</sub>/DMA<sub>OUT</sub>) outputs "H" during a DMA transfer.



## 2.6 USB

Some application notes are available on the Web site:

<http://www.renesas.com>

Please refer to them for explanation and application of USB function.

## 2.7 Frequency synthesizer

This paragraph explains the registers setting method and the notes related to the frequency synthesizer.

### 2.7.1 Memory map

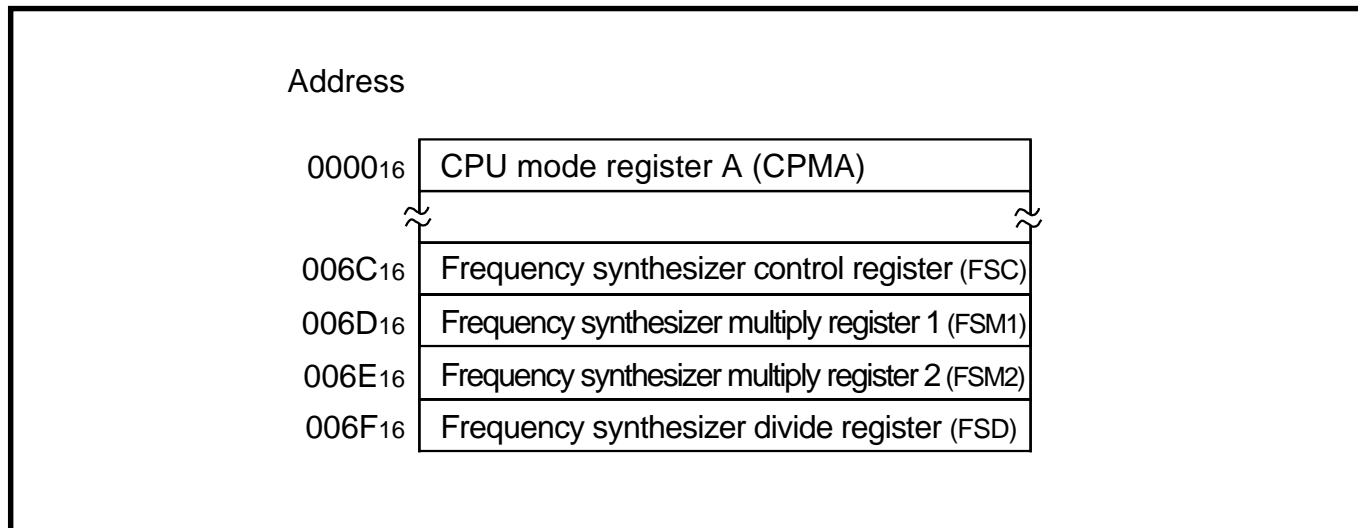


Fig. 2.7.1 Memory map of registers related to frequency synthesizer

## 2.7.2 Related registers

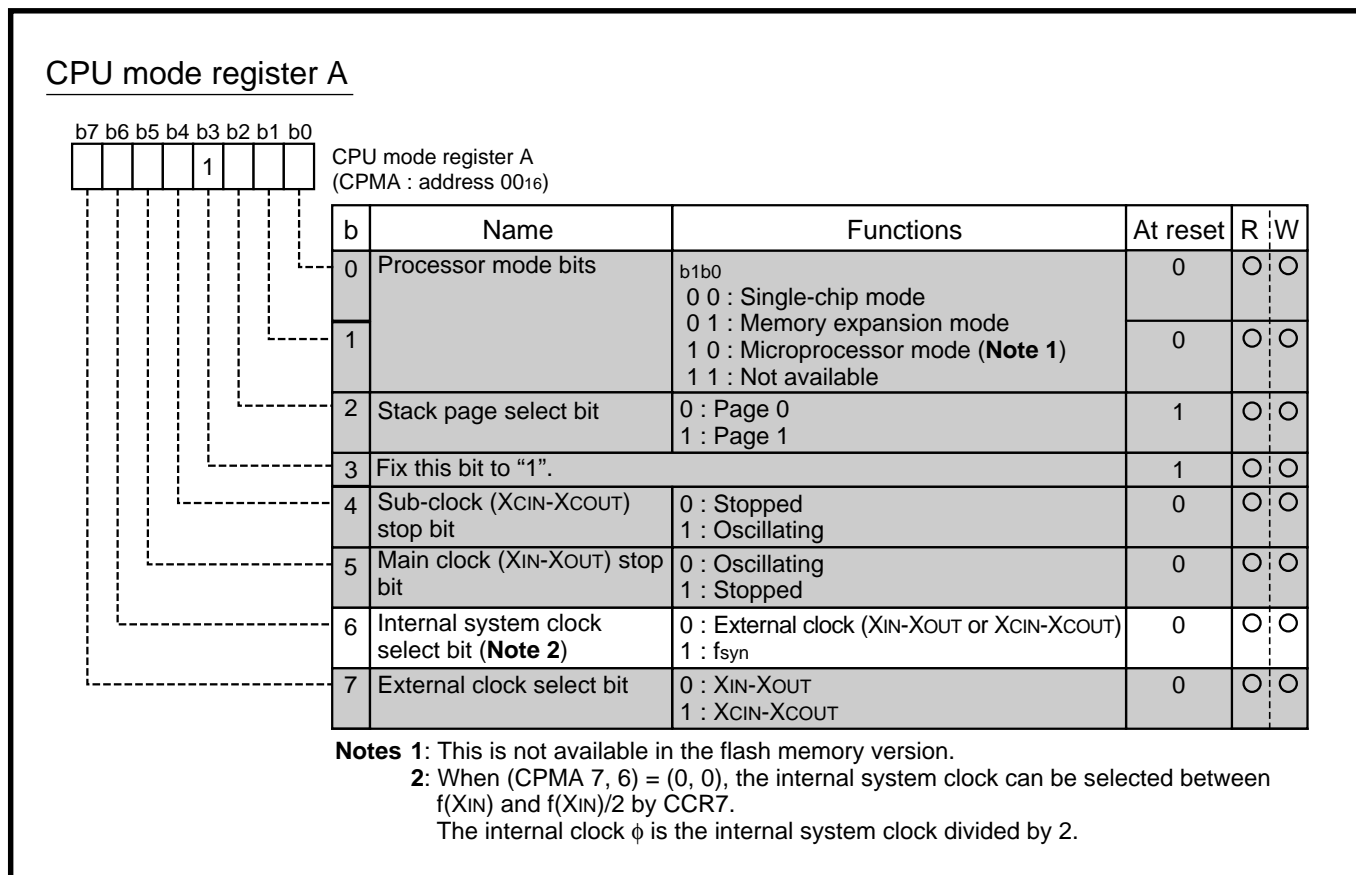


Fig. 2.7.2 Structure of CPU mode register A

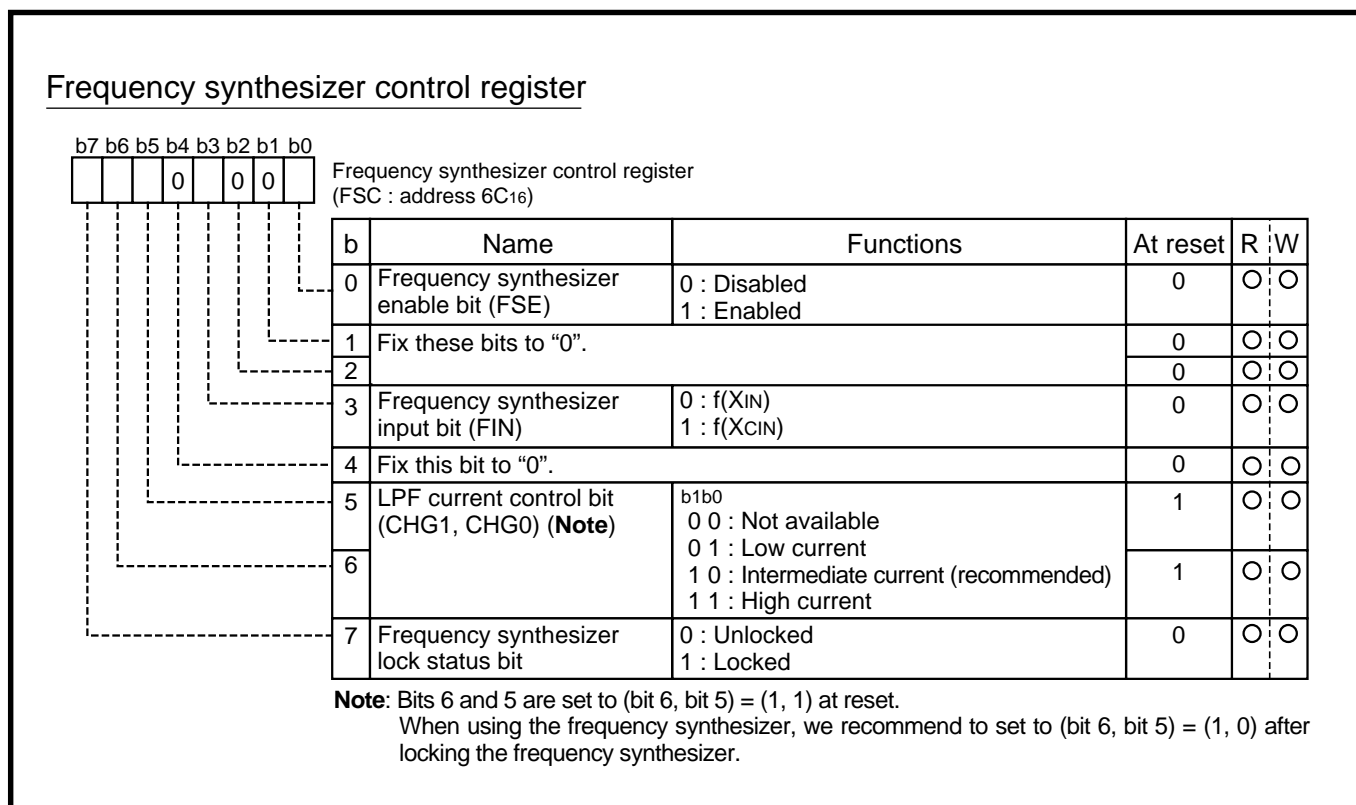


Fig. 2.7.3 Structure of Frequency synthesizer control register

### Frequency synthesizer multiply register 1

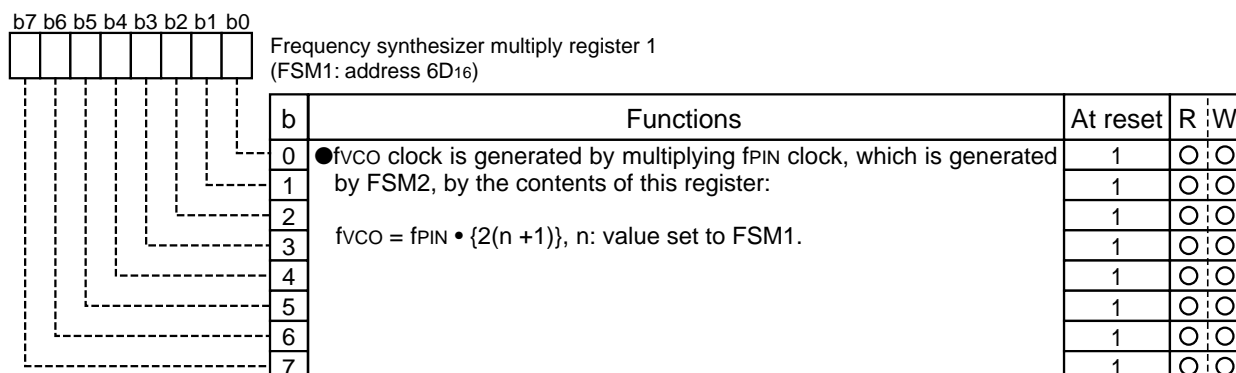


Fig. 2.7.4 Structure of Frequency synthesizer multiply register 1

### Frequency synthesizer multiply register 2

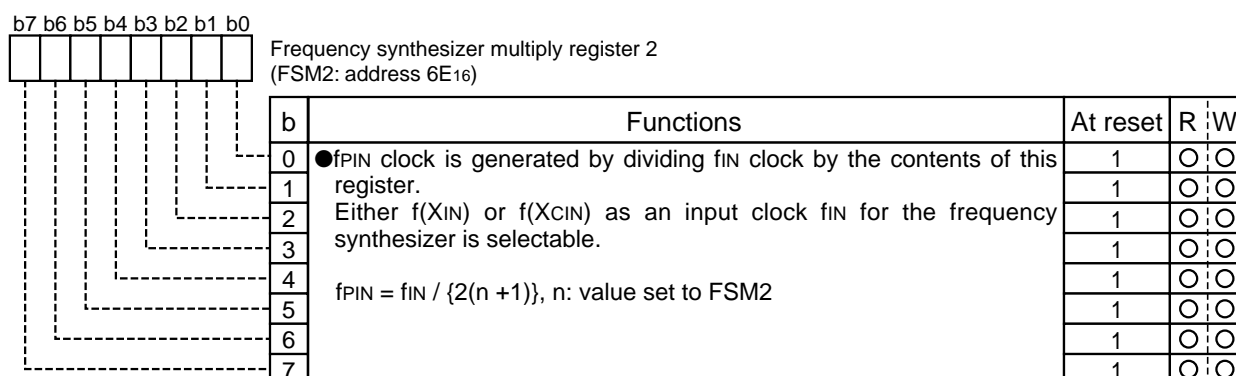


Fig. 2.7.5 Structure of Frequency synthesizer multiply register 2

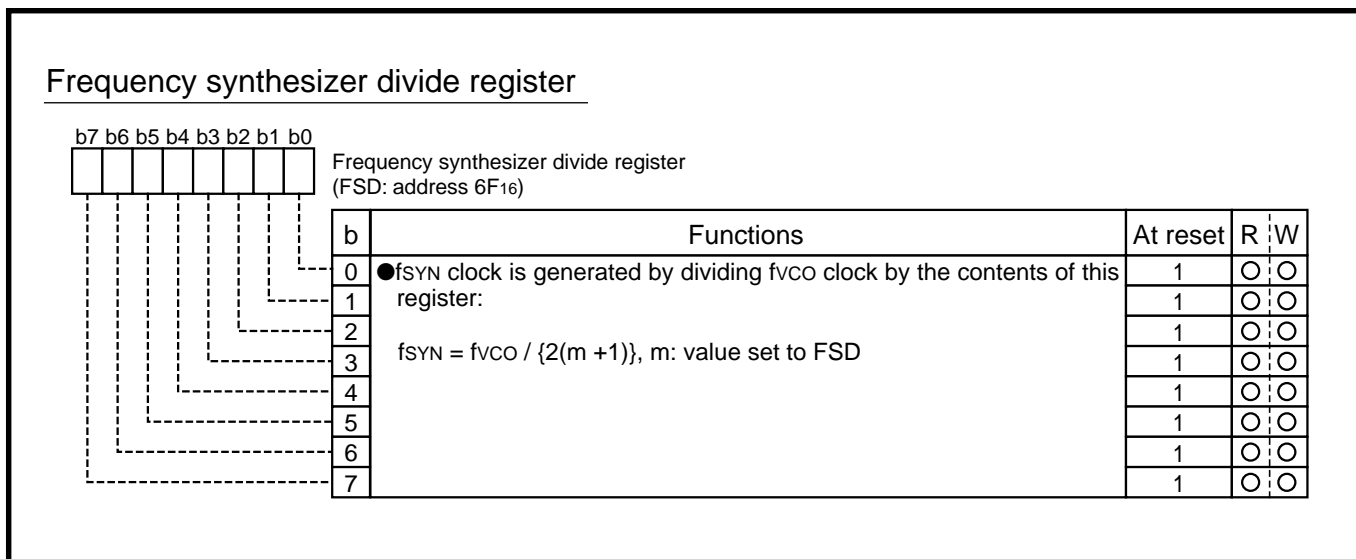


Fig. 2.7.6 Structure of Frequency synthesizer divide register

### 2.7.3 Functional description

The frequency synthesizer generates the 48 MHz clock required by  $f_{USB}$  and  $f_{SYN}$ , which are multiples of the external input reference  $f(X_{IN})$  or  $f(X_{CIN})$ . To use the frequency synthesizer, set the frequency synthesizer enable bit of frequency synthesizer control register (address  $6C_{16}$ ) to "1".

The frequency synthesizer input bit selects either  $f(X_{IN})$  or  $f(X_{CIN})$  as an input clock  $f_{IN}$  for the frequency synthesizer.

Figure 2.7.7 shows the block diagram for the frequency synthesizer circuit.

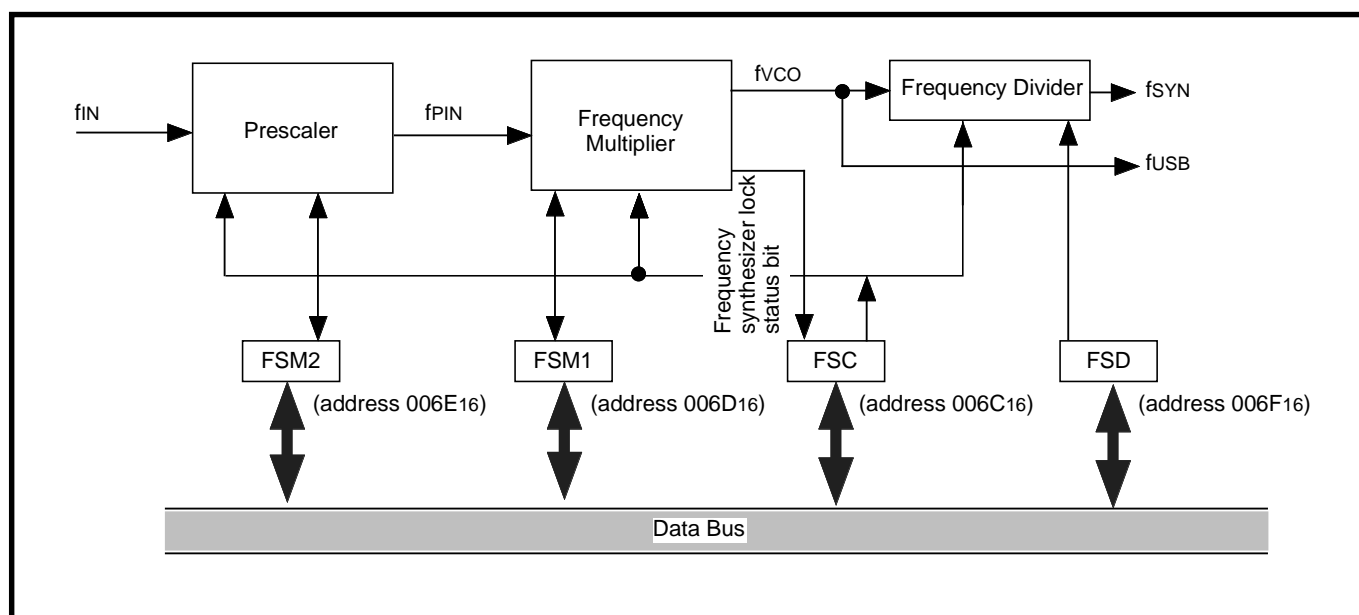


Fig. 2.7.7 Block diagram for frequency synthesizer circuit

#### (1) $f_{PIN}$

$f_{IN}$  is divided by the contents of frequency synthesizer multiply register 2 (FSM2: address  $6E_{16}$ ) to generate  $f_{PIN}$ , where

$$f_{PIN} = f_{IN} / 2(n + 1), \quad n: \text{value set to FSM2.}$$

When the value of FSM2 is set to 255, the division is not performed and  $f_{PIN}$  will equal  $f_{IN}$ .

Figure 2.7.8 shows the frequency synthesizer multiply register 2 setting example.

**Note:** Be sure to set  $f_{PIN}$  to 1 MHz or more.

$f_{PIN}$	FSM2 register set value		$f_{IN}$
	Decimal	Hexadecimal	
24 MHz	255	FF <sub>16</sub>	24.00 MHz
1 MHz	11	0B <sub>16</sub>	24.00 MHz
2 MHz	5	05 <sub>16</sub>	24.00 MHz
3 MHz	3	03 <sub>16</sub>	24.00 MHz
6 MHz	1	01 <sub>16</sub>	24.00 MHz
12 MHz	0	00 <sub>16</sub>	24.00 MHz

Fig. 2.7.8 Frequency synthesizer multiply register 2 setting example

**(2)  $f_{VCO}$** 

$f_{VCO}$  is generated by multiplying  $f_{PIN}$  by the contents of frequency synthesizer multiply register 1 (FSM1: address 6D<sub>16</sub>), where

$$f_{VCO} = f_{PIN} \times \{2(n + 1)\}, n: \text{value set to FSM1.}$$

Set the value of FSM1 so that  $f_{VCO}$  will be 48 MHz.

$f_{VCO}$  is optimized in the frequency synthesizer to be used as  $f_{USB}$  and it will be sent into the USB function control unit.

While the frequency synthesizer enable bit is "0" (disabled),  $f_{VCO}$  retains "H" or "L" level.

Figure 2.7.9 shows the frequency synthesizer multiply register 1 setting example.

f <sub>PIN</sub>	FSM1 register set value		f <sub>VCO</sub>
	Decimal	Hexadecimal	
320 kHz	74	4A <sub>16</sub>	48.00 MHz
2 MHz	11	0B <sub>16</sub>	48.00 MHz
4 MHz	5	05 <sub>16</sub>	48.00 MHz
6 MHz	3	03 <sub>16</sub>	48.00 MHz
12 MHz	1	01 <sub>16</sub>	48.00 MHz
24 MHz	0	00 <sub>16</sub>	48.00 MHz

**Fig. 2.7.9 Frequency synthesizer multiply register 1 setting example**

**(3)  $f_{SYN}$** 

$f_{VCO}$  is divided by the contents of frequency synthesizer divide register (FSD: address 6F<sub>16</sub>) to generate  $f_{SYN}$ , where

$$f_{SYN} = f_{VCO} / 2(m + 1), m: \text{value set to FSD.}$$

When the value of FSD is set to 255, the division is not performed and  $f_{SYN}$  becomes invalid.

$f_{SYN}$  can be used as the internal system clock by setting the internal system clock select bit of CPU mode register A.

Figure 2.7.10 shows the frequency synthesizer divide register setting example.

When the frequency synthesizer lock status bit is "1" in the frequency synthesizer enabled, this indicates that  $f_{SYN}$  and  $f_{VCO}$  have correct frequencies.

f <sub>VCO</sub>	FSD register set value		f <sub>SYN</sub>
	Decimal	Hexadecimal	
48.00 MHz	00	00 <sub>16</sub>	24.00 MHz
48.00 MHz	127	7F <sub>16</sub>	187.5 kHz

**Fig. 2.7.10 Frequency synthesizer divide register setting example**

**(4) Recovering from hardware reset**

The frequency synthesizer and DC-DC converter must be set up as follows when recovering from a Hardware Reset:

- ① Enable the frequency synthesizer after setting the frequency synthesizer related registers (addresses 6C<sub>16</sub> to 6F<sub>16</sub>). Then wait for 2 ms.
- ② Check the frequency synthesizer lock status bit. If “0”, wait for 0.1 ms and then recheck.
- ③ To use the intermediate current, set the LPF current control bits of frequency synthesizer control register (address 6C<sub>16</sub>) to (b6, b5) = “10”.
- ④ When using the USB built-in DC-DC converter, set the USB line driver supply enable bit of the USB control register (address 13<sub>16</sub>) to “1”. This setting must be done 2 ms or more later than the setup described in step ①. The USB line driver current control bit must be set to “0” at this time. (When V<sub>CC</sub> = 3.3V, the setting explained in this step is not necessary.)
- ⑤ After waiting for (C + 1) ms so that the external capacitance pin (Ext. Cap. pin) can reach approximately 3.3 V, set the USB clock enable bit to “1”. At this time, “C” equals the capacitance (μF) of the capacitor connected to the Ext. Cap. pin. For example, if 2.2 μF and 0.1 μF capacitors are connected to the Ext. Cap. in parallel, the required wait will be (2.3 + 1) ms.
- ⑥ After enabling the USB clock, wait for 4 or more φ cycles, and then set the USB enable bit to “1”.

Do not write to any of the USB internal registers (addresses 50<sub>16</sub> to 64<sub>16</sub>) until the USB clock enabled, except for the USB control register (address 13<sub>16</sub>), clock control register (address 1F<sub>16</sub>), and frequency synthesizer control register (address 6C<sub>16</sub>).

**2.7.4 Notes on frequency synthesizer**

- Bits 6 and 5 of the frequency synthesizer control register (address 6C<sub>16</sub>) are initialized to (b6, b5) = “11” after reset release. Make sure to set bits 6 and 5 to “10” after the frequency synthesizer lock status bit goes to “1”.
- Use the frequency synthesizer output clocks 2 ms to 5 ms later than setting the frequency synthesizer enable bit to “1” (enabled). After that do not change any register values because it might cause output clocks unstabilized temporarily.
- Make sure to connect a low-pulse filter to the LPF pin when using the frequency synthesizer.
- The frequency synthesizer divide register set value never affects f<sub>USB</sub> frequency.
- When using the f<sub>SYN</sub> as an internal system clock, set the frequency synthesizer divide register so that f<sub>SYN</sub> could be 24 MHz or less.
- When using the frequency synthesized clock function, we recommend using the fastest frequency possible of f(X<sub>IN</sub>) or f(X<sub>CIN</sub>) as an input clock for the PLL.
- Set the value of frequency synthesizer multiply register 2 (FSM2) so that the f<sub>PIN</sub> is 1 MHz or higher.



## 2.8 Master CPU bus interface

This paragraph explains the registers setting method and the notes related to the master CPU bus interface.

### 2.8.1 Memory map

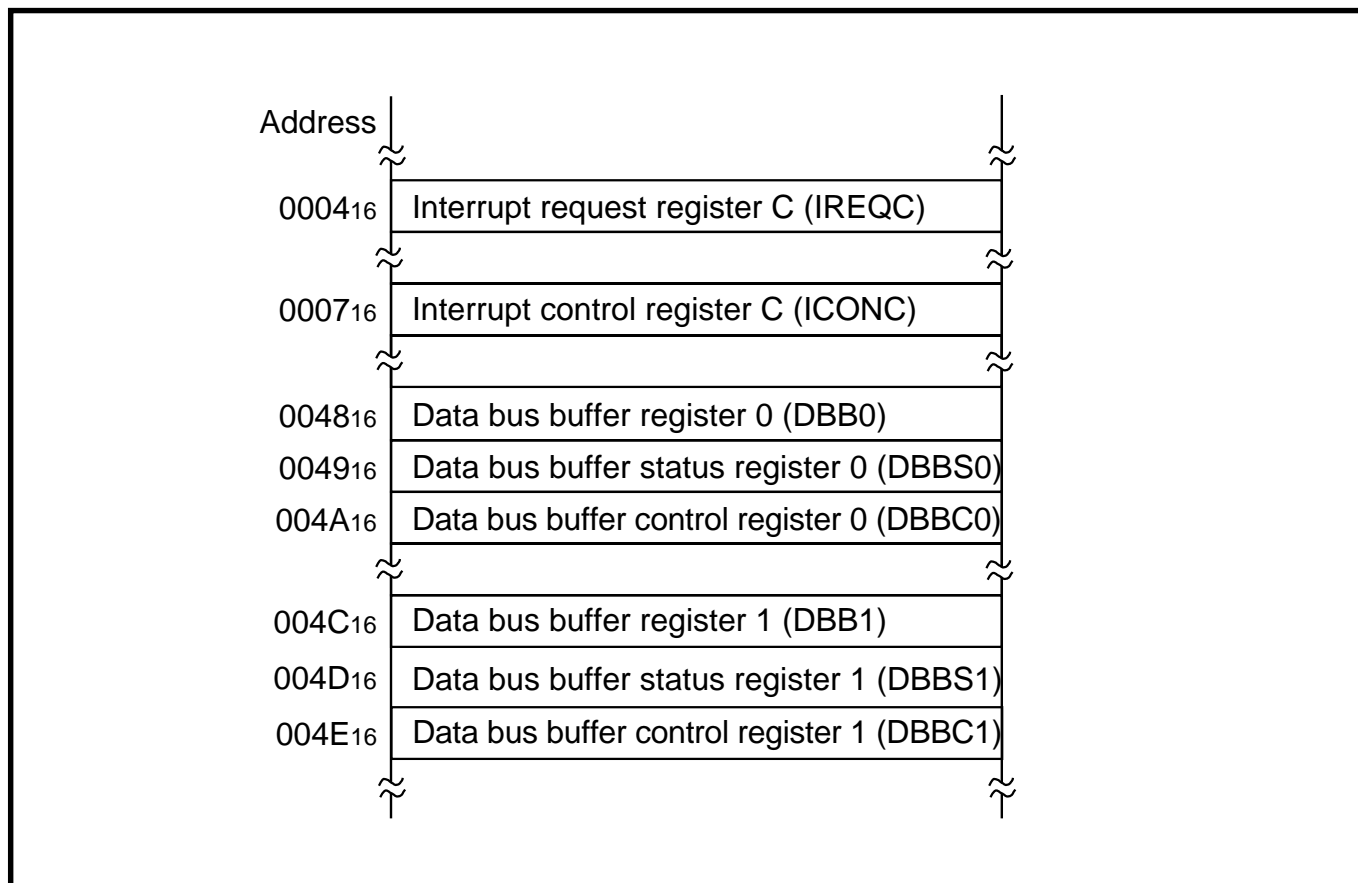


Fig. 2.8.1 Memory map of registers related to master CPU bus interface

## 2.8.2 Related registers

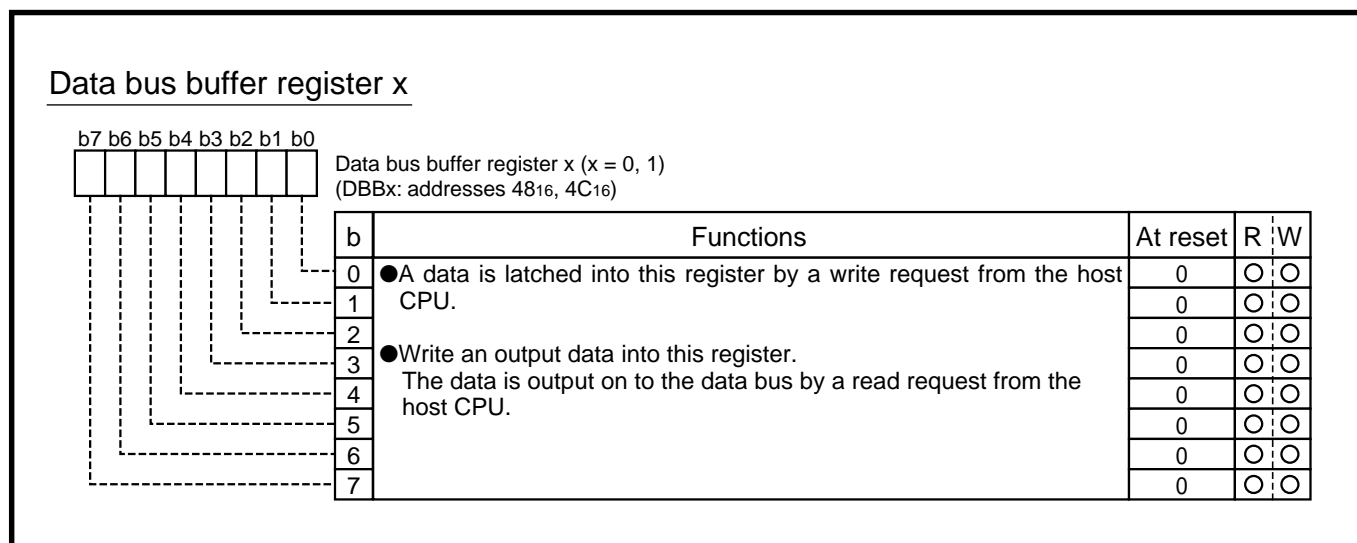


Fig. 2.8.2 Structure of Data bus buffer register x (x = 0, 1)

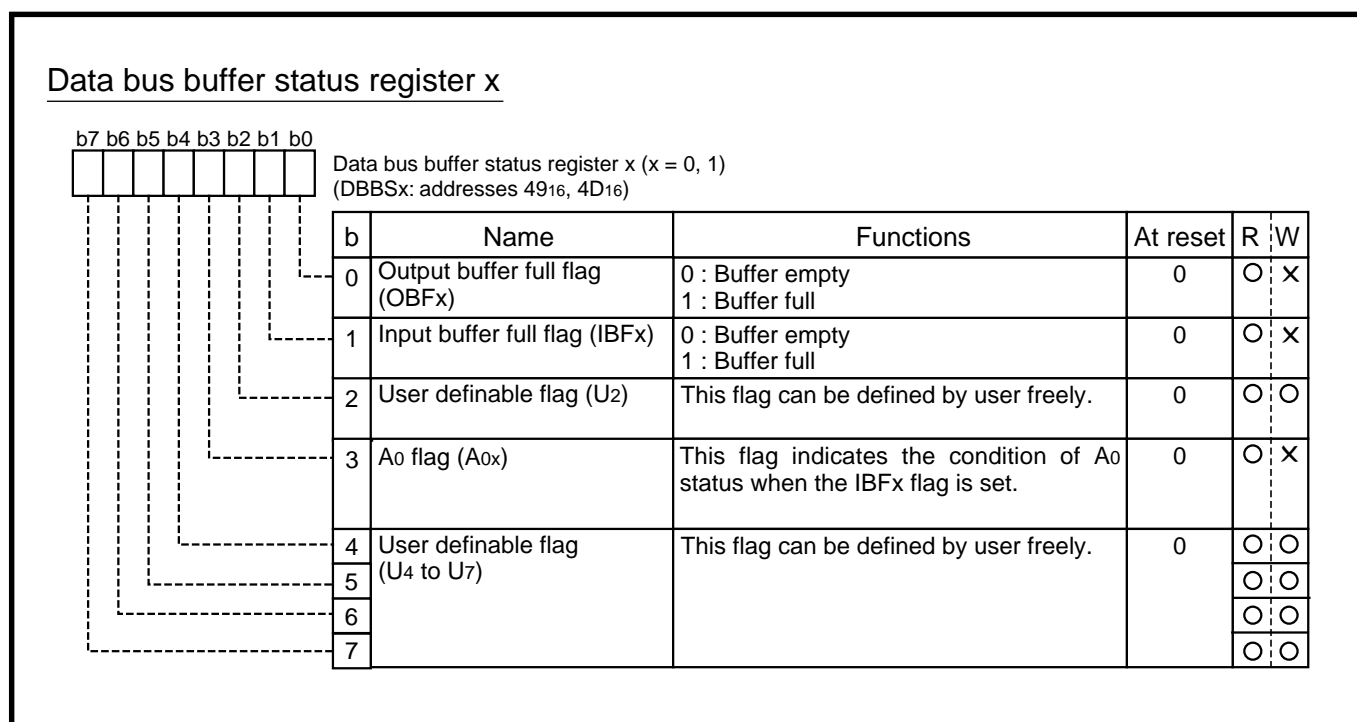


Fig. 2.8.3 Structure of Data bus buffer status register x (x = 0, 1)

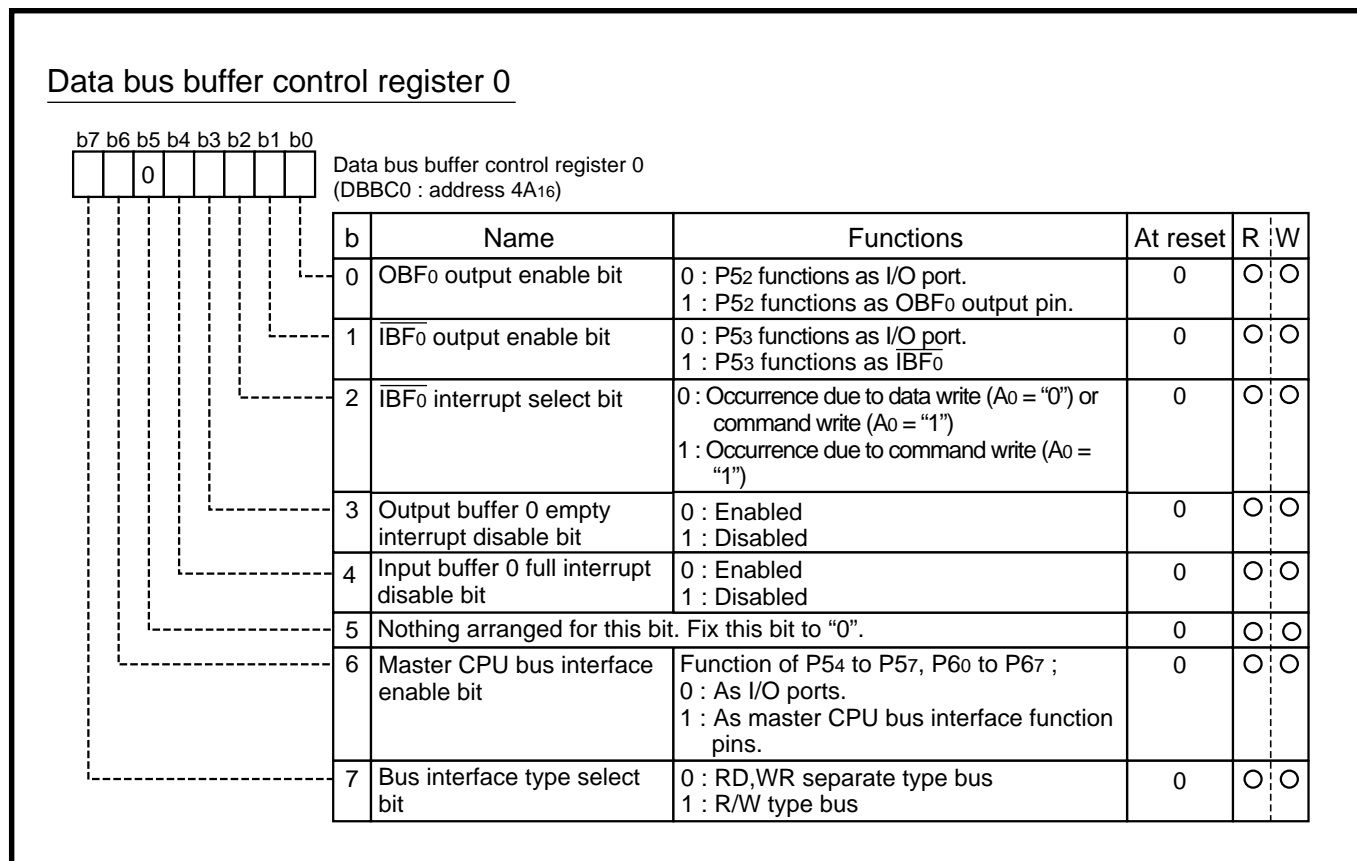


Fig. 2.8.4 Structure of Data bus buffer control register 0

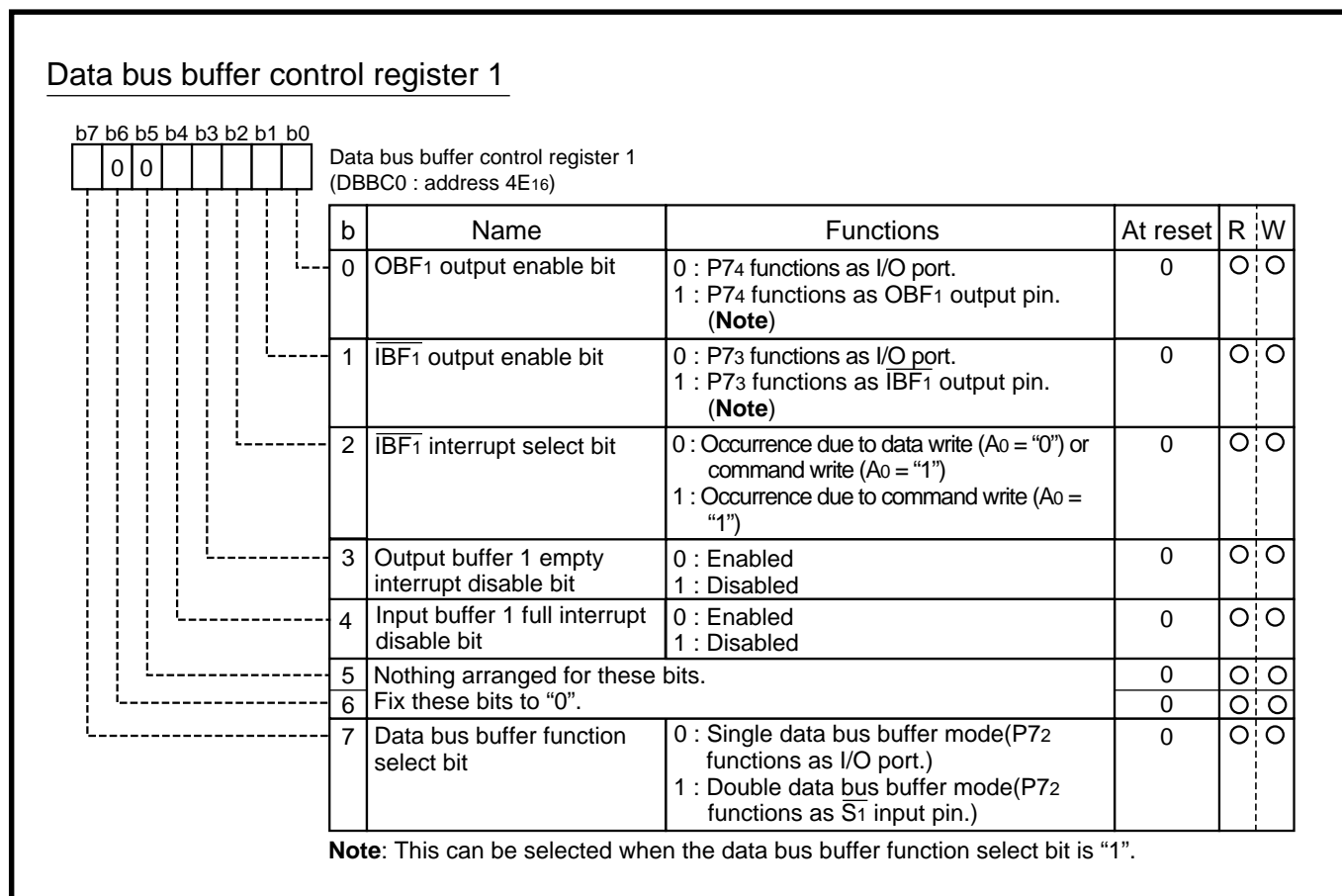


Fig. 2.8.5 Structure of Data bus buffer control register 1

### 2.8.3 Functional description

The internal 2-byte bus interface can be controlled by the signals from the host CPU side; it is called the slave mode. This bus interface allows the 7641 group to be directly connected with a R/W type of CPU bus or a RD and WR separate type of CPU bus.

Ports P5<sub>2</sub> to P5<sub>7</sub>, P6<sub>0</sub> to P6<sub>7</sub>, P7<sub>2</sub> to P7<sub>4</sub> become the master CPU bus interface function pins when the master CPU bus interface is enabled.

P6<sub>0</sub> to P6<sub>7</sub>: Function as data I/O pins (DQ<sub>0</sub> to DQ<sub>7</sub>). (Be sure to set them to input mode by setting the port P6 direction register to "0".)

P5<sub>2</sub>, P7<sub>4</sub>: Function as the status signal OBF<sub>x</sub> (x = 0, 1). The state of the output buffer DBB<sub>x</sub> (x = 0, 1) is output.

P5<sub>3</sub>, P7<sub>3</sub>: Function as the status signal  $\overline{\text{IBF}}_x$  (x = 0, 1). The state of the input buffer DBB<sub>x</sub> (x = 0, 1) is output.

P5<sub>4</sub>, P7<sub>2</sub>: Function as the status signal  $\overline{\text{S}}_x$  (x = 0, 1). The chip select signals from the host CPU are input.

P5<sub>5</sub>: Functions as the status signal A<sub>0</sub>. When A<sub>0</sub> is "H", the host CPU can read the contents of the data bus buffer status register x (x = 0, 1) (addresses 49<sub>16</sub>, 4D<sub>16</sub>). When A<sub>0</sub> is "L", the contents of data bus buffer register x (x = 0, 1) can be output owing to a read request from the host CPU.

When a data is written into the data bus buffer register x (x = 0, 1), if A<sub>0</sub> is "L", this indicates that its contents are the data; if "H", this indicates that they are the command.

P7<sub>2</sub> to P7<sub>4</sub> become the master CPU bus interface function pins only when the double data bus buffer mode is used.

Tables 2.8.1 and 2.8.2 shows the bus control signal and data bus state; Figure 2.8.6 shows a connection example.

**Table 2.8.1 Bus control signal and data bus state-RD/WR separate type**

$\overline{\text{S}}_x$ signal	RD signal	$\overline{\text{WR}}$ signal	A <sub>0</sub> signal	Data bus state	Data on data bus
L	L	H	L	Read	Output data
L	L	H	H	Read	DBBS <sub>x</sub> contents
L	H	L	L	Write	Input data (data)
L	H	L	H	Write	Input data (command)
H	–	–	–	High-impedance	–

**Table 2.8.2 Bus control signal and data bus state-R/W type**

$\overline{\text{S}}_x$ signal	R/ $\overline{\text{W}}$ signal	E signal	A <sub>0</sub> signal	Data bus state	Data on data bus
L	H	H	L	Read	Output data
L	H	H	H	Read	DBBS <sub>x</sub> contents
L	L	H	L	Write	Input data (data)
L	L	H	H	Write	Input data (command)
H	–	–	–	High-impedance	–

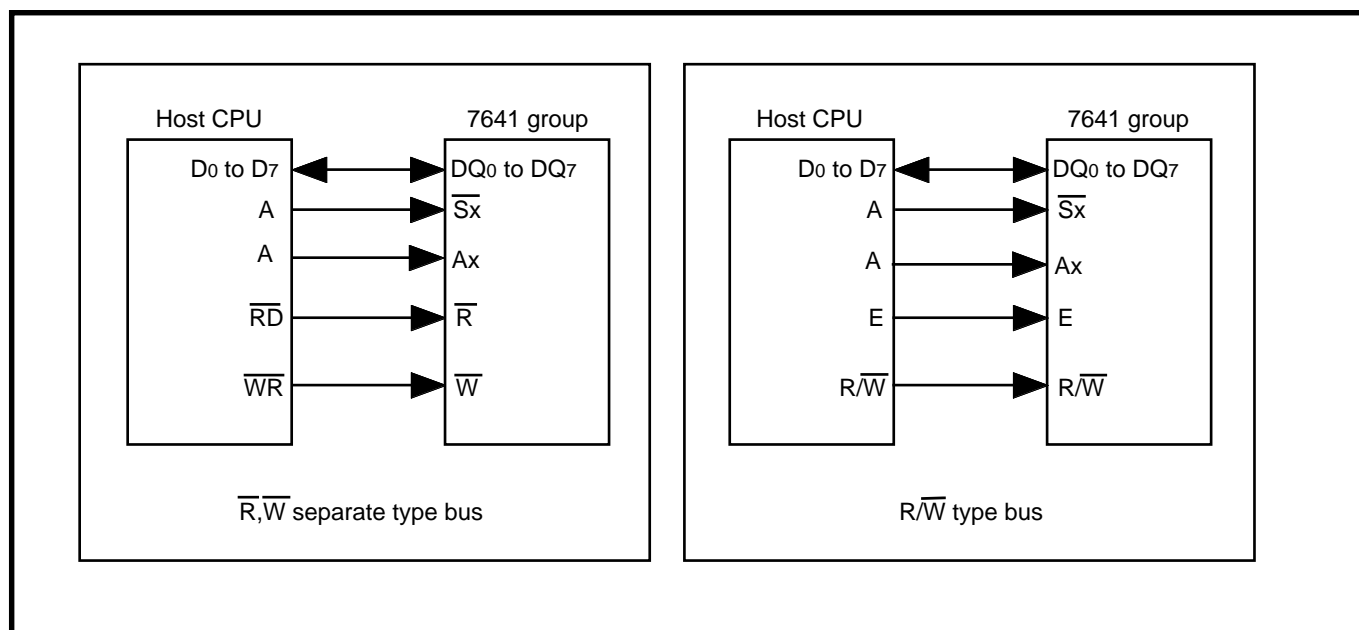


Fig. 2.8.6 Connection example

**(1) Data bus buffer mode**

The selection of either the single data bus buffer mode or the double data bus buffer mode can be performed by the Data Bus Buffer Function Select Bit.

**•Single data bus buffer mode**

The data bus buffer 0 of 1 byte only is used.

**•Double data bus buffer mode**

The data bus buffer 0 and data bus buffer 1, totalling 2 bytes, are used.

**(2) Interrupt****•Input buffer full interrupt**

When the data is input to the data bus buffer register x, the Input Buffer Full Flag (IBFx ; x = 0, 1) is set to "1" and the interrupt request occurs. When the data is read out from the data bus buffer register x, the IBFx flag is cleared to "0".

**•Output buffer empty interrupt**

When the data is written to the data bus buffer register x, the Output Buffer Full Flag (OBFx ; x = 0, 1) is set to "1". When the host CPU reads out from the data bus buffer register x, the OBFx flag is cleared to "0" and the output buffer empty interrupt request occurs.

## 2.8.4 Operation description

### (1) Input operation

The bus interface input operation is explained as the following:

- ① When the logical OR of  $\overline{Sx}$  ( $x = 0, 1$ ) and  $\overline{W}$  is "0", the data bus state is latched into the input data bus buffer register  $x$  ( $x = 0, 1$ ) at the rising of  $\overline{W}$  input signal.
- ② When the data is latched into the input data bus buffer register  $x$ , the Input Buffer Full Flag (IBFx ;  $x = 0, 1$ ) of the data bus buffer status register  $x$  ( $x = 0, 1$ ) is simultaneously set to "1".
- ③ When the IBFx flag is set to "1", the input buffer full interrupt request occurs.
- ④ At the timing ③, the  $A_0$  level is stored into the  $A_0$  flag, bit 3 of the data bus buffer status register  $x$ . Refer to the  $A_0$  flag to judge whether the read contents of the input data bus buffer register  $x$  are data or a command.

### (2) Output operation

The bus interface output operation is explained as the following:

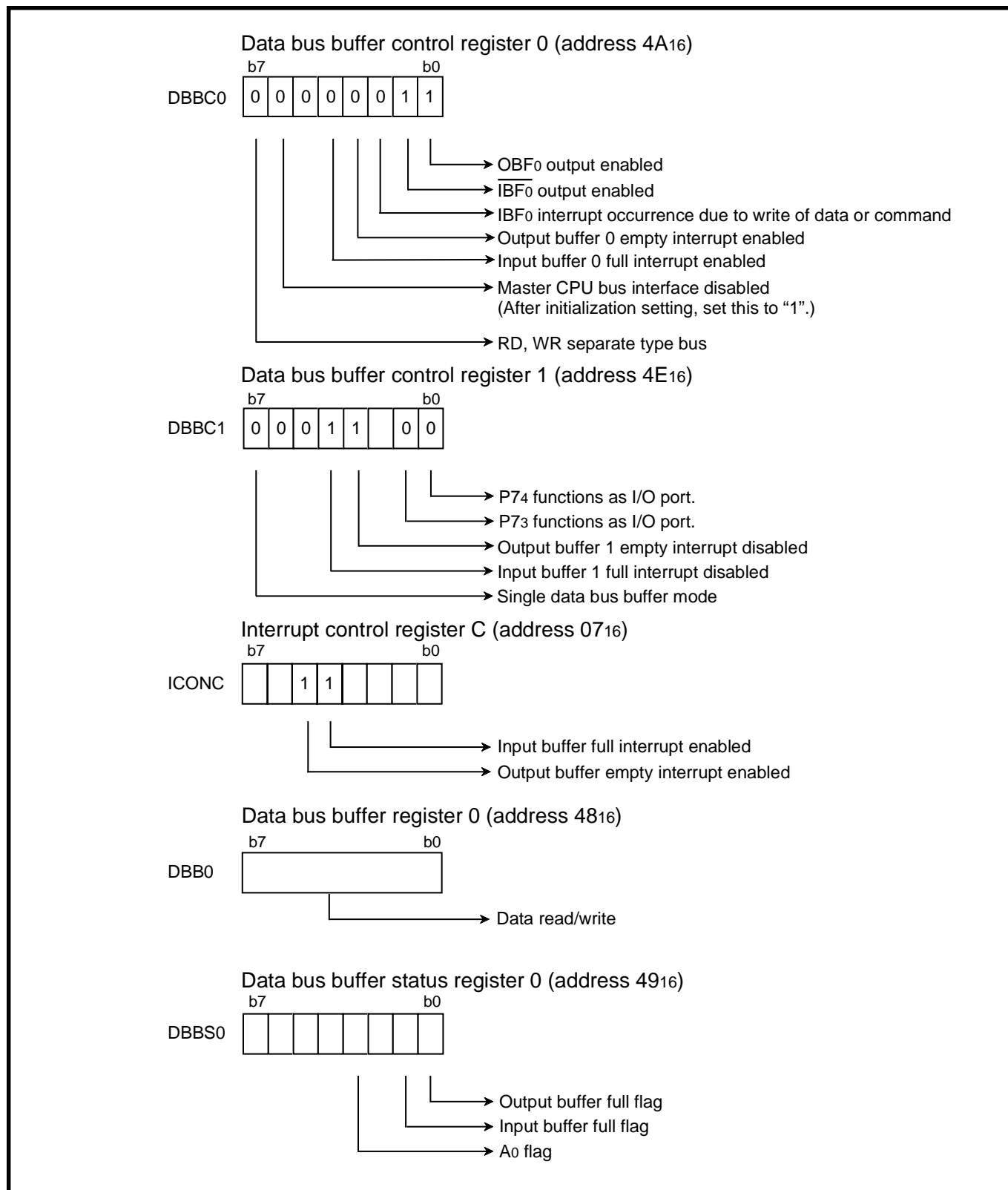
- ① Writing data to the output data bus buffer register  $x$  ( $x = 0, 1$ ) sets the Output Buffer Full Flag (OBFx ;  $x = 0, 1$ ) of the data bus buffer status register  $x$  to "1".
- ② When the logical OR of  $\overline{Sx}$ ,  $\overline{R}$  and  $A_0$  is "0", the contents of the output data bus buffer register  $x$  are output on the data bus and the OBFx flag is simultaneously cleared to "0".
- ③ At the rising of the  $\overline{R}$  input signal, the output buffer empty interrupt request occurs.

## 2.8.5 Master CPU bus interface application example

### (1) Data communication with host CPU

**Outline :** The MCU communicates with the host CPU by using the single data bus buffer mode.

Figure 2.8.7 shows a setting of the related registers and Figure 2.8.8 shows a control procedure.



**Fig. 2.8.7 Setting of relevant registers**

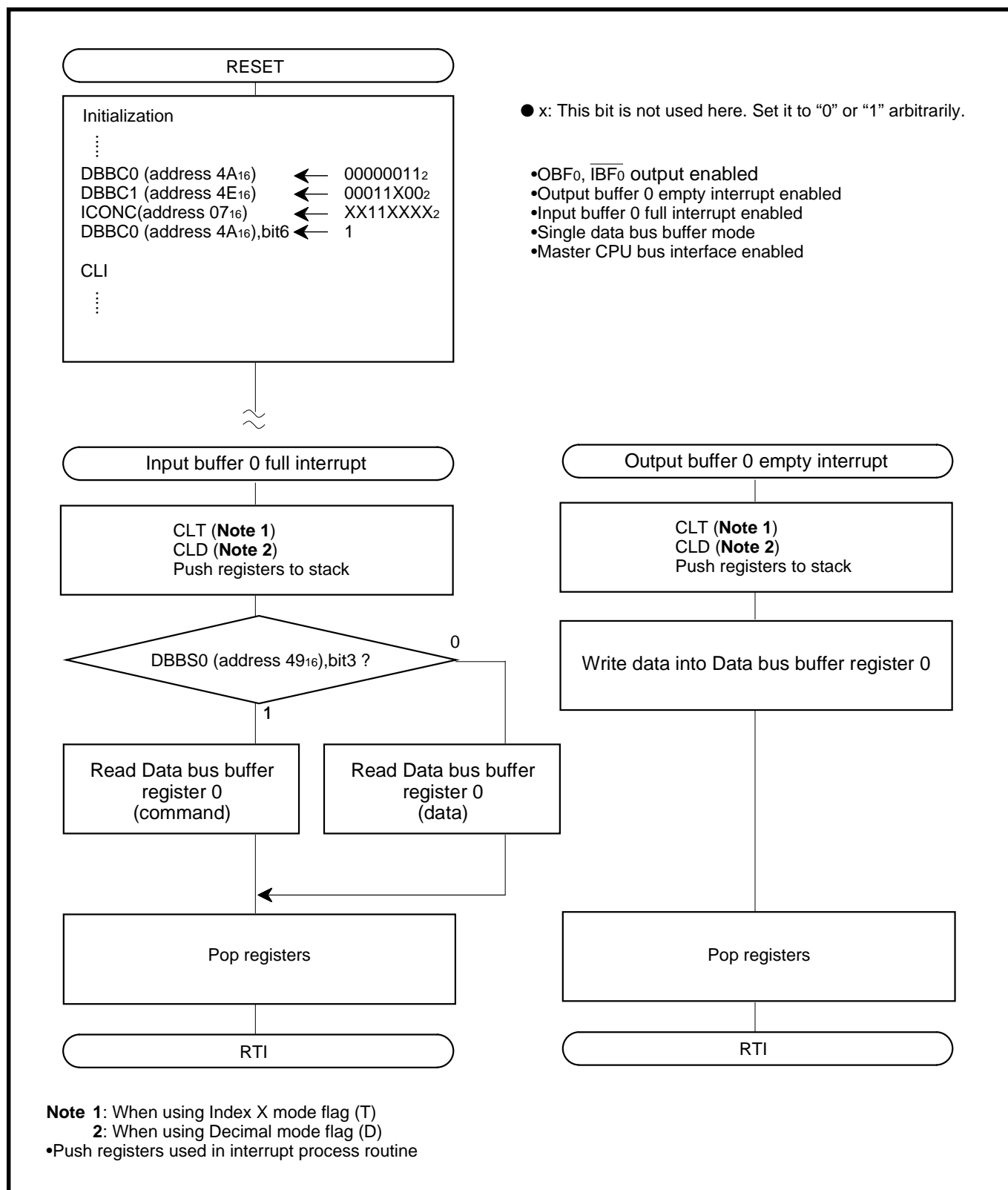


Fig. 2.8.8 Control procedure

### 2.8.6 Notes on master CPU bus interface

Be sure to set port P6 to input mode by setting the port P6 direction register to "0" when the master CPU bus interface is enabled.



## 2.9 Special count source generator (SCSG)

This paragraph explains the registers setting method and the notes related to the special count source generator (SCSG).

### 2.9.1 Memory map

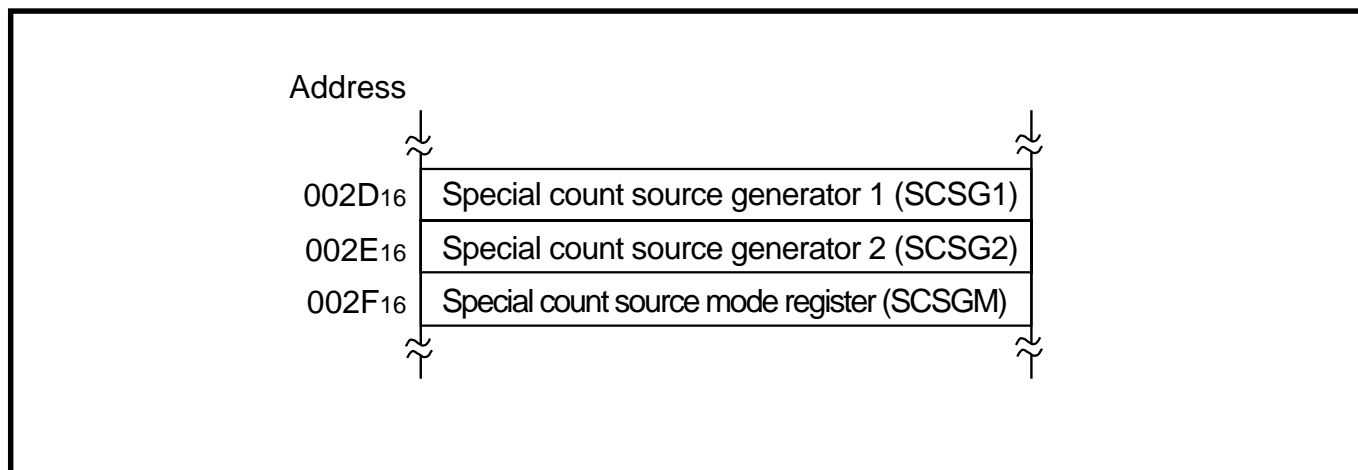


Fig. 2.9.1 Memory map of registers related to special count source generator

## 2.9.2 Related registers

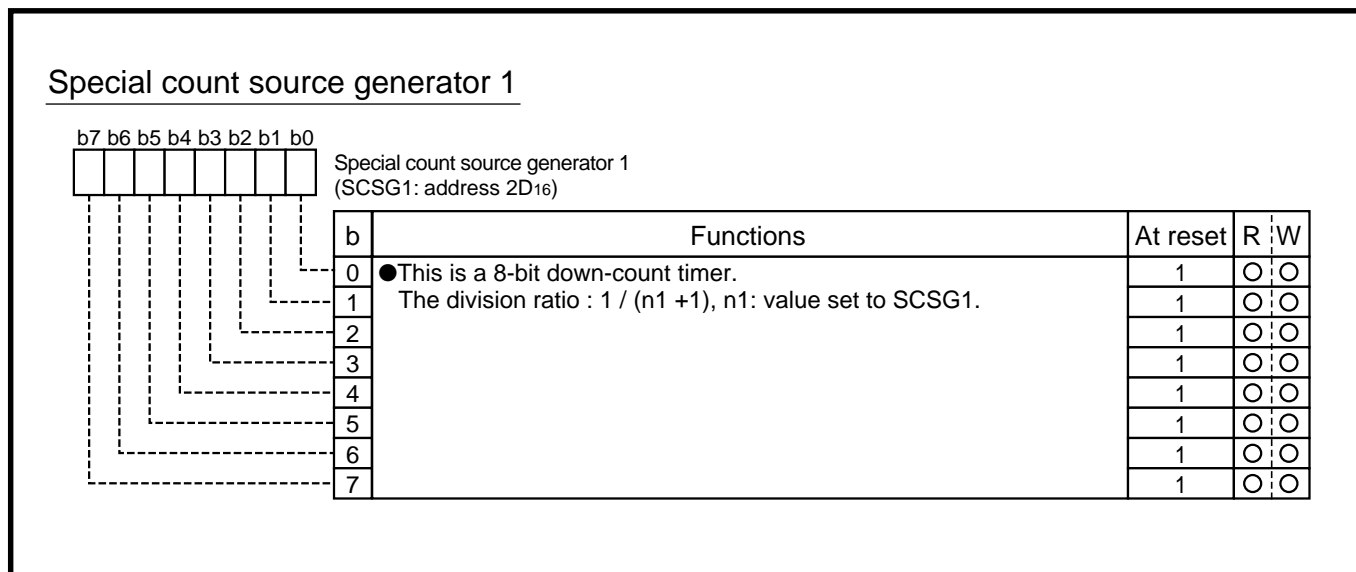


Fig. 2.9.2 Structure of Special count source generator 1

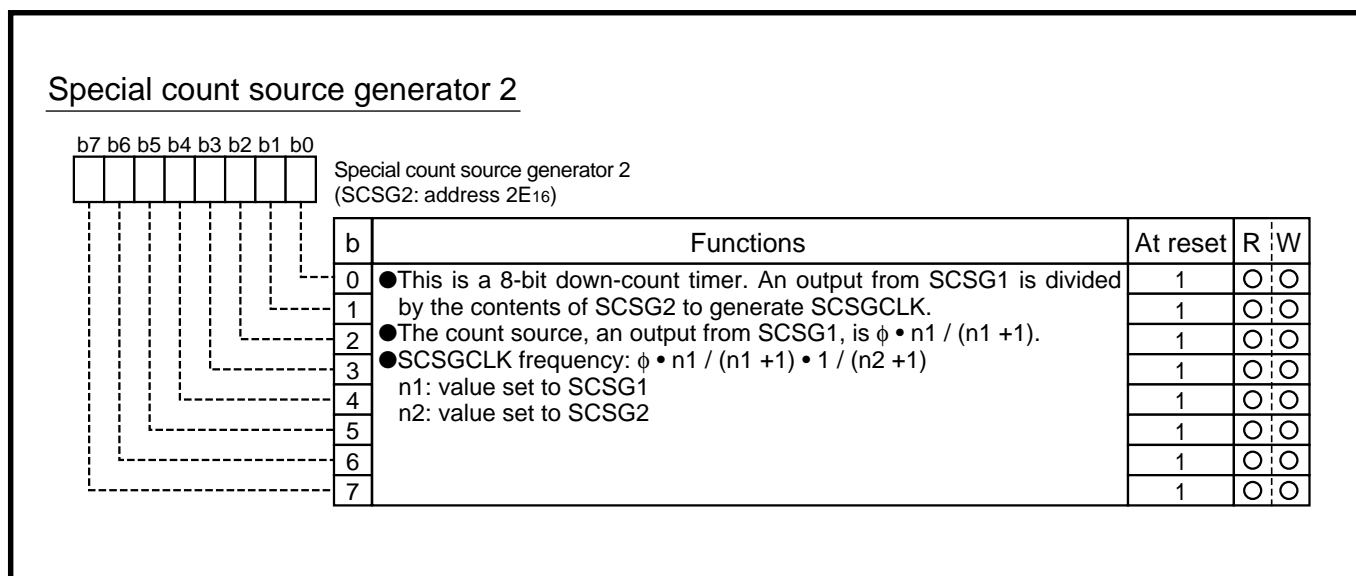


Fig. 2.9.3 Structure of Special count source generator 2

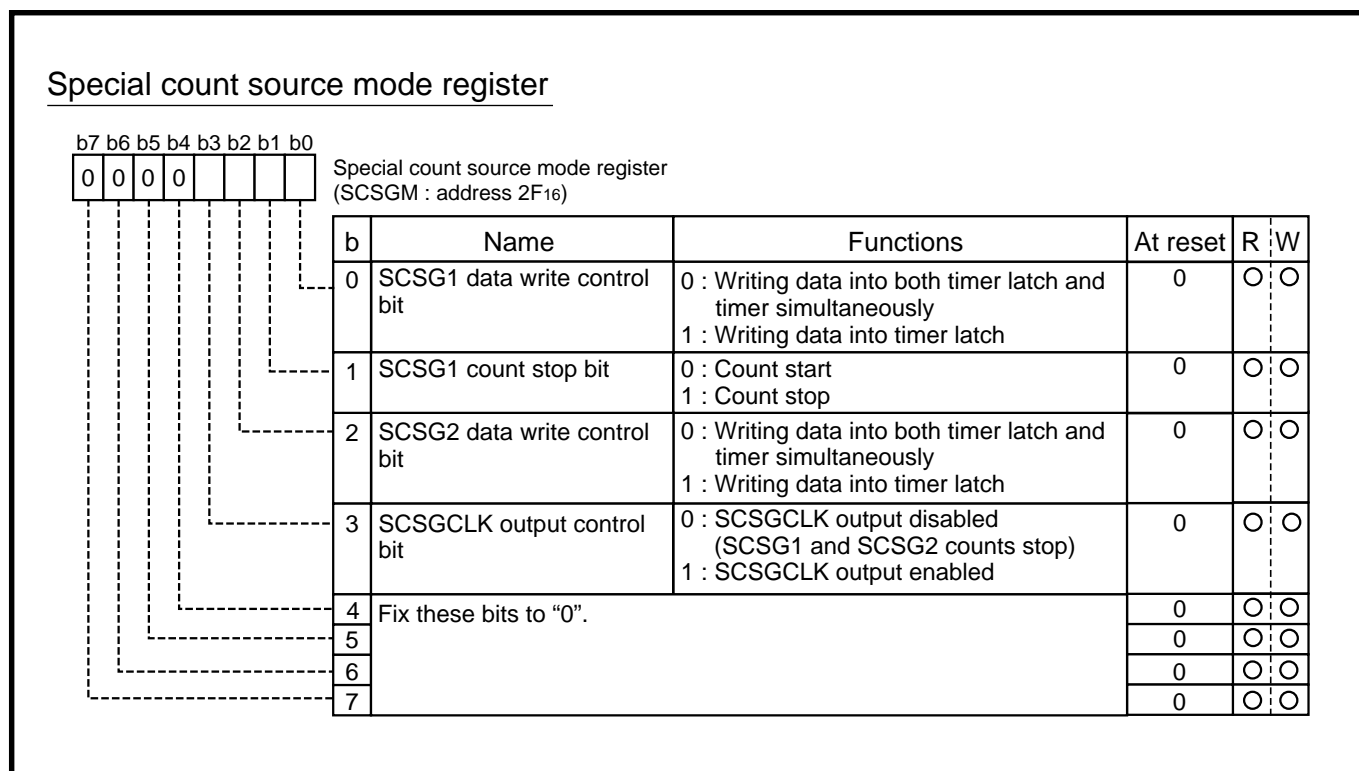


Fig. 2.9.4 Structure of Special count source mode register

### 2.9.3 Functional description

The special count source generator, SCSG, consists of two 8-bit timers: SCSG1 and SCSG2. The output of the special count source generator can be used as a clock source for the timer X, serial I/O and two UARTs (UART1 and UART2).

#### (1) SCSG1

The SCSG1 is a 8-bit down-count timer. An output from SCSG1 is used as an count source of SCSG2. The division ratio of SCSG1 is given by  $1 / (n1 + 1)$  and the count source of SCSG2 becomes  $\phi \times \{n1 / (n1 + 1)\}$ .

n1: value set to the SCSG1

Writing data to the SCSG1 can be performed anytime. When the SCSG1 data write control bit is set to "0" and data is written to the SCSG1, the data is written to the latch and timer at the same time. When that bit is set to "1", the data is only written to the latch. When the count reaches "0", an underflow occurs at the next count source rising edge and the contents of the timer latch are loaded to the timer.

If the SCSG1 count stop bit is set to "1" or the SCSG1 set value is "0", this count source  $\phi$  is not divided, so that the count source for SCSG2 becomes  $\phi$ .

#### (2) SCSG2

The SCSG2 is a 8-bit down-count timer. This uses an output from SCSG1 as an count source.

The SCSG2 output is Clock SCSGCLK. The frequency is calculated as follows:

$$\text{SCSGCLK} = \phi \times \{n1 / (n1+1)\} \times \{1 / (n2+1)\}$$

n1: value set to SCSG1

n2: value set to SCSG2

Writing data to the SCSG2 can be performed anytime. When the SCSG2 data write control bit is set to "0" and data is written to the SCSG2, the data is written to the latch and timer at the same time. When that bit is set to "1", the data is only written to the latch. When the count reaches "0", an underflow occurs at the next count source rising edge and the contents of the timer latch are loaded to the timer.

If the SCSGCLK output control bit is set to "0", the SCSG1 and SCSG2 stop their counts and SCSGCLK output is disabled. To use the SCSGCLK, set this bit to "1".

## 2.10 External devices connection

This paragraph explains the registers setting method and the notes related to the external devices connection.

### 2.10.1 Memory map

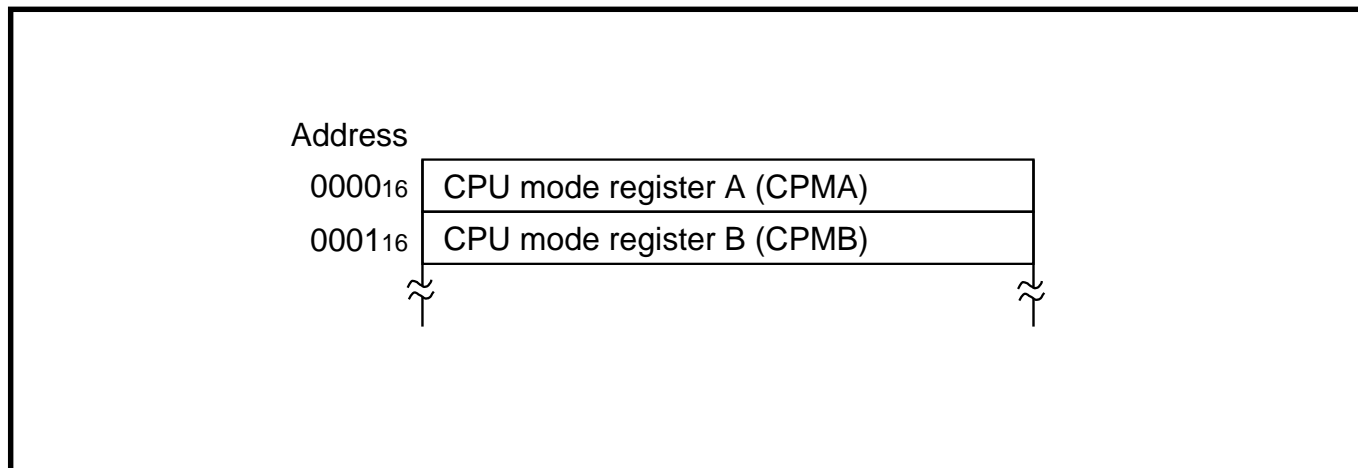


Fig. 2.10.1 Memory map of registers related to external devices connection

## 2.10.2 Related registers

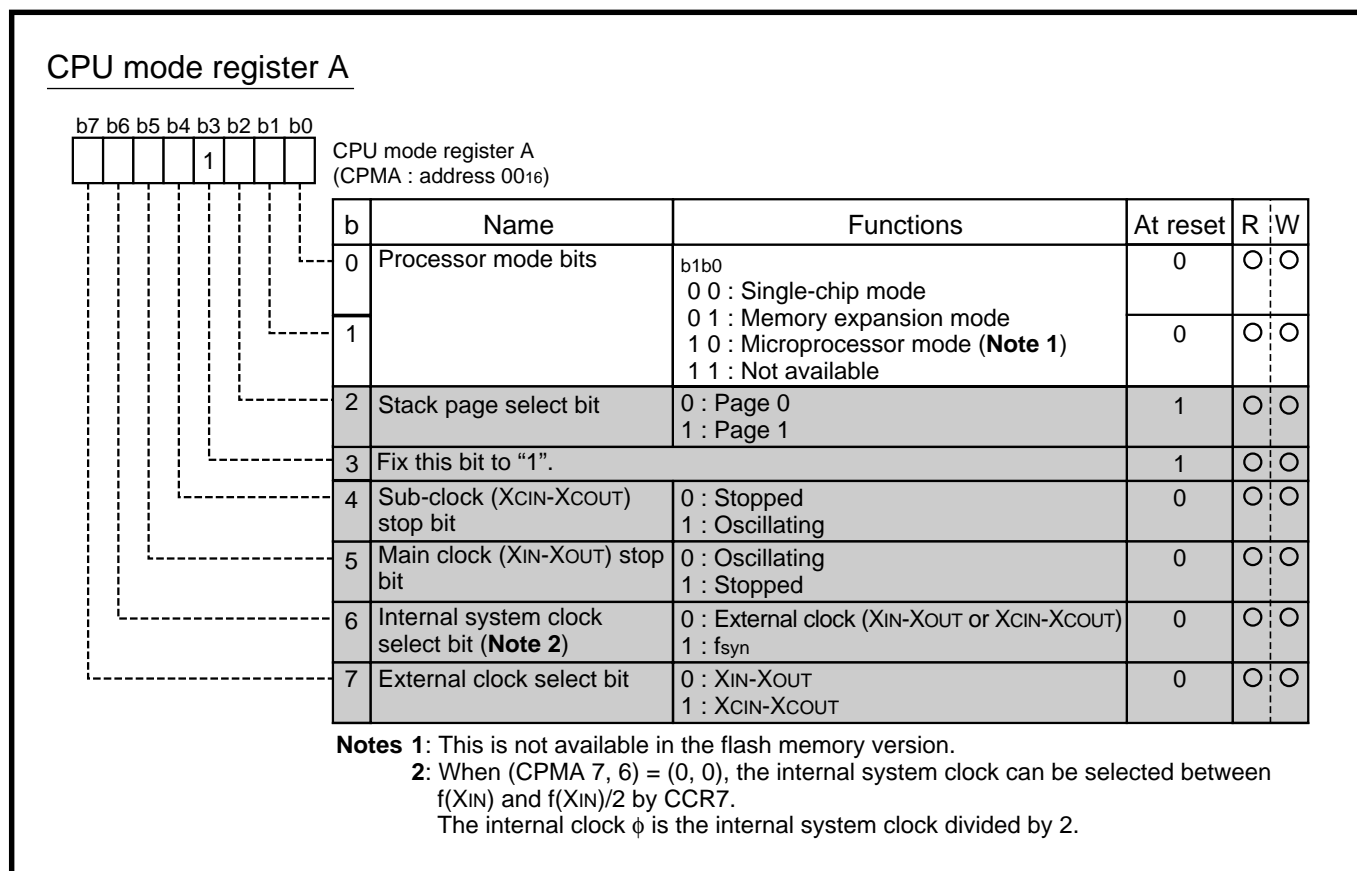


Fig. 2.10.2 Structure of CPU mode register A

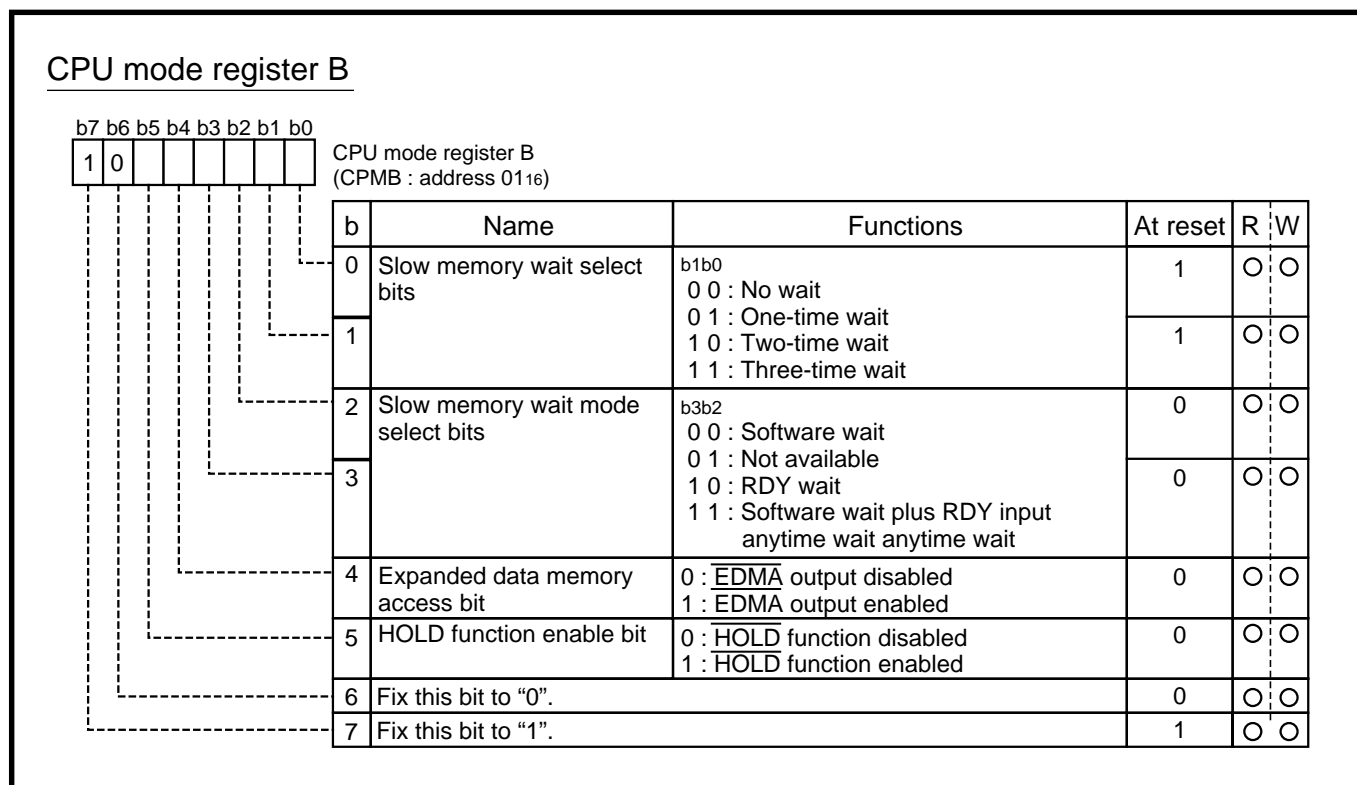


Fig. 2.10.3 Structure of CPU mode register B

### 2.10.3 Functional description

This MCU starts its operation in the single-chip mode just after reset.

#### (1) Memory expansion mode

This mode is selected by setting "01" to the processor mode bits (b1, b0 of CPMA) in software with CNV<sub>SS</sub> connected to V<sub>SS</sub>.

In this mode, the ports function as follows:

Ports P0 and P1 as address buses (AB<sub>0</sub> to AB<sub>15</sub>)

Port P2 as data buses (DB<sub>0</sub> to DB<sub>7</sub>)

Ports P3<sub>3</sub> to P3<sub>7</sub> as DMA<sub>OUT</sub>, φ<sub>OUT</sub>, SYNC<sub>OUT</sub>,  $\overline{WR}$ ,  $\overline{RD}$  pins respectively.

This mode enables external memory expansion while maintaining the validity of the internal ROM.

#### (2) Microprocessor mode

This mode is selected by resetting the MCU with CNV<sub>SS</sub> connected to V<sub>CC</sub>, or by setting "10" to the processor mode bits (b1, b0 of CPMA) in software with CNV<sub>SS</sub> connected to V<sub>SS</sub>. The function is the same as that of memory expansion mode.

In the microprocessor mode, the internal ROM is no longer valid and an external memory must be used.

Do not set this mode in the flash memory version.

### 2.10.4 Slow memory wait

The slow memory wait function is for easier interfacing with external devices that have long access times. This can be enabled in the memory expansion mode and microprocessor mode.

The wait is effective only to external areas. Access to internal area is always performed without wait.

#### (1) Software wait

The software wait is selected by setting "00" to the slow memory wait mode select bits (b3, b2 of CPMB).

Figure 2.10.4 shows the software wait timing example.

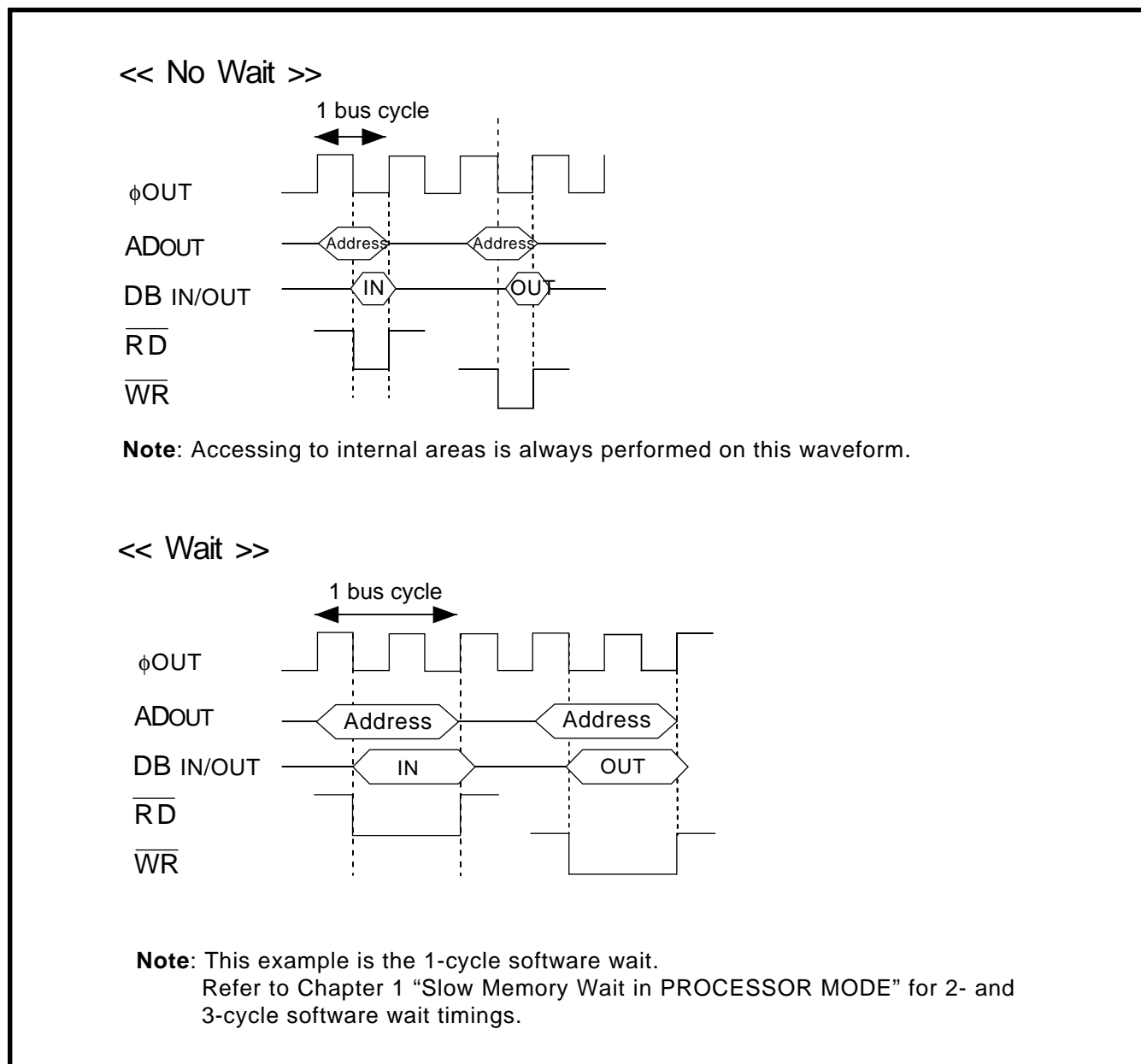


Fig. 2.10.4 Software wait timing example



**(2) RDY wait**

RDY wait is selected by setting "10" to the slow memory wait mode select bits (b3, b2 of CPMB). When a fixed time of "L" (tsu) is input to the RDY pin at the beginning of a read/write cycle (before  $\phi$  cycle falls), the MCU goes to the RDY state. Then the read/write cycle can be extended by one to three  $\phi$  cycles. The number of  $\phi$  cycles to be extended can be selected by the slow memory wait select bits (b1, b0 of CPMB).

Even if "L" is input to the RDY pin at the end of waited read/write cycle, the cycle is not extended. When a fixed time of "H" (tsu) is input to the RDY pin at the beginning of a read/write cycle (before  $\phi$  cycle falls), the MCU is released from the RDY state.

Figure 2.10.5 shows the RDY wait timing example.

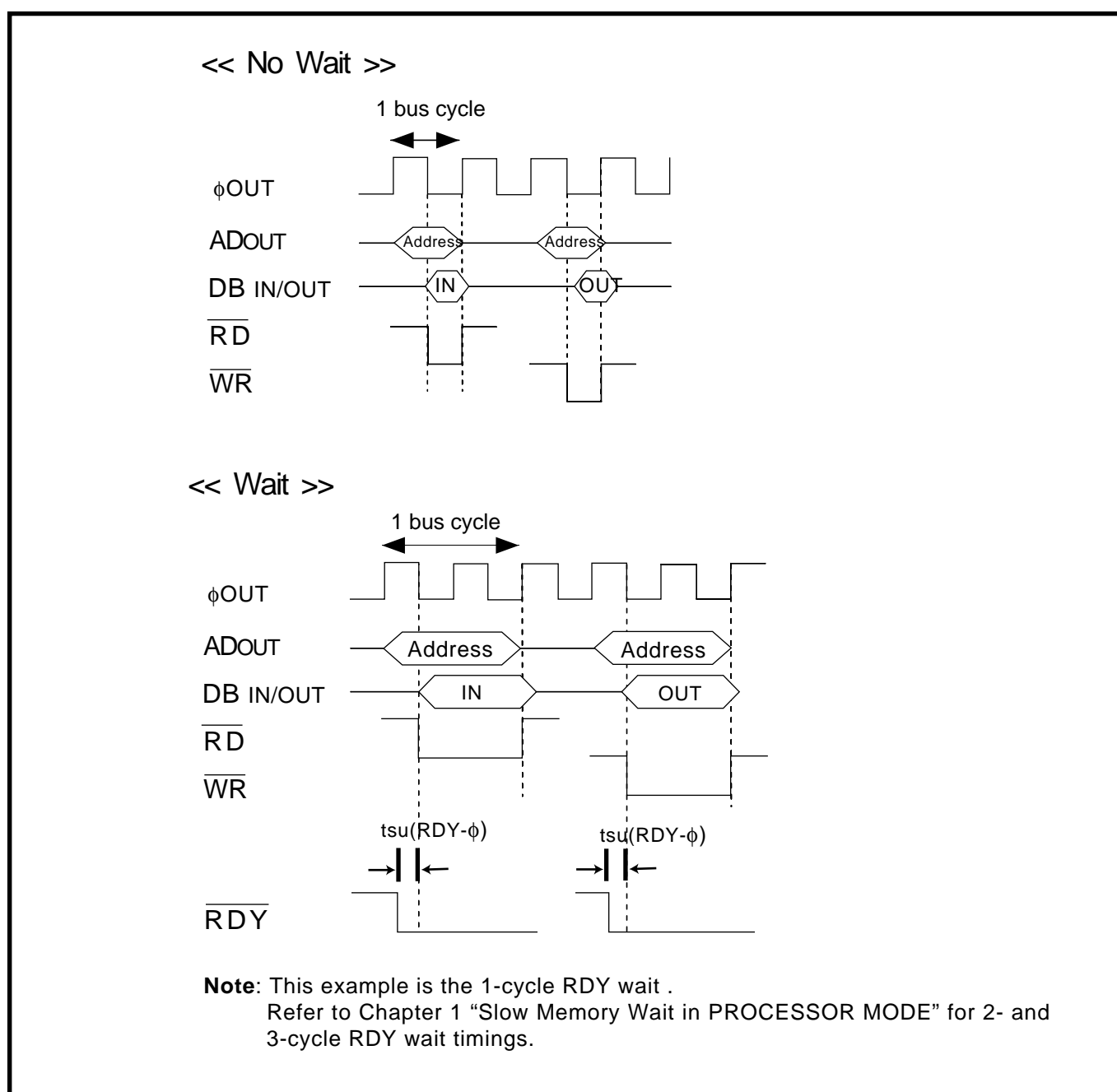
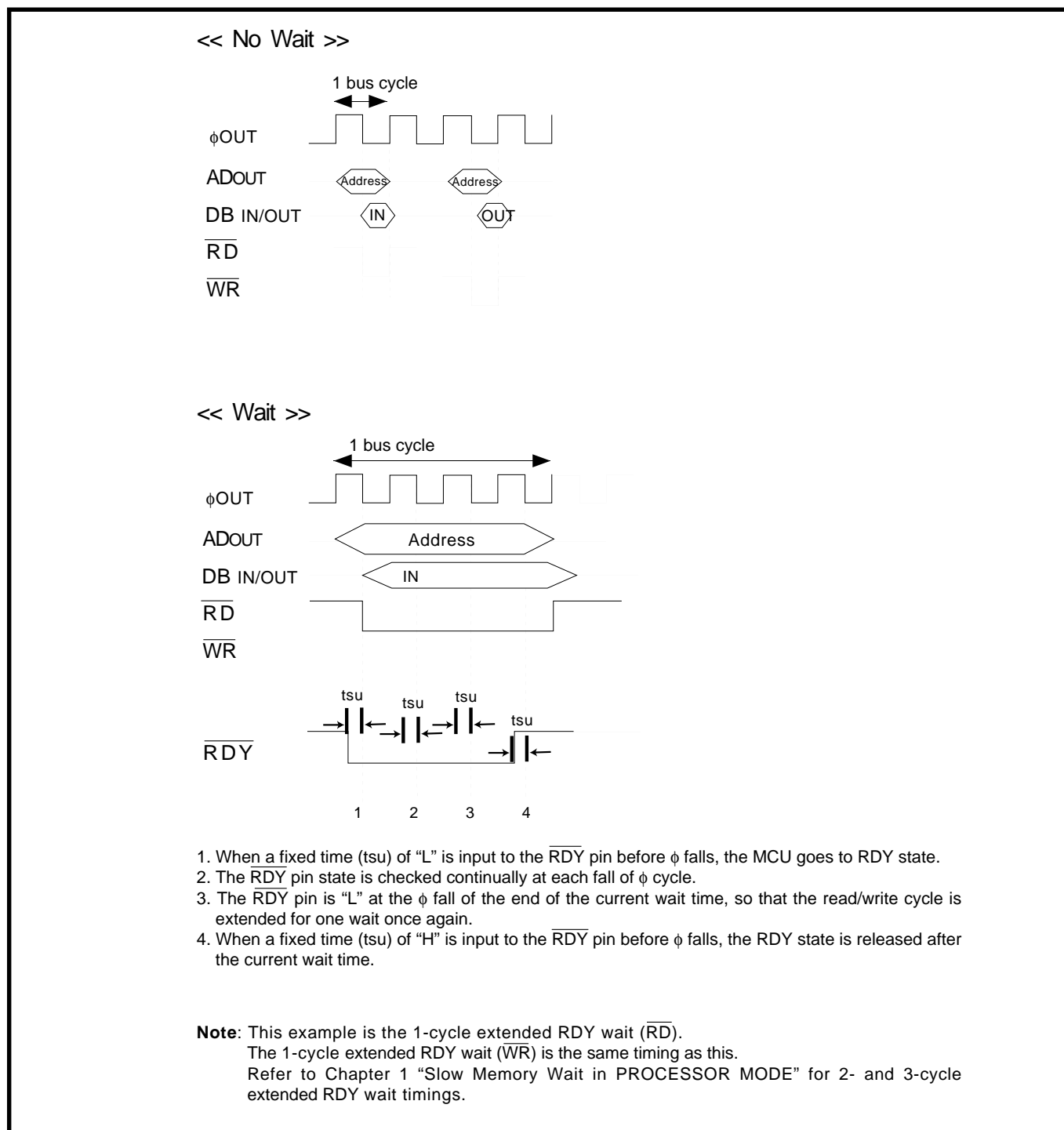


Fig. 2.10.5 RDY wait timing example

**(3) Software wait + Extended RDY wait**

Extended RDY wait (software wait plus RDY input anytime wait) is selected by setting "11" to the slow memory wait mode select bits (b3, b2 of CPMB). The read/write cycle can be extended when a fixed time (tsu) of "L" is input to the RDY pin at the beginning of a read/write cycle (before  $\phi$  cycle falls). The RDY pin state is checked continually at each fall of  $\phi$  cycle until the RDY pin goes to "H" and the cycle keeps being extended. When a fixed time of "H" (tsu) is input to the RDY pin at the beginning of a read/write cycle (before  $\phi$  cycle falls), the MCU is released from the wait within 1, 2, or 3  $\phi$  cycles as selected with the slow memory wait bits (b1, b0 of CPMB).

Figure 2.10.6 shows the extended RDY wait (software wait plus RDY input anytime wait) timing example



**Fig. 2.10.6 Extended RDY wait (software wait plus RDY input anytime wait) timing example**

### 2.10.5 HOLD function

The HOLD function is used for systems that consist of external circuits that access MCU buses without use of the CPU (Central Processing Unit). The HOLD function is used to generate the timing in which the MCU will relinquish the bus from the CPU to the external circuits. To use the HOLD function, set the HOLD function enable bit (b5 of CPMB) to "1". This can be enabled in the memory expansion mode and microprocessor mode.

When "L" level is input to the  $\overline{\text{HOLD}}$  pin, the MCU goes to the HOLD state and remains so while the pin is at "L". When the MCU relinquishes use of the bus, "L" level is output from the  $\overline{\text{HLDA}}$  pin. The MCU puts ports P0 and P1 (address buses) and port P2 (data bus) to tri-state outputs and holds the  $\overline{\text{RD}}$  pin (P3<sub>7</sub>) and  $\overline{\text{WR}}$  pin (P3<sub>6</sub>) "H" level. This will prevent incorrect operations of external devices.

Though the clock supply to the CPU halts in HOLD state, the internal peripheral clocks and  $\phi_{\text{OUT}}$  (P3<sub>4</sub>) continues to be supplied.

When "H" level is input to the  $\overline{\text{HOLD}}$  pin, "H" level is output from the  $\overline{\text{HLDA}}$  pin and the MCU can use address buses, data bus, signals RD and WR to access to external devices.

Figure 2.10.7 shows the Hold function timing diagram.

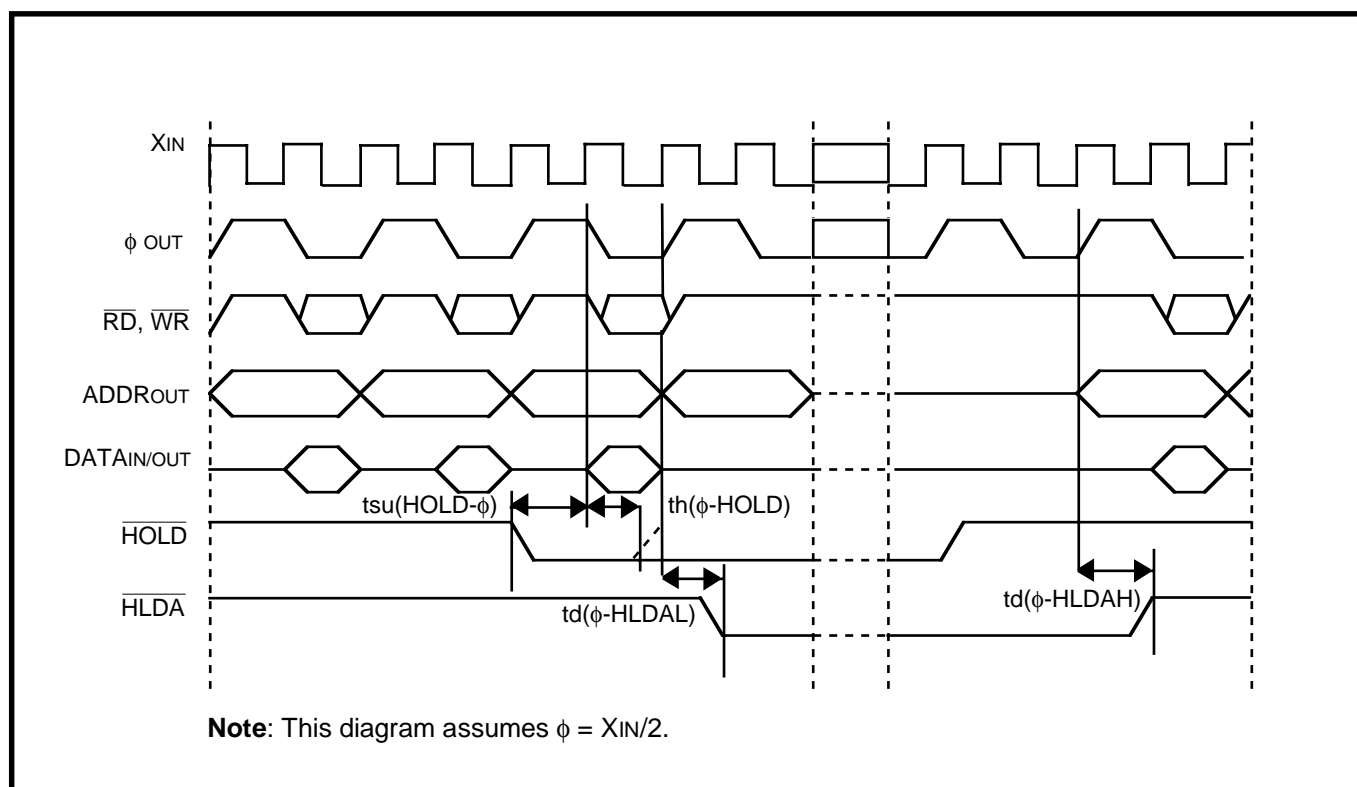


Fig. 2.10.7 Hold function timing diagram

### 2.10.6 Expanded data memory access

In Expanded Data Memory Access Mode (EDMA mode), the MCU can access a data area larger than 64 Kbytes with the LDA (\$zz), Y (indirect Y) instruction and the STA (\$zz), Y (indirect Y) instruction. It is only able to store and read data for the expanded data memory area. The access can be performed with T flag = "0" or "1". (T flag is Index X mode flag.)

To use this mode, set the expanded data memory access bit (b4 of CPMB) to "1". In this case,  $\overline{\text{EDMA}}$  pin (port P4<sub>0</sub>) goes "L" level during the read/write cycle of the LDA or STA instruction. The determination of which bank to access is done by using an I/O port to represent expanded addresses exceeding address bus (AB<sub>15</sub>)<sub>16</sub>. This signal and the port output signal are put together, and it becomes the chip select (selecting a bank, expanded memory).

In EDMA mode, the area from addresses 0000<sub>16</sub> to FFFF<sub>16</sub> can be accessed. When accessing a bank, follow this procedure (four banks are assumed):

- Bank specification (Data output to the port for a bank setup 16 (AB<sub>16</sub>), and 16 (AB<sub>17</sub>)). The user must setup 16 (AB<sub>16</sub>), and 16 (AB<sub>17</sub>).
- Enabling  $\overline{\text{EDMA}}$  output. (Set b4 of CPMB to "1".)
- Executing LDA (\$zz), Y (indirect Y) (In the case of read data of expanded data memory)

The data of the address (bank 0) + Y stored in the internal RAM address (\$zz) are loaded to the accumulator. Figure 2.10.8 shows a connection example of memory access up to 256 Kbytes.

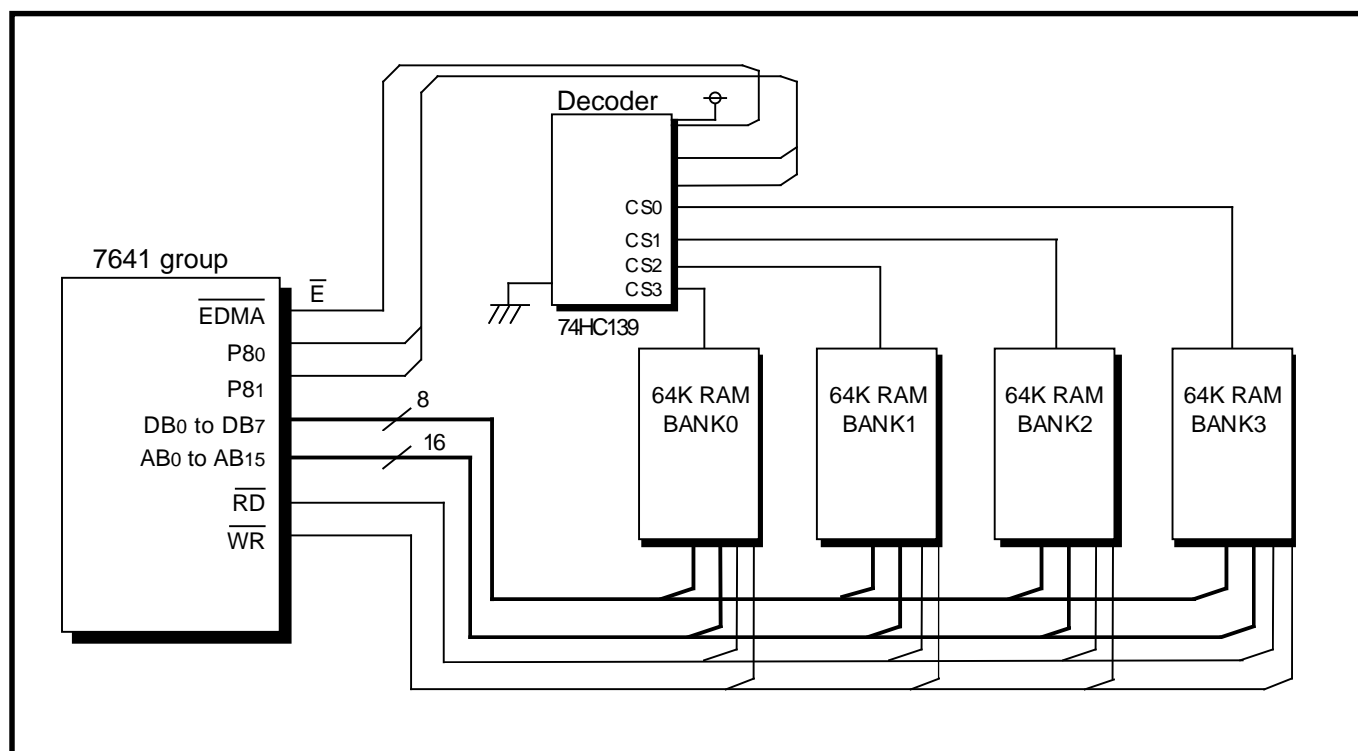


Fig. 2.10.8 Connection example of memory access up to 256 Kbytes

### 2.10.7 External devices connection example

Connection example for controlling external memory is shown bellow.

#### (1) External memory connection example : No Wait function

**Outline:** In microprocessor mode the external memory is accessed.

Figure 2.10.9 shows the external ROM and RAM example.

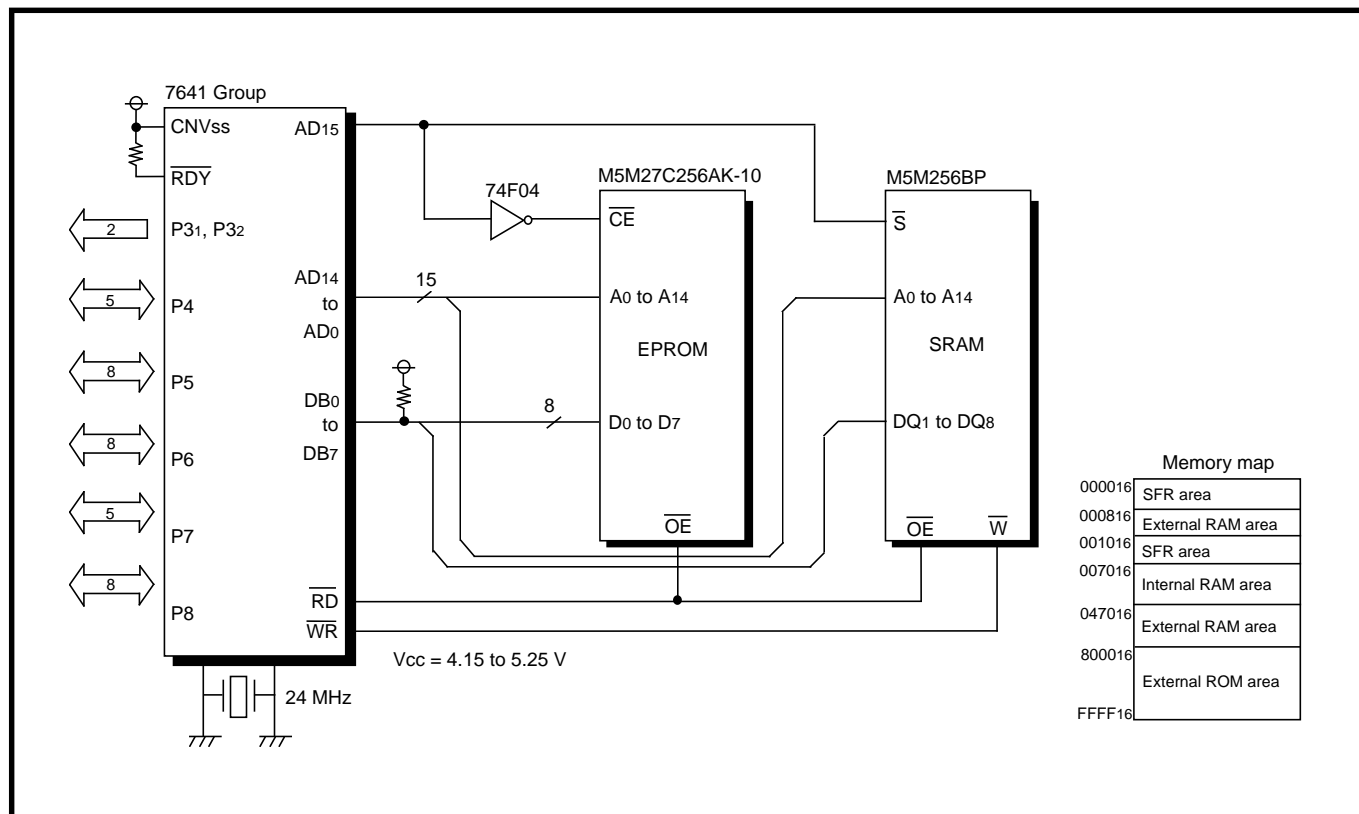


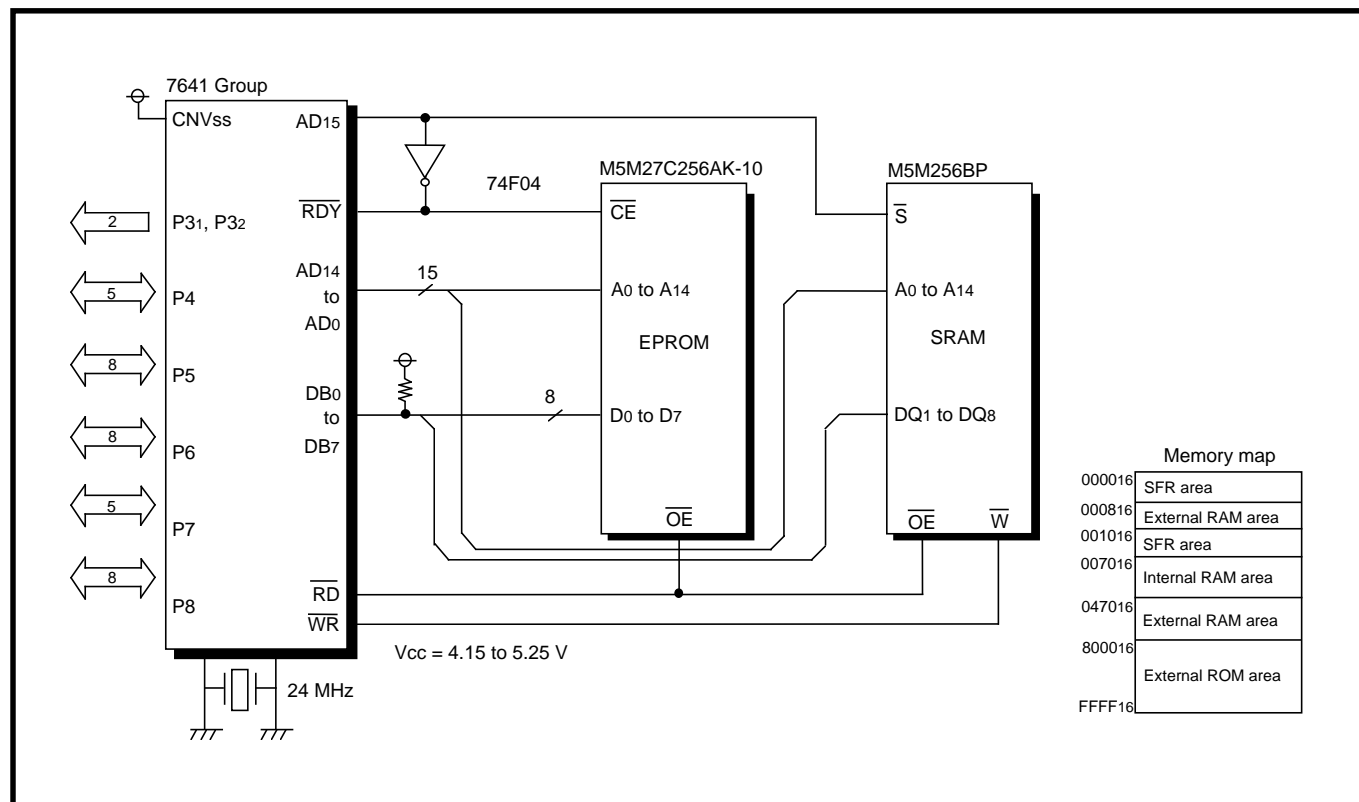
Fig. 2.10.9 External ROM and RAM example

**(2) External memory connection example : RDY function (one wait) in use**

**Outline:** RDY function is used because the external memory has a slow-memory-access speed.

- Specifications:**
- In read/write status of the CPU, input "L" to the  $\overline{\text{RDY}}$ (P3<sub>0</sub>) pin will cause extension of 1 to 3  $\phi$  cycles on its read/write cycle.
  - When the slow memory wait select bit (b1, b0) is = "01", it is extended by one cycle.
  - $\overline{\text{RD}}/\overline{\text{WR}}$  signal holds "L" level during the extended time.
  - Usable RAM and ROM at  $f(X_{\text{IN}}) = 24 \text{ MHz}$ ,  $V_{\text{CC}} = 5 \text{ V}$  are given below:
    - OE access time :  $t_{\text{a}}(\text{OE}) \leq 107 \text{ ns}$
    - Data setup time at write :  $t_{\text{su}}(\text{D}) \leq 100 \text{ ns}$
    - Examples satisfying these specifications: M5M27C256AK-10 (EPROM), M5M5256BP-10 (SRAM)

Figure 2.10.10 shows the RDY function use example, and Figures 2.10.11 to 2.10.13 show the read and write cycles.



**Fig. 2.10.10 RDY function use example**

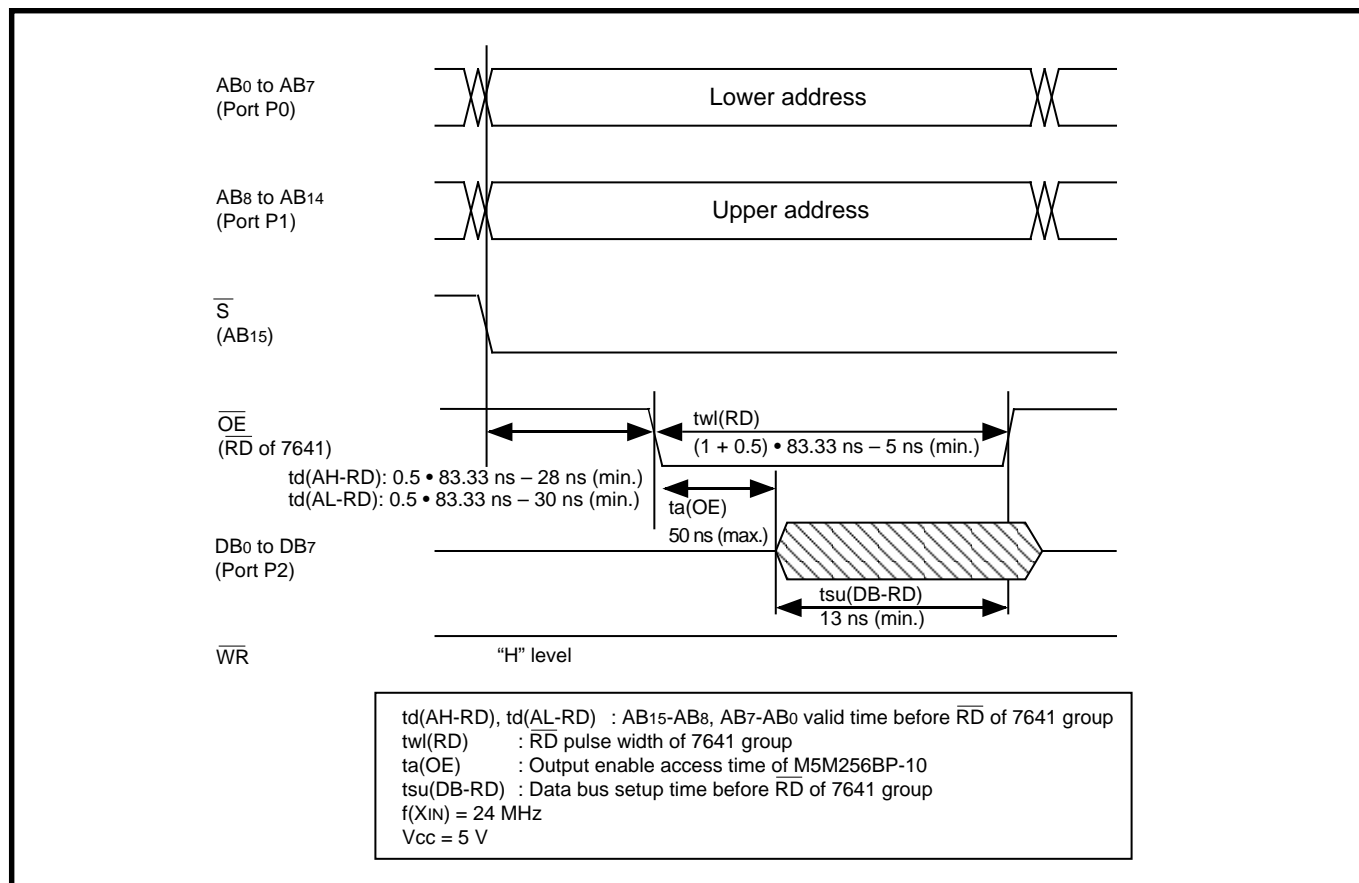


Fig. 2.10.11 Read cycle (OE access, SRAM)

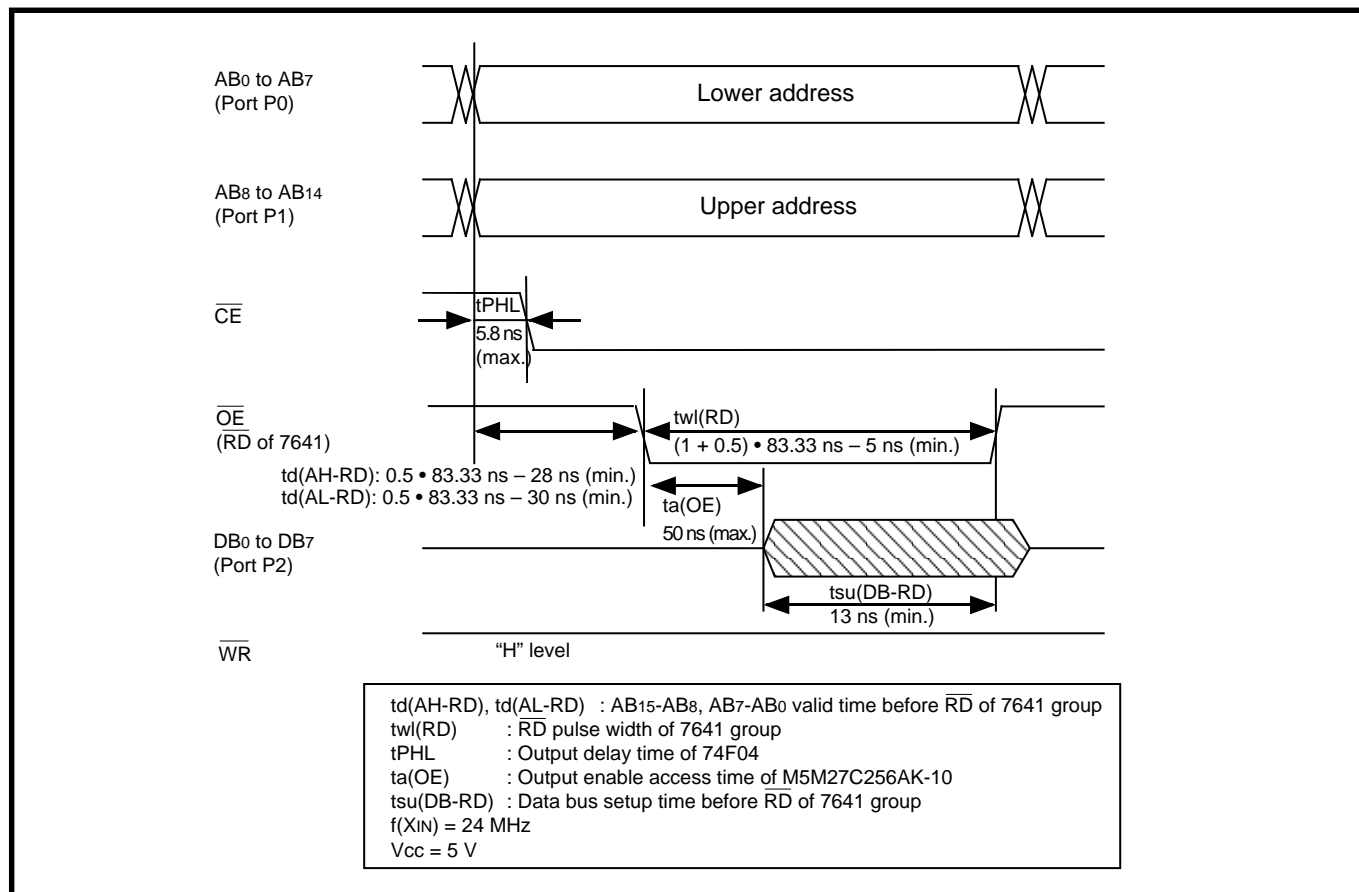


Fig. 2.10.12 Read cycle (OE access, EPROM)

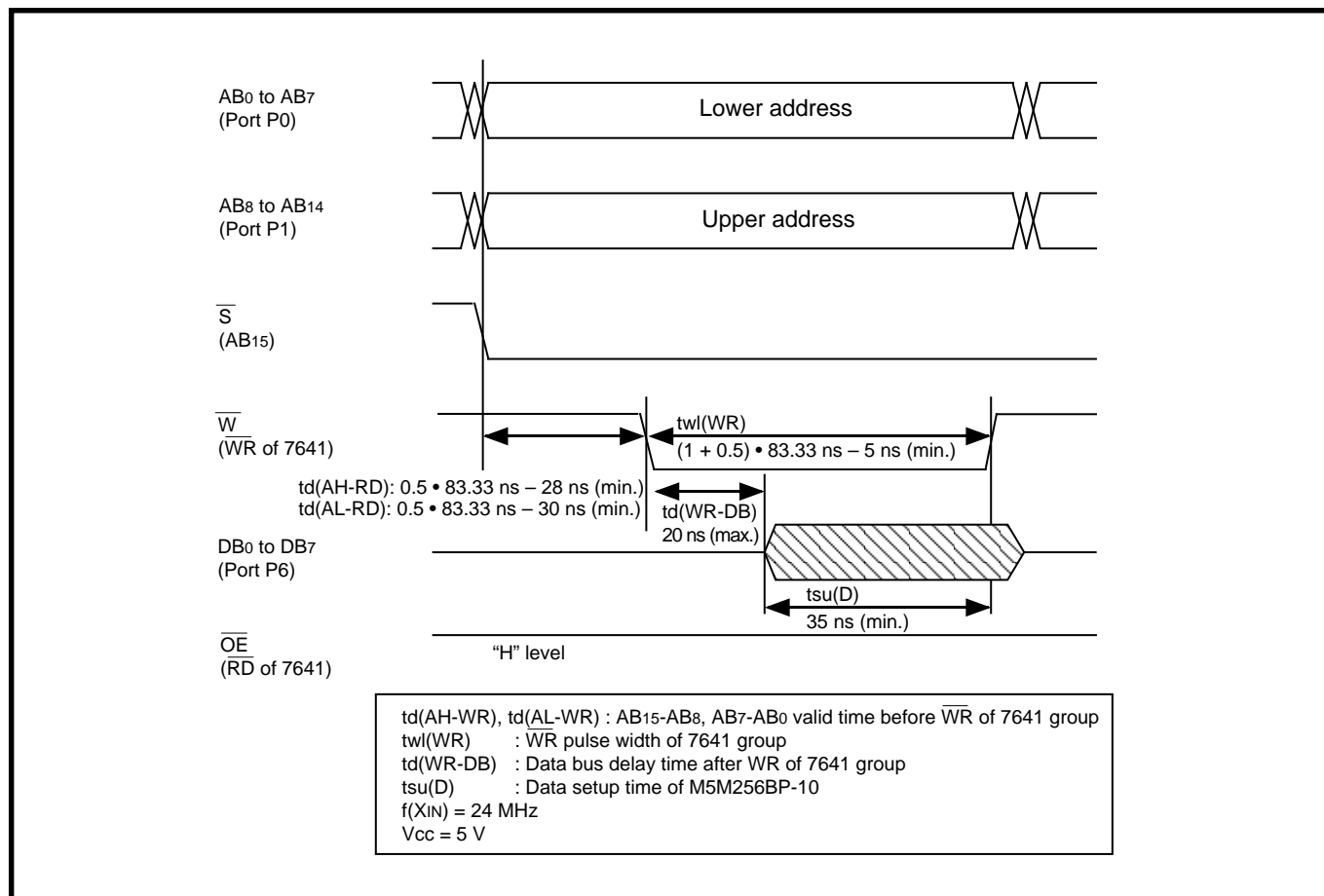


Fig. 2.10.13 Write cycle (W control, SRAM)



### 2.10.8 Notes on external devices connection

#### (1) Rewrite port P3 latch

In both memory expansion mode and microprocessor mode, ports P3<sub>1</sub> and P3<sub>2</sub> can be used as output ports. We recommend to use the **LDM** instruction or **STA** instruction to write to port P3 register (address 000E<sub>16</sub>). If using the Read-Modify-Write instruction (**SEB** instruction, **CLB** instruction) you will need to map a memory that the CPU can read from and write to.

##### [Reason]

The access to address 000E<sub>16</sub> is performed:

- Read from external memory
- Write to both port P3 latch and external memory.

It is because address 000E<sub>16</sub> is assigned on an external area in the memory expansion mode and microprocessor mode.

Accordingly, if a Read-Modify-Write instruction is executed to address 000E<sub>16</sub>, the external memory contents is read out and after its modification it will be written into both port P3 latch and an external memory. As a result, if an external memory is not allocated in address 000E<sub>16</sub> then, the MCU will read an undefined value and write its modified value into the port P3 latch. Therefore port P3 latch value will become undefined.

#### (2) overlap of internal and external memories

In the memory expansion mode, if the internal and external memory areas overlap, the internal memory becomes the valid memory for the overlapping area. When the CPU performs a read or a write operation on this overlapped area, the following things happen:

##### •Read

The CPU reads out the data in the internal memory instead of in the external memory. Note that, since the CPU will output a proper read signal, address signal, etc., the memory data at the respective address will appear on the external data bus.

##### •Write

The CPU writes data to both the internal and external memories.

#### (3) $\overline{RD}$ , $\overline{WR}$ pins

In the memory expansion mode or microprocessor mode, a read-out control signal is output from the  $\overline{RD}$  pin (P3<sub>6</sub>), and a write-in control signal is output from the  $\overline{WR}$  pin (P3<sub>7</sub>). "L" level is output from the  $\overline{RD}$  pin at CPU read-out and from the  $\overline{WR}$  pin at CPU write-in. These signals function for internal access and external access.

#### (4) $\overline{HLDA}$ pin

In spite of enabling the Hold function, the  $\overline{HLDA}$  pin does not function when IBF<sub>1</sub> output is enabled in the master CPU bus interface.

**(5) RDY function**

When using RDY function in usual connection, it does not operate at 12 MHz of  $\phi$  or faster.

**[Reason]**

$td(\phi\text{-AH}) + tsu(\text{RDY-}\phi) = 31 \text{ ns (max.)} + 21 \text{ ns (min.)} = 52 \text{ ns.}$

$twh(\phi), twl(\phi) = 0.5 \times 83.33 - 5 = 36.665 \text{ ns}$

Therefore, it becomes  $52 \text{ ns} > 36.665 \text{ ns}$ , so that the timing to enter RDY wait does not match.

However, if the timings can match owing to  $\overline{\text{RDY}}$  pin by "L" fixation and others, the RDY function can be used even at  $\phi = 12 \text{ MHz}$ . In this situation the slow memory wait always functions.

**(6) Wait function**

The Wait function is serviceable at accessing an external memory in the memory expansion mode and microprocessor mode. However, in these modes even if an external memory is assigned to addresses  $0008_{16}$  to  $000F_{16}$ , the Wait function cannot function to these areas.

**(7) Processor mode switch**

Note when the processor mode is switched by setting of the processor mode bits (b1, b0 of CPMA), that will immediately switch the accessible memory from external to internal or from internal to external. If this is done, the first cycle of the next instruction will be operated from the accidental memory.

To prevent this problem, follow the procedure below:

- (a) Duplicate the next instruction at the same address both in internal and external memories.
- (b) Switch from single-chip mode to memory expansion mode, jump to external memory, and then switch from memory expansion mode to microprocessor mode. (Because in general, the problem will not occur when switching the modes as long as the same memory is accessed after the switch.)
- (c) Load a simple program in RAM that switches the modes, jump to RAM and execute the program, then jump to the location of the code to run after the processor mode has switched.

## 2.11 Reset

### 2.11.1 Connection example of reset IC

Figure 2.11.1 shows the system example which switches to the RAM backup mode by detecting a drop of the system power source voltage with the INT interrupt.

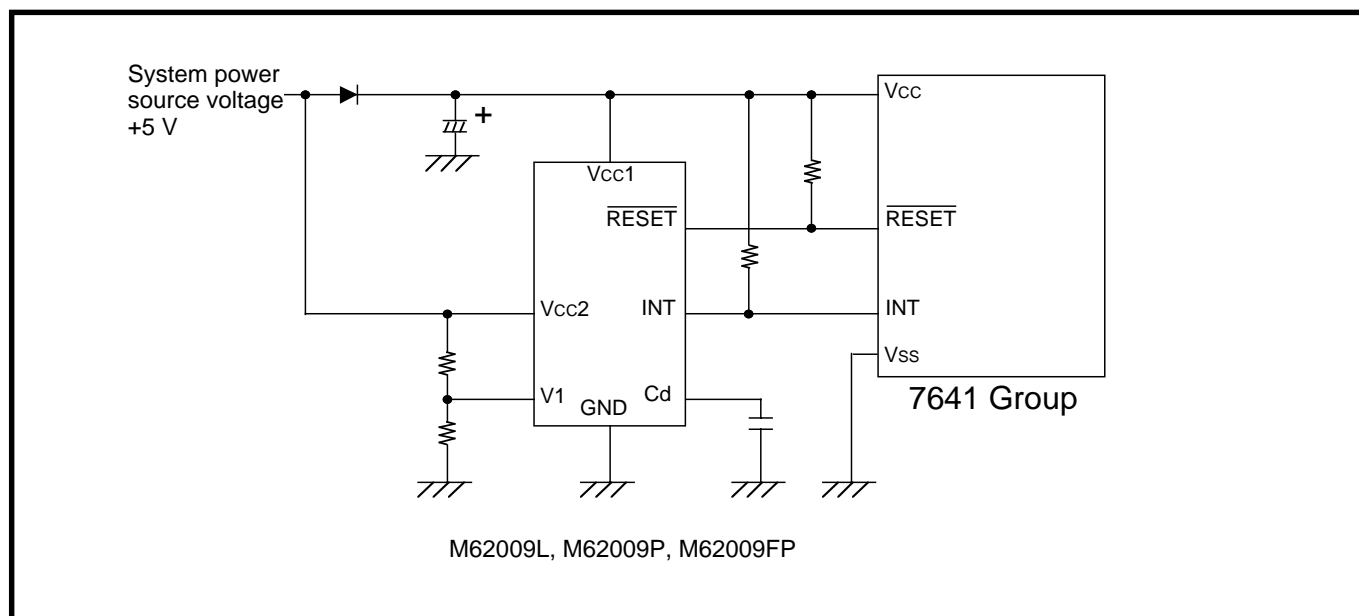


Fig. 2.11.1 RAM backup system

### 2.11.2 Notes on reset

#### (1) Connecting capacitor

In case where the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  signal rise time is long, connect a ceramic capacitor or others across the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin and the Vss pin. Use a 1000 pF or more capacitor for high frequency use. When connecting the capacitor, note the following :

- Make the length of the wiring which is connected to a capacitor as short as possible.
- Be sure to verify the operation of application products on the user side.

#### ● Reason

If the several nanosecond or several ten nanosecond impulse noise enters the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin, it may cause a microcomputer failure.

## 2.12 Clock generating circuit

This paragraph explains the registers setting method and the notes related to the clock generating circuit. Besides, two modes to realize less power dissipation due to the CPU and some peripherals halted are explained: Stop mode due to STP instruction, Wait mode due to WIT instruction.

### 2.12.1 Memory map

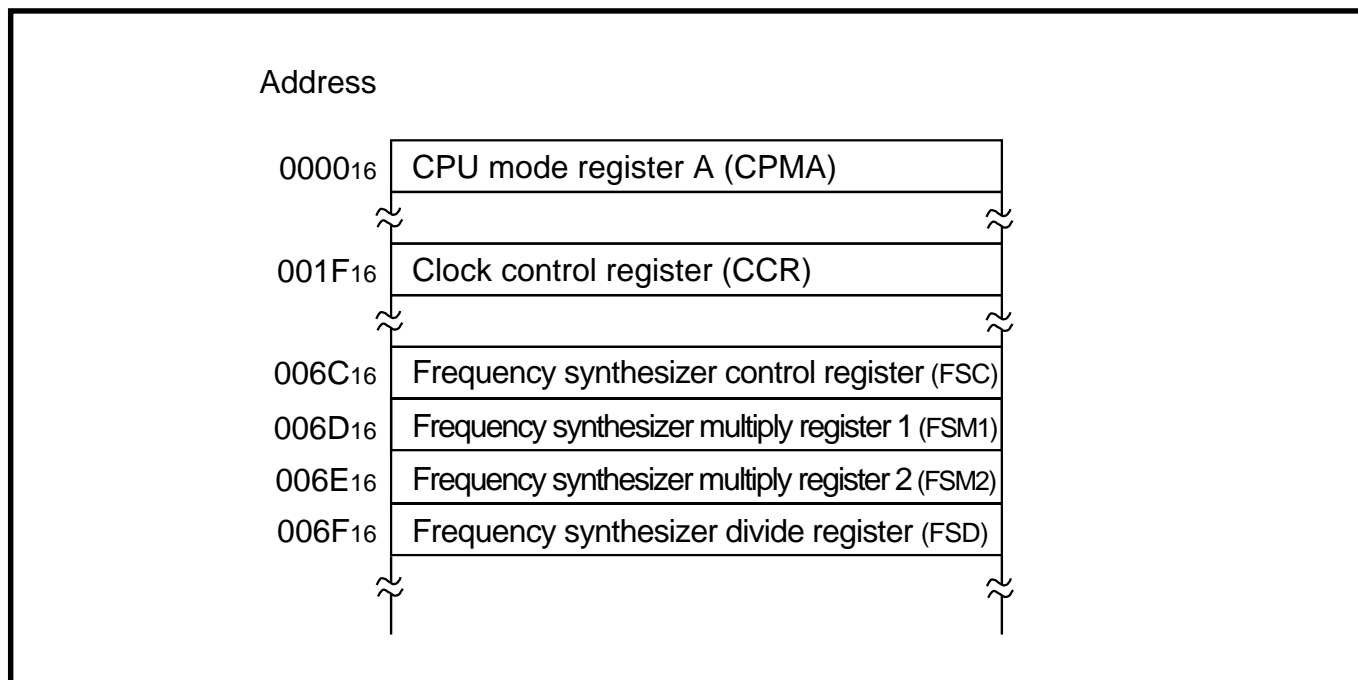


Fig. 2.12.1 Memory map of registers related to clock generating circuit

## 2.12.2 Related registers

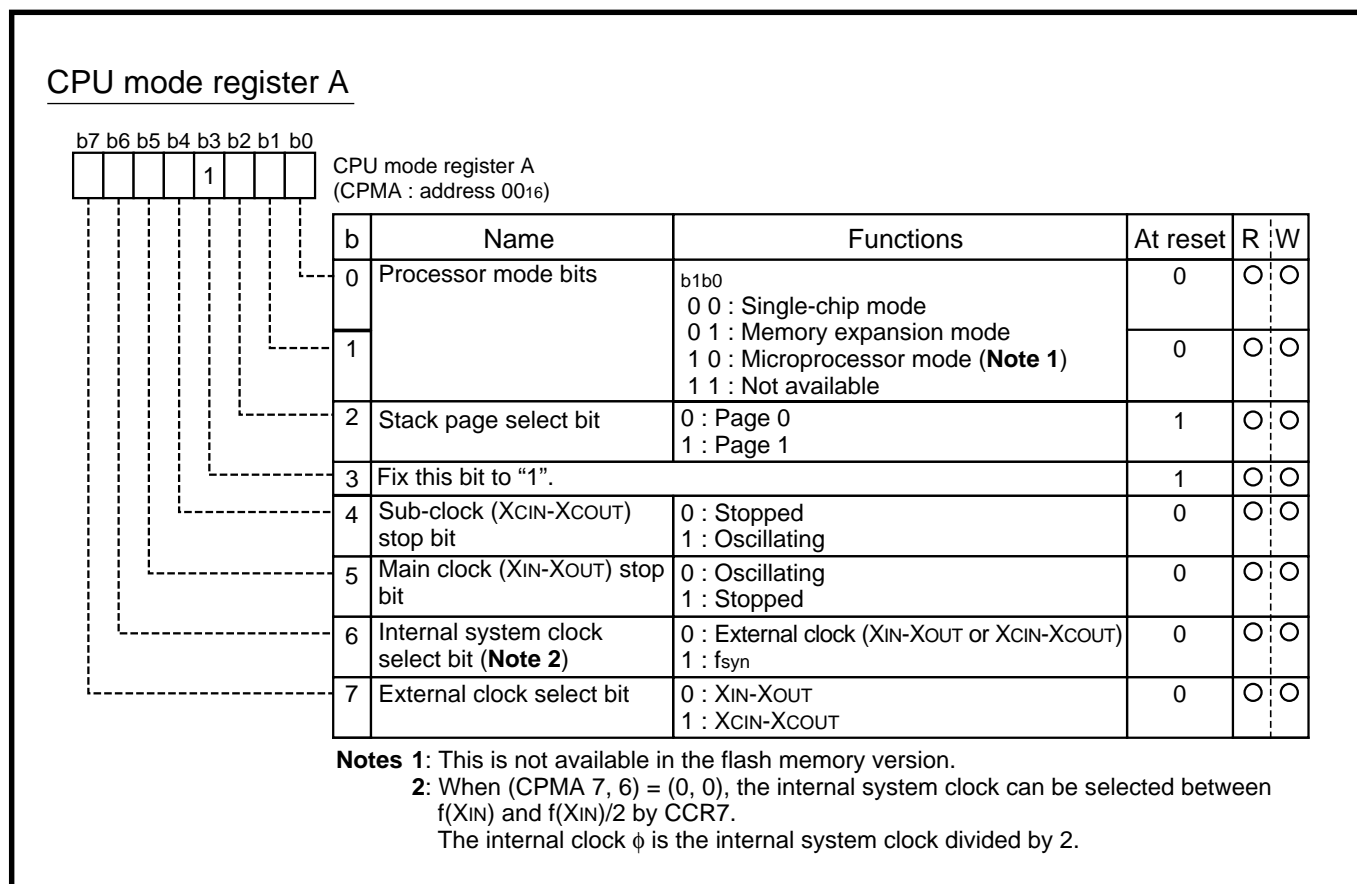


Fig. 2.12.2 Structure of CPU mode register A

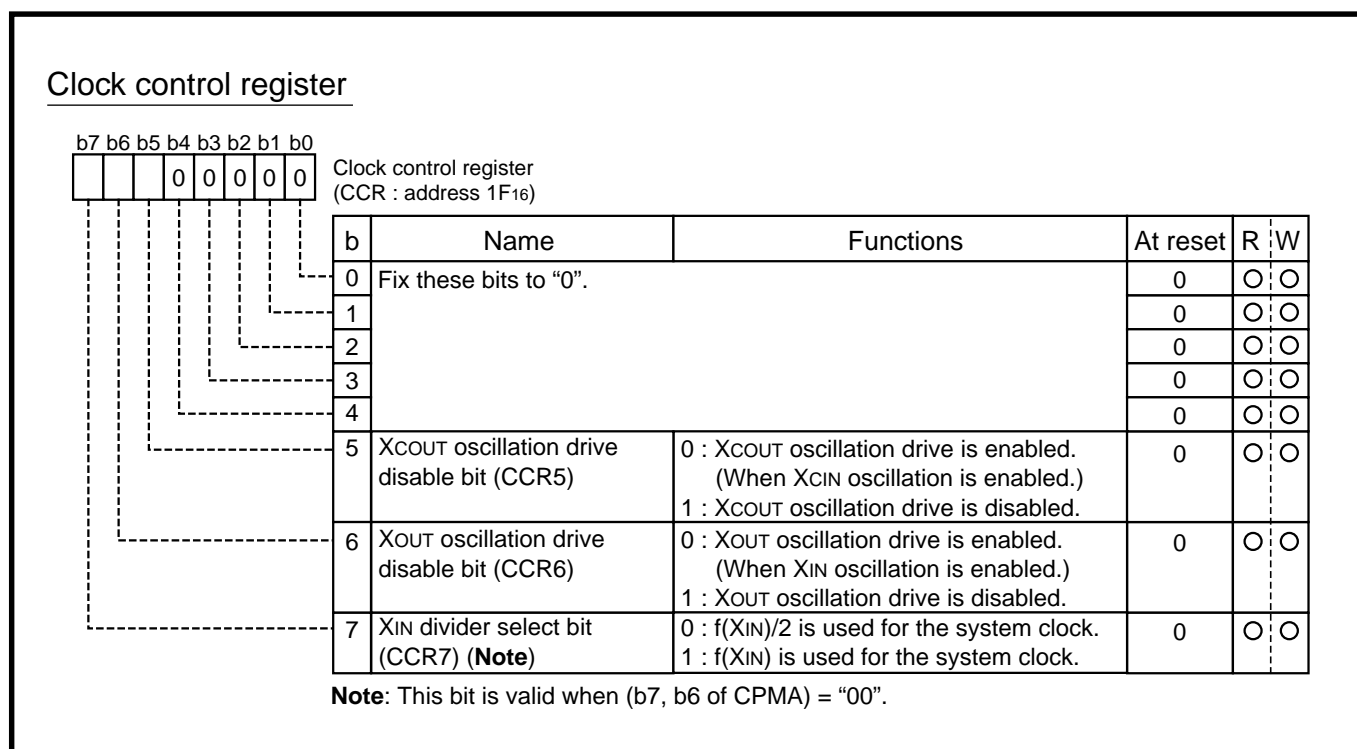


Fig. 2.12.3 Structure of Clock control register

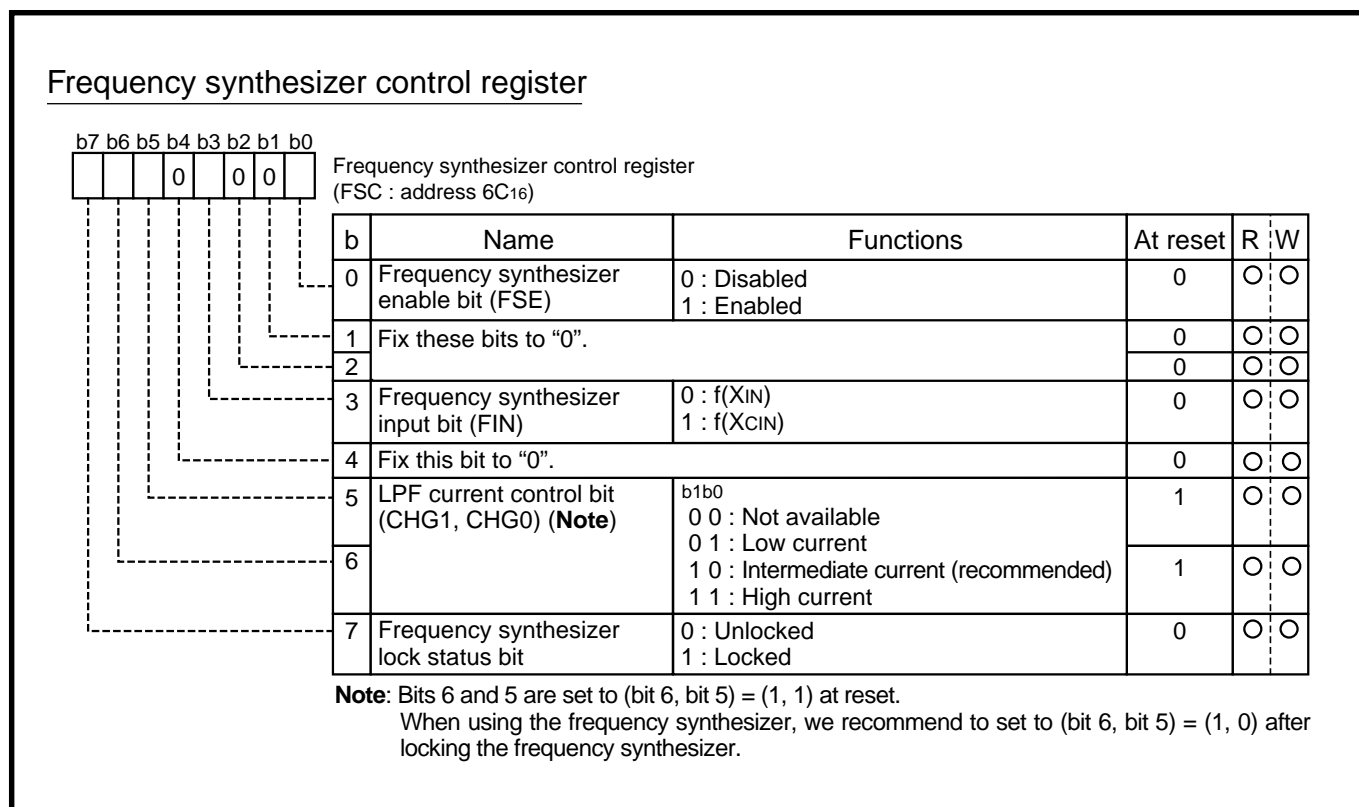


Fig. 2.12.4 Structure of Frequency synthesizer control register

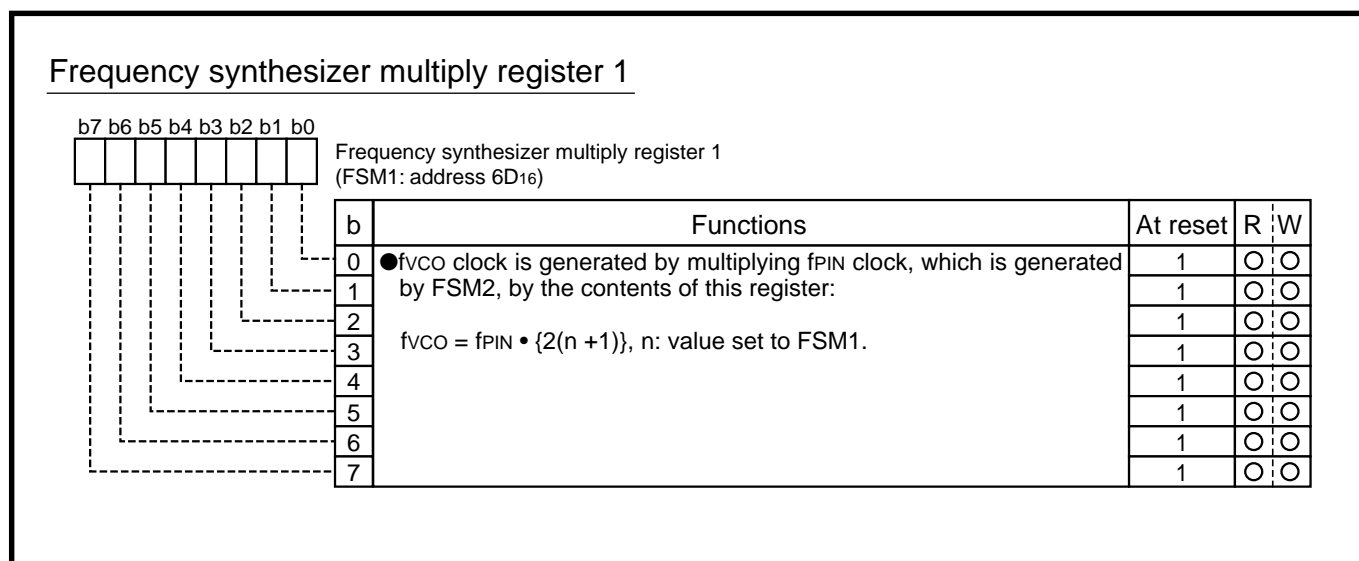


Fig. 2.12.5 Structure of Frequency synthesizer multiply register 1

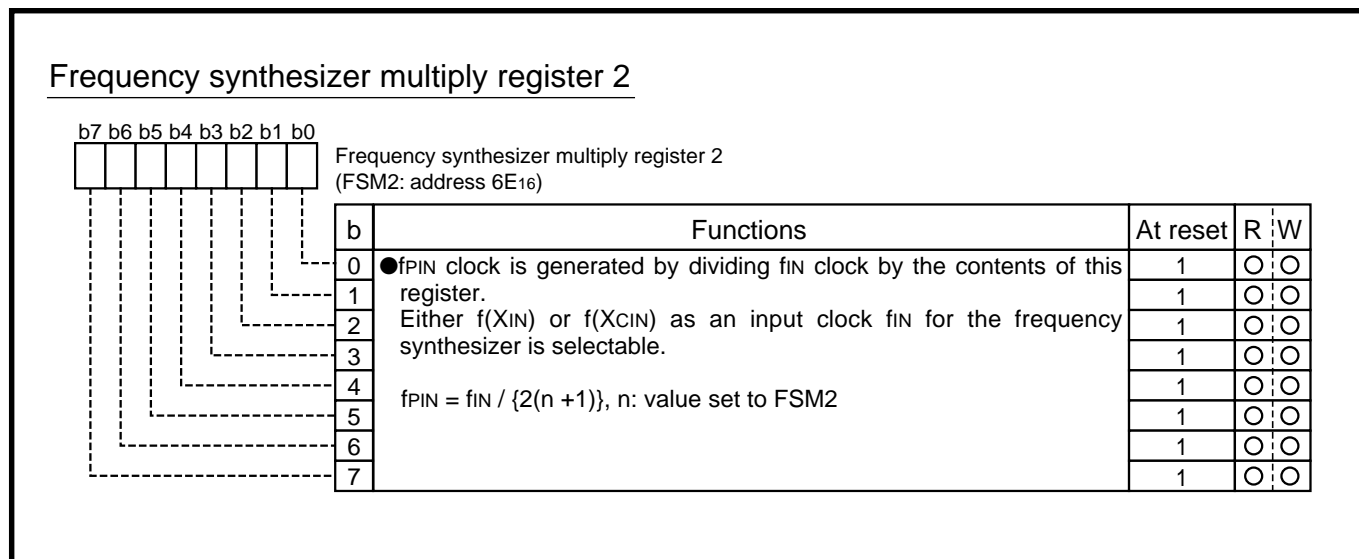


Fig. 2.12.6 Structure of Frequency synthesizer multiply register 2

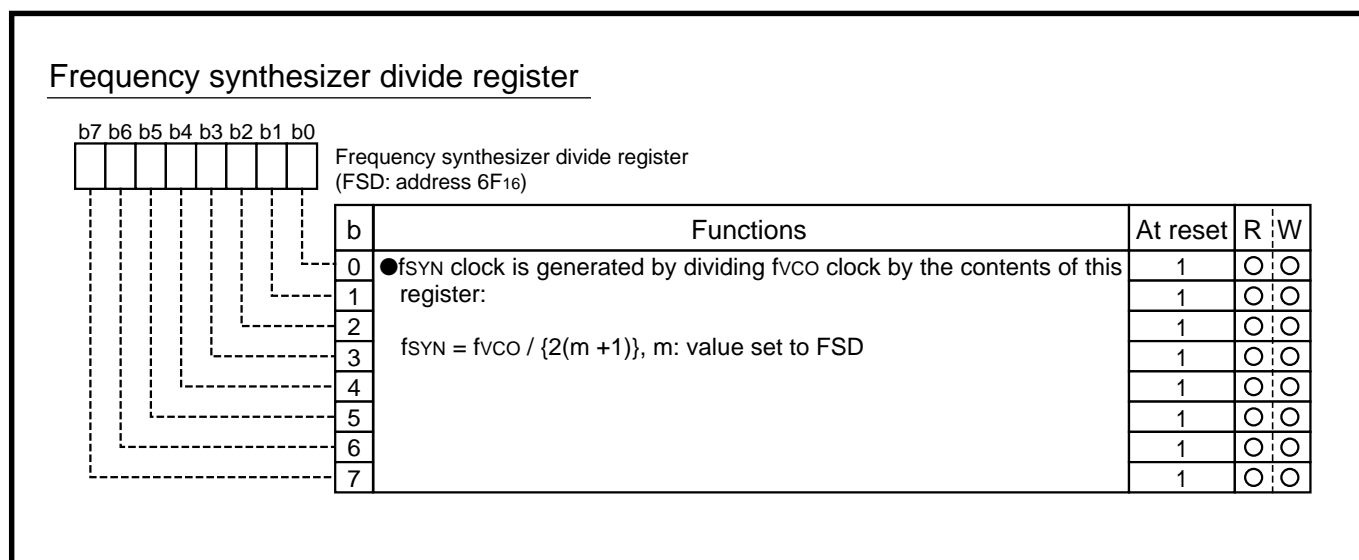


Fig. 2.12.7 Structure of Frequency synthesizer divide register

### 2.12.3 Stop mode

The Stop mode is set by executing the STP instruction. In Stop mode, the oscillation of both clocks ( $X_{IN}$ – $X_{OUT}$ ,  $X_{CIN}$ – $X_{COUT}$ ) stop and the internal clock  $\phi$  stops at the “H” level. The CPU stops and peripheral units stop operating. As a result, power dissipation is reduced.

#### (1) State in Stop mode

Table 2.12.1 shows the state in Stop mode.

**Table 2.12.1 State in Stop mode**

Item	State in Stop mode
Oscillation	Stopped.
CPU	Stopped.
Internal clock $\phi$	Stopped at “H” level.
I/O ports	Retains the state at the STP instruction execution.
Timer	When using internal count source: Stopped.
	When using external count source: Operating.
UART	Stopped.
DMAC	Stopped.
Serial I/O	When using internal synchronous clock: Stopped.
	When using external synchronous clock: Operating.
USB	Stopped.
RAM	Retained.
SFR	Retained (except for Timer 1, Timer 2).
CPU registers	Retained: Accumulator, Index register X, Index register Y, Stack pointer, Program counter, Processor status register.

#### (2) Release of Stop mode

The Stop mode is released by a reset input or by the occurrence of an interrupt request.

These interrupt sources can be used for restoration:

- INT<sub>0</sub>, INT<sub>1</sub>
- CNTR<sub>0</sub>, CNTR<sub>1</sub>
- Timers X, Y using an external count source
- Serial I/Os using an external clock
- Key-on wake-up
- USB function resume

However, when using any of these interrupt requests for restoration from Stop mode, in order to enable the selected interrupt, set the following conditions before execution of STP instruction.

[Necessary register setting]

- ① Timer 1 interrupt enable bit (b6 of ICONB) = “0” (interrupt disabled)
- ② Timer 2 interrupt enable bit (b7 of ICONB) = “0” (interrupt disabled)
- ③ Timer 1 interrupt request bit (b6 of IREQB) = “0” (no interrupt request issued)
- ④ Timer 2 interrupt request bit (b7 of IREQB) = “0” (no interrupt request issued)
- ⑤ Interrupt request bit of interrupt source to be used for restoration = “0” (no interrupt request issued)
- ⑥ Interrupt enable bit of interrupt source to be used for restoration = “1” (interrupts enabled)
- ⑦ Interrupt disable flag I = “0” (interrupt enabled)

#### (3) Notes on STP instruction

- Execution of STP instruction clears the timer 123 mode register (address 29<sub>16</sub>) except bit 4 to “0”.
- When using  $f_{SYN}$  as the internal system clock, switch to  $f(X_{IN})$  or  $f(X_{CIN})$  before execution of STP instruction.
- Execution of STP instruction clears bit 7 of clock control register to “0” ( $f(X_{IN})/2$ ).



### 2.12.4 Wait mode

The Wait mode is set by execution of the WIT instruction. In Wait mode, oscillation continues, but the internal clock  $\phi$  stops at the “H” level.

The CPU stops, but most of the peripheral units continue operating.

#### (1) State in Wait mode

Table 2.12.2 shows the state in Wait mode.

**Table 2.12.2 State in Wait mode**

Item	State in Wait mode
Oscillation	Operating.
CPU	Stopped.
Internal clock $\phi$	Stopped at “H” level.
I/O ports	Retains the state at the WIT instruction execution.
Timer	Operating.
UART	Operating.
DMAC	Stopped.
Serial I/O	Operating.
USB	Operating.
RAM	Retained.
SFR	Retained.
CPU registers	Retained: Accumulator, Index register X, Index register Y, Stack pointer, Program counter, Processor status register.

#### (2) Release of wait mode

The Wait mode is released by reset input or by the occurrence of an interrupt request.

In Wait mode oscillation is continued, so that an instruction can be executed immediately after the Wait mode is released.

These interrupt sources can be used for restoration:

- INT<sub>0</sub>, INT<sub>1</sub>
- CNTR<sub>0</sub>, CNTR<sub>1</sub>
- Timers
- Serial I/Os
- UART
- DMAC
- Key-on wake-up
- Master CPU bus interface
- USB function
- USB SOF

However, when using any of these interrupt requests for restoration from Stop mode, in order to enable the selected interrupt, set the following conditions before execution of WIT instruction.

[Necessary register setting]

- ① Interrupt request bit of interrupt source to be used for restoration = “0” (no interrupt request issued)
- ② Interrupt enable bit of interrupt source to be used for restoration = “1” (interrupts enabled)
- ③ Interrupt disable flag I = “0” (interrupt enabled)

### 2.12.5 Clock generating circuit application examples

#### (1) Status transition during power failure

**Outline:** The clock is counted up every one second by using the timer interrupt during a power failure.

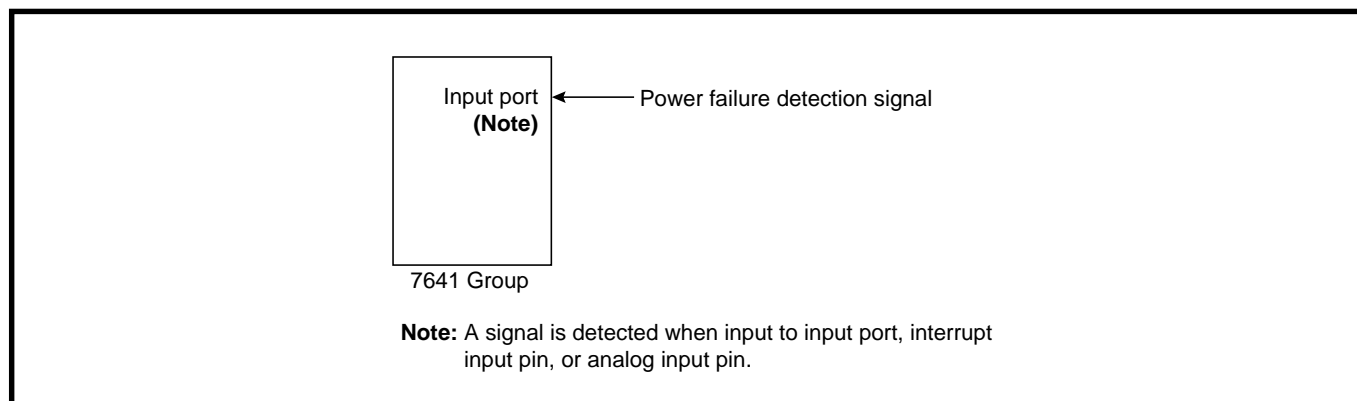


Fig. 2.12.8 Connection diagram

- Specifications:**
- Reducing power dissipation as low as possible while maintaining clock function
  - Clock:  $f(X_{IN}) = 4.19 \text{ MHz}$ ,  $f(X_{CIN}) = 32.768 \text{ kHz}$
  - Port processing
    - Input port: Fixed to "H" or "L" level on the external
    - Output port: Fixed to output level that does not cause current flow to the external  
(Example) When a circuit turns on LED at "L" output level, fix the output level to "H".
    - I/O port: Input port → Fixed to "H" or "L" level on the external  
Output port → Output of data that does not consume current

Figure 2.12.9 shows the status transition diagram during power failure and Figure 2.12.10 shows the setting of relevant registers.

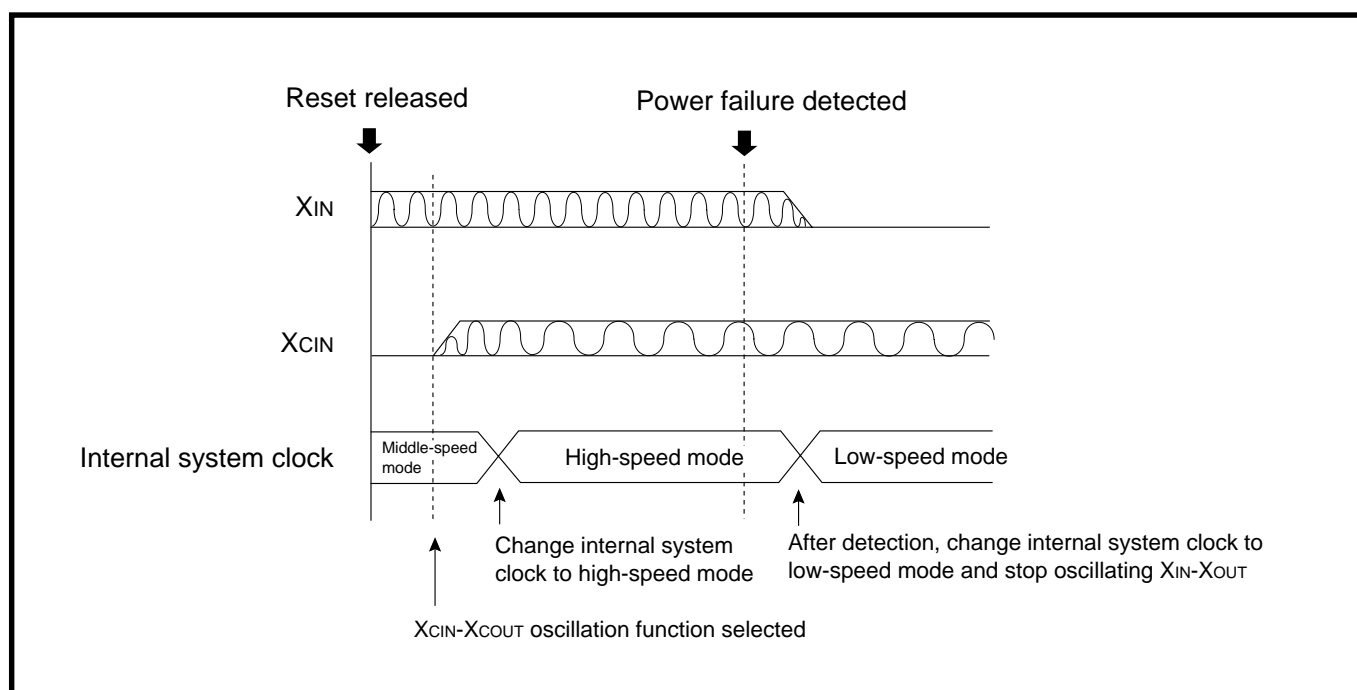


Fig. 2.12.9 Status transition diagram during power failure

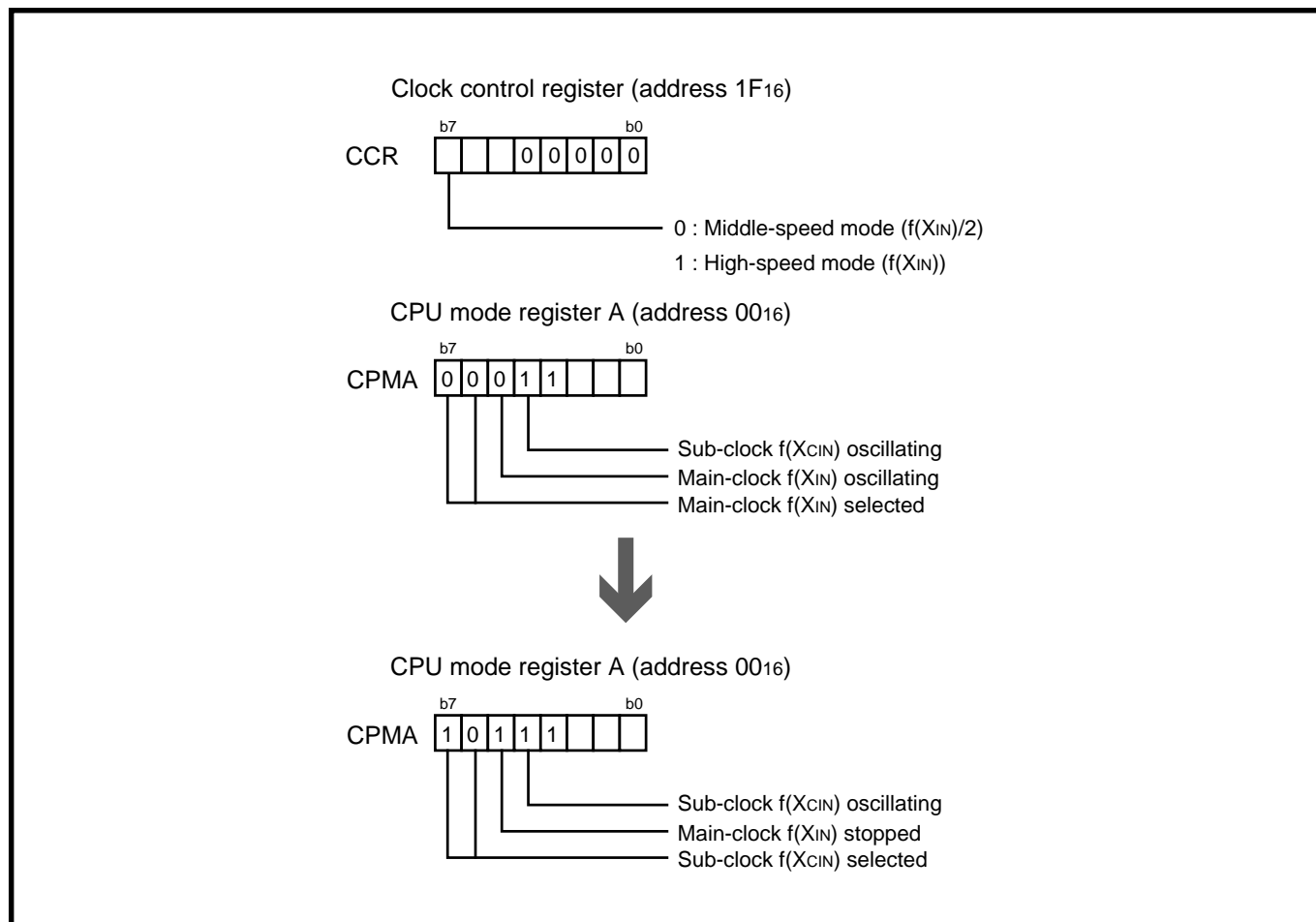


Fig. 2.12.10 Setting of relevant registers

**Control procedure:** Set the relevant registers in the order shown below to prepare for a power failure.

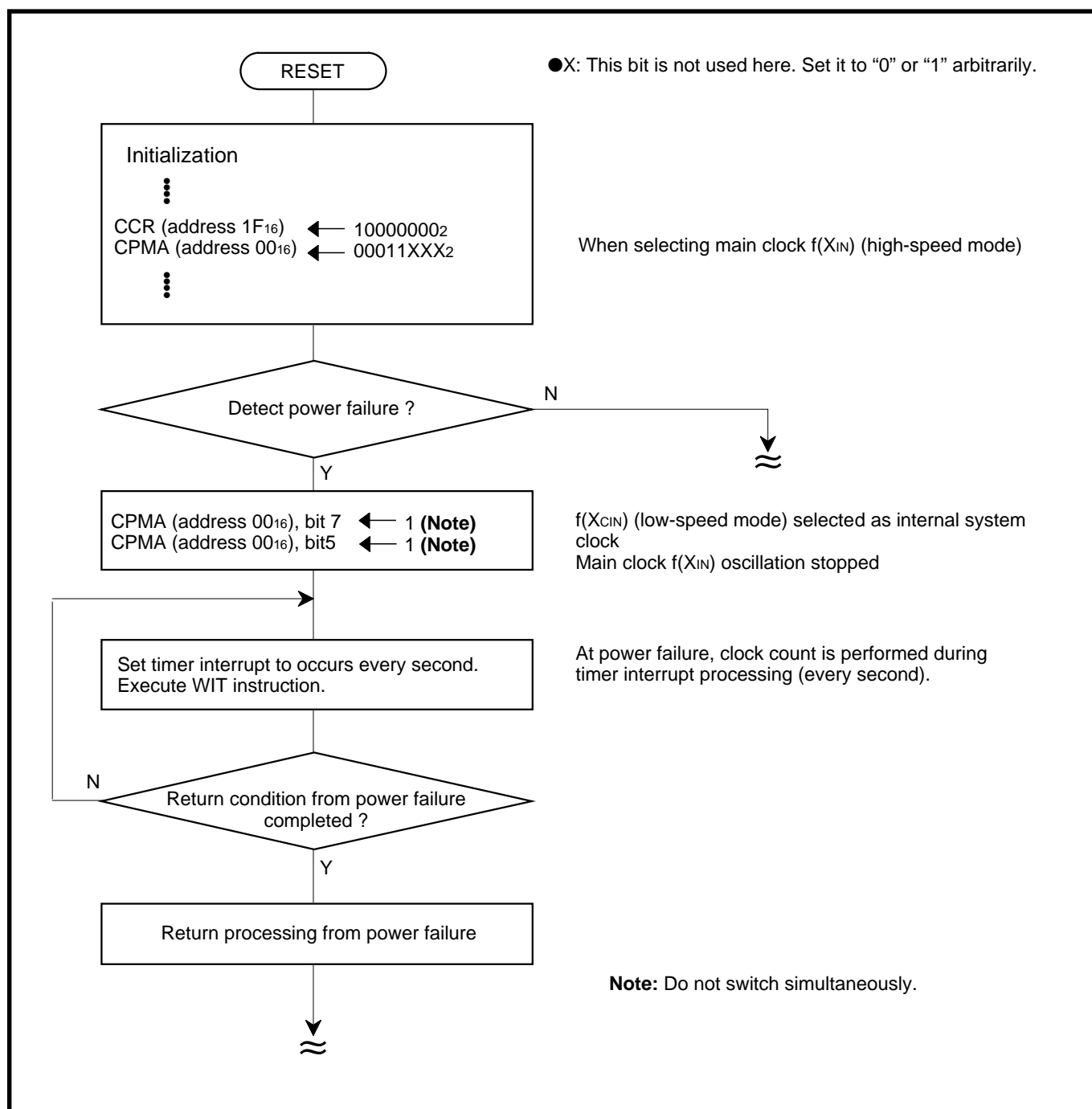


Fig. 2.12.11 Control procedure

**(2) Counting without clock error during power failure**

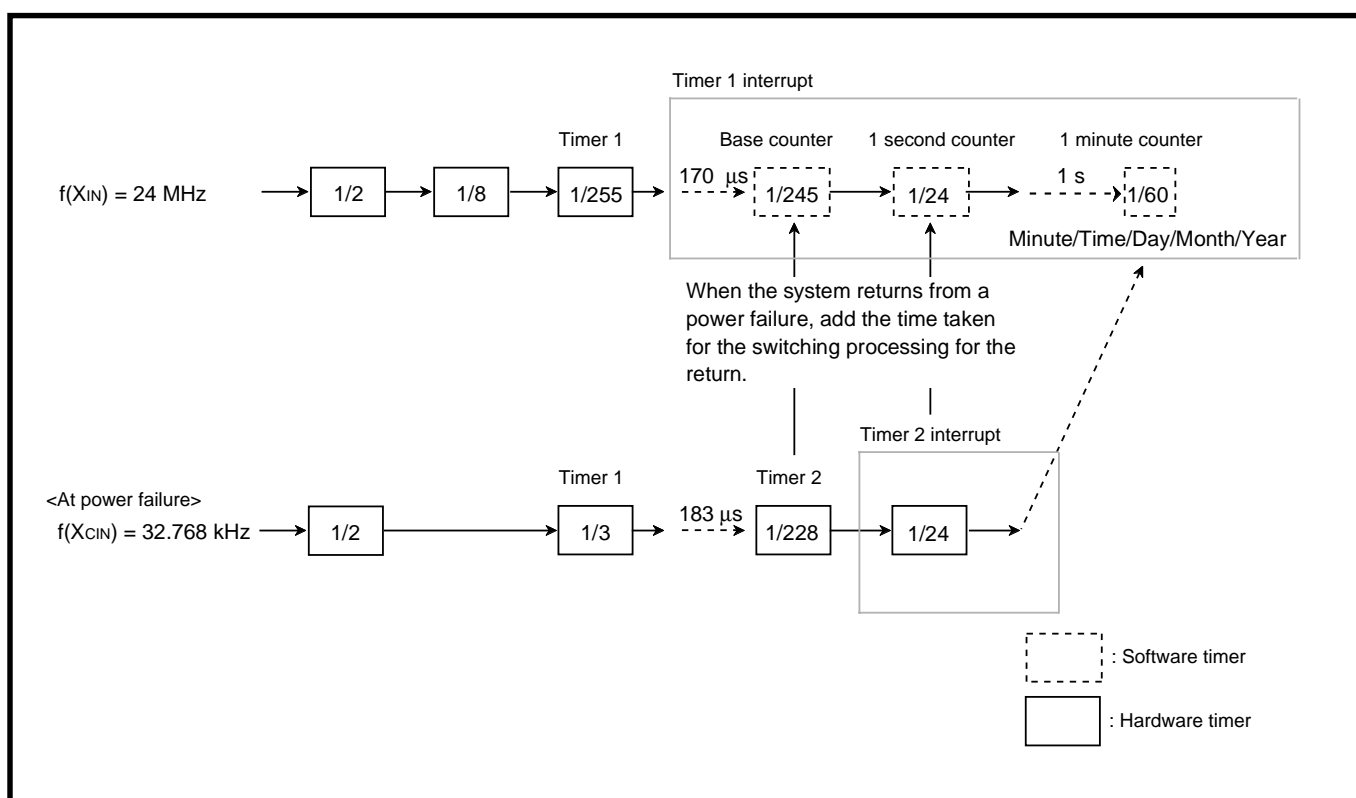
**Outline:** It keeps counting without clock error during a power failure.

**Specifications:** •Reducing power consumption as low as possible while maintaining clock function

- Clock:  $f(X_{IN}) = 24 \text{ MHz}$
- Sub clock:  $f(X_{CIN}) = 32.768 \text{ kHz}$
- Use of Timer 2 interrupt

For the peripheral circuit and the status transition during a power failure, refer to Figures 2.12.8 and 2.12.9.

Figure 2.12.12 shows the structure of clock counter, Figures 2.12.13 and 2.12.14 show the setting of relevant registers.



**Fig. 2.12.12 Structure of clock counter**

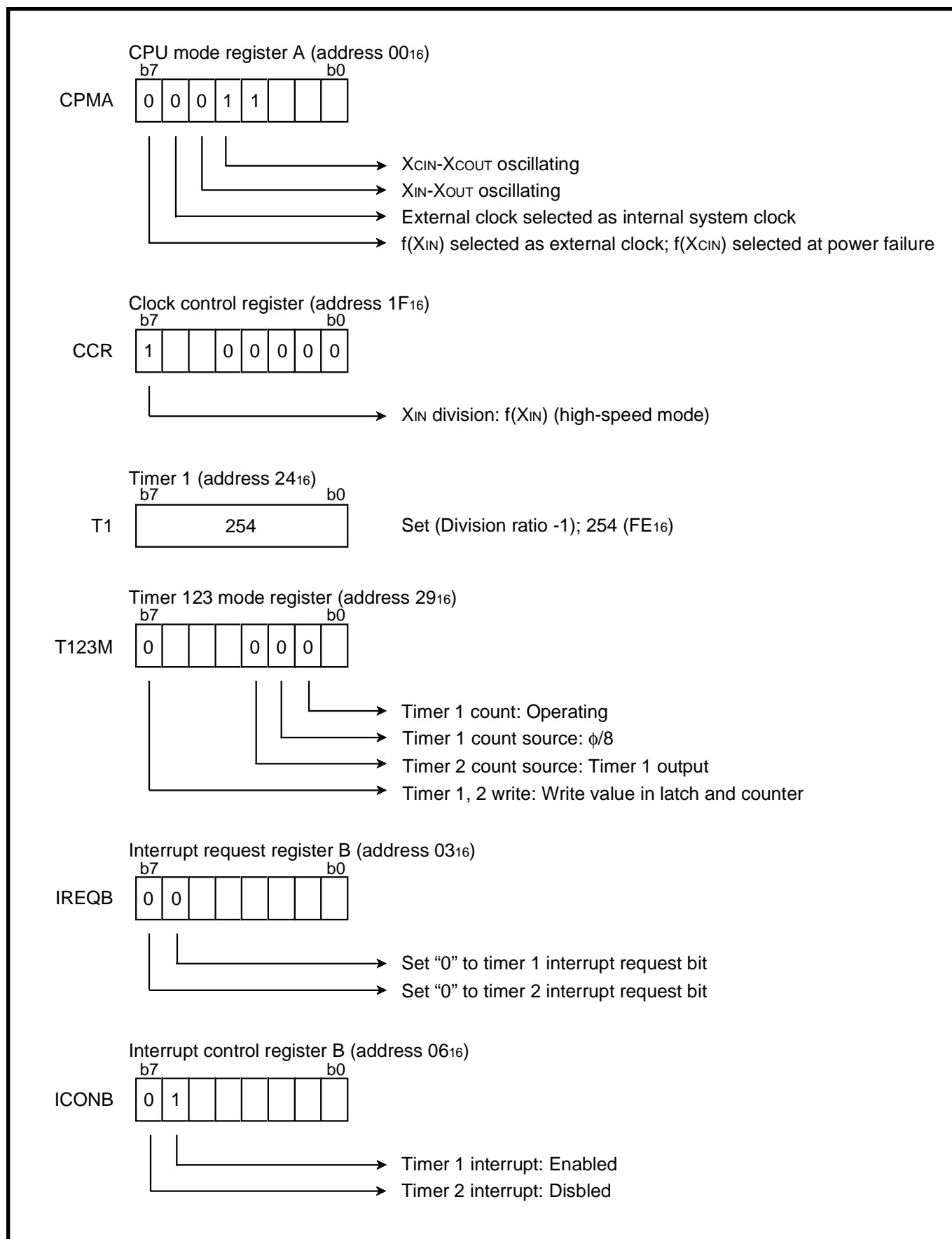


Fig. 2.12.13 Initial setting of relevant registers

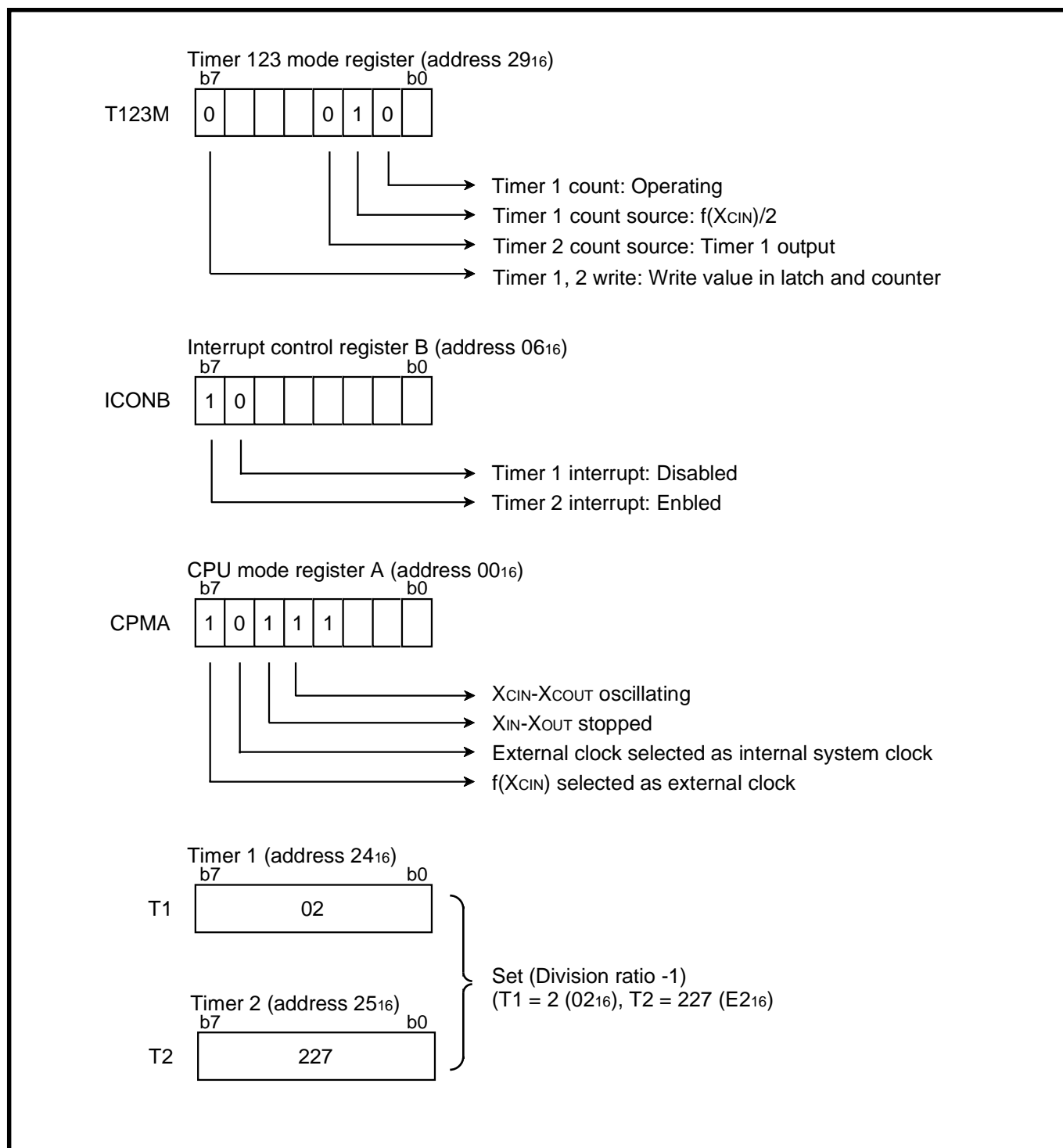
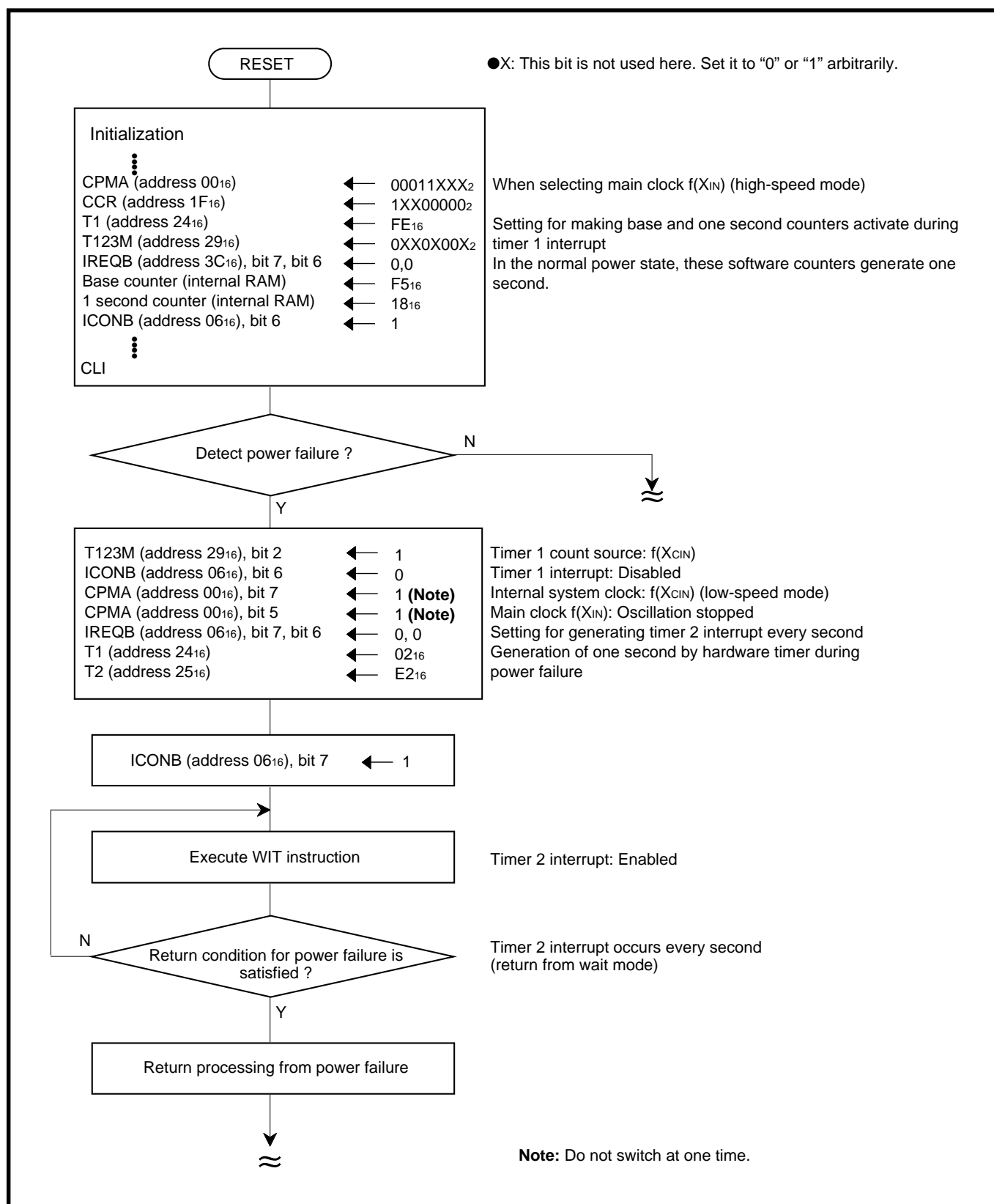


Fig. 2.12.14 Setting of relevant registers after detecting power failure

**Control procedure:** Set the relevant registers in the order shown below to prepare for a power failure.



**Fig. 2.12.15 Control procedure (1)**



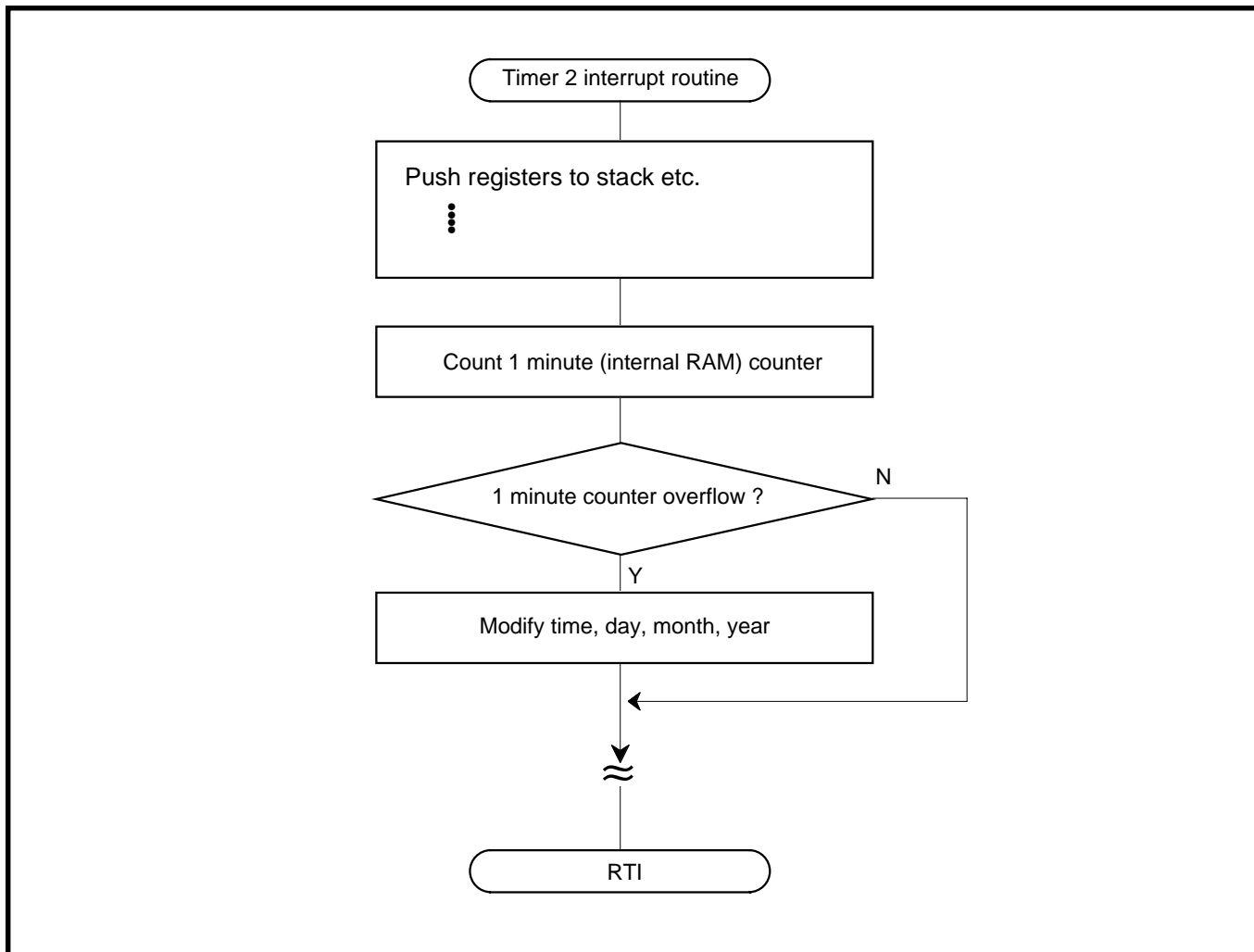


Fig. 2.12.16 Control procedure (2)

# CHAPTER 3

---

## APPENDIX

- 3.1 Electrical characteristics
- 3.2 Standard characteristics
- 3.3 Notes on use
- 3.4 Countermeasures against noise
- 3.5 Control registers
- 3.6 Package outline
- 3.7 Machine instructions
- 3.8 List of instruction code
- 3.9 SFR memory map
- 3.10 Pin configuration

## 3.1 Electrical characteristics

### 3.1.1 Absolute maximum ratings

**Table 3.1.1 Absolute maximum ratings**

Symbol	Parameter		Conditions	Ratings	Unit	
VCC	Power source voltage		All voltages are based on Vss. Output transistors are cut off.	-0.3 to 6.5	V	
AVCC	Analog power source voltage AVcc, Ext.Cap			-0.3 to VCC+0.3	V	
VI	Input voltage	P00–P07, P10–P17, P20–P27, P30–P37, P40–P44, P50–P57, P60–P67, P70–P74, P80–P87		-0.3 to VCC+0.3	V	
VI	Input voltage	RESET, XIN, XCIN		-0.3 to VCC+0.3	V	
VI	Input voltage	CNVss		Mask ROM version	-0.3 to Vcc + 0.3	V
				Flash memory version	-0.3 to 6.5	V
VI	Input voltage	USB D+, USB D–		-0.5 to 3.8	V	
VO	Output voltage	P00–P07, P10–P17, P20–P27, P30–P37, P40–P44, P50–P57, P60–P67, P70–P74, P80–P87, XOUT, Xcout, LPF		-0.3 to VCC+0.3	V	
VO	Output voltage	USB D+, USB D–, Ext. Cap	-0.5 to 3.8	V		
Pd	Power dissipation ( <b>Note</b> )		Ta = 25°C	750	mW	
Topr	Operating temperature			-20 to 70	°C	
Tstg	Storage temperature			-40 to 125	°C	

**Note:** The maximum power dissipation depends on the MCU's power dissipation and the specific heat consumption of the package.

3.1.2 Recommended operating conditions (In  $V_{CC} = 5\text{ V}$ )**Table 3.1.2 Recommended operating conditions** ( $V_{CC} = 4.15$  to  $5.25\text{ V}$ ,  $V_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$ ,  $T_a = -20$  to  $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted)

Symbol	Parameter	Limits			Unit
		Min.	Typ.	Max.	
V <sub>CC</sub>	Power source voltage	4.15	5.0	5.25	V
AV <sub>CC</sub>	Analog reference voltage	4.15	5.0	V <sub>CC</sub>	V
V <sub>SS</sub>	Power source voltage		0		V
AV <sub>SS</sub>	Analog reference voltage		0		V
V <sub>IH</sub>	"H" input voltage P00–P07, P10–P17, P20–P27, P30–P37, P40–P44, P50–P57, P60–P67, P70–P74, P80–P87	0.8V <sub>CC</sub>		V <sub>CC</sub>	V
V <sub>IH</sub>	"H" input voltage (Selecting VIH <sub>L</sub> level input) P20–P27	0.5V <sub>CC</sub>		V <sub>CC</sub>	V
V <sub>IH</sub>	"H" input voltage (Selecting TTL level input for MBI input) P54–P57, P60–P67, P72	2.0		V <sub>CC</sub>	V
V <sub>IH</sub>	"H" input voltage RESET, X <sub>IN</sub> , X <sub>CIN</sub> , CNV <sub>SS</sub>	0.8V <sub>CC</sub>		V <sub>CC</sub>	V
V <sub>IH</sub>	"H" input voltage USB D+, USB D–	2.0		3.8	V
V <sub>IL</sub>	"L" input voltage P00–P07, P10–P17, P20–P27, P30–P37, P40–P44, P50–P57, P60–P67, P70–P74, P80–P87	0		0.2V <sub>CC</sub>	V
V <sub>IL</sub>	"L" input voltage (Selecting VIH <sub>L</sub> level input) P20–P27	0		0.16V <sub>CC</sub>	V
V <sub>IL</sub>	"L" input voltage (Selecting TTL level input for MBI input) P54–P57, P60–P67, P72	0		0.8	V
V <sub>IL</sub>	"L" input voltage RESET, X <sub>IN</sub> , X <sub>CIN</sub> , CNV <sub>SS</sub>	0		0.2V <sub>CC</sub>	V
V <sub>IL</sub>	"L" input voltage USB D+, USB D–			0.8	V
ΣIO <sub>H</sub> (peak)	"H" total peak output current (Note 1) P00–P07, P10–P17, P20–P27, P30–P37, P40–P44, P50–P57, P60–P67, P70–P74, P80–P87			–80	mA
ΣIO <sub>L</sub> (peak)	"L" total peak output current (Note 1) P00–P07, P10–P17, P20–P27, P30–P37, P40–P44, P50–P57, P60–P67, P70–P74, P80–P87			80	mA
ΣIO <sub>H</sub> (avg)	"H" total average output current (Note 1) P00–P07, P10–P17, P20–P27, P30–P37, P40–P44, P50–P57, P60–P67, P70–P74, P80–P87			–40	mA
ΣIO <sub>L</sub> (avg)	"L" total average output current (Note 1) P00–P07, P10–P17, P20–P27, P30–P37, P40–P44, P50–P57, P60–P67, P70–P74, P80–P87			40	mA
IO <sub>H</sub> (peak)	"H" peak output current (Note 2) P00–P07, P10–P17, P20–P27, P30–P37, P40–P44, P50–P57, P60–P67, P70–P74, P80–P87			–10	mA
IO <sub>L</sub> (peak)	"L" peak output current (Note 2) P00–P07, P10–P17, P20–P27, P30–P37, P40–P44, P50–P57, P60–P67, P70–P74, P80–P87			10	mA
IO <sub>H</sub> (avg)	"H" average output current (Note 3) P00–P07, P10–P17, P20–P27, P30–P37, P40–P44, P50–P57, P60–P67, P70–P74, P80–P87			–5.0	mA
IO <sub>L</sub> (avg)	"L" average output current (Note 3) P00–P07, P10–P17, P20–P27, P30–P37, P40–P44, P50–P57, P60–P67, P70–P74, P80–P87			5.0	mA
f(CNTR0)	Timer X input frequency (Note 4)			5.0	MHz
f(CNTR1)	Timer Y input frequency (Note 4)			5.0	MHz
f(X <sub>IN</sub> )	Main clock input frequency (Notes 4, 5)	1		24	MHz
f(X <sub>CIN</sub> )	Sub-clock input frequency (Notes 4, 6)		32.768	50/5.0	kHz/MHz

**Notes 1:** The total peak output current is the peak value of the peak currents flowing through all the applicable ports. The total average output current is the average value measured over 100 ms flowing through all the applicable ports.

**2:** The peak output current is the peak current flowing in each port.

**3:** The average output current is an average value measured over 100 ms.

**4:** The duty of oscillation frequency is 50 %.

**5:** Connect a ceramic resonator or a quartz-crystal oscillator between the X<sub>IN</sub> and X<sub>OUT</sub> pins. Its maximum oscillation frequency must be 24 MHz. However, make sure to set  $\phi$  to 12 MHz or slower. More faster clocks are required as the f(X<sub>IN</sub>) when using the frequency synthesizer as possible.

**6:** Connect a ceramic resonator or a quartz-crystal oscillator between the X<sub>CIN</sub> and X<sub>COUT</sub> pins. Its maximum oscillation frequency must be 50 kHz. Input an external clock having 5 MHz frequency (max.) from the X<sub>CIN</sub> pin.

3.1.3 Electrical characteristics (In  $V_{CC} = 5\text{ V}$ )**Table 3.1.3 Electrical characteristics (1)** ( $V_{CC} = 4.15$  to  $5.25\text{ V}$ ,  $V_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$ ,  $T_a = -20$  to  $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted)

Symbol	Parameter	Test conditions	Limits			Unit
			Min.	Typ.	Max.	
VOH	"H" output voltage P00–P07, P10–P17, P20–P27, P30–P37, P40–P44, P50–P57, P60–P67, P70–P74, P80–P87	IOH = –10 mA	$V_{CC}-2.0$			V
VOH	"H" output voltage USB D+, USB D-	USB+, and USB- pins pull-down via a resistor of $15\text{ k}\Omega \pm 5\%$  USB+ pin pull-up to Ext. Cap. pin via a resistor of $1.5\text{ k}\Omega \pm 5\%$	2.8		3.6	V
VOL	"L" output voltage P00–P07, P10–P17, P20–P27, P30–P37, P40–P44, P50–P57, P60–P67, P70–P74, P80–P87	IOL = 10 mA			2.0	V
VOL	"L" output voltage USB D+, USB D-	USB+, and USB- pins pull-down via a resistor of $15\text{ k}\Omega \pm 5\%$  USB+ pin pull-up to Ext. Cap. pin via a resistor of $1.5\text{ k}\Omega \pm 5\%$			0.3	V
VT+–VT-	Hysteresis CNTR0, CNTR1, INT0, INT1, RDY, $\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ , P20–P27			0.5		V
VT+–VT-	Hysteresis URXD1, URXD2 (SCLK), $\overline{\text{CTS2}}$ (SRXD), SRDY, $\overline{\text{CTS1}}$			0.5		V
VT+–VT-	Hysteresis $\overline{\text{RESET}}$			0.5		V
I <sub>IH</sub>	"H" input current P00–P07, P10–P17, P20–P27, P30–P37, P40–P44, P50–P57, P60–P67, P70–P74, P80–P87	$V_i = V_{CC}$			5.0	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IH</sub>	"H" input current $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ , CNV <sub>SS</sub>				5.0	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IH</sub>	"H" input current X <sub>IN</sub>			9.0	20	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IH</sub>	"H" input current X <sub>CIN</sub>				5.0	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IL</sub>	"L" input current P00–P07, P10–P17, P30–P37, P40–P44, P50–P57, P60–P67, P70–P74, P80–P87	$V_i = V_{SS}$			–5.0	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IL</sub>	"L" input current $\overline{\text{RESET}}$				–5.0	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IL</sub>	"L" input current CNV <sub>SS</sub>				–20	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IL</sub>	"L" input current X <sub>IN</sub>			–9.0	–20	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IL</sub>	"L" input current X <sub>CIN</sub>				–5.0	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IL</sub>	"L" input current P20–P27	$V_i = V_{SS}$ Pull-ups "off"			–5.0	$\mu\text{A}$
		$V_{CC} = 5.0\text{ V}$ , $V_i = V_{SS}$ Pull-ups "on"	–30	–65	–140	$\mu\text{A}$
VRAM	RAM hold voltage	When clock is stopped	2.0		5.25	V

In  $V_{CC} = 5\text{ V}$ **Table 3.1.4 Electrical characteristics (2)** ( $V_{CC} = 4.15$  to  $5.25\text{ V}$ ,  $V_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$ ,  $T_a = -20$  to  $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted)

Symbol	Parameter	Test conditions	Limits			Unit
			Min.	Typ.	Max.	
I <sub>CC</sub>	Power source current (Output transistor is isolated.)	Normal mode ( <b>Note 1</b> ) f(X <sub>IN</sub> ) = 24 MHz, φ = 12 MHz USB operating Frequency synthesizer ON		40	90	mA
		Wait mode ( <b>Note 2</b> ) f(X <sub>IN</sub> ) = 24 MHz, φ = 12 MHz USB block enabled, USB clock stopped, Frequency synthesizer ON		5.0	11	mA
		Wait mode ( <b>Note 3</b> ) f(X <sub>CIN</sub> ) = 32 kHz, φ = 16 kHz USB block disabled Frequency synthesizer OFF USB transceiver DC-DC converter OFF			10	μA
		Stop mode USB transceiver DC-DC converter ON Low current mode (USBC3 = "1")		100	250	μA
		Stop mode USB transceiver DC-DC converter OFF T <sub>a</sub> = 25 °C			1.0	μA
		Stop mode USB transceiver DC-DC converter OFF T <sub>a</sub> = 70 °C			10	μA

## &lt;Test conditions&gt;

**Notes 1:** Operating in single-chip mode

Clock input from X<sub>IN</sub> pin (X<sub>OUT</sub> oscillator stopped)  
 USB operating with USB transceiver DC-DC converter enabled  
 Operating functions: Frequency synthesizer, CPU, two UARTs, DMAC, Timers and Count source generator  
 Disabled functions: Master CPU bus interface and Serial I/O

**2:** Operating in single-chip mode with Wait mode

Clock input from X<sub>IN</sub> pin (X<sub>OUT</sub> oscillator stopped)  
 USB suspended due to USB clock stopped with USB transceiver DC-DC converter enabled  
 Operating functions: Frequency synthesizer, Timers and Count source generator  
 Disabled functions: CPU, two UARTs, DMAC, Master CPU bus interface and Serial I/O

**3:** Operating in single-chip mode with Wait mode

X<sub>IN</sub> - X<sub>OUT</sub> oscillator stopped  
 Clock input from X<sub>CIN</sub> pin (X<sub>COUT</sub> oscillator stopped)  
 USB stopped, USB clock stopped and USB transceiver DC-DC converter disabled  
 Operating functions: Timers and Count source generator  
 Disabled functions: Frequency synthesizer, CPU, two UARTs, DMAC, Master CPU bus interface and Serial I/O

**Timing Requirements****In  $V_{CC} = 5\text{ V}$** **Table 3.1.5 Timing requirements** ( $V_{CC} = 4.15$  to  $5.25\text{ V}$ ,  $V_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$ ,  $T_a = -20$  to  $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted)

Symbol	Parameter	Limits			Unit
		Min.	Typ.	Max.	
$t_w(\text{RESET})$	Reset input "L" pulse width	2			$\mu\text{s}$
$t_c(\text{XIN})$	Main clock input cycle time <b>(Note)</b>	41.66			ns
$t_{WH}(\text{XIN})$	Main clock input "H" pulse width	$0.4 \cdot t_c(\text{XIN})$			ns
$t_{WL}(\text{XIN})$	Main clock input "L" pulse width	$0.4 \cdot t_c(\text{XIN})$			ns
$t_c(\text{XCIN})$	Sub-clock input cycle time	200			ns
$t_{WH}(\text{XCIN})$	Sub-clock input "H" pulse width	$0.4 \cdot t_c(\text{XCIN})$			ns
$t_{WL}(\text{XCIN})$	Sub-clock input "L" pulse width	$0.4 \cdot t_c(\text{XCIN})$			ns
$t_c(\text{INT})$	INT0, INT1 input cycle time	200			ns
$t_{WH}(\text{INT})$	INT0, INT1 input "H" pulse width	90			ns
$t_{WL}(\text{INT})$	INT0, INT1 input "L" pulse width	90			ns
$t_c(\text{CNTR}i)$	CNTR0, CNTR1 input cycle time	200			ns
$t_{WH}(\text{CNTR}i)$	CNTR0, CNTR1 input "H" pulse width	80			ns
$t_{WL}(\text{CNTR}i)$	CNTR0, CNTR1 input "L" pulse width	80			ns
$t_d(\phi - \text{TOUT})$	Timer TOUT delay time			15	ns
$t_d(\phi - \text{CNTR}0)$	Timer CNTR0 delay time (Pulse output mode)			15	ns
$t_c(\text{CNTR}E0)$	Timer CNTR0 input cycle time (Event counter mode)	200			ns
$t_{WH}(\text{CNTR}E0)$	Timer CNTR0 input "H" pulse width (Event counter mode)	$0.4 \cdot t_c(\text{CNTR}E0)$			ns
$t_{WL}(\text{CNTR}E0)$	Timer CNTR0 input "L" pulse width (Event counter mode)	$0.4 \cdot t_c(\text{CNTR}E0)$			ns
$t_d(\phi - \text{CNTR}1)$	Timer CNTR1 delay time (Pulse output mode)			15	ns
$t_c(\text{CNTR}E1)$	Timer CNTR1 input cycle time (Event counter mode)	200			ns
$t_{WH}(\text{CNTR}E1)$	Timer CNTR1 input "H" pulse width (Event counter mode)	$0.4 \cdot t_c(\text{CNTR}E1)$			ns
$t_{WL}(\text{CNTR}E1)$	Timer CNTR1 input "L" pulse width (Event counter mode)	$0.4 \cdot t_c(\text{CNTR}E1)$			ns
$t_c(\text{SCLKE})$	Serial I/O external clock input cycle time	400			ns
$t_{WH}(\text{SCLKE})$	Serial I/O external clock input "H" pulse width	190			ns
$t_{WL}(\text{SCLKE})$	Serial I/O external clock input "L" pulse width	180			ns
$t_{su}(\text{SRXD-SCLKE})$	Serial I/O input setup time (external clock)	15			ns
$t_h(\text{SCLKE-SRXD})$	Serial I/O input hold time (external clock)	10			ns
$t_d(\text{SCLKE-STXD})$	Serial I/O output delay time (external clock)			25	ns
$t_v(\text{SCLKE-SRDY})$	Serial I/O SRDY valid time (external clock)			26	ns
$t_c(\text{SCLK}i)$	Serial I/O internal clock output cycle time	166.66			ns
$t_{WH}(\text{SCLK}i)$	Serial I/O internal clock output "H" pulse width	$0.5 \cdot t_c(\text{SCLK}i) - 5$			ns
$t_{WL}(\text{SCLK}i)$	Serial I/O internal clock output "L" pulse width	$0.5 \cdot t_c(\text{SCLK}i) - 5$			ns
$t_{su}(\text{SRXD-SCLK}i)$	Serial I/O input setup time (internal clock)	20			ns
$t_h(\text{SCLK}i-SRXD)$	Serial I/O input hold time (internal clock)	5			ns
$t_d(\text{SCLK}i-STXD)$	Serial I/O output delay time (internal clock)			5	ns

**Note:** Make sure not to exceed 12 MHz of  $\phi$ , in other words,  $t_c(\phi) \geq 83.33\text{ ns}$ . For example, set bit 7 of the clock control register (CCR) to "0" in the case of  $t_c(\text{XIN}) < 41.66\text{ ns}$ .

**In Vcc = 5 V****Table 3.1.6 Master CPU bus interface (MBI; RD, WR separate type)** (Vcc = 4.15 to 5.25 V, Vss = 0 V, Ta = -20 to 70°C, unless otherwise noted)

Symbol	Parameter	Limits			Unit
		Min.	Typ.	Max.	
tsu(S-R)	$\overline{S_0}, \overline{S_1}$ setup time for read	0			ns
tsu(S-W)	$\overline{S_0}, \overline{S_1}$ setup time for write	0			ns
th(R-S)	$\overline{S_0}, \overline{S_1}$ hold time for read	0			ns
th(W-S)	$\overline{S_0}, \overline{S_1}$ hold time for write	0			ns
tsu(A-R)	A0 setup time for read	10			ns
tsu(A-W)	A0 setup time for write	10			ns
th(R-A)	A0 hold time for read	0			ns
th(W-A)	A0 hold time for write	0			ns
tw(R)	Read pulse width	50			ns
tw(W)	Write pulse width	50			ns
tsu(D-W)	Data input setup time before write	25			ns
th(W-D)	Data input hold time after write	0			ns
ta(R-D)	Data output enable time after read			40	ns
tv(R-D)	Data output disable time after read	10			ns
tv(R-OBF)	OBF output transmission time after read			40	ns
td(W-IBF)	$\overline{IBF}$ output transmission time after write			40	ns

**In Vcc = 5 V****Table 3.1.7 Master CPU bus interface (MBI; R/W type)** (Vcc = 4.15 to 5.25 V, Vss = 0 V, Ta = -20 to 70°C, unless otherwise noted)

Symbol	Parameter	Limits			Unit
		Min.	Typ.	Max.	
tsu(S-E)	$\overline{S_0}, \overline{S_1}$ setup time	0			ns
th(E-S)	$\overline{S_0}, \overline{S_1}$ hold time	0			ns
tsu(A-E)	A0 setup time	10			ns
th(E-A)	A0 hold time	0			ns
tsu(RW-E)	R/W setup time	10			ns
th(E-RW)	R/W hold time	10			ns
tw(E)	Enable pulse width	50			ns
tw(E-E)	Enable pulse interval	50			ns
tsu(D-E)	Data input setup time before write	25			ns
th(E-D)	Data input hold time after write	0			ns
ta(E-D)	Data output enable time after read			40	ns
tv(E-D)	Data output disable time after read	10			ns
tv(E-OBF)	OBF output transmission time after E inactive			40	ns
td(E-IBF)	$\overline{IBF}$ output transmission time after E inactive			40	ns



In  $V_{CC} = 5\text{ V}$ **Table 3.1.8 Timing requirements and switching characteristics in memory expansion and microprocessor modes****( $V_{CC} = 4.15$  to  $5.25\text{ V}$ ,  $V_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$ ,  $T_a = -20$  to  $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted)**

Symbol	Parameter	Limits			Unit
		Min.	Typ.	Max.	
$t_{C(\phi)}$	$\phi$ clock cycle time	83.33			ns
$t_{WH(\phi)}$	$\phi$ clock "H" pulse width	$0.5 \cdot t_{C(\phi)} - 5$			ns
$t_{WL(\phi)}$	$\phi$ clock "L" pulse width	$0.5 \cdot t_{C(\phi)} - 5$			ns
$t_{d(\phi - AH)}$	AB15–AB8 delay time			31	ns
$t_{v(\phi - AH)}$	AB15–AB8 valid time	5			ns
$t_{d(\phi - AL)}$	AB7–AB0 delay time			33	ns
$t_{v(\phi - AL)}$	AB7–AB0 valid time	5			ns
$t_{d(\phi - WR)}$	$\overline{WR}$ delay time			6	ns
$t_{v(\phi - WR)}$	$\overline{WR}$ valid time	3			ns
$t_{d(\phi - RD)}$	$\overline{RD}$ delay time			6	ns
$t_{v(\phi - RD)}$	$\overline{RD}$ valid time	3			ns
$t_{d(\phi - SYNC)}$	SYNCOUT delay time			6	ns
$t_{v(\phi - SYNC)}$	SYNCOUT valid time	4			ns
$t_{d(\phi - DMA)}$	DMAOUT delay time			25	ns
$t_{v(\phi - DMA)}$	DMAOUT valid time	5			ns
$t_{su}(RDY - \phi)$	RDY setup time	21			ns
$t_{h(\phi - RDY)}$	RDY hold time	0			ns
$t_{su}(HOLD - \phi)$	$\overline{HOLD}$ setup time	21			ns
$t_{h(\phi - HOLD)}$	$\overline{HOLD}$ hold time	0			ns
$t_{d(\phi - HLDAL)}$	$\overline{HOLD}$ "L" delay time			25	ns
$t_{d(\phi - HLDALH)}$	$\overline{HOLD}$ "H" delay time			25	ns
$t_{su}(DB - \phi)$	Data bus setup time	7			ns
$t_{h(\phi - DB)}$	Data bus hold time	0			ns
$t_{d(\phi - DB)}$	Data bus delay time			22	ns
$t_{v(\phi - DB)}$	Data bus valid time ( <b>Note 1</b> )	13			ns
$t_{d(\phi - EDMA)}$	$\overline{EDMA}$ delay time			9	ns
$t_{v(\phi - EDMA)}$	$\overline{EDMA}$ valid time	4			ns
$t_{WL}(WR)$ ( <b>Note 2</b> )	$\overline{WR}$ pulse width	$0.5 \cdot t_{C(\phi)} - 5$			ns
$t_{WL}(RD)$ ( <b>Note 2</b> )	$\overline{RD}$ pulse width	$0.5 \cdot t_{C(\phi)} - 5$			ns
$t_{d}(AH - WR)$	AB15–AB8 valid time before $\overline{WR}$	$0.5 \cdot t_{C(\phi)} - 28$			ns
$t_{d}(AL - WR)$	AB7–AB0 valid time before $\overline{WR}$	$0.5 \cdot t_{C(\phi)} - 30$			ns
$t_{v}(WR - AH)$	AB15–AB8 valid time after $\overline{WR}$	0			ns
$t_{v}(WR - AL)$	AB7–AB0 valid time after $\overline{WR}$	0			ns
$t_{d}(AH - RD)$	AB15–AB8 valid time before $\overline{RD}$	$0.5 \cdot t_{C(\phi)} - 28$			ns
$t_{d}(AL - RD)$	AB7–AB0 valid time before $\overline{RD}$	$0.5 \cdot t_{C(\phi)} - 30$			ns
$t_{v}(RD - AH)$	AB15–AB8 valid time after $\overline{RD}$	0			ns
$t_{v}(RD - AL)$	AB7–AB0 valid time after $\overline{RD}$	0			ns
$t_{su}(RDY - WR)$	RDY setup time before $\overline{WR}$	27			ns
$t_{h}(WR - RDY)$	RDY hold time after $\overline{WR}$	0			ns
$t_{su}(RDY - RD)$	RDY setup time before $\overline{RD}$	27			ns
$t_{h}(RD - RDY)$	RDY hold time after $\overline{RD}$	0			ns
$t_{su}(DB - RD)$	Data bus setup time before $\overline{RD}$	13			ns
$t_{h}(RD - DB)$	Data bus hold time after $\overline{RD}$	0			ns
$t_{d}(WR - DB)$	Data bus delay time before $\overline{WR}$			20	ns
$t_{v}(WR - DB)$	Data bus valid time after $\overline{WR}$ ( <b>Note 1</b> )	10			ns
$t_{v}(WR - EDMA)$	$\overline{EDMA}$ delay time after $\overline{WR}$	2			ns
$t_{v}(RD - EDMA)$	$\overline{EDMA}$ valid time after $\overline{RD}$	2			ns
$t_r(D+), t_r(D-)$	USB output rise time, $C_L = 50\text{ pF}$	4		20	ns
$t_f(D+), t_f(D-)$	USB output fall time, $C_L = 50\text{ pF}$	4		20	ns

**Notes 1:** Test conditions: IOHL = ± 5mA, CL = 50 pF

**2:**  $twL(RD) = ((n + 0.5) \cdot tc(PHI)) - 5 \text{ ns}$  (n = wait number)

$twL(WR) = ((n + 0.5) \cdot tc(PHI)) - 5 \text{ ns}$  (n = wait number)

For example, two software waits, PHI = 12 MHz operating

$twL(RD) = 2.5 \cdot tc(PHI) - 5 \text{ ns} = 203.33 \text{ ns}$

### 3.1.4 Recommended Operating Conditions (In Vcc = 3 V)

**Table 3.1.9 Recommended operating conditions** (Vcc = 3.0 to 3.6 V, Vss = 0 V, Ta = -20 to 70°C, unless otherwise noted)

Symbol	Parameter	Limits			Unit
		Min.	Typ.	Max.	
VCC	Power source voltage	3.0	3.3	3.6	V
AVcc	Analog reference voltage	3.0	3.3	Vcc	V
VSS	Power source voltage		0		V
AVSS	Analog reference voltage		0		V
Ext. Cap.	DC-DC converter voltage	3.0	3.3	3.6	V
VIH	"H" input voltage P00-P07, P10-P17, P20-P27, P30-P37, P40-P44, P50-P57, P60-P67, P70-P74, P80-P87	0.8Vcc		Vcc	V
VIH	"H" input voltage (Selecting VIH level input) P20-P27	0.5Vcc		Vcc	V
VIH	"H" input voltage RESET, XIN, XCIN, CNVss	0.8Vcc		Vcc	V
VIH	"H" input voltage USB D+, USB D-	2.0			V
VIL	"L" input voltage P00-P07, P10-P17, P20-P27, P30-P37, P40-P44, P50-P57, P60-P67, P70-P74, P80-P87	0		0.2Vcc	V
VIL	"L" input voltage (Selecting VIH level input) P20-P27	0		0.16Vcc	V
VIL	"L" input voltage RESET, XIN, XCIN, CNVss	0		0.2Vcc	V
VIL	"L" input voltage USB D+, USB D-			0.8	mA
ΣIOH(peak)	"H" total peak output current (Note 1) P00-P07, P10-P17, P20-P27, P30-P37, P40-P44, P50-P57, P60-P67, P70-P74, P80-P87			-80	mA
ΣIOL(peak)	"L" total peak output current (Note 1) P00-P07, P10-P17, P20-P27, P30-P37, P40-P44, P50-P57, P60-P67, P70-P74, P80-P87			80	mA
ΣIOH(avg)	"H" total average output current (Note 1) P00-P07, P10-P17, P20-P27, P30-P37, P40-P44, P50-P57, P60-P67, P70-P74, P80-P87			-40	mA
ΣIOL(avg)	"L" total average output current (Note 1) P00-P07, P10-P17, P20-P27, P30-P37, P40-P44, P50-P57, P60-P67, P70-P74, P80-P87			40	mA
IOH(peak)	"H" peak output current (Note 2) P00-P07, P10-P17, P20-P27, P30-P37, P40-P44, P50-P57, P60-P67, P70-P74, P80-P87			-10	mA
IOL(peak)	"L" peak output current (Note 2) P00-P07, P10-P17, P20-P27, P30-P37, P40-P44, P50-P57, P60-P67, P70-P74, P80-P87			10	mA
IOH(avg)	"H" average output current (Note 3) P00-P07, P10-P17, P20-P27, P30-P37, P40-P44, P50-P57, P60-P67, P70-P74, P80-P87			-5.0	mA
IOL(avg)	"L" average output current (Note 3) P00-P07, P10-P17, P20-P27, P30-P37, P40-P44, P50-P57, P60-P67, P70-P74, P80-P87			5.0	mA
f(CNTR0)	Timer X input frequency (Note 4)			5.0	MHz
f(CNTR1)	Timer Y input frequency (Note 4)			5.0	MHz
f(XIN)	Main clock input frequency (Notes 4, 5)	1		24	MHz
f(XCIN)	Sub-clock input frequency (Notes 4, 6)		32.768	50/5.0	kHz/MHz

**Notes 1:** The total peak output current is the peak value of the peak currents flowing through all the applicable ports. The total average output current is the average value measured over 100 ms flowing through all the applicable ports.

**2:** The peak output current is the peak current flowing in each port.

**3:** The average output current is an average value measured over 100 ms.

**4:** The duty of oscillation frequency is 50 %.

**5:** Connect a ceramic resonator or a quartz-crystal oscillator between the XIN and XOUT pins. Its maximum oscillation frequency must be 24 MHz. However, make sure to set  $\phi$  to 6 MHz or slower. More faster clocks are required as the f(XIN) when using the frequency synthesizer as possible.

**6:** Connect a ceramic resonator or a quartz-crystal oscillator between the XCIN and XCOUT pins. Its maximum oscillation frequency must be 50 kHz. Input an external clock having 5 MHz (max.) frequency from the XCIN pin.

### 3.1.5 Electrical Characteristics (In $V_{CC} = 3\text{ V}$ )

**Table 3.1.10 Electrical characteristics (1)** ( $V_{CC} = 3.0$  to  $3.6\text{ V}$ ,  $V_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$ ,  $T_a = -20$  to  $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted)

Symbol	Parameter	Test conditions	Limits			Unit
			Min.	Typ.	Max.	
VOH	"H" output voltage P00-P07, P10-P17, P20-P27, P30-P37, P40-P44, P50-P57, P60-P67, P70-P74, P80-P87	IOH = -1 mA	$V_{CC}-1.0$			V
VOH	"H" output voltage USB D+, USB D-	USB+, and USB- pins pull-down via a resistor of $15\text{ k}\Omega \pm 5\%$  USB+ pin pull-up to Ext. Cap. pin via a resistor of $1.5\text{ k}\Omega \pm 5\%$	2.8		3.6	V
VOL	"L" output voltage P00-P07, P10-P17, P20-P27, P30-P37, P40-P44, P50-P57, P60-P67, P70-P74, P80-P87	IOL = 1 mA			1.0	V
VOL	"L" output voltage USB D+, USB D-	USB+, and USB- pins pull-down via a resistor of $15\text{ k}\Omega \pm 5\%$  USB+ pin pull-up to Ext. Cap. pin via a resistor of $1.5\text{ k}\Omega \pm 5\%$	0		0.3	V
VT+–VT-	Hysteresis CNTR0, CNTR1, INT0, INT1, RDY, $\overline{\text{HOLD}}$ , P20-P27			0.3		V
VT+–VT-	Hysteresis URXD1, URXD2 (SCLK), $\overline{\text{CTS2}}$ (SRXD), SRDY, CTS1			0.3		V
VT+–VT-	Hysteresis $\overline{\text{RESET}}$			0.3		V
I <sub>IH</sub>	"H" input current P00-P07, P10-P17, P20-P27, P30-P37, P40-P44, P50-P57, P60-P67, P70-P74, P80-P87	$V_I = V_{CC}$			5.0	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IH</sub>	"H" input current $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ , CNVss				5.0	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IH</sub>	"H" input current X <sub>IN</sub>			9.0	20	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IH</sub>	"H" input current X <sub>CIN</sub>				5.0	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IL</sub>	"L" input current P00-P07, P10-P17, P30-P37, P40-P44, P50-P57, P60-P67, P70-P74, P80-P87	$V_I = V_{SS}$			-5.0	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IL</sub>	"L" input current $\overline{\text{RESET}}$				-5.0	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IL</sub>	"L" input current CNVss				-20	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IL</sub>	"L" input current X <sub>IN</sub>			-9.0	-20	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IL</sub>	"L" input current X <sub>CIN</sub>				-5.0	$\mu\text{A}$
I <sub>IL</sub>	"L" input current P20-P27	$V_I = V_{SS}$ Pull-ups "off"			-5.0	$\mu\text{A}$
		$V_{CC} = 3.0\text{ V}$ , $V_I = V_{SS}$ Pull-ups "on"	-10	-20	-50	$\mu\text{A}$
VRAM	RAM hold voltage	When clock is stopped	2.0			V

**In Vcc = 3 V****Table 3.1.11 Electrical characteristics (2)** (Vcc = 3.0 to 3.6 V, Vss = 0 V, Ta = -20 to 70°C, unless otherwise noted)

Symbol	Parameter	Test conditions	Limits			Unit
			Min.	Typ.	Max.	
Icc	Power source current (Output transistor is isolated.)	Normal mode ( <b>Note 1</b> ) f(XIN) = 24 MHz, $\phi$ = 6 MHz USB operating Frequency synthesizer ON		25	45	mA
		Wait mode ( <b>Note 2</b> ) f(XIN) = 24 MHz, $\phi$ = 6 MHz USB block enabled, USB clock stopped, Frequency synthesizer ON		2.5	6	mA
		Wait mode ( <b>Note 3</b> ) f(XCIN) = 32 kHz, $\phi$ = 16 kHz USB block disabled Frequency synthesizer OFF USB transceiver DC-DC converter OFF			6	$\mu$ A
		Stop mode USB transceiver DC-DC converter OFF Ta = 25 °C			1.0	$\mu$ A
		Stop mode USB transceiver DC-DC converter OFF Ta = 70 °C			10	$\mu$ A

**<Test conditions>****Notes 1:** Operating in single-chip mode

Clock input from XIN pin (XOUT oscillator stopped)  
 USB operating with USB transceiver DC-DC converter enabled  
 Operating functions: Frequency synthesizer, CPU, two UARTs, DMAC, Timers and Count source generator  
 Disabled functions: Master CPU bus interface and Serial I/O

**2:** Operating in single-chip mode with Wait mode

Clock input from XIN pin (XOUT oscillator stopped)  
 USB suspended due to USB clock stopped with USB transceiver DC-DC converter enabled  
 Operating functions: Frequency synthesizer, Timers and Count source generator  
 Disabled functions: CPU, two UARTs, DMAC, Master CPU bus interface and Serial I/O

**3:** Operating in single-chip mode with Wait mode

XIN - XOUT oscillator stopped  
 Clock input from XCIN pin (XCOUT oscillator stopped)  
 USB stopped, USB clock stopped and USB transceiver DC-DC converter disabled  
 Operating functions: Timers and Count source generator  
 Disabled functions: Frequency synthesizer, CPU, two UARTs, DMAC, Master CPU bus interface and Serial I/O

**Timing Requirements****In  $V_{CC} = 3\text{ V}$** **Table 3.1.12 Timing requirements** ( $V_{CC} = 3.0$  to  $3.6\text{ V}$ ,  $V_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$ ,  $T_a = -20$  to  $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted)

Symbol	Parameter	Limits			Unit
		Min.	Typ.	Max.	
$t_w(\text{RESET})$	Reset input "L" pulse width	2			$\mu\text{s}$
$t_c(\text{XIN})$	Main clock input cycle time <b>(Note)</b>	41.66			ns
$t_{WH}(\text{XIN})$	Main clock input "H" pulse width	$0.4 \cdot t_c(\text{XIN})$			ns
$t_{WL}(\text{XIN})$	Main clock input "L" pulse width	$0.4 \cdot t_c(\text{XIN})$			ns
$t_c(\text{XCIN})$	Sub-clock input cycle time	200			ns
$t_{WH}(\text{XCIN})$	Sub-clock input "H" pulse width	$0.4 \cdot t_c(\text{XCIN})$			ns
$t_{WL}(\text{XCIN})$	Sub-clock input "L" pulse width	$0.4 \cdot t_c(\text{XCIN})$			ns
$t_c(\text{INT})$	INT0, INT1 input cycle time	250			ns
$t_{WH}(\text{INT})$	INT0, INT1 input "H" pulse width	110			ns
$t_{WL}(\text{INT})$	INT0, INT1 input "L" pulse width	110			ns
$t_c(\text{CNTR}i)$	CNTR0, CNTR1 input cycle time	250			ns
$t_{WH}(\text{CNTR}i)$	CNTR0, CNTR1 input "H" pulse width	110			ns
$t_{WL}(\text{CNTR}i)$	CNTR0, CNTR1 input "L" pulse width	110			ns
$t_d(\phi - \text{TOUT})$	Timer TOUT delay time			17	ns
$t_d(\phi - \text{CNTR}0)$	Timer CNTR0 delay time (Pulse output mode)			16	ns
$t_c(\text{CNTR}E0)$	Timer CNTR0 input cycle time (Event counter mode)	250			ns
$t_{WH}(\text{CNTR}E0)$	Timer CNTR0 input "H" pulse width (Event counter mode)	$0.4 \cdot t_c(\text{CNTR}E0)$			ns
$t_{WL}(\text{CNTR}E0)$	Timer CNTR0 input "L" pulse width (Event counter mode)	$0.4 \cdot t_c(\text{CNTR}E0)$			ns
$t_d(\phi - \text{CNTR}1)$	Timer CNTR1 delay time (Pulse output mode)			15	ns
$t_c(\text{CNTR}E1)$	Timer CNTR1 input cycle time (Event counter mode)	250			ns
$t_{WH}(\text{CNTR}E1)$	Timer CNTR1 input "H" pulse width (Event counter mode)	$0.4 \cdot t_c(\text{CNTR}E1)$			ns
$t_{WL}(\text{CNTR}E1)$	Timer CNTR1 input "L" pulse width (Event counter mode)	$0.4 \cdot t_c(\text{CNTR}E1)$			ns
$t_c(\text{SCLKE})$	Serial I/O external clock input cycle time	450			ns
$t_{WH}(\text{SCLKE})$	Serial I/O external clock input "H" pulse width	220			ns
$t_{WL}(\text{SCLKE})$	Serial I/O external clock input "L" pulse width	190			ns
$t_{su}(\text{SRXD-SCLKE})$	Serial I/O input setup time (external clock)	20			ns
$t_h(\text{SCLKE-SRXD})$	Serial I/O input hold time (external clock)	15			ns
$t_d(\text{SCLKE-STXD})$	Serial I/O output delay time (external clock)			34	ns
$t_v(\text{SCLKE-SRDY})$	Serial I/O SRDY valid time (external clock)			35	ns
$t_c(\text{SCLK}i)$	Serial I/O internal clock output cycle time	300			ns
$t_{WH}(\text{SCLK}i)$	Serial I/O internal clock output "H" pulse width	$0.5 \cdot t_c(\text{SCLK}i) - 5$			ns
$t_{WL}(\text{SCLK}i)$	Serial I/O internal clock output "L" pulse width	$0.5 \cdot t_c(\text{SCLK}i) - 5$			ns
$t_{su}(\text{SRXD-SCLK}i)$	Serial I/O input setup time (internal clock)	20			ns
$t_h(\text{SCLK}i-SRXD)$	Serial I/O input hold time (internal clock)	5			ns
$t_d(\text{SCLK}i-STXD)$	Serial I/O output delay time (internal clock)			5	ns

**Note:** Make sure not to exceed 6 MHz of  $\phi$ , in other words,  $t_c(\phi) \geq 166.66\text{ ns}$ .

**In Vcc = 3 V****Table 3.1.13 Master CPU bus interface (MBI; RD, WR separate type)** (Vcc = 3.0 to 3.6 V, Vss = 0 V, Ta = -20 to 70°C, unless otherwise noted)

Symbol	Parameter	Limits			Unit
		Min.	Typ.	Max.	
tsu(S-R)	$\overline{S_0}, \overline{S_1}$ setup time for read	0			ns
tsu(S-W)	$\overline{S_0}, \overline{S_1}$ setup time for write	0			ns
th(R-S)	$\overline{S_0}, \overline{S_1}$ hold time for read	0			ns
th(W-S)	$\overline{S_0}, \overline{S_1}$ hold time for write	0			ns
tsu(A-R)	A0 setup time for read	10			ns
tsu(A-W)	A0 setup time for write	10			ns
th(R-A)	A0 hold time for read	0			ns
th(W-A)	A0 hold time for write	0			ns
tw(R)	Read pulse width	80			ns
tw(W)	Write pulse width	80			ns
tsu(D-W)	Data input setup time before write	35			ns
th(W-D)	Data input hold time after write	0			ns
ta(R-D)	Data output enable time after read			65	ns
tv(R-D)	Data output disable time after read	10			ns
tv(R-OBF)	OBF output transmission time after read			50	ns
td(W-IBF)	$\overline{IBF}$ output transmission time after write			50	ns

**In Vcc = 3 V****Table 3.1.14 Master CPU bus interface (MBI; R/W type)** (Vcc = 3.0 to 3.6 V, Vss = 0 V, Ta = -20 to 70°C, unless otherwise noted)

Symbol	Parameter	Limits			Unit
		Min.	Typ.	Max.	
tsu(S-E)	$\overline{S_0}, \overline{S_1}$ setup time	0			ns
th(E-S)	$\overline{S_0}, \overline{S_1}$ hold time	0			ns
tsu(A-E)	A0 setup time	10			ns
th(E-A)	A0 hold time	0			ns
tsu(RW-E)	R/W setup time	10			ns
th(E-RW)	R/W hold time	10			ns
tw(E)	Enable pulse width	80			ns
tw(E-E)	Enable pulse interval	80			ns
tsu(D-E)	Data input setup time before write	35			ns
th(E-D)	Data input hold time after write	0			ns
ta(E-D)	Data output enable time after read			65	ns
tv(E-D)	Data output disable time after read	10			ns
tv(E-OBF)	OBF output transmission time after E inactive			50	ns
td(E-IBF)	$\overline{IBF}$ output transmission time after E inactive			50	ns

In  $V_{CC} = 3\text{ V}$ **Table 3.1.15** Timing requirements and switching characteristics in memory expansion and microprocessor modes**( $V_{CC} = 3.0$  to  $3.6\text{ V}$ ,  $V_{SS} = 0\text{ V}$ ,  $T_a = -20$  to  $70^\circ\text{C}$ , unless otherwise noted)**

Symbol	Parameter	Limits			Unit
		Min.	Typ.	Max.	
$t_{C(\phi)}$	$\phi$ clock cycle time	166.66			$\mu\text{s}$
$t_{WH(\phi)}$	$\phi$ clock "H" pulse width	$0.5 \cdot t_{C(\phi)} - 5$			ns
$t_{WL(\phi)}$	$\phi$ clock "L" pulse width	$0.5 \cdot t_{C(\phi)} - 5$			ns
$t_{d(\phi - AH)}$	AB15–AB8 delay time			45	ns
$t_{v(\phi - AH)}$	AB15–AB8 valid time	7			ns
$t_{d(\phi - AL)}$	AB7–AB0 delay time			47	ns
$t_{v(\phi - AL)}$	AB7–AB0 valid time	7			ns
$t_{d(\phi - WR)}$	$\overline{WR}$ delay time			8	ns
$t_{v(\phi - WR)}$	$\overline{WR}$ valid time	4			ns
$t_{d(\phi - RD)}$	$\overline{RD}$ delay time			8	ns
$t_{v(\phi - RD)}$	$\overline{RD}$ valid time	3			ns
$t_{d(\phi - SYNC)}$	SYNCOUT delay time			11	ns
$t_{v(\phi - SYNC)}$	SYNCOUT valid time	4			ns
$t_{d(\phi - DMA)}$	DMAOUT delay time			26	ns
$t_{v(\phi - DMA)}$	DMAOUT valid time	9			ns
$t_{su}(RDY - \phi)$	RDY setup time	35			ns
$t_{h(\phi - RDY)}$	RDY hold time	0			ns
$t_{su}(HOLD - \phi)$	$\overline{HOLD}$ setup time	21			ns
$t_{h(\phi - HOLD)}$	$\overline{HOLD}$ hold time	0			ns
$t_{d(\phi - HLDAL)}$	$\overline{HOLD}$ "L" delay time			30	ns
$t_{d(\phi - HLDALH)}$	$\overline{HOLD}$ "H" delay time			30	ns
$t_{su}(DB - \phi)$	Data bus setup time	9			ns
$t_{h(\phi - DB)}$	Data bus hold time	0			ns
$t_{d(\phi - DB)}$	Data bus delay time			30	ns
$t_{v(\phi - DB)}$	Data bus valid time (Note 1)	15			ns
$t_{d(\phi - EDMA)}$	$\overline{EDMA}$ delay time			12	ns
$t_{v(\phi - EDMA)}$	$\overline{EDMA}$ valid time	8			ns
$t_{WL}(WR)$ (Note 2)	$\overline{WR}$ pulse width	$0.5 \cdot t_{C(\phi)} - 6$			ns
$t_{WL}(RD)$ (Note 2)	$\overline{RD}$ pulse width	$0.5 \cdot t_{C(\phi)} - 6$			ns
$t_{d}(AH - WR)$	AB15–AB8 valid time before $\overline{WR}$	$0.5 \cdot t_{C(\phi)} - 33$			ns
$t_{d}(AL - WR)$	AB7–AB0 valid time before $\overline{WR}$	$0.5 \cdot t_{C(\phi)} - 35$			ns
$t_{v}(WR - AH)$	AB15–AB8 valid time after $\overline{WR}$	0			ns
$t_{v}(WR - AL)$	AB7–AB0 valid time after $\overline{WR}$	0			ns
$t_{d}(AH - RD)$	AB15–AB8 valid time before $\overline{RD}$	$0.5 \cdot t_{C(\phi)} - 33$			ns
$t_{d}(AL - RD)$	AB7–AB0 valid time before $\overline{RD}$	$0.5 \cdot t_{C(\phi)} - 35$			ns
$t_{v}(RD - AH)$	AB15–AB8 valid time after $\overline{RD}$	0			ns
$t_{v}(RD - AL)$	AB7–AB0 valid time after $\overline{RD}$	0			ns
$t_{su}(RDY - WR)$	RDY setup time before $\overline{WR}$	45			ns
$t_{h}(WR - RDY)$	RDY hold time after $\overline{WR}$	0			ns
$t_{su}(RDY - RD)$	RDY setup time before $\overline{RD}$	45			ns
$t_{h}(RD - RDY)$	RDY hold time after $\overline{RD}$	0			ns
$t_{su}(DB - RD)$	Data bus setup time before $\overline{RD}$	18			ns
$t_{h}(RD - DB)$	Data bus hold time after $\overline{RD}$	0			ns
$t_{d}(WR - DB)$	Data bus delay time after $\overline{WR}$			28	ns
$t_{v}(WR - DB)$	Data bus valid time after $\overline{WR}$ (Note 1)	12			ns
$t_{v}(WR - EDMA)$	$\overline{EDMA}$ delay time after $\overline{WR}$	3			ns
$t_{v}(RD - EDMA)$	$\overline{EDMA}$ valid time after $\overline{RD}$	3			ns
$t_r(D+), t_r(D-)$	USB output rise time, $C_L = 50\text{ pF}$	4		20	ns
$t_f(D+), t_f(D-)$	USB output fall time, $C_L = 50\text{ pF}$	4		20	ns



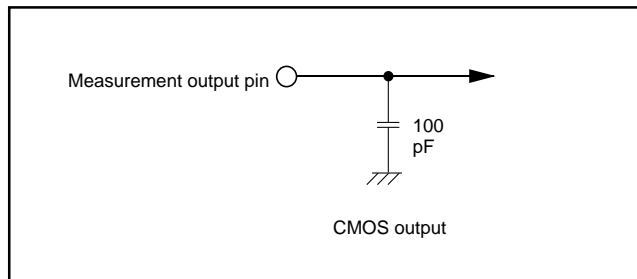
**Notes 1:** Test conditions: IOHL = ± 5mA, CL = 50 pF

**2:**  $twL(RD) = ((n + 0.5) \cdot tc(PHI)) - 5 \text{ ns}$  (n = wait number)

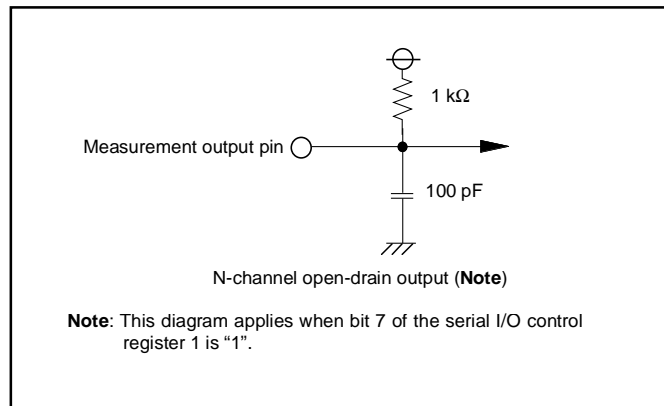
$twL(WR) = ((n + 0.5) \cdot tc(PHI)) - 5 \text{ ns}$  (n = wait number)

For example, two software waits, PHI = 12 MHz operating

$twL(RD) = 2.5 \cdot tc(PHI) - 5 \text{ ns} = 203.33 \text{ ns}$



**Fig. 3.1.1 Circuit for measuring output switching characteristics (1)**

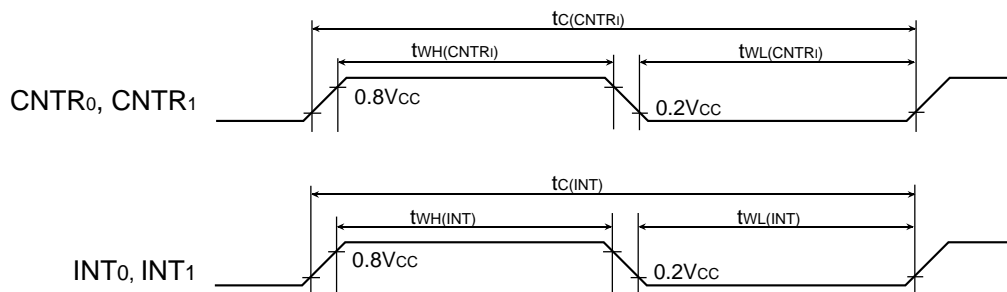


**Note:** This diagram applies when bit 7 of the serial I/O control register 1 is "1".

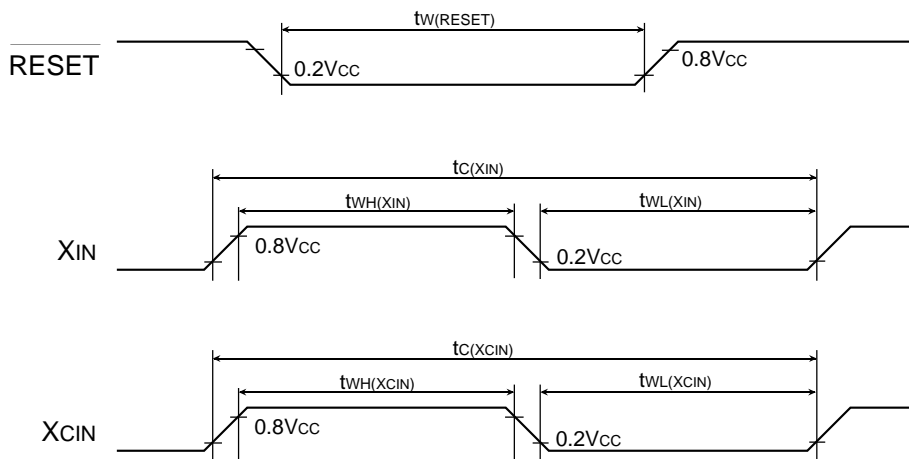
**Fig. 3.1.2 Circuit for measuring output switching characteristics (2)**

● Timing diagram

[Interrupt]



[Input]



[Timer]

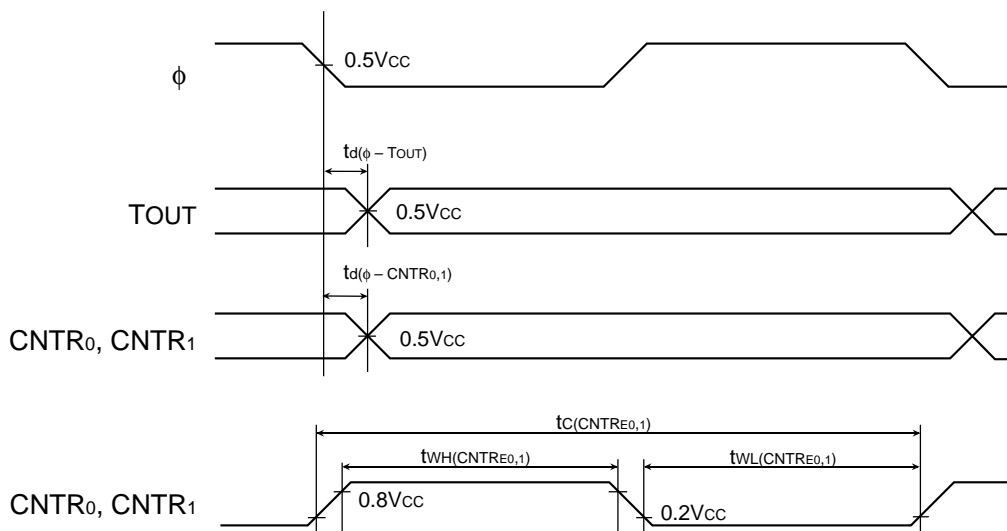


Fig. 3.1.3 Timing diagram (1)

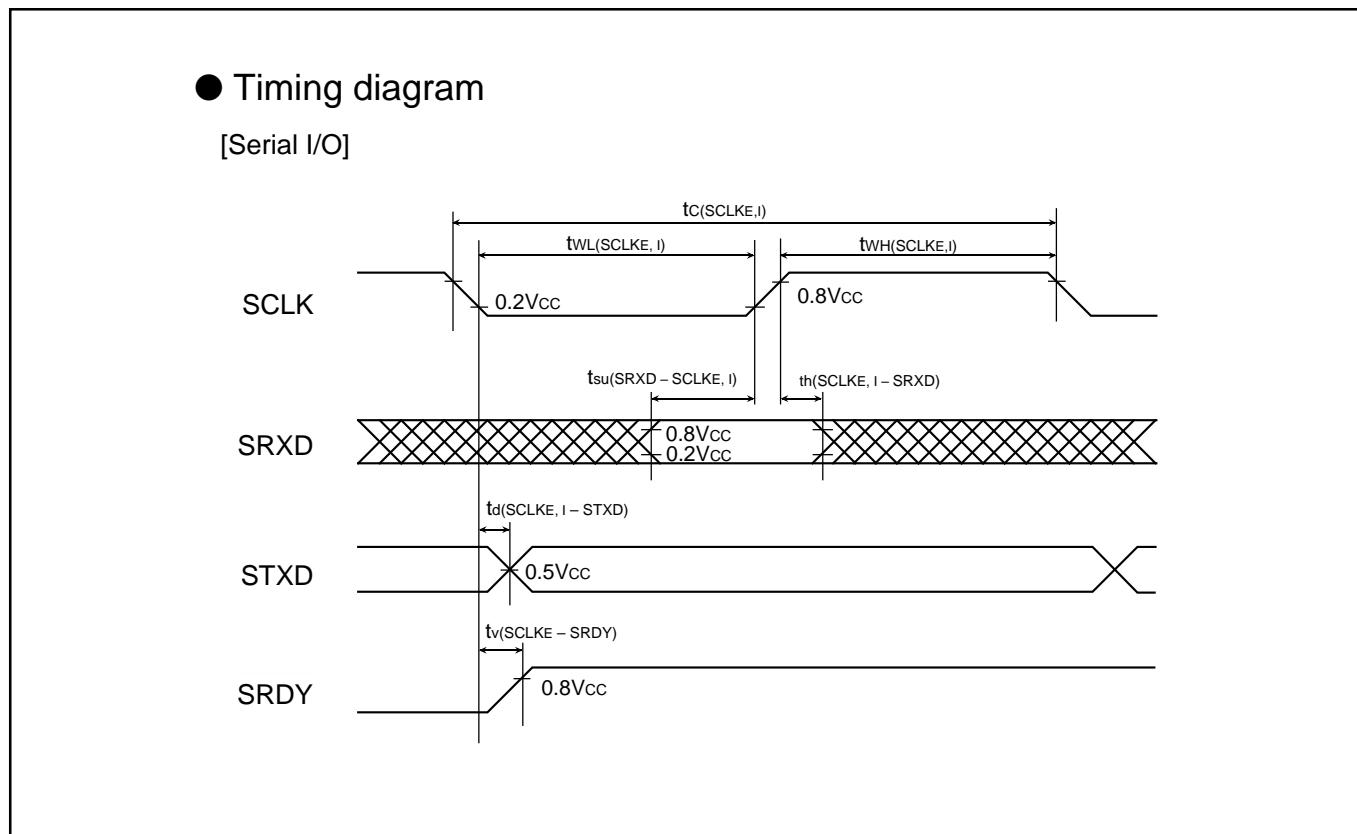


Fig. 3.1.4 Timing diagram (2)

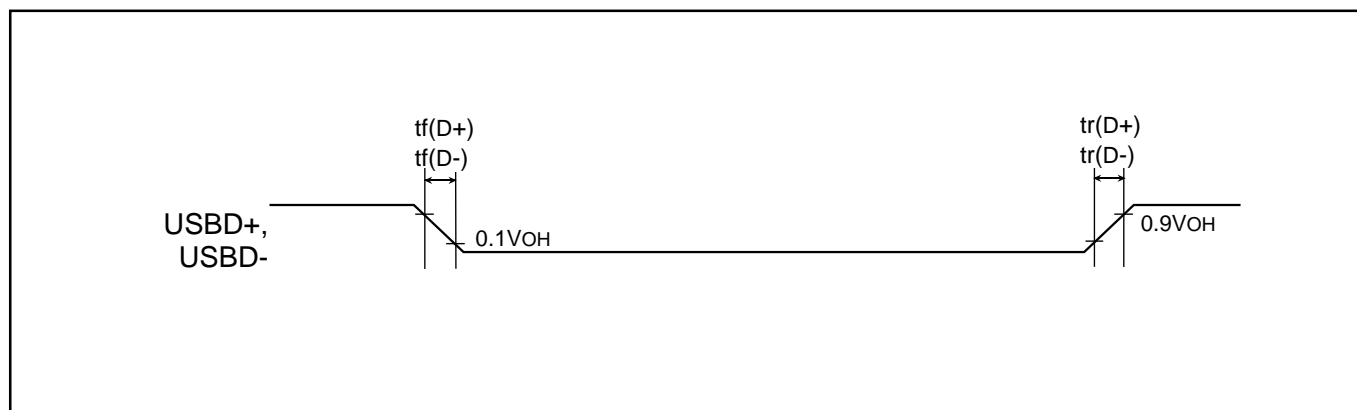
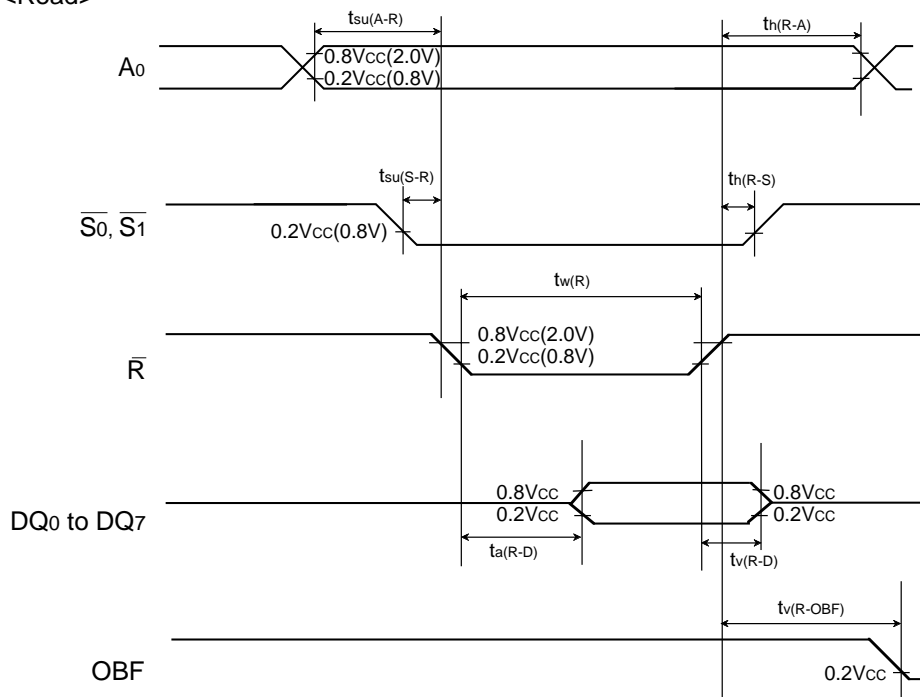


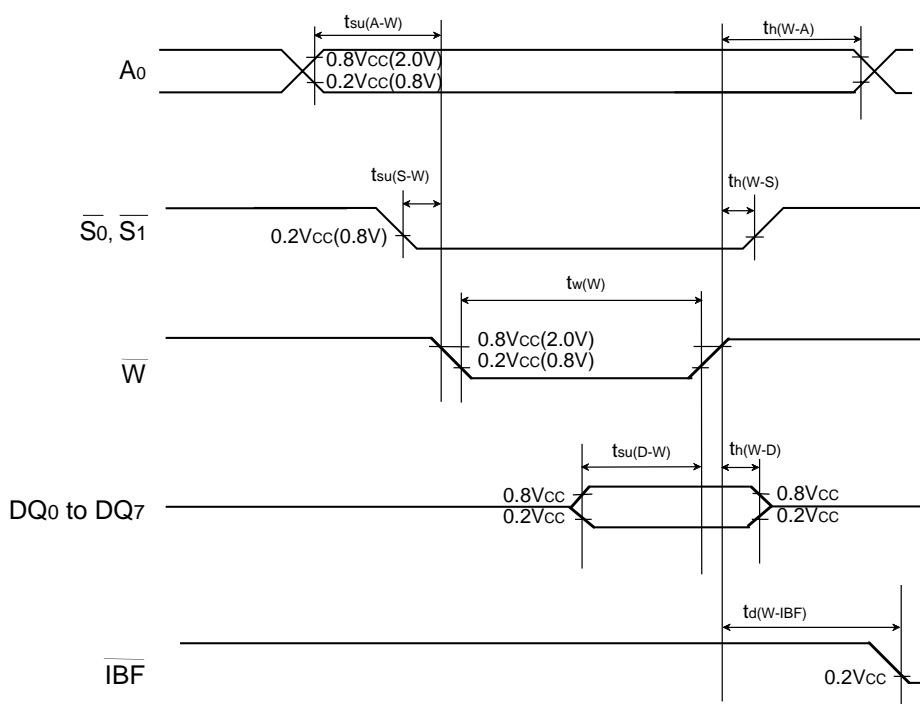
Fig. 3.1.5 Timing diagram (3)

● Timing diagram

[Master CPU bus interface: R/W separate mode]  
 <Read>



<Write>

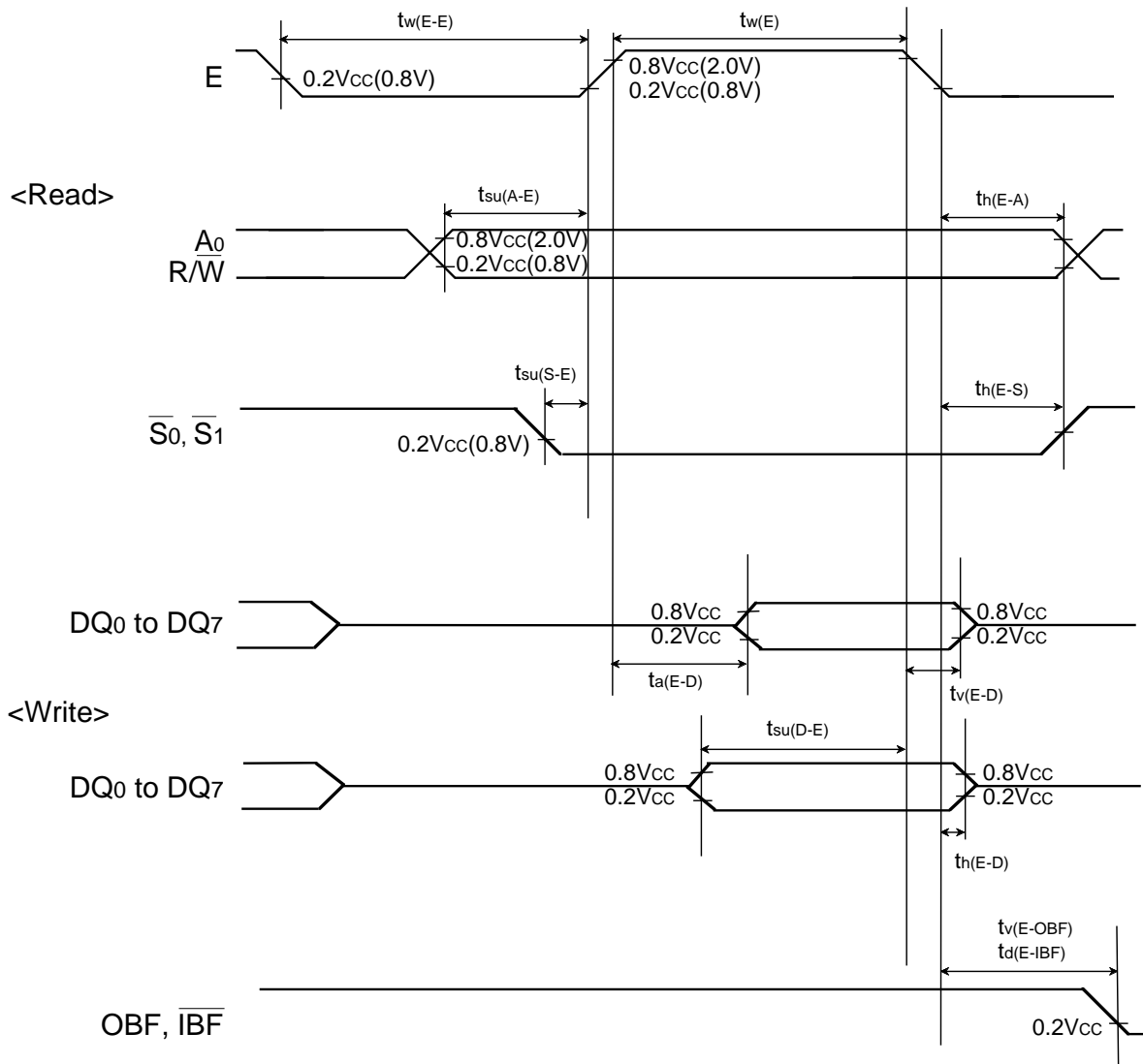


**Note:** This timing applies in the case of the master bus input level select bit (PTC7) = "1" (TTL level input)

Fig. 3.1.6 Timing diagram (4)

● Timing diagram

[Master CPU bus interface: R/W mode]



**Note:** This timing applies in the case of the master bus input level select bit (PTC7) = "1" (TTL level input)

Fig. 3.1.7 Timing diagram (5)

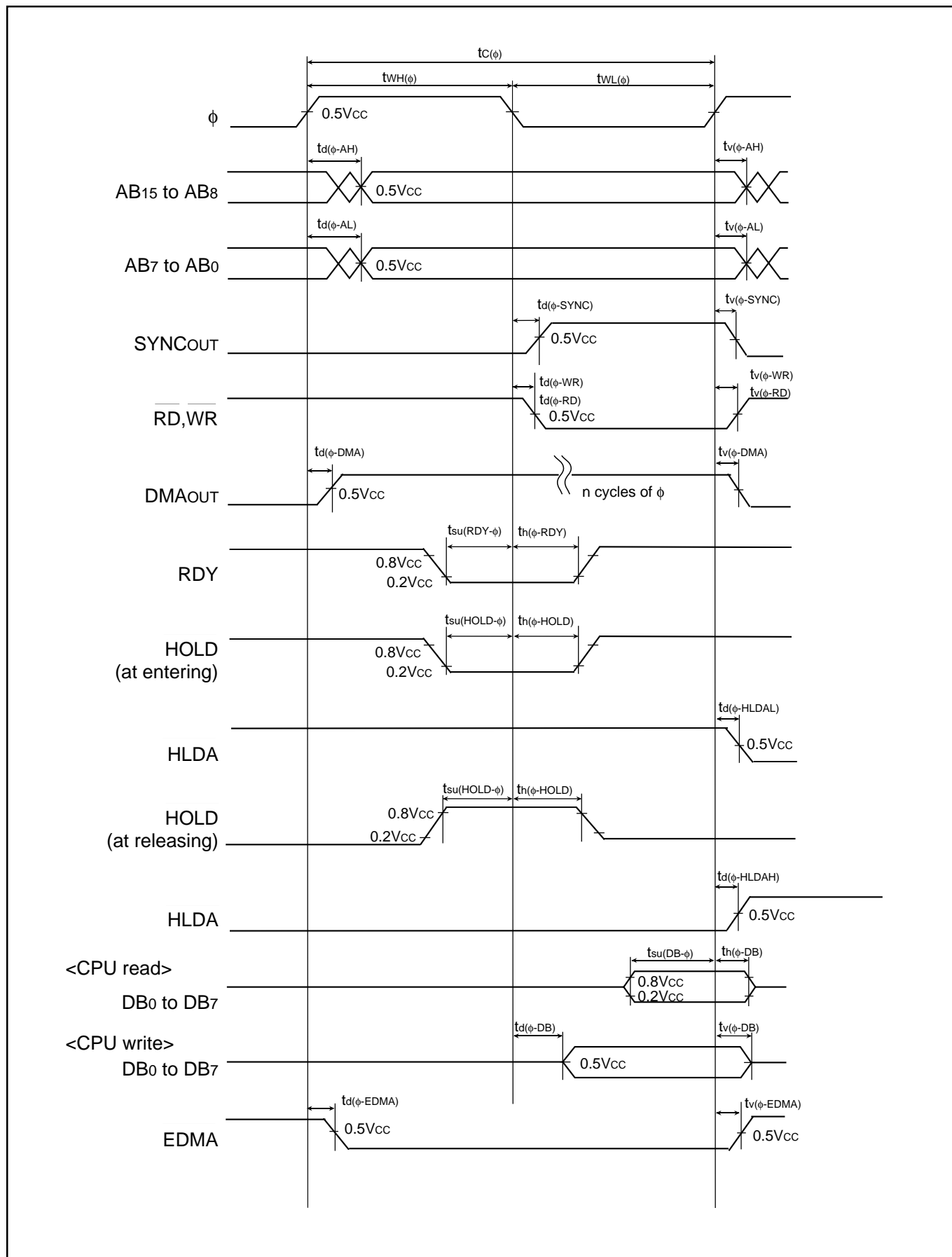


Fig. 3.1.8 Timing diagram (6); Memory expansion and microprocessor modes

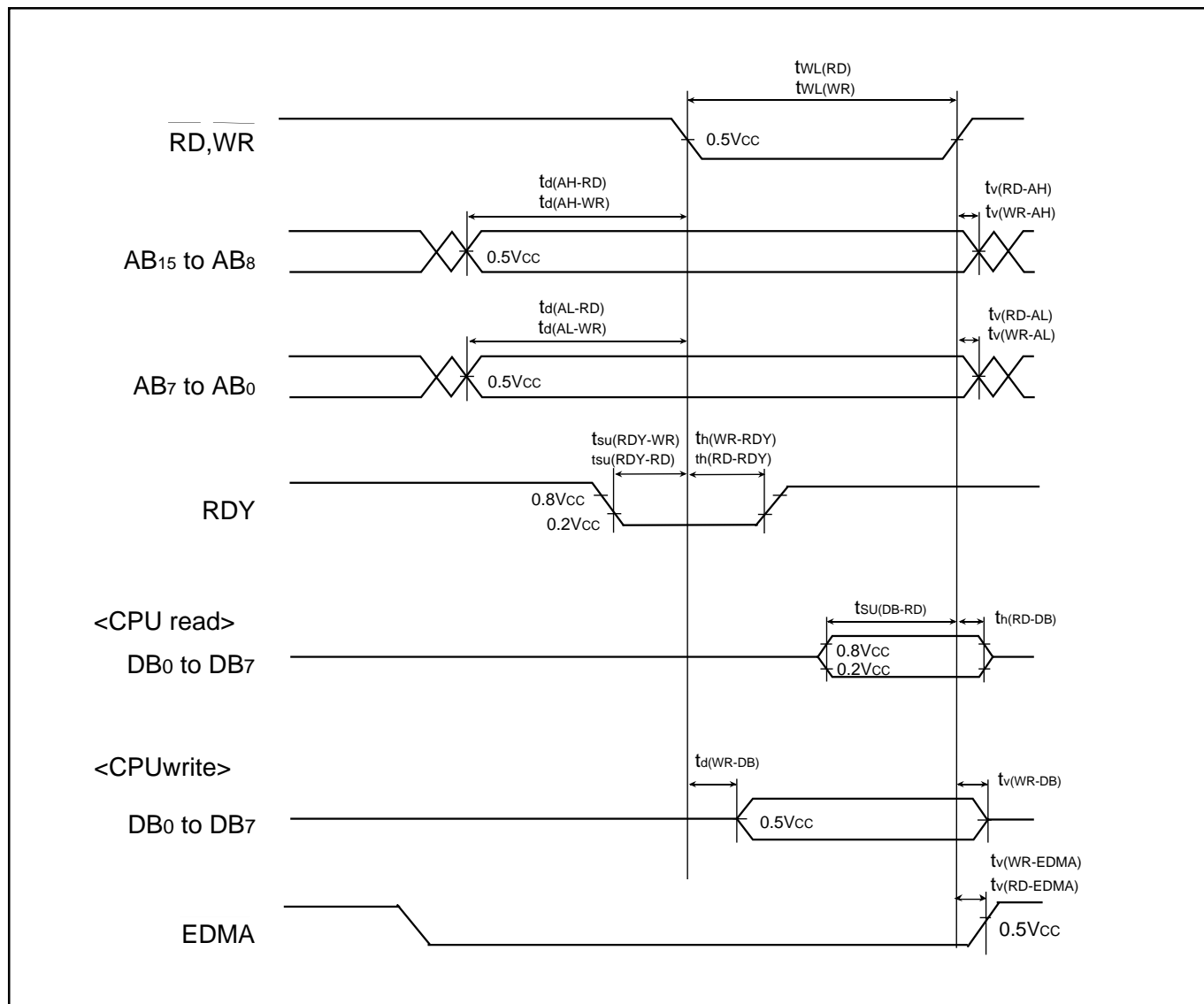


Fig. 3.1.9 Timing diagram (7); Memory expansion and microprocessor modes

## 3.2 Standard characteristics

Standard characteristics described below are just examples of the 7641 Group's characteristics and are not guaranteed. For rated values, refer to "3.1 Electrical characteristics".

### 3.2.1 Power source current standard characteristics

Figure 3.2.1 shows power source current standard characteristics.

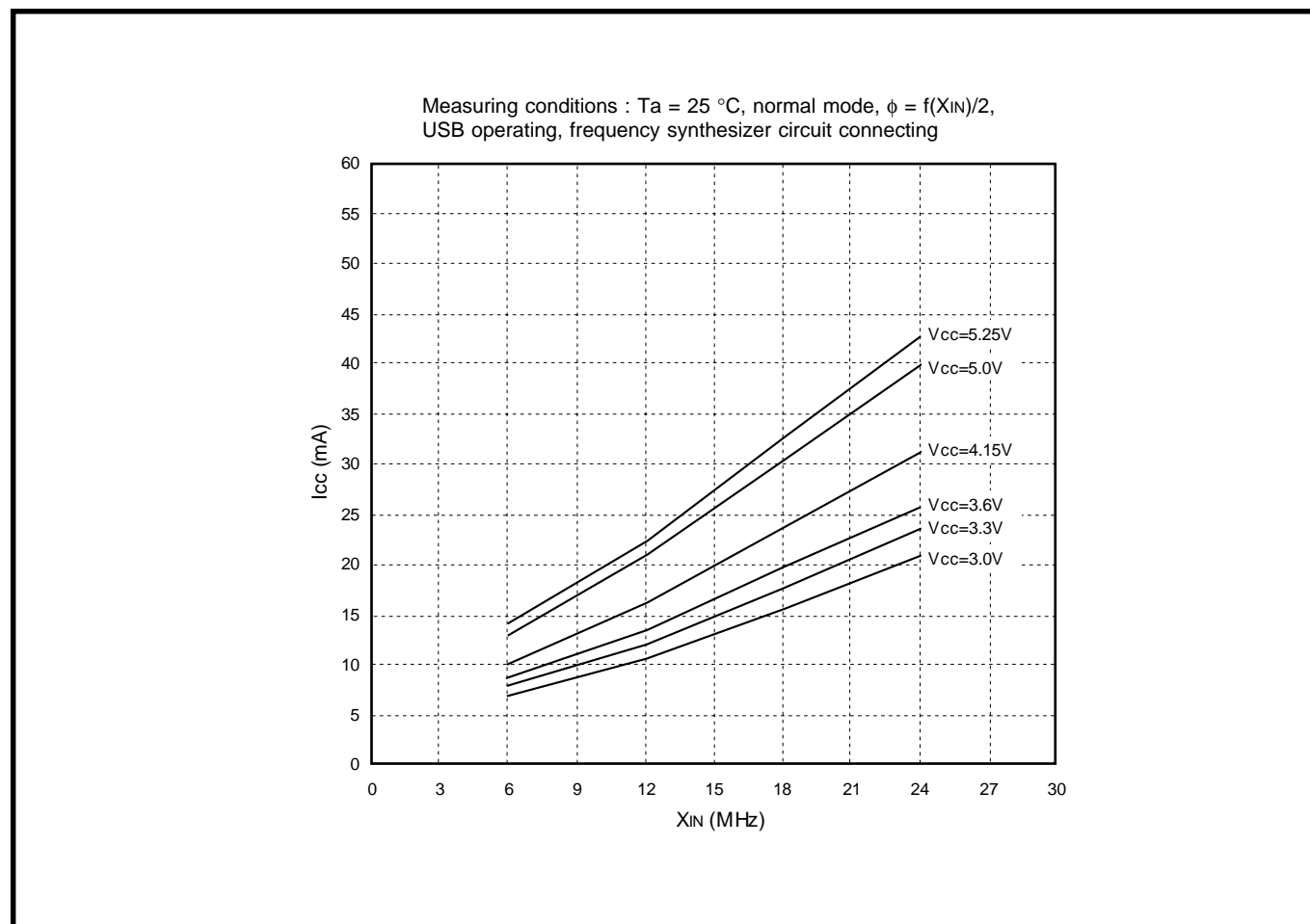
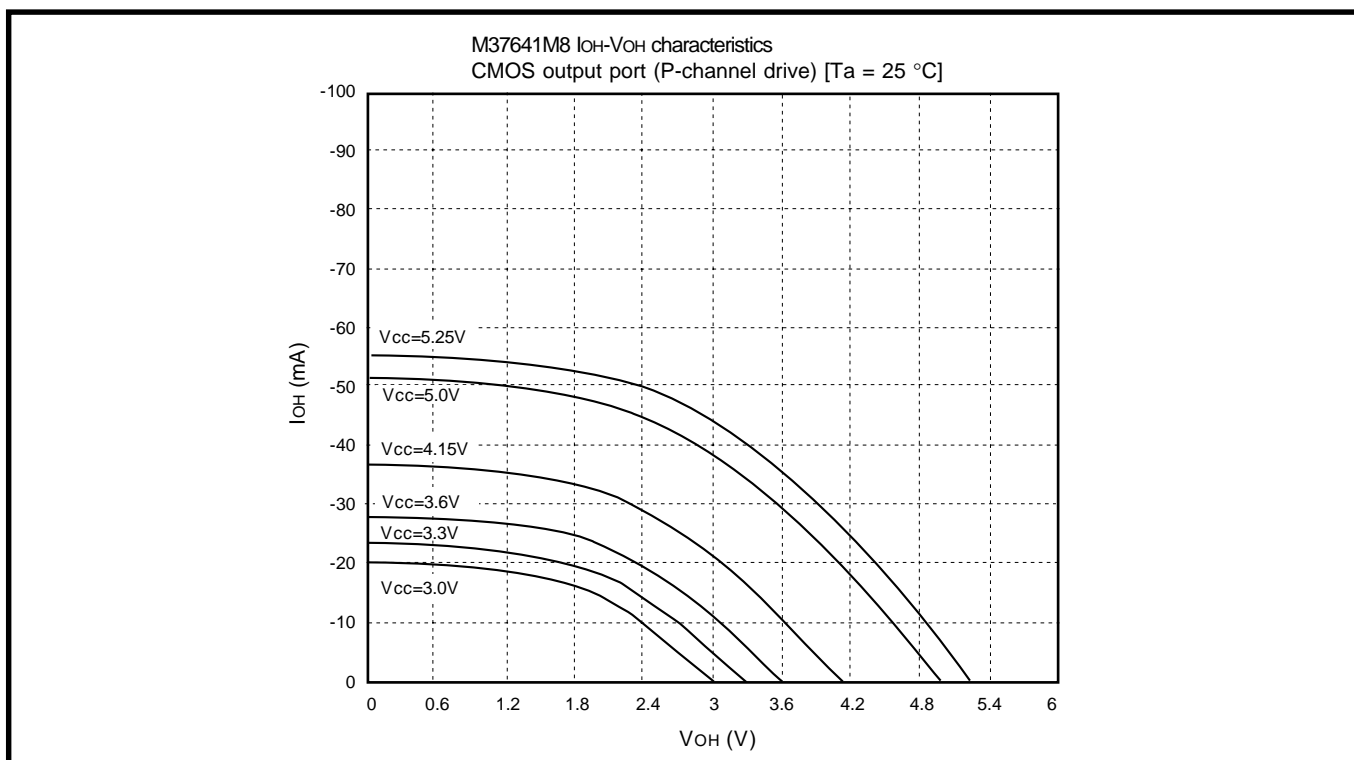


Fig. 3.2.1 Power source current standard characteristics ( $T_a = 25\text{ }^\circ\text{C}$ )

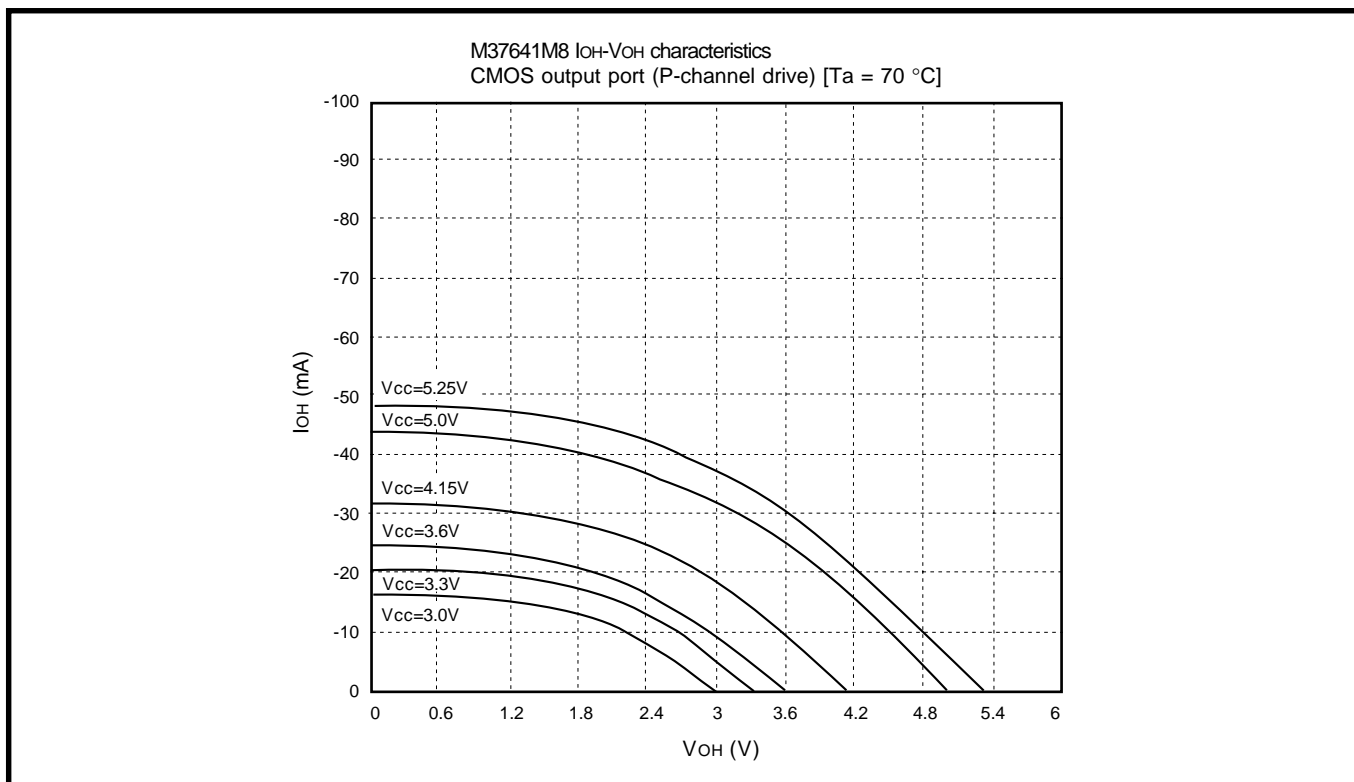


**3.2.2 Port standard characteristics**

Figure 3.2.2 to Figure 3.2.7 show port standard characteristics.



**Fig. 3.2.2 CMOS output port P-channel side characteristics (Ta = 25 °C)**



**Fig. 3.2.3 CMOS output port P-channel side characteristics (Ta = 70 °C)**

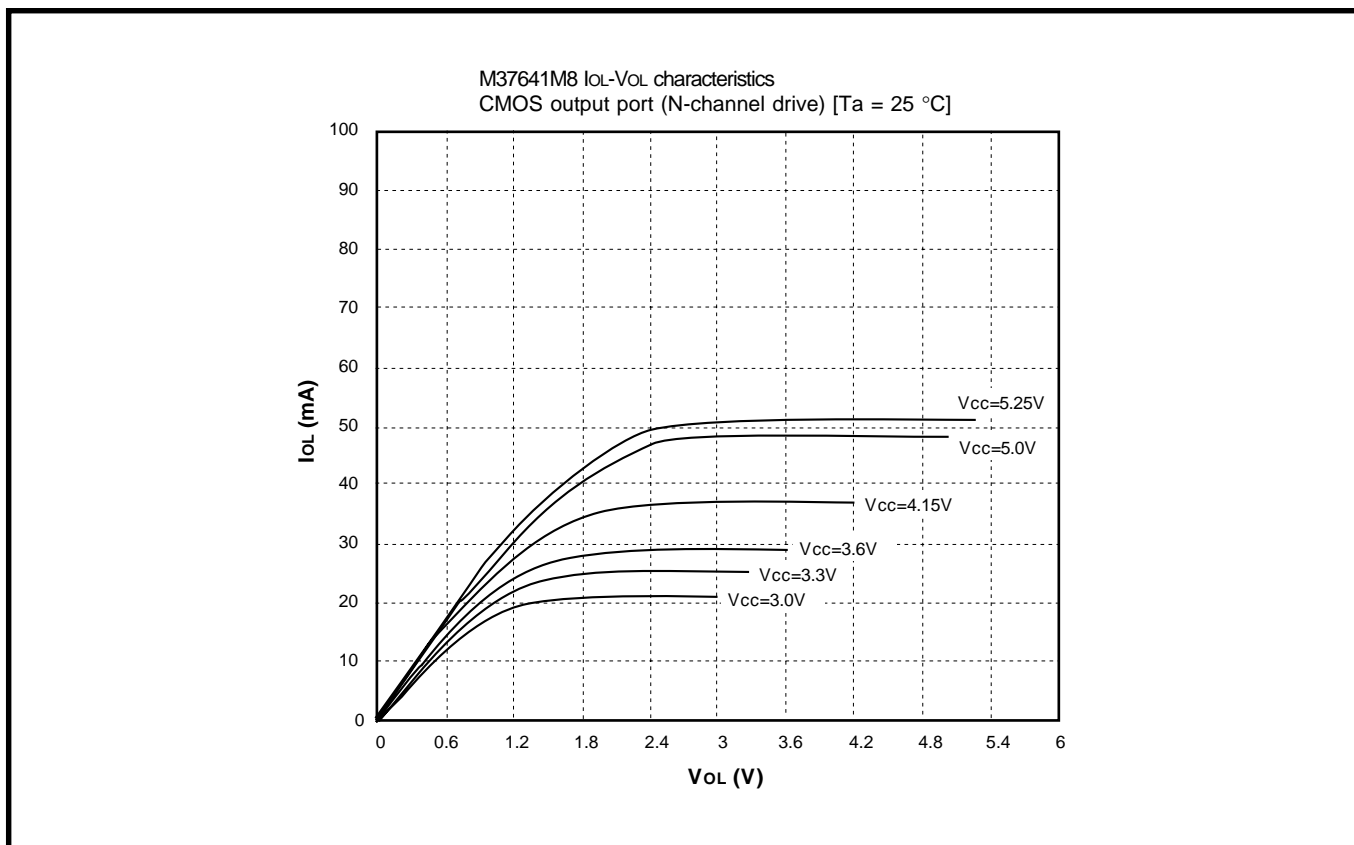


Fig. 3.2.4 CMOS output port N-channel side characteristics (Ta = 25 °C)

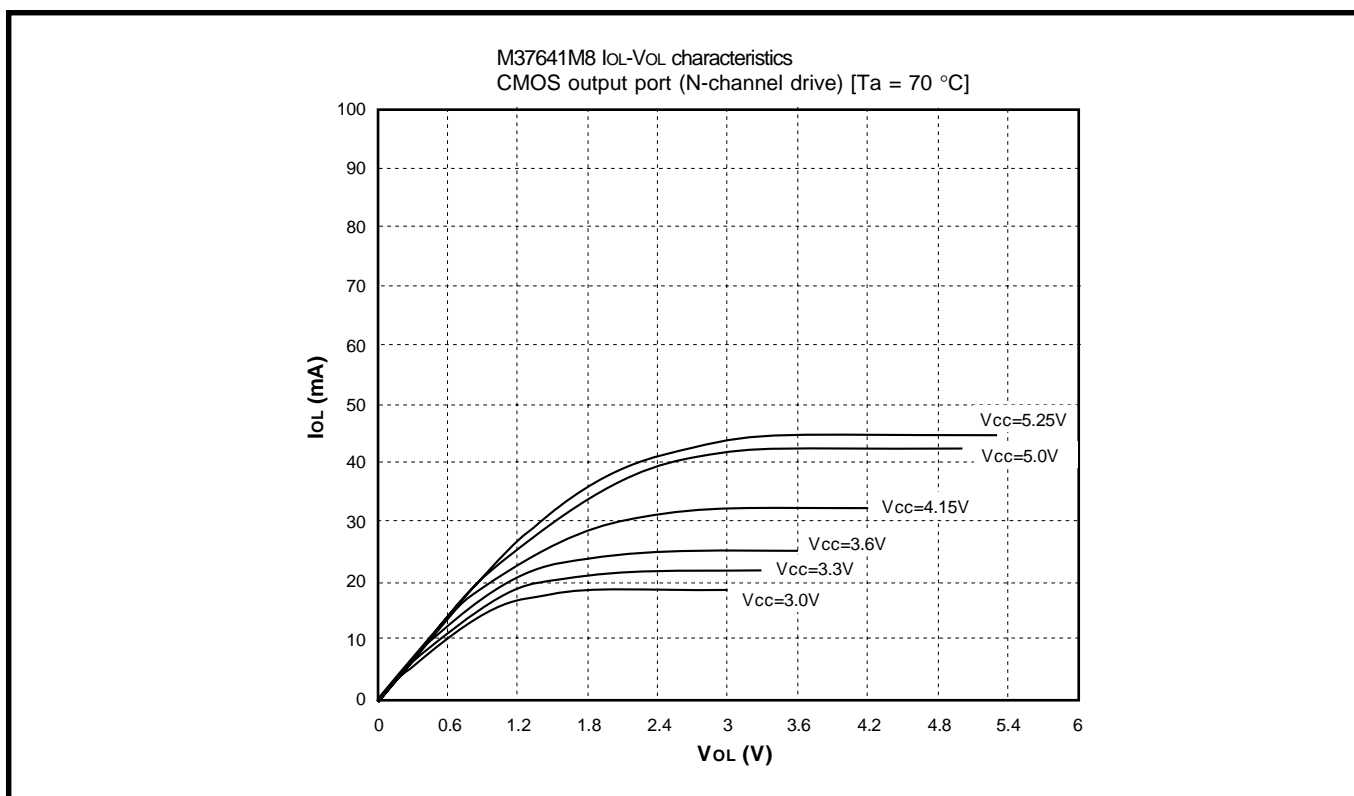


Fig. 3.2.5 CMOS output port N-channel side characteristics (Ta = 70 °C)

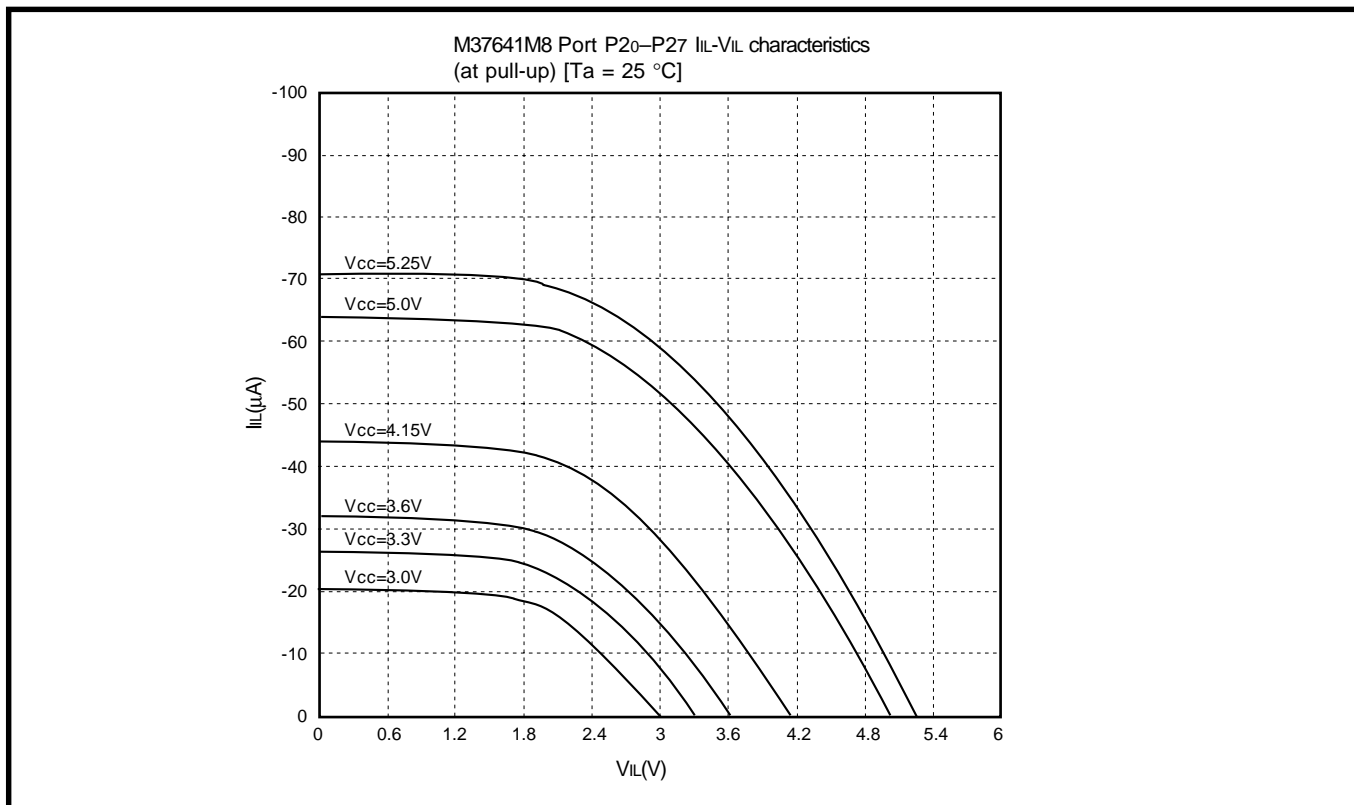


Fig. 3.2.6 Port P20-P27 at pull-up characteristics (Ta = 25 °C)

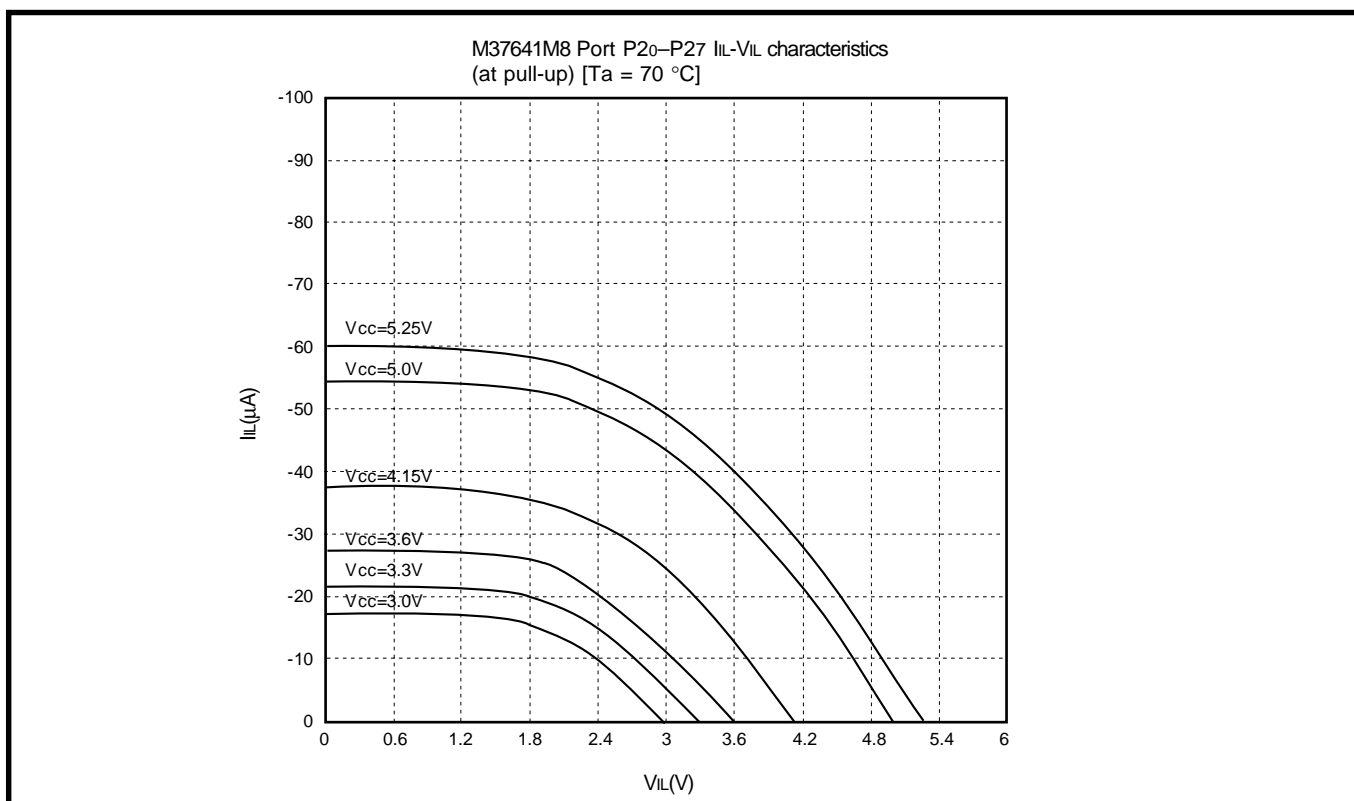


Fig. 3.2.7 Port P20-P27 at pull-up characteristics (Ta = 70 °C)

## 3.3 Notes on use

### 3.3.1 Notes on interrupts

#### (1) When setting external interrupt active edge

When setting the external interrupt active edge (INT<sub>0</sub>, INT<sub>1</sub>, CNTR<sub>0</sub>, CNTR<sub>1</sub>), the interrupt request bit may be set to "1". When not requiring the interrupt occurrence synchronized with these setting, take the following sequence.

- Interrupt polarity select register (address 0011<sub>16</sub>)
- Timer X mode register (address 0027<sub>16</sub>)
- Timer Y mode register (address 0028<sub>16</sub>)

Set the above listed registers or bits as the following sequence.

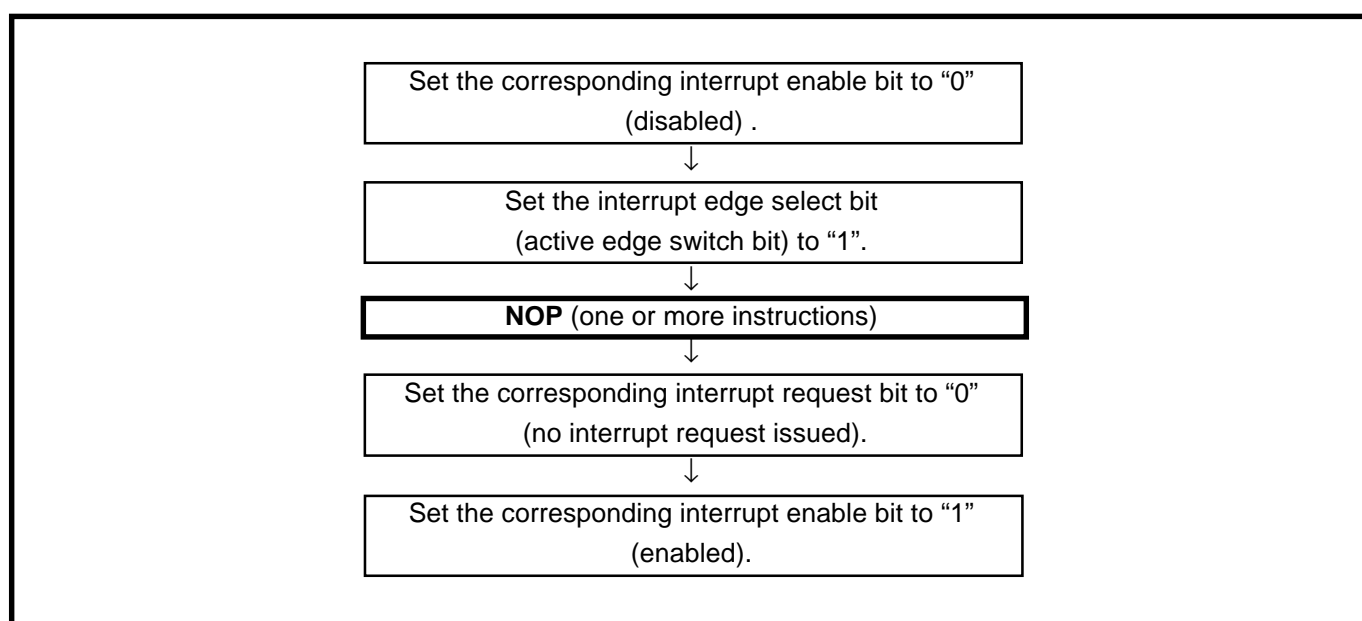


Fig. 3.3.1 Sequence of setting external interrupt active edge

### 3.3.2 Notes on serial I/O

#### (1) Clock

When the external clock is selected as the transfer clock, its transfer clock needs to be controlled by the external source because the serial I/O shift register will keep being shifted while transfer clock is input even after transfer completion.

#### (2) Reception

When the external clock is selected as the transfer clock for reception, the receiving operation will start owing to the shift clock input even if write operation to the serial I/O shift register (SIOSHT) is not performed. The serial I/O interrupt request also occurs at completion of receiving. However, we recommend to write dummy data in the serial I/O shift register. Because this will cause followings and improve transfer reliability.

- Write to SIOSHT puts the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  pin to "L". This enables shift clock output of an external device.
- Write to SIOSHT clears the internal serial I/O counter.

**Note:** Do not read the serial I/O shift register which is shifting. Because this will cause incorrect-data read.

#### (3) STXD output

- When the internal clock is selected as the transfer clock, the STXD pin goes a high-impedance state after transfer completion.
- When the external clock is selected as the transfer clock, the STXD pin does not go a high-impedance state after transfer completion.

#### (4) SPI compatible mode

- When using the SPI compatible mode, set the  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  select bit to "1" ( $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  signal output).
- When the external clock is selected in SPI compatible mode, the SRXD pin functions as a data output pin and the STXD pin functions as a data input pin.
- Do not write to the serial I/O shift register (SIOSHT) during a transfer as slave when in SPI compatible mode.
- Master operation of SPI compatible mode requires the timings:
  - From write operation to the SIOSHT to  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  pin put to "L"  
Requires 2 cycles of internal clock  $\phi$  + 2 cycles of serial I/O synchronous clock + 35 ns
  - From  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  pin put to "L" to SCLK switch  
Requires 35 ns
  - From the last pulse of SCLK to  $\overline{\text{SRDY}}$  pin put to "H"  
Requires 35 ns.

### 3.3.3 Notes on UART

#### (1) Receive

- When any one of errors occurs, the summing error flag is set to “1” and the UARTx summing error interrupt request bit is also set to “1”. If a receive error occurs, the reception does not set the UARTx receive buffer full interrupt request bit to “1”.
- If the receive enable bit (REN) is set to “0” (disabled) while a data is being received, the receiving operation will stop after the data has been received.
- Setting the receive initialization bit (RIN) to “1” resets the UARTx RTS control register (UxRTS) to “80<sub>16</sub>”. After setting the RIN bit to “1”, set this UxRTS.

#### (2) Transmit

- Once the transmission starts, it continues until the last bit has been transmitted even though clearing the transmit enable bit (TEN) to “0” (disabled) or inputting “H” to the  $\overline{\text{CTSx}}$  pin. After completion of the current transmission, the transmission is disabled.
- The transmit complete flag (TCM) is changed from “1” to “0” later than 0.5 to 1.5 clocks of the shift clock. Accordingly, take it in consideration to transmit data confirming the TCM flag after the data is written into the transmit buffer register.

#### (3) Register settings

- If updating a value of UARTx baud rate generator while the data is being transmitted or received, be sure to disable the transmission and reception before updating. If the former data remains in the UARTx transmit buffer registers 1 and 2 at retransmission, an undefined data might be output.
- The all error flags PER, FER, OER and SER are cleared to “0” when the UARTx status register is read, at the hardware reset or initialization by setting the Transmit Initialization Bit. These flags are also cleared to “0” by execution of bit test instructions such as **BBC** and **BCS**.
- The transmit buffer empty flag (TBE) is set to “0” when the low-order byte of transmitted data is written into the UARTx (x = 1, 2) transmit buffer register 1. When using 9-bit character length, set the data into the UARTx transmit buffer register 2 (high-order byte) first before the UARTx transmit buffer register 1 (low-order byte).
- The receive buffer full flag (RBF) is set to “0” when the contents of UARTx receive buffer register 1 is read out. When using 9-bit character length, read the data from the UARTx receive buffer register 2 (high-order byte) first before the UARTx receive buffer register 1 (low-order byte).
- If a character bit length is 7 bits, bit 7 of the UARTx transmit/receive buffer register 1 and bits 0 to 7 of the UARTx transmit/receive buffer register 2 are ignored at transmitting; they are invalid at receiving.  
If a character bit length is 8 bits, bits 0 to 7 of the UARTx transmit/receive buffer register 2 are ignored at transmitting; they are invalid at receiving.  
If a character bit length is 9 bits, bits 1 to 7 of the UARTx transmit/receive buffer register 2 are ignored at transmitting; they are “0” at receiving.
- The reset cannot affect the contents of baud rate generator.

#### (4) UART address mode

- When the MSB of the incoming data is “0” in the UART address mode, the receive buffer full flag (RBF) is set to “1”, but the receive buffer full interrupt request bit is not set to “1”.
- An overrun error cannot be detected after the first data has been received in UART address mode.
- The UART address mode can be used in either an 8-bit or 9-bit character length. 7-bit character length cannot be used.

**(5) Receive error flag**

- The all error flags PER, FER, OER and SER are cleared to "0" when the UARTx status register is read, at the hardware reset or initialization by setting the Transmit Initialization Bit. Accordingly, note that these flags are also cleared to "0" by execution of bit test instructions such as BBC and BBS, not only LDA.

**(6)  $\overline{\text{CTS}}$  function**

- When the  $\overline{\text{CTS}}$  function is enabled, the transmitted data is not transferred to the transmit shift register until "L" is input to the  $\overline{\text{CTSx}}$  pin (P8<sub>6</sub>/ $\overline{\text{CTS}}_1$ , P8<sub>2</sub>/ $\overline{\text{CTS}}_2$ /SRXD). As the result, do not set the following data to the transmit buffer register.

**(7)  $\overline{\text{RTS}}$  function**

- If the start bit is detected in the term of "H" assertion of  $\overline{\text{RTS}}$ , its assertion count is suspended and the  $\overline{\text{RTSx}}$  pin remains "H" output. After receiving the last stop bit, the count is resumed.
- Setting the receive initialization bit (RIN) to "1" resets the UARTx RTS control register (UxRTS) to "80<sub>16</sub>". After setting the RIN bit to "1", set this UxRTS.

**(8) Interrupt**

- When setting the transmit initialization bit (TIN) to "1", both the transmit buffer empty flag (TBE) and the transmit complete flag (TCM) are set to "1", so that the transmit interrupt request occurs independent of its interrupt source. After setting the transmit initialization bit (TIN) to "1", clear the transmit interrupt request bit to "0" before setting the transmit enable bit (TEN) to "1".
- The transmit interrupt request bit is set and the interrupt request is generated by setting the transmit enable bit (TIN) to "1" even when selecting timing that either of the following flags is set to "1" as timing where the transmission interrupt is generated:
  - (1) Transmit buffer empty flag is set to "1"
  - (2) Transmit complete flag is set to "1".

Therefore, when the transmit interrupt is used, set the transmit interrupt enable bit to transmit enabled as the following sequence:

- (1) Transmit enable bit is set to "1"
- (2) Transmit interrupt request bit is set to "0"
- (3) Transmit interrupt enable bit is set to "1".

### 3.3.4 Notes on DMAC

#### (1) Transfer time

- One-byte data transfer requires 2 cycles of  $\phi$  (read and write cycles).
- To perform DMAC transfer due to the different transfer requests on the same DMAC channel or DMAC transfer between both DMAC channels, 1 cycle of  $\phi$  or more is needed before transfer is started.

#### (2) Priority

- The DMAC places a higher priority on channel-0 transfer requests than on channel-1 transfer requests.

If a channel-0 transfer request occurs during a channel-1 burst transfer operation, the DMAC completes the next transfer source and destination read/write operation first, and then stops the channel-1 transfer operation.

The channel-1 transfer operation which has been suspended is automatically resumed from the point where it was suspended so that channel-1 transfer can complete its one-burst transfer unit. This will be performed even if another channel-0 transfer request occurs.

- The suspended transfer due to the interrupt can also be resumed during its interrupt process routine by writing "1" to the DMAC channel x enable bit (DxCEN).

#### (3) Related registers

- A read/write must be performed to the source registers, transfer destination registers and transfer count registers as follows:

Read from each higher byte first, then the lower byte

Write to each lower byte first, then the higher byte.

Note that if the lower byte is read out first, the values are the higher byte's.

- Do not access the DMAC-related registers by using a DMAC transfer. The destination address data and the source address data will collide in the DMAC internal bus.
- When setting the DMAC channel x enable bit (bit 7 of address 41<sub>16</sub>) to "1", be sure simultaneously to set the DMAC channel x transfer initiation source capture register reset bit (bit 6 of address 41<sub>16</sub>) to "1". If this is not performed, an incorrect data will be transferred at the same time when the DMAC is enabled.

#### (4) USB transfer

One signal among USB endpoint signals 1 to 4 can be selected as the hardware transfer request source. This can realize that transfer between the USB FIFO and the master CPU bus interface input/output buffer is performed effectively. This transfer function is only valid in the cycle steal transfer mode.

#### (5) DMA<sub>OUT</sub> pin

In the memory expansion mode and microprocessor mode, the DMA<sub>OUT</sub> pin (P3<sub>3</sub>/DMA<sub>OUT</sub>) outputs "H" during a DMA transfer.



### 3.3.5 Notes on USB

#### (1) USB reception

- When reading the USB endpoint  $x$  ( $x = 0$  to  $4$ ) OUT write count registers, the lower byte must be read first, and then the higher byte.
- When the OUT FIFO contains 2-data packets in the endpoints 1 to 4 used, one-data packet will still remain in the OUT FIFO even after the data of the OUT max. packet size has been read. In this case the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag is not cleared even if it is set to "0". (The flag returns from "0" to "1" 83 ns later ( $V_{CC} = 5$  V,  $f(X_{IN}) = 24$  MHz) than the clearing.)
- Read one packet data from the OUT FIFO before clearing the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag. If the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag is cleared while one-data packet is being read, the internal read pointer cannot operate normally.

#### (2) USB transmission

- The IN FIFO status can be checked by monitoring the IN\_PKT\_RDY bit and the TX\_NOT\_EPT flag.
- When NULL packet transmission is required in the endpoints 1 to 4 used, perform it under the conditions of the IN\_PKT\_RDY bit set to "1" and no data in FIFO.

#### (3) External circuit

- Connect a capacitor between the Ext. Cap. pin and the Vss pin. The capacitor should have a 2.2  $\mu$ F capacitor (Tantalum capacitor) and a 0.1  $\mu$ F capacitor (ceramic capacitor) connected in parallel. Additionally, connect a 1.5 k $\Omega$  ( $\pm 5$  %) resistor between the Ext. Cap. pin and the D+ pin.
- The Full-Speed USB2.0 specification requires a driver -impedance 28 to 44  $\Omega$ . (Refer to Clause 7.1.1.1 Full-speed (12 Mb/s) Driver Characteristics in the USB specification.) In order to meet the USB specification impedance requirements, connect a resistor (27 to 33  $\Omega$  recommended) in series to the USB D+ pin and the USB D- pin.

In addition, in order to reduce the ringing and control the falling/rising timing of USB D+/D- and a crossover point, connect a capacitor between the USB D+/D- pins and the Vss pin if necessary. The values and structure of those peripheral elements depend on the impedance characteristics and the layout of the printed circuit board. Accordingly, evaluate your system and observe waveforms before actual use and decide use of elements and the values of resistors and capacitors.

Figure 3.3.2 shows the circuit example for the proper positions of the peripheral components.

- In  $V_{CC} = 3.3$  V operation, connect the Ext. Cap. pin directly to the Vcc pin in order to supply power to the USB transceiver. In addition, you will need to disable the DC-DC converter in this operation (set bit 4 of the USB control register to "0".) If you are using the bus powered supply in  $V_{CC} = 3.3$  V operation, the DC-DC converter must be placed outside the MCU.
- In  $V_{CC} = 5$  V operation, do not connect the external DC-DC converter to the Ext. Cap. pin. Use the built-in DC-DC converter by enabling the USB line driver.
- Make sure the USB D+/D- lines do not cross any other wires. Keep a large GND area to protect the USB lines. Also, make sure you use a USB specification compliant connector for the connection.
- All passive components must be located as close as possible to the LPF pin. Figure. 3.3.3 shows the passive components near LPF pin
- An insulation connector (Ferrite Beads) must be connected between AVss and Vss pins and between AVcc and Vcc pins. (See Figure 3.3.4.)

#### (4) USB Communication

- In applications requiring high-reliability, we recommend providing the system with protective measures such as USB function initialization by software or USB reset by the host to prevent USB communication from being terminated unexpectedly, for example due to external causes such as noise.

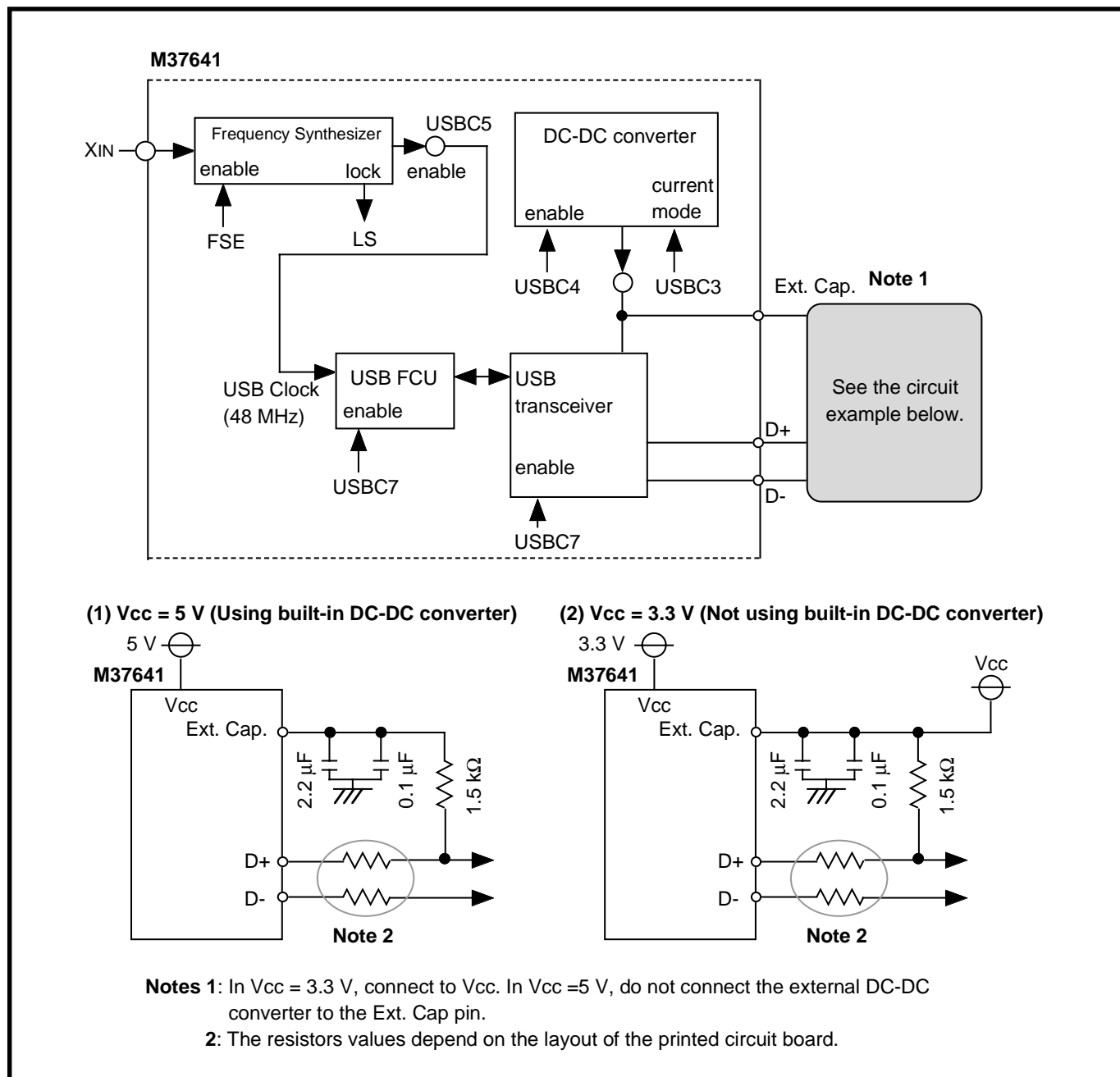


Fig. 3.3.2 Circuit example for the proper positions of the peripheral components

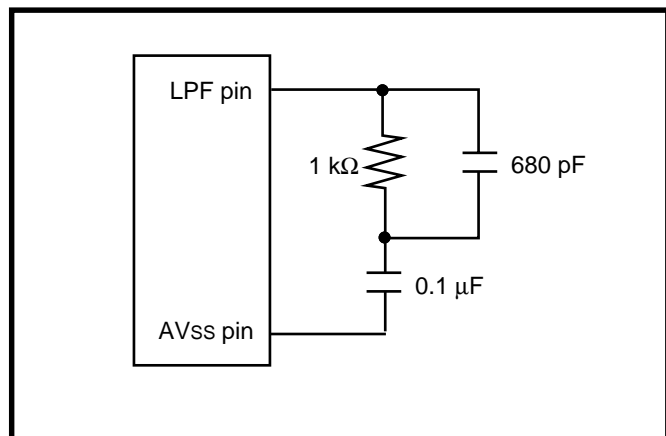


Fig. 3.3.3 Passive components near LPF pin

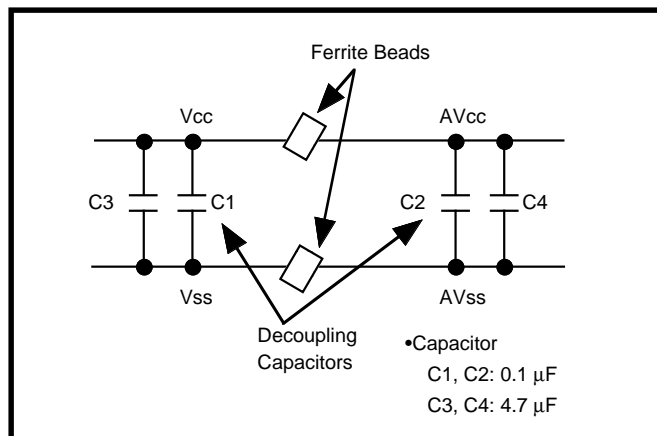


Fig. 3.3.4 Insulation connector connection

### (5) Registers and bits

- When using the endpoint 0, use the USB endpoint 0 IN max. packet size register for transmission and reception (IN packet size and OUT packet size).
- When not using the USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) IN max. packet size register and USB endpoint x OUT max. packet size register, set them to "0".
- To write to/read from the USB interrupt status registers 1 and 2, perform it for the USB interrupt status register 1 first and then the register 2.
- To read from the USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) OUT write count registers Low and High, the lower byte must be read first, then the higher byte.
- Make sure the index indicated by the USB endpoint index register is correct when accessing the registers: USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) IN control register, USB endpoint x OUT control register, USB endpoint x IN max. packet size register, USB endpoint x OUT max. packet size register, USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) OUT write count registers Low and High, USB endpoint FIFO mode register.
- When the USB reset interrupt status flag is kept at "1", all other flags in the USB internal registers (addresses 0050<sub>16</sub> to 005F<sub>16</sub>) will return to their reset status. However, the following registers are not affected by the USB reset: USB control register (address 0013<sub>16</sub>), Frequency synthesizer control register (address 006C<sub>16</sub>), Clock control register (address 001F<sub>16</sub>), and USB endpoint x FIFO register (addresses 0060<sub>16</sub> to 0064<sub>16</sub>).
- When not using the USB function, set the USB line driver supply enable bit of the USB control register (address 0013<sub>16</sub>) to "1" for power supply to the internal circuits (at V<sub>cc</sub> = 5 V).
- The IN\_PKT\_RDY Bit can be set by software even when using the AUTO\_SET function.
- Do not write to USB-related registers (addresses 0050<sub>16</sub> to 0064<sub>16</sub>) except the USBC, CCR and FSC until the USB clock is enabled.
- When the MCU is in the USB-suspend state, the USB enable bit is kept "1"; the USB block is enabled. To write to USB-related registers (addresses 0050<sub>16</sub> to 0064<sub>16</sub>) except the USBC, CCR and FSC after returning from the USB-suspend state; after enabling the USB clock, wait for 4 or more φ cycles and then set those registers.
- When using the MCU at V<sub>cc</sub> = 3.3V, set the USB line driver supply enable bit to "0" (line driver disable). Note that setting the USB line driver current control bit (USBC3) doesn't affect the USB operation.
- Setting the FLUSH bit to "1" eliminates the data in IN FIFO and OUT FIFO. If there are 2 or more data packets in them, the oldest data is eliminated. The FLUSH bit setting also affects the IN\_PKT\_RDY bit or the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag.
- If the FLUSH bit is set to "1" while transmission/reception is being performed, the data might be corrupted. When receiving, setting the FLUSH bit must be done while the OUT\_PKT\_RDY flag is "1". When transmitting in the isochronous transfer mode, use the AUTO\_FLUSH function.
- Use the AUTO\_FLUSH bit (bit 6 of address 58<sub>16</sub>) in the double buffer mode.

- Use the transfer instructions such as **LDA** and **STA** to set the registers: USB interrupt status registers 1, 2 (addresses 0052<sub>16</sub>, 0053<sub>16</sub>); USB endpoint 0 IN control register (address 0059<sub>16</sub>); USB endpoint x IN control register (address 0059<sub>16</sub>); USB endpoint x OUT control register (address 005A<sub>16</sub>). Do not use the read-modify-write instructions such as the **SEB** or the **CLB** instruction. When writing to bits shown by Table 32 using the transfer instruction such as **LDA** or **STA**, a value which never affect its bit state is required. Take the following sequence to change these bits contents:
  - (1) Store the register contents onto a variable or a data register.
  - (2) Change the target bit on the variable or the data register. Simultaneously mask the bit so that its bit state cannot be changed. (See to Table 3.3.1.)
  - (3) Write the value from the variable or the data register to the register using the transfer instruction such as **LDA** or **STA**.

- To use the AUTO\_SET function for an IN transfer when the AUTO\_SET bit is set to 1, set the FIFO to single buffer mode.

**Table 3.3.1 Bits of which state might be changed owing to software write**

Register name	Bit name	Value not affecting state (Note)
USB endpoint 0 IN control register	IN_PKT_RDY (b1)	"0"
	DATA_END (b3)	"0"
	FORCE_STALL (b4)	"1"
USB endpoint x (x = 1 to 4) IN control register	IN_PKT_RDY (b0)	"0"
	UNDER_RUN (b1)	"1"
USB endpoint x (x = 1 to 4) OUT control register	OUT_PKT_RDY (b0)	"1"
	OVER_RUN (b1)	"1"
	FORCE_STALL (b4)	"1"
	DATA_ERR (b5)	"1"

**Note:** Writing this value will not change the bit state, because this value cannot be written to the bit by software.

#### (6) Others

- When the USB SOF Port Select Bit is "1", the reference pulse of 83.3 ns ( $\phi = 12$  MHz) is output from the P7<sub>0</sub>/SOF pin and synchronized with the SOF packet.

### 3.3.6 Notes on frequency synthesizer

- Bits 6 and 5 of the frequency synthesizer control register (address 006C<sub>16</sub>) are initialized to (b6, b5) = "11" after reset release. Make sure to set bits 6 and 5 to "10" after the frequency synthesizer lock status bit goes to "1".
- Use the frequency synthesizer output clocks 2 ms to 5 ms later than setting the frequency synthesizer enable bit to "1" (enabled). After that do not change any register values because it might cause output clocks unstabilized temporarily.
- Make sure to connect a low-pulse filter to the LPF pin when using the frequency synthesizer.
- The frequency synthesizer divide register set value never affects f<sub>USB</sub> frequency.
- When using the f<sub>SYN</sub> as an internal system clock, set the frequency synthesizer divide register so that f<sub>SYN</sub> could be 24 MHz or less.
- When using the frequency synthesized clock function, we recommend using the fastest frequency possible of f(X<sub>IN</sub>) or f(X<sub>CIN</sub>) as an input clock for the PLL.
- Set the value of frequency synthesizer multiply register 2 (FSM2) so that the f<sub>PIN</sub> is 1 MHz or higher.

### 3.3.7 Notes on master CPU bus interface

Be sure to set port P6 to input mode by setting the port P6 direction register to "0" when the master CPU bus interface is enabled.

### 3.3.8 Notes on external devices connection

#### (1) Rewrite port P3 latch

In both memory expansion mode and microprocessor mode, ports P3<sub>1</sub> and P3<sub>2</sub> can be used as output ports. We recommend to use the **LDM** instruction or **STA** instruction to write to port P3 register (address 000E<sub>16</sub>). If using the Read-Modify-Write instruction (**SEB** instruction, **CLB** instruction) you will need to map a memory that the CPU can read from and write to.

#### [Reason]

The access to address 000E<sub>16</sub> is performed:

- Read from external memory
- Write to both port P3 latch and external memory.

It is because address 000E<sub>16</sub> is assigned on an external area in the memory expansion mode and microprocessor mode.

Accordingly, if a Read-Modify-Write instruction is executed to address 000E<sub>16</sub>, the external memory contents is read out and after its modification it will be written into both port P3 latch and an external memory. As a result, if an external memory is not allocated in address 000E<sub>16</sub> then, the MCU will read an undefined value and write its modified value into the port P3 latch. Therefore port P3 latch value will become undefined.

#### (2) overlap of internal and external memories

In the memory expansion mode, if the internal and external memory areas overlap, the internal memory becomes the valid memory for the overlapping area. When the CPU performs a read or a write operation on this overlapped area, the following things happen:

##### •Read

The CPU reads out the data in the internal memory instead of in the external memory. Note that, since the CPU will output a proper read signal, address signal, etc., the memory data at the respective address will appear on the external data bus.

##### •Write

The CPU writes data to both the internal and external memories.

**(3)  $\overline{RD}$ ,  $\overline{WR}$  pins**

In the memory expansion mode or microprocessor mode, a read-out control signal is output from the  $\overline{RD}$  pin (P3<sub>6</sub>), and a write-in control signal is output from the  $\overline{WR}$  pin (P3<sub>7</sub>). "L" level is output from the  $\overline{RD}$  pin at CPU read-out and from the  $\overline{WR}$  pin at CPU write-in. These signals function for internal access and external access.

**(4)  $\overline{HLDA}$  pin**

In spite of enabling the Hold function, the  $\overline{HLDA}$  pin does not function when IBF<sub>1</sub> output is enabled in the master CPU bus interface.

**(5) RDY function**

When using RDY function in usual connection, it does not operate at 12 MHz of  $\phi$  or faster.

**[Reason]**

$$td(\phi\text{-AH}) + tsu(\text{RDY-}\phi) = 31 \text{ ns (max.)} + 21 \text{ ns (min.)} = 52 \text{ ns.}$$

$$twh(\phi), twl(\phi) = 0.5 \times 83.33 - 5 = 36.665 \text{ ns}$$

Therefore, it becomes  $52 \text{ ns} > 36.665 \text{ ns}$ , so that the timing to enter RDY wait does not match.

However, if the timings can match owing to  $\overline{RDY}$  pin by "L" fixation and others, the RDY function can be used even at  $\phi = 12 \text{ MHz}$ . In this situation the slow memory wait always functions.

**(6) Wait function**

The Wait function is serviceable at accessing an external memory in the memory expansion mode and microprocessor mode. However, in these modes even if an external memory is assigned to addresses 0008<sub>16</sub> to 000F<sub>16</sub>, the Wait function cannot function to these areas.

**(7) Processor mode switch**

Note when the processor mode is switched by setting of the processor mode bits (b1, b0 of CPMA), that will immediately switch the accessible memory from external to internal or from internal to external. If this is done, the first cycle of the next instruction will be operated from the accidental memory.

To prevent this problem, follow the procedure below:

- (a) Duplicate the next instruction at the same address both in internal and external memories.
- (b) Switch from single-chip mode to memory expansion mode, jump to external memory, and then switch from memory expansion mode to microprocessor mode. (Because in general, the problem will not occur when switching the modes as long as the same memory is accessed after the switch.
- (c) Load a simple program in RAM that switches the modes, jump to RAM and execute the program, then jump to the location of the code to run after the processor mode has switched.

### 3.3.9 Notes on timer

#### (1) Read/Write for timer

- The timer division ratio is :  $1 / (n + 1)$   
( $n = "0"$  to  $"255"$  written into the timer)
- Read and write operation on 16-bit timer (Timers X and Y) must be performed for both high and low-order bytes.
- When reading the 16-bit timer (Timers X and Y), read the high-order byte first and then the low-order byte. When writing to the 16-bit timer, write the low-order byte first and then the high-order byte.
- Do not read the 16-bit timer during the write operation, or do not write to it during the read operation.
- When the value is loaded only in the latch, the value is loaded in the timer at the count pulse following the count where the timer reaches  $"00_{16}"$ .
- In the timers 1 to 3, switching of the count sources of timers 1 to 3 does not affect the values of reload latches. However, that may make count operation started. Therefore, write values again in the order of timers 1, 2 and then timer 3 after their count sources have been switched.
- In the timer mode (for timers X, Y, 1 to 3), event counter mode (for timers X, Y), pulse output mode (for timers X, Y, 1, 2), the timer current count value can be read out by reading the timer.
- In the pulse width measurement mode (for timer X), period measurement mode (for timer Y), pulse width HL continuously measurement mode (for timer Y), the measured timer value is stored into the internal temporary register. When reading the timer, the value of internal temporary register is read out. The contents of internal temporary register is updated after the next measurement.

#### (2) Pulse output

- When using the pulse output mode of timer X, set bit 3 of port P4 direction register to "1" (output mode).
- When using the  $T_{YOUT}$  output of timer Y, set bit 4 of port P4 direction register to "1" (output mode).
- When using the  $T_{OUT}$  output of timer 1 or timer 2, set bit 1 of port P5 direction register to "1" (output mode).
- The  $T_{OUT}$  output pin is shared with the  $X_{COUT}$  pin. Accordingly, when using  $f(X_{CIN})/2$  as the timer 1 count source (bit 2 of timer 123 mode register = "0"),  $X_{COUT}$  oscillation drive must be disabled (bit 5 of clock control register = "1") to input clocks from the  $X_{CIN}$  pin.
- The  $P5_1/X_{COUT}/T_{OUT}$  pin cannot function as an ordinary I/O port while  $X_{CIN}-X_{COUT}$  is oscillating. When  $X_{CIN}-X_{COUT}$  oscillation is stopped or  $X_{COUT}$  oscillation drive is disabled, this can be used as the  $T_{OUT}$  output pin of timer 1 or 2.

#### (3) Pulse input

- When using the timer X in the event counter or pulse width measurement mode, set bit 3 of port P4 direction register to "0" (input mode).
- When using the timer Y in the period measurement, event counter or pulse width HL continuously measurement mode, set bit 4 of port P4 direction register to "0" (input mode).

#### (4) Interrupt

In the timer Y's pulse width HL continuously measurement mode,  $CNTR_1$  interrupt request is generated at both rising and falling edges of  $CNTR_1$  pin input signal regardless of the setting of  $CNTR_1$  active edge switch bit of timer Y mode register.

#### (5) At STP instruction executed

When the STP instruction is executed or Reset occurs, the timer 1 is set to  $"FF_{16}"$  and the internal clock  $\phi$  divided by 8 is automatically selected as its count source. Additionally, the timer 2 is set to  $"01_{16}"$  and the timer 1's output is automatically selected as its count source. When the STP instruction is being executed, all bits except bit 4 of the timer 123 mode register (address  $0029_{16}$ ) are initialized to "0". It is not necessary to set  $T123M1$  (timer 1 count stop bit) to "0" before executing the STP



instruction. After returning from Stop mode, reset the timer 1 (address 0024<sub>16</sub>), timer 2 (address 0025<sub>16</sub>), and the timer 123 mode register (address 0029<sub>16</sub>).

### 3.3.10 Notes on Stop mode

- When the STP instruction is executed, bit 7 of the clock control register (address 001F<sub>16</sub>) goes to “0”. To return from stop mode, reset CCR7 to “1”.
- When using f<sub>SYN</sub> (set internal system clock select bit (CPMA6) to “1”) as the internal system clock, switch CPMA6 to “0” before executing the **STP** instruction. Reset CPMA6 after the system returns from Stop Mode and the frequency synthesizer has stabilized.  
CPMA6 does not need to be switched to “0” when using the **WIT** instruction.
- When the STP instruction is executed or Reset occurs, the timer 1 is set to “FF<sub>16</sub>” and the internal clock  $\phi$  divided by 8 is automatically selected as its count source. Additionally, the timer 2 is set to “01<sub>16</sub>” and the timer 1’s output is automatically selected as its count source. When the **STP** instruction is being executed, all bits except bit 4 of the timer 123 mode register (address 0029<sub>16</sub>) are initialized to “0”. It is not necessary to set T123M1 (timer 1 count stop bit) to “0” before executing the **STP** instruction. After returning from Stop mode, reset the timer 1 (address 0024<sub>16</sub>), timer 2 (address 0025<sub>16</sub>), and the timer 123 mode register (address 0029<sub>16</sub>).

### 3.3.11 Notes on reset

#### (1) Connecting capacitor

In case where the RESET signal rise time is long, connect a ceramic capacitor or others across the RESET pin and the Vss pin. Use a 1000 pF or more capacitor for high frequency use. When connecting the capacitor, note the following :

- Make the length of the wiring which is connected to a capacitor as short as possible.
- Be sure to verify the operation of application products on the user side.

#### ● Reason

If the several nanosecond or several ten nanosecond impulse noise enters the RESET pin, it may cause a microcomputer failure.

### 3.3.12 Notes on I/O port

#### (1) Notes in standby state

In standby state\*1 for low-power dissipation, do not make input levels of an I/O port “undefined”. Pull-up (connect the port to VCC) or pull-down (connect the port to Vss) these ports through a resistor.

When determining a resistance value, note the following points:

- External circuit
- Variation of output levels during the ordinary operation

When using built-in pull-up resistor, note on varied current values:

- When setting as an input port : Fix its input level
- When setting as an output port : Prevent current from flowing out to external

#### ● Reason

The potential which is input to the input buffer in a microcomputer is unstable in the state that input levels of an I/O port are “undefined”. This may cause power source current.

\*1 standby state: stop mode by executing **STP** instruction  
wait mode by executing **WIT** instruction



## (2) Modifying output data with bit managing instruction

When the port latch of an I/O port is modified with the bit managing instruction\*2, the value of the unspecified bit may be changed.

### ● Reason

The bit managing instructions are read-modify-write form instructions for reading and writing data by a byte unit. Accordingly, when these instructions are executed on a bit of the port latch of an I/O port, the following is executed to all bits of the port latch.

- As for bit which is set for input port:

The pin state is read in the CPU, and is written to this bit after bit managing.

- As for bit which is set for output port:

The bit value is read in the CPU, and is written to this bit after bit managing.

Note the following:

- Even when a port which is set as an output port is changed for an input port, its port latch holds the output data.
- As for a bit of which is set for an input port, its value may be changed even when not specified with a bit managing instruction in case where the pin state differs from its port latch contents.

\*2 Bit managing instructions: **SEB** and **CLB** instructions

## (3) Pull-up control

When using port P2, which includes a pull-up resistor, as an output port, its port pull-up control is invalidated, that is, pull-up cannot be enabled.

### ● Reason

Pull-up/pull-down control is valid only when each direction register is set to the input mode.

### 3.3.13 Notes on programming

#### (1) Processor status register

##### ① Initializing of processor status register

Flags which affect program execution must be initialized after a reset.

In particular, it is essential to initialize the T and D flags because they have an important effect on calculations.

### ● Reason

After a reset, the contents of the processor status register (PS) are undefined except for the I flag which is "1".

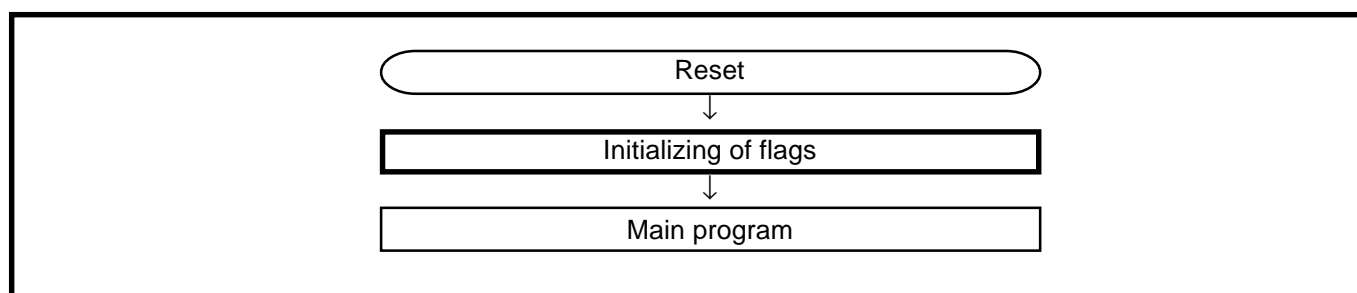


Fig. 3.3.5 Initialization of processor status register

## ② How to reference the processor status register

To reference the contents of the processor status register (PS), execute the **PHP** instruction once then read the contents of (S+1). If necessary, execute the **PLP** instruction to return the PS to its original status. A **NOP** instruction should be executed after every **PLP** instruction.

Be sure to execute the **SEI** instruction before the **PLP** instruction. If executing the **CLI** instruction, do it after the **NOP** instruction

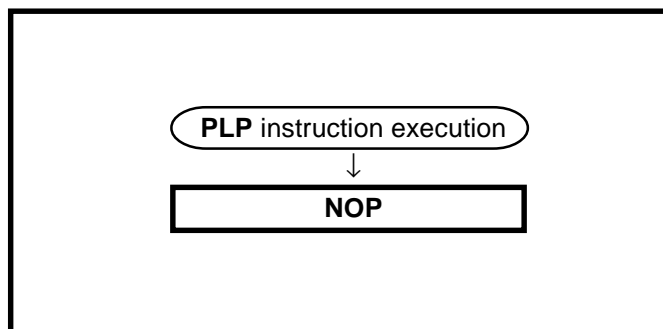


Fig. 3.3.6 Sequence of PLP instruction execution

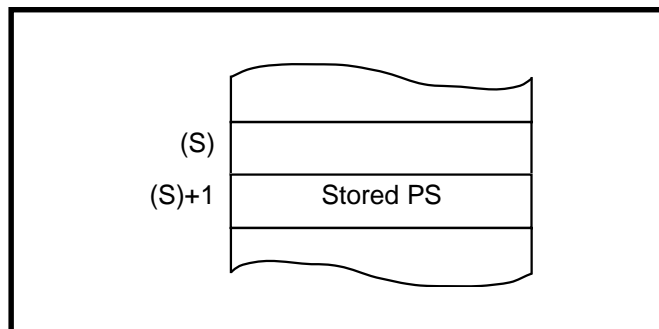


Fig. 3.3.7 Stack memory contents after PHP instruction execution

## (2) BRK Instruction

It can be detected that the **BRK** instruction interrupt event or the least priority interrupt event by referring the stored B flag state. Refer to the stored B flag state in the interrupt routine.

## (3) Decimal Calculations

When decimal mode is selected, the values of the V flags are invalid.

The carry flag (C) is set to "1" if a carry is generated as a result of the calculation, or is cleared to "0" if a borrow is generated. To determine whether a calculation has generated a carry, the C flag must be initialized to "0" before each calculation. To check for a borrow, the C flag must be initialized to "1" before each calculation.

## (4) Multiplication and Division Instructions

The index X mode (T) and the decimal mode (D) flags do not affect the MUL and DIV instruction.

## (5) Instruction Execution Time

The instruction execution time is obtained by multiplying the frequency of the internal clock  $\phi$  by the number of cycles needed to execute an instruction.

The number of cycles required to execute an instruction is shown in the list of machine instructions.

### 3.3.14 Termination of unused pins

#### (1) Terminate unused pins

① I/O ports :

- Set the I/O ports for the input mode and connect them to VCC or VSS through each resistor of 1 k $\Omega$  to 10 k $\Omega$ .  
Ports that permit the selecting of a built-in pull-up resistor can also use this resistor. Set the I/O ports for the output mode and open them at "L" or "H".
- When opening them in the output mode, the input mode of the initial status remains until the mode of the ports is switched over to the output mode by the program after reset. Thus, the potential at these pins is undefined and the power source current may increase in the input mode. With regard to an effects on the system, thoroughly perform system evaluation on the user side.
- Since the direction register setup may be changed because of a program runaway or noise, set direction registers by program periodically to increase the reliability of program.

#### (2) Termination remarks

① I/O ports :

Do not open in the input mode.

● Reason

- The power source current may increase depending on the first-stage circuit.
- An effect due to noise may be easily produced as compared with proper termination ② and shown on the above.

② I/O ports :

When setting for the input mode, do not connect to VCC or VSS directly.

● Reason

If the direction register setup changes for the output mode because of a program runaway or noise, a short circuit may occur between a port and VCC (or VSS).

③ I/O ports :

When setting for the input mode, do not connect multiple ports in a lump to VCC or VSS through a resistor.

● Reason

If the direction register setup changes for the output mode because of a program runaway or noise, a short circuit may occur between ports.

- At the termination of unused pins, perform wiring at the shortest possible distance (20 mm or less) from microcomputer pins.

### 3.3.15 Notes on CPU rewrite mode for flash memory version

The below notes applies when rewriting the flash memory in CPU rewrite mode.

#### (1) Operation speed

During CPU rewrite mode, set the internal clock  $\phi$  to 6 MHz or less using the X<sub>IN</sub> divider select bit (bit 7 of address 001F<sub>16</sub>).

#### (2) Instructions inhibited against use

The instructions which refer to the internal data of the flash memory cannot be used during CPU rewrite mode .

#### (3) Interrupts inhibited against use

The interrupts cannot be used during CPU rewrite mode because they refer to the internal data of the flash memory.

#### (4) Reset

Reset is always valid. When CNV<sub>SS</sub> is "H" at reset release, the program starts from the address stored in addresses FFFA<sub>16</sub> and FFFB<sub>16</sub> of the boot ROM area in order that CPU may start in boot mode.

### 3.4 Countermeasures against noise

Countermeasures against noise are described below. The following countermeasures are effective against noise in theory, however, it is necessary not only to take measures as follows but to evaluate before actual use.

#### 3.4.1 Shortest wiring length

The wiring on a printed circuit board can function as an antenna which feeds noise into the microcomputer. The shorter the total wiring length (by mm unit), the less the possibility of noise insertion into a microcomputer.

##### (1) Wiring for $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ pin

Make the length of wiring which is connected to the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin as short as possible. Especially, connect a capacitor across the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin and the  $V_{\text{SS}}$  pin with the shortest possible wiring (within 20mm).

##### ● Reason

The width of a pulse input into the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin is determined by the timing necessary conditions. If noise having a shorter pulse width than the standard is input to the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin, the reset is released before the internal state of the microcomputer is completely initialized. This may cause a program runaway.

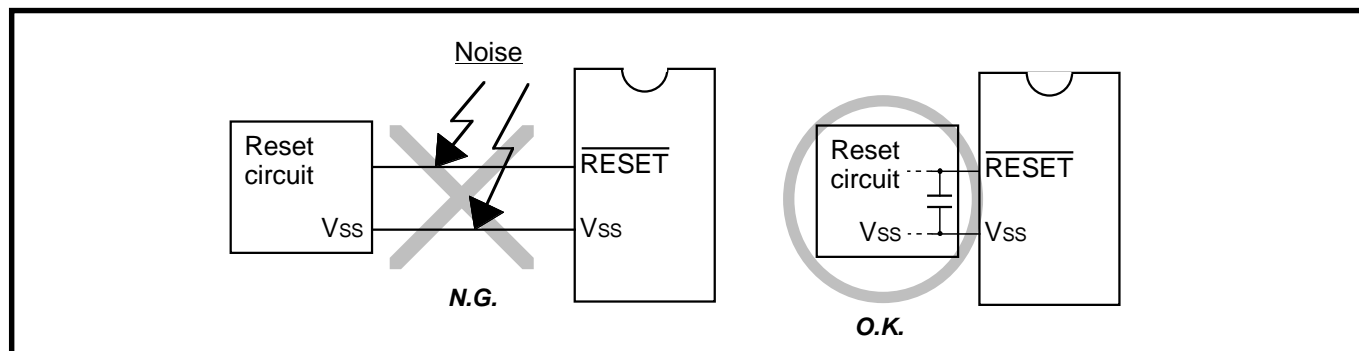


Fig. 3.4.1 Wiring for the  $\overline{\text{RESET}}$  pin

##### (2) Wiring for clock input/output pins

- Make the length of wiring which is connected to clock I/O pins as short as possible.
- Make the length of wiring (within 20 mm) across the grounding lead of a capacitor which is connected to an oscillator and the  $V_{\text{SS}}$  pin of a microcomputer as short as possible.
- Separate the  $V_{\text{SS}}$  pattern only for oscillation from other  $V_{\text{SS}}$  patterns.

##### ● Reason

If noise enters clock I/O pins, clock waveforms may be deformed. This may cause a program failure or program runaway. Also, if a potential difference is caused by the noise between the  $V_{\text{SS}}$  level of a microcomputer and the  $V_{\text{SS}}$  level of an oscillator, the correct clock will not be input in the microcomputer.

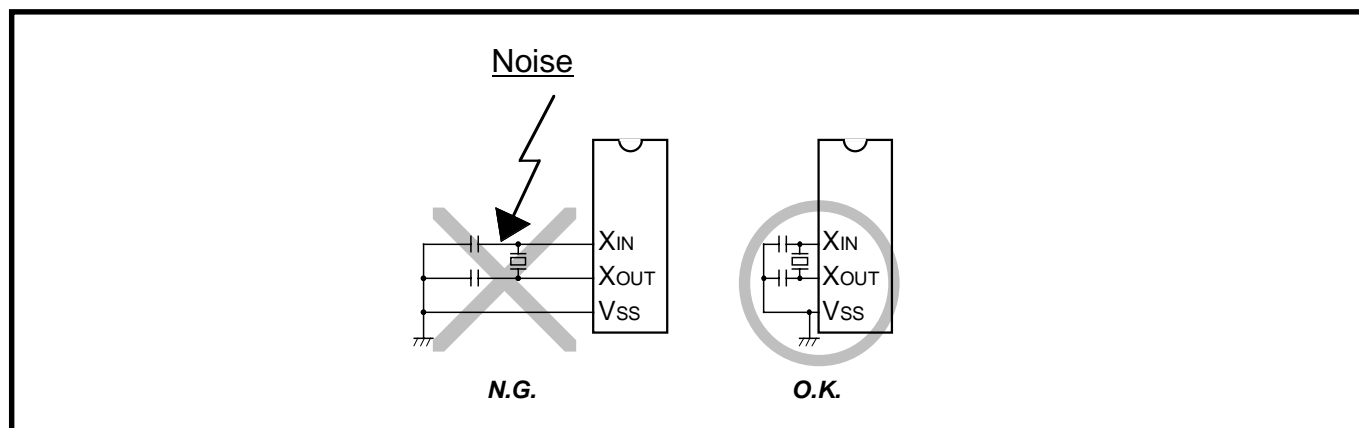


Fig. 3.4.2 Wiring for clock I/O pins

### 3.4.2 Connection of bypass capacitor across Vss line and Vcc line

Connect an approximately  $0.1 \mu\text{F}$  bypass capacitor across the Vss line and the Vcc line as follows:

- Connect a bypass capacitor across the Vss pin and the Vcc pin at equal length.
- Connect a bypass capacitor across the Vss pin and the Vcc pin with the shortest possible wiring.
- Use lines with a larger diameter than other signal lines for Vss line and Vcc line.
- Connect the power source wiring via a bypass capacitor to the Vss pin and the Vcc pin.

In use of the 7641 group it is recommended to connect  $0.1 \mu\text{F}$  and  $4.7 \mu\text{F}$  capacitors in parallel between pins Vcc and Vss, and pins AVss and AVcc. However, their capacitors must not be allocated near the LPF pin.

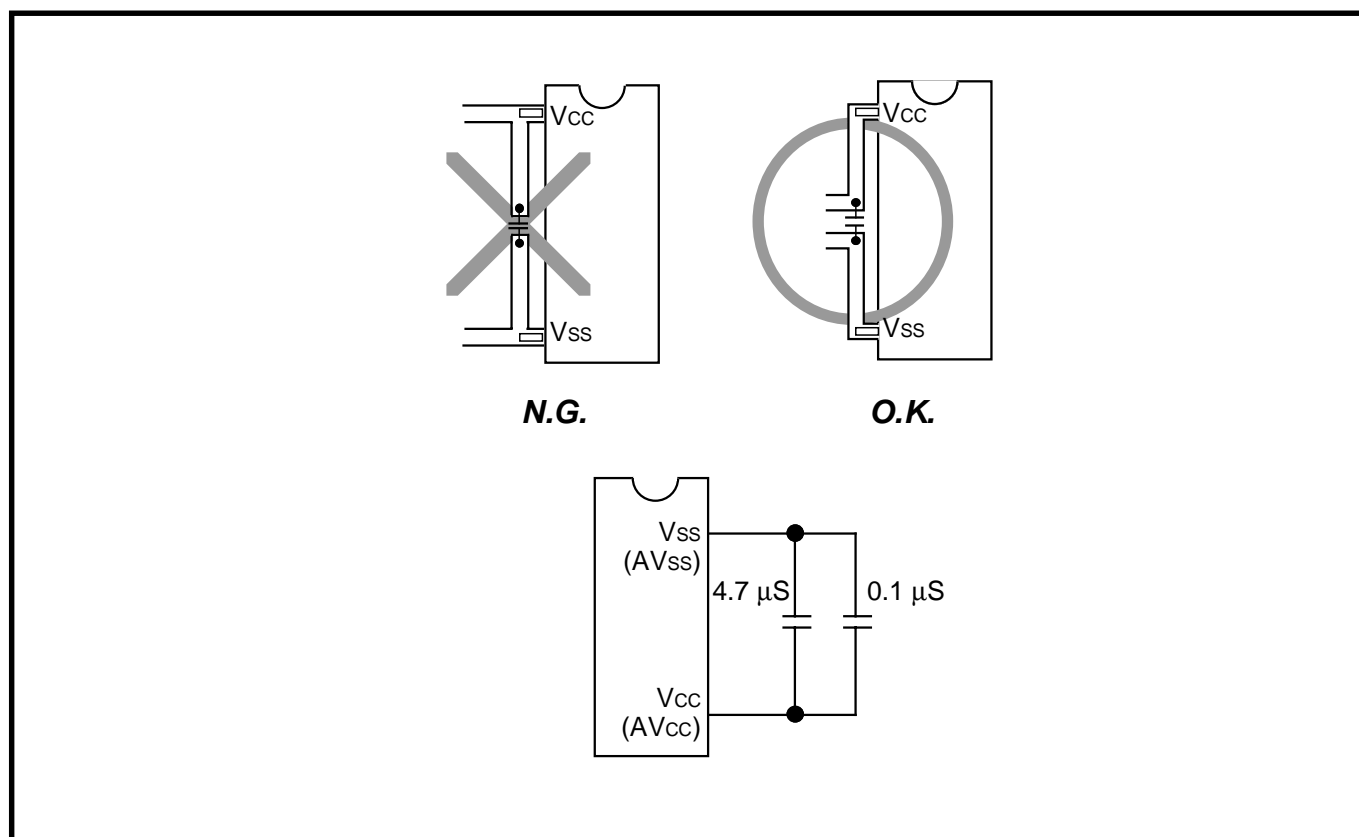


Fig. 3.4.3 Bypass capacitor across the Vss line and the Vcc line

### 3.4.3 Oscillator concerns

Take care to prevent an oscillator that generates clocks for a microcomputer operation from being affected by other signals.

#### (1) Keeping oscillator away from large current signal lines

Install a microcomputer (and especially an oscillator) as far as possible from signal lines where a current larger than the tolerance of current value flows.

##### ● Reason

In the system using a microcomputer, there are signal lines for controlling motors, LEDs, and thermal heads or others. When a large current flows through those signal lines, strong noise occurs because of mutual inductance.

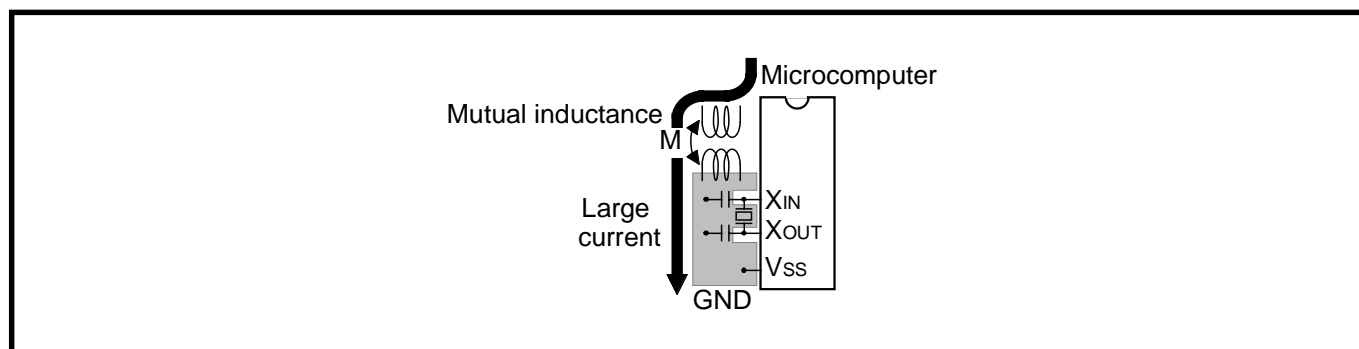


Fig. 3.4.4 Wiring for a large current signal line

#### (2) Installing oscillator away from signal lines where potential levels change frequently

Install an oscillator and a connecting pattern of an oscillator away from signal lines where potential levels change frequently. Also, do not cross such signal lines over the clock lines or the signal lines which are sensitive to noise.

##### ● Reason

Signal lines where potential levels change frequently (such as the CNTR pin signal line) may affect other lines at signal rising edge or falling edge. If such lines cross over a clock line, clock waveforms may be deformed, which causes a microcomputer failure or a program runaway.

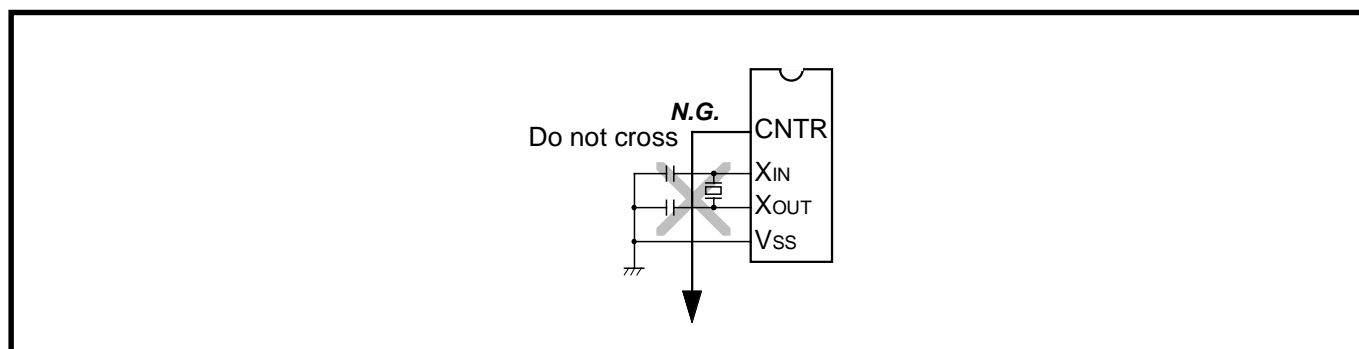


Fig. 3.4.5 Wiring for signal lines where potential levels change frequently

### (3) Oscillator protection using Vss pattern

As for a two-sided printed circuit board, print a Vss pattern on the underside (soldering side) of the position (on the component side) where an oscillator is mounted.

Connect the Vss pattern to the microcomputer Vss pin with the shortest possible wiring. Besides, separate this Vss pattern from other Vss patterns.

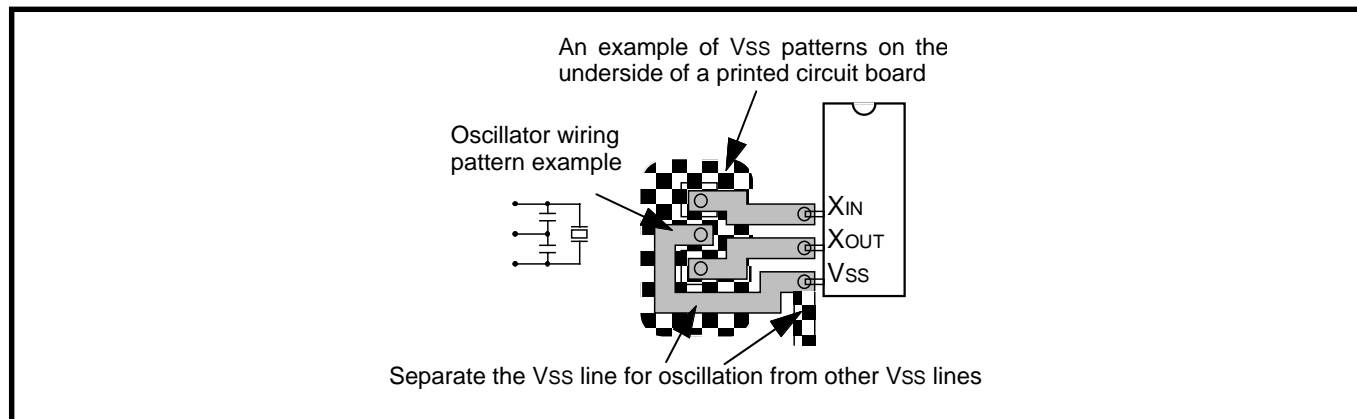


Fig. 3.4.6 Vss pattern on the underside of an oscillator

### 3.4.4 Setup for I/O ports

Setup I/O ports using hardware and software as follows:

#### <Hardware>

- Connect a resistor of 100  $\Omega$  or more to an I/O port in series.

#### <Software>

- As for an input port, read data several times by a program for checking whether input levels are equal or not.
- As for an output port, since the output data may reverse because of noise, rewrite data to its port latch at fixed periods.
- Rewrite data to direction registers at fixed periods.

**Note:** When a direction register is set for input port again at fixed periods, a several-nanosecond short pulse may be output from this port. If this is undesirable, connect a capacitor to this port to remove the noise pulse.

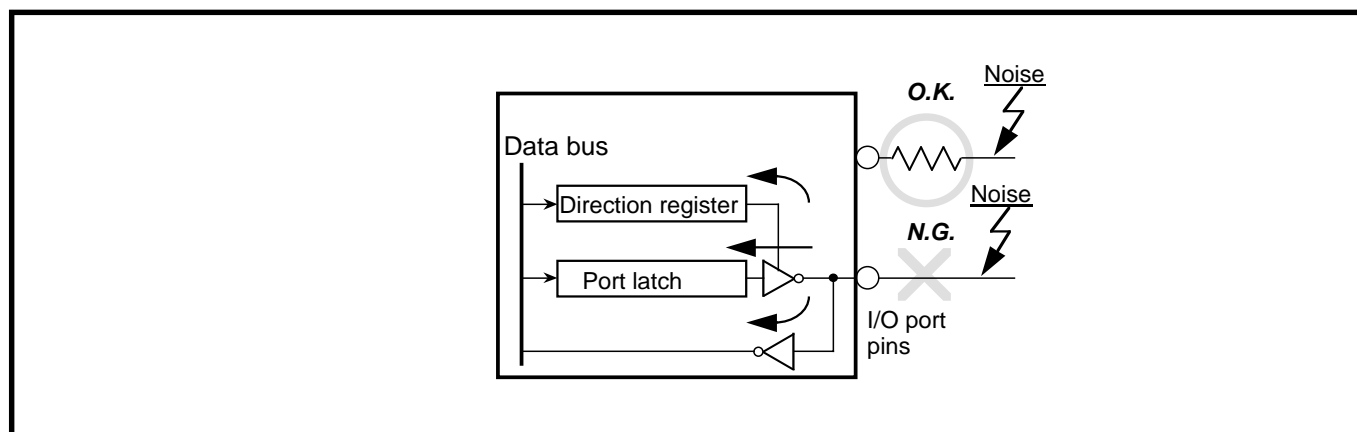


Fig. 3.4.7 Setup for I/O ports



### 3.4.5 Providing of watchdog timer function by software

If a microcomputer runs away because of noise or others, it can be detected by a software watchdog timer and the microcomputer can be reset to normal operation. This is equal to or more effective than program runaway detection by a hardware watchdog timer. The following shows an example of a watchdog timer provided by software.

In the following example, to reset a microcomputer to normal operation, the main routine detects errors of the interrupt processing routine and the interrupt processing routine detects errors of the main routine. This example assumes that interrupt processing is repeated multiple times in a single main routine processing.

#### <The main routine>

- Assigns a single byte of RAM to a software watchdog timer (SWDT) and writes the initial value N in the SWDT once at each execution of the main routine. The initial value N should satisfy the following condition:  

$$N+1 \geq (\text{Counts of interrupt processing executed in each main routine})$$
 As the main routine execution cycle may change because of an interrupt processing or others, the initial value N should have a margin.
- Watches the operation of the interrupt processing routine by comparing the SWDT contents with counts of interrupt processing after the initial value N has been set.
- Detects that the interrupt processing routine has failed and determines to branch to the program initialization routine for recovery processing in the following case:  
 If the SWDT contents do not change after interrupt processing.

#### <The interrupt processing routine>

- Decrements the SWDT contents by 1 at each interrupt processing.
- Determines that the main routine operates normally when the SWDT contents are reset to the initial value N at almost fixed cycles (at the fixed interrupt processing count).
- Detects that the main routine has failed and determines to branch to the program initialization routine for recovery processing in the following case:  
 If the SWDT contents are not initialized to the initial value N but continued to decrement and if they reach 0 or less.

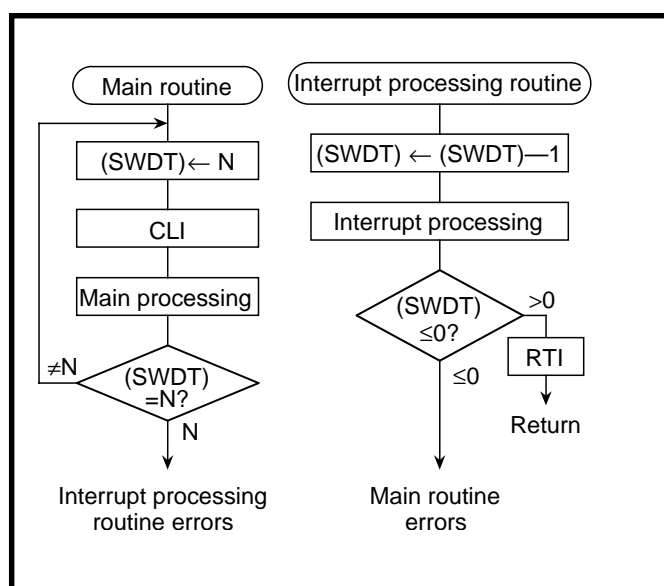


Fig. 3.4.8 Watchdog timer by software

### 3.5 Control registers

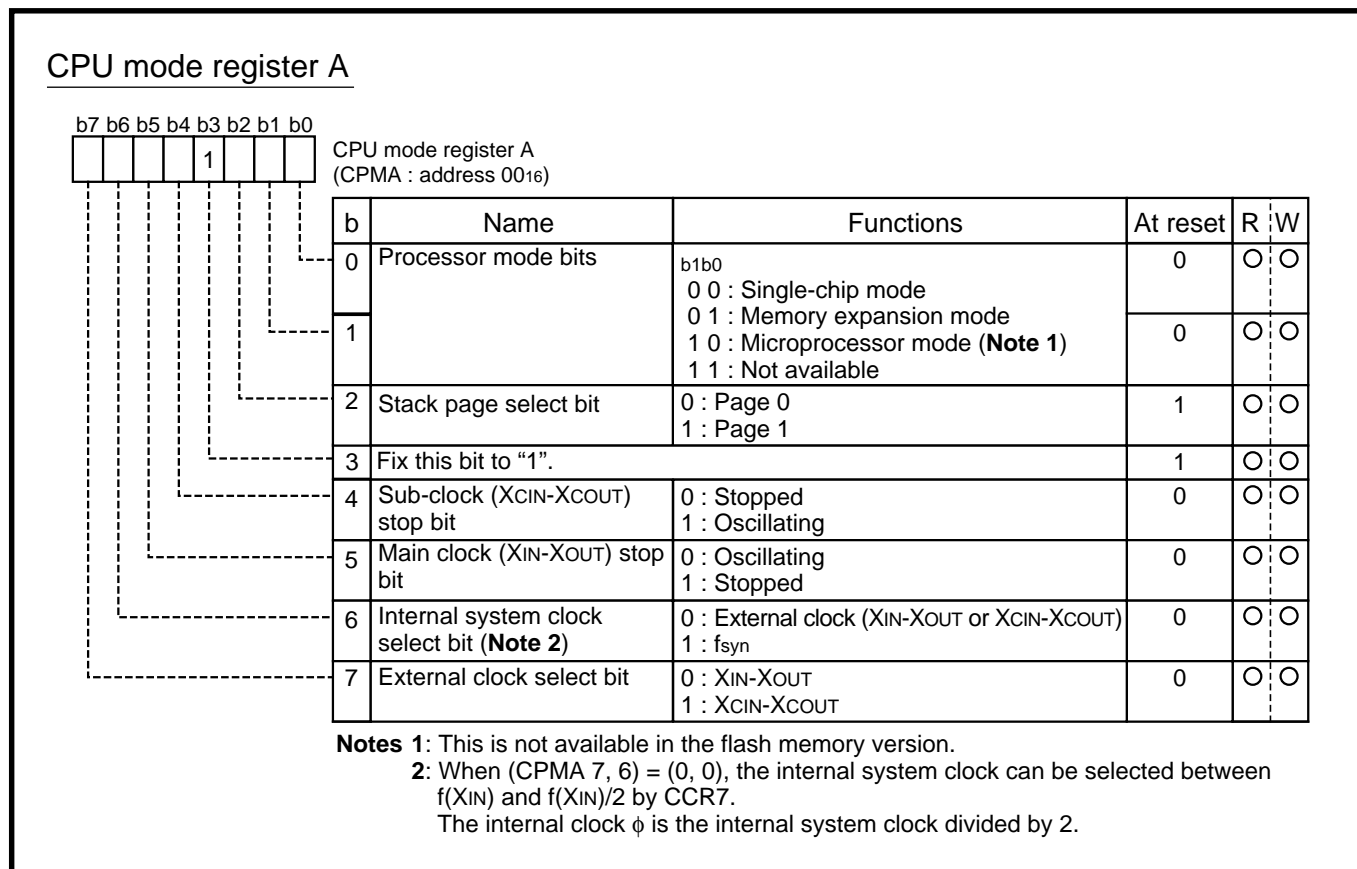


Fig. 3.5.1 Structure of CPU mode register A

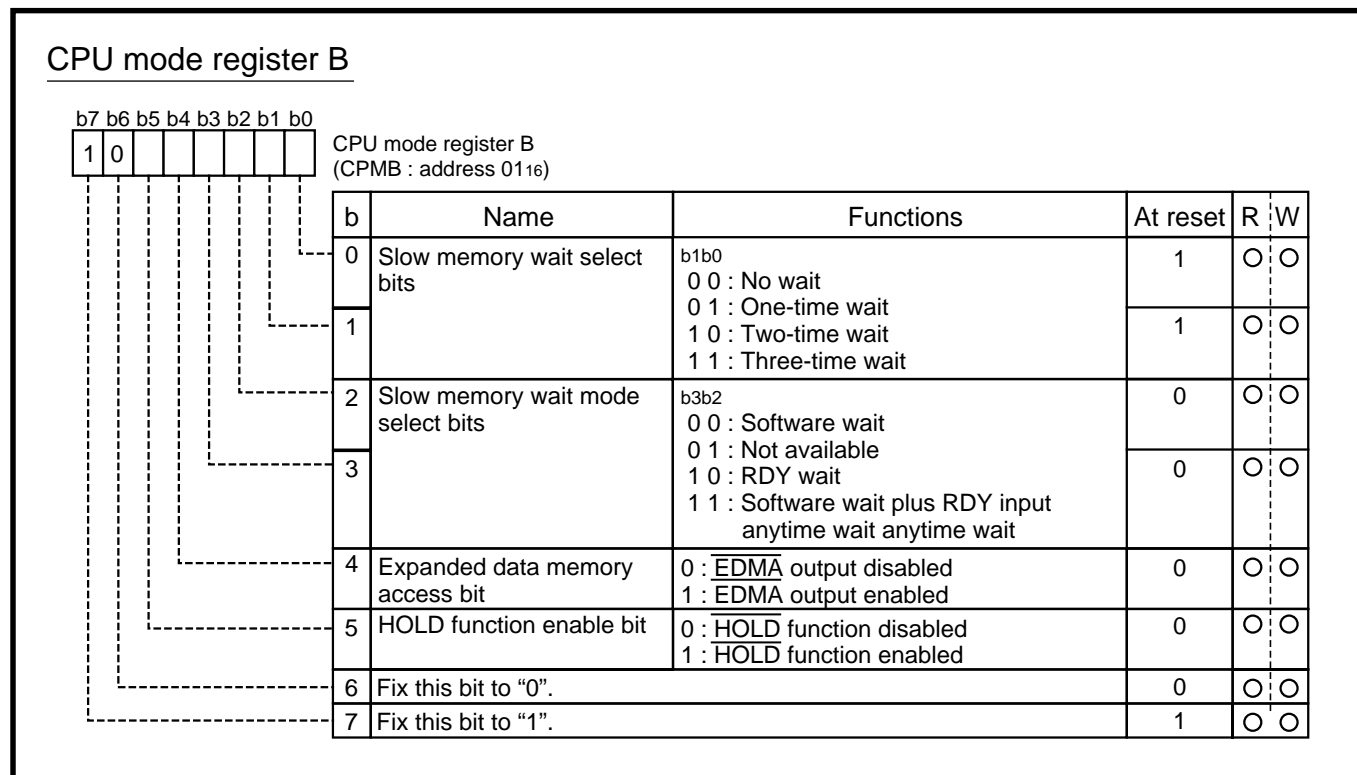


Fig. 3.5.2 Structure of CPU mode register B

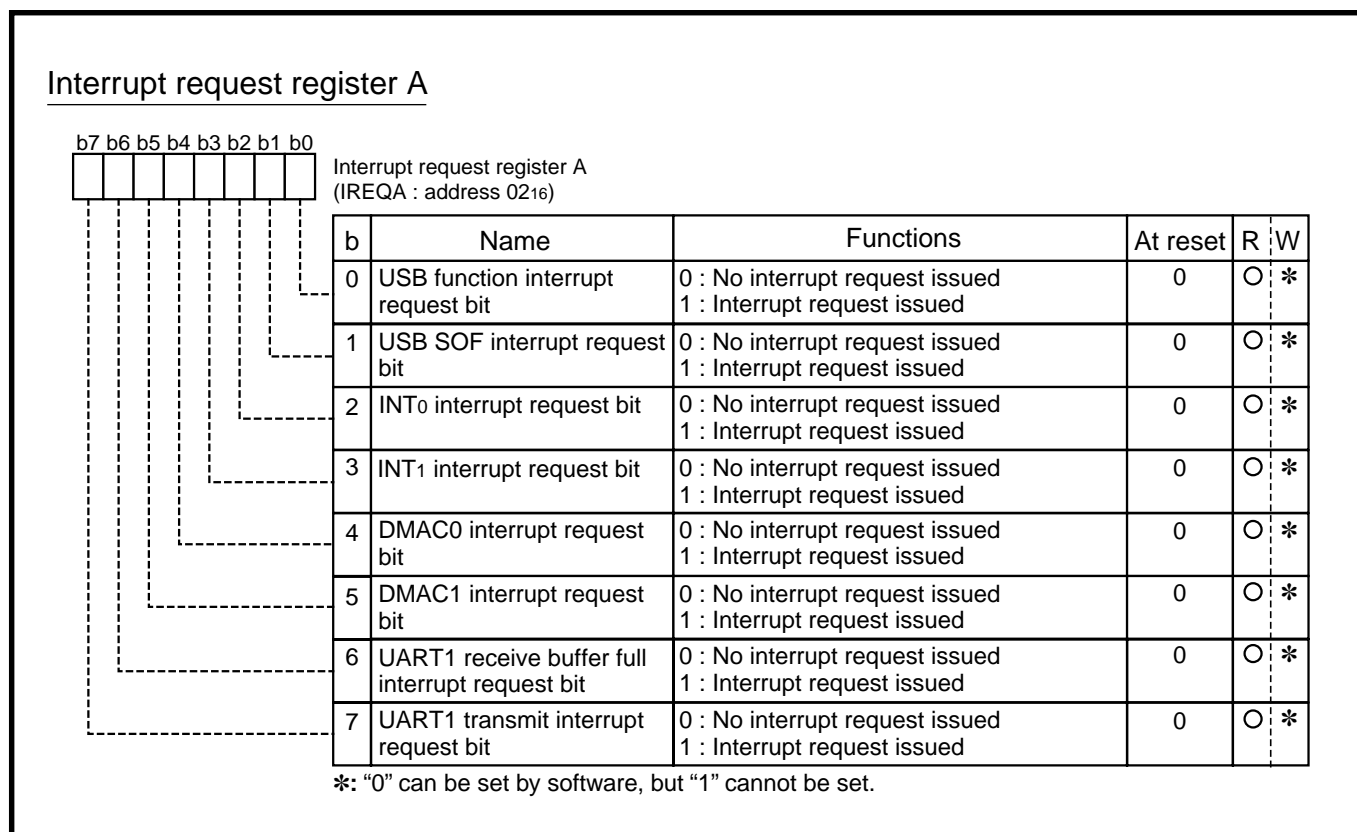


Fig. 3.5.3 Structure of Interrupt request register A

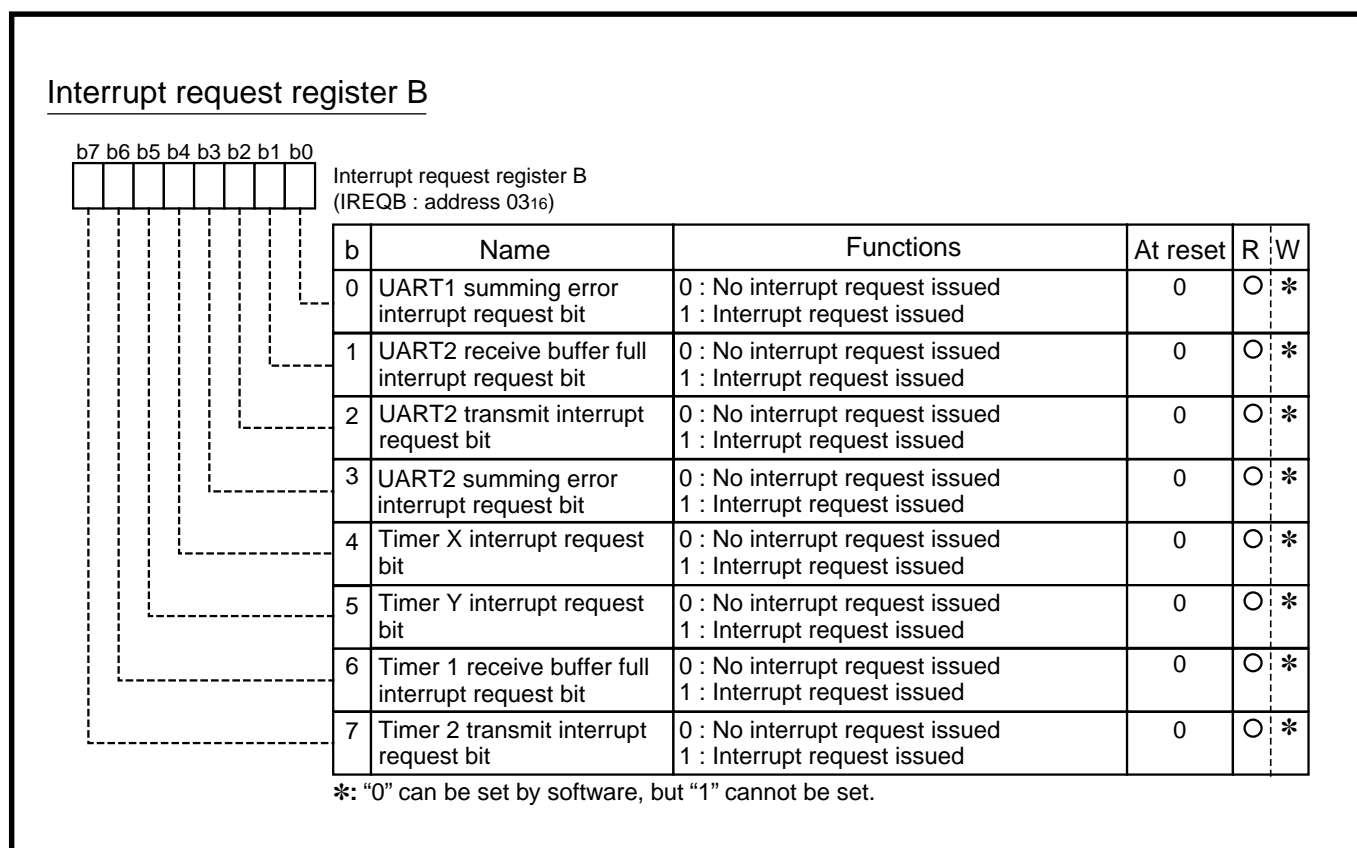


Fig. 3.5.4 Structure of Interrupt request register B

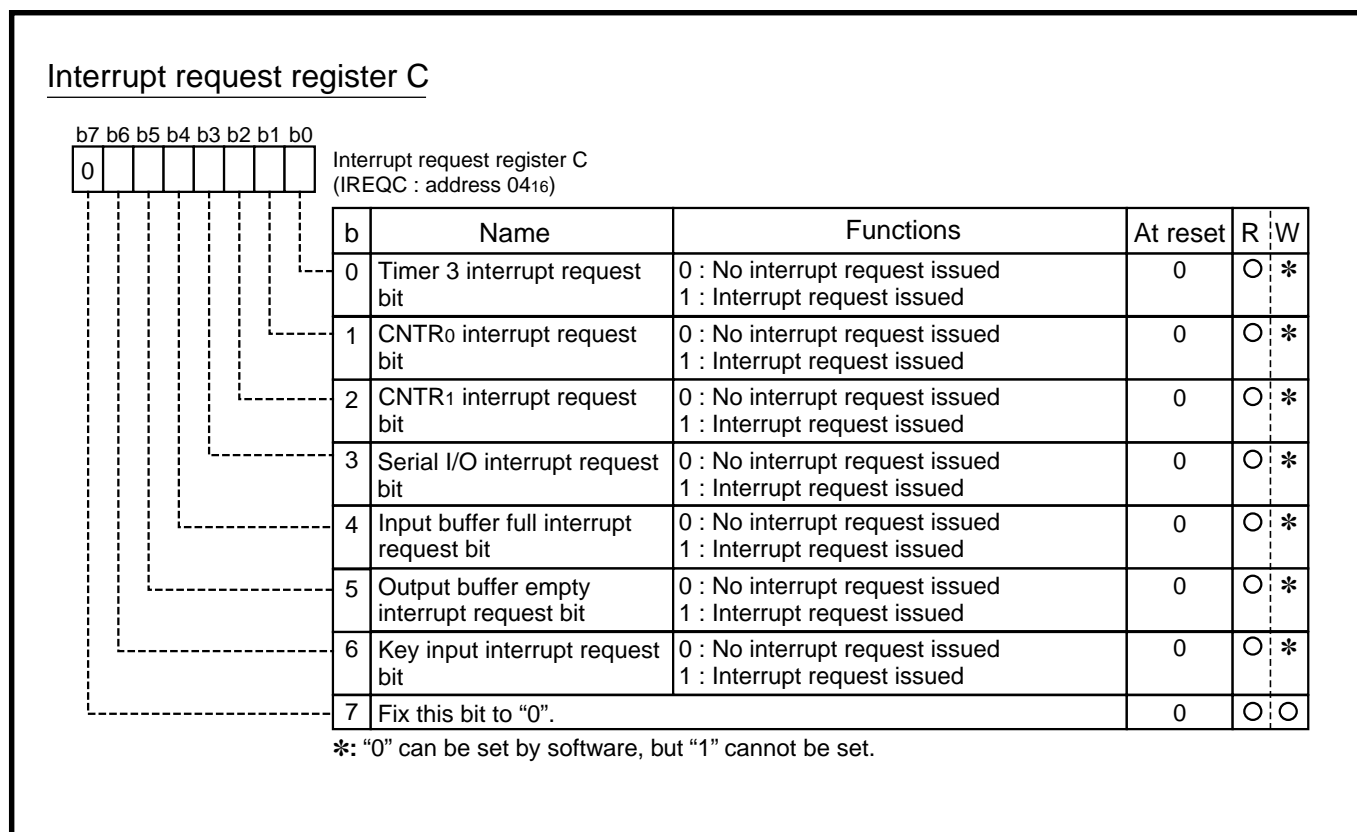


Fig. 3.5.5 Structure of Interrupt request register C

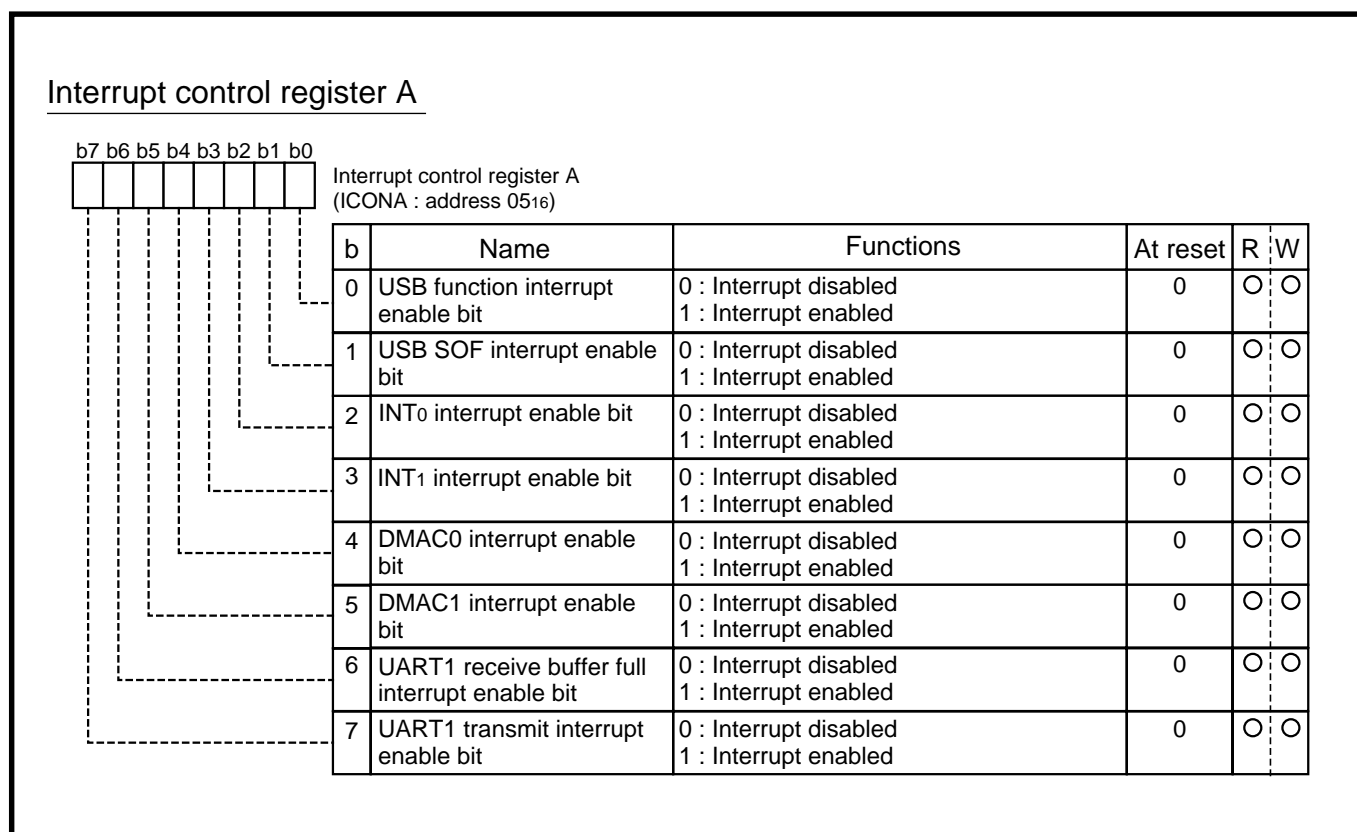


Fig. 3.5.6 Structure of Interrupt control register A

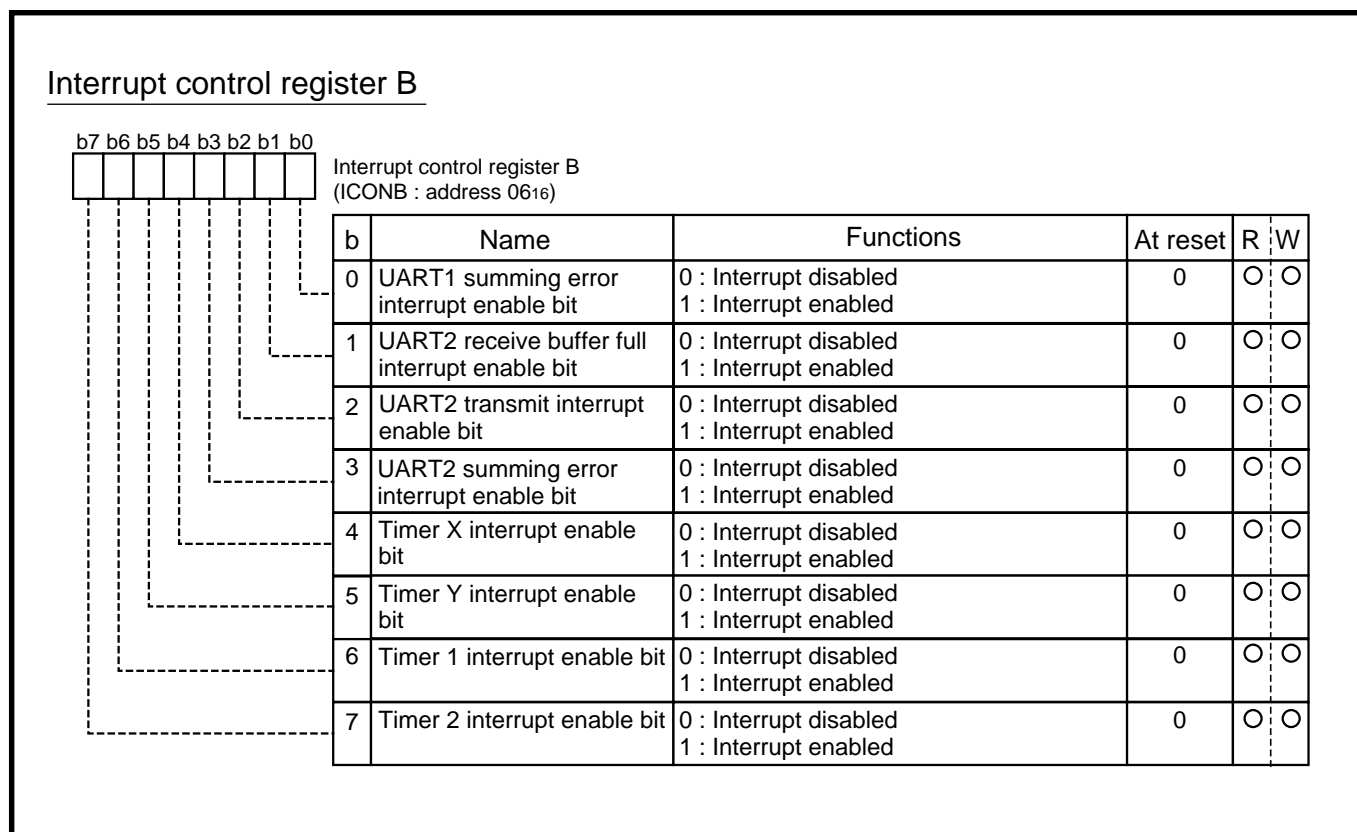


Fig. 3.5.7 Structure of Interrupt control register B

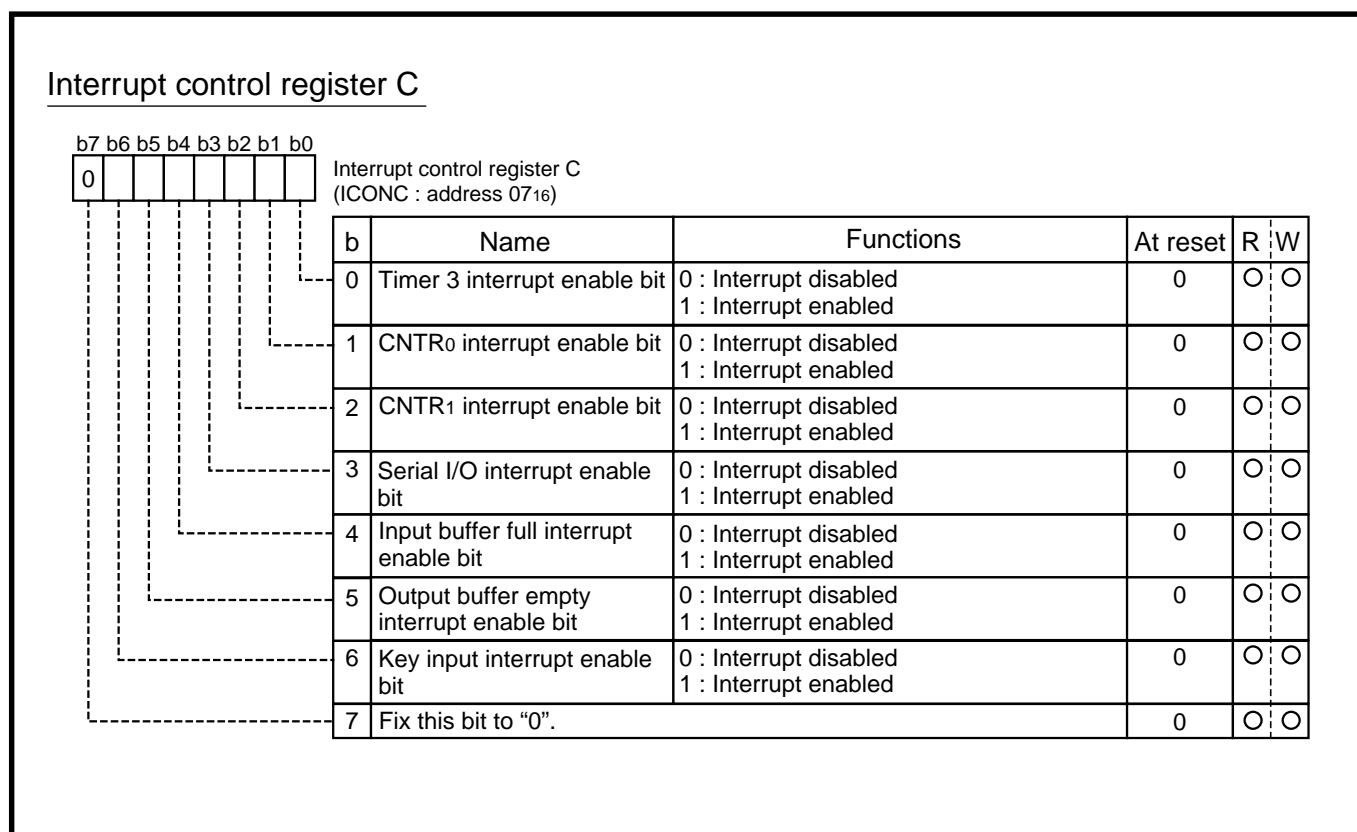


Fig. 3.5.8 Structure of Interrupt control register C

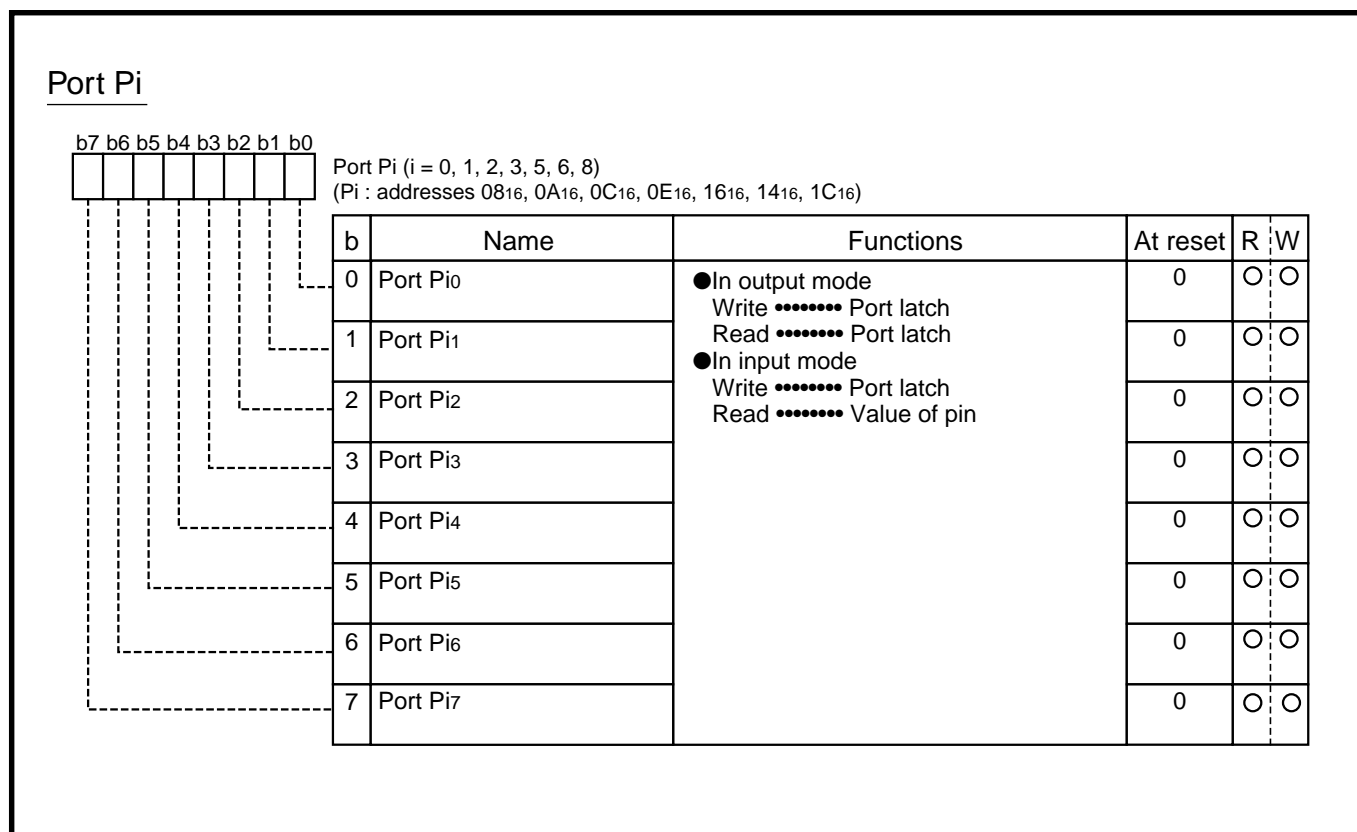


Fig. 3.5.9 Structure of Port Pi

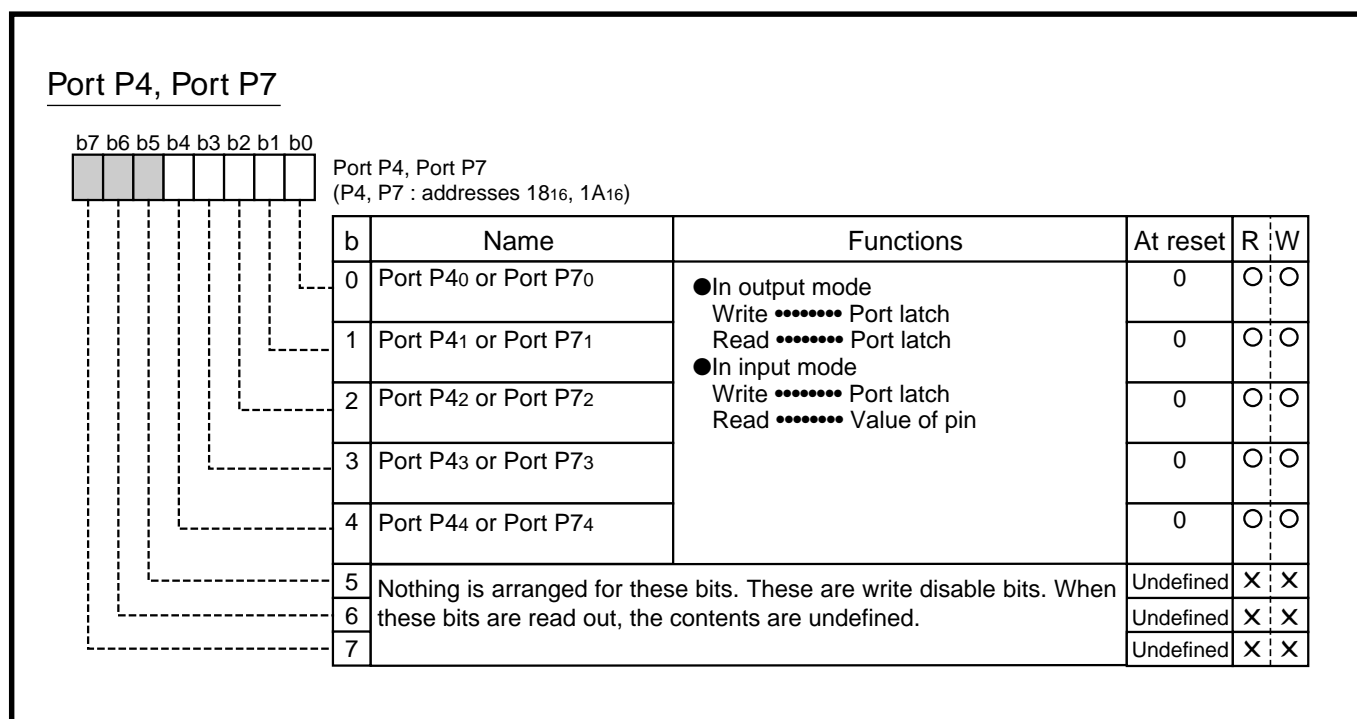


Fig. 3.5.10 Structure of Port P4, Port P7

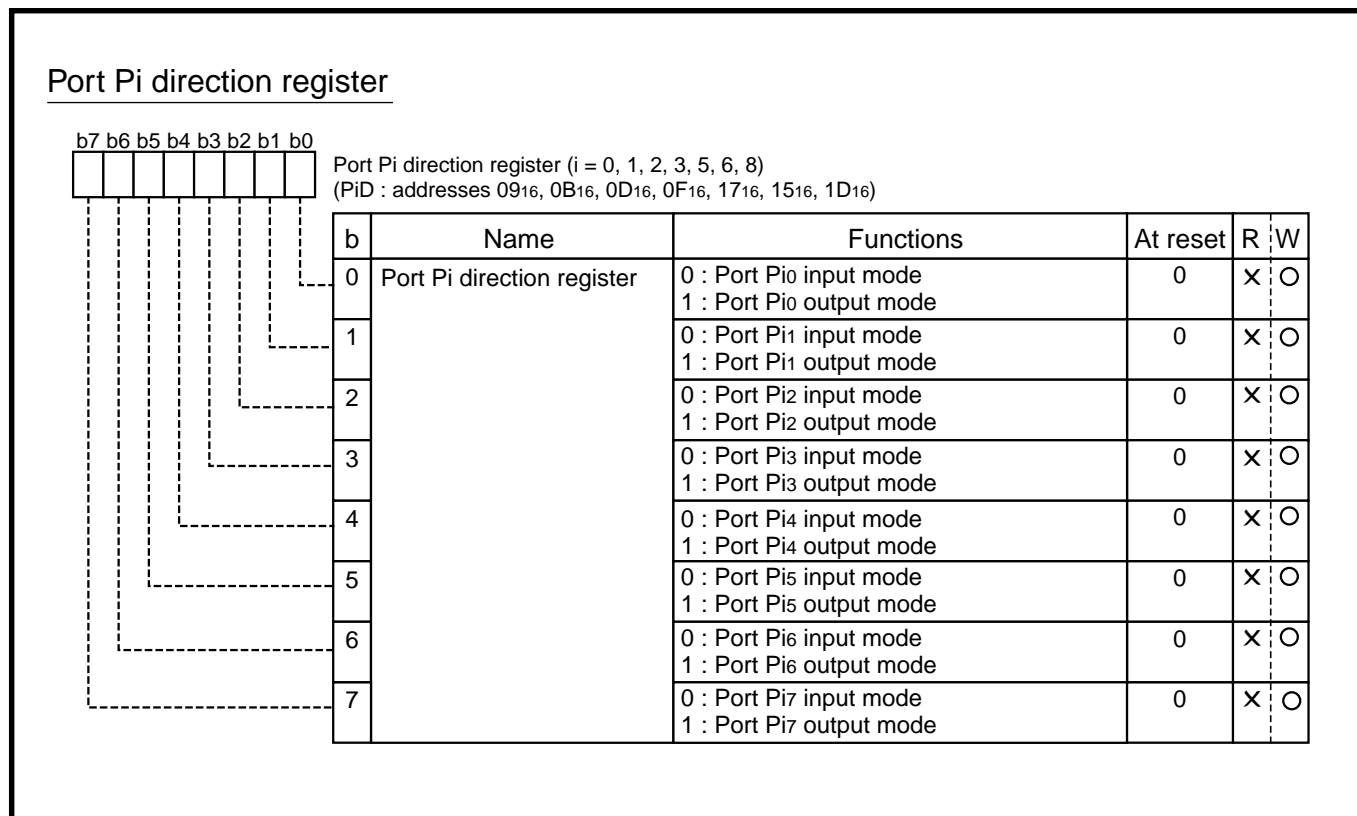


Fig. 3.5.11 Structure of Port Pi direction register

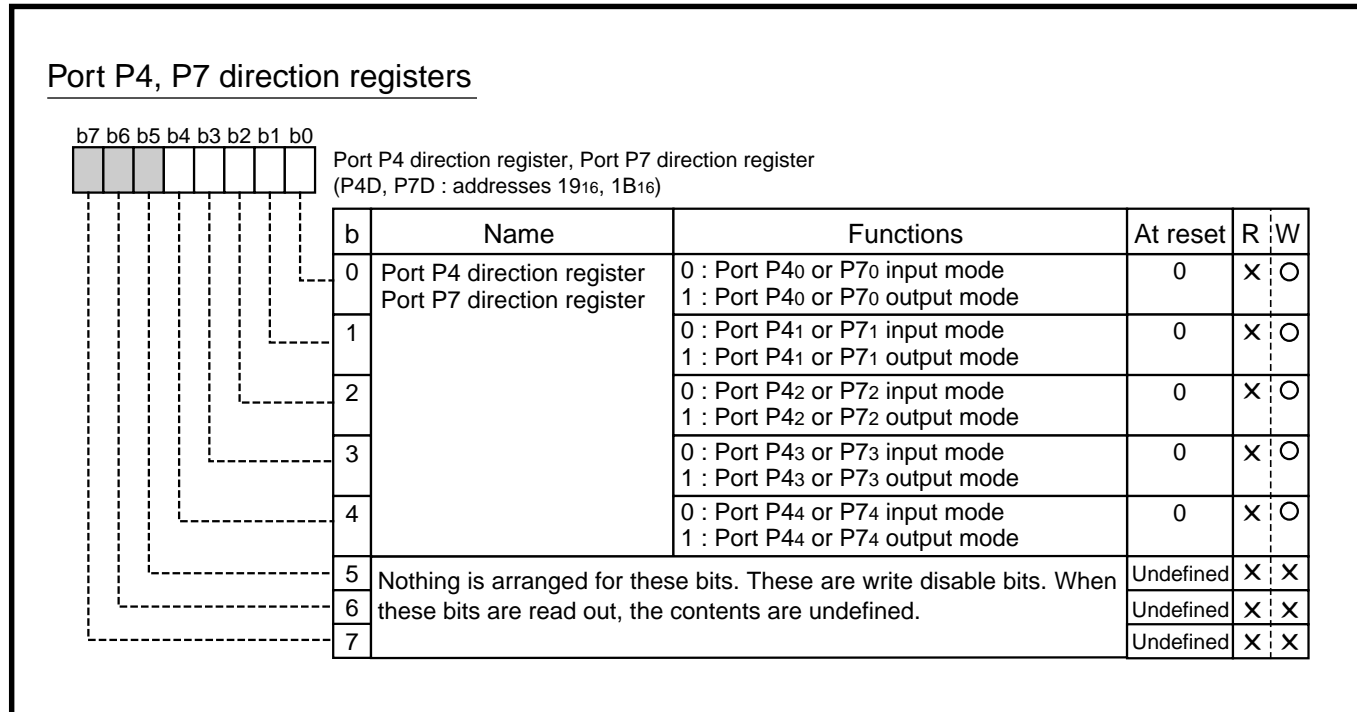


Fig. 3.5.12 Structure of Port P4, Port P7 direction registers

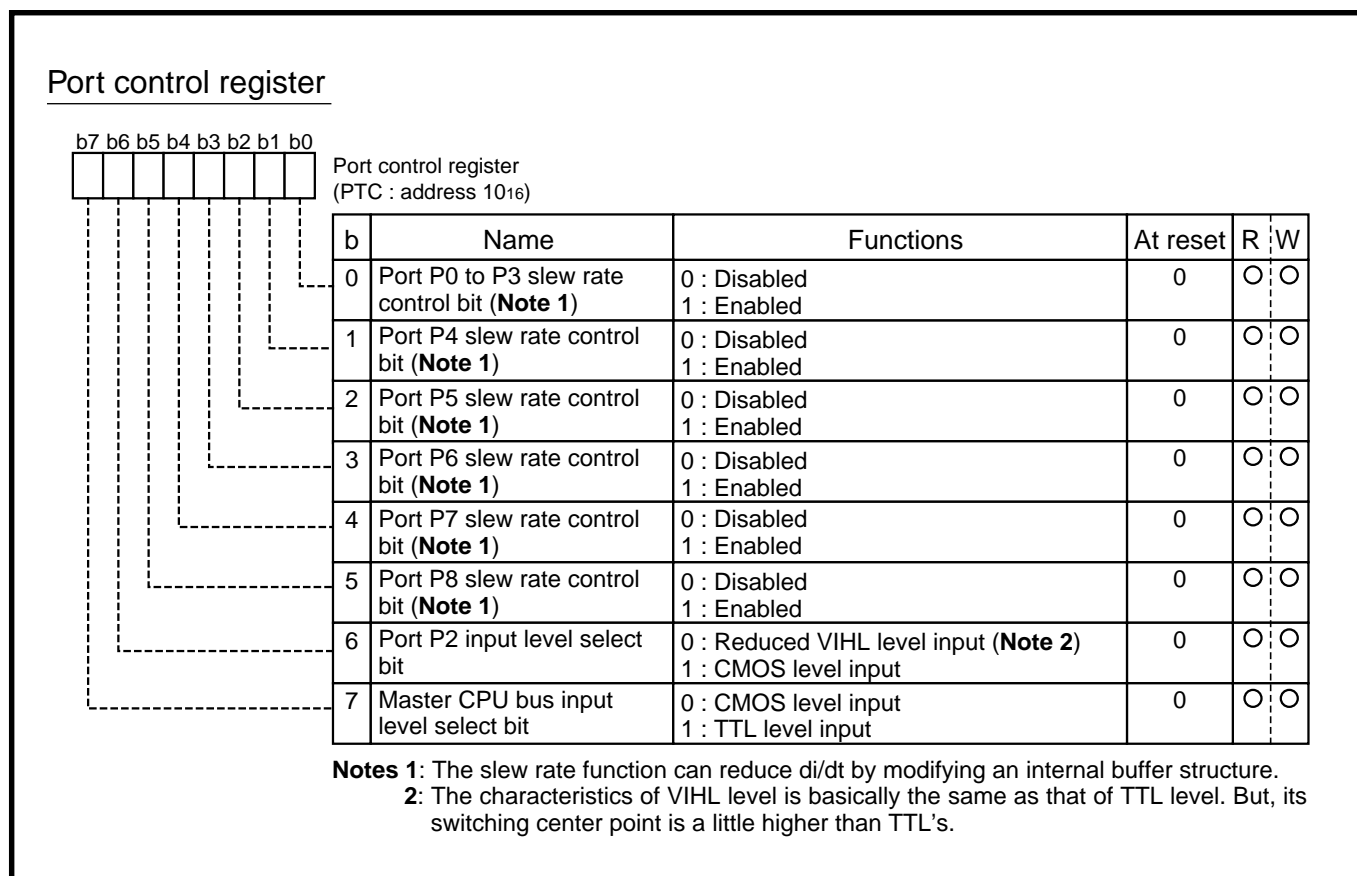


Fig. 3.5.13 Structure of Port control register

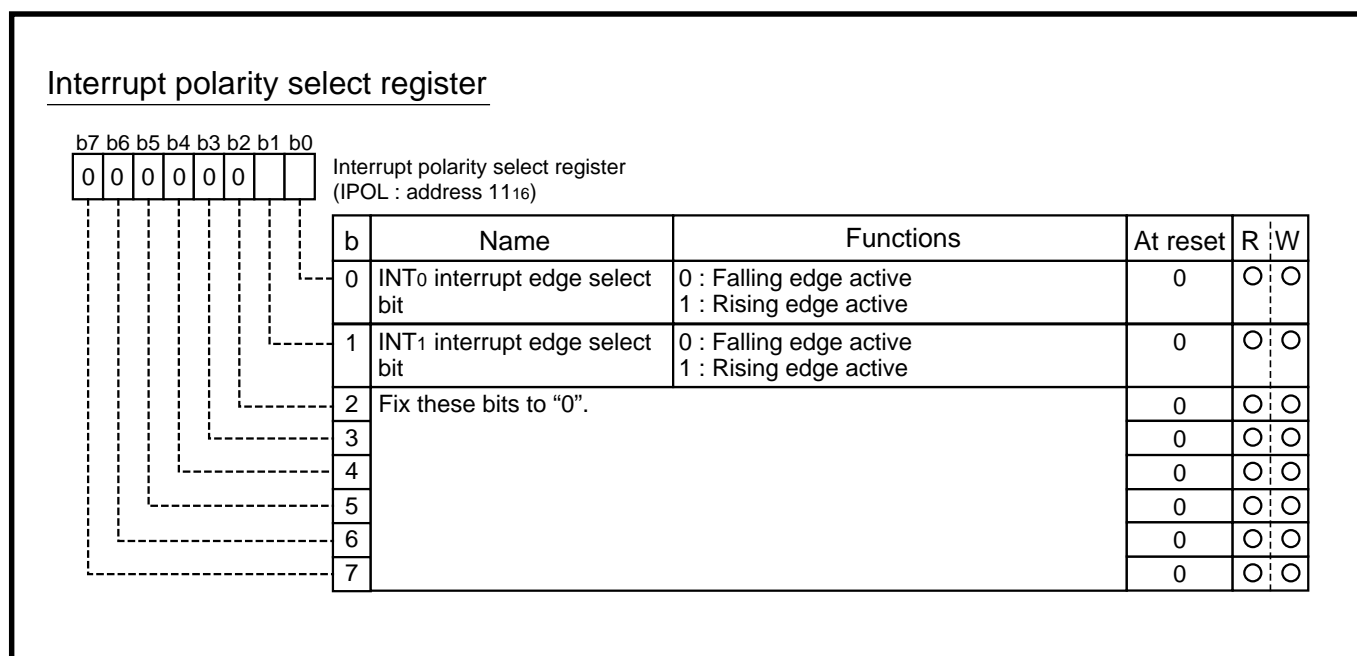


Fig. 3.5.14 Structure of Interrupt polarity select register



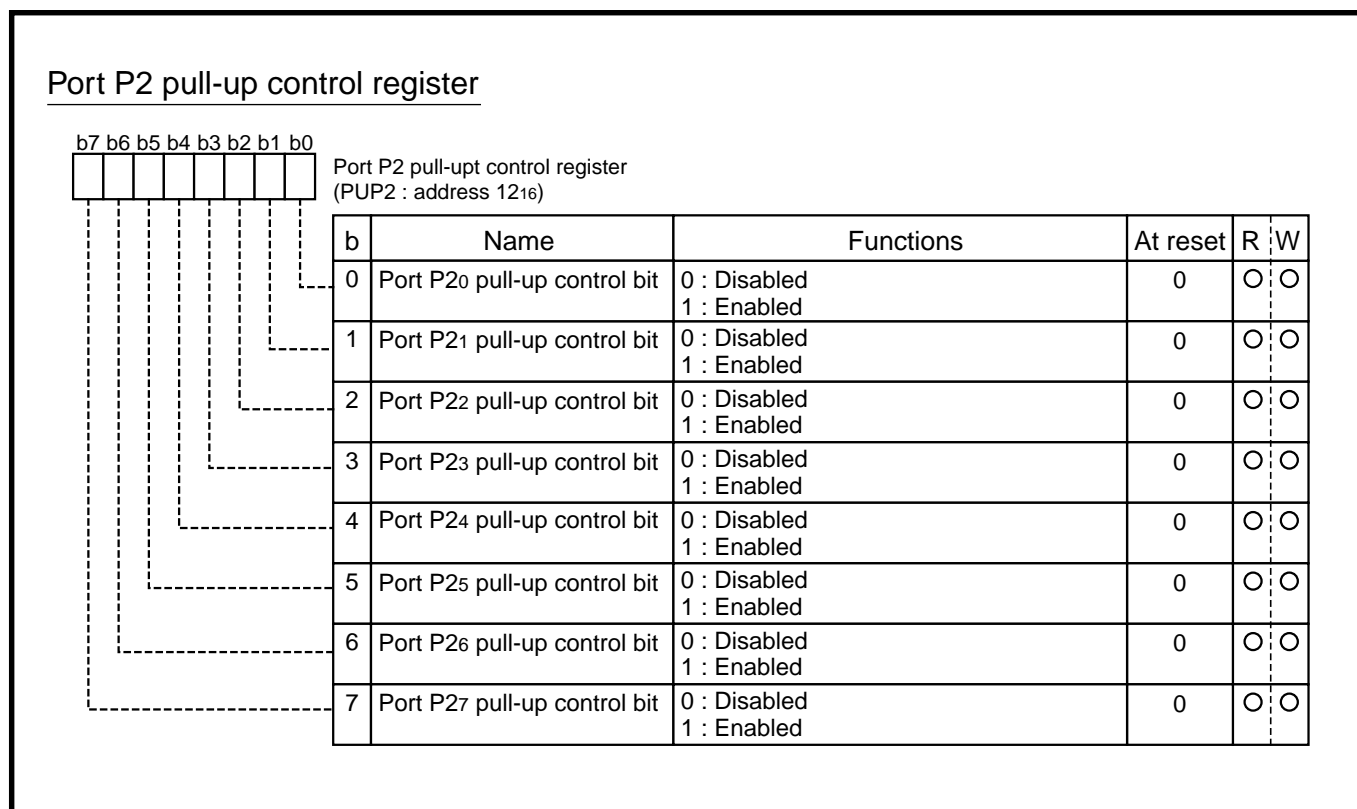


Fig. 3.5.15 Structure of Port P2 pull-up control register

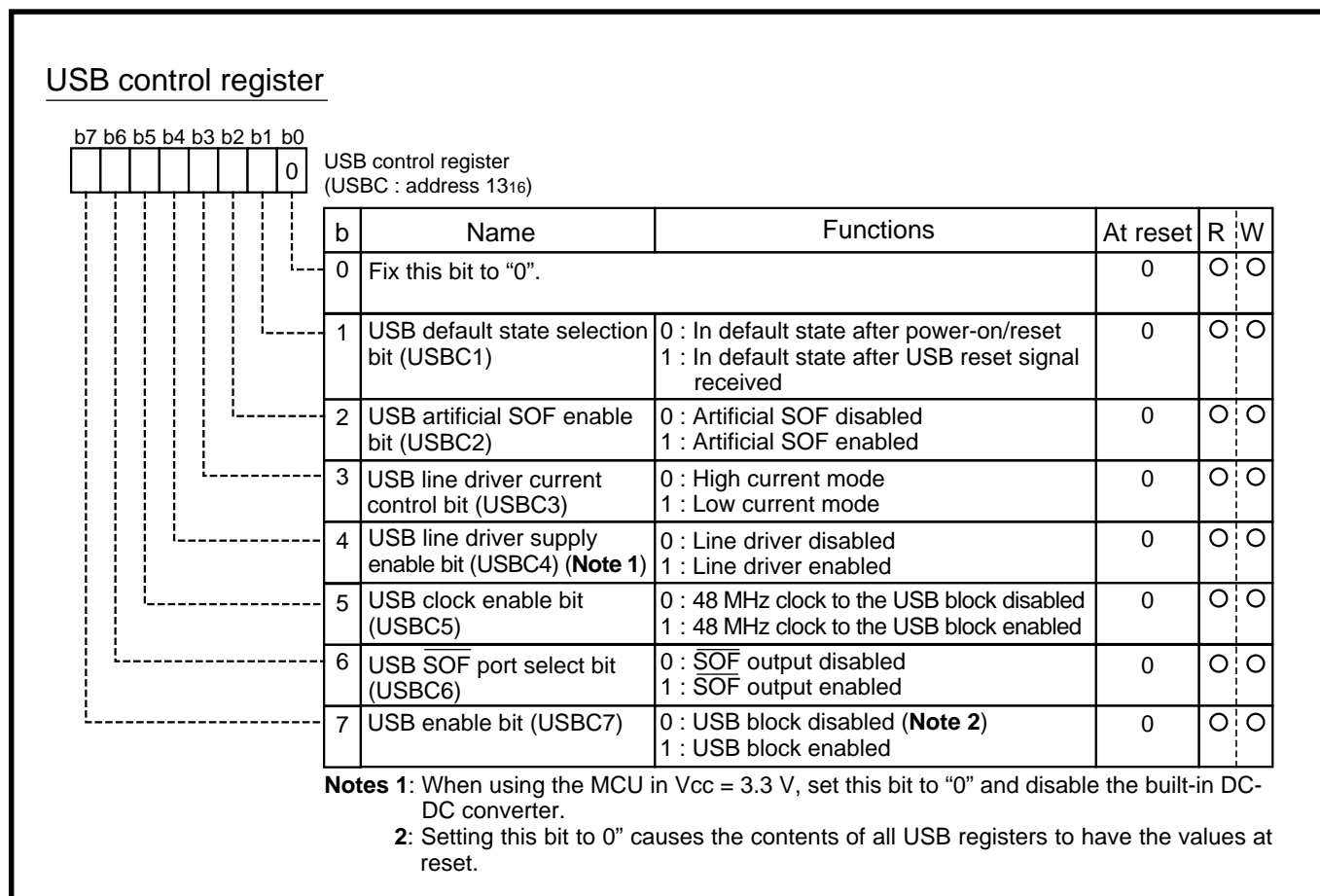


Fig. 3.5.16 Structure of USB control register

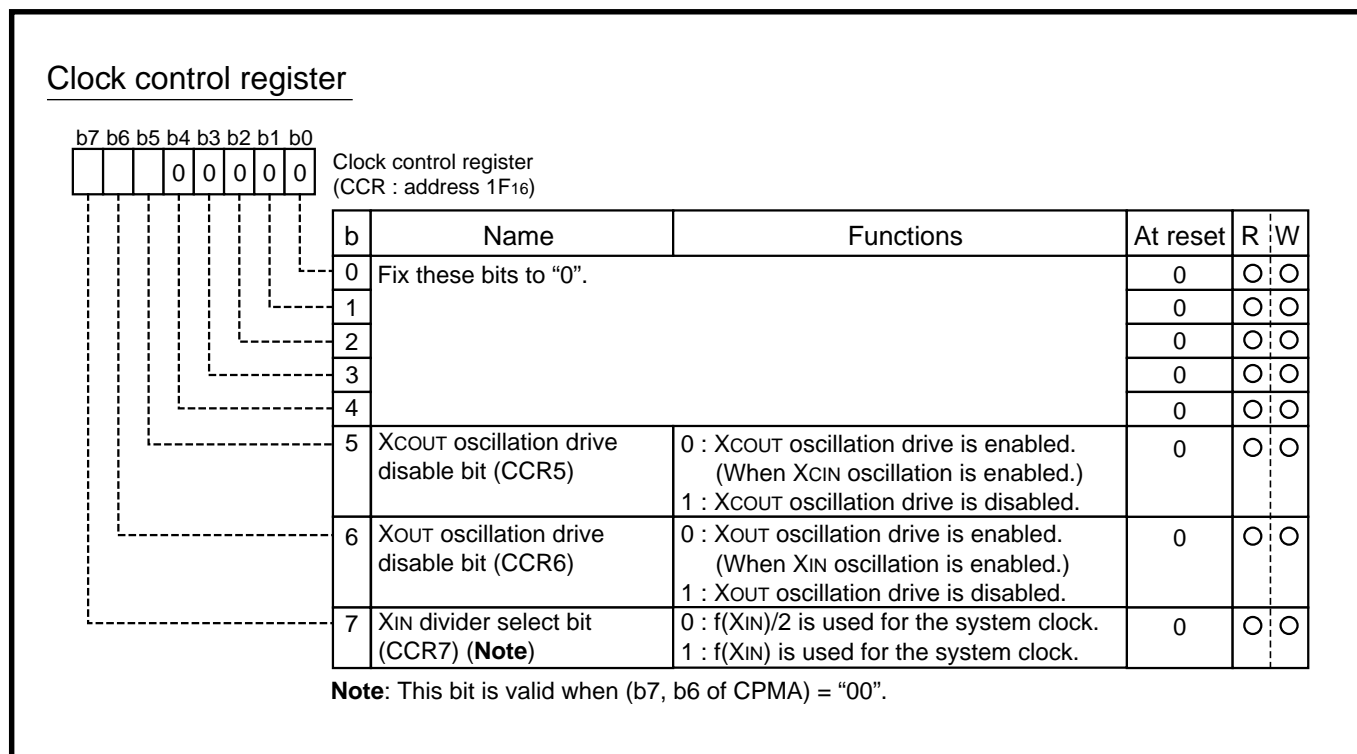


Fig. 3.5.17 Structure of Clock control register

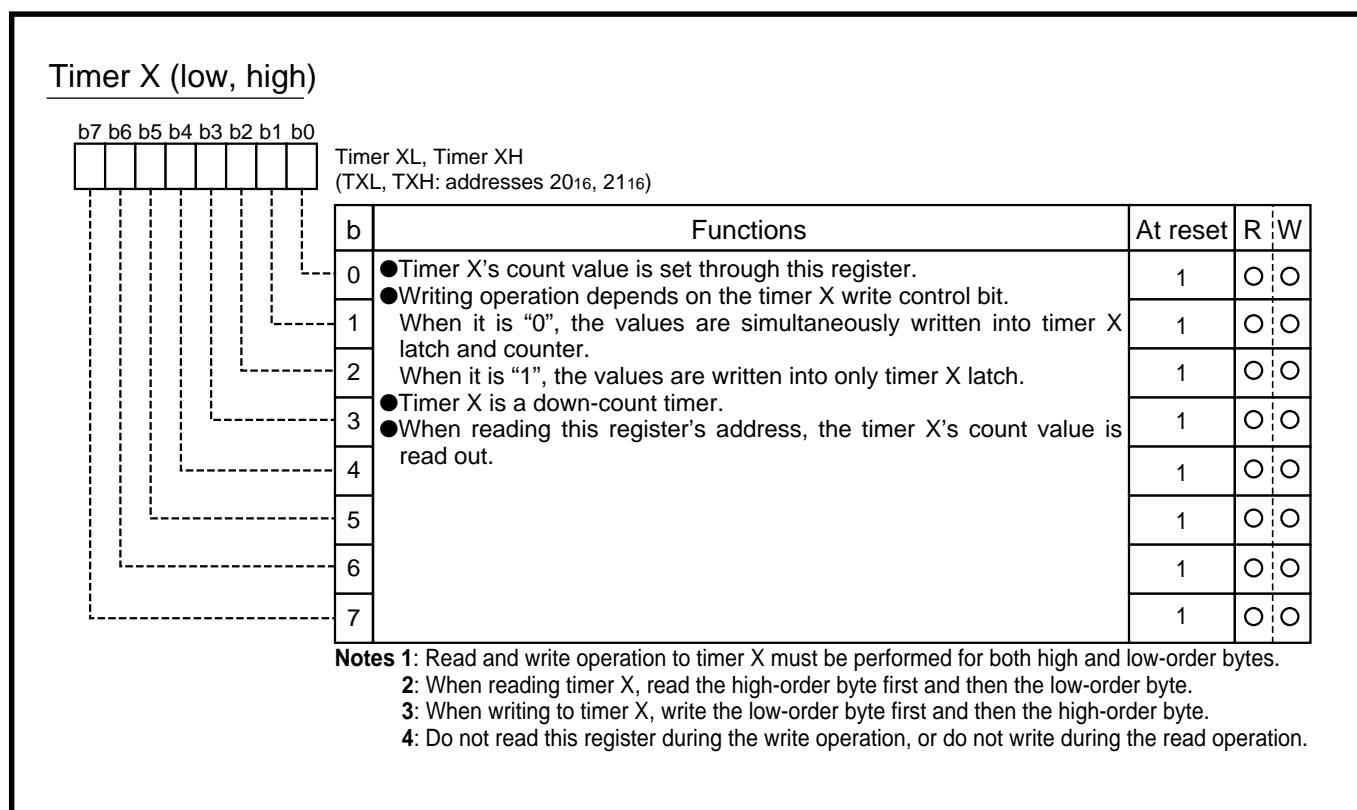


Fig. 3.5.18 Structure of Timer X

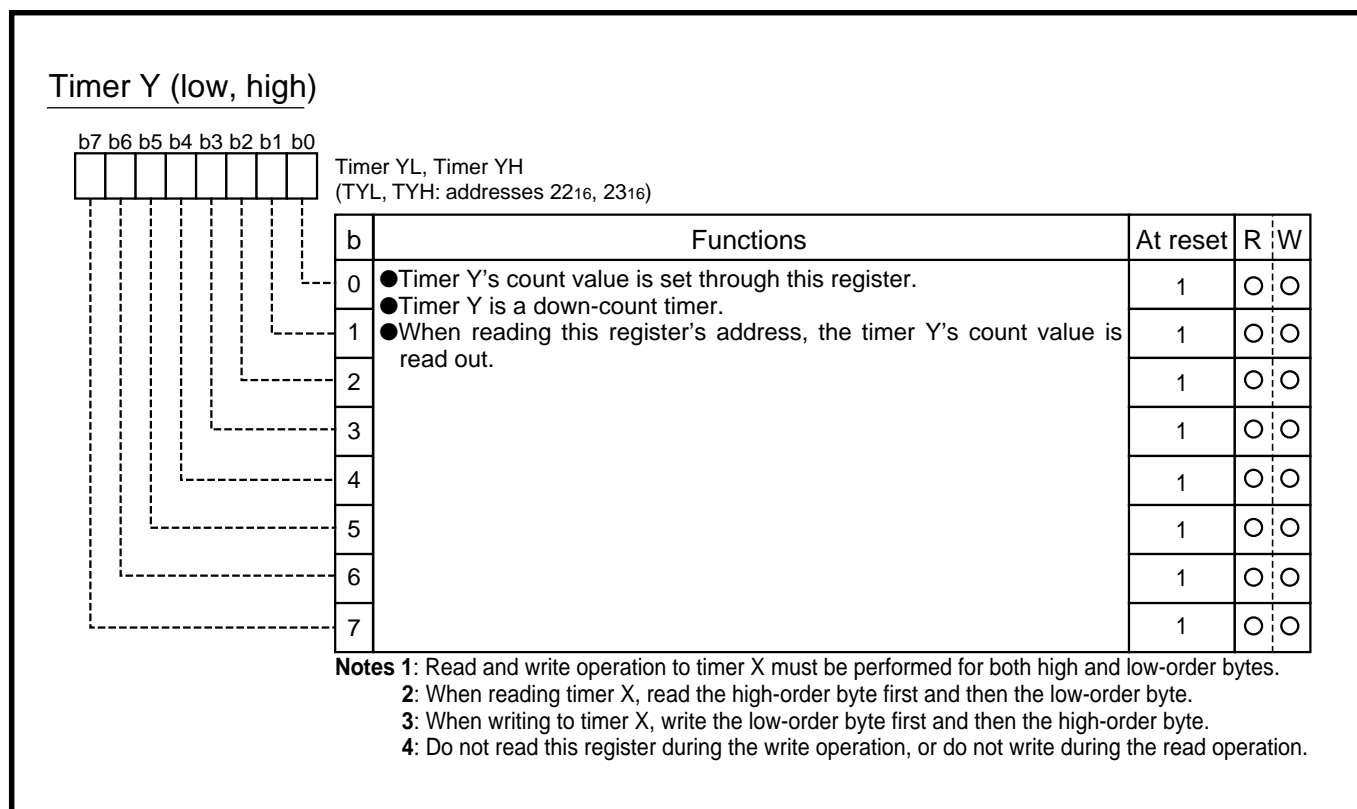


Fig. 3.5.19 Structure of Timer Y

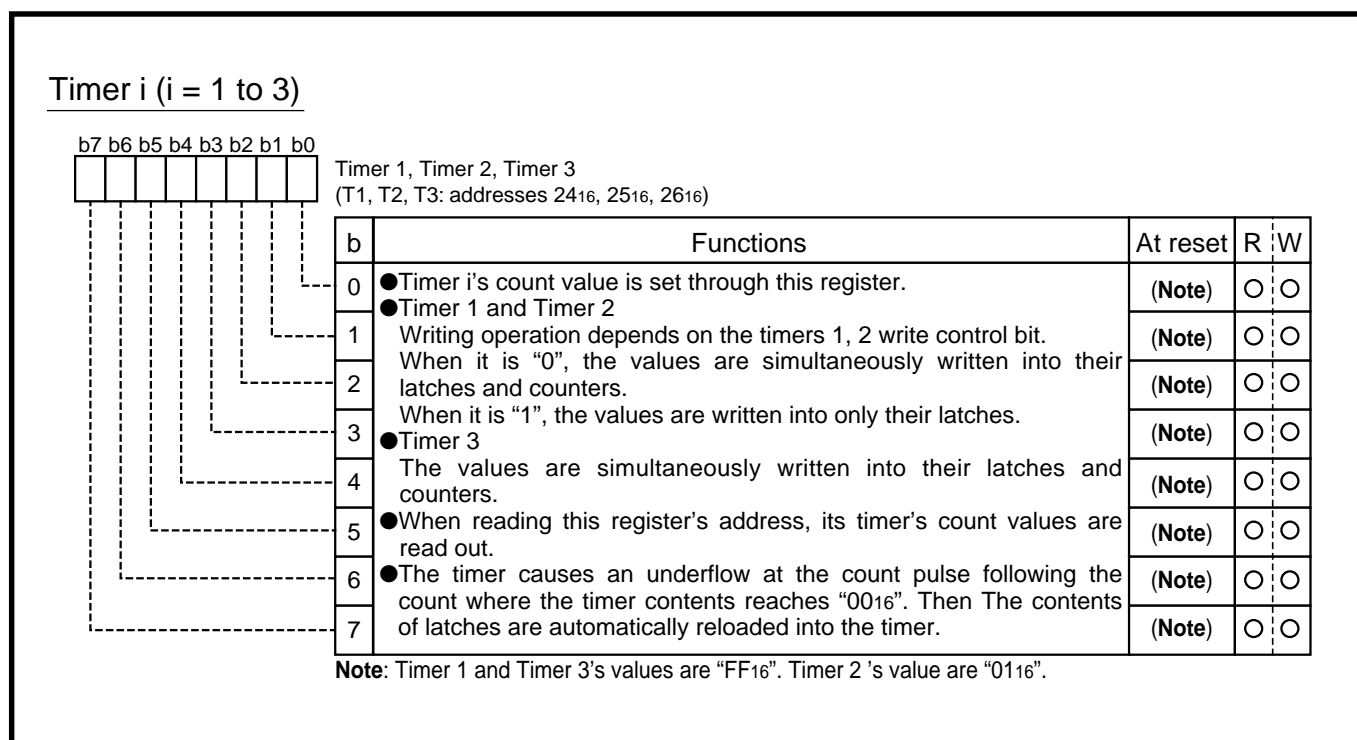


Fig. 3.5.20 Structure of Timer i

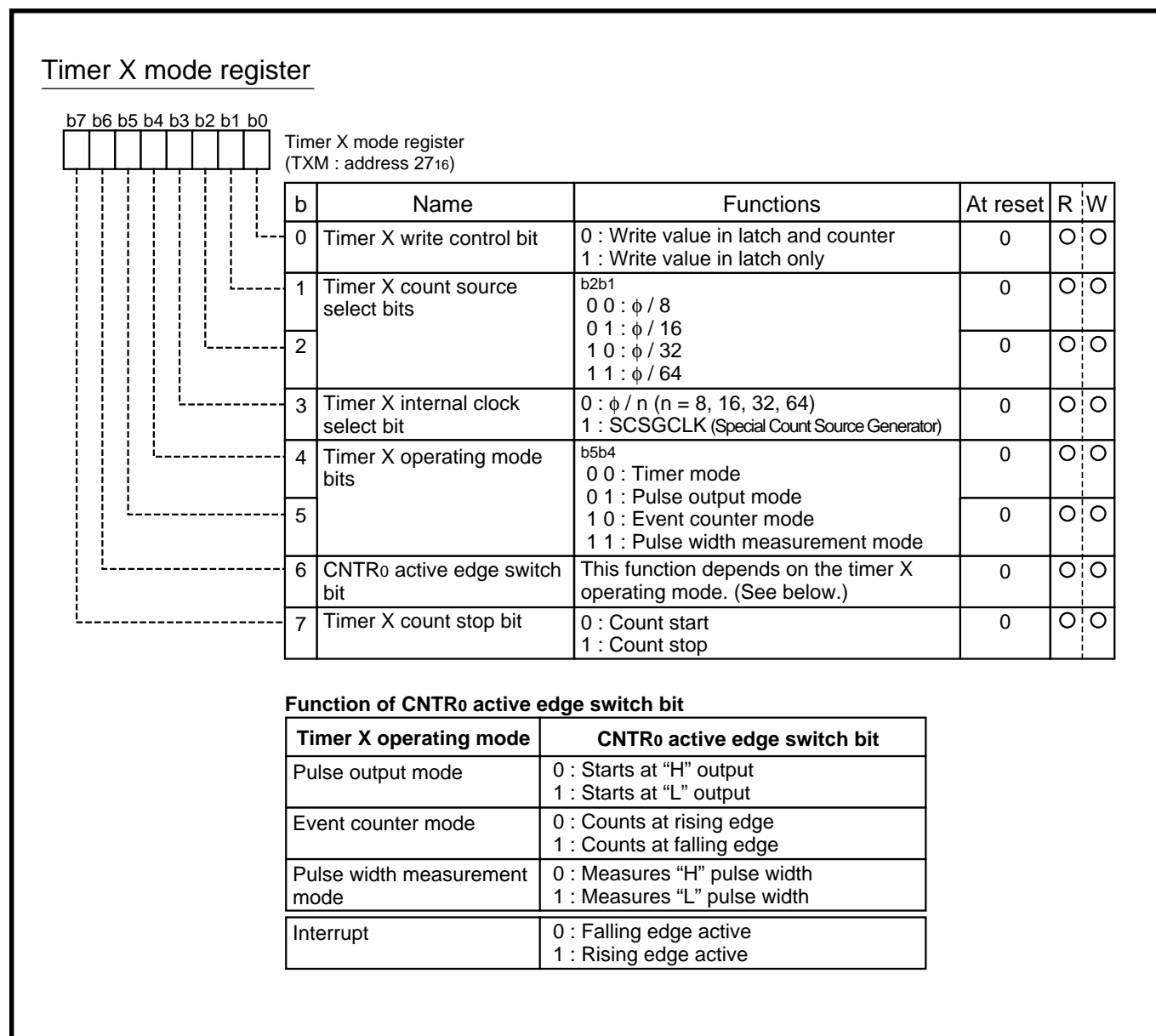


Fig. 3.5.21 Structure of Timer X mode register

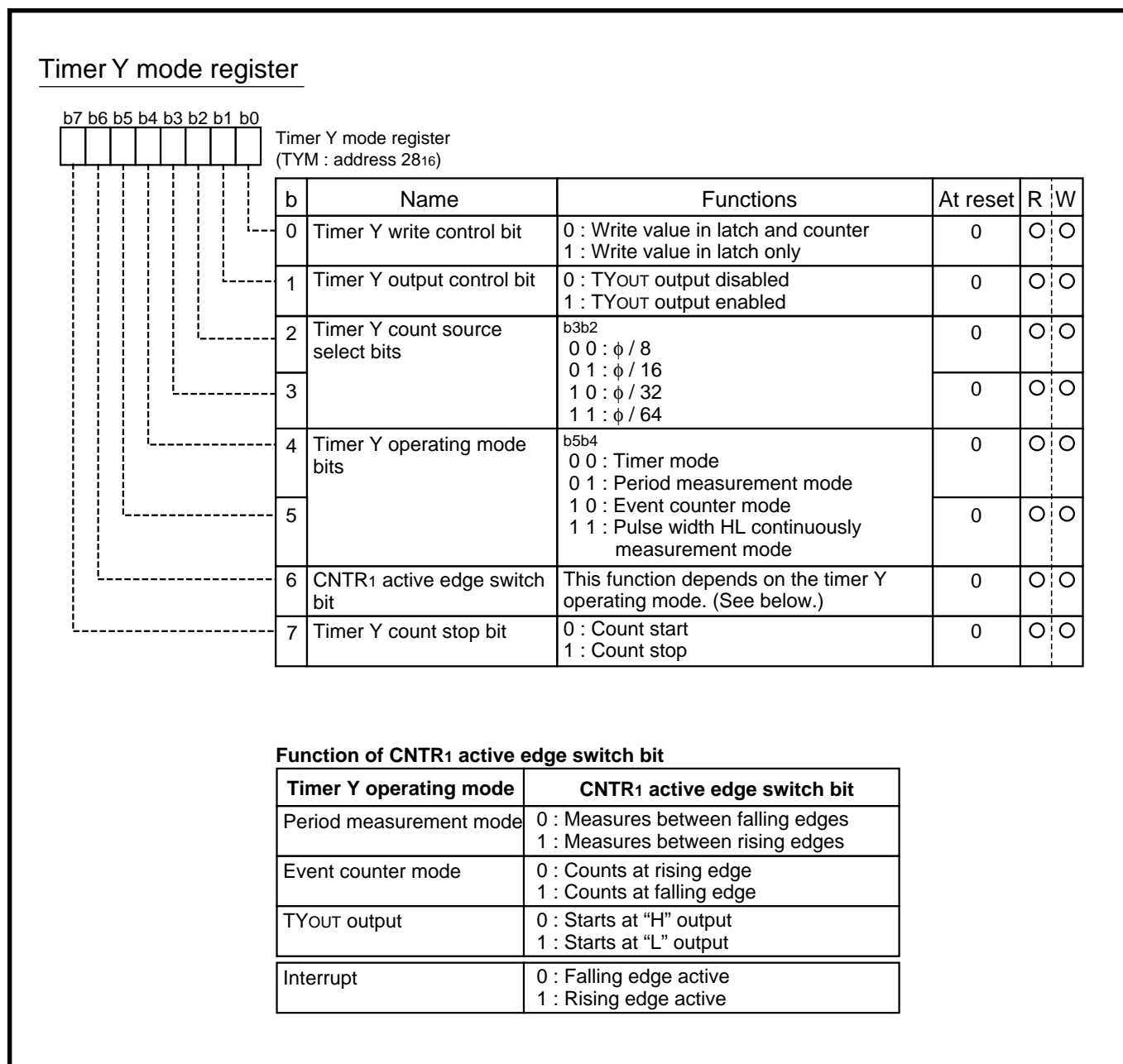


Fig. 3.5.22 Structure of Timer Y mode register

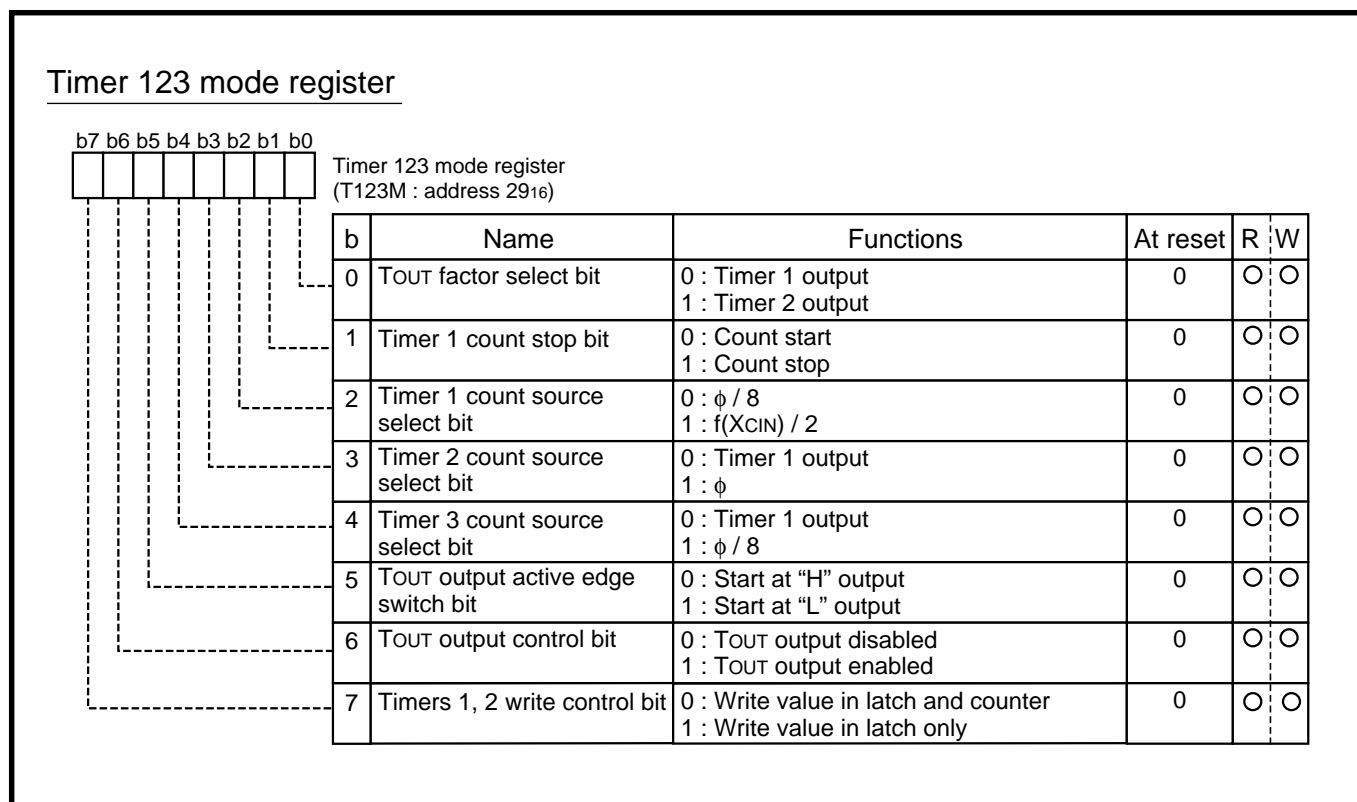


Fig. 3.5.23 Structure of Timer 123 mode register

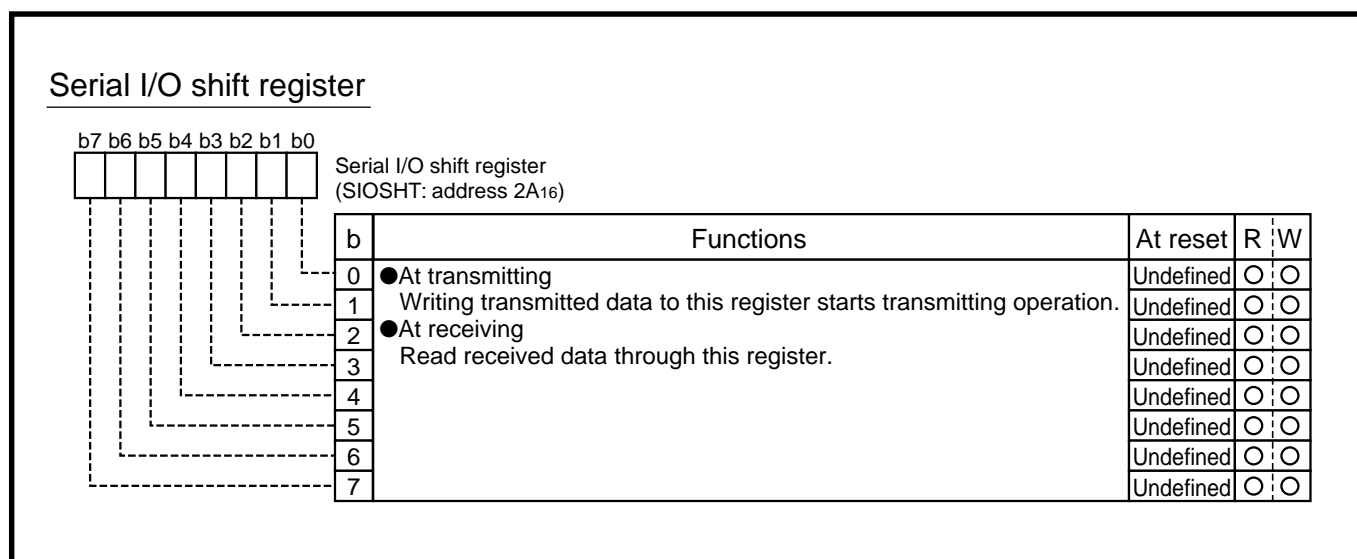


Fig. 3.5.24 Structure of Serial I/O shift register

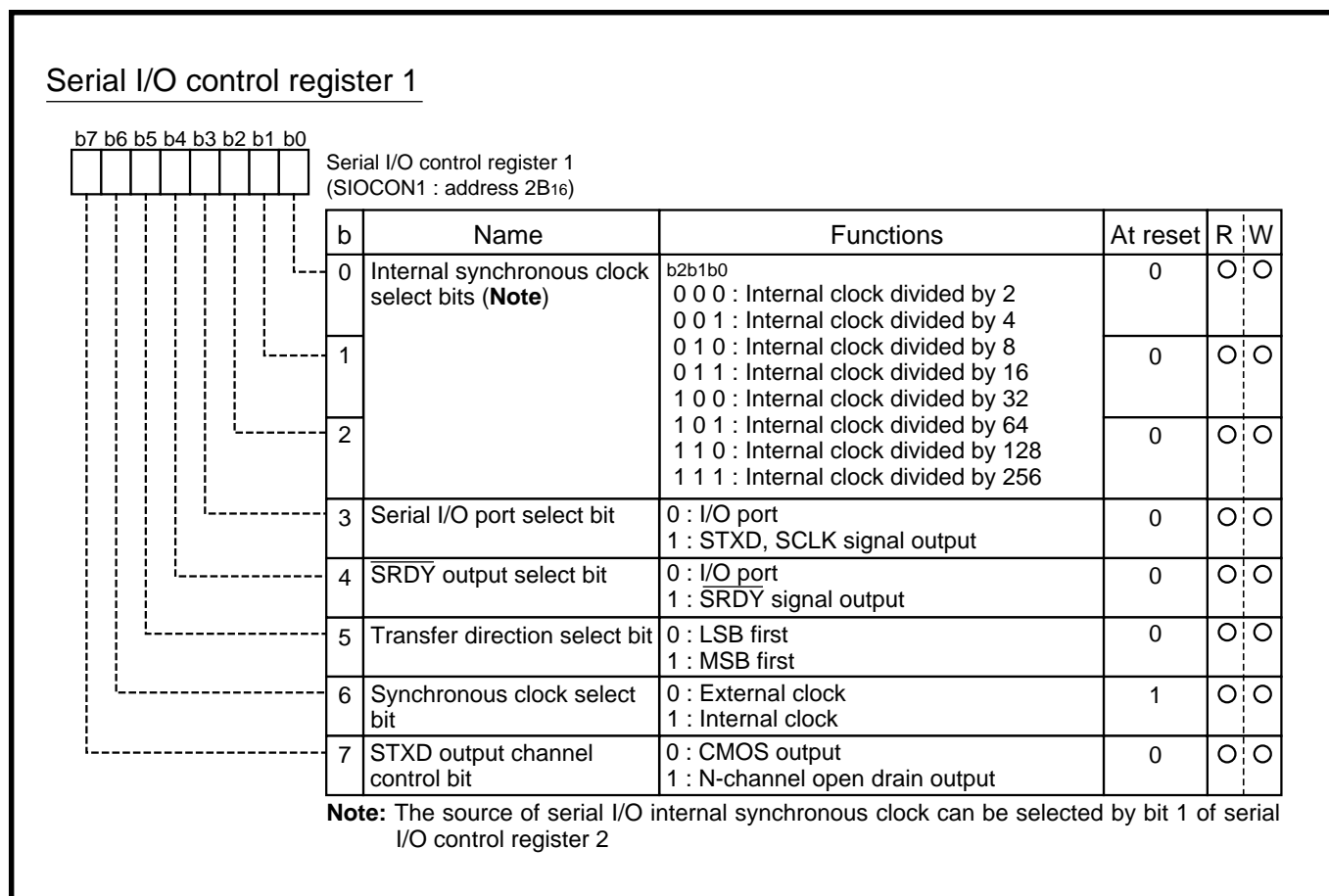


Fig. 3.5.25 Structure of Serial I/O control register 1

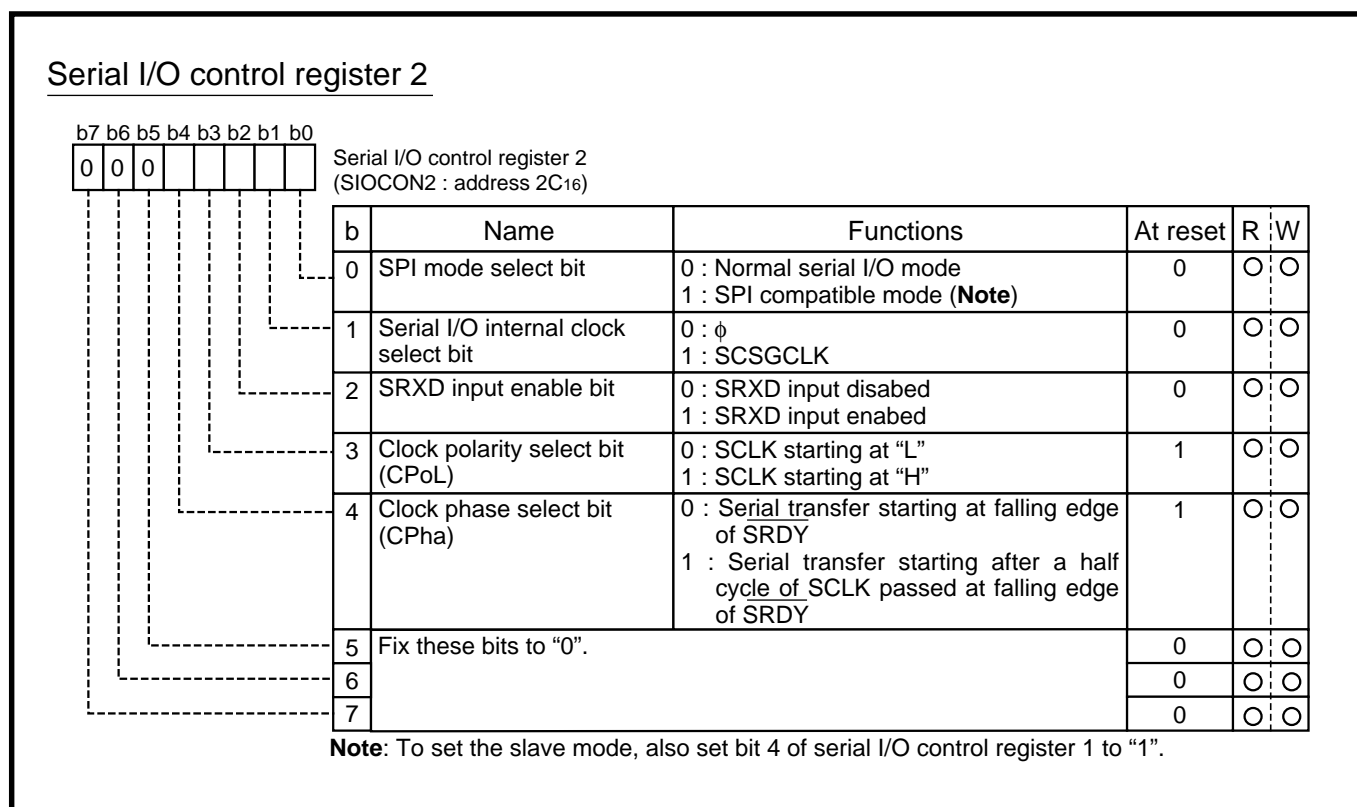


Fig. 3.5.26 Structure of Serial I/O control register 2

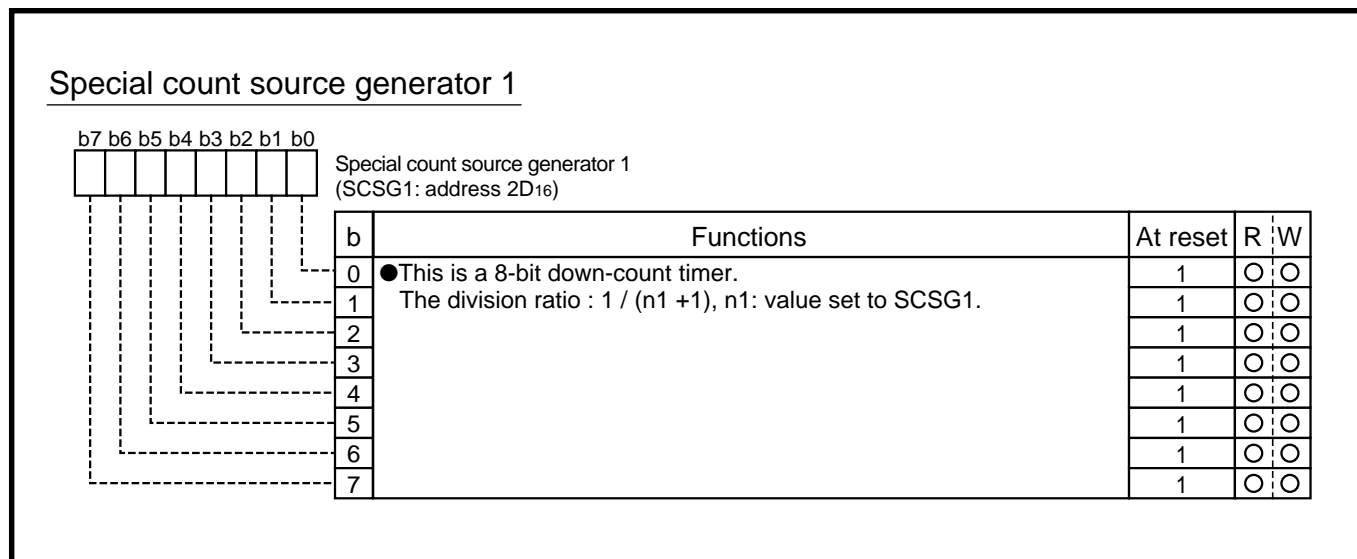


Fig. 3.5.27 Structure of Special count source generator 1

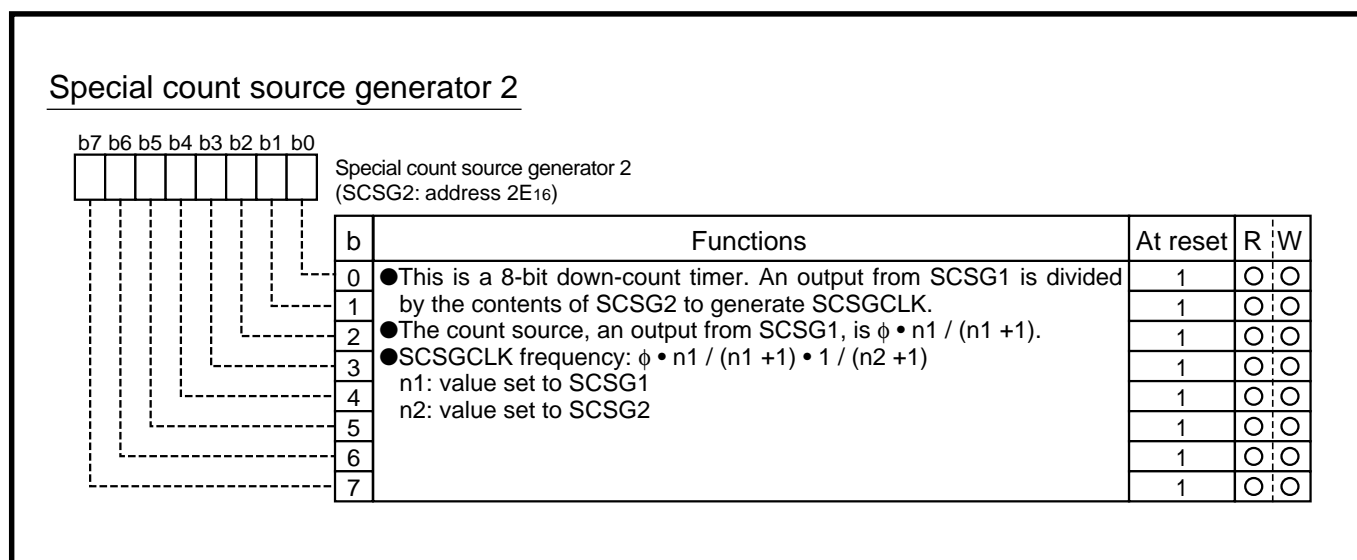


Fig. 3.5.28 Structure of Special count source generator 2



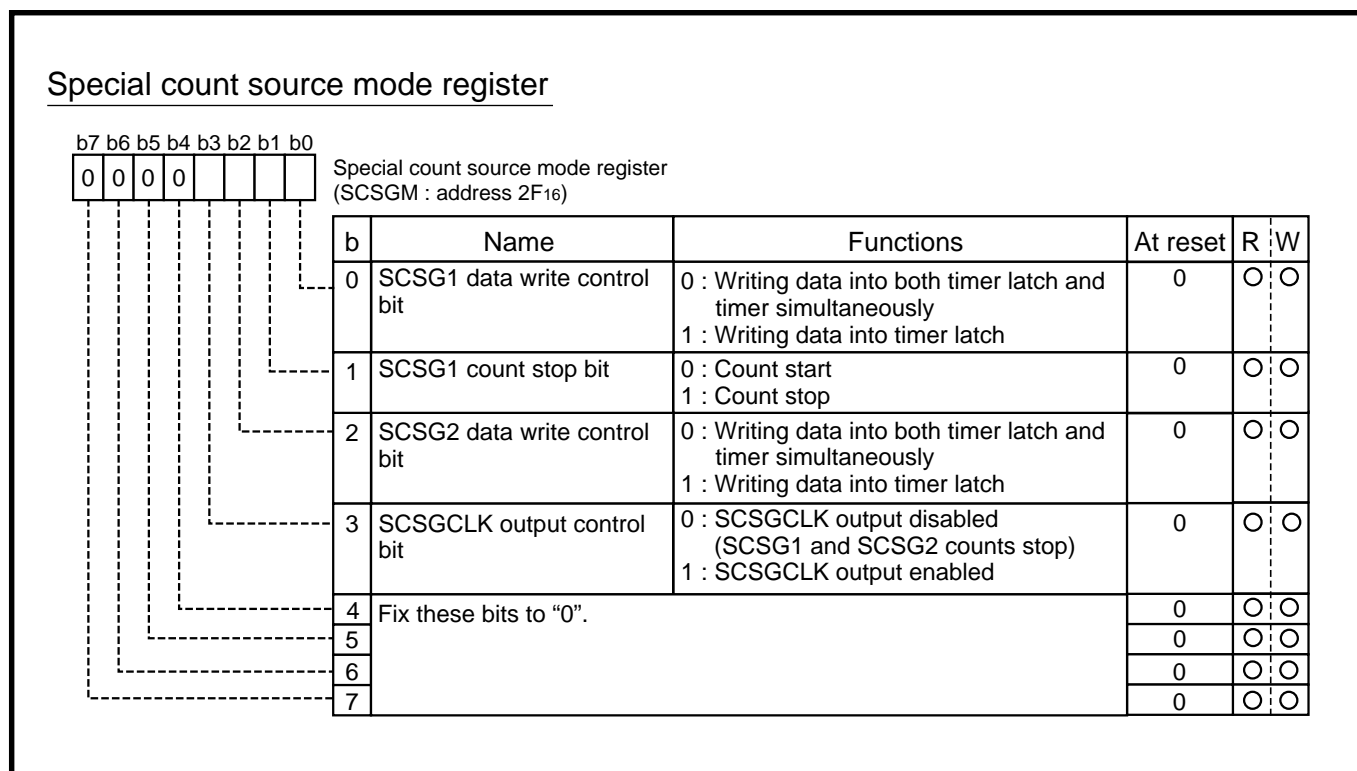


Fig. 3.5.29 Structure of Special count source mode register

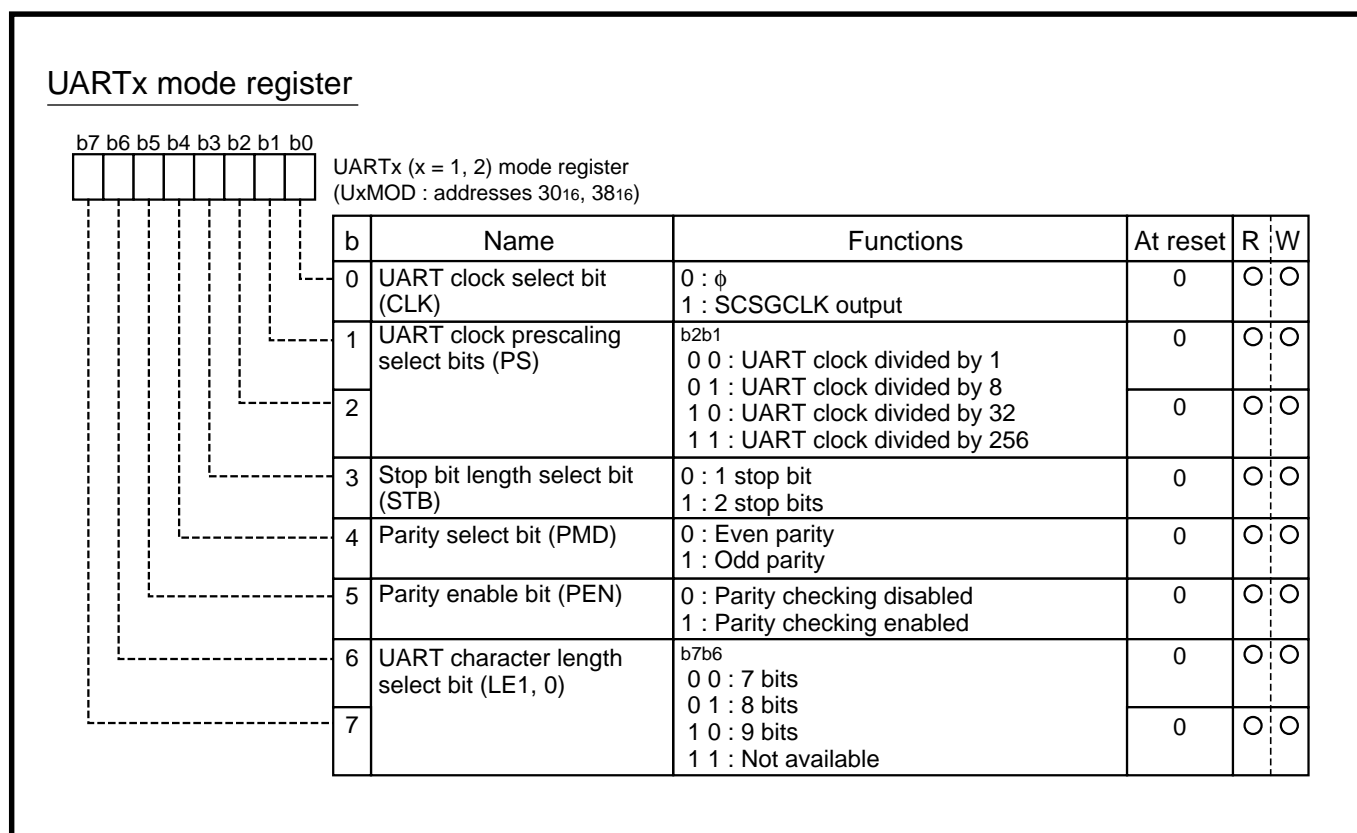


Fig. 3.5.30 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) mode register

### UARTx baud rate generator

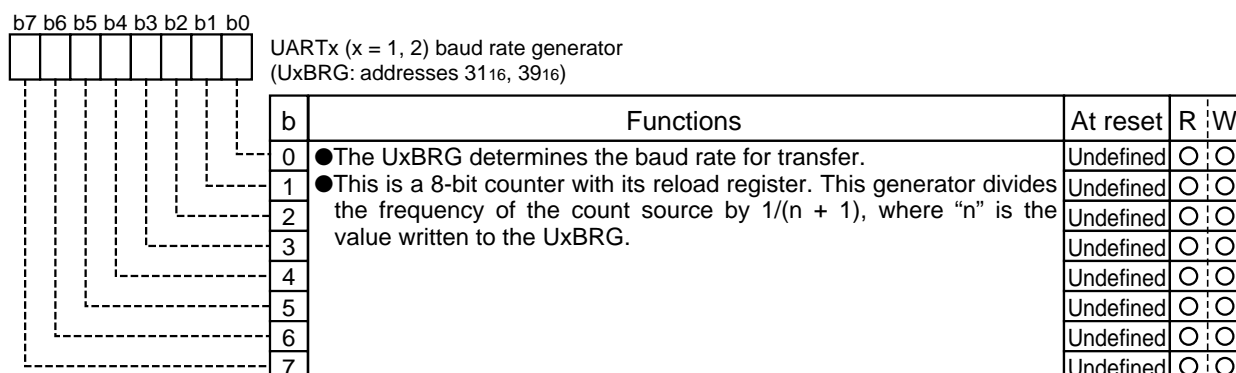


Fig. 3.5.31 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) baud rate generator

### UARTx status register

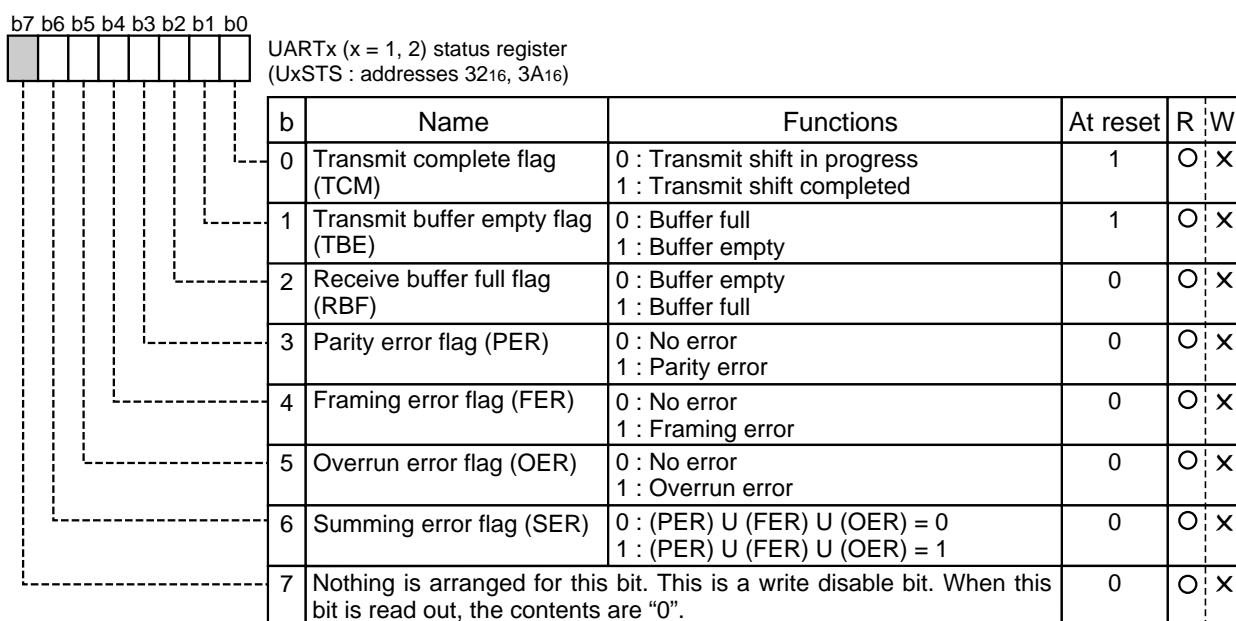


Fig. 3.5.32 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) status register

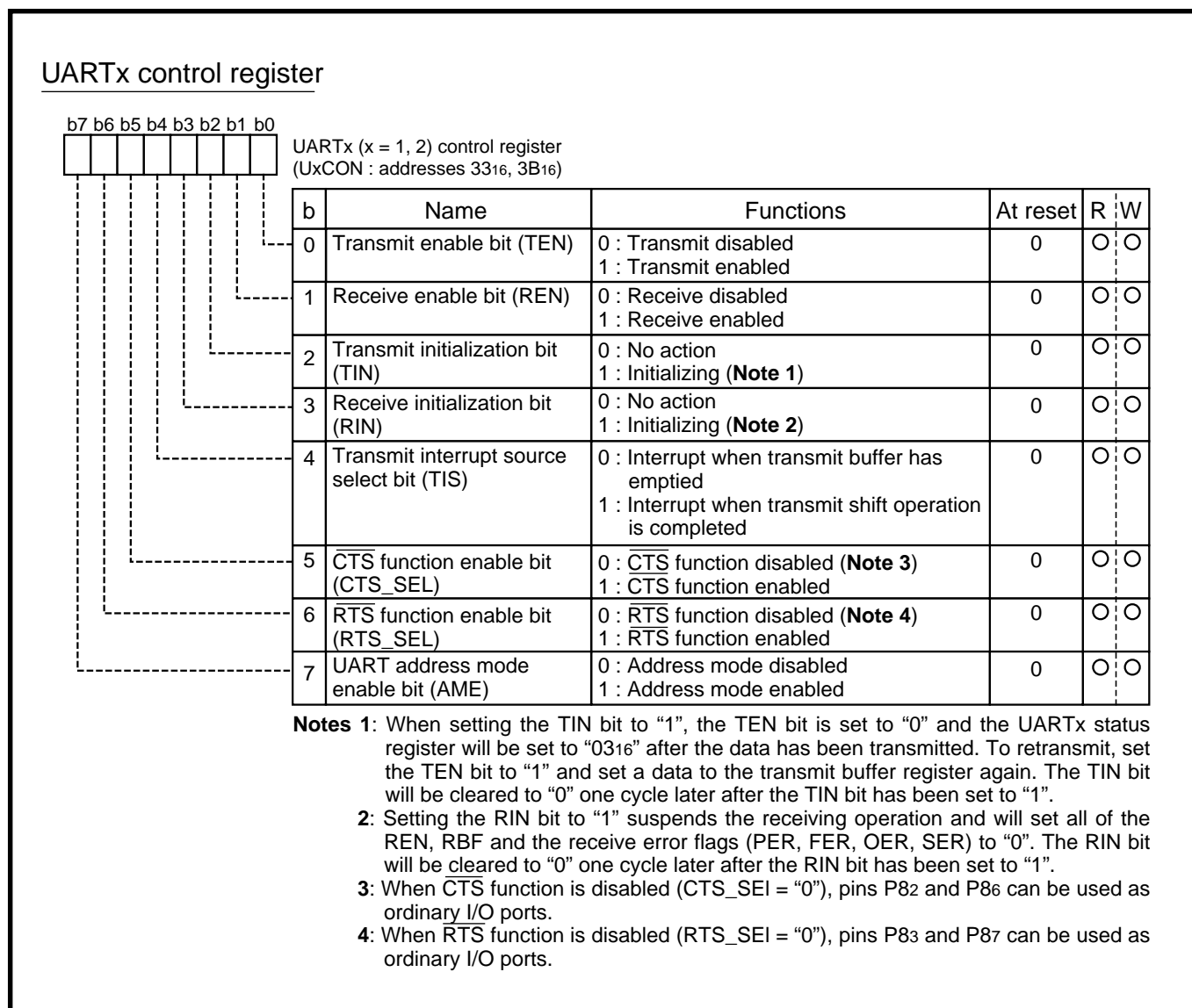


Fig. 3.5.33 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) control register

## UARTx transmit/receive buffer registers 1, 2

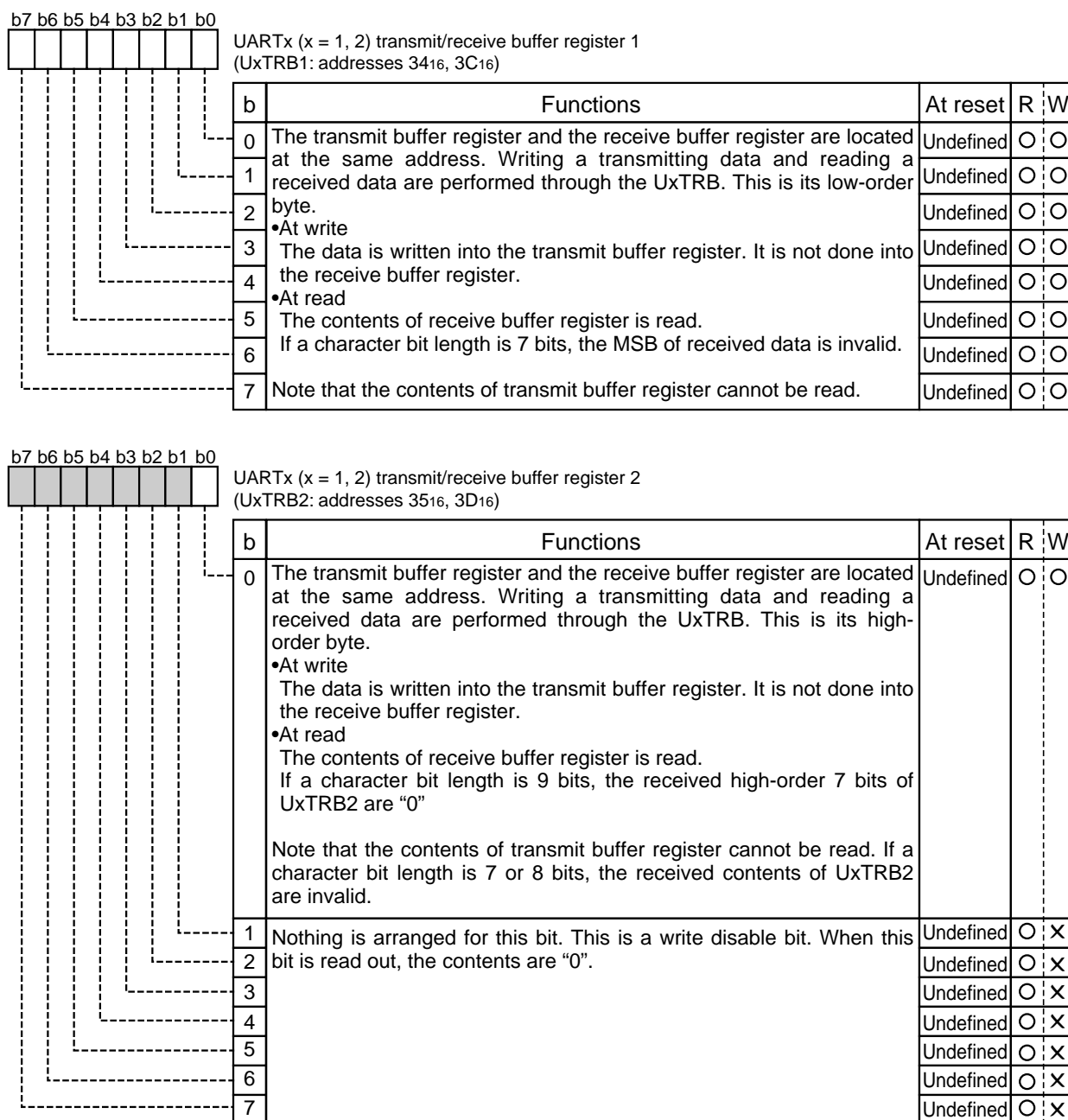


Fig. 3.5.34 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) transmit/receive buffer registers 1, 2

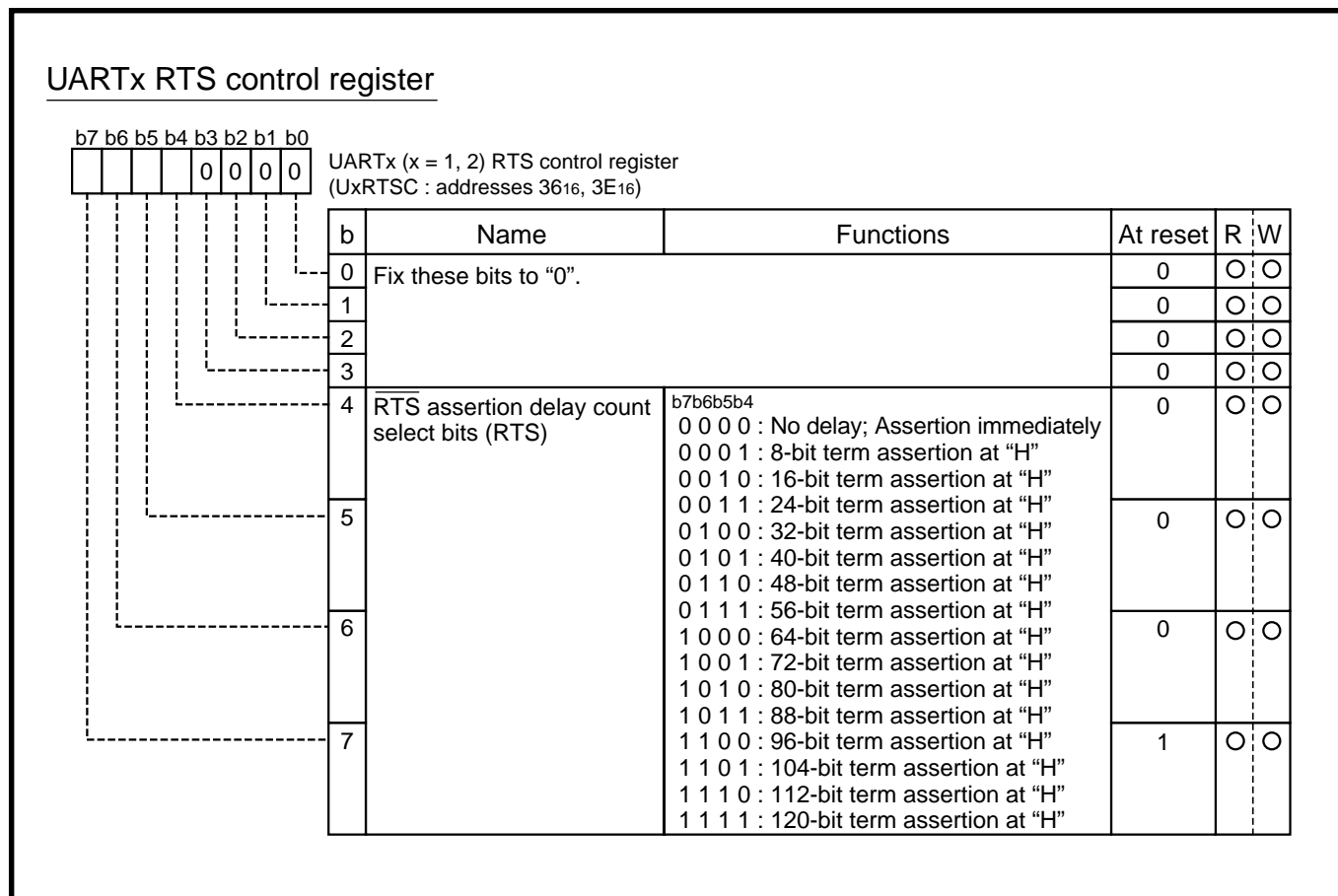


Fig. 3.5.35 Structure of UARTx (x = 1, 2) RTS control register

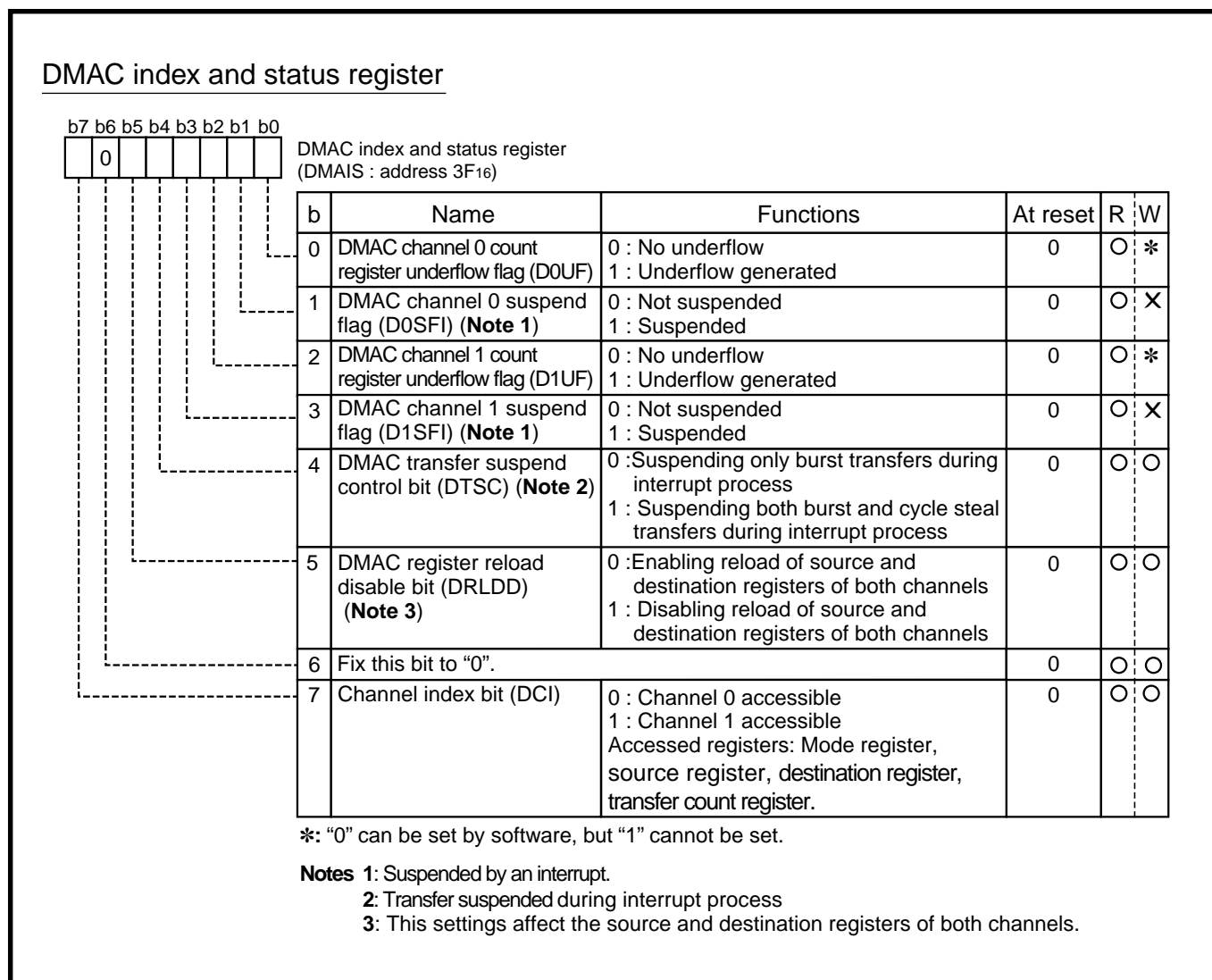


Fig. 3.5.36 Structure of DMAC index and status register

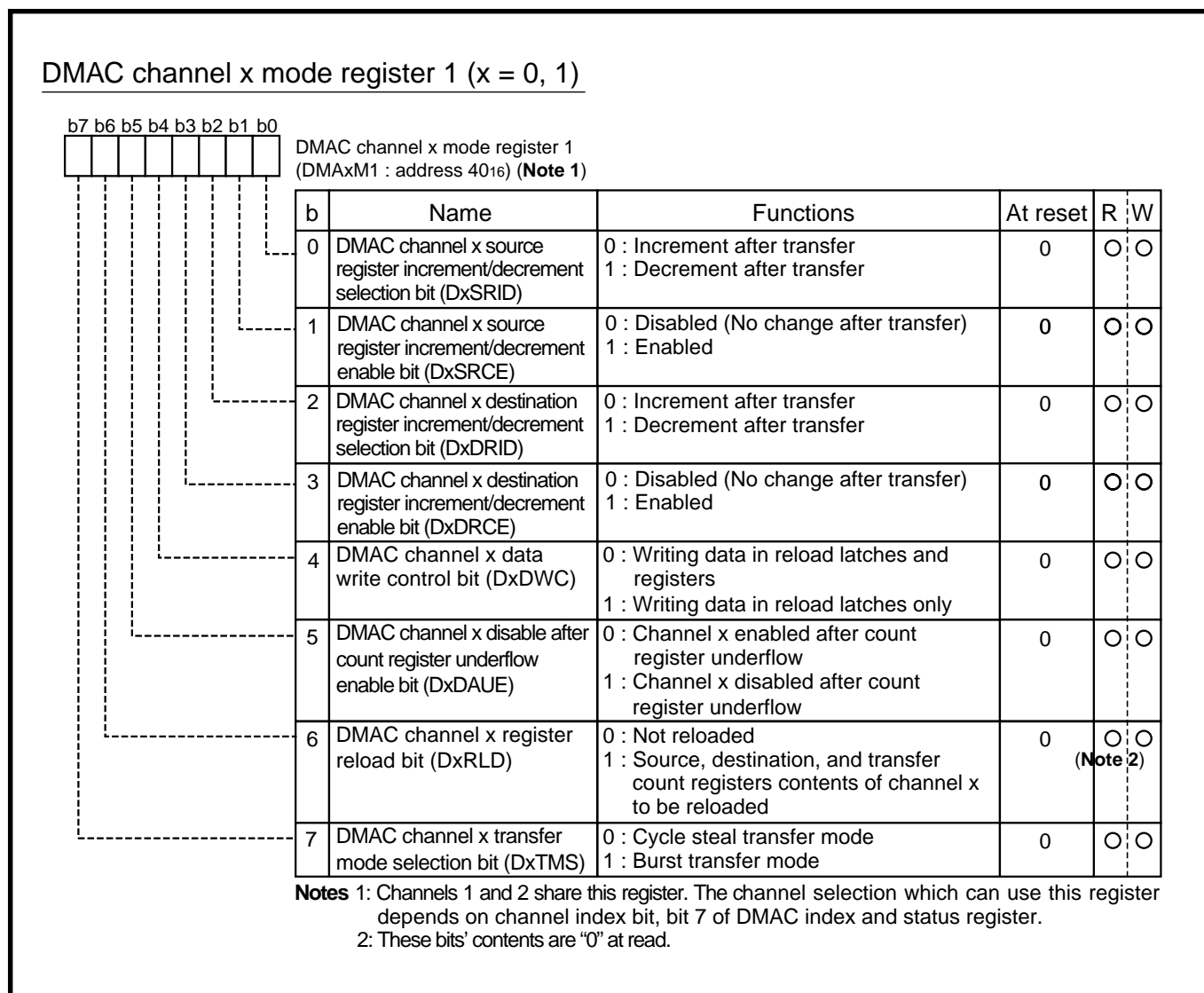


Fig. 3.5.37 Structure of DMAC channel x (x = 0, 1) mode register 1

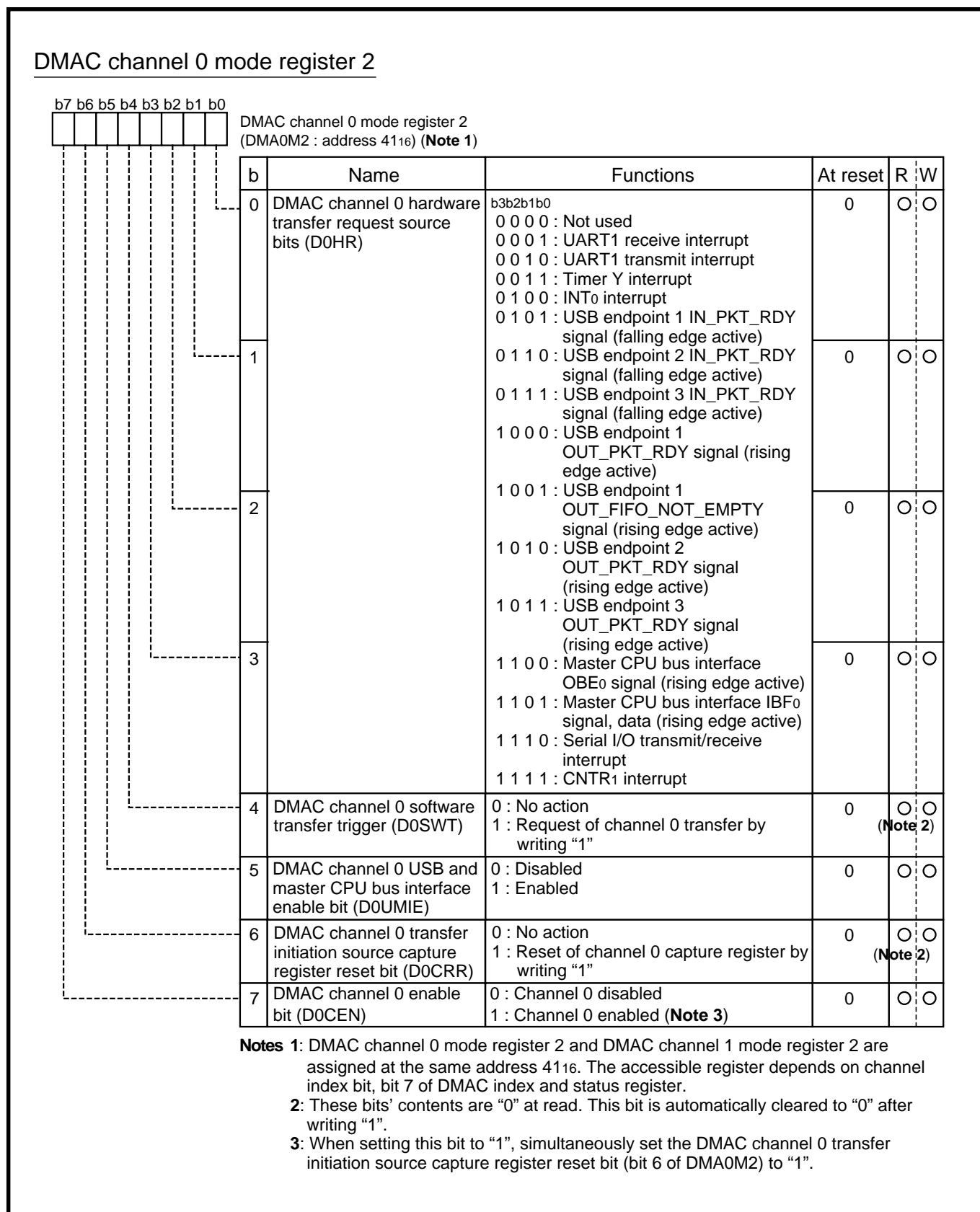


Fig. 3.5.38 Structure of DMAC channel 0 mode register 2



### DMAC channel 1 mode register 2

b7	b6	b5	b4	b3	b2	b1	b0

DMAC channel 1 mode register 2  
(DMA1M2 : address 4116) (**Note 1**)

b	Name	Functions	At reset	R	W
0	DMAC channel 1 hardware transfer request source bits (D1HR)	b3b2b1b0	0	○	○
		0 0 0 0 : Not used			
		0 0 0 1 : UART2 receive interrupt			
		0 0 1 0 : UART2 transmit interrupt			
1		0 0 1 1 : Timer X interrupt	0	○	○
		0 1 0 0 : INT1 interrupt			
		0 1 0 1 : USB endpoint 1 IN_PKT_RDY signal (falling edge active)			
		0 1 1 0 : USB endpoint 2 IN_PKT_RDY signal (falling edge active)			
2		0 1 1 1 : USB endpoint 4 IN_PKT_RDY signal (falling edge active)	0	○	○
		1 0 0 0 : USB endpoint 1 OUT_PKT_RDY signal (rising edge active)			
		1 0 0 1 : USB endpoint 1 OUT_FIFO_NOT_EMPTY signal (rising edge active)			
		1 0 1 0 : USB endpoint 2 OUT_PKT_RDY signal (rising edge active)			
3		1 0 1 1 : USB endpoint 4 OUT_PKT_RDY signal (rising edge active)	0	○	○
		1 1 0 0 : Master CPU bus interface OBE1 signal (rising edge active)			
		1 1 0 1 : Master CPU bus interface IBF1 signal, data (rising edge active)			
		1 1 1 0 : Timer 1 interrupt			
4	DMAC channel 1 software transfer trigger (D1SWT)	1 1 1 1 : CNTR0 interrupt	0	○	○
		0 : No action 1 : Request of channel 1 transfer by writing "1"			
5	DMAC channel 1 USB and master CPU bus interface enable bit (D1UMIE)	0 : Disabled 1 : Enabled	0	○	○
6	DMAC channel 1 transfer initiation source capture register reset bit (D1CRR)	0 : No action 1 : Reset of channel 1 capture register by writing "1"	0	○	○
7	DMAC channel 1 enable bit (D1CEN)	0 : Channel 1 disabled 1 : Channel 1 enabled ( <b>Note 3</b> )	0	○	○

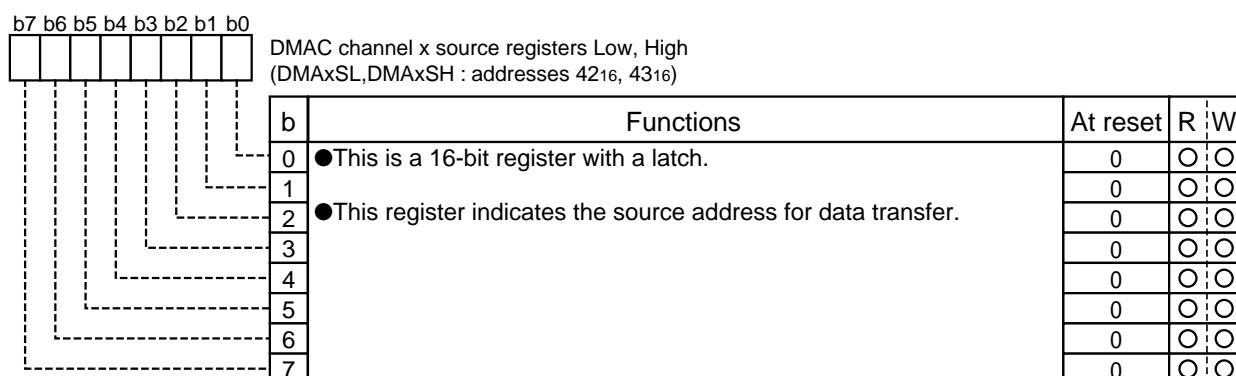
**Notes 1:** DMAC channel 0 mode register 2 and DMAC channel 1 mode register 2 are assigned at the same address 4116. The accessible register depends on channel index bit, bit 7 of DMAC index and status register.

**2:** These bits' contents are "0" at read. This bit is automatically cleared to "0" after writing "1".

**3:** When setting this bit to "1", simultaneously set the DMAC channel 1 transfer initiation source capture register reset bit (bit 6 of DMA1M2) to "1".

Fig. 3.5.39 Structure of DMAC channel 1 mode register 2

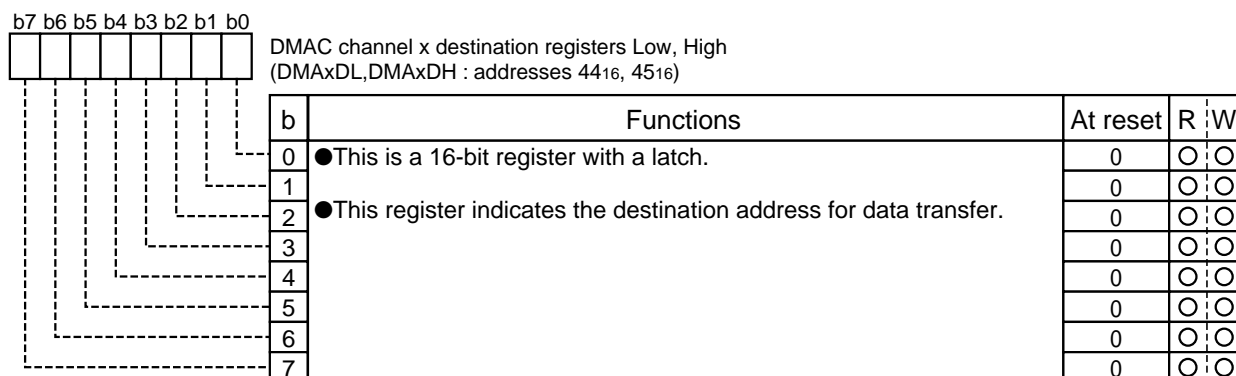
### DMAC channel x source registers Low, High



- Notes**
- 1: DMAC channel x source registers low, high of channels 0 and 1 are assigned at the same addresses. The accessible register depends on channel index bit, bit 7 of DMAC index and status register.
  - 2: Write data into the lower bytes first, and then the higher bytes.
  - 3: Read the contents from the higher bytes first, and then the lower bytes.

Fig. 3.5.40 Structure of DMAC channel x (x = 0, 1) source registers Low, High

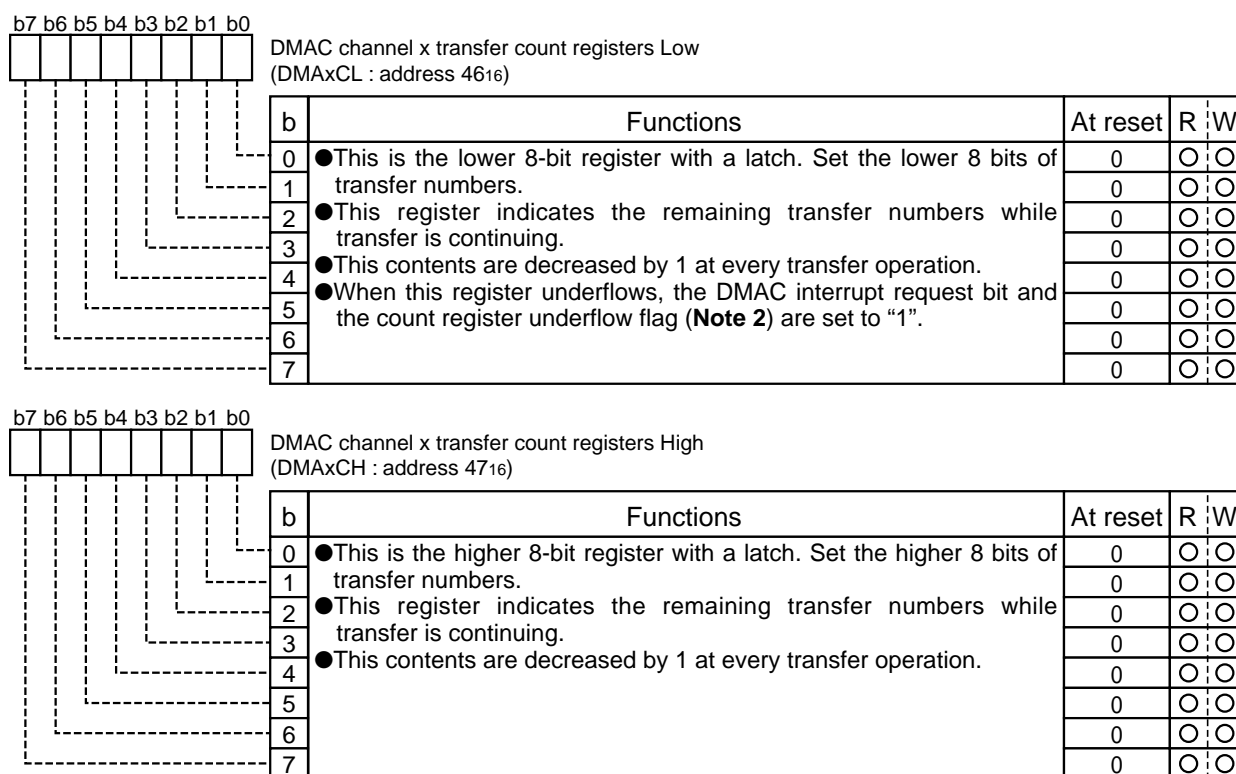
### DMAC channel x destination registers Low, High



- Notes**
- 1: DMAC channel x destination registers low, high of channels 0 and 1 are assigned at the same addresses. The accessible register depends on channel index bit, bit 7 of DMAC index and status register.
  - 2: Write data into the lower bytes first, and then the higher bytes.
  - 3: Read the contents from the higher bytes first, and then the lower bytes.

Fig. 3.5.41 Structure of DMAC channel x (x = 0, 1) destination registers Low, High

### DMAC channel x transfer count registers Low, High



- Notes 1:** DMAC channel x transfer count registers low, high of channels 0 and 1 are assigned at the same addresses 4616 and 4716. The accessible channel depends on channel index bit, bit 7 of DMAC index and status register.
- 2:** Channel 0 used: Bit 0 of DMAC index and status register  
Channel 1 used: Bit 2 of DMAC index and status register
- 3:** Write data into the lower byte first, and then the higher byte.
- 4:** Read the contents from the higher byte first, and then the lower byte.

Fig. 3.5.42 Structure of DMAC channel x (x = 0, 1) transfer count registers Low, High

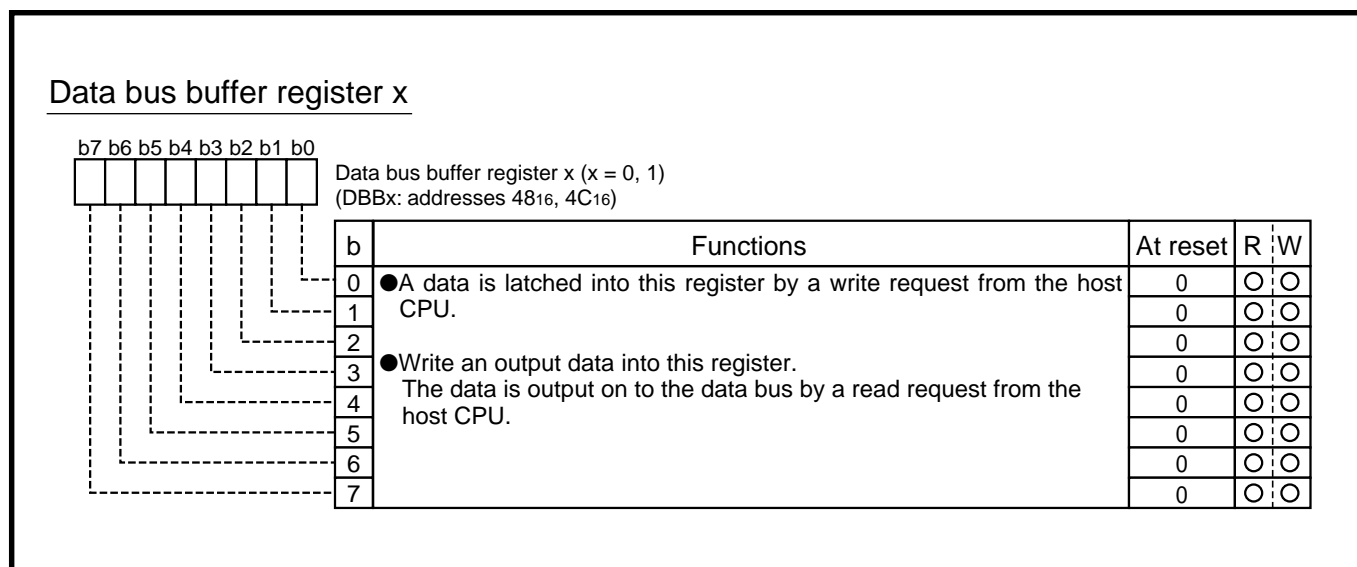


Fig. 3.5.43 Structure of Data bus buffer register x (x = 0, 1)

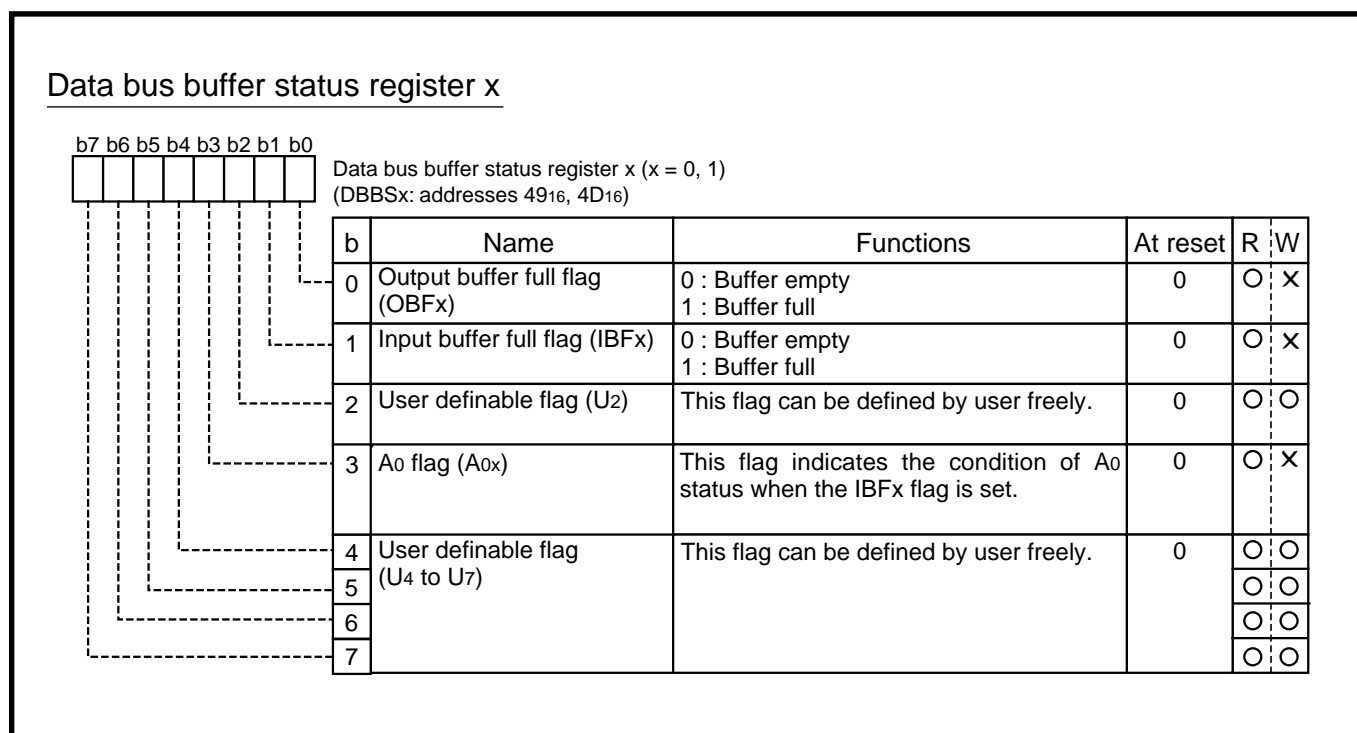


Fig. 3.5.44 Structure of Data bus buffer status register x (x = 0, 1)

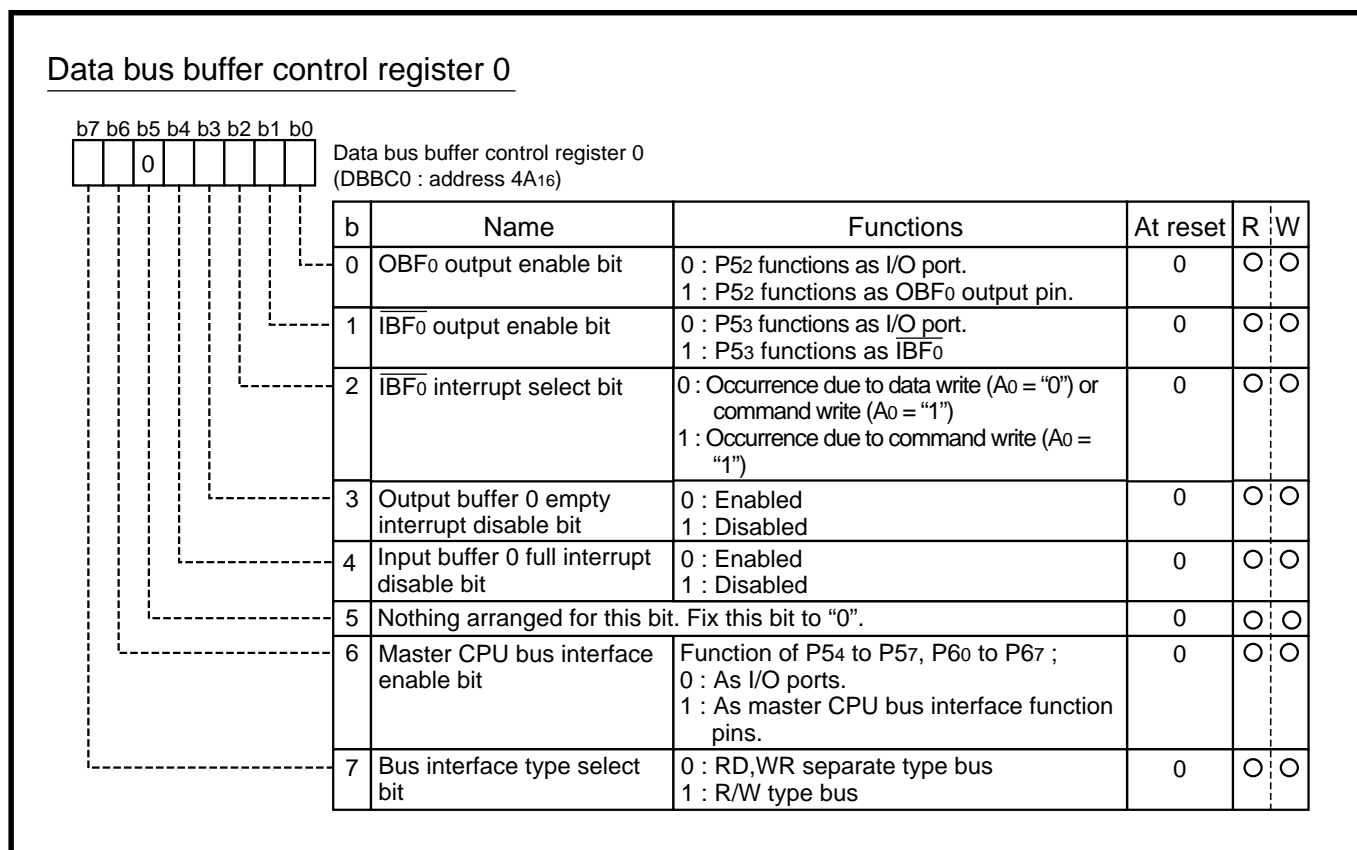


Fig. 3.5.45 Structure of Data bus buffer control register 0

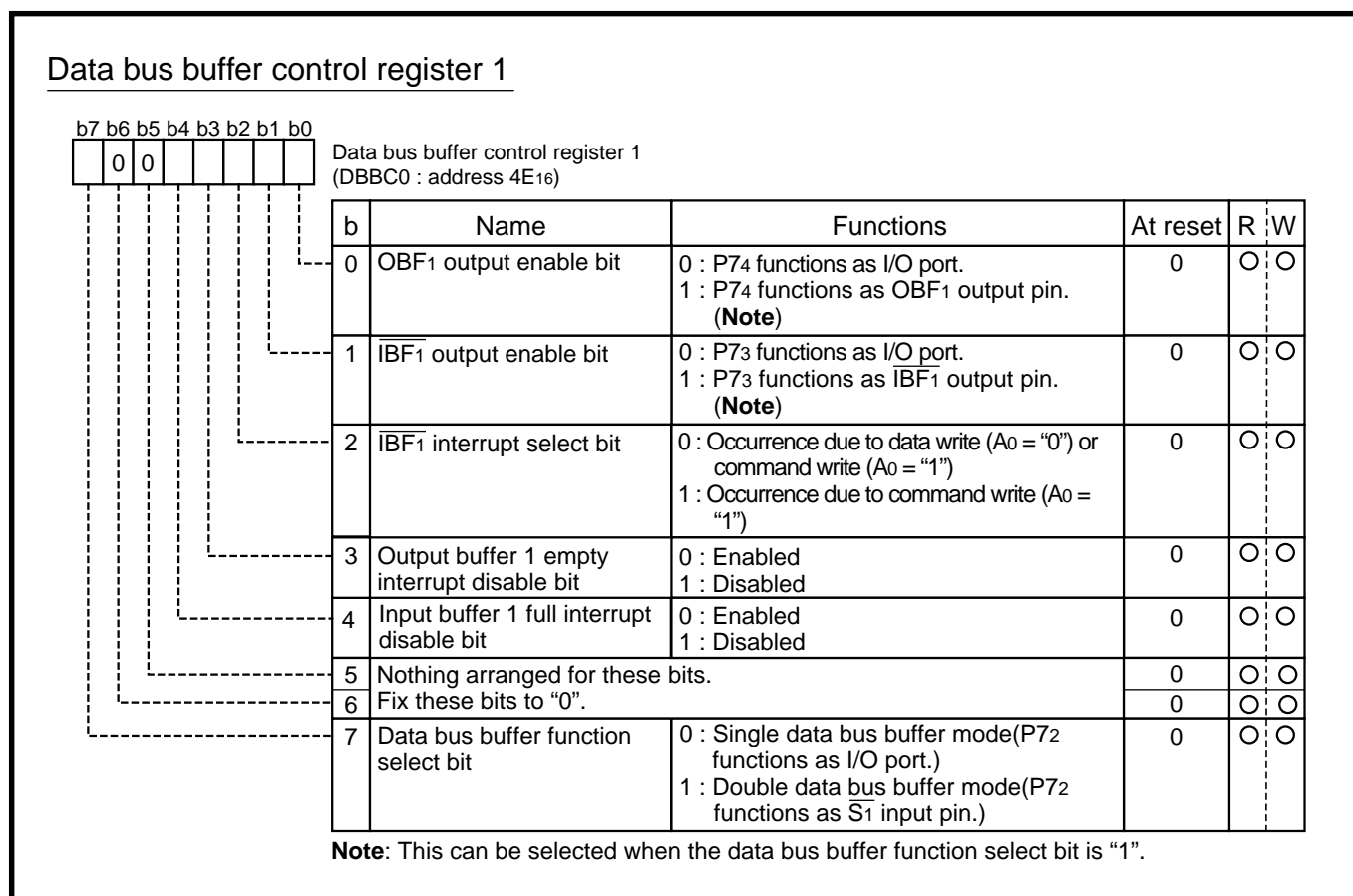


Fig. 3.5.46 Structure of Data bus buffer control register 1

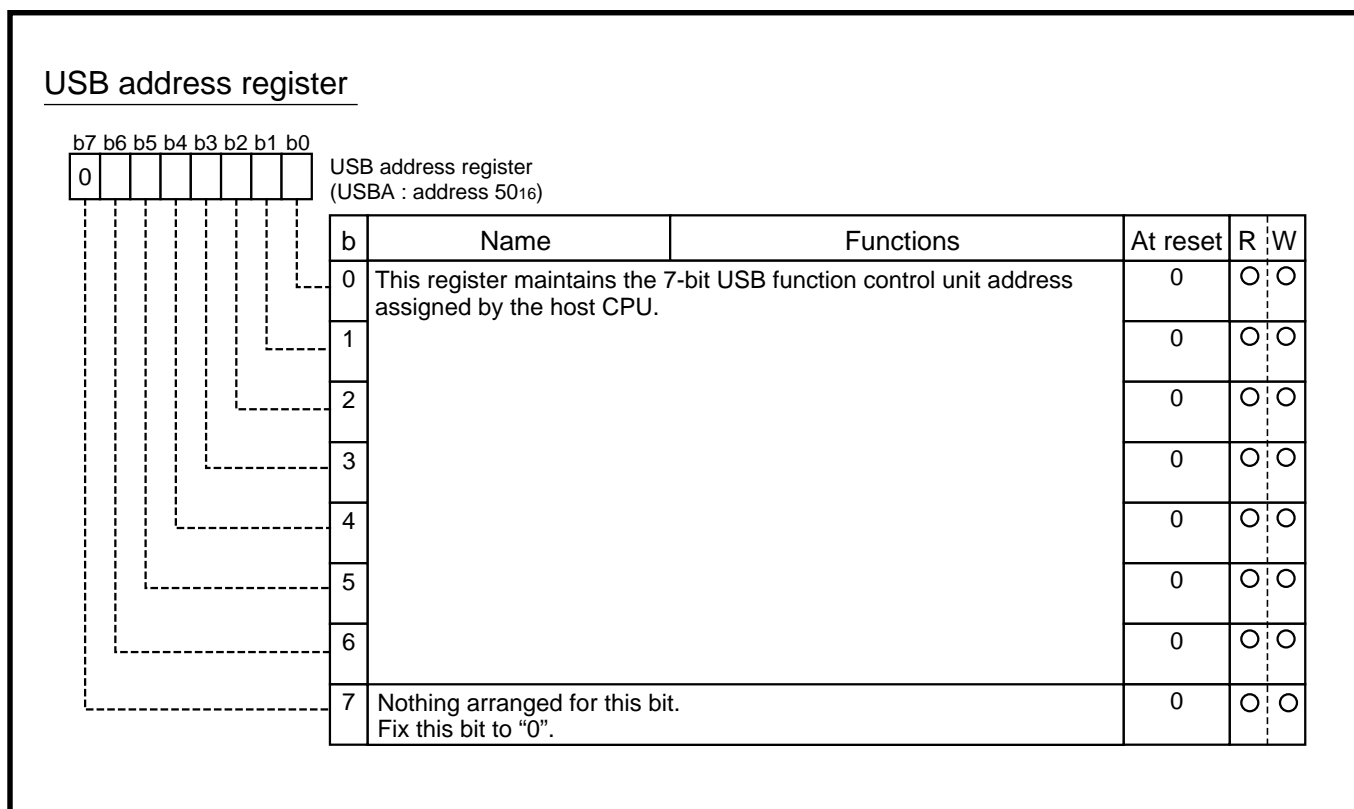


Fig. 3.5.47 Structure of USB address register

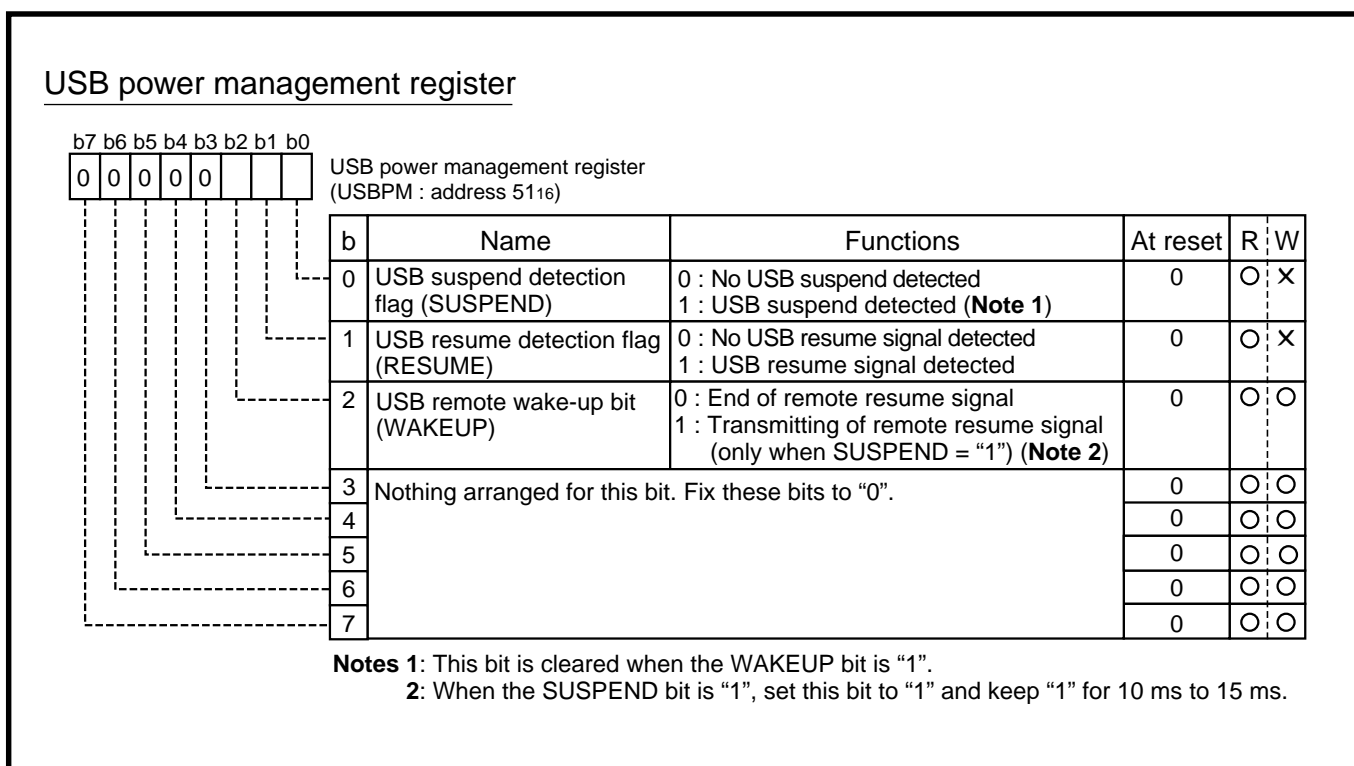


Fig. 3.5.48 Structure of USB power management register

## USB interrupt status register 1

b	Name	Functions	At reset	R	W
0	USB endpoint 0 interrupt status flag (INTST0)	0 : Except the following conditions 1 : Set at any one of the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A packet data of endpoint 0 is successfully received</li> <li>• A packet data of endpoint 0 is successfully sent</li> <li>• DATA_END bit of endpoint 0 is cleared to "0"</li> <li>• FORCE_STALL bit of endpoint 0 is set to "1"</li> <li>• SETUP_END bit of endpoint 0 is set to "1".</li> </ul>	0	○	*
1	Nothing arranged for this bit. Fix this bit to "0".		0	○	○
2	USB endpoint 1 IN interrupt status flag (INTST2)	0 : Except the following conditions 1 : Set at which of the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A packet data of endpoint 1 is successfully sent</li> <li>• UNDER_RUN bit of endpoint 1 is set to "1".</li> </ul>	0	○	*
3	USB endpoint 1 OUT interrupt status flag (INTST3)	0 : Except the following conditions 1 : Set at any one of the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A packet data of endpoint 1 is successfully received</li> <li>• OVER_RUN bit of endpoint 1 is set to "1"</li> <li>• FORCE_STALL bit of endpoint 1 is set to "1".</li> </ul>	0	○	*
4	USB endpoint 2 IN interrupt status flag (INTST4)	0 : Except the following conditions 1 : Set at which of the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A packet data of endpoint 2 is successfully sent</li> <li>• UNDER_RUN bit of endpoint 2 is set to "1".</li> </ul>	0	○	*
5	USB endpoint 2 OUT interrupt status flag (INTST5)	0 : Except the following conditions 1 : Set at any one of the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A packet data of endpoint 2 is successfully received</li> <li>• OVER_RUN bit of endpoint 2 is set to "1"</li> <li>• FORCE_STALL bit of endpoint 2 is set to "1".</li> </ul>	0	○	*
6	USB endpoint 3 IN interrupt status flag (INTST6)	0 : Except the following conditions 1 : Set at which of the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A packet data of endpoint 3 is successfully sent</li> <li>• UNDER_RUN bit of endpoint 3 is set to "1".</li> </ul>	0	○	*
7	USB endpoint 3 OUT interrupt status flag (INTST7)	0 : Except the following conditions 1 : Set at any one of the following conditions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A packet data of endpoint 3 is successfully received</li> <li>• OVER_RUN bit of endpoint 3 is set to "1"</li> <li>• FORCE_STALL bit of endpoint 3 is set to "1".</li> </ul>	0	○	*

\*: "0" can be set by software, but "1" cannot be set.  
To clear the bit set to "1", write "1" to the bit.

Fig. 3.5.49 Structure of USB interrupt status register 1

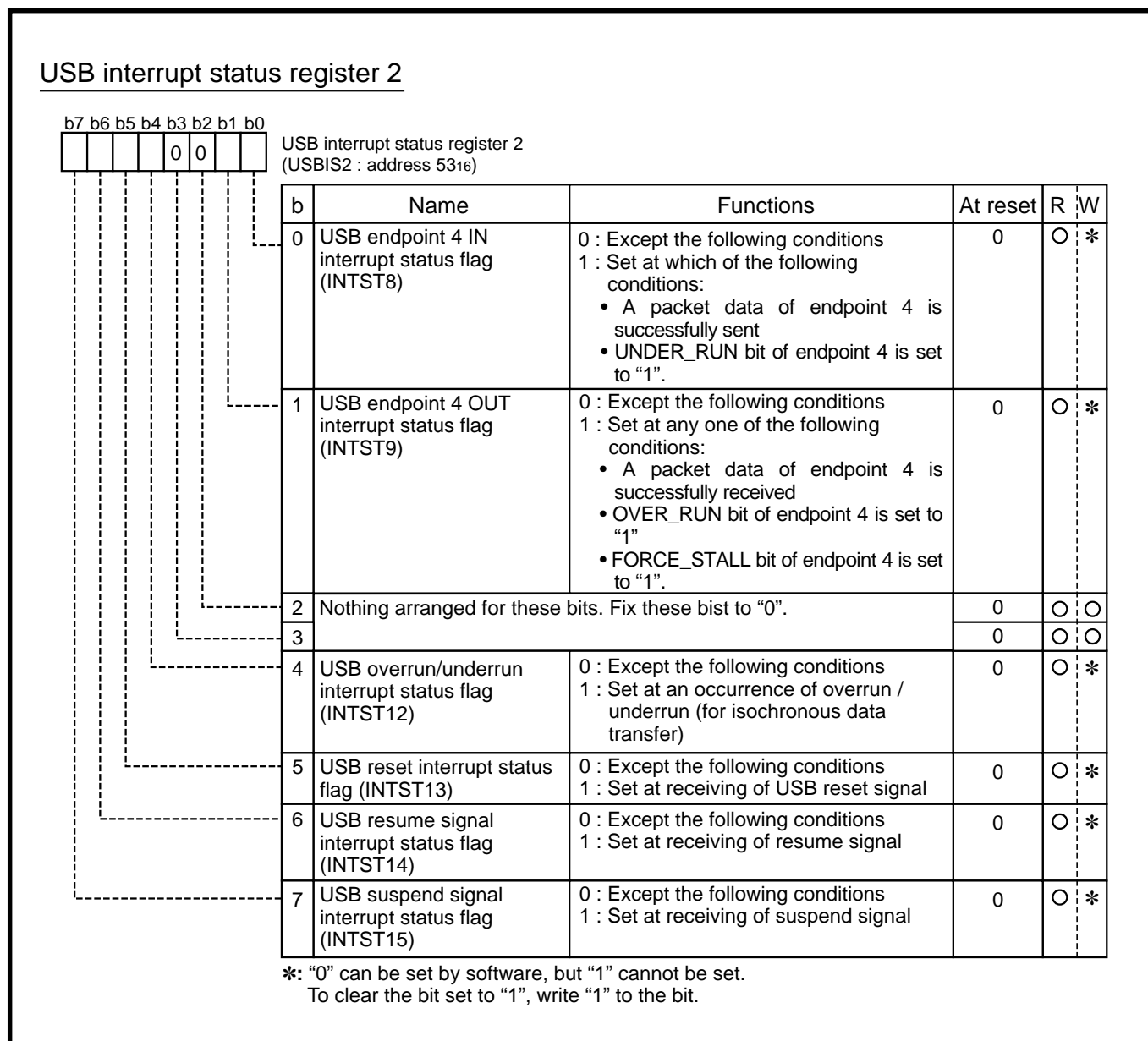


Fig. 3.5.50 Structure of USB interrupt status register 2



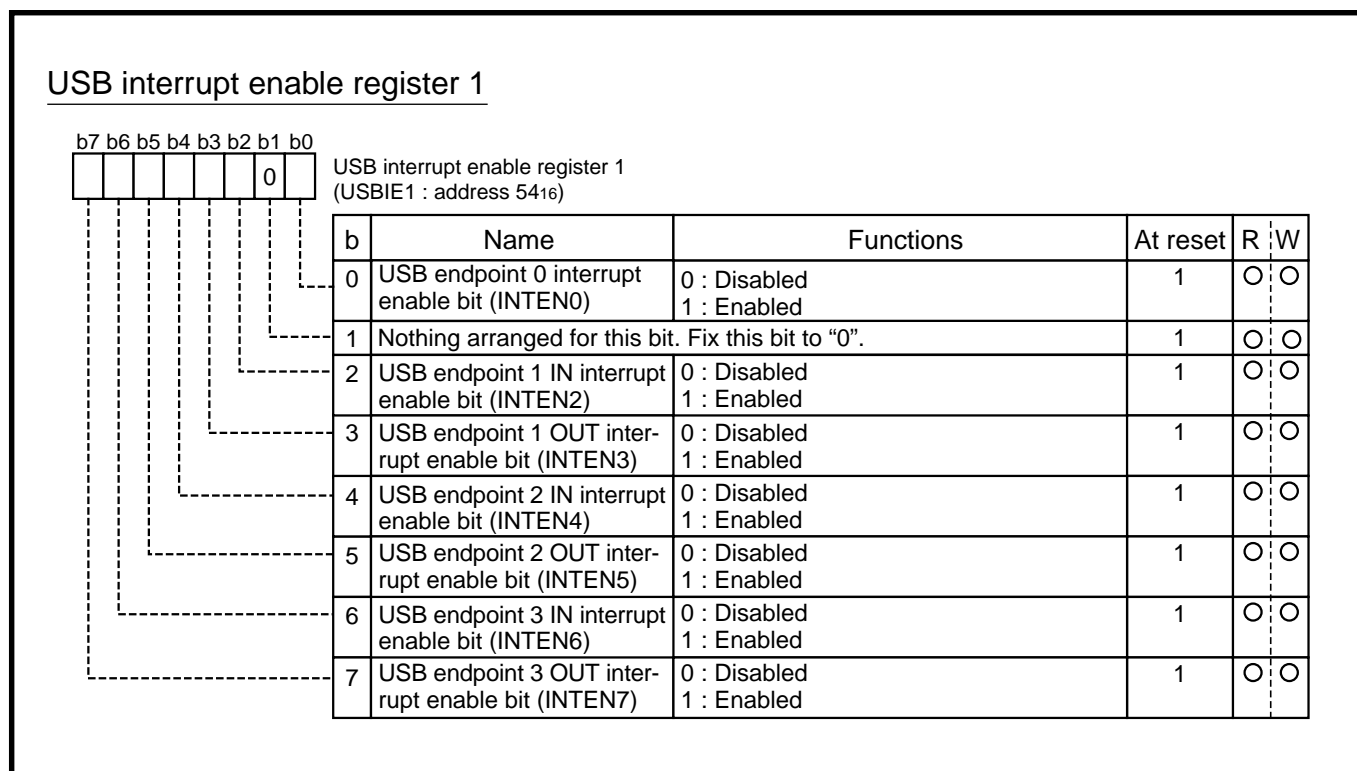


Fig. 3.5.51 Structure of USB interrupt enable register 1

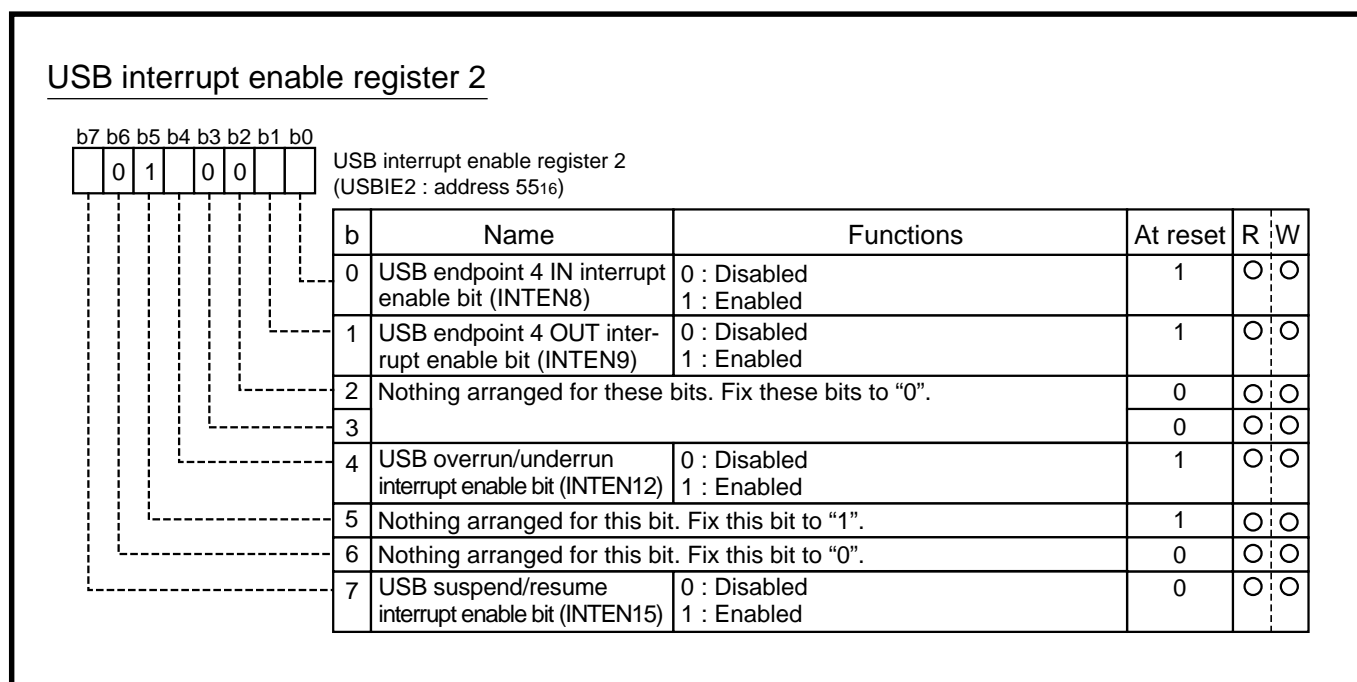


Fig. 3.5.52 Structure of USB interrupt enable register 2

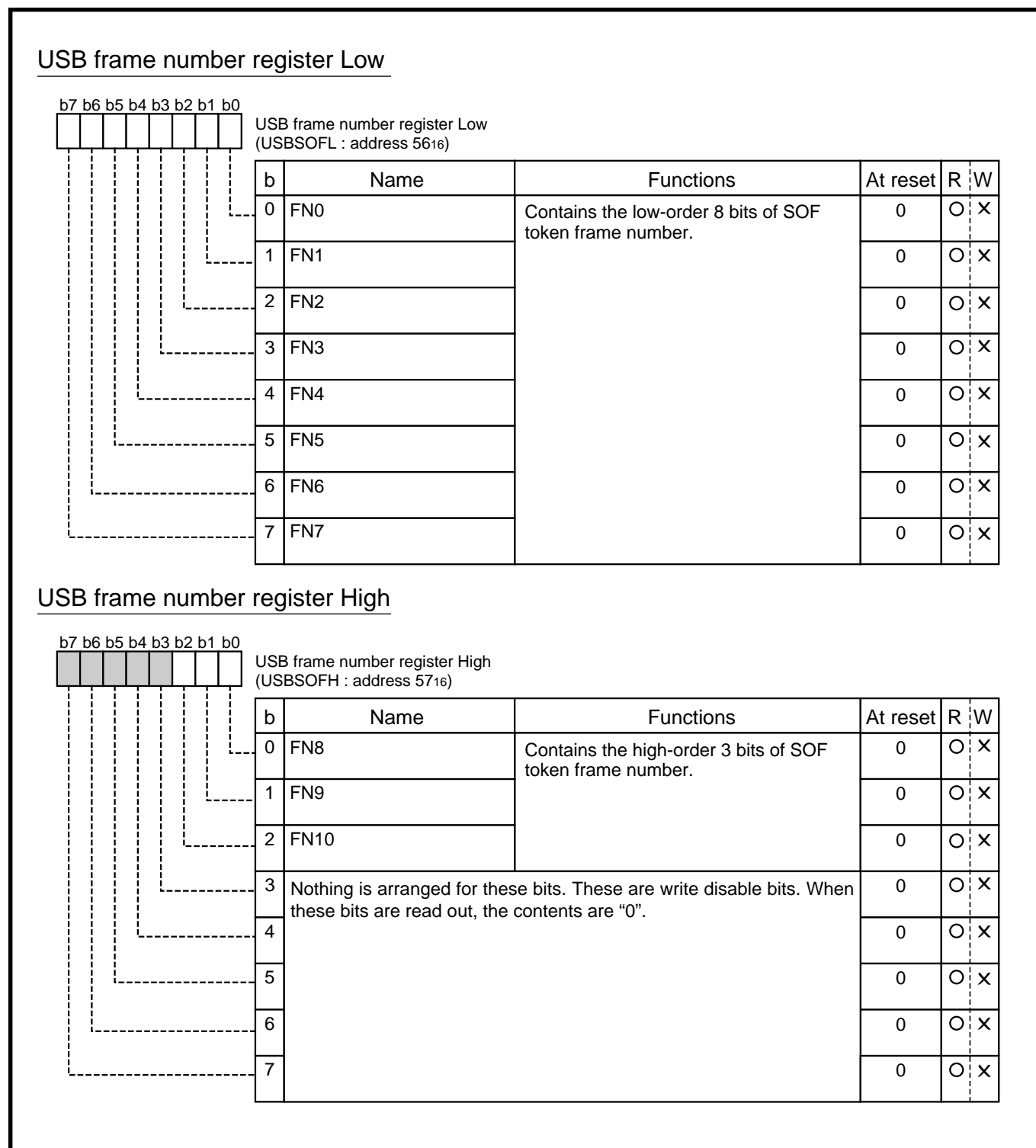


Fig. 3.5.53 Structure of USB frame number registers Low, High

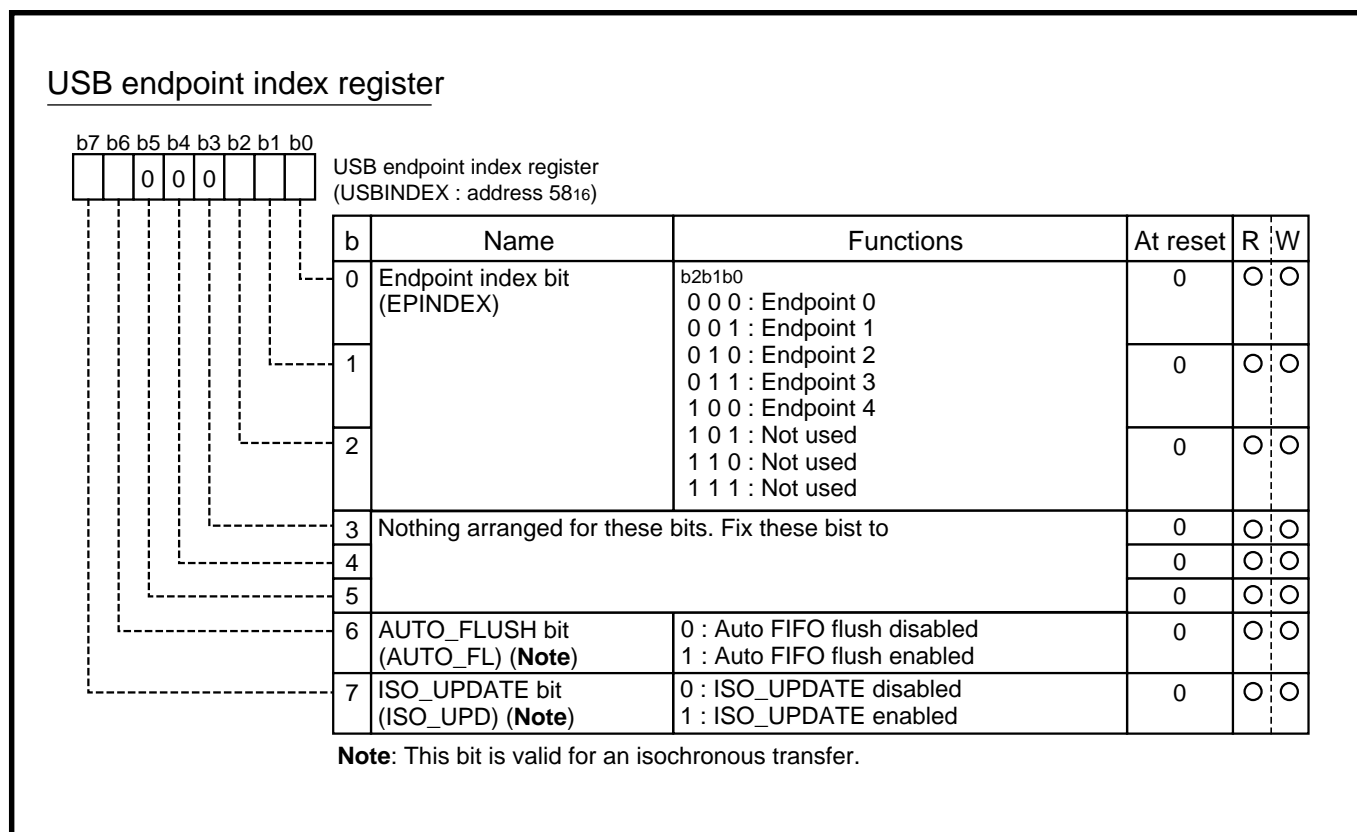


Fig. 3.5.54 Structure of USB endpoint index register

## USB endpoint 0 IN control register

b	Name	Functions	At reset	R	W
0	OUT_PKT_RDY flag (IN0CSR0) *2	0: Except the following condition (Cleared to "0" by writing "1" into SERVICED_OUT_PKT_RDY bit) 1: End of a data packet reception	0	○	○
1	IN_PKT_RDY bit (IN0CSR1) *1	0: End of a data packet transmission 1: Write "1" at completion of writing a data packet into IN FIFO.	0	○	○
2	SEND_STALL bit (IN0CSR2) *3, *4	0: Except the following condition 1: Transmitting STALL handshake signal	0	○	○
3	DATA_END bit (IN0CSR3) *1	0: Except the following condition (Cleared to "0" after completion of status phase) 1: Write "1" at completion of writing or reading the last data packet to/from FIFO.	0	○	○
4	FORCE_STALL flag (IN0CSR4) *2, *3	0: Except the following condition 1: Protocol error detected	0	○	○
5	SETUP_END flag (IN0CSR5) (Note 1) *2	0: Except the following condition (Cleared to "0" by writing "1" into SERVICED_SETUP_END bit) 1: Control transfer ends before the specific length of data is transferred during the data phase.	0	○	○
6	SERVICED_OUT_PKT_RDY bit (IN0CSR6)	0: Except the following condition 1: Writing "1" to this bit clears OUT_PKT_RDY flag to "0".	0	○	○
7	SERVICED_SETUP_END bit (IN0CSR7)	0: Except the following condition 1: Writing "1" to this bit clears SETUP_END flag to "0".	0	○	○

## USB endpoint 1, 2, 3, 4 IN control register

b	Name	Functions	At reset	R	W
0	INT_PKT_RDY bit (INXCSR0) *1	0: End of a data packet transmission 1: Write "1" at completion of writing a data packet into IN FIFO. (Note 2)	0	○	○
1	UNDER_RUN flag (INXCSR1) (In isochronous data transfer) *2, *3	0: No FIFO underrun 1: FIFO underrun occurred (USB overrun/underrun interrupt status flag is set to "1".)	0	○	○
2	SEND_STALL bit (INXCSR2) *3, *4	0: Except the following condition 1: Transmitting STALL handshake signal	0	○	○
3	ISO/TOGGLE_INIT bit (INXCSR3) *3, *4	0: Except the following condition 1: Initializing to endpoint used for isochronous transfer; Initializing the data toggle sequence bit	0	○	○
4	INTPT bit (INXCSR4)	0: Except the following condition 1: Initializing to endpoint used for interrupt transfer, rate feedback	0	○	○
5	TX_NOT_EPT flag (INXCSR5) *1, *2	0: Empty in IN FIFO 1: Full in IN FIFO	0	○	×
6	FLUSH bit (INXCSR6) *1, *4	0: Except the following condition 1: Flush FIFO	0	○	○
7	AUTO_SET bit (INXCSR7) *3, *4	0: AUTO_SET disabled 1: AUTO_SET enabled (Note 3)	0	○	○

\* 1: This bit is automatically cleared to "0".

\* 2: This bit is automatically set to "1".

\* 3: The user must program to "0".

\* 4: The user must program to "1".

**Notes 1:** If this bit is set to "1", stop accessing the FIFO to serve the previous setup transaction.

**2:** When AUTO\_SET bit is "0", the user must set to "1". When AUTO\_SET bit is "1", this bit is automatically set to "1". Additionally, when writing to other bits of this register, write "0" to this bit.

**3:** To use the AUTO\_SET function for an IN transfer when the AUTO\_SET bit is set to "1", set the FIFO to single buffer mode.

Fig. 3.5.55 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) IN control register

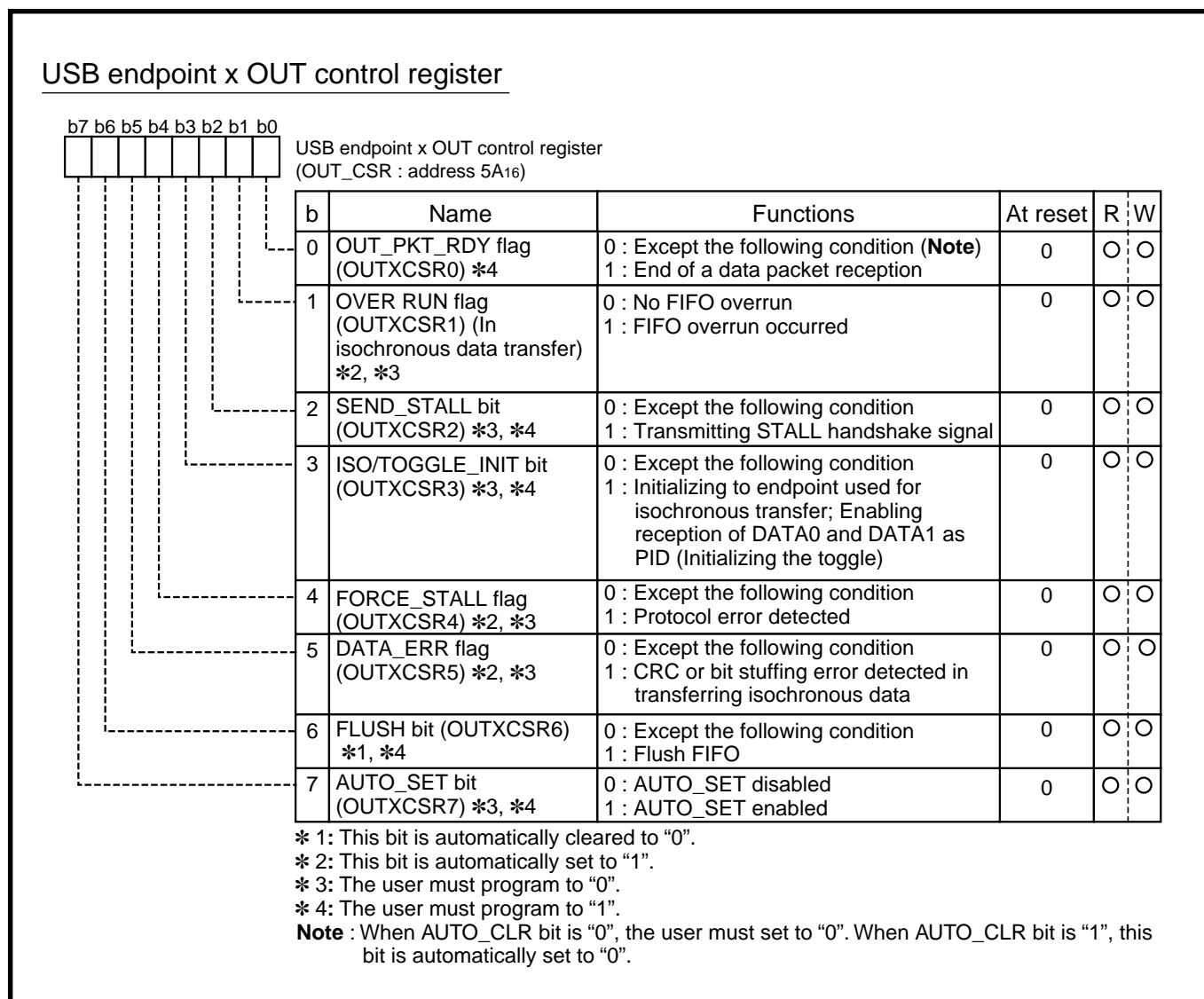


Fig. 3.5.56 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 1 to 4) OUT control register

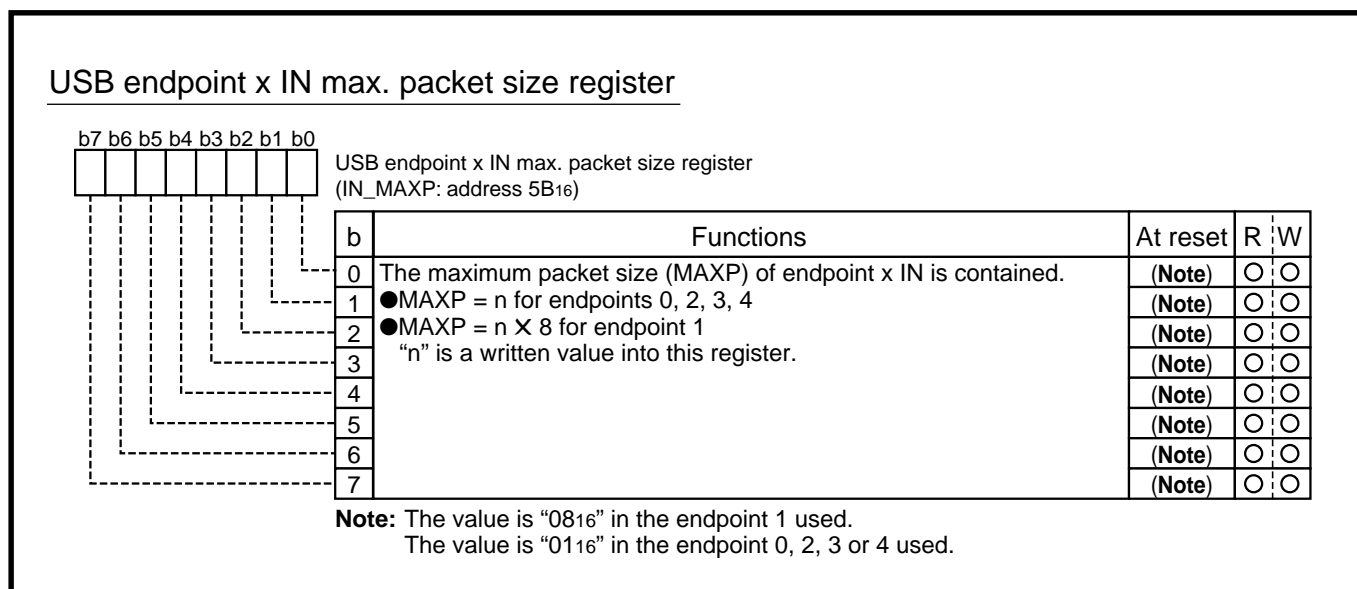
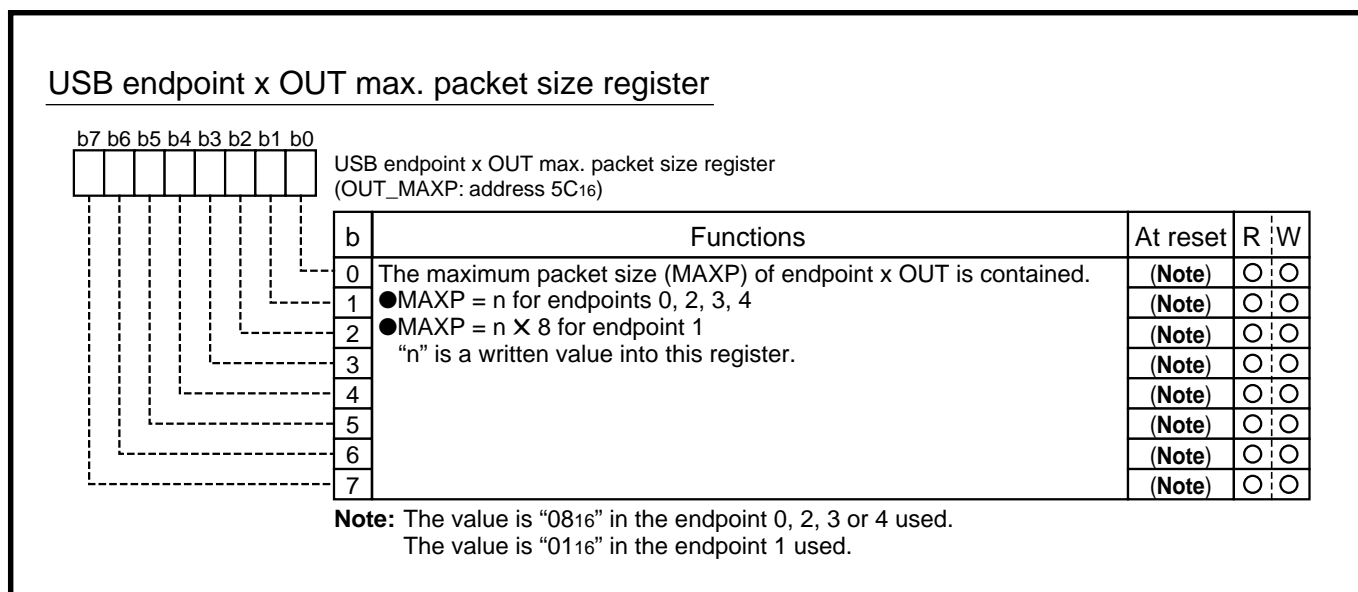


Fig. 3.5.57 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) IN max. packet size register



**Fig. 3.5.58 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) OUT max. packet size register**

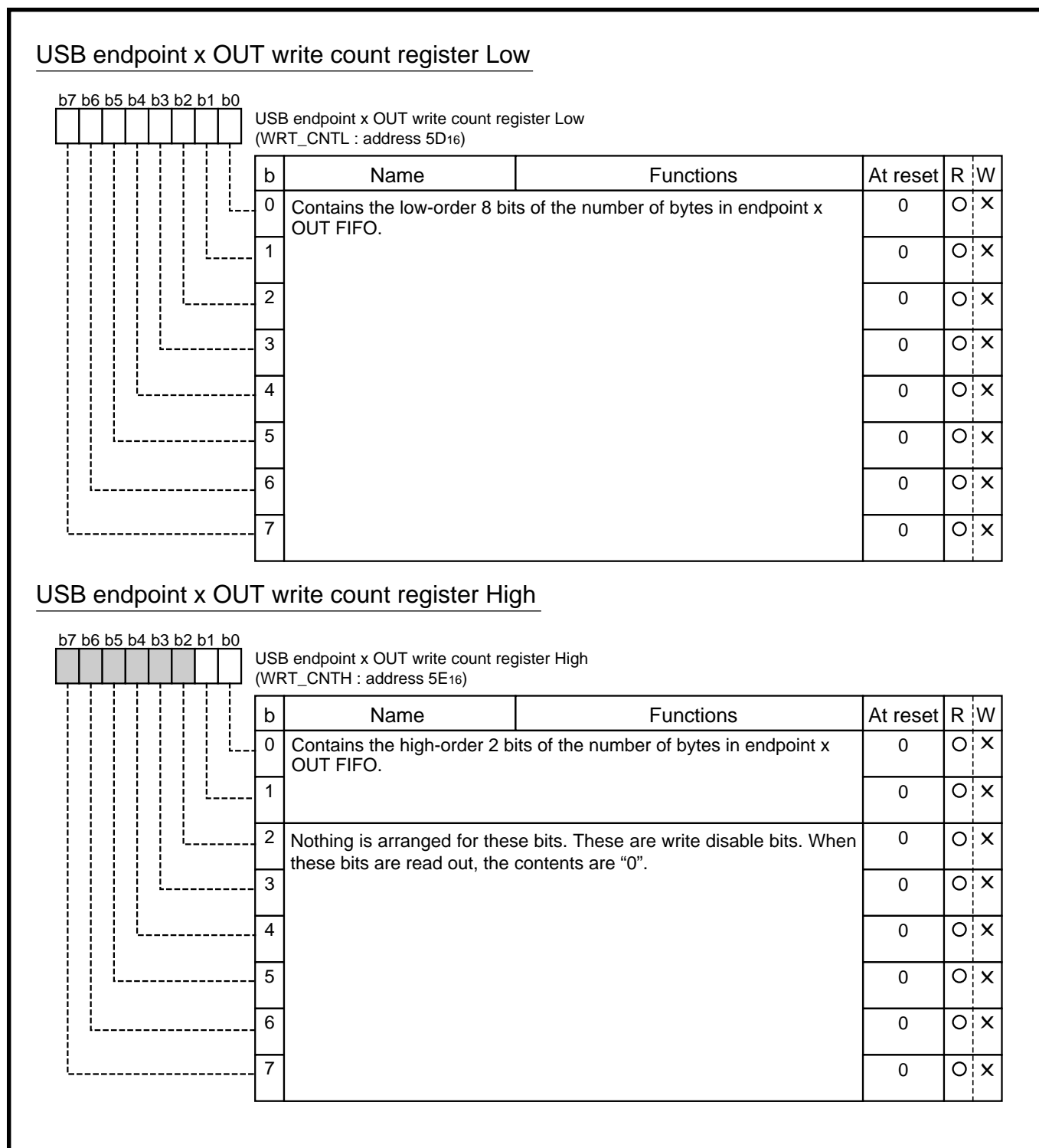


Fig. 3.5.59 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) OUT write count registers Low, High

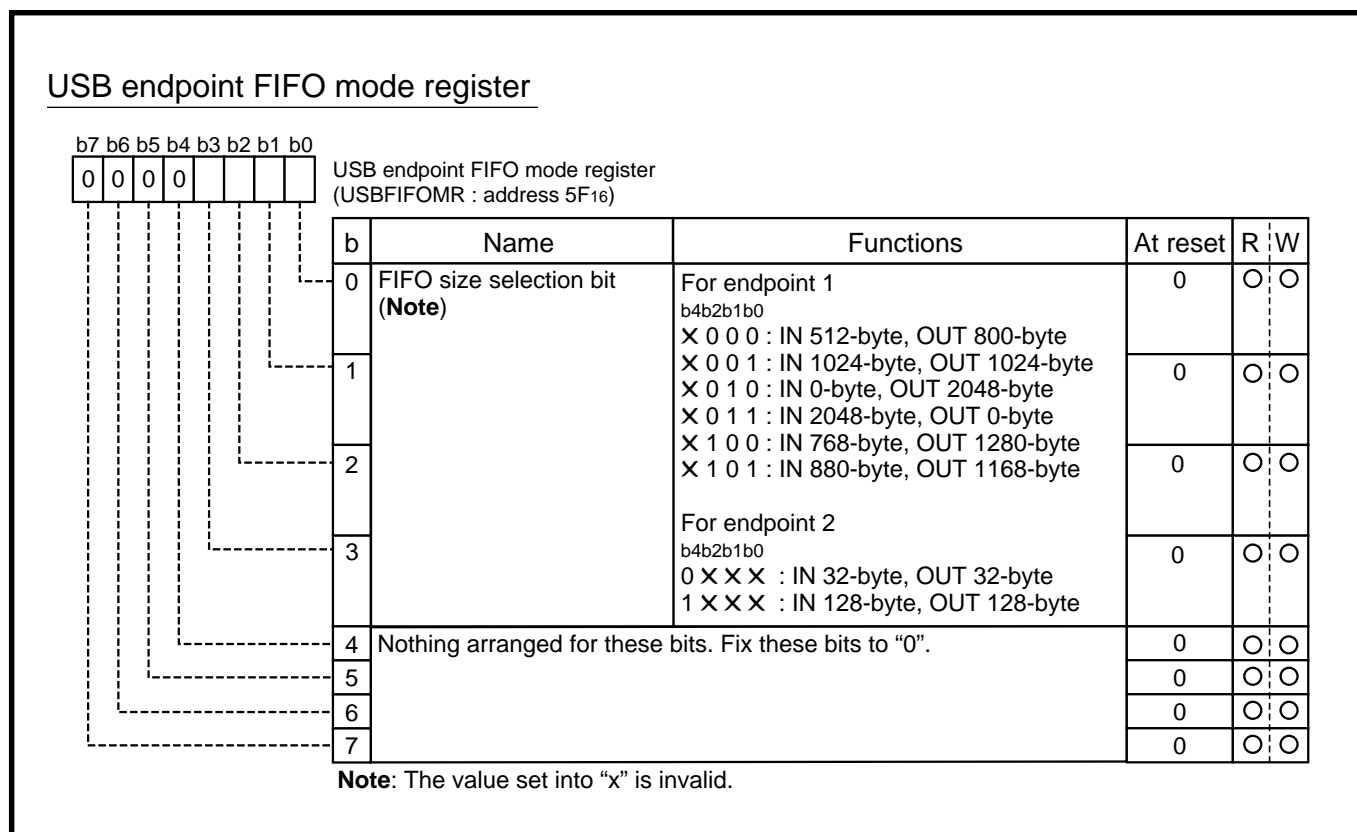


Fig. 3.5.60 Structure of USB endpoint FIFO mode register

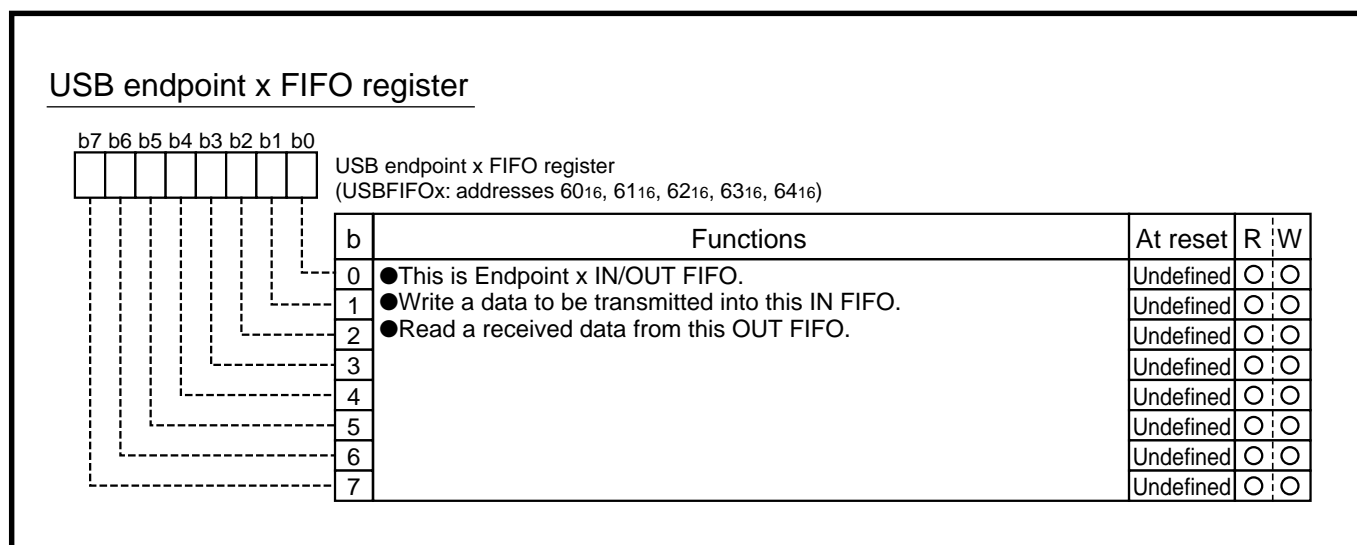


Fig. 3.5.61 Structure of USB endpoint x (x = 0 to 4) FIFO register



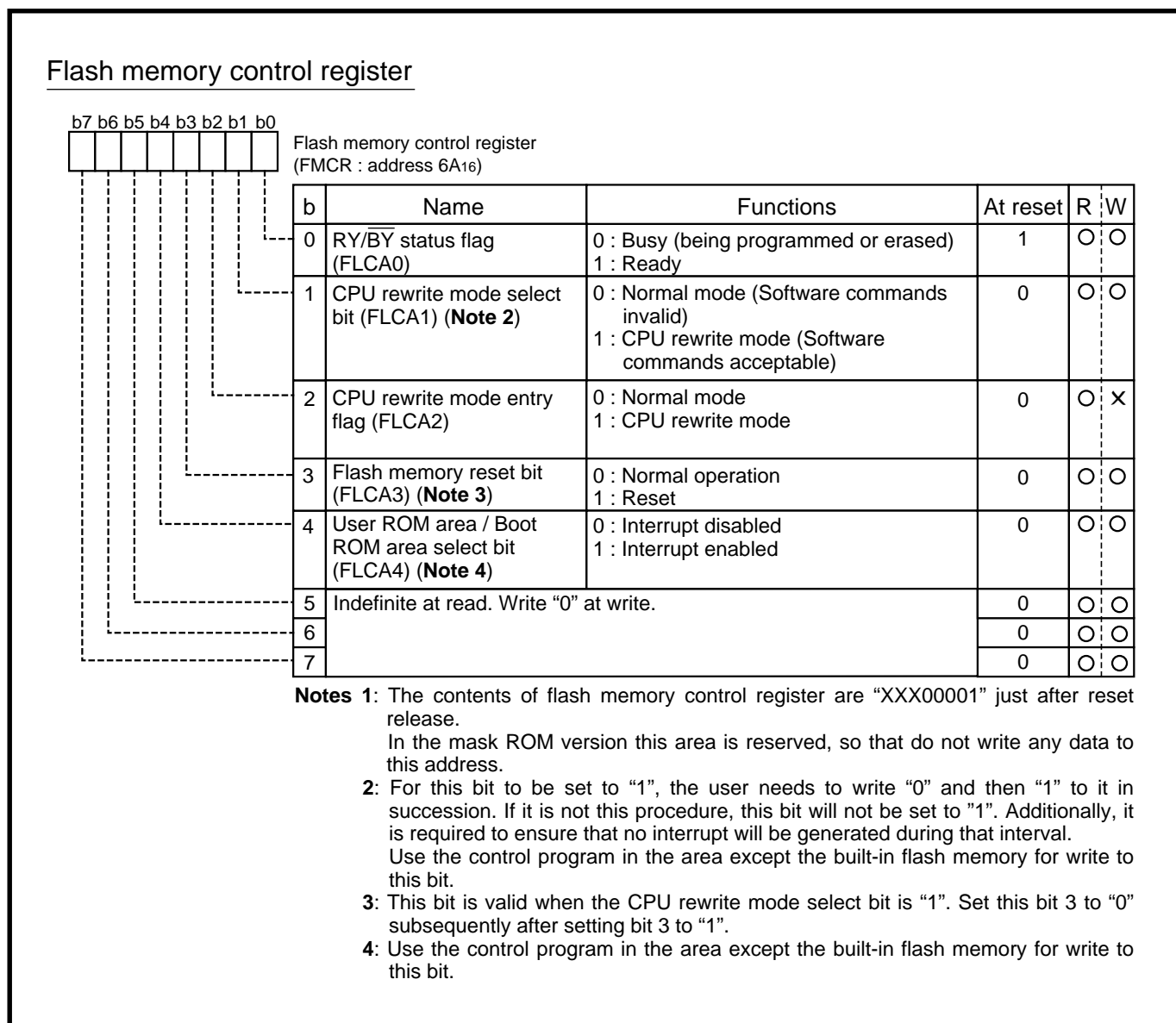


Fig. 3.5.62 Structure of Flash memory control register

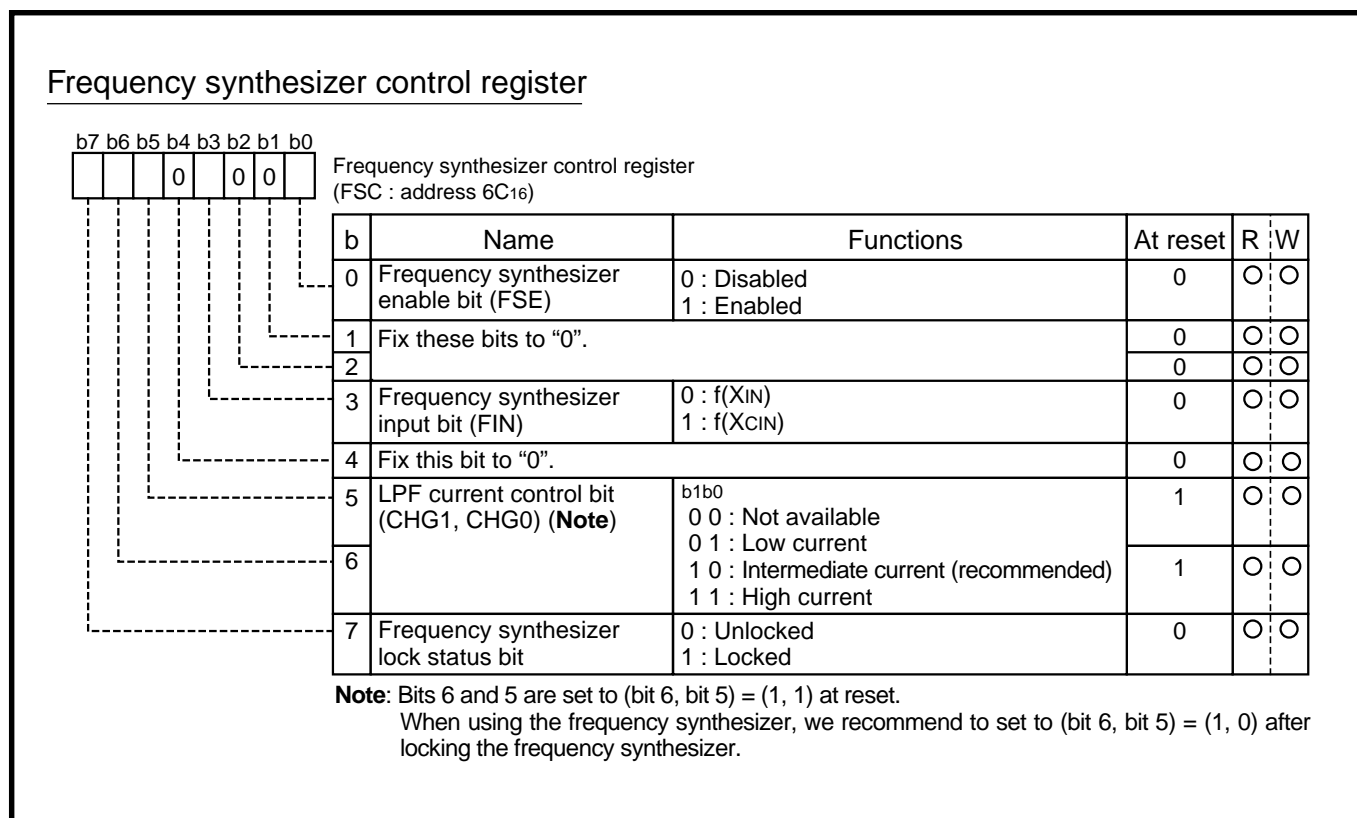


Fig. 3.5.63 Structure of Frequency synthesizer control register

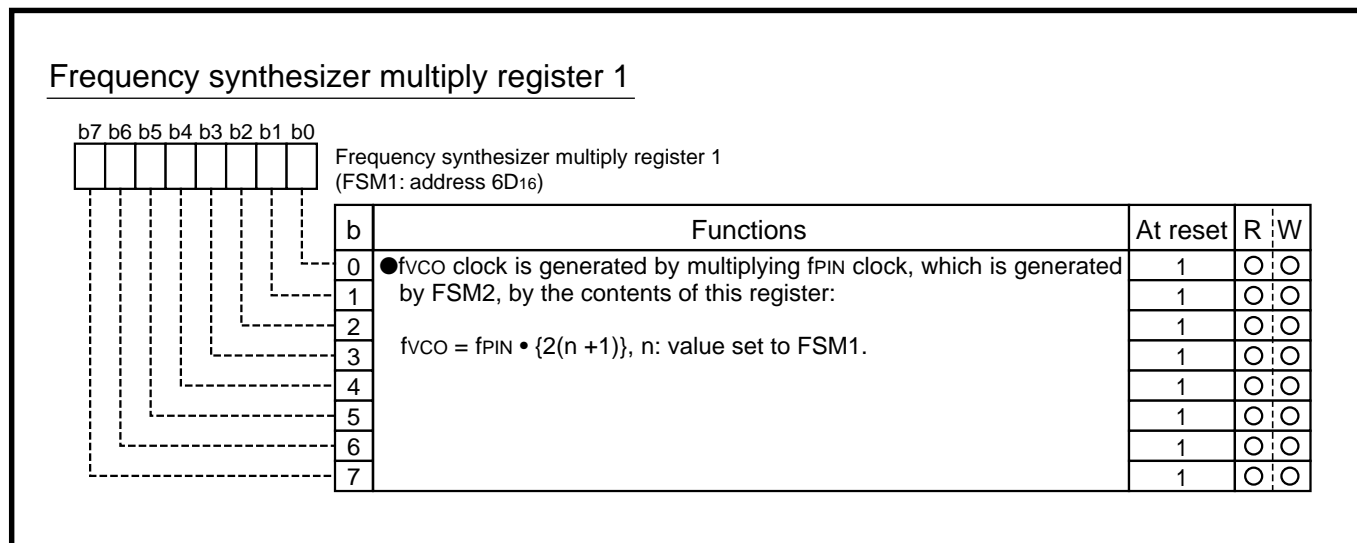


Fig. 3.5.64 Structure of Frequency synthesizer multiply register 1

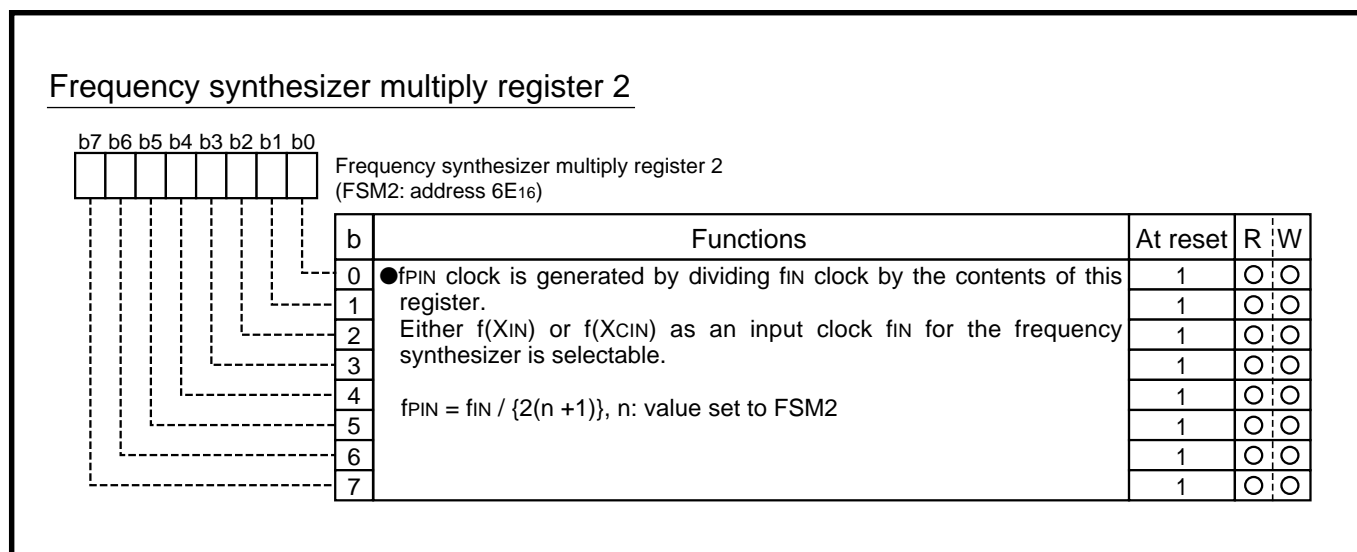


Fig. 3.5.65 Structure of Frequency synthesizer multiply register 2

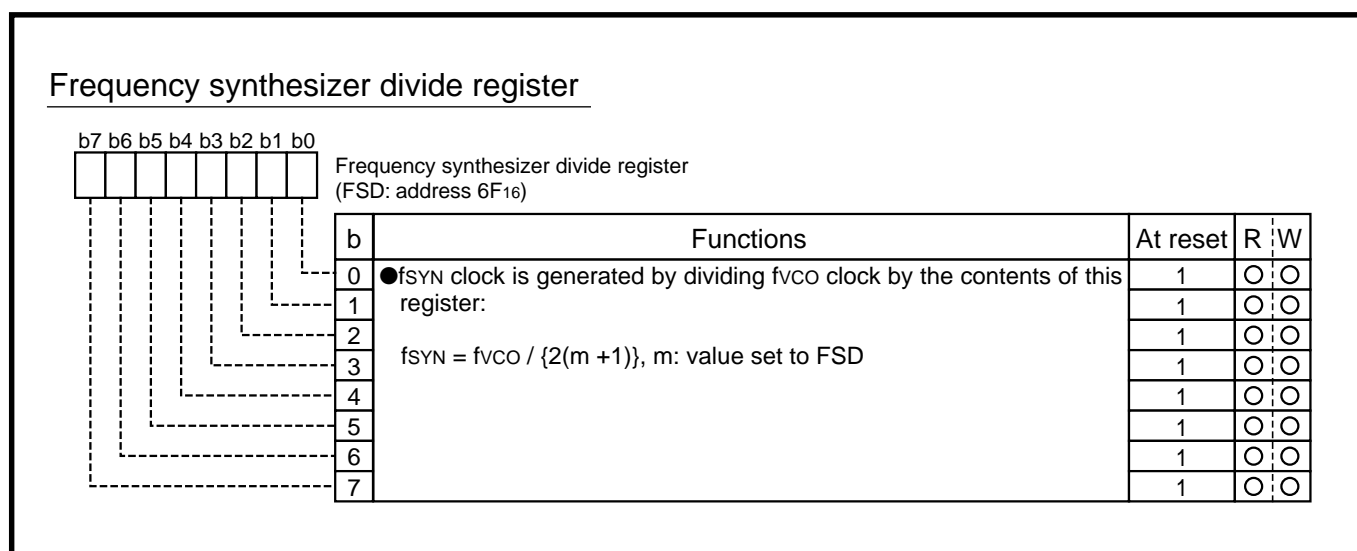


Fig. 3.5.66 Structure of Frequency synthesizer divide register

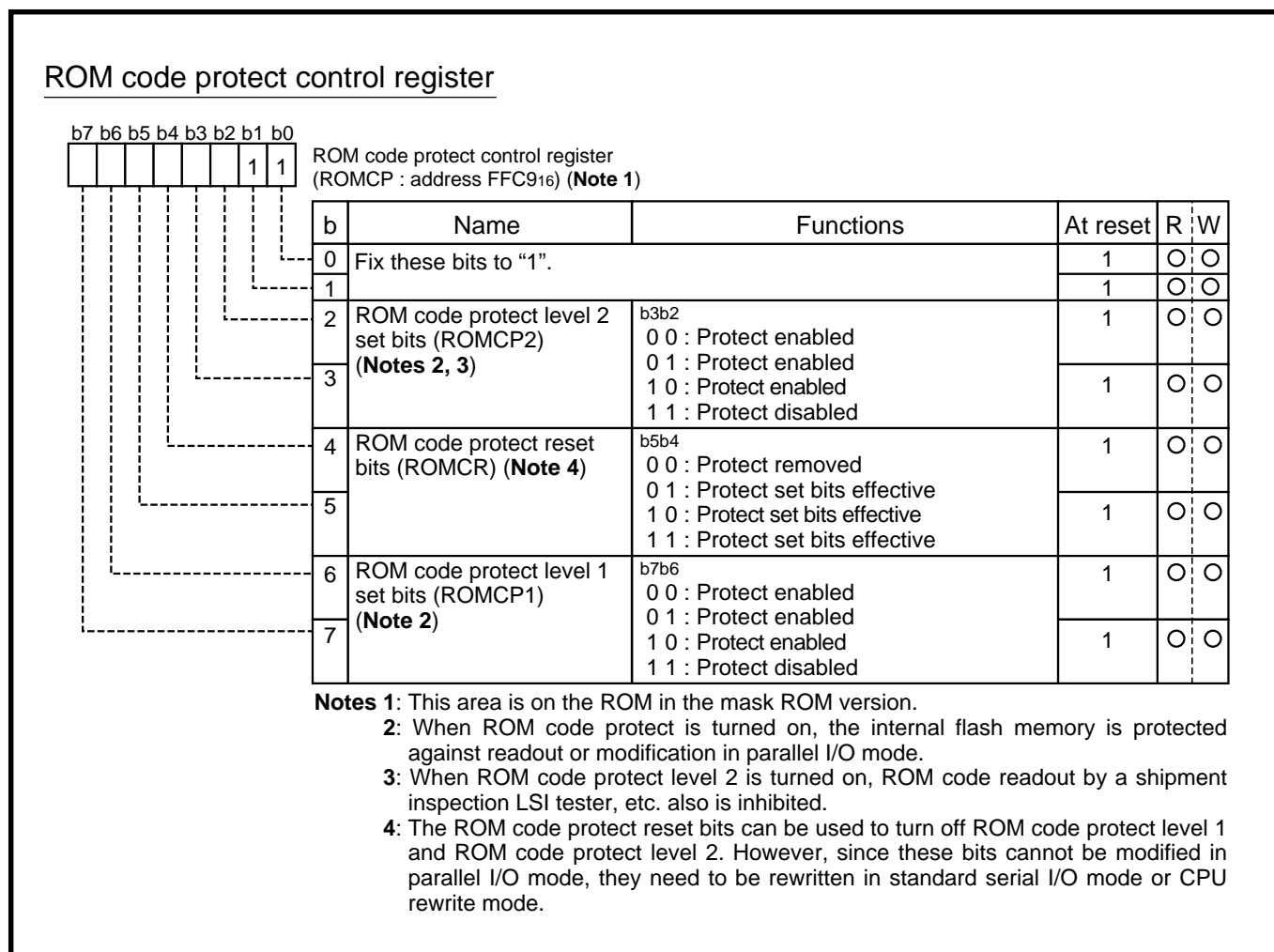
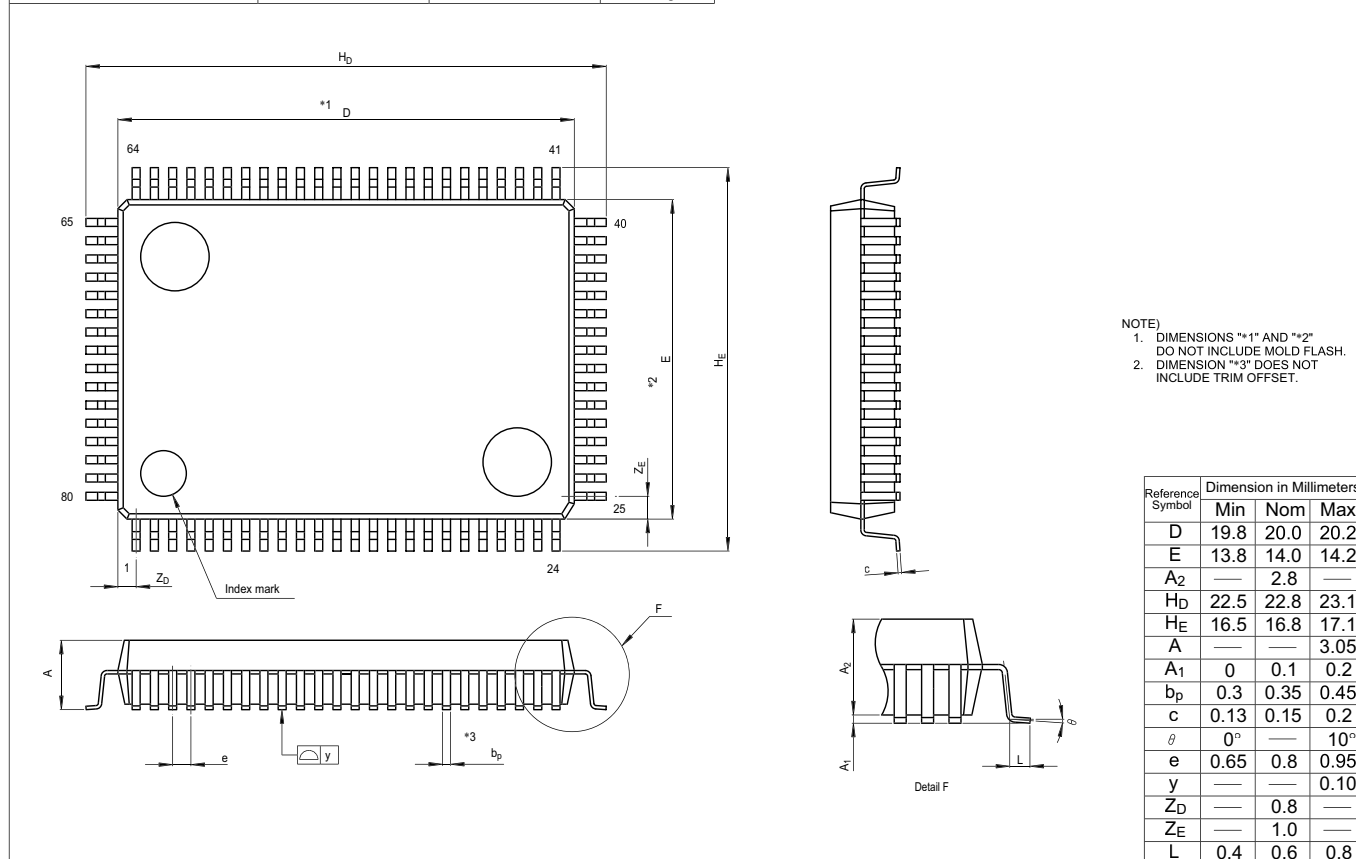


Fig. 3.5.67 Structure of ROM code protect control register

### 3.6 Package outline

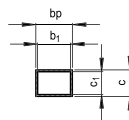
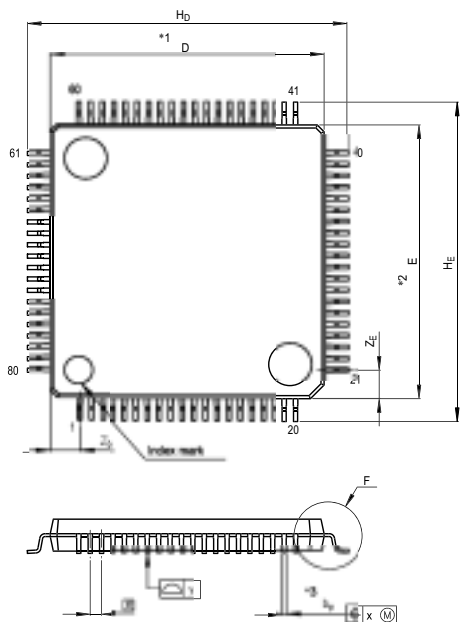
#### PRQP0080GB-A

JEITA Package Code	RENESAS Code	Previous Code	MASS[Typ.]
P-QFP80-14x20-0.80	PRQP0080GB-A	80P6N-A	1.6g

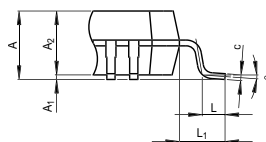


# PLQP0080KB-A

JEITA Package Code	RENASAS Code	Previous Code	MASS[Typ.]
P-LQFP80-12x12-0.50	PLQP0080KB-A	80P6Q-A	0.5g



Terminal cross section



Detail F

NOTE)  
 1. DIMENSIONS \*\*1\* AND \*\*2\* DO NOT INCLUDE MOLD FLASH.  
 2. DIMENSION \*\*3\* DOES NOT INCLUDE TRIM OFFSET.

Reference Symbol	Dimension in Millimeters		
	Min	Nom	Max
D	11.9	12.0	12.1
E	11.9	12.0	12.1
A <sub>2</sub>	—	1.4	—
H <sub>D</sub>	13.8	14.0	14.2
H <sub>E</sub>	13.8	14.0	14.2
A	—	—	1.7
A <sub>1</sub>	0	0.1	0.2
b <sub>p</sub>	0.15	0.20	0.25
b <sub>1</sub>	—	0.18	—
c	0.09	0.145	0.20
c <sub>1</sub>	—	0.125	—
θ	0°	—	10°
Ⓧ	—	0.5	—
x	—	—	0.08
y	—	—	0.08
Z <sub>D</sub>	—	1.25	—
Z <sub>E</sub>	—	1.25	—
L	0.3	0.5	0.7
L <sub>1</sub>	—	1.0	—

3.7 Machine instructions

Symbol	Function	Details	Addressing mode															
			IMP		IMM		A		BIT, A, R		ZP		BIT, ZP, R					
			OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #				
ADC (Note 1) (Note 7)	When T = 0 A ← A + M + C  When T = 1 M(X) ← M(X) + M + C	When T = 0, this instruction adds the contents M, C, and A; and stores the results in A and C. When T = 1, this instruction adds the contents of M(X), M and C; and stores the results in M(X) and C. When T=1, the contents of A remain unchanged, but the contents of status flags are changed. M(X) represents the contents of memory where is indicated by X.			69	2	2							65	3	2		
AND (Note 1)	When T = 0 A ← A ∧ M  When T = 1 M(X) ← M(X) ∧ M	When T = 0, this instruction transfers the contents of A and M to the ALU which performs a bit-wise AND operation and stores the result back in A. When T = 1, this instruction transfers the contents M(X) and M to the ALU which performs a bit-wise AND operation and stores the results back in M(X). When T = 1, the contents of A remain unchanged, but status flags are changed. M(X) represents the contents of memory where is indicated by X.			29	2	2							25	3	2		
ASL	$\left[ \begin{array}{c} 7 \\ \boxed{\leftarrow} \\ \leftarrow 0 \end{array} \right]$	This instruction shifts the content of A or M by one bit to the left, with bit 0 always being set to 0 and bit 7 of A or M always being contained in C.			0A	1	1							06	5	2		
BBC	Ai or Mi = 0?	This instruction tests the designated bit i of M or A and takes a branch if the bit is 0. The branch address is specified by a relative address. If the bit is 1, next instruction is executed.						$13$ + $20i$ (Note 4)							$17$ + $20i$ (Note 6)			
BBS	Ai or Mi = 1?	This instruction tests the designated bit i of the M or A and takes a branch if the bit is 1. The branch address is specified by a relative address. If the bit is 0, next instruction is executed.						$03$ + $20i$ (Note 4)							$07$ + $20i$ (Note 6)			
BCC (Note 5) (Note 9)	C = 0?	This instruction takes a branch to the appointed address if C is 0. The branch address is specified by a relative address. If C is 1, the next instruction is executed.														90	2	2
BCS (Note 5) (Note 9)	C = 1?	This instruction takes a branch to the appointed address if C is 1. The branch address is specified by a relative address. If C is 0, the next instruction is executed.														B0	2	2
BEQ (Note 5) (Note 8)	Z = 1?	This instruction takes a branch to the appointed address when Z is 1. The branch address is specified by a relative address. If Z is 0, the next instruction is executed.														F0	2	2
BIT	A ∧ M	This instruction takes a bit-wise logical AND of A and M contents; however, the contents of A and M are not modified. The contents of N, V, Z are changed, but the contents of A, M remain unchanged.												24	3	2		
BMI (Note 5) (Note 8)	N = 1?	This instruction takes a branch to the appointed address when N is 1. The branch address is specified by a relative address. If N is 0, the next instruction is executed.														30	2	2
BNE (Note 5) (Note 8)	Z = 0?	This instruction takes a branch to the appointed address if Z is 0. The branch address is specified by a relative address. If Z is 1, the next instruction is executed.														D0	2	2

Addressing mode																		Processor status register																	
ZP, X		ZP, Y		ABS		ABS, X		ABS, Y		IND		ZP, IND		IND, X		IND, Y		REL		SP		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0						
OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	N	V	T	B	D	I	Z	C				
75	4	2			6D	4	3	7D	5	3			79	5	3					61	6	2	71	6	2			N	V	*	*	*	*	Z	C
35	4	2			2D	4	3	3D	5	3	39	5	3					21	6	2	31	6	2			N	*	*	*	*	*	Z	*		
16	6	2			0E	6	3	1E	7	3													N	*	*	*	*	*	Z	C					
																							*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*					
																							*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*					





Symbol	Function	Details	Addressing mode															
			IMP		IMM		A		BIT, A		ZP		BIT, ZP					
			OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #				
DEX	$X \leftarrow X - 1$	This instruction subtracts one from the current contents of X.	CA	1	1													
DEY	$Y \leftarrow Y - 1$	This instruction subtracts one from the current contents of Y.	88	1	1													
DIV	$A \leftarrow (M(zz + X + 1), M(zz + X)) / A$ $M(S) \leftarrow$ one's complement of Remainder $S \leftarrow S - 1$	This instruction divides the 16-bit data in $M(zz+(X))$ (low-order byte) and $M(zz+(X)+1)$ (high-order byte) by the contents of A. The quotient is stored in A and the one's complement of the remainder is pushed onto the stack.																
EOR (Note 1)	When $T = 0$ $A \leftarrow A \oplus M$  When $T = 1$ $M(X) \leftarrow M(X) \oplus M$	When $T = 0$ , this instruction transfers the contents of the M and A to the ALU which performs a bit-wise Exclusive OR, and stores the result in A. When $T = 1$ , the contents of $M(X)$ and M are transferred to the ALU, which performs a bit-wise Exclusive OR and stores the results in $M(X)$ . The contents of A remain unchanged, but status flags are changed. $M(X)$ represents the contents of memory where is indicated by X.				49	2	2						45	3	2		
INC	$A \leftarrow A + 1$ or $M \leftarrow M + 1$	This instruction adds one to the contents of A or M.							3A	1	1				E6	5	2	
INX	$X \leftarrow X + 1$	This instruction adds one to the contents of X.	EB	1	1													
INY	$Y \leftarrow Y + 1$	This instruction adds one to the contents of Y.	C8	1	1													
JMP	If addressing mode is ABS $PCL \leftarrow ADL$ $PCH \leftarrow ADH$ If addressing mode is IND $PCL \leftarrow M(ADH, ADL)$ $PCH \leftarrow M(ADH, ADL + 1)$ If addressing mode is ZP, IND $PCL \leftarrow M(00, ADL)$ $PCH \leftarrow M(00, ADL + 1)$	This instruction jumps to the address designated by the following three addressing modes: Absolute Indirect Absolute Zero Page Indirect Absolute																
JSR	$M(S) \leftarrow PCH$ $S \leftarrow S - 1$ $M(S) \leftarrow PCL$ $S \leftarrow S - 1$ After executing the above, if addressing mode is ABS, $PCL \leftarrow ADL$ $PCH \leftarrow ADH$ if addressing mode is SP, $PCL \leftarrow ADL$ $PCH \leftarrow FF$ If addressing mode is ZP, IND, $PCL \leftarrow M(00, ADL)$ $PCH \leftarrow M(00, ADL + 1)$	This instruction stores the contents of the PC in the stack, then jumps to the address designated by the following addressing modes: Absolute Special Page Zero Page Indirect Absolute																
LDA (Note 2)	When $T = 0$ $A \leftarrow M$ When $T = 1$ $M(X) \leftarrow M$	When $T = 0$ , this instruction transfers the contents of M to A. When $T = 1$ , this instruction transfers the contents of M to $M(X)$ . The contents of A remain unchanged, but status flags are changed. $M(X)$ represents the contents of memory where is indicated by X.				A9	2	2						A5	3	2		
LDM	$M \leftarrow nn$	This instruction loads the immediate value in M.												3C	4	3		
LDX	$X \leftarrow M$	This instruction loads the contents of M in X.				A2	2	2						A6	3	2		
LDY	$Y \leftarrow M$	This instruction loads the contents of M in Y.				A0	2	2						A4	3	2		

Addressing mode																		Processor status register											
ZP, X		ZP, Y		ABS		ABS, X		ABS, Y		IND		ZP, IND		IND, X		IND, Y		REL		SP		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	N	V	T	B	D	I	Z	C
E2	16	2																											
55	4	2				4D	4	3	5D	5	3	59	5	3															
F6	6	2				EE	6	3	FE	7	3																		
B5	4	2				AD	4	3	BD	5	3	B9	5	3															
B4	4	2				AC	4	3	BC	5	3																		

Symbol	Function	Details	Addressing mode																			
			IMP		IMM		A		BIT, A		ZP		BIT, ZP									
			OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #								
			OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #						
LSR	$\begin{matrix} 7 & 0 \\ \text{ } & \text{ } \end{matrix} \begin{matrix} \rightarrow & \leftarrow \end{matrix}$	This instruction shifts either A or M one bit to the right such that bit 7 of the result always is set to 0, and the bit 0 is stored in C.					4A	1	1					46	5	2						
MUL	$\begin{matrix} M(S) * A \leftarrow A * M(zz + X) \\ S \leftarrow S - 1 \end{matrix}$	This instruction multiply Accumulator with the memory specified by the Zero Page X address mode and stores the high-order byte of the result on the Stack and the low-order byte in A.																				
NOP	$PC \leftarrow PC + 1$	This instruction adds one to the PC but does no other operation.	EA	1	1																	
ORA (Note 1)	When T = 0 $A \leftarrow A \vee M$  When T = 1 $M(X) \leftarrow M(X) \vee M$	When T = 0, this instruction transfers the contents of A and M to the ALU which performs a bit-wise "OR", and stores the result in A. When T = 1, this instruction transfers the contents of M(X) and the M to the ALU which performs a bit-wise OR, and stores the result in M(X). The contents of A remain unchanged, but status flags are changed. M(X) represents the contents of memory where is indicated by X.			09	2	2						05	3	2							
PHA	$\begin{matrix} M(S) \leftarrow A \\ S \leftarrow S - 1 \end{matrix}$	This instruction pushes the contents of A to the memory location designated by S, and decrements the contents of S by one.	48	3	1																	
PHP	$\begin{matrix} M(S) \leftarrow PS \\ S \leftarrow S - 1 \end{matrix}$	This instruction pushes the contents of PS to the memory location designated by S and decrements the contents of S by one.	08	3	1																	
PLA	$\begin{matrix} S \leftarrow S + 1 \\ A \leftarrow M(S) \end{matrix}$	This instruction increments S by one and stores the contents of the memory designated by S in A.	68	4	1																	
PLP	$\begin{matrix} S \leftarrow S + 1 \\ PS \leftarrow M(S) \end{matrix}$	This instruction increments S by one and stores the contents of the memory location designated by S in PS.	28	4	1																	(Value saved in stack)
ROL	$\begin{matrix} 7 & 0 \\ \leftarrow & \leftarrow \end{matrix}$	This instruction shifts either A or M one bit left through C. C is stored in bit 0 and bit 7 is stored in C.					2A	1	1					26	5	2						
ROR	$\begin{matrix} 7 & 0 \\ \leftarrow & \leftarrow \end{matrix}$	This instruction shifts either A or M one bit right through C. C is stored in bit 7 and bit 0 is stored in C.					6A	1	1					66	5	2						
RRF	$\begin{matrix} 7 & 0 \\ \leftarrow & \leftarrow \end{matrix}$	This instruction rotates 4 bits of the M content to the right.												82	8	2						
RTI	$\begin{matrix} S \leftarrow S + 1 \\ PS \leftarrow M(S) \\ S \leftarrow S + 1 \\ PCL \leftarrow M(S) \\ S \leftarrow S + 1 \\ PCH \leftarrow M(S) \end{matrix}$	This instruction increments S by one, and stores the contents of the memory location designated by S in PS. S is again incremented by one and stores the contents of the memory location designated by S in PCL. S is again incremented by one and stores the contents of memory location designated by S in PCH.	40	6	1																	(Value saved in stack)
RTS	$\begin{matrix} S \leftarrow S + 1 \\ PCL \leftarrow M(S) \\ S \leftarrow S + 1 \\ PCH \leftarrow M(S) \\ (PC) \leftarrow (PC) + 1 \end{matrix}$	This instruction increments S by one and stores the contents of the memory location designated by S in PCL. S is again incremented by one and the contents of the memory location is stored in PCH. PC is incremented by 1.	60	6	1																	

Addressing mode																	Processor status register															
ZP, X		ZP, Y		ABS		ABS, X		ABS, Y		IND	ZP, IND	IND, X	IND, Y	REL	SP	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0									
OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	N	V	T	B	D	I	Z	C					
				4E	6	3	5E	7	3									0	*	*	*	*	*	Z	C							
62	14	2															N	*	*	*	*	*	Z	*								
																	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*								
15	4	2			0D	4	3	1D	5	3					01	6	2					11	6	2	N	*	*	*	*	*	Z	*
																	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*								
																	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*								
																	N	*	*	*	*	*	Z	C								
36	6	2			2E	6	3	3E	7	3							N	*	*	*	*	*	Z	C								
76	6	2			6E	6	3	7E	7	3							N	*	*	*	*	*	Z	C								
																	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*								
																								(Value saved in stack)								
																	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*								

Symbol	Function	Details	Addressing mode															
			IMP		IMM		A		BIT, A		ZP		BIT, ZP					
			OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #				
SBC (Note 1) (Note 7)	When T = 0 A ← A − M − C  When T = 1 M(X) ← M(X) − M − C	When T = 0, this instruction subtracts the value of M and the complement of C from A, and stores the results in A and C. When T = 1, the instruction subtracts the contents of M and the complement of C from the contents of M(X), and stores the results in M(X) and C. A remain unchanged, but status flag are changed. M(X) represents the contents of memory where is indicated by X.											E5	3	2			
SEB	Ai or Mi ← 1	This instruction sets the designated bit i of A or M.						0B	20i	1	1				0F	20i	5	2
SEC	C ← 1	This instruction sets C.	38	1	1													
SED	D ← 1	This instruction set D.	F8	1	1													
SEI	I ← 1	This instruction set I.	78	2	1													
SET	T ← 1	This instruction set T.	32	1	1													
STA	M ← A	This instruction stores the contents of A in M. The contents of A does not change.									85	3	2					
STP		This instruction resets the oscillation control F/ F and the oscillation stops. Reset or interrupt input is needed to wake up from this mode.	42	2	1													
STX	M ← X	This instruction stores the contents of X in M. The contents of X does not change.									86	3	2					
STY	M ← Y	This instruction stores the contents of Y in M. The contents of Y does not change.									84	3	2					
TAX	X ← A	This instruction stores the contents of A in X. The contents of A does not change.	AA	1	1													
TAY	Y ← A	This instruction stores the contents of A in Y. The contents of A does not change.	AB	1	1													
TST	M = 0?	This instruction tests whether the contents of M are "0" or not and modifies the N and Z.								64	3	2						
TSX	X ← S	This instruction transfers the contents of S in X.	BA	1	1													
TXA	A ← X	This instruction stores the contents of X in A.	8A	1	1													
TXS	S ← X	This instruction stores the contents of X in S.	9A	1	1													
TYA	A ← Y	This instruction stores the contents of Y in A.	98	1	1													
WIT		The WIT instruction stops the internal clock but not the oscillation of the oscillation circuit is not stopped. CPU starts its function after the Timer X over flows (comes to the terminal count). All registers or internal memory contents except Timer X will not change during this mode. (Of course needs VDD).	C2	2	1													


Addressing mode																		Processor status register																
ZP, X		ZP, Y		ABS		ABS, X		ABS, Y		IND		ZP, IND		IND, X		IND, Y		REL		SP		7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0					
OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	OP	n #	N	V	T	B	D	I	Z	C			
F5	4	2			ED	4	3	FD	5	3	F9	5	3					E1	6	2	F1	6	2					N	V	*	*	*	Z	C
																							*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*				
																							*	*	*	*	*	*	1	*				
																							*	*	*	*	1	*	*	*				
																							*	*	1	*	*	*	*	*				
95	4	2			8D	4	3	9D	5	3	99	5	3			81	6	2	91	6	2			*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*			
																							*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*				
			96	4	2	8E	4	3															*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*				
94	4	2			8C	4	3																	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*			
																							N	*	*	*	*	Z	*	*				
																							N	*	*	*	*	Z	*	*				
																							N	*	*	*	*	Z	*	*				
																							*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*				
																							N	*	*	*	*	Z	*	*				
																							*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*				


- Notes**
- 1 : The number of cycles "n" is increased by 3 when T is 1.
  - 2 : The number of cycles "n" is increased by 2 when T is 1.
  - 3 : The number of cycles "n" is increased by 1 when T is 1.
  - 4 : The number of cycles "n" is increased by 2 when branching has occurred.
  - 5 : The number of cycles "n" is increased by 1 when branching to the same page has occurred. The number of cycles "n" is increased by 2 when branching to the other page has occurred.
  - 6 : The number of cycles "n" is increased by 1 when branching to the other page has occurred.
  - 7 : V flag is invalid in decimal operation mode.
  - 8 : When this instruction is executed immediately after executing DEX, DEY, INX, INY, TAX, TSX, TXA, TYA, DEC, INC, ASL, LSR, ROL, or ROR instructions, the number of cycles "n" becomes "3". Furthermore, the number of cycles "n" is increased by 1 (number of cycles "n" is "4") when branching to the same page has occurred. The number of cycles "n" is increased by 2 (number of cycles "n" is "5") when branching to the other page has occurred.
  - 9 : When this instruction is executed immediately after executing ASL, LSR, ROL, or ROR instructions, the number of cycles "n" becomes "3". Furthermore, the number of cycles "n" is increased by 1 (number of cycles "n" is "4") when branching to the same page has occurred. The number of cycles "n" is increased by 2 (number of cycles "n" is "5") when branching to the other page has occurred.

Symbol	Contents	Symbol	Contents
IMP	Implied addressing mode	+	Addition
IMM	Immediate addressing mode	-	Subtraction
A	Accumulator or Accumulator addressing mode	*	Multiplication
BIT, A	Accumulator bit addressing mode	/	Division
BIT, A, R	Accumulator bit relative addressing mode	∧	Logical OR
ZP	Zero page addressing mode	∨	Logical AND
BIT, ZP	Zero page bit addressing mode	⊕	Logical exclusive OR
BIT, ZP, R	Zero page bit relative addressing mode	—	Negation
ZP, X	Zero page X addressing mode	←	Shows direction of data flow
ZP, Y	Zero page Y addressing mode	X	Index register X
ABS	Absolute addressing mode	Y	Index register Y
ABS, X	Absolute X addressing mode	S	Stack pointer
ABS, Y	Absolute Y addressing mode	PC	Program counter
IND	Indirect absolute addressing mode	PS	Processor status register
ZP, IND	Zero page indirect absolute addressing mode	PCH	8 high-order bits of program counter
IND, X	Indirect X addressing mode	PCL	8 low-order bits of program counter
IND, Y	Indirect Y addressing mode	ADH	8 high-order bits of address
REL	Relative addressing mode	ADL	8 low-order bits of address
SP	Special page addressing mode	FF	FF in Hexadecimal notation
C	Carry flag	nn	Immediate value
Z	Zero flag	zz	Zero page address
I	Interrupt disable flag	M	Memory specified by address designation of any addressing mode
D	Decimal mode flag	M(X)	Memory of address indicated by contents of index register X
B	Break flag	M(S)	Memory of address indicated by contents of stack pointer
T	X-modified arithmetic mode flag	M(ADH, ADL)	Contents of memory at address indicated by ADH and ADL, in ADH is 8 high-order bits and ADL is 8 low-order bits.
V	Overflow flag	M(00, ADL)	Contents of address indicated by zero page ADL
N	Negative flag	Ai	Bit i (i = 0 to 7) of accumulator
		Mi	Bit i (i = 0 to 7) of memory
		OP	Opcode
		n	Number of cycles
		#	Number of bytes

## 3.8 List of instruction code

D7 – D4	D3 – D0	Hexadecimal notation															
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	A	B	C	D	E	F
0000	0	BRK	ORA IND, X	JSR ZP, IND	BBS 0, A	—	ORA ZP	ASL ZP	BBS 0, ZP	PHP	ORA IMM	ASL A	SEB 0, A	—	ORA ABS	ASL ABS	SEB 0, ZP
0001	1	BPL	ORA IND, Y	CLT	BBC 0, A	—	ORA ZP, X	ASL ZP, X	BBC 0, ZP	CLC	ORA ABS, Y	DEC A	CLB 0, A	—	ORA ABS, X	ASL ABS, X	CLB 0, ZP
0010	2	JSR ABS	AND IND, X	JSR SP	BBS 1, A	BIT ZP	AND ZP	ROL ZP	BBS 1, ZP	PLP	AND IMM	ROL A	SEB 1, A	BIT ABS	AND ABS	ROL ABS	SEB 1, ZP
0011	3	BMI	AND IND, Y	SET	BBC 1, A	—	AND ZP, X	ROL ZP, X	BBC 1, ZP	SEC	AND ABS, Y	INC A	CLB 1, A	LDM ZP	AND ABS, X	ROL ABS, X	CLB 1, ZP
0100	4	RTI	EOR IND, X	STP	BBS 2, A	COM ZP	EOR ZP	LSR ZP	BBS 2, ZP	PHA	EOR IMM	LSR A	SEB 2, A	JMP ABS	EOR ABS	LSR ABS	SEB 2, ZP
0101	5	BVC	EOR IND, Y	—	BBC 2, A	—	EOR ZP, X	LSR ZP, X	BBC 2, ZP	CLI	EOR ABS, Y	—	CLB 2, A	—	EOR ABS, X	LSR ABS, X	CLB 2, ZP
0110	6	RTS	ADC IND, X	MUL ZP, X	BBS 3, A	TST ZP	ADC ZP	ROR ZP	BBS 3, ZP	PLA	ADC IMM	ROR A	SEB 3, A	JMP IND	ADC ABS	ROR ABS	SEB 3, ZP
0111	7	BVS	ADC IND, Y	—	BBC 3, A	—	ADC ZP, X	ROR ZP, X	BBC 3, ZP	SEI	ADC ABS, Y	—	CLB 3, A	—	ADC ABS, X	ROR ABS, X	CLB 3, ZP
1000	8	BRA	STA IND, X	RRF ZP	BBS 4, A	STY ZP	STA ZP	STX ZP	BBS 4, ZP	DEY	—	TXA	SEB 4, A	STY ABS	STA ABS	STX ABS	SEB 4, ZP
1001	9	BCC	STA IND, Y	—	BBC 4, A	STY ZP, X	STA ZP, X	STX ZP, Y	BBC 4, ZP	TYA	STA ABS, Y	TXS	CLB 4, A	—	STA ABS, X	—	CLB 4, ZP
1010	A	LDY IMM	LDA IND, X	LDX IMM	BBS 5, A	LDY ZP	LDA ZP	LDX ZP	BBS 5, ZP	TAY	LDA IMM	TAX	SEB 5, A	LDY ABS	LDA ABS	LDX ABS	SEB 5, ZP
1011	B	BCS	LDA IND, Y	JMP ZP, IND	BBC 5, A	LDY ZP, X	LDA ZP, X	LDX ZP, Y	BBC 5, ZP	CLV	LDA ABS, Y	TSX	CLB 5, A	LDY ABS, X	LDA ABS, X	LDX ABS, Y	CLB 5, ZP
1100	C	CPY IMM	CMP IND, X	WIT	BBS 6, A	CPY ZP	CMP ZP	DEC ZP	BBS 6, ZP	INY	CMP IMM	DEX	SEB 6, A	CPY ABS	CMP ABS	DEC ABS	SEB 6, ZP
1101	D	BNE	CMP IND, Y	—	BBC 6, A	—	CMP ZP, X	DEC ZP, X	BBC 6, ZP	CLD	CMP ABS, Y	—	CLB 6, A	—	CMP ABS, X	DEC ABS, X	CLB 6, ZP
1110	E	CPX IMM	SBC IND, X	DIV ZP, X	BBS 7, A	CPX ZP	SBC ZP	INC ZP	BBS 7, ZP	INX	SBC IMM	NOP	SEB 7, A	CPX ABS	SBC ABS	INC ABS	SEB 7, ZP
1111	F	BEQ	SBC IND, Y	—	BBC 7, A	—	SBC ZP, X	INC ZP, X	BBC 7, ZP	SED	SBC ABS, Y	—	CLB 7, A	—	SBC ABS, X	INC ABS, X	CLB 7, ZP

 : 3-byte instruction

 : 2-byte instruction

 : 1-byte instruction

### 3.9 SFR memory map

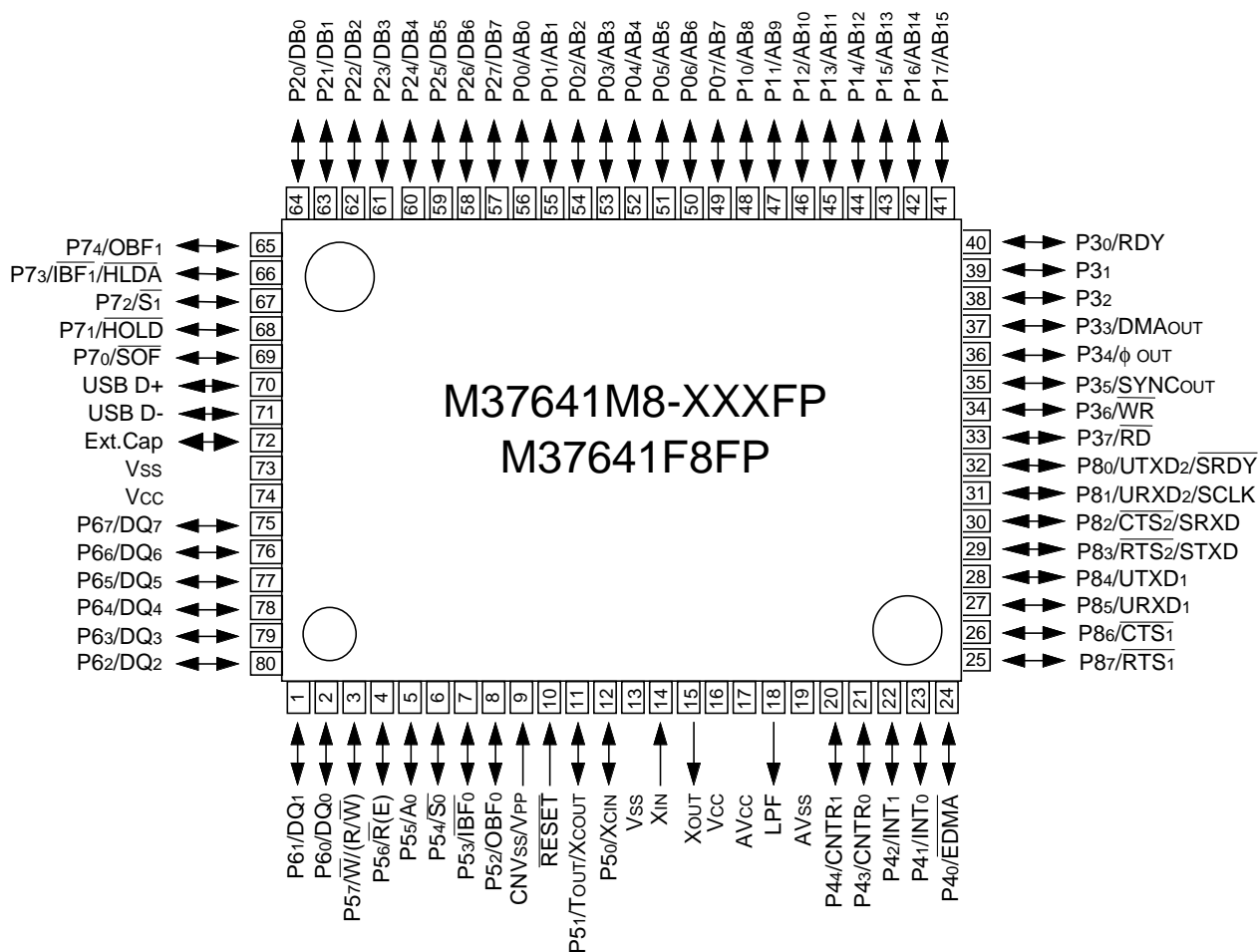
0000 <sub>16</sub>	CPU mode register A (CPUA)	0038 <sub>16</sub>	UART2 mode register (U2MOD)
0001 <sub>16</sub>	CPU mode register B (CPUB)	0039 <sub>16</sub>	UART2 baud rate generator (U2BRG)
0002 <sub>16</sub>	Interrupt request register A (IREQA)	003A <sub>16</sub>	UART2 status register (U2STS)
0003 <sub>16</sub>	Interrupt request register B (IREQB)	003B <sub>16</sub>	UART2 control register (U2CON)
0004 <sub>16</sub>	Interrupt request register C (IREQC)	003C <sub>16</sub>	UART2 transmit/receive buffer register 1 (U2TRB1)
0005 <sub>16</sub>	Interrupt control register A (ICONA)	003D <sub>16</sub>	UART2 transmit/receive buffer register 2 (U2TRB2)
0006 <sub>16</sub>	Interrupt control register B (ICONB)	003E <sub>16</sub>	UART2 RTS control register (U2RTSC)
0007 <sub>16</sub>	Interrupt control register C (ICONC)	003F <sub>16</sub>	DMAC index and status register (DMAIS)
0008 <sub>16</sub>	Port P0 (P0)	0040 <sub>16</sub>	DMAC channel x mode register 1 (DMAx1)
0009 <sub>16</sub>	Port P0 direction register (P0D)	0041 <sub>16</sub>	DMAC channel x mode register 2 (DMAx2)
000A <sub>16</sub>	Port P1 (P1)	0042 <sub>16</sub>	DMAC channel x source register Low (DMAxSL)
000B <sub>16</sub>	Port P1 direction register (P1D)	0043 <sub>16</sub>	DMAC channel x source register High (DMAxSH)
000C <sub>16</sub>	Port P2 (P2)	0044 <sub>16</sub>	DMAC channel x destination register Low (DMAxDL)
000D <sub>16</sub>	Port P2 direction register (P2D)	0045 <sub>16</sub>	DMAC channel x destination register High (DMAxDH)
000E <sub>16</sub>	Port P3 (P3)	0046 <sub>16</sub>	DMAC channel x transfer count register Low (DMAxCL)
000F <sub>16</sub>	Port P3 direction register (P3D)	0047 <sub>16</sub>	DMAC channel x transfer count register High (DMAxCH)
0010 <sub>16</sub>	Port control register (PTC)	0048 <sub>16</sub>	Data bus buffer register 0 (DBB0)
0011 <sub>16</sub>	Interrupt polarity select register (IPOL)	0049 <sub>16</sub>	Data bus buffer status register 0 (DBBS0)
0012 <sub>16</sub>	Port P2 pull-up control register (PUP2)	004A <sub>16</sub>	Data bus buffer control register 0 (DBBC0)
0013 <sub>16</sub>	USB control register (USBC)	004B <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )
0014 <sub>16</sub>	Port P6 (P6)	004C <sub>16</sub>	Data bus buffer register 1 (DBB1)
0015 <sub>16</sub>	Port P6 direction register (P6D)	004D <sub>16</sub>	Data bus buffer status register 1 (DBBS1)
0016 <sub>16</sub>	Port P5 (P5)	004E <sub>16</sub>	Data bus buffer control register 1 (DBBC1)
0017 <sub>16</sub>	Port P5 direction register (P5D)	004F <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )
0018 <sub>16</sub>	Port P4 (P4)	0050 <sub>16</sub>	USB address register (USBA)
0019 <sub>16</sub>	Port P4 direction register (P4D)	0051 <sub>16</sub>	USB power management register (USBPM)
001A <sub>16</sub>	Port P7 (P7)	0052 <sub>16</sub>	USB interrupt status register 1 (USBIS1)
001B <sub>16</sub>	Port P7 direction register (P7D)	0053 <sub>16</sub>	USB interrupt status register 2 (USBIS2)
001C <sub>16</sub>	Port P8 (P8)	0054 <sub>16</sub>	USB interrupt enable register 1 (USBIE1)
001D <sub>16</sub>	Port P8 direction register (P8D)	0055 <sub>16</sub>	USB interrupt enable register 2 (USBIE2)
001E <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )	0056 <sub>16</sub>	USB frame number register Low (USBSOFL)
001F <sub>16</sub>	Clock control register (CCR)	0057 <sub>16</sub>	USB frame number register High (USBSOFH)
0020 <sub>16</sub>	Timer XL (TXL)	0058 <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint index register (USBINDEX)
0021 <sub>16</sub>	Timer XH (TXH)	0059 <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint x IN control register (IN_CSR)
0022 <sub>16</sub>	Timer YL (TYL)	005A <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint x OUT control register (OUT_CSR)
0023 <sub>16</sub>	Timer YH (TYH)	005B <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint x IN max. packet size register (IN_MAXP)
0024 <sub>16</sub>	Timer 1 (T1)	005C <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint x OUT max. packet size register (OUT_MAXP)
0025 <sub>16</sub>	Timer 2 (T2)	005D <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint x OUT write count register Low (WRT_CNTL)
0026 <sub>16</sub>	Timer 3 (T3)	005E <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint x OUT write count register High (WRT_CNTH)
0027 <sub>16</sub>	Timer X mode register (TXM)	005F <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint FIFO mode register (USBFOMR)
0028 <sub>16</sub>	Timer Y mode register (TYM)	0060 <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint 0 FIFO (USBFIFO0)
0029 <sub>16</sub>	Timer 123 mode register (T123M)	0061 <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint 1 FIFO (USBFIFO1)
002A <sub>16</sub>	Serial I/O shift register (SIOSHT)	0062 <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint 2 FIFO (USBFIFO2)
002B <sub>16</sub>	Serial I/O control register 1 (SIOCON1)	0063 <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint 3 FIFO (USBFIFO3)
002C <sub>16</sub>	Serial I/O control register 2 (SIOCON2)	0064 <sub>16</sub>	USB endpoint 4 FIFO (USBFIFO4)
002D <sub>16</sub>	Special count source generator 1 (SCSG1)	0065 <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )
002E <sub>16</sub>	Special count source generator 2 (SCSG2)	0066 <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )
002F <sub>16</sub>	Special count source mode register (SCSGM)	0067 <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )
0030 <sub>16</sub>	UART1 mode register (U1MOD)	0068 <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )
0031 <sub>16</sub>	UART1 baud rate generator (U1BRG)	0069 <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )
0032 <sub>16</sub>	UART1 status register (U1STS)	006A <sub>16</sub>	Flash memory control register (FMCR) ( <b>Note 2</b> )
0033 <sub>16</sub>	UART1 control register (U1CON)	006B <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )
0034 <sub>16</sub>	UART1 transmit/receive buffer register 1 (U1TRB1)	006C <sub>16</sub>	Frequency synthesizer control register (FSC)
0035 <sub>16</sub>	UART1 transmit/receive buffer register 2 (U1TRB2)	006D <sub>16</sub>	Frequency synthesizer multiply register 1 (FSM1)
0036 <sub>16</sub>	UART1 RTS control register (U1RTSC)	006E <sub>16</sub>	Frequency synthesizer multiply register 2 (FSM2)
0037 <sub>16</sub>	Resereved ( <b>Note 1</b> )	006F <sub>16</sub>	Frequency synthesizer divide register (FSD)
		FFC9 <sub>16</sub>	ROM code protect control register (ROMCP) ( <b>Note 3</b> )

**Notes 1:** Do not write any data to this addresses, because these areas are reserved.

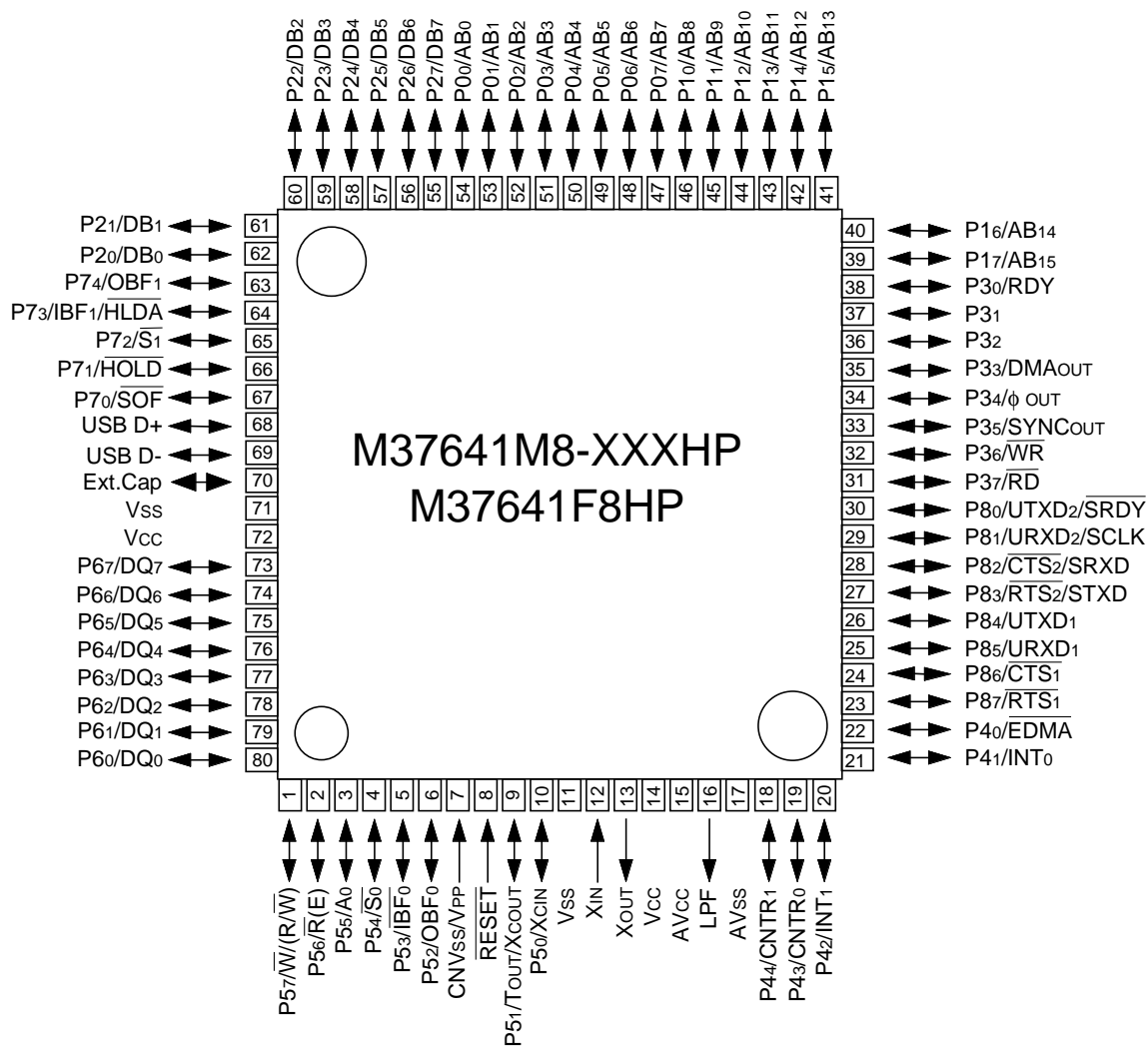
**2:** This area is reserved in the mask ROM version.

**3:** This area is on the ROM in the mask ROM version.

### 3.10 Pin configuration



Package type: PRQP0080GB-A (Top view)



Package type: PLQP0080KB-A (Top view)



REVISION HISTORY

7641 GROUP USER'S MANUAL

Rev.	Date	Description	
		Page	Summary
1.0	02/26/2002		First edition
2.0	08/28/2006	All pages All pages Chapter 1 39 55 71  108 109  111  112  Chapter 2 95 96-98  Chapter 3 30 32 35  83 92	Package names "80P6N-A" → "PRQP0080GB-A" revised Package names "80P6Q-A" → "PLQP0080KB-A" revised "USB std. spec. ver.1.1" → "Full-Speed USB2.0 specification"  DMAC; "(DxCEN)" → "(DxHR)" Fig. 47 "4: To use the AUTO_SET function .... to single buffer mode." added CLOCK GENERATING CIRCUIT; "No external resistor is needed .... resistor exists on-chip." → "No external resistor is needed .... depending on conditions.) Fig. 64; Pulled up added, NOTE added UART; "•Do not update .... data might be output." added USB; "•Use the AUTO_FLUSH Bit .... buffer mode.", "•To use the AUTO_SET function .... to single buffer mode." added Oscillator Connection Notice; "The built-in feedback register (400 ) .... pins X IN and XOUT." → "The built-in feedback register (1 M ) .... pins X IN and XOUT." Power Source Voltage added USB Communication added "For the mask ROM confirmation .... <a href="http://www.infocom.maec.co.jp/indexe.htm">http://www.infocom.maec.co.jp/indexe.htm</a> " → "For the mask ROM confirmation .... ( <a href="http://www.renesas.com">http://www.renesas.com</a> )."  2.5.6 "64-byte", "64 bytes" → "128-byte", "128 bytes" "USB endpoint 1" → "USB endpoint 2" Fig. 2.5.16, Fig. 2.5.17, Fig. 2.5.18 revised  (5) Receive error flag added 3.3.5 (4) USB Communication added (5) Registers and bits; "•To use the AUTO_SET function .... to single buffer mode." added Fig. 3.5.55 "3: To use the AUTO_SET function .... to single buffer mode." added 3.6 Package outline revised

---

**RENESAS 8-BIT SINGLE-CHIP MICROCOMPUTER  
USER'S MANUAL  
7641 Group**

**Publication Data : Rev.2.00 Aug 28, 2006**

**Published by : Sales Strategic Planning Div.  
Renesas Technology Corp.**

# 7641 Group User's Manual



Renesas Electronics Corporation

1753, Shimonumabe, Nakahara-ku, Kawasaki-shi, Kanagawa 211-8668 Japan

REJ09B0336-0200